This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

160

A TEXT-BOOK

OF

PHYSIOLOGY.

LANE LIBRARY

BY

M. FOSTER, M.A., M.D., F.R.S.,

PRÆLECTOR IN PHYSIOLOGY AND FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

SECOND AMERICAN
FROM THE THIRD AND REVISED ENGLISH EDITION.

WITH EXTENSIVE NOTES AND ADDITIONS,

BY EDWARD T. REICHERT, M.D.,

DEMONSTRATOR OF EXPERIMENTAL THERAPEUTICS, UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA.

WITH TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY-NINE ILLUSTRATIONS.

LANE MEDICAL LIBRARY
SAN FRANCISCO

PROSUNT ... OMNIBUS

THE
PROPERTY
OF THE
YORK HOSPIT

PHILADELPHIA:
HENRY C. LEA'S SON & CO.
1881.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1881,

By HENRY C. LEA'S SON & CO.,

In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D.C.

F34
F75
am. ed.
1881

PREFACE TO THE SECOND AMERICAN EDITION.

In preparing the Second American Edition numerous changes and additions have been made; the material added to the text of the former edition has been carefully revised, and some parts entirely rewritten; while the additions to the text will be found to embody all the recent advances made in experimental physiology. A number of new cuts have been inserted in place of old and imperfect ones, and others added; the additions have, however, by a slight change in the typographical arrangement, been incorporated without increasing the bulk of the volume.

The favor with which the First American Edition was received is practically shown by the exhaustion of a large edition within a year, and as now presented the Editor believes the value of the American Revision to be considerably enhanced and that it will more fully meet the requirements of the American student.

October, 1881.

THE PROPERTY OF THE N. YORK HOSPITAL.

AMERICAN EDITOR'S PREFACE.

THE high reputation acquired, on both sides of the Atlantic, by Dr. Foster's "Text-Book of Physiology" as a lucid exposition of the science in its most modern aspect, has seemed to call for an edition more thoroughly adapted to the wants of the American student. The plan of the author has presupposed an acquaintance with the details of physiological anatomy, such as the student is accustomed to look for in his treatises on physiology. The absence of these details has rendered many parts of the work vague, if not altogether incomprehensible, and has therefore proved a serious drawback to the usefulness of the book as an accompaniment to lectures on physiology as it is usually taught in our schools, and this deficiency the editor has endeavored to supply by brief notes and the introduction of a large number of illustrations.

The almost limitless amount of material accumulated by modern research has rendered difficult the task of selection and compression without exceeding the reasonable limits of a convenient text-book. In his selections the editor has been guided by his experience in the wants of students, and has endeavored only to present, in the most concise form, such facts as would seem to be indispensable to a correct appreciation of the structure and function of the important organs. In accomplishing this his additions have considerably exceeded his expectations, amounting to about one hundred and forty pages, including the illustrations, which have been increased in number from seventy-two to two hundred and fifty-nine. A number of brief notes on the physiological action of some of the important drugs have also been added. If he shall thus have succeeded in rendering this admirable work better fitted for the wants of the American student, he will feel abundantly rewarded.

Nothing has been omitted from the English edition, and all additions have been distinguished by insertions in brackets [ ].

PHILADELPHIA, March, 1880.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

So short a time has passed since the appearance of the first edition that it has not seemed desirable to make any important changes. My previous decision not to introduce figures of instruments has been so generally disapproved, that I have waived my own judgment and inserted a number of illustrations, which I trust will be found to assist the reader. The areas of the cerebral convolutions, in spite of the difficulties surrounding the true interpretation of the phenomena resulting from their stimulation, are of such interest, especially to the medical profession, that I have introduced illustrative figures, for which I have to thank the kindness of Dr. Ferrier.

Otherwise my efforts have been chiefly directed to removing inaccuracies and obscurities, in the hope of rendering the work more worthy of the favor with which it has been received. It will be observed that the largest changes and additions occur in the small print.

I have to thank Dr. Pye-Smith and other friends, as well as previously unknown correspondents, for their valuable suggestions; and I am, as before, greatly indebted for the help given me by my former pupils, Mr. Dew Smith, Mr. Langley, and Mr. Lea.

TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,
December, 1877.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

THE most important changes in the present edition are to be found in the section on muscle and nerve. I have rearranged this section altogether, hoping thereby to render this difficult subject more easy for the reader. The other changes, though numerous, are for the most

CONTENTS.

PAGE
INTRODUCTORY, ... 13

BOOK I.

BLOOD. THE TISSUES OF MOVEMENT. THE VASCULAR MECHANISM.

CHAPTER I.

BLOOD, 23–59.

SEC. 1. *The Coagulation of Blood,* 24
SEC. 2. *The Chemical Composition of Blood,* 42
SEC. 3. *The History of the Corpuscles,* 52
SEC. 4. *The Quantity of Blood, and its Distribution in the Body,* 58

CHAPTER II.

THE CONTRACTILE TISSUES, 60–150.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Skeletal Muscles,* . . . . 61]
SEC. 1. *The Phenomena of Muscle and Nerve,* 63
Muscular and nervous irritability, 63. The phenomena of a simple muscular contraction, 66. Tetanic contractions, 74.

SEC. 2. *The Changes in a Muscle during Muscular Contraction,* . 80
The change in form, 80. Electrical changes, 85. Chemical changes, 92. The change in a nerve during the passage of a nervous impulse, 99.

SEC. 3. *The Nature of the Changes through which an Electric Current is able to Generate a Nervous Impulse,* . 102
The action of the constant current, 102.

PAGE

Sec. 4. *The Muscle-nerve Preparation as a Machine,* . . . 110
The nature and mode of application of the stimulus as affecting the amount and character of the contraction, 111. The influence of the load, 115. The influence of the size and form of the muscle, 116.

Sec. 5. *The Circumstances which Determine the Degree of Irritability of Muscles and Nerves,* 117
The effects of severance from the central nervous system, 118. The influence of temperature, 120. The influence of blood-supply, 121. The influence of functional activity, 123.

Sec. 6. *A Further Discussion of some points in the Physiology of Muscle and Nerve,* 126
The electrical phenomena of muscle and nerve, 130. The energy of muscle and nerve and the nature of the chemical changes, 142.

Sec. 7. *Unstriated Muscular Tissue,* 145

Sec. 8. *Cardiac Muscles,* 149

Sec. 9. *Cilia,* 149

Sec. 10. *Migrating Cells,* 150

CHAPTER III.

The Fundamental Properties of Nervous Tissues, 151–163.

Automatic actions, 155. Reflex actions, 157. Inhibition, 161.

CHAPTER IV.

The Vascular Mechanism, 164–287.

I. The Physical Phenomena of the Circulation, . 16

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Arteries, Capillaries, and Veins,* 165–1

Sec. 1. *Main General Facts of the Circulation,* . . . . .
The capillary circulation, 170. The flow in the arteries, 173. The flow in the veins, 183. Hydraulic principles of the circulation, 184.

PAGE

Sec. 2. *The Heart*, ... 191

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Heart*, . . 191–197]

The phenomena of the normal beat, 197. The mechanism of the valves, 207. The sounds of the heart, 213. The work done, 216. Variation in the heart's beat, 218.

Sec. 3. *The Pulse*, ... 219

II. The Vital Phenomena of the Circulation, . 232

Sec. 4. *Changes in the Beat of the Heart*, ... 233

Nervous mechanism of the beat, 235. Inhibition of the beat, 238. The effects on the circulation of changes in the heart's beat, 248.

Sec. 5. *Changes in the Calibre of the Minute Arteries. Vaso-Motor Actions*, ... 251

Vaso-motor nerves, 253. Vaso-constrictor and vaso-dilator nerves, 271. The effects of local vascular constriction or dilation, 276.

Sec. 6. *Changes in the Capillary Districts*, ... 278

Sec. 7. *Changes in the Quantity of Blood*, ... 281

The Mutual Relations and the Co-ordination of the Vascular Factors, ... 283

BOOK II.

THE TISSUES OF CHEMICAL ACTION WITH THEIR RESPECTIVE MECHANISMS. NUTRITION.

CHAPTER I.

[*The Epithelia*, ... 289]

The Tissues and Mechanisms of Digestion, 293–401.

Sec. 1. [*The Physiological Anatomy of the Salivary Glands*, 292–295]

The Properties of the Digestive Juices.

Saliva, 296. [The physiological anatomy of the mucous membrane of the stomach, 302–304.] Gastric juice, 305. [The physiological anatomy of the liver, 314–318.] Bile, 318. [The physiological anatomy of the pancreas, 323.] Pancreatic juice, 323. [The physiological anatomy of the mucous membrane of the small intestine, 330–334.] Succus Entericus, 334.

PAGE

Sec. 2. *The Act of Secretion in the case of the Digestive Juices and the Nervous Mechanisms which regulate it,* . 335

Sec. 3. *The Muscular Mechanisms of Digestion,* 364
Mastication, 364. Deglutition, 365. Peristaltic action of the small intestine, 367. Movements of the œsophagus, 371. Movements of the stomach, 372. Movements of the large intestine, 374. Defecation, 374. Vomiting, 376.

Sec. 4. *The Changes which the Food undergoes in the Alimentary Canal,* 379

Sec. 5. *Absorption of the Products of Digestion,* 388
The course taken by the several products of digestion, 394

CHAPTER II.

The Tissues and Mechanisms of Respiration, 402–482.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Trachea and Lungs,* . 402–405]

Sec. 1. *The Mechanics of Pulmonary Respiration,* 406
The rhythm of respiration, 409. The respiratory movements, 412.

Sec. 2. *Changes of the Air in Respiration,* 420

Sec. 3. *The Respiratory Changes in the Blood,* 424
The relations of oxygen in the blood, 426. Hæmoglobin; its properties and derivatives, 428. Color of venous and arterial blood, 435. The relations of the carbonic acid in the blood, 441. The relations of the nitrogen in the blood, 442.

Sec. 4. *The Respiratory Changes in the Lungs,* 442
The entrance of oxygen, 442. The exit of carbonic acid, 443.

Sec. 5. *The Respiratory Changes in the Tissues,* 446

Sec. 6. *The Nervous Mechanism of Respiration,* 45

Sec. 7. *The Effects of Respiration on the Circulation,* . . 46

Sec. 8. *The Effects of Changes in the Air breathed,* 47
The effects of deficient air—Asphyxia; Phenomena of asphyxia, 472. The circulation in asphyxia, 475. The effects of an increased supply of air—Apnœa, 477. The effects of changes in the composition of the air breathed, 478. The effects of changes in the pressure of the air breathed, 479.

PAGE
SEC. 9. *Modified Respiratory Movements*, ... 480
Sighing, Yawning, Hiccough, Sobbing, Coughing, Sneezing, and Laughter, 480–481.

CHAPTER III.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Skin and its Appendages*, 483–493.]

SECRETION BY THE SKIN, 493–501.

The Nature and Amount of Perspiration, ... 493
Cutaneous Respiration 495
The Secretion of Perspiration, ... 497
The nervous mechanism of perspiration, 497.
Absorption by the Skin, ... 501

CHAPTER IV.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Kidneys*, ... 502–506]

SECRETION BY THE KIDNEYS, 506–523.

SEC. 1. *The Composition of Urine*, ... 506
SEC. 2. *The Secretion of Urine*, ... 510
The relation of the secretion of urine to arterial pressure, 511. Secretion by the renal epithelium, 515.
SEC. 3. *Micturition*, ... 520

CHAPTER V.

THE METABOLIC PHENOMENA OF THE BODY, 524–602.

SEC. 1. *Metabolic Tissues*, ... 525
The history of glycogen, 525. The history of fat—adipose tissue, 538. The mammary gland [and its physiological anatomy], 542. The spleen [and its physiological anatomy], 547.
SEC. 2. *The History of Urea and its allies*, ... 552
SEC. 3. *The Statistics of Nutrition*, ... 560
Comparison of income and outcome, 563. Nitrogenous metabolism, 568. The effects of fatty or amyloid food, 570.
SEC. 4. *The Energy of the Body*, ... 574
The income of energy, 574. The expenditure, 575. The sources of muscular energy, 576. The sources and distribution of heat, 580. Regulation by variations in loss, 585. Regulation by variations in production, 587.

PAGE

SEC. 5. *The Influence of the Nervous System on Nutrition*, . . . 595

SEC. 6. *Dietetics*, ... 598

BOOK III.

THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM AND ITS INSTRUMENTS.

CHAPTER I.

[*General Arrangement of the Nervous System, and the Physiological Anatomy of the Nerve Tissues*, ... 603–611]

SENSORY NERVES, 611–621.

CHAPTER II.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Eye* . . . . . 622–632]

SIGHT, 632–698.

SEC. 1. *Dioptric Mechanisms*, ... 632
The formation of the image, 632. Accommodation, 634. Movements of the pupil, 643. Imperfections in the dioptric apparatus, 643.

SEC. 2. *Visual Sensations*, ... 653
The origin of visual impulses, 653. Simple sensations, 663. Color sensations, 669.

SEC. 3. *Visual Perceptions*, ... 677
Modified perceptions, 679.

SEC. 4. *Binocular Vision*, ... 683
Corresponding or identical points, 683. Movements of the eyeballs, 685. The Horopter, 691.

SEC. 5. *Visual Judgments*, ... 692

SEC. 6. *The Protective Mechanisms of the Eye*, ... 697

CHAPTER III.

HEARING, SMELL, AND TASTE, 699–729.

SEC. 1. *Hearing*, ... 699
[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Ear*, . . . 699–708]
The acoustic apparatus, 709. Auditory sensations, 712. Auditory judgments, 718.

SEC. 2. *Smell*, ... 720
[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Nasal Fossæ*, 720–721]

PAGE
Sec. 3. *Taste,* 723
[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Gustatory Mucous Membrane,* . . . . 723–727]

CHAPTER IV.

Feeling and Touch, 730–739.

Sec. 1. *General Sensibility and Tactile Perceptions,* . . . 730
Sec. 2. *Tactile Sensations,* 732
Sensations of pressure, 732. Sensations of temperature, 733.
Sec. 3. *Tactile Perceptions and Judgments,* 735
Sec. 4. *The Muscular Sense,* 737

CHAPTER V.

The Spinal Cord, 740–767.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Spinal Cord,* . . . 740–743]
Sec. 1. *As a Centre of Reflex Action,* 743
In the frog, 743. In the mammal, 751. The time required of reflex actions, 753.
Sec. 2. *As a Centre or Group of Centres of Automatic Action,* . 754
Sec. 3. *As a Conductor of Afferent and Efferent Impulses,* . . 756

CHAPTER VI.

The Brain, 768–838.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Brain,* . . . . 768–779]
Sec. 1. *On the Phenomena exhibited by an animal deprived of its Cerebral Hemispheres,* 779
Sec. 2. *The Mechanisms of Co-ordinated Movements,* . . . 785
Forced movements, 794.
Sec. 3. *The Functions of the Cerebral Convolutions,* . . . 796
Sec. 4. *The Functions of other Parts of the Brain,* . . . 809
Corpora striata and optic thalami, 811. Corpora quadrigemina, 816. Cerebellum, 819. Crura cerebri and pons Varolii, 822. Medulla oblongata, 823.
Sec. 5. *The Rapidity of Cerebral Operations,* 824
Sec. 6. *The Cranial Nerves,* 826

CHAPTER VII.

SPECIAL MUSCULAR MECHANISMS, 839–856.

PAGE
[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Larynx*, ... 839–842]
SEC. 1. *The Voice*, ... 842
SEC. 2. *Speech*, ... 848
Vowels, 848. Consonants, 849.
SEC. 3. *Locomotor Mechanisms*, ... 853

BOOK IV.

THE TISSUES AND MECHANISMS OF REPRODUCTION.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Organs of Generation*, . 858–864]

CHAPTER I.

MENSTRUATION, 865–869.

CHAPTER II.

IMPREGNATION, 870–879.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE

[1. Amœba, Princeps, after Ehrenberg, ... 13]
[2. Bowl of Recently Coagulated Blood, after Dalton, ... 25]
[3. Bowl of Coagulated Blood after Twelve Hours, after Dalton, ... 25]
[4. Coagulated Fibrin, after Dalton, ... 26]
[5. Red Blood-corpuscles of Man, after Gulliver, ... 46]
[6. Red Blood-corpuscles of Mammals, Birds, Reptiles, and Fish, after Gulliver, 47]
[7. White Blood-corpuscles, after Klein,. . . . . 50]
[8. Embryonic Blood-corpuscles, after Kirk, ... 54]
[9. Transverse Section of Skeletal Muscle, after Kölliker, ... 61]
[10. Elementary Structure of Skeletal Muscle, after Todd and Bowman, . . 62]
[11. Lacerated Fibre, showing Sarcolemma, after Todd and Bowman, . . . 63]
12. Diagram illustrating Apparatus arranged for Experiments with Muscle-nerve Preparations, ... 67
13. Muscle-nerve Preparation, with Clamp Electrodes and Electrode-holder, shown on a larger scale, ... 69
14. Muscle-curve Tracing obtained by the Pendulum Myograph, ... 69
15. The Pendulum Myograph, ... 70
16. Curves illustrating the Measurement of the Velocity of a Nervous Impulse, . 73
17. Tracing of a Double Muscle-curve, ... 75
18. Tracing for a Muscle thrown into Tetanus with a Primary Current of an Induction-Machine, ... 76
19. Tracing from a Muscle thrown into Tetanus with an ordinary Magnetic Interruptor of an Induction-Machine, ... 77
20. The Magnetic Interruptor, ... 77
[21. Muscle-fibre, with termination of Motor Nerve in an End-plate, after Cohnheim, ... 81]
22. Muscular Fibre undergoing Contraction, after Engelmann, ... 82
23. Representation of the Translocation of the Molecules of a Muscular Fibre during Contraction and Relaxation, ... 84
24. Non-polarized Electrodes, ... 85
25. Diagram illustrating the Electric Currents of Nerve and Muscle, . . . 86
26. Muscle-nerve Preparation, showing Application of Non-polarizable Electrodes, 105
27. Diagram illustrating the Variations of Irritability during Electrotonus, with Polarizing Currents of Increasing Intensity, ... 106
28. Diagram to illustrate Du Bois-Reymond's Electromotive Molecules, Peripolar Condition, ... 126
29. Diagram to illustrate Du Bois-Reymond's Molecules in their Bipolar Condition, 127
30. Diagram to illustrate the Fall-rheotome, ... 129
31. Diagram to illustrate Bernstein's Differential Rheotome, ... 131
32. Diagram to illustrate Du Bois-Reymond's "Double Variations," . . . 133
33. Diagram illustrating Electrotonic Currents, ... 138
[34. Three Unstriated Muscular Fibre Cells from Human Arteries, after Bowman, 145]
[35. Muscular Fibre Cells from the Bladder, after Kölliker, ... 145]

PAGE
[36. Perpendicular Section through the Scalp, showing Muscles of the Hair-follicles, after Kölliker, ... 146]
37. Diagram to illustrate the Simplest Forms of a Nervous System, ... 151
[38. Diagram illustrating the Simplest Form of Reflex Apparatus, ... 157]
[39. Web of a Frog's Foot, showing Arterioles, Veins, and Intermediate Capillaries, after Wagner, ... 166]
[40. Structure of Capillaries, after Eberth, ... 167]
[41. Distribution of Capillaries in Muscles, after Berres, ... 167]
[42. Distribution of Capillaries around Fat-cells, after Berres, ... 167]
[43. Distribution of Capillaries on the Surface of the Skin of the Finger, after Berres, ... 168]
[44. Distribution of Capillaries in the Follicles of Mucous Membrane, after Berres, 168]
[45. Veins with Valves Open, after Dalton, ... 168]
[46. Veins with Valves Closed, after Dalton, ... 168]
[47. Capillaries of a Web of a Frog's Foot, highly magnified, after Wagner, . . 170]
48. Apparatus for Investigating Blood-pressure, ... 172
49. Tracing of Arterial Pressure with a Mercury Manometer, ... 174
50. Diagram illustrating Fick's Spring Manometer, ... 176
[51. Tracing obtained with the Spring Manometer, after Carpenter, . . . 177]
52. Large Kymograph, with continuous roll of paper, ... 178
[53. Volkmann's Hæmodrometer, after Dalton, ... 179]
54. Diagrammatic Representation of Ludwig's Stromuhr, ... 180
[55. Hæmatochometer of Vierordt, after Longet, ... 181]
[56. Lortet's Hæmatochometer, after Lortet, ... 182]
[57. Anastomosing Muscular Fibres of the Heart, after Eberth, ... 192]
[58. Interior of Right Side of the Heart, from Quain's *Anatomy*, ... 193]
[59. Interior of Left Side of the Heart, from Quain's *Anatomy*, ... 194]
[60. View of the Base of the Ventricles, showing the Valves, from Quain's *Anatomy*, 196]
[61. Diagram of the Circulation through the Heart, after Dalton, ... 197]
62. Tracings of the Variations of Pressure in the Right Auricle and Ventricle, and of Cardiac Impulse, after Marey, ... 200
63. Marey's Tambour, with cardiac sound, ... 202
64. The Maximum Manometer of Goltze and Gaule, ... 206
65. Curve of Pressure in Aorta and Left Ventricle of the Dog, taken with the Manometer of Goltze and Gaule, ... 207
[66. Diagram of the Valves of the Heart, after Dalton, ... 208]
[67. Diagram of the Valves of the Heart, after Dalton, ... 209]
68. Diagrammatic Representation of Movements and Sounds of the Heart during a Cardiac Period, ... 214
[69. Marey's Sphygmograph, after Longet, ... 220]
[70. Apparatus of Marey for showing Mode of the Propagation of the Pulse, after Longet, ... 221]
71. Pulse-curves described by a Series of Sphygmographic Levers, at intervals on an elastic tube, into which a fluid is forced by a sudden pump, . . . 222
72. (*a*) Sphygmograph Tracing from the Ascending Aorta (Aneurismal Dilatation); (*b*) from Carotid Artery of a Healthy Man; (*c*) from Radial Artery of same person; (*d*) from Radial Artery of a Healthy Man less athletic than in (*c*); (*e*) from Dorsalis Pedis of same person as (*b*) and (*c*); (*f*) Tracing of Pulse fully Dicrotic; Predicrotic-wave also shown (Typhoid Fever (?)); (*g*) Pulse fully Dicrotic, and Dicrotic-wave very large, Typhoid Fever; (*h*) Pulse with very large Predicrotic-wave, Acute Albuminuria; (*k*) Hyperdicrotic Pulse, the Dicrotic-wave becoming lost on succeeding beat; after Hæmorrhage in Typhoid Fever, ... 227, 228

PAGE
[73. Diagram of the Nerves of the Heart, after Carpenter, ... 237]
74. Inhibition of the Frog's Heart by Stimulation of the Vagus, . . . 239
75. The last Cervical and first Thoracic Ganglia in a Rabbit, ... 244
76. The last Cervical and first Thoracic Ganglia in a Dog, ... 245
77. Tracing showing the influence of Cardiac Inhibition on Blood-pressure, . 249
78. Blood-pressure during Cardiac Inhibition, ... 250
79. Tracing showing the effect on Blood-pressure by Stimulating the Central End of the Depressor Nerve, ... 259
[80. Epithelium from a Serous Membrane, after Henle, ... 289]
[81. Epithelium from a Mucous Membrane, after Henle, ... 289]
[82. Cylindrical Epithelium, after Kölliker, ... 290]
[83. Ciliated Epithelium, after Kölliker, ... 290]
[84. Section of a Villus from the Intestine of a Rabbit, after Klein and Verson, . 292]
[85. Lobule of the Parotid Gland of a Newborn Infant, after Wagner, . . . 294]
[86. Submaxillary Gland of a Dog, after Frey, ... 294]
[87. Modes of Terminations of Nerves in Salivary Glands, after Pflüger, . . 295]
[88. Salivary Corpuscles, Epithelium Scales, and Granules, after Carpenter, . 296]
[89. Capillary Network of the Lining Membrane of the Stomach, after Kölliker, 303]
[90. Vertical Section of the Mucous Membrane of the Stomach, after Wagner, . 303]
[91. Peptic Gastric Gland, after Kölliker, ... 304]
[92. Portion of one of the Cæca more highly magnified, after Kölliker, . . 304]
[93. Mucous Gastric Gland, after Kölliker, ... 304]
[94. Hepatic Column, after Leidy, ... 314]
[95. Cross-section of a Lobule of Human Liver, after Sappey, ... 315]
[96. Longitudinal Section of a small Portal Vein and Canal, after Kiernan, . 316]
[97. Longitudinal Section of a large Hepatic Vein, after Kiernan, . . . 317]
[98. Injected Biliary Capillaries, after Irminger and Frey, ... 318]
[99. Diagram to show Bile-passages, after Hering, ... 318]
[100. Leucin and Tyrosin, after Frey, ... 326]
[101. Brunner's Gland, after Thompson, ... 331]
[102. Glands of Lieberkühn, after Kirke, ... 331]
[103. Agminate Follicles, after Boehm, ... 332]
[104. Side View of the Intestinal Mucous Membrane, after Bendz, . . . 332]
[105. Solitary Gland of Small Intestine, after Boehm, ... 332]
[106. Villi of Intestine, after Teichmann, ... 336]
107. Diagrammatic Representation of the Submaxillary Gland of the Dog, . 337
108. Diagram illustrating the Influence of Food on the Secretion of Pancreatic Juice, after Bernstein, ... 349
109. Pancreas of the Rabbit in States of Rest and Activity, after Kühne and Lea, 352
110. Mucous Gland in States of Rest and Activity, after Ladowsky, . . . 357
111. Serous Gland in States of Rest, and after Stimulation of the Cervical Sympathetic, after Heidenhain, ... 358
[112. Diagram of the Portal System or Circulation, after Marshall, . . . 395]
[113. Transverse Section of a Bronchial Tube of a Pig, after Schultze, . . . 403]
[114. System of Alveolar Passages and Infundibula, after Waters, . . . 404]
[115. Pulmonary Lobules, after Kölliker, ... 405]
[116. Capillary Network of Bloodvessels of Human Lung, after Carpenter, . . 405]
117. Tracing of Thoracic Respiratory Movements, ... 409
118. Apparatus for Taking the Movements of the Columns of Air in Respiration, 410
[119. Apparatus to show the Mechanism of the Diaphragm in Respiration, after Eberth, ... 414]
[120. Rib Articulated, showing its Axis of Rotation, from Kirke, ... 415]

PAGE

[121. Diagrams showing the Mechanism of the Internal and External Intercostal Muscles in Respiration, after Huxley, 417]
122. Diagrammatic Illustration of Ludwig's Mercurial Gas-Pump, 425
123. Spectra of Hæmoglobin and some of its Derivatives, 430
[124. Hæmoglobin Crystals from the Blood of the Pig, after Kirke, 431]
[125. Hæmoglobin Crystals from the Blood of the Squirrel, after Funke, 431]
[126. Hæmoglobin Crystals from the Blood of Man, after Kirke, 432]
127. Comparison of Blood-pressure Curve with Intrathoracic Pressure, 466
128. Traube's Curves, 469
[129. Vertical Section of Skin, magnified, after Sharpey, 483]
[130. Simple Papillæ of Skin, after Breschet, 484]
[131. Compound Papillæ from Palm of Hand, after Kölliker, 484]
[132. Portion of Skin from Palmar Surface of the End of the Thumb, after Marshall, 485]
[133. End bulbs of Krause, after Kölliker, 485]
[134. Tactile Corpuscles, after Kölliker, 486]
[135. Pacinian Corpuscles, after Todd and Bowman, 487]
[136. Transverse Section of the Nail and Matrix, after Marshall, 488]
[137. Hair in its Follicle, after Kölliker, 490]
[138. Root of the Hair, after Kohlrausch, 490]
[139. Sudoriparous Gland, after Wagner, 491]
[140. Vertical Section through the Kidney, after Henle, 502]
[141. Diagram of the Course of the Renal Tubules, after Hertz, 503]
[142. Transverse Section of a Renal Papillæ, after Kölliker, 504]
[143. Plan of the Renal Circulation in Mammals, from Kirke, 505]
[144. Semi-diagrammatic Representation of a Malpighian Body, from Kölliker, 505]
[145. Urinary Sediment of Triple Phosphates, from Kirke, 507]
[146. Diagram showing the Points of Puncture of the Floor of the Fourth Ventricle to produce Glycosuria, Polyuria, and Albuminuria, 534]
[147. Lobule of the Mammary Gland, after Cooper, 543]
[148. Distribution of the Milk-ducts in the Human Female, after Cooper, 544]
[149. Microscopic Appearance of Human Milk, after Cooper, 546]
[150. Branch of Splenic Artery and its Ramifications with Malpighian Corpuscles, after Kölliker, 548]
[151. Malpighian Corpuscles, after Müller, 549]
[152. Cerebro-spinal Axis, showing Origin of Cranial and Spinal Nerves, after Marshall, 604]
[153. Various Forms of Ganglionic Vesicles, after Kirke, 606]
[154. Structure of Pyroform Nerve-cells, after Beale and Arnold, 607]
[155 Stellate Nerve-cell, after Beale, 607]
[156. Funiculus of Nerve, after Ranvier, 608]
[157. Nerve-fibre from Sciatic Nerve, after Ranvier, 608]
[158 Nerve-tubules showing Effects of Post-mortem Changes, after Wagner, 609]
[159. Diagram of Structure of Nerve-fibre, after Carpenter, 609]
[160. Primitive Nerve-fibrils, after Schultze, 610]
[161. Diagram of a Horizontal Section of the Eyeball, after Ellis, 622]
[162. Vertical Section of Cornea, after Ellis, 623]
[163. Inner View of the Front of the Choroid Coat, the Ciliary Processes, and the Back of the Iris, after Ellis, 625]
[164. Section of the Ciliary Region of the Eye of Man, after Iwanoff, 625]
[165. Muscular Structure of the Iris, after Kölliker, 626]
[166. Pigment-cells of the Eyeball, after Kölliker, 627]
[167. Diagrammatic Representation of the Connection of the Nerve-fibres of the Retina, after Schultze, 628]

PAGE

[168. Rod and Cone from the Retina of Man, after Schultze, ... 628]

[169. Diagrammatic Representation of the Connective Tissue of the Retina, after Schultze, ... 628]

[170. Inner Surface of the Retina, showing Macula Lutea, Entrance of Optic Nerve, and Arteria Centralis Retinæ, after Sœmmerring, ... 630]

[171. Magnified Vertical Section of Retina, after Ellis, ... 630]

[172. Representation of the Laminæ of a Hardened Lens, after Ellis, . . . 631]

173. Diagram of Scheiner's Experiment, ... 637

[174. Diagram showing the Course of Parallel Rays in the Myopic Eye, after Carpenter, ... 639]

[175. Diagram showing the Course of Parallel Rays in the Hypermetropic Eye, after Carpenter, ... 639]

[176. Diagram showing the Course of Parallel Rays in the Emmetropic Eye, after Carpenter, ... 639]

[177. Diagram showing how the Accommodation of the Lens is affected for Diverging Rays of Near Objects, after Carpenter, ... 641]

178. Diagram illustrating Chromatic Aberration, ... 651

[179. Diagram of Method for Finding the Situation of the Blind Spot, . . . 654]

180. Diagram illustrating the Formation of Purkinje's Figures when the Illumination is directed through the Sclerotic, ... 655

181. Diagram illustrating the Formation of Purkinje's Figures when the Illumination is directed through the Cornea, ... 655

182. Diagram of the Three Primary Color Sensations, ... 672

183. Diagram illustrating the Appreciation of Apparent Size, ... 682

184. Diagram illustrating Corresponding Points in the Retina, ... 684

185. Diagram of the Attachment of the Muscles of the Eye, after Frick, . . . 688

186. Diagram illustrating a Simple Horopter, ... 691

187. Diagram illustrating Monocular and Binocular Perception of an Object, . 695

[188. Vertical Section of the Meatus Auditorius Externus and Tympanum, after Scarpa, ... 699]

[189. Inner View of Membrana Tympani and Tympanic Bone, after Ellis, . . 701]

[190. Plan of Ossicles in Position in the Tympanum, with their Muscles, from Ellis, 701]

[191. Interior of Osseous Labyrinth, after Sœmmerring, ... 702]

[192. Osseous Labyrinth, natural size, after Sœmmerring, ... 702]

[193. Representation of the Semicircular Canals, enlarged, from Ellis, . . . 703]

[194. Section through the Cochlea, after Breschet, ... 704]

[195. Diagram of a Section of the Tube of the Cochlea, from Ellis, modified from Henle, ... 705]

[196. Petrous Bone partly removed to show Membranous Labyrinth in place, after Breschet, ... 706]

[197. Distribution of Nerves to the Membranous Labyrinth, after Breschet, . . 707]

[198. Diagram of the Mode of Termination of the Auditory Nerve in Ampullæ and Sacculi, after Rüdinger, ... 708]

[199. Vertical Section of Right Nasal Fossa, after Arnold, ... 720]

[200. Cells of the Olfactory Mucous Membrane, after Schultze and Clark, . . 720]

[201. Vertical Section of the Circumvallate Papillæ, from Kölliker, . . . 724]

[202. Surface and Section of Fungiform Papillæ, from Kölliker, after Todd and Bowman, ... 725]

[203. Vertical Section of Filiform Papillæ, also showing Hairs of Tongue, after Todd and Bowman, ... 726]

[204. Gustatory Bulbs from the Lateral Gustatory Organ of the Rabbit, after Engelmann, ... 727]

[205. Transverse Section of the Spinal Cord, after Clarke, ... 741]

PAGE

[206. Median Portion of a Transverse Section of the Spinal Cord, after Gerlach, . 742]

207. Diagram showing the Relative Sectional Areas of the Spinal Nerves as they join the Spinal Cord, ... 758

208. Diagram showing the United Sectional Areas of the Spinal Nerves, proceeding from below upwards, ... 758

209. Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Gray Matter of the Spinal Cord, ... 758

210. Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Lateral Columns, 759

211. Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Anterior Columns, ... 759

212. Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Posterior Columns, ... 759

[213. Diagram showing the Course of Motor and Sensory Fibres in the Spinal Cord and Medulla Oblongata, after Brown-Séquard, ... 760]

[214. View of the Anterior Surface of the Pons Varolii and Medulla Oblongata, from Kirke, ... 769]

[215. View of the Posterior Surface of the Pons Varolii and Medulla Oblongata, from Kirke, ... 769]

[216. Under Surface of Base of the Encephalon freed from its Membranes, from Kirke, ... 770]

[217. Dissection of Brain, from above, exposing the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Ventricles, after Hirschfeld and Leveille, ... 772]

[218. View of the Cerebellum in Section, and of Fourth Ventricle, with Neighboring Parts, from Sappey, after Hirschfeld and Leveille, ... 774]

[219. Brain of Man, ... 776]

[220. Diagram of the Distribution of the Fibres in the Brain, after Meynert, . 778]

221. The Areas of the Cerebral Convolutions of the Dog, according to Hitzig and Fritsch, ... 796

222. The Areas of the Cerebral Convolutions of the Dog, according to Ferrier, . 797

223. Side and Upper Views of the Brain of Man, with the Areas of the Cerebral Convolutions, according to Ferrier, ... 798

224. Side and Upper Views of the Brain of Man, with the Areas of the Cerebral Convolutions, according to Ferrier, ... 799

[225. Course of Fibres in the Optic Commissure, after Bowman, ... 827]

[226. The Nerves of the Orbit seen from the Outer Side, after Arnold, ... 828]

[227. General Plan of the Branches of the Fifth Pair, after Charles Bell, . . 831]

[228. The Distribution of the Facial Nerve, after Erasmus Wilson, . . . 833]

[229. The Distribution of the Pneumogastric Nerve, after Hirschfeld and Leveille, 836]

[230. Median Section of the Mouth, Nose, Pharynx, and Larynx, after Quain, . 839]

[231. View of the Larynx and part of the Trachea behind, after Quain, . . 841]

[232. View of the Larynx from above, after Quain, ... 841]

[233. View of Upper Part of the Larynx, as seen by means of the Laryngoscope, during the Utterance of a Grave Note, after Quain, ... 841]

234. The Larynx as seen by means of the Laryngoscope in Different Conditions of the Glottis, from Quain, after Czermak, ... 843

[235. Illustration of Third Kind of Lever, after Kirke, ... 853]

[236. Diagram illustrating Movements of Legs and Feet in Walking, after Kirke, 854]

[237. Diagrammatic View of the Uterus and its Appendages, after Quain, . . 859]

[238. Section of the Lining Membrane of Uterus, after Weber, ... 860]

[239. View of a Section of a Prepared Ovary of a Cat, after Schrön, . . . 861]

[240. The Base of the Male Bladder, with Vesiculæ Seminales and Prostate Gland, after Haller, ... 862]

[241. View of a Section of the Testicle and Epididymis, after Kirke, . . . 862]

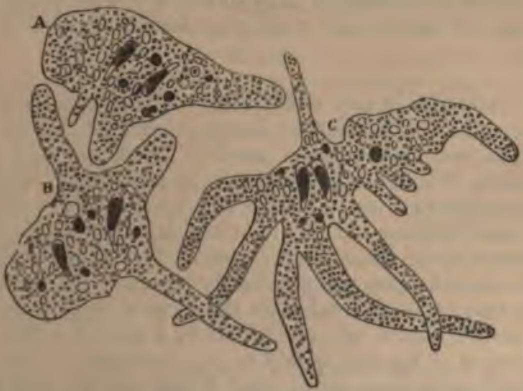
PAGE
[242. Spermatozoa and Spermatic Cells, after Kölliker, ... 863]
[243. Section of a Graafian Follicle, after Von Baer, ... 865]
{244. Ovum of a Sow, after Barry, ... 865]
[245. Successive Stages of the Formation of the Corpus Luteum, after Pouchet, . 867]
[246. Diagram of the Various Stages of the Cleavage of the Yolk, after Dalton, . 871]
[247. Impregnated Egg, with the Commencement of the Formation of the Embryo, after Dalton, ... 872]
[248. Diagrammatic Section of Ovum, at Fifteenth or Seventeenth Day, . . 874]
[249. Diagrammatic Section of Ovum, with Chorion and Villi, after Todd and Bowman, ... 875]
[250. Diagrammatic Section of Ovum, with Chorion and Villi, after Todd and Bowman, ... 875]
[251. Diagram of Fecundated Egg, after Dalton, ... 875]
[252. Diagram of Fecundated Egg, with Allantois nearly complete, after Dalton, 875]
[253. Human Ovum, at eighth week, showing Tufts of the Chorion, after Ecker, 876]
[254. Portion of one of the Fœtal Villi, after Ecker, ... 876]
[255. First Stage of the Formation of the Decidua Reflexa, after Coste, . . . 877]
[256. More Advanced Stage of the Decidua Reflexa, after Coste, ... 877]
[257. Section of a Fully-Formed Placenta, after Ecker, ... 878]
[258. Diagram of the Fœtal Circulation, after Erasmus Wilson, ... 885]
[259. Cholesterin, after Dalton, ... 947]

A TEXT-BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY.

INTRODUCTORY.

Among the simpler organisms known to Biologists, perhaps the most simple as well as the most common is that which has received the name of Amœba. There are many varieties of Amœba, and probably many of the forms which have been described are, in reality, merely amœbiform phases in the lives of certain animals or plants; but they all possess the same general characters. Closely resembling the white corpuscles of vertebrate blood, they are wholly or almost wholly composed of undifferentiated protoplasm in the midst of which lies a nucleus, though this is sometimes absent. (Fig. 1.) In many a distinction may be observed between a more solid external layer or *ectosarc*, and a more fluid granular interior or *endosarc;* but in others even this primary differentiation is want-

[Fig. 1.



Amœba princeps, shown in different forms (A, B, C) assumed by the same animal.]

ing. By means of a continually occurring flux of its protoplasmic substance, the amœba is enabled from moment to moment not only to change its form but also to shift its position. By flowing round the substances which it meets, it, in a way, swallows them; and having digested and absorbed such parts as are suitable for food, ejects or rather flows away from the useless remnants.[1] It thus lives, moves, eats, grows, and after a time dies, having been during its whole life hardly anything more than a minute lump of protoplasm. Hence to the Physiologist it is of the greatest interest, since in its life the problems of physiology are reduced to their simplest forms.

Now the study of an amœba, with the help of knowledge gained by the examination of more complex bodies, enables us to state that the undifferentiated protoplasm of which its body is so largely composed possesses certain fundamental vital properties.

1. It is **contractile.** There can be little doubt that the changes in the protoplasm of an amœba which bring about its peculiar "amœboid" movements, are identical in their fundamental nature with those which occurring in a muscle cause a contraction: a muscular contraction is essentially a regular, an amœboid movement an irregular flow of protoplasm. The substance of the amœba may therefore be said to be contractile.

2. It is **irritable** and **automatic.** When any disturbance, such as contact with a foreign body, is brought to bear on the amœba at rest, movements result. These are not passive movements, the effects of the push or pull of the disturbing body proportionate to the force employed to cause them, but active manifestations of the contractility of the protoplasm; that is to say, the disturbing cause, or "stimulus," sets free a certain amount of energy previously latent in the protoplasm, and the energy set free takes on the form of movement. Any living matter which, when acted on by a stimulus, thus suffers an explosion of energy, is said to be "irritable." The irritability may, as in the amœba, lead to movement; but in some cases no movement follows the application of the stimulus to irritable matter, the energy set free by the explosion taking on some other form than movement, *ex gr.*, heat. Thus a substance may be irritable and yet not contractile, though contractility is a very common manifestation of irritability.

---

[1] Huxley and Martin, Elementary Biology, lesson iii.

The amœba (except in its prolonged quiescent stage) is rarely at rest. It is almost continually in motion. The movements cannot always be referred to changes in surrounding circumstances acting as stimuli; in many cases the energy is set free in consequence of internal changes, and the movements which result are called spontaneous or automatic[1] movements. We may therefore speak of the protoplasm of the amœba as being irritable and automatic.

3. It is **receptive** and **assimilative.** Certain substances serving as food are received into the body of the amœba, and there in large measure dissolved. The dissolved portions are subsequently converted from dead food into new living protoplasm, and become part and parcel of the substance of the amœba.

4. It is **metabolic**[2] and **secretory.** *Pari passu* with the reception of new material, there is going on an ejection of old material, for the increase of the amœba by the addition of food is not indefinite. In other words, the protoplasm is continually undergoing chemical change (metabolism), room being made for the new protoplasm by the breaking-up of the old protoplasm into products which are cast out of the body and got rid of. These products of metabolic action have, in many cases at all events, subsidiary uses. Some of them, for instance, we have reason to think, are of value for the purpose of dissolving and effecting other preliminary changes in the raw food introduced into the body of the amœba; and hence are retained within the body for some little time. Such products are generally spoken of as "secretions." Others which pass more rapidly away are generally called "excretions." The distinction between the two is an unimportant and frequently accidental one.

The energy expended in the movements of the amœba is supplied by the chemical changes going on in the protoplasm, by the breaking up of bodies possessing much latent energy into bodies possessing less. Thus the metabolic changes which the food (as distinguished from the undigested stuff mechanically lodged for awhile in the body) undergoes in passing through the protoplasm of the amœba are of three classes: those preparatory to and culminating in the conversion of the food into protoplasm, those concerned in the discharge of energy, and those tending to economize the immediate products of the second class of changes by rendering them more or less useful in carrying out the first.

---

[1] This word has recently acquired a meaning almost exactly opposite to that which it originally bore, and an automatic action is now by many understood to mean nothing more than an action produced by some machinery or other. In this work I use it in the older sense, as denoting an action of a body, the causes of which appear to lie in the body itself. It seems preferable to "spontaneous," inasmuch as it does not necessarily carry with it the idea of irregularity, and bears no reference to a "will."

[2] This term was introduced by Schwann (1839). Mircros. Untersuch., p. 229.

5. It is **respiratory**. Taken as a whole, the metabolic changes are pre-eminently processes of oxidation. One article of food, *i. e.*, one substance taken into the body, viz., oxygen, stands apart from all the rest, and one product of metabolism peculiarly associated with oxidation, viz., carbonic acid, stands also somewhat apart from all the rest. Hence the assumption of oxygen and the excretion of carbonic acid, together with such of the metabolic processes as are more especially oxidative, are frequently spoken of together as constituting the respiratory processes.

6. It is **reproductive**. The individual amœba represents a unit. This unit, after a longer or shorter life, having increased in size by the addition of new protoplasm in excess of that which it is continually using up, may, by fission (or by other means), resolve itself into two (or more) parts, each of which is capable of living as a fresh unit or individual.

Such are the fundamental vital qualities of the protoplasm of an amœba; all the facts of the life of an amœba are manifestations of these protoplasmic qualities in varied sequence and subordination.

The higher animals, we learn from morphological studies, may be regarded as groups of amœbæ peculiarly associated together. All the physiological phenomena of the higher animals are similarly the results of these fundamental qualities of protoplasm peculiarly associated together. The dominant principle of this association is the physiological division of labor corresponding to the morphological differentiation of structure. Were a larger or "higher" animal to consist simply of a colony of undifferentiated amœbæ, one animal differing from another merely in the number of units making up the mass of its body, without any differences between the individual units, progress of function would be an impossibility. The accumulation of units would be a hindrance to welfare, rather than a help. Hence, in the evolution of living beings through past times, it has come about that in the higher animals (and plants) certain groups of the constituent amœbiform units or cells have, in company with a change in structure, been set apart for the manifestation of certain only of the fundamental properties of protoplasm, to the exclusion or at least to the complete subordination of the other properties.

These groups of cells, thus distinguished from each other at once by the differentiation of structure and by the more or less marked exclusiveness of function, receive the name of "tissues." Thus the units of one class are characterized by the exaltation of the contractility of their protoplasm, their automatism, metabolism, and reproduction being kept in marked abeyance. These units constitute the so-called muscular tissue. Of another tissue, viz., the nervous, the marked features are irritability and automatism, with an almost complete absence of contractility and a great restriction of the other qualities. In a third group of units, the activity of the protoplasm is largely confined to the chemical changes of secretion, contractility and automatism (as manifested by movement) being either absent or existing to a very slight degree. Such a secreting tissue, consisting of epithelium cells, forms the basis of the mucous membrane of the alimentary canal. In the kidney, the substances secreted by the cells, being of no further use, are at once ejected from the body. Hence the renal tissue may be spoken of as excretory. In the epithelium cells of the lungs, the protoplasm plays an altogether subordinate part in the assumption of oxygen and the excretion of carbonic acid. Still we may, perhaps, be permitted to speak of the pulmonary epithelium as a respiratory tissue.

In addition to these distinctly secretory or excretory tissues, there exist groups of cells specially reserved for the carrying on of chemical changes, the products of which are neither cast out of the body, nor collected in cavities for digestive or other uses. The work of these cells seems to be of an intermediate character; they are engaged either in elaborating the material of food that it may be the more easily assimilated, or in preparing used-up material for final excretion. They receive their materials from the blood, and return their products back to the blood. They may be called the metabolic tissues *par excellence*. Such are the fat-cells of adipose tissue, the hepatic cells (as far as the work of the liver other than the secretion of bile is concerned), and probably many other cellular elements in various regions of the body.

Each of the various units retains to a greater or less degree the power of reproducing itself, and the tissues generally are capable of regeneration in kind. But neither units nor tissues can reproduce other parts of the organism than themselves, much less the entire organism. For the reproduction of the complex individual, certain units are set apart in the form of ovary and testis. In these all the properties of protoplasm are distinctly subordinated to the work of growth.

Lastly, there are certain groups of units, certain tissues, which are of use to the body of which they form a part, not by reason of their manifesting any of the fundamental qualities of protoplasm, but on account of the physical and mechanical properties of certain substances which their protoplasm has been able by virtue of its metabolism to manufacture and to deposit. Such tissues are bone, cartilage, connective tissue in large part, and the greater portion of the skin.

We may, therefore, consider the complex body of a higher animal as a compound of so many tissues, each tissue corresponding to one of the fundamental qualities of protoplasm, to the development of which it is specially devoted by the division of labor. It must, however, be remembered that there is a distinct limit to the division of labor. In each and every tissue, in addition to its leading quality, there are more or less pronounced remnants of all the other protoplasmic qualities. Thus, though we may call one tissue *par excellence* metabolic, all the tissues are to a greater or less extent metabolic. The energy of each, whatever be its particular mode, has its source in the breaking-up of the protoplasm. Chemical changes, including the assumption of oxygen and the production, complete or partial, of carbonic acid, and, therefore, also entailing a certain amount of secretion and excretion, must take place in each and every tissue. And so with all the other fundamental properties of protoplasm; even contractility, which for obvious mechanical reasons is soonest reduced where not wanted, is present in many other tissues besides muscle. And it need hardly be said that each tissue retains the power of assimilation. However thoroughly the material of food be prepared by digestion and subsequent metabolic action, the last stages of its conversion into living protoplasm are effected directly and alone by the tissue of which it is about to form a part.

Bearing this qualification in mind, we may draw up a physiological classification of the body into the following fundamental tissues:

1. The eminently contractile; the muscles.
2. " " irritable and automatic; the nervous system.

3. The eminently secretory or excretory; digestive, urinary, and pulmonary, etc., epithelium.
4. " " metabolic; fat-cells, hepatic cells, lymphatic and ductless glands, etc.
5. " " reproductive; ovary, testis.
6. The indifferent or mechanical; cartilage, bone, etc.

All these separate tissues, with their individual characters, are, however, but parts of one body; and in order that they may be true members working harmoniously for the good of the whole, and not isolated masses, each serving its own ends only, they need to be bound together by co-ordinating bonds. Some means of communication must necessarily exist between them. In the mobile homogeneous body of the amœba, no special means of communication are required. Simple diffusion is sufficient to make the material gained by one part common to the whole mass, and the native protoplasm is physiologically continuous, so that an explosion set up at any one point may be immediately propagated throughout the whole irritable substance. In the higher animals the several tissues are separated by distances far too great for the slow process of diffusion to serve as a sufficient means of communication, and their primary physiological continuity is broken by their being imbedded in masses of formed material, the product of the indifferent tissues, which, being devoid of irritability, present an effectual barrier to the propagation of molecular explosions. It thus becomes necessary that in the increasing complexity of animal forms, the process of differentiation should be accompanied by a corresponding integration, that the isolated tissues should be made a whole by bonds uniting them together. These bonds, moreover, must be of two kinds.

In the first place there must be a ready and rapid distribution and interchange of material. The contractile tissues must be abundantly supplied with material best adapted by previous elaboration for direct assimilation, and the waste products arising from their activity must be at once carried away to the metabolic or excretory tissues. And so with all the other tissues. There must be a free and speedy intercourse of material between each and all. This is at once and most easily effected by the regular circulation of a common fluid, the blood, into which all the elaborated food is discharged, from which each tissue seeks what it needs, and to which each returns that for which it has no longer any use. Such a circulation of fluid, being in large measure a mechanical matter, needs a machinery, and calls forth an expenditure of energy. The machinery is supplied by a special construction of the primary tissues, and the energy is arranged for by the presence among these of contractile and irritable matter. Thus to the fundamental tissues there is added, in the higher animals, a vascular bond in the shape of a mechanism of circulation.

In the second place, no less important than the interchange of material is the interchange of energy. In the amœba the irritable surface is physiologically continuous with the more internal protoplasm, while each and every part of the body has automatic powers. In the higher animal, portions only of the skin remain as eminently irritable or sensitive structures, while automatic actions are chiefly confined to a central mass of irritable nervous matter. Both forms of irritable matter are separated by long tracts of indifferent material, from those contractile tissues through which they chiefly manifest the changes going on in themselves. Hence the necessity for long strands of eminently irritable tissue to connect the skin and contractile tissues as well with each other as with the automatic centres. Similar strands are also needed, though, perhaps, less urgently, to connect the other tissues with these and with each other. To the vascular bond there must be added an irritable bond, along the strands of which impulses, set up by changes in one or another part, may travel in determinate courses for the regulation of the energy of distant spots. In other words, part of the irritable tissues must be specially arranged to form a co-ordinating nervous system.

Still further complications have yet to be considered. In the life of a minute homogeneous amœba, possessing no special form or structure, there is little scope for purely mechanical operations. As however we trace out the gradual development of the more complex animal forms, we see coming forward into greater and greater prominence the arrangement of the tissues in definite ways to secure mechanical ends. Thus the entire body acquires particular shapes, and parts of the body are built up into mechanisms, the actions of which are to the advantage of the individual. Into the composition of these mechanisms, or "organs," the active fundamental tissues as well as the passive or indifferent tissues enter; and the working of each mechanism, the function of each organ, is dependent partly on the mechanical conditions offered by the passive elements, partly on the activity of the active elements. The vascular mechanism, of which we have just spoken, is such a mechanism. Similarly the urgent necessity for the access of oxygen to all parts of the body, has given rise to a complicated respiratory mechanism; and the needs of copious alimentation to an alimentary or digestive mechanism.

Further, inasmuch as muscular movement is one of the chief ends, or the most important means to the chief ends of animal life, we find the animal body abounding in motor mechanisms, in which the prime mover is muscular contraction, while the machinery is supplied by complicated arrangements of muscles with such indifferent tissues as bone, cartilage, and tendon. In fact, the greater part of the animal body is a collection of muscular machines, some serving for locomotion, others for special manœuvres of particular members and parts, others as an assistance to the senses, and yet others for the production of voice, and, in man, of speech.

Lastly, the simple automatism of the amœba, with its simple responses to external stimuli, is replaced in the higher animals by an exceedingly complex volition affected in multitudinous ways by influences from the world without, and there is a correspondingly complex central nervous system. And here we meet with a new form of differentiation unknown elsewhere. While the contractility of the amœbal protoplasm differs but slightly from the contractility of the vertebrate striated muscle, there is an enormous difference between the simple irritability of the amœba and the complex action of the vertebrate nervous system. Excepting the nervous or irritable tissues, the fundamental tissues have in all animals the same properties, being, it is true, more acute and perfect in one than in another, but remaining fundamentally the same. The elementary muscular fibre of a mammal is a mass of but slightly differentiated protoplasm, forming a whole physiologically continuous, and in no way constituting a mechanism. Each fibre is a counterpart of all others; and the muscle of one animal differs from that of another in such particulars only as are wholly subordinate. In the nervous tissues of the higher animals, on the contrary, we find properties unknown to those of the lower ones; and in proportion as we ascend the scale we observe an increasing differentiation of the nervous system into unlike parts. Thus we have, what does not exist in any other tissue, a mechanism of nervous tissue itself, a central nervous mechanism of complex structure and complex function, the complexity of which is due not primarily to any mechanical arrangements of its parts, but to the further differentiation of that fundamental quality of irritability and automatism, which belongs to all irritable tissues, and to all native protoplasm.

In the following pages I propose to consider the facts of physiology very much according to the views which have been just sketched out. The fundamental properties of most of the elementary tissues will first be reviewed, and then the various special mechanisms. It will be found convenient to introduce early the account of the vascular mechanisms, and of its nervous co-ordinating mechanism, while the mechanisms of respiration and alimentation will be best considered in connection with the respiratory and secretory tissues. The description of the purely motor mechanisms will be brief; and, save in a few instances, confined to a statement of general principles. The special functions of the central nervous system, including the senses, must of necessity be considered by themselves. The tissues and mechanism of reproduction and the phenomena of the decay and death of the organism will naturally form the subject of the closing chapters.

BOOK I.

BLOOD—THE TISSUES OF MOVEMENT—THE VASCULAR MECHANISM.

CHAPTER I.

BLOOD.

Blood, when flowing in a normal condition through the bloodvessels, consists of an almost colorless fluid, the plasma, in which are suspended a number of more solid bodies, the red and white corpuscles. Were we anxious to give a formal completeness to the classification of the various parts of the body into tissues, we might speak of the blood as a tissue of which the corpuscles are the essential cellular elements, while the plasma is a liquid matrix. We might compare it to a cartilage, the firm matrix of which had become completely liquefied so that the cartilage corpuscles were perfectly free to move about.

In regarding blood as a tissue, however, we come upon the difficulty that it, unlike all the other tissues, possesses no one characteristic property. The protoplasm of the white corpuscles is native undifferentiated protoplasm, in no respect fitted for any special duty; and though, as we shall see, the red corpuscles have a definite respiratory function, inasmuch as they are carriers of oxygen from the lungs to the several tissues, still this respiratory work is only one of the very many labors of the blood. It will be, therefore, far more profitable, indeed necessary, to treat of the blood, not as a tissue by itself, but as the great means of communication of material between the tissues properly so called. Its real usefulness lies not so much in any one property of either its corpuscles or its plasma, as in its nature fitting it to serve as the great medium of exchange between all parts of the body. The receptive tissues pour into it the material which they have received from without, the excreting tissues withdraw from it the things which are no longer of any use, and the irritable, the contractile, and indeed all the tissues, seek in it the substances (including oxygen) which they need for the manifestation of energy or for the storing up of differentiated material, and return to it the waste products resulting from their activity. All over the body everywhere there is so long as life lasts a double current, here rapid, there slow, of material from the blood to the tissues, and from the tissues to the blood.

It, together with lymph (whether in the lymph canals or in the interstices of the tissues), may, as Bernard has suggested, be regarded as *an internal medium* bearing the same relations to the constituent tissues that the external medium, the world, does to the whole individual. Just as the whole organism lives on the things around it, its air and its food, so the several tissues live on the complex fluid by which they are all bathed, and which is to them their immediate air and food.

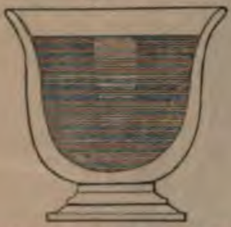
From this it follows, on the one hand, that the composition and characters of the blood must be forever varying in different parts of the body and at different times; and, on the other hand, that the united action of all the tissues must tend to establish and maintain an average uniform composition of the whole mass of blood. The special changes which blood is known to undergo while it passes through the several tissues will best be dealt with when the individual tissues and organs come under our consideration. At present it will be sufficient to study the main features, which are presented by blood, brought so to speak into a state of equilibrium by the common action of all the tissues.

Of all these main features of blood, the most striking if not the most important is the property it possesses of clotting or coagulating when shed.

SECTION 1. THE COAGULATION OF BLOOD.

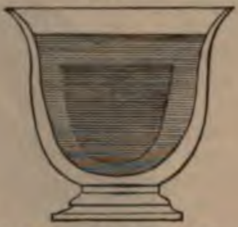
Blood, when shed from the bloodvessels of a living body, is perfectly fluid. In a short time it becomes viscid; it flows less readily from vessel to vessel. The viscidity increases rapidly until the whole mass of blood under observation becomes a complete jelly. The vessel into which it has been shed can at this stage be inverted without a drop of the blood being spilt. The jelly is of the same bulk as the previously fluid blood, and if forcibly removed presents a complete mould of the interior of the vessel. (Fig. 2.) If the blood in this jelly stage be left untouched in a glass vessel, a few drops of an almost colorless fluid soon make their appearance on the surface of the jelly. Increasing in number, and running together, the drops after awhile form a superficial layer of pale straw-colored fluid. Later on, similar layers of the same fluid are seen at the sides, and finally at the bottom of the jelly, which, shrunk to a smaller size and of firmer consistency, now forms a clot or *crassamentum*, floating in a perfect fluid *serum*. (Fig. 3.) The shrinking and condensation of the clot, and the corresponding increase of the serum continue for some time. The upper surface of the clot is generally cupped. A portion of the clot examined under the microscope is seen to consist of a feltwork of fine granular fibrils, in the meshes of which are entangled the red and white corpuscles of the blood. In the serum nothing can be seen but a few stray corpuscles. The fibrils are composed of a substance called *fibrin*. (Fig. 4.) Hence we may speak of the clot as consisting of fibrin and corpuscles; and the act of clotting or coagulation is obviously a conversion of the naturally fluid portion of the blood or plasma into fibrin and serum, followed by separation of the serum from the fibrin and corpuscles.

[Fig. 2.



Bowl of recently Coagulated Blood, showing the whole mass uniformly solidified. After Dalton.]

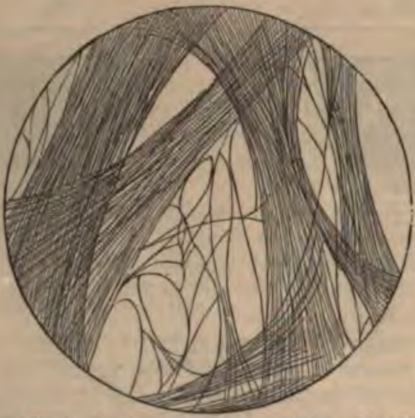
[Fig. 3.



Bowl of Coagulated Blood, after twelve hours, showing the clot contracted and floating in the fluid serum. After Dalton.]

In man, blood when shed becomes viscid in about two or three minutes, and enters the jelly stage in about five or ten minutes. After the lapse of another few minutes the first drops of serum are seen, and coagulation is generally complete in from one to several hours. The times, however, will be found to vary according to the condition of the individual, the temperature of the air, and the size and form of the vessel into which the blood is shed. Among animals the rapidity of coagulation varies exceedingly in different species. The blood of the horse coagulates with remarkable slowness; so slowly, indeed, that many of the red corpuscles (these being specifically heavier than the plasma) have time to sink before viscidity sets in. In consequence there appears on the surface of the blood an upper layer of colorless plasma, containing in its deeper portions many colorless corpuscles (which are lighter than the red). This layer clots like the other parts of the blood, forming the so-called "buffy coat." A similar buffy coat is sometimes seen in the blood of man in inflammatory conditions of the body.

[FIG. 4.



Coagulated Fibrin, showing its fibrillated condition. After DALTON.]

This buffy coat makes its appearance in horse's blood even at the ordinary temperature of the air. If a portion of horse's blood be surrounded by a cooling mixture of ice and salt, and thus kept at about 0° C., coagulation may be almost indefinitely postponed. Under these circumstances a more complete descent of the corpuscles takes place, and a considerable quantity of colorless transparent plasma free from blood-corpuscles may be obtained. A portion of this plasma removed from the freezing mixture clots exactly as does the entire blood. It first becomes viscid and then forms a jelly, which subsequently separates into a colorless shrunken clot and serum. This shows that the corpuscles are not an essential part of the clot.

If a few cubic centimeters of the same plasma be diluted with fifty times its bulk of a 0.75 per cent. solution of sodium chloride[1] coagulation is much retarded, and the various stages may be more easily watched. As the fluid is becoming viscid fine fibrils of fibrin will be seen to be developed in it, especially at the sides of the containing vessel. As these fibrils multiply in number the fluid becomes more and more of the consistence of a jelly, and at the same time somewhat opaque. Stirred or pulled about with a needle, the fibrils shrink up into a small opaque stringy mass; and a very considerable bulk of the jelly may, by agitation, be resolved into a minute fragment of shrunken fibrin floating in a quantity of what is really diluted serum. If a specimen of such diluted plasma be stirred from time to time, as soon as coagulation begins, with a needle or glass rod, the fibrin may be removed piecemeal as it forms, and the jelly stage may be altogether done away with. When fresh blood which has not yet had time to coagulate is stirred or whipped with a bundle of rods (or anything presenting a large amount of rough surface), no jellylike coagulation takes place, but the rods become covered with a mass of shrunken fibrin. Blood thus whipped until fibrin ceases to be deposited is found to have entirely lost its power of coagulation.

Putting all these facts together, it is very clear that the phenomena of the coagulation of blood are caused by the appearance in the plasma of fine fibrils of fibrin. As long as these are scanty the blood is simply viscid. When they become sufficiently numerous they give the blood the firmness of a jelly. Soon after their formation they begin to shrink, and in their shrinking inclose in their meshes the corpuscles, but squeeze out the fluid parts of the blood. Hence the appearance of the shrunken colored clot and the colorless serum.

Fibrin, whether obtained by whipping freshly-shed blood, or by washing either a normal clot, or a clot obtained from colorless plasma, exhibits the same general characters. It belongs to that class of complex unstable nitrogenous bodies called *proteids*, which form a large portion of all living bodies, and an essential part of all protoplasm.[2] It gives the ordinary proteid reactions. It is insoluble in water and in dilute saline solutions; and though it swells up in dilute hydrochloric acid, it is not thereby appreciably dissolved.[3]

Minor differences have been stated to exist in the characters of fibrin obtained in various ways and from various sources, *ex gr.*, by whipping, or by washing a blood-clot from venous or from arterial blood. But these differences are unimportant. The characters are said to vary also in different animals.

---

[1] A solution of sodium chloride of this strength will hereafter be spoken of as "normal saline solution."

[2] See Appendix.

[3] For further details, see Appendix.

Coagulation then is brought about by the introduction into the blood-plasma of a substance, fibrin, which previously did not exist there as such. Such a substance must have antecedents, or an antecedent—what are they, or what is it?

If blood be received direct from the bloodvessels into one-third its bulk of a saturated solution of some neutral salt such as magnesium sulphate, and the two gently but thoroughly mixed, coagulation, especially at a moderately low temperature, will be deferred for a very long time. If the mixture be allowed to stand, the corpuscles will sink, and a colorless plasma will be obtained similar to the plasma gained from horse's blood by cold, except that it contains an excess of the neutral salt. The presence of the neutral salt has acted in the same direction as cold; it has prevented the occurrence of coagulation. It has not destroyed the fibrin, for if some of the plasma be diluted with ten times its bulk (or even a less quantity) of water, it will coagulate speedily in quite a normal fashion, with the production of quite normal fibrin.

If some of the colorless transparent plasma, obtained either by the action of neutral salts from any blood, or by the help of cold from horse's blood, be treated with some solid neutral salt, such as sodium chloride, to saturation, a white flaky, somewhat sticky precipitate will make its appearance. If this precipitate be removed the fluid is no longer coagulable (or very slightly so), even though the neutral salt present be removed by dialysis, or its influence lessened by dilution. With the removal of the substance precipitated, the plasma has lost its power of coagulating.

If the precipitate itself, after being washed with a saturated solution of the neutral salt (in which it is insoluble) so as to get rid of all serum and other constituents of the plasma, be treated with a small quantity of water, it readily dissolves,[1] and the solution rapidly filtered gives a clear colorless filtrate, which is at first perfectly fluid. Soon, however, the fluidity gives way to viscidity, and this in turn to a jelly condition, and finally the jelly shrinks into a clot floating in a clear fluid; in other words, the filtrate clots like plasma. Thus there is present in cooled plasma, and in plasma kept from clotting by the presence of neutral salts, a something, precipitable by saturation with neutral salts, a something which, since it is soluble in very dilute saline solutions, cannot be fibrin itself, but which in solution speedily gives rise to the appearance of fibrin. To this substance its discoverer, Denis,[1] gave the name of *plasmine*. We are justified in saying that the coagulation of blood is the result of the conversion of plasmine into fibrin.

---

[1] The substance itself is not soluble in distilled water, but a quantity of the neutral salts always clings to the precipitate, and thus the addition of water virtually gives rise to a dilute saline solution, in which the substance is readily soluble.

The question now arises, What is the exact nature of plasmine? Is it, for instance, a mixture of two or more substances which by their interaction produce fibrin? This view is suggested by the fact that plasmine cannot be kept *in solution* for any length of time without changing into fibrin, except when submitted to certain influences, such as cold. It is moreover supported by the following facts:

The disease known as hydrocele is characterized by the presence in the tunica vaginalis (or serous sac of the testis) of an abnormal and often very considerable quantity of a clear, colorless, or faintly yellow fluid, very similar in appearance to the serum of clotted blood. This secretion, when drawn from the living body without admixture of blood, will in the great majority of cases remain perfectly fluid, and enter into decomposition without having shown any tendency whatever to clot. In a few exceptional cases a coagulation, generally slight, but quite similar to that of colorless blood-plasma, may be observed.

If a small quantity of hydrocele fluid which has been observed not to clot spontaneously be mixed with some serum or whipped blood, the mixture will after a longer or shorter time clot in a completely normal manner. That is to say, two fluids, neither of which apart clot spontaneously, will clot spontaneously when mixed together. (In some cases no clot is formed; specimens of hydrocele fluid are occasionally met with in which coagulation cannot be thus produced.)

If serum be treated to saturation with solid sodium chloride or magnesium sulphate, a flaky precipitate, very similar in general appearance to plasmine, will make its appearance. Like plasmine, this precipitate is soluble in very dilute neutral saline solutions, and in consequence as thus prepared readily dissolves when treated with distilled water, since a certain amount of sodium chloride clings to it. Unlike plasmine, its filtered solution will not clot. If, however, some of the solution be added to hydrocele fluid, a clotting takes place just as when serum itself is added. The rest of the serum from which this substance has been removed will not, after the removal by dialysis of the excess of salt, cause clotting in hydrocele fluid. Evidently it is the presence of this constituent, not coagulable of itself, which gives to serum its power of producing a coagulation in hydrocele fluid. The substance in question may also be prepared by diluting blood serum with ten or twenty times its bulk of water and passing a brisk stream of carbonic acid through it. The mixture speedily becomes turbid, and if left to stand a copious white amorphous somewhat granular precipitate settles down. The substance so thrown down has received the name of *paraglobulin*, or *fibrinoplastic globulin*, or *fibrinoplastin*. It may also be thrown down by very cautiously adding dilute acetic acid to dilute serum. It is, like fibrin, a proteid; but it differs in many respects from fibrin. It does not occur in the form of fibrils, and though insoluble in distilled water is very readily soluble in dilute neutral saline solutions. There are many proteids very closely allied to it; and these are frequently classed together as *globulins*.[1]

---

[1] Ann d. Sci. Nat. (iv), x, p. 25.

If, on the other hand, hydrocele fluid, specimens of which have been observed to coagulate on the addition of serum or paraglobulin, be treated in the same way either with carbonic acid or with sodium chloride to saturation, a precipitate is obtained similar to, but more flaky and less granular in nature than that produced in serum. When this precipitate, to which the name of *fibrinogen* has been given, is dissolved in dilute neutral saline solution, and the solution added to serum, the mixture coagulates spontaneously, while the hydrocele fluid from which the substance has been removed no longer causes coagulation in serum. Thus paraglobulin from serum causes coagulation of hydrocele fluid, and fibrinogen from hydrocele fluid causes coagulation of serum, though neither alone coagulates spontaneously. And serum deprived of its paraglobulin, and hydrocele fluid deprived of its fibrinogen, have lost all power of coagulating each other.

Lastly, if solid paraglobulin and fibrinogen, prepared by the sodium chloride method, be together dissolved in dilute saline solution, the fluid mixture will coagulate spontaneously with the production of quite normal fibrin.

These facts seem to show that plasmine is a mixture of fibrinogen and paraglobulin; indeed, an artificial mixture of the two latter, obtained from serum and hydrocele fluid respectively, would be undistinguishable from the former obtained from plasma. It must, however, be remembered that no one has yet succeeded in separating natural plasmine into fibrinogen and fibrinoplastin.[1]

---

[1] For further details, see Appendix.

There are, moreover, facts which show that the above statements do not cover the whole ground; there is evidence of the existence of yet another factor in the process.

1. If fibrinogen and paraglobulin be isolated by the carbonic acid method, their mixture in a saline solution clots with great difficulty or not at all; when they are prepared by the saturation method, their mixture gives a good firm clot. This suggests that something retained by the latter method is lost by the former.

2. Normal blood-plasma must naturally contain an excess of paraglobulin, since after coagulation the serum still contains a considerable quantity of that body. Yet even in blood-plasma, paraglobulin, under certain circumstances, will favor coagulation. If three parts of plasma be mixed with one part of a solution of magnesium sulphate (one of the salt to three and a half of water), the mixture diluted with eight parts of water will afford a dilute plasma, in which spontaneous coagulation will either not occur at all or come on very slowly indeed. In this dilute plasma the paraglobulin is still in excess. Nevertheless the addition of a further quantity of paraglobulin, prepared by saturation with sodium chloride, will speedily cause coagulation. From this it may be inferred that in adding the paraglobulin thus prepared something else is added as well.

3. If blood-serum or defibrinated blood be poured into about twenty times its bulk of strong spirit, and the mixture allowed to stand for some three weeks, or longer, all the proteid matters, including the paraglobulin, become coagulated and almost wholly insoluble in water. Hence if the spirit be filtered off from the copious precipitate, and the latter dried at a low temperature (below 40°) and extracted

---

[1] We owe the discovery of fibrinoplastin and fibrinogen to A. Schmidt, whose earlier papers will be found in Reichert and Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1861, p. 545, and 1862, p. 428. Schmidt's later results, which are discussed in the succeeding portions of this section, are contained in papers published in Pflüger's Archiv, vi (1872), p. 413; xi (1875), pp. 291 and 515; xiii (1876), pp. 93 and 146.

with distilled water, the aqueous extract contains no palpable amount of proteid material and gives but slight reactions with proteid tests. A small quantity of this aqueous extract of blood, however, though free from paraglobulin, will when added to the dilute plasma, spoken of above, bring about a rapid coagulation.

4. If the pericardial cavity of a large mammal (ox, horse, sheep) be laid open *immediately after death*, the fluid removed will coagulate spontaneously and rapidly. The clot will on examination be found to consist of a meshwork of normal fibrin in which are entangled a multitude of white corpuscles. If the opening of the body be deferred to some twenty or more hours after death, the pericardial fluid will be found either not to coagulate at all or to coagulate very slowly and feebly.

When, however, paraglobulin prepared by the saturation method is added to such a pericardial fluid a rapid and complete coagulation is generally brought about. But precisely the same coagulation may in many cases be brought about by the simple addition of the aqueous extract just described. Most pericardial fluids in fact behave extremely like the dilute plasma spoken of above. Moreover *some* specimens of hydrocele fluid will clot spontaneously on the addition of the aqueous extract without any paraglobulin being added at all.

Here then are indications of the existence of a substance which is neither fibrinogen nor paraglobulin, but which nevertheless appears to be as necessary as either of the other two for the occurrence of coagulation. This third substance will not bring about coagulation with fibrinogen alone or with paraglobulin alone. It will not bring about coagulation in fluids such as many hydrocele fluids, from which paraglobulin is apparently absent, nor serum, from which fibrinogen is absent. It is efficacious only in such cases where there are reasons for thinking that both paraglobulin and fibrinogen are present. But its most important feature is the following: In the cases in which coagulation is brought about by the addition of paraglobulin to fibrinogenous liquids, the quantity of fibrin produced certainly depends on the quantity of fibrinogen present, and appears also to be, to a certain extent, determined by the quantity of paraglobulin added; whereas the addition of the aqueous extract only affects the *rapidity* with which coagulation sets in, and not at all the quantity of fibrin produced. In other words, the aqueous extract does not contribute to the substance of the fibrin, but favors, or is essential to, the union of the two fibrin factors. That is to say, the substance in the aqueous extract which thus effects coagulation belongs to that class of substances which promote the union of other bodies, or cause changes in other bodies, without themselves entering into union or undergoing change. These substances we shall hereafter learn to speak of as "ferments;" and this particular substance has been called by its discoverer, A. Schmidt,[1] fibrin ferment. Obviously the ferment is present in blood-plasma, in plasmine, and in paraglobulin as prepared by the saturation method, but is apparently in large measure lost when paraglobulin is prepared by the carbonic acid method.

In conclusion, then, we may say, that coagulation is the result of the interaction of two bodies, paraglobulin and fibrinogen, brought about by the agency of a third body, fibrin ferment. Where these three bodies are all present, as in blood-plasma, in plasmine, in pericardial fluid taken from the body immediately after death, spontaneous coagulation is witnessed; where the ferment is absent, but the other factors are present, as in many cases of pericardial fluid removed some time after death, coagulation will take place on the addition of ferment alone; where both ferment and paraglobulin are absent, as in many cases of hydrocele fluid, both these must be added before coagulation can come on.

The exact nature of the process by which the presence of all three factors leads to the formation of fibrin cannot be at present defined more closely than by the phrase "interaction." Beyond the broad fact that the quantity of fibrin formed is affected by the quantity of paraglobulin and fibrinogen present, we have no knowledge of quantitative relations between the two constituents. That they do not unite simply together, as a base with an acid, seems to be clearly shown by the fact, that in artificial coagulations the quantity of fibrin formed is by weight always less than that of the paraglobulin used; indeed is frequently less than that of the fibrinogen calculated to be present. Hammarsten[2] argues that the paraglobulin does not enter in any way into the fibrin, the latter being simply transformed fibrinogen. He explains the fibrinoplastic properties of paraglobulin as due to that substance obviating certain hindrances to the formation of the fibrin, for instance, preventing the solution by saline or other bodies of the fibrin while it is in what may be called a nascent condition, *i. e.*, in a stage intermediate between fibrinogen and fibrin. According to him the quantity of paraglobulin present in a coagulating fluid, though of marked effect on the quantity of fibrin produced, has no effect on the total quantity of fibrinogen used up, *i. e.*, transformed into fibrin or into something else.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), 211.

Some authors go so far as to believe that paraglobulin *in itself* has no share in the matter, and that its apparent fibrinoplastic qualities are always due to a quantity of the ferment being entangled in it during its preparation. They regard the formation of fibrin as being simply a transformation of fibrinogen by means of the fibrin ferment. But this view is clearly untenable so long as the statement that the quantity of fibrin formed is affected by the presence of paraglobulin is not disproved. The assertion of Hammarsten,[1] that paraglobulin may be deprived of its fibrinoplastic powers by exposure to a temperature of 56° or 58° C. without any change in its ordinary characters points it is true in that direction, but his further statement that specimens of hydrocele fluid which refuse to clot on the simple addition of the ferment, but do so on the further addition of paraglobulin, may yet contain a considerable quantity of a body apparently identical with paraglobulin, show that further study of the whole subject is still required.

This conception of coagulation as a chemical process between certain factors renders easy of comprehension the influence of various conditions on the coagulation of blood. The quickening influence of heat, the retarding effect of cold, the favorable action of motion and of contact with surfaces, and hence the results of whipping and the influence exerted by the form and surface of vessels, become intelligible. The greater the number of points, that is the larger and rougher the surface presented by the vessel into which blood is shed, the more quickly coagulation comes on, for contact with surfaces favors chemical union. So also the presence of spongy platinum, or of an inert powder like charcoal, quickens the coagulation of tardily clotting fluids, such as many cases of pericardial fluid.

The action of neutral salts is still obscure. Schmidt has shown that the presence of a neutral salt, such as sodium chloride, is essential to the process, coagulation not occurring even where all three factors are present, if no neutral salt accompany them; thus bringing fibrin coagulation after all into the same category as the coagulation of albumin by heat: see Appendix. The presence of hæmoglobin also, independently of the fibrinoplastin which may be present in the red corpuscles, appears to favor coagulation.

Having thus arrived at an approximate knowledge of the nature of coagulation, we are in a better position for discussing the question, Why does blood remain fluid in the vessels of the living body and yet clot when shed?

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 38.

The older views may be at once summarily dismissed. The clotting is not due to loss of temperature, for cold retards coagulation, and the blood of cold-blooded animals behaves just like that of warm-blooded animals in clotting when shed. It is not due to loss of motion, for motion favors coagulation. It is not due to exposure to air, whereby either an increased access of oxygen or an escape of volatile matters is facilitated, for on the one hand the blood is fully exposed to the air in the lungs, and on the other shed blood clots when received, without any exposure to the atmosphere, in a closed tube over mercury.

All the facts known to us point to the conclusion, that when blood is contained in healthy living bloodvessels, a certain relation or equilibrium exists between the blood and the containing vessels of such a nature, that as long as this equilibrium is maintained the blood remains fluid, but that when this equilibrium is disturbed by events in the blood or in the bloodvessels, or by the removal of the blood, the blood undergoes changes which result in coagulation. The most salient facts in support of this conclusion are as follows:

1. After death, when all motion of the blood has ceased, the blood remains for a long time fluid. It is not till some time afterwards, at an epoch when post-mortem changes in the blood and in the bloodvessels have had time to develop themselves, that coagulation begins. Thus some hours after death the blood in the great veins may be found perfectly fluid. Yet such blood has not lost its power of coagulating; it still clots when removed from the body, and clots too when received over mercury without exposure to air, showing that the fluidity of the highly venous blood is not due to any excess of carbonic acid or absence of oxygen. Eventually it does clot even within the vessels, but never so firmly and completely as when shed. It clots first in the larger vessels, remaining for a very long time, for many hours in fact, fluid in the smaller veins, where the same bulk of blood is exposed to the influence of, and reciprocally exerts an influence on, a larger surface of the vascular walls than in the larger veins. Thus if the foot of a sheep be ligatured and amputated, the blood in the small veins will be found fluid and yet coagulable for many hours.

[The blood clots most readily in the arteries, next in the veins, and with the most difficulty in the capillaries, indeed it has even been stated never to coagulate in these minute vessels.]

2. If the vessels of the heart of a turtle (or any other cold-blooded animal) be ligatured, and the heart be cut out and suspended so that it may continue to beat for as long a period as possible, the blood will remain fluid within the heart as long as the pulsations go on, *i. e.*, for one or two days (and, indeed, for some time afterwards), though a portion taken away at any period of the experiment will clot very speedily.[1]

3. If the jugular vein of a large animal, such as an ox or horse, be ligatured when full of blood, and the ligatured portion excised, the blood in many cases remains perfectly fluid along the greater part of the length of the piece for twenty-four, or even forty-eight hours. The piece so ligatured may be suspended in a framework and opened at the top so as to imitate a living test-tube, and yet the blood will often remain long fluid, though a portion removed at any time into another vessel will clot in a few minutes. If two such living test-tubes be prepared, the blood may be poured from one to the other without coagulation taking place.[2]

The above facts illustrate the absence of coagulation in intact or slightly altered living bloodvessels; the following show that coagulation may take place even in the living vessels.

4. If a needle or piece of wire or thread be introduced into the living bloodvessel of an animal, either during life or immediately after death, the piece will be found incrusted with fibrin.

5. If in a living animal a bloodvessel be ligatured, the ligature being of such a kind as to injure the inner coat, coagulation takes place at the ligature and extends for some distance from it. Thus if the jugular vein of a rabbit be ligatured roughly in two places, clots will, in a few hours, be found in the ligatured portion, reaching upwards and downwards from each ligature, the middle portion being the least coagulated. Clots will also be found on the far side of each ligature. The clots will still appear if the ligature be removed immediately after being applied, provided that in the process the inner coat has been wounded. If the ligatures be applied in such a way as not to injure the inner

---

[1] Brücke, Brit. and For. Med.-Chir. Review, xix, p. 183 (1857).
[2] Lister, Proc. Roy. Soc., xii, p. 580 (1858).

coat, coagulation will not take place, though the blood may remain for many hours perfectly at rest between the ligatures.

6. When an artery is ligatured a conspicuous clot is formed on the cardiac side of the ligature. The clot is largest and firmest in the immediate neighborhood of the ligature, gradually thinning away from thence, and reaching usually as far as where a branch is given off. Between this branch and the ligature there is stasis; the walls of the artery suffer from the want of renewal of blood, and thus favor the propagation of the coagulation. On the distal side of the ligature, where the artery is much shrunken, the clot which is formed, though naturally small and inconspicuous, is similar.

7. Any injury of the inner coat of a bloodvessel causes a coagulation at the spot of injury. Any treatment of a bloodvessel tending to injure its normal condition causes local coagulation.

8. Disease involving the inner coat of a bloodvessel causes a coagulation at the part diseased. Thus inflammation of the lining membrane of the valves of the heart in endocarditis is frequently accompanied by the deposit of fibrin. In aneurism the inner coat is diseased, and layers of fibrin are commonly deposited. So also in fatty and calcareous degeneration without any aneurismal dilatation there is a tendency to the formation of clots.

9. Similar phenomena are seen in the case of serous fluids which coagulate spontaneously. If, as soon after death as the body is cold, and the fat is solidified, the pericardium be carefully removed from a sheep by an incision round the base of the heart, the pericardial fluid may be kept in the pericardial bag as in a living cup for many hours without clotting, and yet a small portion removed with a pipette clots at once, and a thread left hanging in the fluid soon becomes covered with fibrin.

The only interpretation which embraces these facts is that so long as a certain normal relation between the lining surfaces of the bloodvessels and the blood is maintained, coagulation does not take place; but when this relation is disturbed by the more or less gradual death of bloodvessels, or by their more sudden disease or injury, or by the presence of a foreign body, coagulation sets in. Two additional points may here be noticed. 1. Stagnation of blood favors coagulation within the bloodvessels, apparently because the bloodvessels, like other tissues, demand a renewal of the blood on which they depend for the maintenance of their vital powers. 2. The influence of surface is seen even in the coagulation within the vessels. In cases of coagulation from gradual death of the bloodvessels, as in the case of an excised jugular vein, the fibrin, when its deposition is sufficiently slow, is seen to appear first at the sides, and from thence gradually, frequently in layers, to make its way to the centre. So in aneurism, the deposit of fibrin is frequently laminated. In cases where coagulation results from disease of the lining membrane, the rougher the interior the more speedy and complete the clotting. So also a rough foreign body, presenting a large number of surfaces and points of attachment, more readily produces a clot when introduced into the living bloodvessels than a perfectly smooth one.

Clear as it seems to be that some vital relation of blood to bloodvessel is the dominant condition affecting coagulation, it is by no means easy to state distinctly what is the exact nature of that relation. Some authors[1] speak of the bloodvessels as exercising a restraining influence on the natural tendency of the blood to coagulate. Others[2] regard the living bloodvessel (and indeed living matter in general) as being wholly inert towards the fibrin factors. These they consider need the presence, the contact influence of some body, in order that they may act on each other to form fibrin: thus contact with the sides of the vessel into which blood is shed, or with the surface of a foreign body introduced into a living vessel is, according to them, the determining cause of coagulation. They suppose that living matter exercises no such contact influence.

Before this point can be decided, further knowledge is needed concerning the exact condition of the fibrin factors in living blood within the body. While the blood is flowing uncoagulated through the vessels, are all the three fibrin factors, paraglobulin, fibrinogen, and ferment, already present in plasma? Or are they all, or is one or two, absent, and if so is the appearance of them, or of one of then, in the plasma, the necessary invisible forerunner of coagulation? Our scanty information on this point may be summarized as follows:

1. In all spontaneously coagulable fluids white corpuscles are

---

[1] Brücke, op. cit.

[2] Lister, op. cit.

present, and the more abundant they are the more pronounced is the coagulation. Thus the spontaneously coagulating pericardial fluid is exceedingly rich in white corpuscles, and the clot formed seems under the microscope to be almost entirely composed of them, so completely do they hide the threads of fibrin. In the specimens of pericardial and of hydrocele fluid which do not coagulate spontaneously white corpuscles are absent, or at least scanty.

2. The deposition of fibrin round a thread if dipped into a coagulable fluid or drawn through a bloodvessel and left there, is preceded by an accumulation of white corpuscles. These cluster in greater numbers round the thread, and when the mass is examined under the microscope the corpuscles seem to serve as starting-points for the development of fibrin.

3. In the experiment of keeping blood fluid but coagulable in an excised jugular vein (of the horse), it is observed that when, as in course of time happens, the corpuscles have sunk to the bottom of the piece of vein, the upper layers of clear, corpuscle-free plasma, clot very feebly indeed when removed from the vein, whereas the lower layers, rich in corpuscles, clot most firmly.

4. When horse's blood is received from a bloodvessel into an ice-cold dilute solution of chloride of sodium, and the mixture kept just short of actually freezing, the whole mass of corpuscles sinks rapidly. It is then observed that the dilute plasma free from corpuscles clots feebly, whereas the lower layers of the same dilute plasma, containing all the corpuscles, give an abundant coagulation. Plasma of horse's blood may be diluted with twelve times its bulk of distilled water and filtered without coagulation setting in, provided that the whole operation is conducted at a temperature just short of freezing. The filtered diluted plasma, which is found to be exceedingly free from white corpuscles, these being left on the filter, clots feebly; the amount of fibrin it produces is less than half that obtainable from the same diluted plasma unfiltered.[1]

These facts point very decidedly to the conclusion that the white corpuscles have some share in bringing about coagulation; they moreover suggest that one or more of the fibrin factors have their source in the white corpuscles, and that coagulation is due to the passage of these elements from the body of the corpuscle into the plasma. The latter view is corroborated by the following facts:

5. In defibrinated blood or blood-serum a certain amount of fibrin-ferment is present. If, however, blood be treated with alcohol immediately on leaving the bloodvessels, very little ferment indeed is found to be present. The quantity is found to increase from

---

[1] A. Schmidt, op. cit.

the moment of leaving the vessels to the onset of coagulation. The fibrin-ferment, therefore, is developed from some part of the blood.

If horse's blood be kept at freezing temperature, the formation of ferment is arrested. If after the corpuscles have sunk, the undermost layers of the blood, containing almost exclusively red corpuscles, be removed, little or no ferment can be obtained from this portion, either when examined immediately, or after being allowed to clot at an ordinary temperature. In a portion taken from the upper layers (colorless plasma) of the same blood, while there is little or no ferment present before the coagulation of the specimen, there is abundance afterwards. If a similar portion of the same colorless plasma be filtered in the cold, the filtrate, which is nearly free from white corpuscles. is very poor in ferment both before and after the feeble and slow coagulation which the fluid undergoes; the material on the filter, consisting almost entirely of white corpuscles, is very rich in ferment. These facts seem to show that the fibrin-ferment which is present in blood-serum has its source, not in the red but in the white corpuscles, and that the passage of the ferment from the white corpuscle into the plasma is a precursor of coagulation.

6. The coagulation of filtered diluted plasma has been said to be both feeble and slow. The tardiness of the coagulation is due to the paucity of ferment; the feebleness, *i. e.*, the small quantity of fibrin produced, must be due to the scantiness of one or both of the fibrin factors. On adding paraglobulin the quantity of fibrin produced is the same as that given by the same quantity of unfiltered plasma. The filtered plasma is therefore deficient in paraglobulin. The material left on the filter is rich in paraglobulin. The inference which A. Schmidt draws from these facts, is that paraglobulin, like the fibrin-ferment, has its origin in the white corpuscles, but that fibrinogen is a normal constituent of the plasma.

7. If a drop of horse's plasma kept from coagulating by cold be examined under the microscope, it will be found to contain a large number of white corpuscles, mixed with which, according to A. Schmidt, are corpuscles of an intermediate character between white and red, *i. e.*, nucleated cells whose protoplasm is loaded with colored hæmoglobin granules. As the drop is watched, a large number of the white corpuscles and all the intermediate forms are seen to break up into a granular detritus. This breaking up of the white corpuscles is the precursor of coagulation, the threads of fibrins seeming to start from the remains of the corpuscles. Putting all these facts together, Schmidt concludes that when blood is shed, a number of white and intermediate corpuscles fall to pieces, by which act a quantity of fibrin-ferment and of paraglobulin is discharged into the plasma. These meeting there with the already present fibrinogen give rise to fibrin, and coagulation results. In other mammals coagulation, even at low temperatures, is too rapid to permit of the changes in the corpuscles being watched as satisfac-

torily as in the horse, but even in these evidences of the existence of intermediate forms may be met with.

This view excludes the red corpuscles, as far as mammals are concerned, from any direct share in coagulation. Whether this ultimately proves to be correct or not, there are facts which show that the nucleated red corpuscles of other vertebrates, which it must be remembered are the homologues of the intermediate forms, have a much clearer connection with the process. If the defibrinated blood of the frog or the bird be allowed to stand until the corpuscles have subsided, the latter, separated as much as possible from the serum, and treated with a considerable quantity of distilled water, yield a filtrate which coagulates spontaneously. That is to say, the water breaks up the red corpuscles and sets free a quantity of fibrin factors which otherwise would have remained latent. The amount of fibrin thus obtained may be considerably greater than the quantity originally appearing in the blood. It is worthy of notice, that in this case the corpuscle is the source, not only of the fibrin-ferment and paraglobulin, but also of the fibrinogen.

Accepting this view as approximately correct, the coagulation of shed blood may be referred to the circumstance, that even the comparatively slight changes which must take place in the blood on its leaving the vessels are sufficient to entail the death, and so the breaking up, of a number of the delicate white corpuscles. The formation of clots within the body is not so easy to explain. We are driven in these cases to suppose that injured and diseased spots or foreign bodies first attract, and then, as it were by irritation, cause the death of a certain number of corpuscles.

But in any case, if this view be admitted, it must also be granted that the bloodvessels do in some manner or other exercise a restraining influence on the formation of fibrin. For many of these corpuscles must, in the natural course of events, die and break up in the blood-stream, without causing coagulation. Further, defibrinated blood contains both fibrin-ferment and paraglobulin; it ought, therefore, when injected into vessels which already in the natural blood contain fibrinogen, to occasion a rapid and speedy general coagulation. This it does not. The coagulations which occur after transfusion of defibrinated blood are partial and uncertain. We might infer from this that the system had some power of rapidly either destroying ferment or changing the properties of paraglobulin. In support of this it has been stated that a quantity of fibrin-ferment injected into the system may be detected in the blood immediately afterwards (and is present then without causing coagulation), but speedily disappears. The loss of spontaneous coagulability in pericardial fluid might be attributed to an escape by migration of the white corpuscles away from the pericardial cavity, but this is inconsistent with the fact that in a majority of cases the ferment alone disappears while the paraglobulin remains. According to the facts given above, the white corpuscles in escaping would carry away both ferment and paraglobulin, leaving the fibrinogen alone. Moreover, it must be remembered that, as was mentioned on p. 34, Schmidt's view of the fibrinoplastic function of paraglobulin is not accepted by all investigators, and some authors,[1] while agreeing with Schmidt that the white corpuscles are the source of the fibrin factors, differ from him in so far that they believe that the fibrinogen as well as the fibrin-ferment arise from these bodies, paraglobulin according to them having nothing to do with the matter.

Lastly, we should remember that all the above, even if correct, is only an approximative solution. The coagulation of muscle-plasma is a coagulation in which white corpuscles cannot serve as dei ex machinâ; moreover, as we shall see later on, the rigor mortis of the white corpuscle itself is a coagulation; and for this its own subsequent disintegration cannot be regarded as an adequate cause.

SEC. 2. THE CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF BLOOD.

The average specific gravity of human blood is 1055, varying from 1045 to 1075 within the limits of health. The reaction of blood as it flows from the bloodvessels is found to be distinctly alkaline.

According to Zuntz,[2] the alkalescence of shed blood rapidly diminishes up to the onset of coagulation. Other observers have, however, maintained that the serum is more alkaline than the uncoagulated blood, or cruor.

Blood may, in general terms, be considered as consisting by weight of from one-third to somewhat less than one-half of corpuscles, the rest being plasma, the corpuscles being supposed to retain the amount of water proper to them.

Hoppe-Seyler gives, in 1000 parts of the venous blood of the horse: Corpuscles, 326; plasma, 674.[3] As will be seen in the succeeding sections, the number of corpuscles in a specimen of blood is found to vary considerably, not only in different animals and in different individuals, but in the same individuals at different times. [The proportion of corpuscles in the plasma of arterial blood exceeds that in the venous. In the venous blood the proportion varies considerably, it being the greatest in the splenic, and smallest in the hepatic veins.]

Conspicuous and striking as are the results of coagulation, massive as appears to be the clot which is formed, it must be remembered that by far the greater part of the clot consists of corpuscles. The amount by weight of fibrin required to bind together a number of corpuscles in order to form even a large firm clot is exceedingly small. Thus the average quantity by weight of fibrin in human blood is said to be .2 per cent., but the amount which can be obtained from a given quantity of plasma varies extremely; the variation being due not only to circumstances affecting the blood, but also to the method employed.

---

[1] Frédericq L. Recherches sur la coagulation du Sang. Bruxelles, 1877.

[2] Centralbt. f. med. Wiss., 1867, p. 801.

[3] For the various methods of determination, see Hoppe-Seyler, Hdb. Physiol. Chem. Analyse, p. 327.

[Chemical constituents of the blood-plasma according to **Herman** are:

"1. Water, about 90 per cent.

2. Proteids, viz.:

- *a.* Albumin (precipitated by heat) [paraglobulin].
- *b.* Sodium albuminate (serum-casein [serum-albumin] precipitated by acids).
- *γ.* The substances which form fibrin during coagulation of the blood.

The greater portion of the albuminoid substances consist of albumin; altogether, they form from 8–10 per cent. of the plasma.

3. Creatine, hypoxanthine, and urea; also at times hippuric and uric acids in very small quantities.

4. Grape sugar, in small quantities, varying according to the situation.

5. Fats, soaps, fatty acids, cholesterin, lecithin. The fat is partly dissolved by the soaps, and partly exists as an emulsion, but always in a small, though varying quantity (0.1–0.2. per cent.).

6. An odoriferous principle peculiar to each kind of blood.

7. A *yellow pigment.* (The serum also often contains hæmoglobin, but this may be only an impurity, caused by disintegrated blood-corpuscles.

8. Salts, with a preponderance of salts of sodium, chlorides, and carbonates; therefore more especially common salt and carbonate of sodium.

9. Gases.

With the exception of the bodies included under 2, the above named constituents form also the constituents of the serum—that is, of the liquid obtained after coagulation of the blood or plasma."]

The difficulties indeed of acquiring an exact knowledge of the chemical constitution of the plasma, which as we have seen from the foregoing section is probably undergoing changes from the moment of being shed, are very great; our information concerning the composition of the serum and of the corpuscles is much more trustworthy.

Composition of Serum.—In 100 parts of serum there are in round numbers

Water,	90 parts.
Proteid substances,	8 to 9 "
Fats, extractives,[1] and saline matters,	2 to 1 "

The proteid substances present in serum are: (1) The so-called *serum-albumin*, (2) paraglobulin. The paraglobulin, as has been stated in the preceding section, may be removed from the serum in several ways, viz., by passing carbonic acid through, or by cautiously adding dilute acetic acid to the diluted serum, or by saturating the undiluted serum with sodium chloride or magnesium sulphate. When this has been done a considerable quantity of proteid material is still left in the serum in the form known as serum-albumin, distinguished from paraglobulin, among other characters, by its being soluble in distilled water, and therefore not requiring for its solution the presence of a neutral salt.[2] When serum, after the cautious addition of acetic acid, in order to neutralize its alkalinity, is heated to about 75° C., both the serum-albumin and paraglobulin are thrown down in the form known as *coagulated proteids*, substances characterized by their great insolubility. This "coagulation" by heat of these and other proteids is, it perhaps need hardly be said, not to be confounded with the coagulation of plasma due to the appearance of fibrin.

Many authors have distinguished between the deposit caused by the passage of carbonic acid through the dilute serum, and the further precipitate of proteid material, which may be gained by the subsequent addition of dilute acetic acid. The former is generally fibrinoplastic, *i. e.*, will give rise to fibrin when added to fibrinogenous liquids. The latter will not do so, and has, on this account, and for the reason that it is, or speedily becomes insoluble in dilute neutral saline solution, been distinguished from paraglobulin under the name of *serum-casein or alkali albumin*.[3] The presence or absence of fibrinoplastic powers appears in the present state of our knowledge, at all events, to be an unsatisfactory character by which to distinguish one form of proteid from another, and it seems on the whole the best to recognize only one proteid as existing in serum besides serum-albumin, and to call it paraglobulin.[4] Hammarsten[5] finds that saturation with magnesium sulphate is a more trustworthy means of throwing down paraglobulin than the saturation with sodium chloride generally employed; and by the use of this method has come to the conclusion that the quantity of paraglobulin present in serum has been greatly underrated. It has hitherto been generally spoken of as existing in small quantities only, but Hammarsten has estimated it as varying in different animals from 1.788 per cent. (rabbit) to 4.565 per cent. (horse), the serum-albumin ranging from 4.436 per cent. (rabbit) to 2.677 per cent. (horse). In human blood he found 3.103 per cent. paraglobulin, and 4.516 per cent. serum-albumin.

---

[1] This word is used to denote soluble substances of varied origin and nature, occurring in small quantities, and therefore requiring to be "extracted" by special means. [See Analysis of Plasma.]

[2] For further details, see Appendix.

[3] See Appendix.

[4] Cf. Weyl, Zt. f. physiolog. Chem., i (1877), p. 72.

[5] Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 413.

The fats, which are scanty, except after a meal or in certain pathological conditions, are the neutral fats, stearin, palmitin, and olein, with a certain quantity of their respective alkaline soaps. Lecithin[1] and cholesterin occur in very small quantities only. Among the extractives present in serum may be put down all the nitrogenous and other substances which form the extractives of the body and of food, such as urea, kreatin, sugar, lactic acid, etc. A very large number of these have been discovered in the blood under various circumstances, the consideration of which must be left for the present. The peculiar odor of blood-serum is probably due to the presence of volatile bodies of the fatty acid series. The faint yellow color of serum is due to a special yellow pigment. The most characteristic and important chemical feature of the saline constitution of the serum is the preponderance of sodium salts over those of potassium. In this respect the serum offers a marked contrast to the corpuscles (see p. 49). Less marked, but still striking, is the abundance of chlorides and the poverty of phosphates in the serum as compared with the corpuscles. The salts may, in fact, briefly be described as consisting chiefly of sodium chloride, with small quantities of sodium carbonate, sodium sulphate, sodium phosphate, calcium phosphate, and magnesium phosphate.

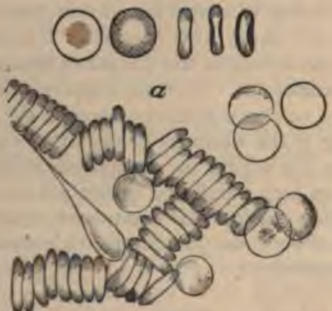
[**Physical Properties of the Red Corpuscles.**—When observed on the stage of a microscope, the red corpuscles appear as minute, circular, flattened, biconcavo-convex bodies, depressed in the centre, and surrounded by an elevated rounded margin. If seen a little beyond the focus of the instrument, the centre appears as a dark spot surrounded by an annular light ring; while if the corpuscle is brought a little within focus the converse is observed. This optical effect is due to the impossibility of getting both the biconcave and biconvex portions in focus at the same time. The appearance of the central dark spot was supposed to indicate the existence of a nucleus, but from what has already been said, this supposition must certainly be erroneous. These corpuscles are further observed to be soft, transparent, and ductile. By virtue of their elastic and ductile properties they are capable of adapting themselves to sudden changes in the direction of the blood-current, or to modifications in the calibre of the capillaries. Thus in their passage through capillary anastomoses they will often be observed to become bent nearly at right angles in going from one capillary to another; occasionally they become lodged in the middle of the blood-current on an intracapillary septum, and are bent nearly double, resuming again their original outline when dislodged. In the minutest vessels they will often appear elongated, so as to be enabled to pass through the constricted channel.

---

[1] For detailed accounts of the characters of the several chemical substances mentioned in this and succeeding chapters, consult the Appendix under the appropriate headings.

The color of the corpuscles if *en masse* is a bright red; if seen singly they appear of a pale amber color. After the blood is drawn from the vessels they exhibit a remarkable tendency to aggregate by approximating their sides, and thus forming irregular rows, which, from their appearance to rolls of money, have been termed *rouleaux*. If the amount of plasma be quite small, so that the corpuscles cannot be floated sufficiently to allow of the approximation of their entire sides, they will overlap or adhere by their edges.

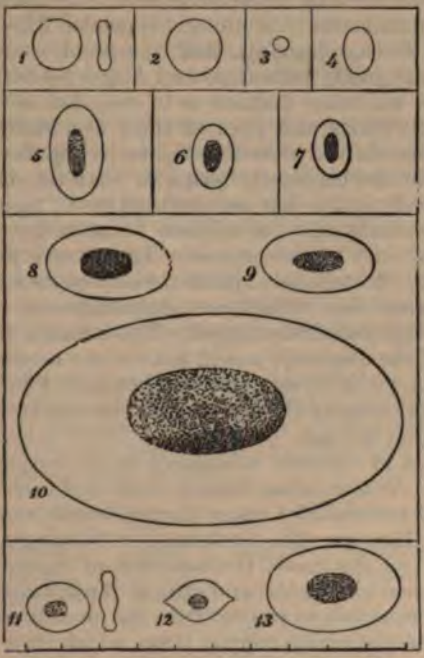
FIG. 5.



Red Corpuscles of Man. At *a*, the corpuscles are seen flat, on edge, and in rolls; the first two corpuscles show the central spot or concavity dark and light; next are shown the biconcave and concavo-convex forms; among the rolls, one corpuscle is drawn out, by virtue of its viscidity, and would resume its circular shape by virtue of its elasticity.

Another interesting fact observed after the blood is drawn, is that their outline becomes much changed by the develop-

FIG. 6.



All the Corpuscles here shown are drawn to the uniform scale, at the bottom of the wood-cut, of 1-4000th of an English inch, and the measurements are expressed in vulgar fractions of that inch. T. D. signifies transverse diameter; L. D. long diameter; S. D. short diameter.

		T. D.	L. D.	S. D.
	MAMMALIA.			
1.	Red Corpuscle of Man, seen on the flat surface and also on the edge; thickness 1-12400	1-3200	...	...
2.	" " " Elephant	1-2745	...	...
3.	" " " Musk Deer	1-12325	...	...
4.	" " " Dromedary, thickness 1-15337	...	1-3254	1-5921
	AVES.			
5.	" " " Ostrich	...	1-1649	1-3000
	" " " Nucleus of Ostrich	...	1-3200	1-9166
6.	" " " Pigeon	...	1-2314	1-3429
7.	" " " Humming-Bird	...	1-2666	1-4000
	REPTILIA.			
8.	" " " Crocodile	...	1-1231	1-2286
9.	" " " Python	...	1-1440	1-2400
10.	" " " Proteus	...	1-400	1-727
	PISCES.			
11.	" " " Perch	...	1-2461	1-3000
12.	" " " Pike	...	1-2000	1-3555
13.	" " " Shark	...	2-1143	1-1684

ment of small nodular projections on their edges. If the corpuscles are now allowed to be somewhat desiccated, they become shrunken and assume a stellate or crenated appearance.

In different animals these corpuscles vary both in size and form. In mammalia (excluding the camel tribe) they exist as circular disks, relatively small, possessing no nucleus. In aves they are oval, nucleated, and larger; while in reptilia they possess the same features as in aves, but are still larger. The different forms and sizes of these corpuscles are beautifully exhibited in the preceding figure. (Fig. 6.)

The size of the corpuscles seems to bear no relation to the size of the body, but, as has been pointed out by Milne-Edwards, there occasionally exists a relation between the size and the muscular activity of the animal. Thus it was found that in deer and other fleet-footed animals the corpuscles were relatively small; in amphibia, which are comparatively sluggish, the corpuscles were relatively larger. The relation then that the diameter of the corpuscle would bear to the muscular activity would be in an inverse ratio. It has also been found that the higher the scale of life is advanced the smaller the diameter of these bodies become.

The action of different substances on the corpuscles is very interesting. Water causes them to swell and become globular. Acetic acid and alkalies cause them to swell and become decolorized. They are also decolorized by freezing and thawing, or removal of the gases, the addition of chloroform, ether, alcohol, carbon bisulphide, and salts of the bile acids. Tannic acid causes a nodule to project from the circumference. Electric shocks temporarily crenate them, which state is followed by their becoming round and decolorized. In fever they are diminished in size, and may be restored by quinine or other antipyretics. Carbonic acid gas renders them biconvex. Sodium chloride causes numerous thorn-like projections to appear on their circumference. Boracic acid isolates a nucleated red mass from a colorless stroma.]

Composition of the Red Corpuscles.—The corpuscles contain less water than the serum. In 100 parts of wet corpuscles there are of

Water, ...	56.5 parts.
Solids, ...	43.5 "

The solids are almost entirely organic matter, the inorganic salts in the corpuscles amounting to less than 1 p. c. Of the organic matter again by far the larger part consists of hæmoglobin. In 100 parts of the dried organic matter of the corpuscles of human blood, Jüdell[1] found, as the mean of two observations,

Hæmoglobin, ...	90.54	Lecithin, ...	.54
Proteid Substances, .	8.67	Cholesterin, . . .	.25

The composition and properties of hæmoglobin will be considered in connection with respiration. Of the proteid substances which form the stroma of the non-nucleated red corpuscles this much may be said, that they belong to the globulin family. The amount of fibrinoplastic paraglobulin, and the exact nature of the other members of the group present, must be considered as yet undetermined. As regards the inorganic constituents, the corpuscles are distinguished by the relative abundance of the salts of potassium and of phosphates.

The distribution of inorganic salts in blood may be seen from the following analysis by C. Schmidt of the ash of plasma and corpuscles respectively (the *iron* which belongs almost exclusively to the hæmoglobin[2] of the red corpuscles and exists in mere traces only in the serum or plasma being omitted).

In 1000 Parts Corpuscles.		In 1000 Parts Plasma.	
Potassium chloride, . .	**3.679**	Potassium chloride, . .	.359
" sulphate, . .	.132	" sulphate, . .	.281
" phosphate, .	**2.343**		
Sodium " . .	.633	Sodium phosphate, . .	.271
Calcium " . .	.094	Calcium " . . .	.298
Magnesium " . .	.060	Magnesium " . . .	.218
Soda " . .	.341	Soda, ...	**1.532**
		Sodium chloride, . . .	**5.546**
	7.282		8.505

It must be remembered that the arrangement of bases and acids in such an analysis is an artificial one, and, moreover, that the ash does not represent the inorganic salts present in a natural condition in the blood. Thus, for instance, the phosphates in the ash are largely derived by oxidation from the phosphorus present in the lecithin, and the sulphates similarly from the sulphur of proteid substances. On the other hand, carbonic anhydride is absent from the above table, though carbonates undoubtedly exist in the serum.

---

[1] Hoppe-Seyler, Untersuch., iii, 390.

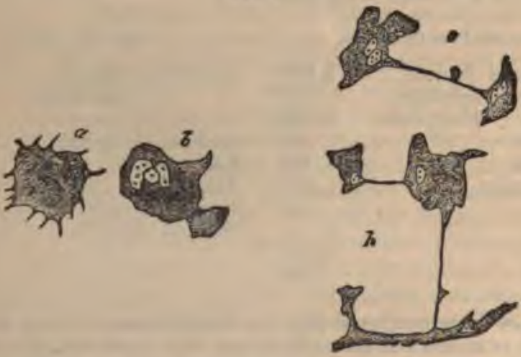
[2] Hæmoglobin contains .4 to .5 per cent. of Fe, and the quantity of iron in the blood will depend on the quantity of hæmoglobin.

Free soda is put down as a constituent of the ash, because in the ash the bases preponderate over the acids (even when carbonic anhydride is reckoned with them); this alone shows how little the salts of the ash correspond to those really present in the blood. Among the natural saline constituents of serum may be enumerated sodium chloride, calcic phosphate, which is enabled to exist in a state of solution in the alkaline blood by reason of its being combined in some way or other with the proteids, and sodium carbonate.

[**Properties of the White Corpuscles.**—The white corpuscles exist in the blood as free masses of protoplasm. They appear as globules with granular contents, frequently containing a nucleus or nuclei. As observed in the stage of the microscope they are irregularly shaped masses, and are remarkable for their pseudopod prolongations and movements, which, from their resemblance to those of the amœba, have been termed "the amœboid movements."

In the bloodvessels they sustain their globular form, and have a tendency to adhere to the sides of the vessels—a tendency directly opposite to that of the red corpuscles. They possess a very remarkable property of migrating through the intercellular interstices of the capillaries into the adjacent tissues. In this act of migration it is assumed that a prolongation is sent out, which, penetrating the intercellular substance of the vessel wall, continues to urge its way through, more and more, until the whole mass of protoplasm has passed; other

FIG. 7.



a. Common white corpuscle, soon after its withdrawal from the vessels (magnified). *b.* The surface become prickly. *h.* Protrusion of larger processes and apparition of nuclei.

observers assume that it is a kind of filtration, and still others, that the exit takes place through pre-existing openings (stomata) in the capillary walls.

Through the intervention of vital processes, the corpuscles, after reaching the extra-vascular tissues, may undergo such changes in the differentiation of the amœbiform units and differentiation of structure that they become component parts of the tissues, and we have "the manifestation of certain only of the fundamental properties of protoplasm, to the exclusion or complete subordination of others."

The corpuscles, as *free* protoplasm, possess all the fundamental properties of protoplasm. As *fixed* protoplasm they lose certain of the amœbiform units. Free protoplasm is automatic; fixed protoplasm is subservient to the influences exerted through the nervous system. This is probably true of all fixed protoplasm, and we find in rising the scale of life, that the more differentiated and fixed the protoplasm, the greater proportionately is the development of the nervous system.

The migration of these corpuscles is best seen in points of inflammation, where vast numbers are observed congregated in the bloodvessels and extra-vascular tissues. Professor Binz and other investigators have proven that quinine has the very interesting power of preventing this migration. He exposed the mesentery of a frog on the stage of a microscope, and found, that after a hypodermic injection of quinine, the migration was immediately checked. He also found that in areas of inflammation, when the migration was most active, it at once ceased after the administration of the drug.

In size they are somewhat larger than the red corpuscles, measuring about 11. mmm. in diameter. Although the red corpuscles vary exceedingly in size in different species of animals, the white corpuscles always retain about the same measurement.]

Composition of the White Corpuscles.—If it be permitted to infer the composition of the white corpuscles from that of the pus-corpuscles, which they so closely resemble, they would seem to consist of:[1]

1. Several proteid substances, viz., ordinary albumin, an albumin like that of muscle coagulating at 48°, an alkali albumin, a substance closely resembling myosin, and yet differing from it, and a peculiar form of proteid material soluble with difficulty in hydrochloric acid. The nuclei contain nuclein. See Appendix.

---

[1] Miescher. Hoppe-Seyler, Untersuchungen, iv, 441.

2. Lecithin, extractives, glycogen, and inorganic salts, there being in the ash a preponderance of potassium salts and of phosphates; after the death of the corpuscle the glycogen appears to be converted into sugar.

Both the corpuscles and the plasma (or serum) contain gases. These will be considered in connection with respiration.

The main facts of interest, then, in the chemical composition of the blood are as follows: The red corpuscles consist chiefly of hæmoglobin. The solids of serum consist chiefly of serum-albumin, the quantity of fibrin factors and of alkali albuminate being small. The serum or plasma contrasts with the corpuscles, inasmuch as the former contains chiefly chlorides and sodium salts, while the latter are richer in phosphates and potassium salts. The extractives of the blood are remarkable rather for their number and variability than for their abundance, the most constant and important being perhaps urea, kreatin, sugar, and lactic acid.

SEC. 3. THE HISTORY OF THE CORPUSCLES.

In the living body red blood-corpuscles are continually being destroyed, and new ones as continually being produced. The proofs of this are:

1. The number of the red corpuscles in the blood at any given time varies much.

The number of corpuscles in a specimen of blood is determined by mixing a small but carefully measured quantity of the blood with a large quantity of some indifferent fluid, and then actually counting the corpuscles in a known minimal bulk of the mixture.

This may be done either by Vierordt's[1] plan (somewhat modified by Gowers[2]), in which a minimal quantity of the diluted blood, measured in a fine capillary tube, is spread on a surface marked out in square areas, and the number of corpuscles in each square area counted under the microscope, or by Malassez,[3] in which the diluted blood is drawn into a capillary tube of flattened sides, and the number of corpuscles counted *in situ* in the tube by means of an ocular marked out in squares, the microscope being so adjusted that each area of the ocular corresponds to a certain capacity of the capillary tube.

---

[1] Grundriss der Physiologie, p. 9.
[2] Lancet, 1877, ii, p. 497.
[3] Archives de Physiologie, 1874, p. 32.

The average number of red corpuscles in human blood is about five millions in a cubic millimeter; in mammals generally it ranges from three to eighteen millions. The number varies in different parts of the vascular system, being greater in the capillaries and in the veins than in the arteries. It is increased by meals, and diminished by fasting; of course the number of corpuscles present in any given bulk of blood being merely the expression of the proportion of corpuscles to the amount of plasma, variations in the number counted might, and in certain cases are, probably, caused by an increase or decrease in the quantity of plasma, occurring while the actual number of corpuscles is stationary. But many of the variations cannot be so accounted for; they must be due to an increase or decrease of the total number of corpuscles in the body. After a very large reduction of the total number of red corpuscles, as by hæmorrhage or disease (anæmia), the normal proportion may be regained even within a very short time.

2. There are reasons for thinking that the urinary and bile pigments are derivatives of hæmoglobin. If this be so, an immense number of corpuscles must be destroyed daily (and replaced by new ones) in order to give rise to the amount of urinary and bile pigment discharged daily from the body.

3. When the blood of one animal is injected into the vessels of another (*ex. gr.*, that of a bird into a mammal), the corpuscles of the first may for some time be recognized in blood taken from the second; but eventually they wholly disappear. This, of course, is no strong evidence, since the destruction of foreign corpuscles might take place even though the proper ones had a permanent existence.

Origin of the Red Corpuscles.

In the embryo red corpuscles are produced:

1. From metamorphosis of certain mesoblastic cells in the vascular area. (Fig. 8.)

2. By division of the corpuscles thus formed.

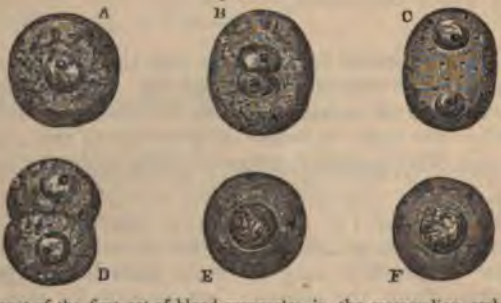
3. In a somewhat later stage, by the transformation of

nucleated white corpuscles, which probably arise in the liver and spleen, and pass thence into the blood. The cell-substance becomes impregnated with hæmoglobin, and the nucleus breaks up and disappears.

4. By the direct transformation of the protoplasm of undifferentiated connective tissue corpuscles,[1] the red corpuscle appearing first as a minute speck in the protoplasmic cell-substance, and subsequently enlarging very much after the fashion of an oil-globule.

In the adult, division of existing corpuscles is, at least, exceedingly rare, if it occurs at all. In the spleen pulp small nucleated colored corpuscles have been observed, similar to those met with in the embryo; transitional forms, showing the presence of hæmoglobin in the cell-substance and degeneration of the nucleus have been seen. In the wide capillaries of the red medulla of bones similar transitional forms have been observed, and they have also been noticed in circulating blood.

[Fig. 8.



Development of the first set of blood-corpuscles in the mammalian embryo. A. A dotted, nucleated embryo-cell in process of conversion into a blood-corpuscle; the nucleus provided with a nucleolus. B. A similar cell with a dividing nucleus; at C, the division of the nucleus is complete; at D, the cell also is dividing. E. A blood-corpuscle almost complete, but still containing a few granules. F. Perfect blood-corpuscle of embryonic life. These embryonic corpuscles are gradually replaced by the corpuscles of adult life and entirely disappear by the fourth or fifth month of fœtal life.]

According to Alex. Schmidt,[2] in living unchanged blood these forms are abundant; they break up and disappear, however, immediately that the blood is shed, unless special precautions (applications of cold, etc.) be used.

---

[1] Schäfer, Proc. Roy. Soc., xxii, 243.

[2] Op. cit.

From these several facts it is concluded that the red corpuscles take origin from colorless nucleated corpuscles similar to, if not identical with, the ordinary white corpuscles of the blood.

In the case of animals with nucleated red corpuscles the change consists chiefly in a transformation of the native protoplasm of the white corpuscles into hæmoglobin and stroma. In the case of animals with non-nucleated red corpuscles, most observers[1] agree in the opinion that the nucleus of the white corpuscle breaks up and disappears, so that the red corpuscle represents only the modified cell-substance of its progenitor. Wharton Jones, supported by Huxley, resting chiefly on the parallelism in size and form between the nuclei of the white corpuscles and the entire red corpuscles in different orders and families of mammals, concludes that the latter is in reality the naked colored nucleus of the former.

Hayem[2] describes the red corpuscles as arising from a kind of uncolored corpuscle quite distinct from the ordinary white corpuscles. To these, which have been overlooked on account of their great transparency, and which are as numerous, or even more numerous than the ordinary white corpuscles, he proposes to give the name of *hæmatoblasts.*

There are reasons for believing that not only may the number of red corpuscles vary, but also the quantity of hæmoglobin present in the individual corpuscles differ under different circumstances. Malassez,[3] by comparing the tint of a quantity of blood the numbers of whose corpuscles had been estimated, with that of a graduated solution of picrocarminate of ammonia, has been able to estimate the amount of hæmoglobin present in the corpuscles under different circumstances. He finds that in anæmia the poverty of the corpuscles in hæmoglobin is even more striking than the scantiness of the corpuscles, and is sooner affected by the administration of iron.

Origin of White Corpuscles.

That the white corpuscles are continually being removed is evident from the fact that they vary extremely in number at different times and under various circumstances. They are very largely increased by taking food. Thus during fasting they may be seen in a drop of blood to bear to the red the proportion of 1 in 800 or 1000. After a meal this proportion rises to 1 in 300 or 400.

---

[1] Kölliker, Neumann, Schmidt.

[2] Compt. Rend., t. 85 (1877), p. 1285.

[3] Archives de Physiologie, 1877, p. 1. Cf. also Hayem, ibid., p. 649.

The fact that in the lymphatic glands, and other adenoid structures, corpuscles, similar to if not identical with white blood-corpuscles, are to be seen of very various sizes, many with double nuclei, and some, indeed, actually dividing into two corpuscles,[1] suggests that these organs are the birthplaces of the white corpuscles. The lymph is continually pouring into the blood a crowd of white corpuscles, which, for the most part, make their appearance in the lymph-vessels after the latter have traversed the lymphatic glands. And this view is further supported by the fact that in the disease leucæmia, where the white corpuscles may be so abundant as to number as many as 1 to 10 red, the spleen, the lymphatic glands, and other forms of adenoid tissue, are enlarged. (The phenomena are, however, capable of a converse interpretation, viz., that the white corpuscles, failing to become converted into red corpuscles, are crowded into the lymphatic organs.)

[Probably many of the corpuscles found in the lymphatic vessels and glands are truly nothing but white corpuscles, for we have already learned that the latter possesses the power of migrating through the walls of the capillaries, and they therefore must find their way into the diaplastic spaces (spaces existing between the commencements of the lymphatic vessels and capillaries) and from thence into the lymphatics.]

At the same time it is open for us to suppose that any proliferating tissue may give rise to new corpuscles; and Klein[2] states that he has seen them budded off from the reticulum of the spleen. The white corpuscles have also been observed to divide.[3]

We may conclude, therefore, that the white corpuscles probably arise, by division chiefly, from the leucocytes, of adenoid tissue, but that other sources may exist.

Fate of the White Corpuscles.

As we have seen, it is extremely probable that a large number of the white corpuscles end by giving birth to red corpuscles; but it is only possible that a not inconsiderable number die in the blood and are there broken up and disappear.

On the other hand we know that in an inflamed area the white corpuscles migrate in large numbers into the extra-vascular portions of the tissues, and there are reasons for thinking that not only the pus-corpuscles and "exudation" corpuscles, which are the common products of inflammation, but even the new tissue elements (connective tissue cells and fibrins, blood-vessels, etc.), which make their appearance as the result of the so-called "productive" inflammations, are the descendants, immediate or remote, of such migratory corpuscles. But a discussion of this question would lead us too far away from the purpose of this work.

---

[1] Ranvier, Traité d'histologie, p. 161.
[2] Q. J. Micros. Sci., xv (1875), p. 370.
[3] Klein, Hdb. Phys. Lab., p. 8.

[A beautiful experiment, illustrating the formation of pathological cells from normal corpuscular elements, is shown by injecting into the posterior lymph sac of a frog some extraneous matter, such as dust, with the result of the production of giant cells in which are found imbedded particles of the foreign matter.]

Fate of the Red Corpuscles.

In the spleen we find, as Kölliker long since pointed out, large protoplasmic cells, in which are included a number of red corpuscles; and these red corpuscles may be observed in various stages of apparent disintegration. It is probable, therefore, that the spleen is the grave of many of the red corpuscles.

Since serum of fresh blood contains no dissolved hæmoglobin, it is clear that the hæmoglobin of the broken-up corpuscles must speedily be transformed into some other body. Into what other body? In old blood clots (as in those of cerebral hæmorrhage) there are frequently found minute crystals of a body which has received the name *hæmatoiden.* There can be no doubt that the hæmatoiden of these clots is a derivative from the hæmoglobin of the escaped blood. We know[1] that hæmoglobin contains, besides a proteid residue, a residue not proteid in nature, called hæmatin. We know, further, that hæmatin may lose the iron which it contains (and which appears to be loosely attached), and yet remain a colored body. So that there is no difficulty in the passage from the proteid and iron containing hæmoglobin to the proteid-and-iron free hæmatoidin. But hæmatoidin, not only in the form and appearance of its crystals, but also, as far as can be ascertained by the analysis of the small quantities at disposal, in its chemical composition, is identical with *bilirubin*, the primary pigment of bile. Moreover, the injection of hæmoglobin, or of dissolved red corpuscles, into the vessels of a living animal, gives rise to a large amount of bile pigment in the urine, and at the same time increases enormously the relative quantity of *bilirubin* in the bile. Thus though no one has yet succeeded in producing *bilirubin* artificially from hæmoglobin, facts point very strongly to the view that the red corpuscles are used up to supply bile pigment.

---

[1] See chapter on Changes of Blood in Respiration.

It must be added, however, that, according to Preyer,[1] the spectra of hæmatoidin and bilirubin are quite distinct, and that many observers have failed to obtain bile pigment in the urine as the result of injection of a solution of hæmoglobin. Blood clots frequently contain, besides or in place of hæmatoidin, a yellow substance named *lutein*, which is certainly distinct from bilirubin. *Lutein* is the substance which gives to corporea lutea their characteristic color.

Our knowledge of urinary pigments is so imperfect that little can be said as to their relation to hæmoglobin. We cannot at present definitely trace the normal urinary pigment back to hæmoglobin, however probable such a source may seem; but Jaffé finds in many urines, especially those of fever patients, a body called *urobilin*, identical with *hydrobilirubin* obtained from bilirubin by reduction with sodium amalgam.[2]

SEC. 4. THE QUANTITY OF BLOOD, AND ITS DISTRIBUTION IN THE BODY.

The total quantity of blood present in an animal body is estimated in the following way. As much blood as possible is allowed to escape from the vessels; this is measured directly. The vessels are then washed out with water or normal saline solution, and the washings carefully collected, mixed, and measured. A known quantity of blood is diluted with water or normal saline solution until it possesses the same tint as a measured specimen of the washings. This gives the amount of blood (or rather of hæmoglobin) in the measured specimen, from which the total quantity in the whole washings is calculated. Lastly, the whole body is carefully minced and washed free from blood. The washings are collected and filtered, and the amount of blood in them estimated as before by comparison with a specimen of diluted blood. The quantity of blood in the two washings, together with the escaped blood, gives the total quantity of blood in the body. Estimated in this way, the total quantity of blood in the human body may be said to be about $\frac{1}{13}$th of the body weight.

---

[1] Die Blut-Krystalle.

[2] Cf. Liebermann, Pflüger's Archiv, xi (1875), p. 181; Disqué, Ztschr. f. Physiol. Chem., ii (1878), p. 259.

There are several sources of error in the above method. One is that venous blood has less coloring power than arterial blood. This has been met by Gscheidlen by poisoning the animal with carbonic oxide, by which all the hæmoglobin is reduced to one state, and therefore has throughout the same coloring power. The quantity of hæmoglobin in the muscular fibre itself is a source of error, but probably a very slight one. The difficulty of getting a clear infusion of the minced tissues is more serious. According to Ranke[1] the total blood in the body of a rabbit amounts to $\frac{1}{18}$th of the body weight, in a dog to $\frac{1}{15}$th, in a cat to $\frac{1}{21}$st, in a frog to $\frac{1}{15}$th.

The blood[2] is distributed as follows in round numbers:

About one-fourth in the heart, lungs, large arteries, and veins.
“ “ “ liver.
“ “ “ skeletal muscles.
“ “ “ other organs.

Since in the heart and great bloodvessels the blood is simply in transit, without undergoing any great changes (and in the lungs, as far as we know, the changes are limited to respiratory changes), it follows that the changes which take place in passing through the liver and skeletal muscles far exceed those which take place in the rest of the body.

Ranke found the distribution to be as follows:

		IN THE VISCERA.		IN THE CARCASE.	
		Per cent. of total blood.	Per cent. of organ weight.	Per cent. of total blood.	Per cent. of organ weight.
Rabbit	Living, .	63.4	18.0	36.6	2.7
	Dead, rigid,	61.23	20.6	38.77	2.7
Dog	. . .	59.0	24.0	41.0	3.4

In the various organs of the rabbit:

Per cent. of total blood.	
Spleen, ...	.23
Brain and cord, . . .	1.24
Kidneys, ...	1.63
Skin, ...	2.10
Intestines, ...	6.30
Bones, etc., ...	8.24
Heart, lungs, great bloodvessels, ...	22.76
Skeletal muscles, . . .	29.20
Liver, ...	29.30

Per cent. of organ weight.	
Skin, ...	1.07
Bones, ...	2.36
Alimentary Canal, . .	3.46
Muscles, ...	5.14
Brain and cord, . . .	5.52
Kidneys, ...	11.86
Spleen, ...	12.50
Liver, ...	28.71
(Heart, lungs, and great vessels, ...	63.11).

---

[1] Blut-vertheilung, 1871.

[2] Ranke, op. cit.

CHAPTER II.

THE CONTRACTILE TISSUES.

The greater number of the movements of the complex animal body are carried on by means of the skeletal striated muscles. A skeletal muscle when subjected to certain influences contracts, *i. e.*, shortens, bringing its two ends nearer together; and the shortening acting upon various bony levers or by help of other mechanical arrangements, produces a movement of some part of the body. The striated tissue of which the skeletal muscles are composed is the chief contractile tissue. The peculiar muscular tissue of the heart is another contractile tissue; under certain influences the fibres into which it is arranged shorten, and thus give rise to the beat of the heart. A similar shortening or contraction of the fusiform fibre-cells of plain muscular tissue, gives rise to movements or to changes of calibre, etc., of the alimentary canal, the urinary bladder, the uterus, the arteries, and the like.

At first sight "contraction" of any one of these forms of differentiated muscular tissue seems wholly unlike an amœboid movement of an amœba or of a white corpuscle of the blood. And yet the transition from the one to the other is very slight. A typical amœba may be regarded as spherical in form, and when it is executing its movements the pseudopodic bulging of its protoplasm may be seen to occur now on this now on that part of its circumference, and to take now this and now that direction. The fibre-cell of plain muscular tissue is a nucleated protoplasmic mass of a distinctly fusiform shape, and when it executes its movements, *i. e.*, contracts, the bulging of its protoplasm is always a lateral bulging in a direction at right angles to the long axis of the fibre-cell. Since as we shall see there is no change of total bulk, this thickening of the fibre by means of the lateral bulging is necessarily accompanied by a shortening of its length. The contraction of muscular tissue is in fact a limited and definite amœboid movement in which intensity and rapidity are gained at the expense of variety.

Besides these movements which are carried out in the body by means of differentiated muscular tissue, there are others brought about by the peculiar structures known as cilia, among which we may include the motile tails of spermatozoa; and ordinary amœboid movements are not wanting, being conspicuously shown by the so-called migrating cells. We may include both these under the heading of contractile tissues.

Of all these various forms of contractile tissue the skeletal striated muscles, on account of the more complete development of their functions, will be better studied first; the others, on account of their very simplicity, are, in many respects, less satisfactorily understood.

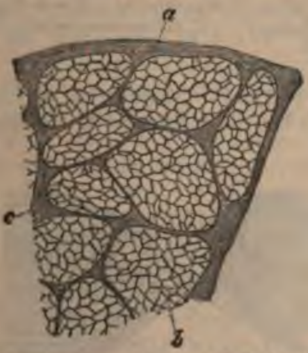
All the ordinary striated skeletal muscles are connected with nerves. We have no reason for thinking that their contractility is called into play, under normal conditions, otherwise than by the agency of nerves.

Muscles and nerves being thus so closely allied, and having besides so many properties in common, it will conduce to clearness and brevity if we treat them together.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Skeletal or Voluntary Muscles.*

The skeletal muscles compose that portion of the body which is commonly termed flesh. They are made up of bundles, which are subdivided through several gradations into smaller bundles. These in their turn consist of *secondary* fasciculi, closely bound together, and inclosed in a fibro-areolar tissue, called the "internal perimysium." (Fig. 9, c.) The

FIG. 9.

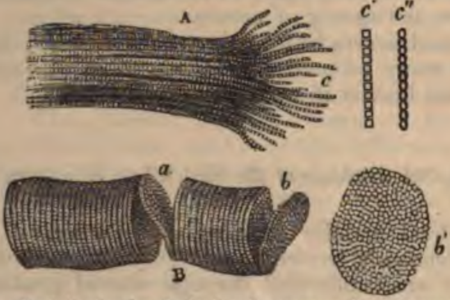


Transverse section of a portion of a muscle (magnified), showing smaller bundles with secondary and primitive fasciculi. *a*, external perimysium; *c*, internal perimysium.

internal perimysium is formed by prolongations from the "external perimysium," which envelops the muscle. (Fig. 9, *a*.)

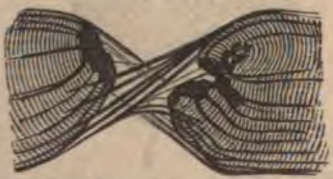
These fasciculi are made up of a number of *primitive* fasciculi or *fibres*, placed parallel with each other, inclosed and separated by a delicate structureless membrane called the sarcolemma. They are more or less flattened on their sides owing to the pressure of adjacent fibres. These fibres, which are the contractile substance of the organ, are, in their turn, composed of numerous long, cylindriform, threadlike bodies called *fibrillæ* (Fig. 10), which have distinct longitudinal lines of separation, and are marked by transverse striæ, giving them an appearance which has been likened to a number of strings of beads closely bound together. The transverse striæ mark the divisions between the cells composing the fibrillæ. These cells, which are called the "sarcous elements," are rectangular in

FIG. 10.



A, a muscular fibre showing longitudinal and transverse lines of separation; *c*, individual fibrillæ, which have been separated in the longitudinal lines; B, showing the transverse lines of separation; *b*′, plate detached and more highly magnified, showing sarcous elements more distinctly; *c*′, *c*″, sarcous elements more highly magnified, showing different appearances.

FIG. 11.



Muscular fibre torn across; the sarcolemma still connecting the two parts of the fibre.—After TODD and BOWMAN.

outline, and possess a dark centre, which indicates the presence of a nucleus.

When these fibres are torn, the sarcolemma by virtue of its greater tenacity, often remains intact, and forms a delicate transparent tube, in which are inclosed the ruptured ends of the fibre. (Fig. 11.)

When the muscular fibre is attached to the skin or mucous membrane, it is continuous with the areolar tissue; when attached to a tendon, the sarcolemma becomes joined to the tissue of the tendon, and the fibre ends in a conical extremity, which is received into a depression in the tendon, or else is connected to an adjoining fibre by means of the sarcolemma.

The skeletal muscles are abundantly supplied with nerves and bloodvessels. The nerves are principally supplied by the cerebro-spinal system. The capillaries form elongated meshes outside of the sarcolemma (see Fig. 43)].

SEC. 1. THE PHENOMENA OF MUSCLE AND NERVE.

Muscular and Nervous Irritability.

The skeletal muscles of a frog, the brain and spinal cord of which have been destroyed, do not exhibit any spontaneous movements or contractions, even though the nerves be otherwise quite intact. Left untouched, the whole body may decompose without any contraction of any of the muscles having been witnessed. Neither the skeletal muscles nor the nerves distributed to them possess any power of automatic action.

If, however, a muscle be laid bare and be more or less violently disturbed, if for instance it be pinched, or touched with a hot wire, or brought in contact with certain chemical substances, or subjected to the action of galvanic currents, it will contract whenever it is thus disturbed. Though not possessing any automatism, the muscle is (and continues for some time after the general death of the animal to be) *irritable*. Though it remains quite quiescent when left untouched, its powers are then dormant only, not absent. These require to be roused or "stimulated" by some change or disturbance in order that they may manifest themselves. The substances or agents which are thus able to evoke the activity of an irritable muscle are spoken of as *stimuli*.

But to produce a contraction in a muscle the stimulus need not be applied directly to the muscle; it may be applied indirectly by means of the nerve. Thus if the trunk of a nerve be pinched, or subjected to sudden heat, or dipped in certain chemical substances, or acted upon by various galvanic currents, contractions are seen in the muscles to which branches of the nerve are distributed.

The nerve, like the muscle, is irritable, it is thrown into a state of activity by a stimulus; but unlike the muscle it does not itself contract. The changes set up in the nerve by the stimulus are not visible changes of form; but that changes of some kind or other are set up and propagated along the nerve down to the muscle is shown by the fact that the muscle contracts when a part of the nerve, even at some distance from itself, is stimulated. Both nerve and muscle are irritable, but only the muscle is contractile, *i. e.*, manifests its irritability by a contraction. The nerve manifests its irritability by transmitting along itself, without any visible alteration of form, certain molecular changes set up by the stimulus. We shall call these changes thus propagated along a nerve, "nervous impulses."

We have stated above that the muscle is irritable in the sense that it may be thrown into contractions by stimuli applied directly to itself. But it might fairly be urged that the contractions so produced are in reality due to the fact that, although the stimulus is apparently applied directly to the muscle, it is, after all, the fine nerve branches, so abundant in the muscle, which are actually stimulated. The following facts, however, go far to prove that the muscular fibres themselves are capable of being directly stimulated without the intervention of any nerves. When a frog (or other animal) is poisoned with urari, the nerves may be subjected to the strongest stimuli without causing any contractions in the muscles to which they are distributed; yet even ordinary stimuli applied directly to the muscle readily cause contractions. If before introducing the urari into the system a ligature be passed underneath the sciatic nerve in one leg, for instance the right, and drawn tightly round the whole leg to the exclusion of the nerve, it is evident that the urari, when injected into the back of the animal, will gain access to the right sciatic nerve above the ligature, but not below, while it will have free access to the whole left sciatic. If, as soon as the urari has taken effect, the two sciatic nerves be stimulated, no movement of the left leg will be produced by stimulating the left sciatic, whereas strong contractions of the muscles of the right leg below the ligature will follow stimulation of the right sciatic, whether the nerve be stimulated above or below the ligature. Now since the upper parts of both sciatics are equally exposed to the action of the poison, it is clear that the failure of the left nerve to cause contraction is not attributable to any change having taken place in the upper portion of the nerve, else why should not the right, which has in its upper portion been equally exposed to the action of the poison, also fail? Evidently the poison acts on some parts of the nerve lower down. If a single muscle be removed from the circulation (by ligaturing its bloodvessels), previous to the poisoning with urari, that muscle will contract when any part of the nerve going to it is stimulated, though no other muscle in the body will contract when its nerve is stimulated. Here the whole nerve right down to the muscle has been exposed to the action of the poison; and yet it has lost none of its power over the muscle. On the other hand, if the muscle be allowed to remain in the body, and so be exposed to the action of the poison, but the nerve be divided high up and the lower part connected with the muscle gently lifted up and kept separate from the rest of the tissues of the body before the urari is introduced into the system, so as to be protected from the influence of the poison, it is found that stimulation of the nerve produces no contractions in the muscle, though stimuli applied directly to the muscle at once cause it to contract. From these facts it is clear that urari poisons the ends of the nerve within the muscle long before it affects the trunk, and it is exceedingly probable that it is the very extreme ends of the nerves (possibly the end plates, for urari poisoning, at least when profound, causes a slight but yet distinctly recognizable effect in the microscopic appearance of these structures)[1] which are affected. The phenomena of urari poisoning, therefore, go far to prove that muscles are capable of being made to contract by stimuli applied directly to the muscular fibres themselves; and there are other facts which support this view.

This question of "independent muscular irritability" was once thought to be of importance. In old times, the swelling of a muscle during contraction was held to be caused by the animal spirits descending into it along the nerves; and when the doctrine of "spirits" was given up, it was still taught that the vital activity of the muscle was something bestowed upon it by the action of the nerve, and not properly belonging to itself. We owe to Haller the establishment of the truth, that the contraction of the muscle is a manifestation of the muscle's own energy, excited it may be by nervous action, but not caused by it. Haller spoke of the muscle as possessing a *vis insita*, while he called the nervous action, which excites contraction, the *vis nervosa*. He used the word irritability as almost synonymous with contractility, a meaning which is still adopted by many authors. In this work we have used it in the wider sense, first employed by Glisson, which includes other manifestations of energy than the change of form which constitutes a contraction. Since Haller's time the question whether muscles possess an independent irritability has shifted its ground; it now means, not whether muscles are irritable or not, but simply whether their irritability can be called into action in other ways than by the mediation of nerves. In addition to the urari argument just described, we may state that portions of muscular fibres, entirely destitute of nerves, such as the lower end of the sartorius of the frog, may be stimulated directly, with contractions as a result; that the chemical substances which act as stimuli when applied directly to muscles, differ somewhat from those which act as stimuli to nerves; and lastly, that a portion of muscle fibre quite free from nerves may be seen under the microscope to contract. In the succeeding portions of this work abundant evidence will be afforded that the activity of contractile protoplasm is in no way essentially dependent on the presence of nervous elements.

---

[1] Kühne, Untersuch. Physiol. Inst. Heidelberg, Bd. ii (1878), p. 187.

The Phenomena of a Simple Muscular Contraction.

If the far end of the nerve of a muscle-nerve preparation (the gastrocnemius for instance of the frog with the attached sciatic nerve dissected out) (Figs. 12 and 13) be laid on the electrodes of an induction-machine, the passage of a single induction-shock (either making or breaking) will produce no visible change in the nerve, but the muscle will give a short sharp contraction, *i. e.,* will for an instant shorten itself, becoming thicker the while, and then return to its previous condition. If one end of the muscle be attached to a lever, while the other is fixed, the lever will by its movement indicate the extent and duration of the shortening. If the point of the lever be brought to bear on some rapidly travelling surface on which it leaves a mark (being for this purpose armed with a pen and ink if the surface be plain paper, or with a bristle or needle if the surface be smoked glass or paper), so long as the muscle remains at rest the lever will describe an even line. When, however, a contraction takes place, as when a single induction-shock is sent through the nerve, some such curve as that shown in Fig. 14 will be described, the lever rising with the shortening of the muscle, and descending as the muscle returns to its natural length. This is known as the "muscle-curve." In order to make the "muscle-curve" complete, it is necessary to mark on the recording surface the exact time at which the induction-shock is sent into the nerve,

FIG. 12.

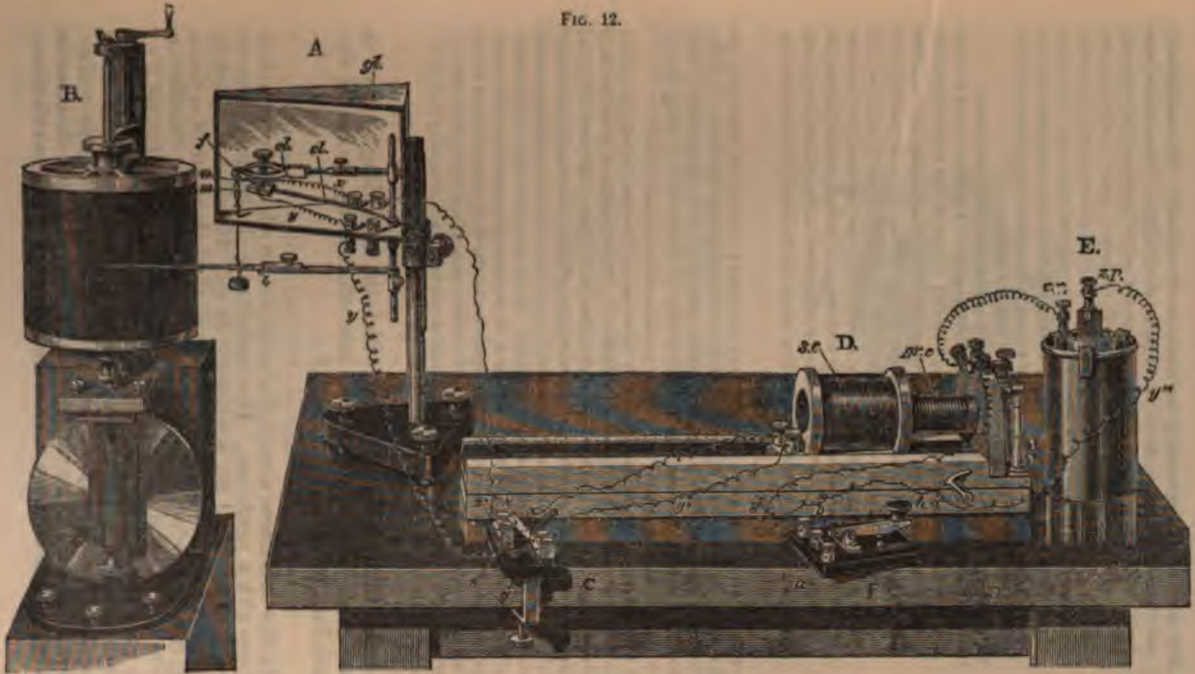


Diagram Illustrating Apparatus arranged for Experiments with Muscle and Nerve.
[For a side view of a portion of this apparatus, see Fig. 118.]

A. The moist chamber containing the muscle-nerve preparation. (The muscle-nerve and electrode-holder are shown on a larger scale in Fig. 13.) The muscle *m*, supported by the clamp *cl*, which firmly grasps the end of the femur *f*, is connected by means of the S hook *s* and a thread with the lever *l*, placed below the moist chamber. The nerve *n*, with the portion of the spinal column *n'* still attached to it, is placed on the electrode-holder *el*, in contact with the wires x, y. The whole of the interior of the glass case *gl*, is kept saturated with moisture, and the electrode-holder is so constructed that a piece of moistened blotting-paper may be placed on it without coming into contact with the nerve.

B. The revolving cylinder bearing the smoked paper on which the lever writes.

C. Du Bois-Reymond's key arranged for short-circuiting. The wires x and y of the electrode-holder are connected through binding screws in the floor of the moist chamber with the wires x', y', and these are secured in the key, one on either side. To the same key are attached the wires x'' y'' coming from the secondary coil *s. c.* of the induction-machine *D.* This secondary coil can be made to slide up and down over the primary coil *pr. c.*, with which are connected the two wires x''' and y'''. x''' is connected directly with one pole, for instance the copper pole *c. p.* of the battery *E.* y''' is carried to a binding screw *a* of the Morse key *F*, and is continued as y^{iv} from another binding screw *b* of the key to the zinc pole *z. p.* of the battery.

Supposing everything to be arranged, and the battery charged, on depressing the handle *ha*, of the Morse key *F*, a current will be made in the primary coil *pr. c.*, passing from *c. p.* through x''' to *pr. c.*, and thence through y''' to *a*, thence to *b*, and so thorough y^{iv} to *z. p.* On removing the finger from the handle of *F*, a spring thrusts up the handle, and the primary circuit is in consequence immediately broken.

At the instant that the primary current is either made or broken, an induced current is for the instant developed in the secondary coil *s. c.* If the cross-bar *k*, in the Du Bois-Reymond's key be raised (as shown in the thick line in the figure), the wires x'', x', x, the nerve between the electrodes, and the wires y, y', y'', form the complete secondary circuit, and the nerve consequently experiences a making or breaking induction-shock whenever the primary current is made or broken. If the cross-bar of the Du Bois-Reymond key be shut down, as in the dotted line *k'* in the figure, the resistance of the cross-bar is so slight compared with that of the nerve and of the wires going from the key to the nerve, that the whole secondary (induced) current passes from x'' to y'' (or from y'' to x'') along the cross-bar, and none passes into the nerve. The nerve being thus short-circuited, is not affected by any changes in the current.

and also to note the speed at which the recording surface is travelling. These points are best effected by means of the pendulum myograph. (Fig. 15.)

In this instrument a smoked-glass plate, on which a lever writes, swings with a pendulum. The pendulum with the glass plate attached being raised up, is suddenly let go. It swings of course to the opposite side, the glass plate travels through an arc of a circle, and, the lever being stationary, the point of the lever describes an arc on the glass plate. The rate at which the glass plate travels, *i. e.*, the time it takes for the lever-point to describe a line of a given length on the glass plate, may be calculated from the length of the pendulum, but it is simpler and easier to place a vibrating tuning-fork immediately under the point of the lever. If the vibrations of the tuning-fork are known, then the number of vibrations which are marked on the plate between any two points on the line described by the lever gives the time taken by the lever in passing from one point to the other. An easy arrangement permits the exact time at which the shock is sent through the nerve to be marked on the line of the lever. To avoid too many markings on the plate, the pendulum after describing an arc is caught by a spring catch on the opposite side.

FIG. 13.

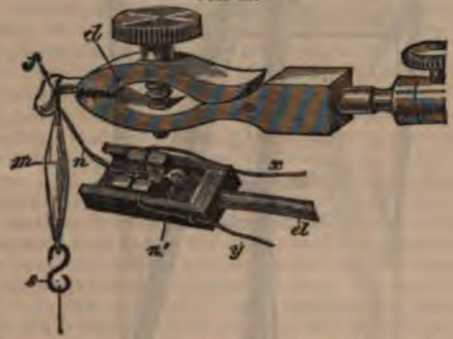
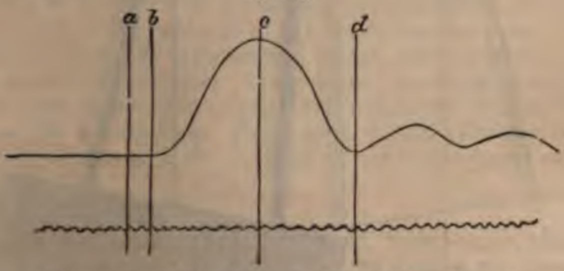


FIG. 13.—The muscle-nerve preparation of Fig. 12, with the clamp, electrodes, and electrode-holder, are here shown on a larger scale. The letters as in Fig. 12. The form of electrode-holder figured is a convenient one for general purposes, but many other forms are in use.

FIG. 14.

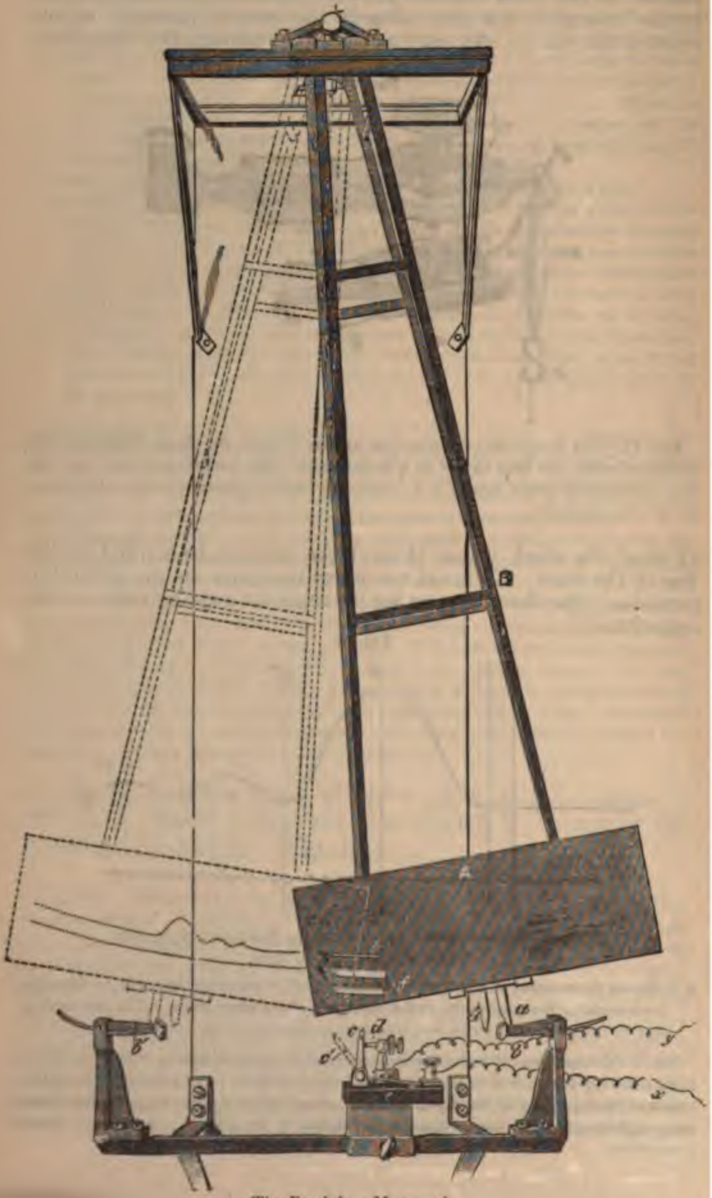


A Muscle-Curve obtained by means of the Pendulum Myograph.
To be read from left to right.

a indicates the moment at which the induction-shock is sent into the nerve; *b* the commencement, *c* the maximum, and *d* the close of the contraction. The two smaller curves succeeding the larger one are due to oscillations of the lever.

Below the muscle-curve is the curve drawn by a tuning-fork making 180 double vibrations a second, each complete curve representing therefore $\frac{1}{180}$ of a second. It will be observed that the plate of the myograph was travelling more rapidly towards the close than at the beginning of the contraction, as shown by the greater length of the vibration curves.

FIG. 15.



The Pendulum Myograph.

The figure is diagrammatic, the essentials only of the instrument being shown. The smoked-glass plate *A* swings on the "seconds" pendulum *B* by means of carefully adjusted bearings at *C*. The contrivances by which the glass plate can be removed and replaced at pleasure are not shown. A second glass plate so arranged that the first glass plate may be moved up and down without altering the swing of the pendulum is also omitted. Before commencing an experiment the pendulum is raised up (in the figure to the right), and is kept in that position by the tooth *a* catching on the spring-catch *b*. On depressing the catch *b* the glass plate is set free, swings into the new position indicated by the dotted lines, and is held in that position by the tooth *a′* catching on the catch *b′*. In the course of its swing the tooth *a′* coming into contact with the projecting steel rod *c*, knocks it on one side into the position indicated by the dotted line *c′*. The rod *c* is an electric continuity with the wire *x* of the primary coil of an induction-machine. The screw *d* is similarly in electric continuity with the wire *y* of the same primary coil. The screw *d* and the rod *c* are armed with platinum at the points in which they are in contact, and both are insulated by means of the ebonite block *e*. As long as *c* and *d* are in contact the circuit of the primary coil to which *x* and *y* belong is closed. When in its swing the tooth *a′* knocks *c* away from *d*, at that instant the circuit is broken, and a "breaking" shock is sent through the electrodes connected with the secondary coil of the machine, and so through the nerve. The lever *l*, the end only of which is shown in the figure, is brought to bear on the glass plate, and when at rest describes a straight line, or more exactly an arc of a circle of large radius. The tuning-fork *f*, the ends only of the two limbs of which are shown in the figure placed immediately below the lever, serves to mark the time.

A complete muscle-curve, such as that shown in Fig. 14, taken from the gastrocnemius of a frog, teaches us the following facts:

1. That although the passage of the induced current from electrode to electrode is practically instantaneous, its effect, measured from the entrance of the shock into the nerve to the return of the muscle to its natural length after the shortening, takes an appreciable time. In the figure, the whole curve from *a* to *d* takes up about the same time as eighteen double vibrations of the tuning-fork. Since each double vibration represents $\frac{1}{180}$ of a second, the duration of the whole curve was $\frac{1}{10}$ second.

2. In the first portion of this period, from *a* to *b*, there is no visible change, no shortening of the muscle, no raising of the lever.

3. It is not until *b*, that is to say after the lapse of $\frac{2\frac{1}{4}}{180}$ *i. e.*, about $\frac{1}{77}$ second, that the shortening begins. The shortening as shown by the curve is at first slow, but soon becomes more rapid, and then slackens again until it reaches a maximum at *c*; the whole shortening occupying about $\frac{1}{20}$ second.

4. Arrived at the maximum of shortening, the muscle at once begins to relax, the lever descending at first slowly, then very rapidly, and at last more slowly again, until at *d* the muscle has regained its natural length; the whole return from the maximum of contraction to the natural length occupying $\frac{7}{180}$, *i. e.*, about $\frac{1}{30}$ second.

Thus a simple muscular contraction, a simple spasm as it is sometimes called, produced by a momentary stimulus, such as an instantaneous induction-shock, consists of three main phases:

1. A phase antecedent to any visible alteration in the muscle. This phase, during which invisible preparatory changes are taking place in the nerve and muscle, is often called the "latent period."

2. A phase of shortening or contraction, more strictly so called.

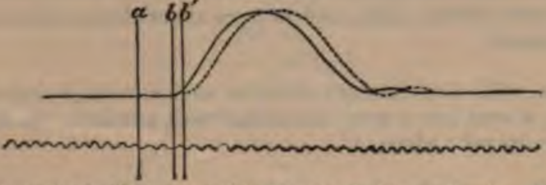
3. A phase of relaxation or return to the original length.

In the case we are considering, the electrodes are supposed to be applied to the nerve at some distance from the muscle. Consequently the latent period of the curve comprises not only the preparatory actions going on in the muscle itself, but also the changes necessary to conduct the immediate effect of the induction-shock from the part of the nerve between the electrodes, along a considerable length of nerve down to the muscle. It is obvious that these latter changes might be eliminated by placing the electrodes on the muscle itself or on the nerve close to the muscle. If this were done, the muscle and lever being exactly as before, and care were taken that the induction-shock entered into the nerve at the new spot, at the moment when the point of the lever had reached exactly the same point of the travelling surface as before, a curve like that shown by the plain line in Fig. 16 would be gained. It resembles the first curve (indicated in the figure by a dotted line) in all points, except that the latent period is shortened; the contraction begins rather earlier. From this we learn two facts:

1. The greater part of the latent period is taken up by changes in the muscle itself, preparatory to the actual visible shortening, for the two latent periods do not differ much. Of course, even in the second case, the latent period includes the

changes going on in the short piece of nerve still lying between the electrodes and the muscular fibres. To eliminate this with a view of determining the latent period in the muscle itself, the electrodes should be placed directly on the muscle poisoned with urari. If this were done, it would still be found that the latent period was chiefly taken up by changes in the muscular as distinguished from the nervous elements.

Fig. 16.



Curves illustrating the Measurement of the Velocity of a Nervous Impulse. (Diagrammatic.) To be read from left to right.

The same muscle-nerve preparation is stimulated (1) as far as possible from the muscle, (2) as near as possible to the muscle; both contractions are registered by the pendulum myographion exactly in the same way.

In (1) the stimulus enters the nerve at the time indicated by the line *a*, the contraction shown by the dotted line begins at *b′*; the whole latent period, therefore, is indicated by the distance from *a* to *b′*.

In (2) the stimulus enters the nerve at exactly the same time *a*; the contraction, shown by the unbroken line, begins at *b*; the latent period, therefore, is indicated by the distance between *a* and *b*.

The time taken up by the nervous impulse in passing along the length of nerve between 1 and 2 is therefore indicated by the distance between *b* and *b′*, which may be measured by the tuning-fork curve below. N.B.—No value is given in the figure for the vibrations of the tuning-fork, since the figure is diagrammatic, the distance between the two curves, as compared with the length of either, having been purposely exaggerated for the sake of simplicity.

2. Such difference as does exist indicates the time taken up by the propagation, along the piece of nerve, of the changes set up at the far end of the nerve by the induction-shock. These changes we shall hereafter speak of as constituting a nervous impulse; and the above experiment shows that it takes some appreciable time for a nervous impulse to travel along a nerve. In the figure the difference between the two latent periods, the distance between *b* and *b′*, seems almost too small to measure accurately; but if a long piece of nerve be used for the experiment, and the recording surface be made to travel very fast, the difference between the duration of the latent period when the induction-shock is sent in at a point

close to the muscle, and that when it is sent in at a point as far away as possible from the muscle, may be satisfactorily measured in fractions of a second. If the length of nerve between the two points be accurately measured, the rate at which a nervous impulse travels along the nerve to a muscle can be easily calculated. This has been found to be in the frog about twenty-eight, and in man about thirty-three meters per second.

Thus when a momentary stimulus, such as a single induction-shock, is sent into a nerve connected with a muscle, the following events take place:

1. The generation at the spot stimulated of a nervous impulse, and the propagation of the impulse along the nerve to the muscle. The time taken up by this varies according to the length of the nerve. For the same length of nerve it is tolerably constant.

2. The setting-up of certain molecular changes in the muscle, unaccompanied by any visible alteration in its form, constituting the latent period, and occupying on an average about $\frac{1}{100}$th second. The time taken up by the latent period varies somewhat according to circumstances.

3. The shortening of a muscle up to a maximum, occupying about $\frac{4}{100}$th second.

4. The return of a muscle to its former length, occupying about $\frac{5}{100}$th second. Both these last events vary much in duration according to circumstances.[1]

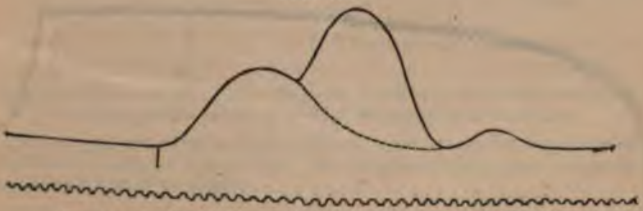
Tetanic Contractions.

If a single induction-shock be followed at a sufficiently short interval by a second shock of the same strength, the first simple contraction or spasm will be followed by a second spasm, the two bearing such relation to each other as that shown by the curve in Fig. 17, where the interval between the two shocks was just long enough to allow the first spasm to have passed its maximum before the latent period of the second was over. It will be observed that the second curve is almost in all respects like the first, except that it starts, so to speak, from the first curve instead of from the base-line. The second nervous impulse has acted on the already contracted muscle, and made it contract again just as it would have done if there had been no first impulse and the muscle had been at rest. The two contractions are added together and the lever raised nearly double the height it would have been by either alone. A more or less similar result would occur if the second contraction began at any other phase of the first. The combined effect is, of course, greatest when the second contraction begins at the maximum of the first, being less both before and afterwards. If, in the same way, a third shock follows the second at a sufficiently short interval, a third curve is piled on the top of the second. The same with a fourth, and so on.

---

[1] The measurements here stated are those ordinarily given. The curve described in the previous text happened to have a rather long latent period, and the lengthening to be of shorter instead of longer duration than the shortening.

FIG. 17.



Tracing of a Double Muscle-Curve. To be read from left to right.

While the muscle[1] was engaged in the first contraction (whose complete course, had nothing intervened, is indicated by the dotted line), a second induction-shock was thrown in, at such a time that the second contraction began just as the first was beginning to decline. The second curve is seen to start from the first, as does the first from the base-line.

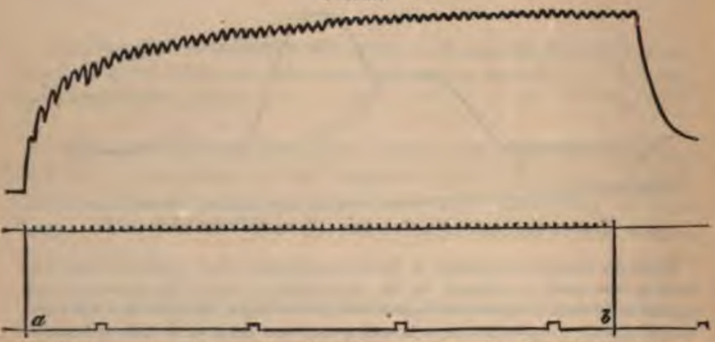
When, however, repeated shocks are given, it is found that the height of each contraction is rather less than the preceding one, and this diminution becomes more marked the greater the number of shocks. Hence, after a certain number of shocks, the succeeding impulses do not cause any further shortening of the muscle, any further raising of the lever, but merely keep up the contraction already existing. The curve thus reaches a maximum, which it maintains, subject to the depressing effects of exhaustion, as long as the shocks are repeated.

---

[1] In this and the other curves of this section, the tracings figured were taken from frog's muscle.

When these cease to be given, the muscle returns, in the usual way, at first very rapidly, and then more slowly, to its natural length. When the shocks do not succeed each other too rapidly, the individual contractions may readily be traced along the whole curve, as is seen in Fig. 18, where the primary current of the induction-machine was repeatedly broken at intervals of sixteen in a second. When the shocks succeed each other more rapidly, the individual contractions, visible at first, may become fused together and lost to view as the tetanus continues and the muscle becomes tired. When the shocks succeed each other still more rapidly (the second contraction beginning in the ascending portion of the first), it becomes difficult or impossible to trace out the single contractions. The curve then described by the lever is of the

FIG. 18.



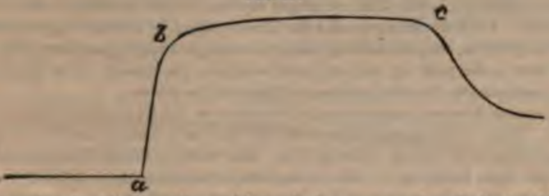
Muscle thrown into Tetanus, when the Primary Current of an Induction-Machine is repeatedly broken at intervals of sixteen in a second.

To be read from left to right.

The upper line is that described by the muscle. The lower marks time the intervals between the elevations indicating seconds. The intermediate line shows when the shocks were sent in, each mark on it corresponding to a shock. The lever, which describes a straight line before the shocks are allowed to fall into the nerve, rises almost vertically (the recording surface travelling in this case slowly) as soon as the first shock enters the nerve at *a*. Having risen to a certain height, it begins to fall again, but in its fall is raised once more by the second shock, and that to a greater height than before. The third and succeeding shocks have similar effect, the muscle continuing to become shorter, though the shortening at each shock is less. After awhile the increase in the total shortening of the muscle, though the individual contractions are still visible, almost ceases. At *b* the shocks cease to be sent into the nerve; the contractions almost immediately disappear, and the lever forthwith commences to descend. The muscle being lightly loaded, the descent is very gradual; the muscle had not regained its natural length when the tracing was stopped.

kind shown in Fig. 19, where the primary current of an induction-machine was rapidly made and broken by the magnetic interruptor, Fig. 20. The lever, it will be observed, rises at *a* after the latent period (which is not marked), first rapidly, and then more slowly, in an apparently unbroken line to a

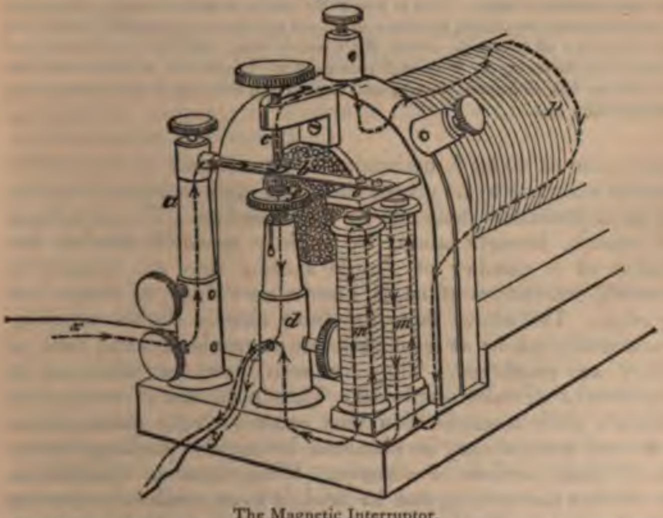
FIG. 19.



Tetanus produced with the ordinary Magnetic Interruptor of an Induction-Machine. (Recording surface travelling slowly.) To be read from left to right.

The interrupted current being thrown in at *a* the lever rises rapidly, but at *b* the muscle reaches the maximum of contraction. This is continued till *c*, when the current is shut off and relaxation commences.

FIG. 20.



The Magnetic Interruptor.

The figure is introduced to illustrate the action of this instrument as commonly used by physiologists.

The two wires *x* and *y* from the battery are connected with the two brass pillars *a* and *d* by means of screws. Directly contact is thus made the current, indicated in the figure by the *thick* interrupted line, passes in the direction of the arrows, up the pillar *a*, along the steel spring *b*, as far as the screw *c*, the point of which, armed with platinum, is in contact with a small platinum plate on *b*. The current passes from *b* through *c* and a connecting wire into the primary coil *p*. Upon its entering into the primary coil, an induced (making) current is for the instant developed in the secondary coil (not shown in the figure). From the primary coil *p* the current passes, by a connecting wire, through the double spiral, *m*, and, did nothing happen, would continue to pass from *m* by a connecting wire to the pillar *d*, and so by the wire *y* to the battery. The whole of this course is indicated by the thick interrupted line with its arrows.

As the current however passes through the spirals *m*, the iron cores of these are made magnetic. They in consequence draw down the iron bar *e*, fixed at the end of the spring *b*, the flexibility of the spring allowing this. But when *e* is drawn down, the platinum plate on the upper surface of *b* is also drawn away from the screw *c*, and a similar platinum plate on the *under* surface of *b* is brought into contact with the platinum-armed point of the screw *f*, the screws being so arranged that this takes place. In consequence of this change the current can no longer pass from *b* to *c*. On the contrary, it passes from *b* to *f*, and so down the pillar *d*, in the direction indicated by the *thin* interrupted line, and out to the battery by the wire *y*. Thus the current is "short-circuited" from the primary coil; and the instant that the current is thus cut off from the primary coil, an induced (breaking) current is for the moment developed in the secondary coil. But the current is cut off not only from the primary coil, but also from the spirals *m*; in consequence their cores cease to be magnetized, the bar *e* ceases to be attracted by them, and the spring *b*, by virtue of its elasticity, resumes its former position in contact with the screw *c*. This return of the spring, however, re-establishes the current in the primary coil and in the spirals, and the spring is drawn down, to be released once more in the same manner as before. Thus as long as the current is passing along *x*, the contact of *b* is constantly alternating between *c* and *f*, and the current is constantly passing into and being shut off from *p*, the periods of alternation being determined by the periods of vibration of the spring *b*. With each passage of the current into or withdrawal from the primary coil, an induced (making and, respectively, breaking shock is developed in the secondary coil.

maximum at about *b*, maintains the maximum so long as the shocks continue to be given, and when these cease to be given, as at *c*, gradually descends to the base-line. This condition of muscle, brought about by rapidly repeated shocks, this fusion of a number of simple spasms into an apparently smooth, continuous effort, is known as *tetanus*, or *tetanic contraction*. The above facts are most clearly shown when induction-shocks, or at least galvanic currents in some form or other, are employed. They are seen, however, whatever be the form of stimulus employed. Thus in the case of mechanical stimuli, while a single blow may cause a single spasm, a pronounced tetanus may be obtained by rapidly striking successively fresh portions of a nerve. With chemical stimulation, as when a nerve is dipped in acid, it is impossible to secure a momentary application; hence tetanus, generally irregular in character, is the normal result of this mode of stimulation. In the living body, the contractions of the striated muscles, brought about either by the will or by reflex action, are generally tetanic in character. Even very short sharp movements, such as a sudden jerk of the limbs, are in reality examples of tetanus of short duration.

When it has once been realized that an ordinary tetanic muscular movement is essentially a vibratory movement, that the apparently rigid and firm muscular mass is really the subject of a whole series of vibrations, a series namely of simple spasms, it will be readily understood why a tetanized muscle, like all other vibrating bodies, gives out a sound. That a contracting (tetanized) muscle does give out a sound, the so-called muscular sound, is easily proved by listening with a stethoscope to a contracted biceps, or by stopping the ears and listening to the contractions of one's own masseter and temporal muscles.

When a muscle is thrown into tetanus by interrupted shocks applied directly to the nerve or to the muscle, the note is the same as that of the interruptor determining the number of the shocks. This is naturally the case, since the note of the muscle-sound is determined by the rapidity of the spasms or vibrations which go to make up the tetanus, and these are determined by the rapidity with which the stimulus is repeated.

When a muscle is thrown into tetanus by the will or by reflex action or by direct stimulation of the spinal cord, in fact, in any way through the action of the central nervous system, the same note is always heard, viz., one indicating 19.5 vibrations per second.

The note actually heard is one indicating 39 (36 to 40) vibrations per second. This is, however, an harmonic of the primary note of the whole sound.

It need hardly be said that a single muscular contraction, a single vibration, cannot cause a muscular sound.

The general observations which have been described in this section may, when proper precautions are taken, be carried out on a muscle-nerve preparation from a frog for a very considerable time after its removal from the body. After some hours, however, or it may be days, the length of time varying according to circumstances, it will be found that no stimulus, however powerful, will cause any contraction when applied either to the nerve or to the muscle. Both muscle and nerve are then said to have lost their irritability; and a short time afterwards the muscle may be observed to pass into a peculiar condition known as *rigor mortis*, in which it loses all the suppleness and extensibility characteristic of the living irritable muscle. The causes of this loss of irritability, as well as the features and nature of this rigor mortis, we shall study in detail presently.

The muscles and nerves of a mammal, or, indeed, of any warm-blooded animal, lose their irritability, and the muscles become rigid in a very short time (it may be a few minutes) after removal from the body. Hence these are less suitable for experiments than the muscles and nerves of the frog, though their general phenomena are exactly the same.

We must now attempt to study in greater detail the changes which take place in a muscle and nerve during the contraction of the former and the passage of an impulse along the latter, with a view to the better understanding of both events.

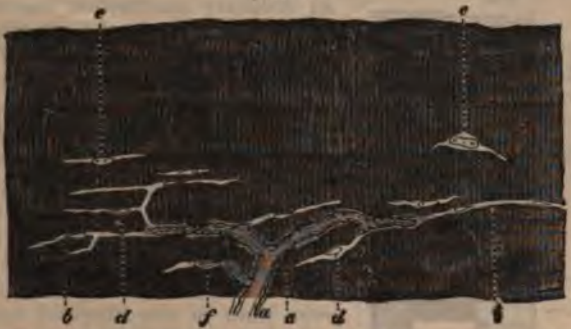
SEC. 2. THE CHANGES IN A MUSCLE DURING MUSCULAR CONTRACTION.

The Change in Form.

We have seen that, at the close of the latent period, the muscle shortens; that is, each fibre shortens, at first slowly, then more rapidly, and lastly, more slowly again. The shortening (which, in severe tetanus, may amount to three-fifths of the length of the muscle) is accompanied by an almost exactly corresponding thickening, so that there is hardly any actual change in bulk. [A very delicate and efficient mode of determining that the muscle does not change in bulk by contracting is by suspending a muscle and nerve preparation by electrodes in a tightly-stoppered bottle, having a graduated capillary tube projecting above the cork. The bottle is filled with water, and the tube but partially so. Stimulus is then applied to the nerve, which causes the muscle to contract. If the water-line in the tube is observed, no change will be appreciable. (Marey.)] If a muscle be placed horizontally, and a lever laid upon it, the thickening of the muscle will raise up the lever, and cause it to describe on a recording surface a curve exactly like that described by a lever attached to the end of the muscle. There appears to be a minute diminution of bulk not amounting to more than one-thousandth.

If a long muscle of parallel fibres, poisoned with urari, so as to eliminate the action of its nerves, be stimulated at one end, the contraction may be seen, almost with the naked eye, to start from the end stimulated, and to travel along the muscle. If two levers be made to rest on, or be suspended from, two points of such a muscle placed horizontally, the points being at a known distance from each other and from the point stimulated, the progress of the contraction may be studied. It is found that the contraction starting from the spot stimulated passes along the muscle in the form of a wave, diminishing in vigor as it proceeds. The velocity with which this contraction-wave travels in the muscles of the frog is about three or four meters a second; and since it takes, in round numbers, from about .05 to .1 second for the contraction to pass over any point of the fibre, the wave-length of the contraction-wave must be from about 200 to 400 mm.

[FIG. 21.



Muscular Fibre, with termination of Motor Nerve, from the Gastrocnemius of the Rana esculenta. *a*, terminal pencil of a dark-bordered nerve-fibre; *b*, intramuscular naked axis cylinder; *c*, nucleus of the neurilemma; *d*, clavate extremities of the nerve; *e*, spaces of the muscle-nuclei; *f*, terminal knob of nerve, with central fibre and vesicular dilation of the nerve.—After COHNHEIM.]

Bernstein[1] gives the velocity of the contraction-wave in the frog as about three to four (3.869), its duration as .0533 to .0894 seconds, and hence its wave-length as from 198 to 200 mm. In the dog, Bernstein and Steiner[2] find the velocity of the wave about the same, viz., 3.589, but the duration much longer, viz., .27 to .4975 second, indicating a much more extended wave; but this was probably due to the abnormal condition of the muscle, since the duration of the wave in the untouched muscles of the rabbit more nearly agreed

---

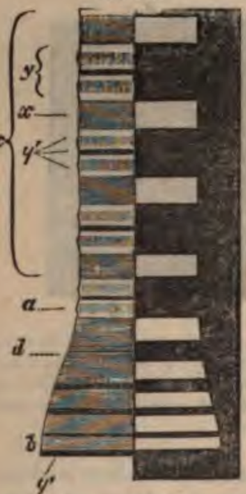
[1] Untersuch. ü. d. Erregungsvorgang in Nerven- und Muskelsysteme, 1871, p. 84.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), 48.

with that of the frog. Hermann[1] makes the rate in the frog about three meters, or rather less. Aeby had previously given .8—1.2 meters per second, and Engelmann 1.17 m. per second as the velocity.
The velocity is increased by an elevation, and diminished by a lowering of temperature, but is not affected by variations in the load.

Seeing that the extreme limit of the length of a muscular fibre is about 30 or 40 mm., it is evident that, even when the stimulation begins at one end, the whole fibre is not only in a state of contraction at the same time, but almost in the same phase of the contraction-wave. In an ordinary contraction occurring in the living body the stimulus is never applied to one end of the fibre; the nervous impulse, which in such cases acts as the stimulus to the muscle, falls into the fibre at about its middle, where the nerve ends in an end-plate (Fig. 21), and the contraction-wave starting from the end-plate travels along the muscular fibre in both directions. In such a case, therefore, still more even than in the urarized muscle stimulated artificially at one end, must the whole fibre be occupied at the same time by the wave of contraction.

FIG. 22.



Muscular Fibre undergoing Contraction.

The muscle is that of *Telephorus melanurus* treated with osmic acid The fibre at *c* is at rest, at *a* the contraction begins, at *b* it has reached its maximum. The right hand side of the figure shows the same fibre as seen in polarized light. —After ENGELMANN.

Changes in Microscopic Structure.—When portions of living irritable muscle are examined under the microscope, contraction-waves similar to those just described, but feebler and of shorter length, may be observed passing along the fibres. By appropriate treatment with osmic acid or other reagents, these short contraction-waves may be fixed, and the structure of the contracted portion compared at leisure with that of the portions of the fibre at rest. In Fig. 22, representing a fibre of the muscle of an insect (in which these changes can be more satisfactorily studied than in vertebrate muscle), the contraction-wave begins near *a*, and has reached about its maximum at *b*, while at *c* the fibre is at rest, the contraction-wave not having reached it (or having passed over it, for the beginning and end of the wave are exactly alike). It will be seen that at *b* each disk of the fibre is shorter and broader than at *c*. Further, while at *c* the dim band *x* is conspicuous, and the light band *y*, with its accessory markings *y'*, is together lighter than the dim band *x*, at *b* in the fully contracted part of the fibre the dim band appears light as compared with the black line *y'* occupying the middle of the previously light band. In the contracted muscle, then, there is a reversal of the state of things in the resting muscle, the light band (or part of the light band) of the latter in contracting becomes dark, and the dim band of the latter becomes by comparison light. Between rest and full contraction there is an intermediate stage, as at *d*, in which the distinction between dim and bright bands seems to be largely lost. The subject, however, is one offering peculiar difficulties in the way of investigation; and, while most observers agree in the broad facts which have just been stated, there is great diversity of opinion concerning further details, and especially as to the interpretation of the various appearances observed. The accessory markings in the middle of the light band have, in particular, been the subject of controversies into which we cannot enter here.

---

[1] Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1875, p. 526.

When the fibre is examined in polarized light it is seen that the dim band is anisotropic, and the light band wholly isotropic, the accessory markings *y'* of the light band not being recognizable in polarized light. This is the case during all the phases of the contraction. At no period is there any confusion between the anisotropic and isotropic material; these maintain their relative positions, both become shorter and broader; but it will be observed that the isotropic substance diminishes in height to a much greater extent than does the anisotropic substance. The latter in fact appears to increase in bulk at the expense of the former.[1]

Relaxation.—The shortening as we have seen is followed by a relaxation, the muscle returning to its original length. This is brought about by the elastic reaction of the muscular substance itself. The application of an extending force, though useful, is not necessary.

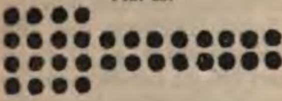
The muscles in their natural position in the body, where they are to a certain extent on the stretch, return completely and rapidly to their former length, even after a powerful and prolonged contraction. Out of the body the return, especially in muscles which are not loaded, is slower, and is frequently incomplete. The amount of this deficiency of relaxation depends on the nutritive condition of the muscle. When a muscle is stimulated by induction-shocks repeated with a certain rapidity this deficiency of relaxation or "contraction remainder," as it has been called, becomes very conspicuous.[1]

---

[1] Engelmann, Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 1.

A muscular contraction appears then to be essentially a translocation of molecules. If we were to represent a portion of muscular substance at rest by four rows of molecules four abreast as in Fig. 23, the contraction might be represented by the four rows of four shifting into two rows of eight; and the subsequent relaxation by a return into four rows. We cannot at present give any satisfactory molecular explanation of this translocation, even when we have studied the chemical and other events, to be described immediately, which accompany and are doubtless the cause of the change of form. And there is a remarkable physical characteristic of the contracted state which shows how complex and peculiar is the act of contraction. Living muscle at rest is very extensible, but a stretched muscle after the extending cause has been removed returns rapidly and completely to its former length. In physical language muscle is spoken of as possessing slight but perfect elasticity. It might be imagined that during a contraction this extensibility would be diminished in order that none of the resistance which the muscle had to overcome, no part of the weight for instance which had to be lifted, should be wasted in stretching the muscle itself. On the contrary, we find that during a contraction there is a marked *increase* of extensibility; thus, if a muscle at rest be loaded with a given weight, say 50 grams, and its extension observed, and be then while unloaded thrown into tetanus, and the load applied during the tetanus, the extension in the second case will be distinctly greater than in the first. During the contraction there is so to speak a greater mobility of the muscular molecules, and the loaded muscle has in contracting to overcome its own tendency to lengthen on extension before it can produce any effect on the weight which it has to lift.

FIG. 23.



When a muscle is extended by a series of weights increasing in magnitude, the curve (obtained by making the weights abscissæ and the extensions ordinates) is not a straight line, as is the case with dead elastic bodies, but a hyperbola.

---

[1] Cf. Tiegel, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 71.

The elasticity or extensibility of the muscular substance is essentially a vital property, *i. e.*, is dependent on the same nutritive factors as the irritability of the muscular substance. As the muscular substance becomes weary with too much work or impoverished by scanty nutrition, its elasticity suffers *pari passu* with its irritability. The exhausted muscle when extended does not return so readily to its proper length as the fresh active muscle, and, as we shall see, the dead muscle does not return at all.

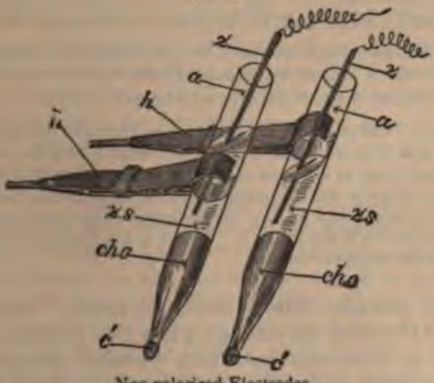
Electrical Changes.

Muscle-Currents.—If a muscle be removed in an ordinary manner from the body, and two non-polarizable electrodes,[1]

---

[1] These (Fig. 24) consist essentially of a slip of thoroughly amalgamated zinc dipping into a saturated solution of zinc sulphate, which in turn is brought into connection with the nerve or muscle by means of a plug or bridge of china-clay moistened with dilute sodium chloride solution; it is important that the zinc should be thoroughly amalgamated. This form of electrodes gives rise to less polarization

Fig. 24.



Non-polarized Electrodes.

a, the glass tube; *z*, the amalgamated zinc slips connected with their respective wires; *z. s.*, the zinc sulphate solution; *ch. c.*, the plug of china-clay; *c'*, the portion of the china-clay plug projecting from the end of the tube; this can be moulded into any required form.

connected with a delicate galvanometer of many convolutions, be placed on two points of the surface of the muscle, a deflection of the galvanometer will take place indicating the existence of a current passing through the galvanometer from the one point of the muscle to the other, the direction and amount of the deflection varying according to the position of the points. The "muscle-currents" thus revealed are seen to the best advantage when the muscle chosen is a cylindrical or prismatic one with parallel fibres, and when the two tendinous ends are cut off by clean incisions at right angles to the long axis of the muscle. The muscle then presents an (artificial) transverse section at each end and a

FIG. 25.

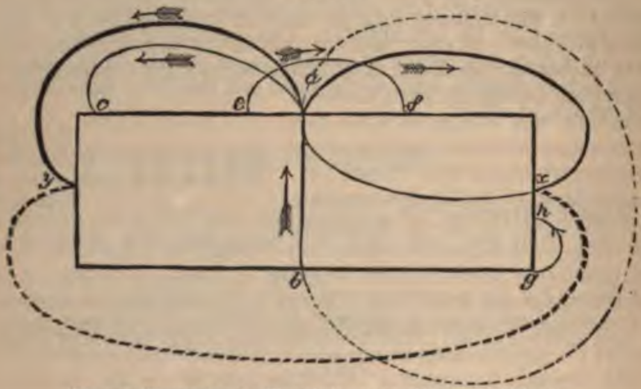


Diagram Illustrating the Electric Currents of Nerve and Muscle.

Being purely diagrammatic, it may serve for a piece either of nerve or of muscle, except that the currents at the transverse section cannot be shown in a nerve. The arrows show the direction of the current through the galvanometer.

a b, the equator. The strongest currents are those shown by the dark lines, as from *a*, at equator, to *x* or *y* at the cut ends. The current from *a* to *c* is weaker than from *a* to *y*, though both, as shown by the arrows, have the same direction. A current is shown from *e*, which is near the equator, to *f*, which is farther from the equator. The current (in muscle) from a point in the circumference to a point nearer the centre of the transverse section is shown at *g h*. From *a* to *b* or from *x* to *y* there is no current as indicated by the broken lines.

---

than do simple platinum or copper electrodes. The clay affords a connection between the zinc and the tissue which neither acts on the tissue nor is acted on by the tissue. Contact of any tissue with copper or platinum is in itself sufficient to develop a current.

longitudinal surface. We may speak of the latter as being divided into two equal parts by an imaginary transverse line on its surface called the "equator," containing all the points of the surface midway between the two ends. Fig. 25 is a diagrammatic representation of such a muscle, the line *a b* being the equator. In such a muscle the development of the muscle-currents is found to be as follows:

The greatest deflection is observed when one electrode is placed at the mid-point or equator of the muscle, and the other at either cut end; and the deflection is of such a kind as to show that positive currents are continually passing from the equator through the galvanometer to the cut end, that is to say, the cut end is negative relatively to the equator. The currents outside the muscle may be considered as completed by currents *in the muscle* from the cut end to the equator. In the diagram, Fig. 25, the arrows indicate the direction of the currents. If the one electrode be placed at the equator *a b*, the effect is the same at whichever of the two cut ends *x* or *y* the other is placed. If, one electrode remaining at the equator, the other be shifted from the cut end to a spot *c* nearer to the equator, the current continues to have the same direction, but is of less intensity in proportion to the nearness of the electrodes to each other. If the two electrodes be placed at unequal distances *e* and *f*, one on either side of the equator, there will be a feeble current from the one nearer the equator to the one farther off, and the current will be the feebler the more nearly they are equidistant from the equator. If they are quite equidistant, as for instance when one is placed on the cut end *x*, and the other on the other cut end *y*, there will be no current at all.

If one electrode be placed at the circumference of the transverse section and the other at the centre of the transverse section, there will be a current through the galvanometer from the former to the latter; there will be a current of similar direction but of less intensity when one electrode is at the circumference *g* of the transverse section and the other at some point *h* nearer the centre of the transverse section. In fact, the points which are relatively most positive and most negative to each other are points on the equator and the two centres of the transverse sections; and the intensity of the current between any two points will depend on the respective distances of those points from the equator and from the centres of the transverse sections.

Similar currents may be observed when the longitudinal surface is not a natural but an artificial one; indeed they may be witnessed in even a piece of muscle provided it be of cylindrical shape and composed of parallel fibres.

These natural "muscle-currents" are not mere transitory currents disappearing as soon as the circuit is closed; on the contrary they last a very considerable time. They must therefore be maintained by some changes going on in the muscle, by continued chemical action in fact. They disappear as the irritability of the muscle vanishes, and therefore may be supposed to be connected with those nutritive, so-called vital changes which maintain the irritability of the muscle.

Muscle-currents such as have just been described may, we repeat, be observed in any cylindrical muscle suitably prepared, and similar currents, with variations which need not be described here, may be seen in muscles of irregular shape with obliquely or otherwise arranged fibres. And Du Bois-Reymond, to whom chiefly we are indebted for our knowledge of these currents, has been led to regard them as essential and important properties of living muscle. He has moreover advanced the theory that muscle may be considered as composed of electro-motive particles or molecules, each of which like the muscle at large has a positive equator and negative ends, the whole muscle being made up of these molecules in somewhat the same way (to use an illustration which must not however be strained or considered as an exact one) as a magnet may be supposed to be made up of magnetic particles each with its north and south pole.

There are reasons, however, for thinking that these muscle-currents have no such fundamental origin, that they are in fact of surface and indeed of artificial origin. Without entering largely into the controversy on this question (some details of which will be found in a subsequent section in small print), the following important facts may be mentioned.

1. When a muscle is examined while it still retains untouched its natural tendinous terminations, the currents are much less than when artificial transverse sections have been made. The natural tendinous end is less negative than the cut surface. In some cases it may be even positive relatively to the longitudinal surface. But the tendinous end becomes at once negative when it is dipped in water or acid, indeed when it is in any way injured. The less roughly in fact a muscle is treated the less evident are the muscle-currents, and Hermann has shown that if proper care be taken a muscle may be so removed from the body as to give only currents which are hardly appreciable.

2. Engelmann[1] has shown that the surface of the uninjured inactive[2] ventricle of the frog's heart is isoelectric, *i. e.*, that no current is obtained when the electrodes are placed on any two points of the surface. If, however, any part of the surface be injured, or if the ventricle be cut across so as to expose a cut surface, the injured spot or the cut surface becomes at once most powerfully negative towards the uninjured surface, a strong current being developed, which passes through the galvanometer from the uninjured surface to the cut surface or to the injured spot. The negativity thus developed in a cut surface passes off in the course of some hours, but may be restored by making a fresh cut and exposing a fresh surface.

Now, when a muscle is cut or injured the substance of the fibres dies at the cut or injured surface. And certain authorities, among whom the most prominent is Hermann, have been led by the above and other facts to the conclusion that muscle-currents do not exist naturally in untouched muscles, that the muscular substance is naturally, when living, isoelectric, but that whenever a portion of the muscular substance dies, it becomes, *while dying*, negative to the living substance, and thus gives rise to currents. They explain the typical currents (as they might be called) manifested by a muscle with a natural longitudinal surface and artificial transverse sections, by the fact that the dying cut ends are negative relatively to the rest of the muscle.

Du Bois-Reymond and those with him offer special explanations of the above facts and of other objections which have been urged against the theory of naturally existing electromotive molecules. Into these we cannot enter here. We must rest content with the statement that in an ordinary muscle currents such as have been described may be witnessed, but that strong arguments may be adduced in favor of the view that these currents are not "natural" phenomena, but essentially of artificial origin. It will therefore be best to speak of them as "currents of rest."

Negative Variation of the Muscle-Current.—The controversy whether the "currents of rest" observable in a muscle be of natural origin or not, does not affect the truth or the importance of the fact that an electrical change takes place in a muscle whenever it enters into a contraction. When currents of rest are observable in a muscle these are found to undergo a diminution at the onset of a contraction, and this diminution is spoken of as "the negative variation" of the currents of rest. The negative variation may be seen when the muscle is thrown into a single contraction, but is most readily shown when the muscle is tetanized. Thus if a pair of electrodes be placed on a muscle, one at the equator and the other at or near the transverse section, so that a considerable deflection of the galvanometer needle, indicating a considerable current of rest, be gained, the needle of the galvanometer will, when the muscle is tetanized by an interrupted current sent through its nerve (at a point too far from the muscle to allow any escape of the current into the electrodes connected with the galvanometer), swing back towards zero; it returns to its original deflection when the tetanizing current is shut off.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xv (1877), p. 166.

[2] The necessity of its being inactive will be seen subsequently.

This negative variation may not only be shown by the galvanometer, but it, as well as the current of rest, may be used as a galvanic shock and so employed to stimulate a muscle, as in the experiment known as "the rheoscopic frog." For this purpose very irritable muscles and nerves in thoroughly good condition are required. Two muscle-nerve preparations, *A* and *B*, having been made, and each placed on a glass plate for the sake of insulation, the nerve of the one, *B*, is allowed to fall on the muscle of the other, *A*, in such a way that one point of the nerve comes in contact with the equator of the muscle, and another point with one end of the muscle or with a point at some distance from the equator. At the moment the nerve is let fall and contact made, a current, viz., the "current of rest" of the muscle *A* passes through the nerve; this acts as a stimulus to the nerve, and so causes a contraction in the muscle connected with the nerve. Thus the muscle *A* acts as a battery, the completion of the circuit of which by means of the nerve of *B* serves as a stimulus, causing the muscle *B* to contract.

If while the nerve of *B* is still in contact with the muscle of *A*, the nerve of the latter is tetanized with an interrupted current, not only is the muscle of *A* thrown into tetanus, but also that of *B;* the reason being as follows: At each spasm of which the tetanus of *A* is made up, there is a negative variation of the muscle-current of *A*. Each negative variation in the muscle-current of *A* serves as a stimulus to the nerve of *B*, and is hence the cause of a spasm in the muscle of *B;* and the stimuli following each other rapidly, as being produced by tetanus of *A* they must do, the spasms in *B* to which they give rise are also fused into a tetanus in *A*. *B* in fact contracts in harmony with *B*. This experiment shows that the negative variation accompanying the tetanus of a muscle, though it causes only a single swing of the galvanometer, is really made up of a series of negative variations, each single negative variation corresponding to the single spasms of which the tetanus is made up.

But an electrical change may be manifested even in cases when no currents of rest exist. We have stated (p. 89) that the surface of the uninjured inactive ventricle of the frog's heart is isoelectric, no currents being observed when the electrodes of a galvanometer are placed on two points of the surface. Nevertheless a most distinct current is developed whenever the ventricle contracts. This may be shown either by the galvanometer or by the rheoscopic frog. If the nerve of an irritable muscle-nerve preparation be laid over a pulsating ventricle, each beat is responded to by a spasm of a muscle of the preparation. In the case of ordinary muscles two instances occur in which it seems impossible to regard the electrical change manifested during the contraction as the mere diminution of a pre-existing current.

Accordingly Hermann and those who with him deny the existence of "natural" muscle-currents, speak of a muscle as developing during a contraction a "current of action," occasioned, as they believe, by the muscular substance as it is entering into the state of contraction becoming negative towards the muscular substance which is still at rest, or has returned to a state of rest. In fact, they regard the negativity of muscular substance as characteristic alike of a beginning death and of a beginning contraction. And they believe that in a muscular contraction a wave of negativity starting from the end-plate when indirect, or from the point stimulated when direct stimulation is used, passes along the muscular substance to the ends or end of the fibre. We cannot enter more fully here into a discussion of this difficult subject, but some account of the various facts and arguments brought forward by the advocates of the conflicting views will be found in a subsequent section in small print.

Whichever view be taken of the nature of these muscle-currents, and of the electric change during contraction, whether we regard that change as a "negative variation" or as a "current of action," it is important to remember that it takes place entirely during the latent period. It is not in any way the result of the change of form; it is the forerunner of that change of form. Just as a nervous impulse passes down the nerve to the muscle without any visible changes, so a molecular change of some kind, unattended by any visible events, marked only by an electrical change, runs along the muscular fibre from the end-plates to the terminations of the fibre, preparing the way for the visible change of form which is to follow. This molecular invisible change is the work of the latent period, and careful observation has shown us that it, like the visible contraction which follows at its heels, travels along the fibre from a spot stimulated (from the end-plates when the stimulus is applied indirectly through a nerve, or from the point touched by the electrodes when the stimulus is a direct one) towards the ends of the fibres, in the form of a wave having about the same velocity as the contraction, viz.: about three meters a second.

Chemical Changes.

Before we attack the important problem, What are the chemical changes concerned in a muscular contraction? we must study in some detail the chemical features of muscle at rest. And here we are brought face to face with the chemical differences between living and dead muscles. All muscles, within a certain time after removal from the body, or while still within the body, after "general" death of the body, lose their irritability. The loss of irritability, even when rapid, is gradual, but is succeeded by an event of some suddenness, the entrance into the condition known as *rigor mortis*, the occurrence of which is marked by the following features: The muscle, previously possessing a certain translucency, becomes much more opaque. Previously very extensible and elastic, it becomes rigid and inextensible, and at the same time loses its elasticity; the muscle now requires considerable force to stretch it, and when the force is removed, does not, as before, return to its natural length. To the touch it has lost much of its former softness, and becomes firmer and more resistant. The entrance into rigor mortis is characterized by a shortening or contraction which may, under certain circumstances, be considerable. The energy of this contraction is not great, so that when opposed, no actual shortening takes place. When rigor mortis has been fully developed no muscle-currents whatever are observed. The onset of this rigidity may be considered as the token of the death of the muscle itself. As we shall see, the chemical features of the dead rigid muscle are strikingly different from those of the living muscle.

If a **dead muscle**, from which all fat, tendon, fascia, and connective tissue have been as much as possible removed, and which has been freed from blood by the injection of saline solution, be minced and repeatedly washed with water, the washings will contain certain forms of albumin and certain extractive bodies, of which we shall speak directly. When the washing has been continued until the wash-water gives no proteid reaction, a large portion of muscle will still remain undissolved. If this be treated with a 10 per cent. solution of sodium chloride, a large portion of it will become imperfectly dissolved into a viscid fluid which filters with difficulty. If the viscid filtrate be allowed to fall drop by drop into a large quantity of distilled water, a white flocculent matter will be precipitated. This flocculent precipitate is *myosin*. It is a proteid, giving the ordinary proteid reactions, and having the same general elementary composition as other proteids. It is soluble in dilute saline solutions, especially those of sodium chloride, and may be classed in the globulin family, though it is not so soluble as paraglobulin. Dissolved in saline solutions it readily coagulates when heated, *i. e.*, is converted into coagulated proteid,[1] and it is worthy of notice that it coagulates at a lower temperature, viz., 55°–60° C., than does serum-albumin, paraglobulin, and many other proteids; it is precipitated and after long action coagulated by alcohol, and is precipitated by an excess of the sodium-chloride. By the action of dilute acids it is very readily converted into what is called syntonin or acid-albumin,[2] by the action of dilute alkalies into alkali-albumin. Speaking generally it may be said to be intermediate in its character between fibrin and globulin. On keeping, and especially on drying, its solubility is much diminished.

Of the substances which are left in washed muscle from which the myosin has thus been extracted by sodium chloride solution little is known. If washed muscle be treated directly with dilute hydrochloric acid, the greater part of the material of the muscle passes at once into syntonin. The quantity of syntonin thus obtained may be taken as representing the quantity of myosin previously existing in the muscle. The portion insoluble in dilute hydrochloric acid consists in part of the substance of the sarcolemma, of the nuclei, and of the tissue between the bundles, and in part probably of certain elements of the fibres themselves.

---

[1] See Appendix.

[2] Ibid.

If living contractile frog's muscle, freed as before as much as possible from blood, be frozen,[1] and while frozen minced and rubbed up in a mortar with four times its weight of snow containing 1 per cent. of sodium chloride, a mixture is obtained which, at a temperature just below 0° C., is sufficiently fluid to be filtered, though with difficulty. The slightly opalescent filtrate, or *muscle plasma* as it is called, is at first quite fluid, but will when exposed to the ordinary temperature become a solid jelly, and afterwards separate into a *clot* and *serum.* It will, in fact, coagulate like blood-plasma, with this difference, that the clot is not firm and fibrillar, but loose, granular, and flocculent. During the coagulation the fluid, which before was neutral or slightly alkaline, becomes distinctly acid.

The clot is myosin. It gives all the reactions of myosin obtained from dead muscle.

The serum contains albumin and extractives.

Besides ordinary serum-albumin coagulating at 75°, Kühne[2] (to whom we owe our knowledge of the above) found a peculiar form of albumin or soluble proteid coagulating at 45°, irrespective of the degree of acidity acquired by the serum. There is present also a proteid substance whose coagulation-point varies widely (sometimes as low as 25°), being dependent on the acidity of the serum; this latter appears to be a form of alkali-albumin, its coagulation-point being probably connected with the salts present in the serum (see Appendix). Such muscles as are red also contain a small quantity of hæmoglobin, to which indeed their redness is due.

Thus while dead muscle contains myosin, serum-albumin, and extractives with certain insoluble matters and certain gelatinous elements not referable to the muscle-substance itself, living muscle contains no myosin, but some substance or substances which bear somewhat the same relation to myosin that the fibrin factors do to fibrin, and which becomes or become myosin on the death of the muscle.

We may in fact speak of rigor mortis as characterized by a coagulation of the muscle-plasma, comparable to the coagulation of blood-plasma, but differing from it inasmuch as the product is not fibrin but myosin. The rigidity, the loss of suppleness, and the diminished translucency appear to be at all events largely, though probably not wholly, due to the change from the fluid plasma to the solid myosin. We might compare a living muscle to a number of fine transparent membranous tubes filled with blood-plasma. When this blood-plasma entered into the "jelly" stage of coagulation, the system of tubes would present many of the phenomena of rigor mortis. They would lose much of their suppleness and translucency, and acquire a certain amount of rigidity.

---

[1] Since, as we shall presently see, a muscle may be frozen and thawed again without losing any of its vital powers, we are at liberty to regard the frozen muscle as a still living muscle.

[2] Protoplasma, Leipzig, 1864.

But there is one very marked and important difference between rigor mortis of muscle and the coagulation of blood: blood during its coagulation undergoes only a slight change in its reaction; muscle during the onset of rigor mortis becomes distinctly, it might be said intensely, acid.

A living muscle at rest is in reaction neutral, or, from some remains of lymph adhering to it, faintly alkaline. Tested by litmus-paper it is frequently amphicroitic, *i. e.*, it will turn blue litmus red and red litmus blue,—but the change from red to blue is more marked than that from blue to red. If, on the other hand, the reaction of a thoroughly rigid muscle be tested, it will be found to be most distinctly acid. This development of acid is witnessed not only in the solid untouched fibre but also in expressed muscle-plasma. The red coloration of the blue litmus thus obtained is permanent, and cannot therefore be due to carbonic acid.

From rigid muscle there may be obtained a quantity of lactic acid, or rather of a variety of lactic acid known as sarcolactic acid.[1] It is probable that the change in the reaction is due to the formation of this acid.

The appearance of rigor mortis is characterized then by the occurrence of a nitrogenous proteid body, myosin, not previously existing as such in the living irritable fibre, and of a carbon acid, sarcolactic acid. But there is another most important acid, which is developed at the same time. Irritable living muscular substance like all living protoplasm is continually respiring, continually consuming oxygen and giving out carbonic acid. In the body, the arterial blood going to the muscle gives up some of its oxygen, and gains a quantity of carbonic acid, thus becoming venous as it passes through the muscular capillaries. After removal from the body, the living muscle continues to take up from the surrounding atmosphere a certain quantity of oxygen and to give out a certain quantity of carbonic acid.

At the onset of rigor mortis there is a very large and sudden increase in this production of carbonic acid, in fact a burst as it were of that gas. This is a phenomenon deserving special attention. Knowing that the carbonic acid which is the outcome of the respiration of the whole body is the result of the oxidation of carbon-holding substances, we might very naturally suppose that the increased production of carbonic acid attendant on the development of rigor mortis is due to the fact that during that event a certain quantity of the carbon-holding constituents of the muscle are suddenly oxidized. But such a view is negatived by the following facts. In the first place, the increased production of carbonic acid during rigor mortis is not accompanied by any corresponding increase in the consumption of oxygen. In the second place, a muscle (of a frog for instance) contains in itself no free or loosely attached oxygen; when subjected to the action of a mercurial air-pump it gives off no oxygen to a vacuum, offering in this respect a marked contrast to blood, and yet, when placed in an atmosphere free from oxygen, it will not only continue to give off carbonic acid while it remains alive, but will also exhibit at the onset of rigor mortis the same increased production of carbonic acid that is shown by a muscle placed in an atmosphere containing oxygen. It is obvious that in such a case the carbonic acid does not arise from the direct oxidation of the muscle substance, for there is no oxygen present *at the time* to carry on that oxidation. We are driven to suppose that during rigor mortis some complex body, containing in itself ready-formed carbonic acid so to speak, is split up and thus carbonic acid set free, the process of oxidation by which that carbonic acid was formed out of the carbon-holding constituents of the muscle having taken place at some anterior date.

---

[1] See Appendix.

It is found moreover that there is a certain amount of parallelism between the intensity of the rigor mortis, the degree of acid reaction (*i. e.*, the amount of sarcolactic acid formed), and the quantity of carbonic acid given out. If we suppose, as we fairly may do, that the intensity of the rigidity is dependent on the quantity of myosin deposited in the fibres, the parallelism between the three products, myosin, sarcolactic acid, and carbonic acid, would suggest the idea that all three are the results of the splitting-up of the same highly complex substance. But we have not at present succeeded in isolating or in otherwise definitely proving the existence of such a body.

Living resting muscle then is alkaline or neutral in reaction, and the substance of its fibres contains a coagulable plasma. Dead rigid muscle on the other hand is acid in reaction from the presence of sarcolactic acid; it no longer contains a coagulable plasma, but is laden with the solid myosin.

And the change from the living irritable condition to that of rigor mortis is accompanied by a large and sudden development of carbonic acid.

We may now return to the question, What are the chemical changes which take place when a living resting muscle enters into a contraction? These changes are most evident after the muscle has been subjected to a prolonged tetanus; but there can be no doubt that the chemical events of a tetanus are, like the physical events, simply the sum of the results of the constituent single contractions.

In the first place the muscle becomes acid, not so acid as in rigor mortis, but still sufficiently so, after a vigorous tetanus, to turn blue litmus distinctly red. The reddening like that of rigor mortis is permanent, and, therefore, cannot be due to carbonic acid; it is probably, as in the case of rigor mortis, caused by a development of sarcolactic acid.

In the second place, a considerable quantity of carbonic acid is set free; and the production of carbonic acid in muscular contraction runs altogether parallel to the production of carbonic acid during rigor mortis. It is not accompanied by any corresponding increase in the consumption of oxygen. This is evident even in a muscle through which the circulation of blood is still going on, for though the blood passing through a contracting muscle gives up more oxygen than the blood passing through a resting muscle, increase in the amount of oxygen taken up falls below the increase in the carbonic acid given out, but it is still more markedly shown in a muscle removed from the body. For in such a muscle both the contraction and the increase in the production of carbonic acid will go on in the absence of oxygen. A frog's muscle suspended in an atmosphere of nitrogen will remain irritable for some considerable time, and at each vigorous tetanus an increase in the production of carbonic acid may be readily ascertained.

Moreover there seems to be a correspondence between the energy of the contraction and the amount of carbonic acid and sarcolactic acid produced, so that we are naturally led to the view that in a muscular contraction, as in rigor mortis, some highly complex substance splits up, and thus gives rise to these two acids. But here the resemblance between rigor mortis and contraction ends. We have no evidence of the formation during a contraction of any body like myosin. Rigor mortis and contraction are alike in so far as they both have for their basis a complex chemical process giving rise to the formation of acids, and in both events we have a rise of temperature indicating that heat has been set free. But the contracted and rigid muscle differ essentially in the fact that while the former, as compared with living resting muscle, increases in extensibility and loses none of its translucency, the latter becomes less extensible, less elastic, and less translucent. Corresponding to this marked difference, we find myosin formed in the rigid muscle, but we cannot find it in the contracted muscle.

It is stated by Hermann that in frog's muscle separated from the body, the quantity of carbonic acid given out during rigor mortis is in inverse proportion to the quantity given out by the contractions which have taken place since the removal of the muscle from the blood-current. The more the muscle has contracted during this period the less the amount of carbonic acid given out in the final rigor, and *vice versa*. From this it is inferred that at the moment of separation from the body, the muscle contains a certain capital of carbonic-acid producing material (to wit, the substance whose explosive decomposition we have supposed to give rise to this and other bodies), which may be expended either in rigor mortis or in contraction, but which, from the absence of blood, cannot be replaced. Consequently the expenditure in the direction of contraction must come out of the share allotted to rigor mortis. To this point we shall return.

The other chemical changes in muscle have not yet been clearly made out. Indeed our whole information concerning the other chemical constituents of muscle is at present imperfect.

Fats are present in considerable quantities, and the extractives are varied and numerous. The most important are kreatin, sarcolactic or paralactic acid (a variety of lactic acid, differing from it chiefly in the solubility of its salts, and in the amount of water of crystallization contained in them), and sugar. To these may be added xanthin, hypoxanthin (sarkin), inosit (especially in the cardiac muscles), inosinic acid, and traces of uric acid. Except in pathological conditions (and in the plagiostome fishes) urea is conspicuous by its absence. In living muscle glycogen is frequently present, and is at the death of the muscle transformed into sugar. Dextrin has also been found; and a special fermentable muscle-sugar has been described. It has been much debated whether kreatin or kreatinin, or both, are present in muscle; the evidence goes to show that kreatin alone is present.

The ashes of muscle, like those of the red corpuscles, are characterized by the preponderance of potassium salts and of phosphates; these form in fact nearly 80 per cent. of the whole ash.

The general composition of human muscle is shown in the following table of v. Bibra:

Water,		744.5
Solids:		
Myosin and other matters, elastic elements, etc., insoluble in water,	155.4	
Soluble proteids,	19.3	
Gelatin,	20.7	
Extractives,	37.1	
Fats,	23.0	
		255.5

Helmholtz showed long ago that by continued contraction the substances in muscle which are soluble in water, *i. e.*, the aqueous extractives, are diminished, while those which are soluble in alcohol are increased. In other words, during contraction some substance or substances soluble in water are converted into another or other substances insoluble in water but soluble in alcohol. Ranke[1] concluded from his observations that the proteids are slightly diminished, and that sugar and fats are produced; but the data for these conclusions are, at present at all events, insufficient. It has been suggested that the glycogen naturally present in muscle is during contraction converted into sugar. The failure to obtain any satisfactory evidence of the production of nitrogenous crystalline bodies as the result of contraction is of interest; for though urea is conspicuous by its absence from muscle both during rest and after contraction, some observers have thought that the kreatin in muscle is increased by contraction; this has not been definitely proved.

The Changes in a Nerve during the Passage of a Nervous Impulse.

The change in the form of a muscle during its contraction is a thing which can be seen and felt; but the changes in a nerve during its activity are invisible and impalpable. We stimulate one end of a nerve, and since we see this followed by a contraction of the muscle attached to the other end, we know that some changes or other constituting a nervous impulse have been propagated along the nerve, but these are changes which we cannot see. Nor have we satisfactory evidence of any chemical events or of any production of heat, accompanying a nervous impulse. We may fairly suppose that *some* chemical changes form the basis of a nervous impulse, and that these changes set free a certain amount of heat, but these if they occur are too slight to be recognized satisfactorily by the means at present at our disposal. In fact, beyond the terminal results of a nervous impulse, such as a muscular contraction in the case of a nerve going to a muscle, or some affection of the central nervous system in the case of a nerve still in connection with its nervous centre, there is one event, and one event only, which we are able to recognize as the objective token of a nervous impulse, and that is the so-called negative variation of the nerve-current. For a piece of nerve removed from the body exhibits nearly the same electric phenomena as a piece of muscle. It has an equator which is electrically positive as compared to its two cut ends. In fact, the diagram, Fig. 25, and the description which it was used on p. 86 to illustrate, may be applied to nerve as well as to muscle, except that the currents are in all cases much more feeble in the case of nerves than of muscles, and the special currents from the circumference to the centre of the transverse sections cannot well be shown in a slender nerve; indeed it is doubtful if they exist at all.

---

[1] Tetanus, 1865.

Du Bois-Reymond[1] found the electro-motive force of the sciatic nerve of a frog to amount to .022 Daniell, while that of the rabbit did not exceed .026 Daniell. Engelmann,[2] however, obtained for the sciatic of the frog a value of .046 Daniell.

During the passage of a nervous impulse the "natural nerve-current" undergoes a negative variation, just as the "natural muscle-current" undergoes a negative variation during a contraction. There are, however, difficulties in the case of the nerve similar to those in the case of the muscle, concerning the pre-existence of any such "natural" currents; hence we may say that in a nerve during the passage of a nervous impulse, as in a muscle during a muscular contraction, a "current of action" is developed.

This "current of action" or "negative variation" may be shown either by the galvanometer or by the rheoscopic frog. If the nerve of the "muscle-nerve preparation" *B* (see p. 90) be placed in an appropriate manner on a thoroughly irritable nerve *A* (to which of course no muscle need be attached), *i. e.*, touching say the equator and one end of the nerve, then single induction-shocks sent into the far end of *A* will cause single spasms in the muscle of *B*, while tetanization of *A*, *i. e.*, rapidly repeated shocks sent into *A*, will cause tetanus of the muscle of *B*.

---

[1] Gesammelte Abhandl. (1877), ii, 232.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xv (1877), p. 211.

That this current, whether it be regarded as an independent "current of action" or as a negative variation of a "pre-existing" current, is an essential feature of a nervous impulse is shown by the fact that the degree or intensity of the one varies with that of the other. They both travel too at the same rate. In describing the muscle-curve, and the method of measuring the muscular latent period, we have incidentally shown (p. 73) how the velocity of the nervous impulse is measured also, and stated that the rate in the nerves of a frog is about 28 meters a second. Bernstein by means of an apparatus which is described on p. 131 finds that the negative variation travels along an isolated piece of nerve at the same rate. He also finds that it, like the molecular change in a muscle preceding the contraction, and indeed like the contraction itself, passes over any given spot of the nerve in the form of a wave, rising rapidly to a maximum and then more gradually declining again. He has been able to measure the length of the wave, and this he finds to be about 18 mm., taking .0007 sec. to pass over any one point.

When an isolated piece of nerve is stimulated in the middle, the negative variation is propagated equally well in both directions, and that whether the nerve be a chiefly sensory or a chiefly motor nerve, or, indeed, if it be a nerve-root composed exclusively of motor or of sensory fibres. Taking the negative variation as the token of a nervous impulse, we infer from this that when a nerve-fibre is stimulated artificially at any part of its course, the nervous impulse set going travels in both directions.

We used just now the phrase "tetanization of a nerve," meaning the application to a nerve of rapidly repeated shocks such as would produce tetanus in the muscle to which the nerve was attached, and we shall have frequent occasion to employ the phrase. It will, however, of course be understood that there is in the nerve, as far as we know, no summation of nervous impulses comparable to the summation of muscular contractions. The series of shocks sent in at the far end of the nerve start a series of impulses, these travel down the nerve and reach the muscle as a series of distinct impulses; and the first changes in the muscle, the molecular latent period changes, also form a series, the members of which are distinct. It is not until these molecular changes become transformed into visible changes of form that any fusion or summation takes place.

Putting together the facts contained in this and the preceding sections, the following may be taken as a brief approximate history of what takes place in a muscle and nerve when the latter is subjected to a single induction-shock. At the instant that the induced current passes into the nerve, changes occur, of whose nature we know nothing certain, except that they cause a "negative variation" of the "natural" nerve-current. These changes propagate themselves along the nerve in both directions as a nervous impulse in the form of a wave, having a wave-length of about 18 mm., and a velocity (in frog's nerve) of about 28 m. per second. Passing down the nerve-fibres to the muscle, flowing along the branching and narrowing tracts, the wave at last breaks on the end-plates of the fibres of the muscle. Here it is transmuted into a muscle-impulse, with a shorter steeper wave, and a greatly diminished velocity (about 3 m. per second). This muscle-impulse, of which we know hardly more than that it is marked by a negative variation in the muscle-current, travels from each end-plate in both directions to the end of the fibre. What there becomes of it we do not know, but it is immediately followed by the visible contraction-wave, travelling behind it at about the same rate, but with a vastly increased wave-length. The fibre, as the wave passes over it, swells and shortens, bringing its two ends together, its molecules during the change of form arranging themselves in such a way that the extensibility of the fibre is increased, while at the same time an explosive decomposition of material takes place, leading to a discharge of carbonic and sarcolactic acids, and probably of other unknown things, with a considerable development of heat.

SEC. 3. THE NATURE OF THE CHANGES THROUGH WHICH AN ELECTRIC CURRENT IS ABLE TO GENERATE A NERVOUS IMPULSE.

Action of the Constant Current.

In the preceding account, the stimulus applied in order to give rise to a nervous impulse has always been supposed to be an induction-shock, single or repeated. This choice of stimulus has been made on account of the almost momentary duration of the induced current. Had we used a current lasting for some considerable time, the problems before us would have become more complex in consequence of our having to distinguish between the events taking place while the current was passing through the nerve from those which occurred at the moment when the current was thrown into the nerve, or at the moment when it was shut off from the nerve. These complications do arise when, instead of employing the induced current as a stimulus, we use *a constant current*, *i. e.*, when we pass through the nerve (or muscle) a current direct from the battery without the intervention of any induction-coil.

Before making the actual experiment we might, perhaps, naturally suppose that the constant current would act as a stimulus throughout the whole time during which it was applied, that, so long as the current passed along the nerve, nervous impulses would be generated and thus the muscle thrown into something, at all event, like tetanus. And under certain conditions this does take place; occasionally it happens that at the moment the current is thrown into the nerve, the muscle of the muscle-nerve preparation falls into a tetanus which is continued until the current is shut off. But such a result is exceptional. In the vast majority of cases what happens is as follows. At the moment that the circuit is made, the moment that the current is thrown into the nerve, a single spasm, a simple contraction, the so-called *making contraction* is witnessed; but after this has passed away the muscle remains absolutely quiescent in spite of the current continuing to pass through the nerve, and this quiescence is maintained until the circuit is broken, until the current is shut off from the nerve, when another simple contraction, the so-called *breaking contraction*, is observed. The mere passage of a uniform constant current of uniform intensity through a nerve does not act as a stimulus generating a nervous impulse; such an impulse is only set up when the current either falls into or is shut off from the nerve. It is the entrance or the exit of the current, and not the continuance of the current which is the stimulus.

The quiescence of the nerve and muscle during the passage of the current is however dependent on the current remaining uniform in intensity or at least not being suddenly increased or diminished. Any sufficiently sudden and large increase or diminution of the intensity of the current, will act like the entrance or exit of a current, and by generating nervous impulses give rise to contractions. If the intensity of the current however be very slowly and gradually increased or diminished, a very wide range of intensity may be passed through without any contraction being seen. It is the sudden change from one condition to another, and not the condition itself, which causes the nervous impulse.

In many cases both a "making" and a "breaking" contraction, each a simple spasm, are observed, and this is perhaps the commonest event; but under conditions which will be discussed below either the breaking or the making contraction may be absent, *i. e.*, there may be a contraction only when the current is thrown into the nerve or only when it is shut off from the nerve.

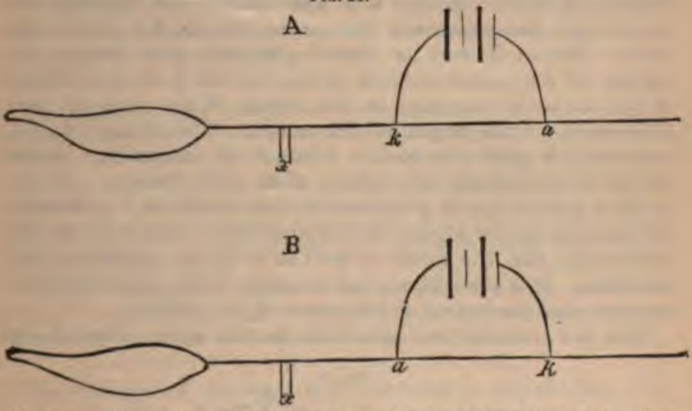
Under ordinary circumstances the contractions witnessed with the constant current, either at the make or at the break, are of the nature of a "simple" contraction, but as has already been said, the application of the current may give rise to a very pronounced tetanus. Such a tetanus is seen sometimes when the current is made lasting during the application of the current, sometimes when the current is broken, lasting sometime after the current has been wholly removed from the nerve. The former is spoken of as a "making," the latter as a "breaking" tetanus. But these exceptional results of the constant current need not detain us now.

The great interest attached to the action of the constant current lies in the fact, that *during* the passage of the current, in spite of the absence of all nervous impulses and therefore of all muscular contractions, the nerve is for the time both between and on each side of the electrodes profoundly modified in a most peculiar manner. This modification, important both for the light it throws on the generation of nervous impulses and for its practical applications, is known under the name of electrotonus.

Electrotonus.—The marked feature of the electrotonic condition is that the nerve though apparently quiescent is changed in respect to its irritability; and that in a different way in the neighborhood of the two electrodes respectively.

Suppose that on the nerve of a muscle-nerve preparation are placed two (non-polarizable) electrodes (Fig. 26, *a*, *k*,) connected with a battery and arranged with a key so that a constant current can at pleasure be thrown into or shut off from the nerve. This constant current, whose effects we are about to study, may be called the "polarizing current." Let *a* be the positive electrode or anode, and *k* the negative electrode or cathode, both placed at some distance from the muscle, and also with a certain interval between each other. At the point *x* let there be applied a pair of electrodes connected with an induction-machine. Let the muscle further be connected with a lever, so that its contractions can be recorded, and their amount measured. Before the polarizing current is thrown into the nerve, let a single induction-shock of known intensity (a weak one being chosen, or at least not one which would cause in the muscle a maximum contraction) be thrown in at x. A contraction of a certain amount will follow. That contraction may be taken as a measure of the irritability of the nerve at the point x. Now let the polarizing current be thrown in, and let the direction of the current be a *descending* one, with the cathode or negative pole nearest the muscle, as in Fig. 26, *A*. If while the current is passing, the same induction-shock as before be sent through x, the contraction which results will be found to be greater than on the former occasion. If the polarizing current be shut off, and the point x after a short interval again tested with the same induction-shock, the contraction will be no longer greater, but of the same amount, or perhaps not so great, as at first. During the passage of the polarizing current, therefore, the irritability of the nerve at the point x has been temporarily *increased*, since the same shock applied to it causes a greater contraction during the presence than in the absence of the current. But this is only true so long as the polarizing current is a descending one, so long as the point x lies on the side of the cathode. On the other hand, if the polarizing current had been an *ascending* one, with the anode or positive pole

FIG. 26.



Muscle-nerve Preparations, with the nerve exposed in *A* to a *descending* and in *B* to an *ascending* constant current.

In each *a* is the anode, *k* the cathode of the constant current. *x* represents the spot where the induction-shocks used to test the irritability of the nerves are sent in.

nearest the muscle, as in Fig. 26, *B*, the irritability of the nerve at x would have been found to be *diminished* instead of increased by the polarizing current. That is to say, when a constant current is applied to a nerve, the irritability of the nerve between the polarizing electrodes and the muscle is, during the passage of the current, increased when the cathode is nearest the muscle (and the polarizing current descending), and diminished when the anode is nearest the muscle (and the polarizing current ascending). The same result, *mutatis mutandis*, and with some qualifications to be referred to directly, would be gained if x were placed not between the muscle and the polarizing current, but on the far side of the latter. Hence it may be stated generally that during the passage of a constant current through a nerve the irritability of the nerve is increased in the region of the cathode, and diminished in the region of the anode. The changes in the nerve which give rise to this increase of irritability in the region of the cathode are spoken of as *catelectrotonus*, and the nerve is said to be in a catelectrotonic condition. Similarly the changes in the region of the anode are spoken of as *anelectrotonus*, and the nerve is said to be in an anelectrotonic condition. It is also often usual to speak of the catelectrotonic increase, and anelectrotonic decrease of irritability.

This law remains true whatever be the mode adopted for determining the irritability. The result holds good not only with a single induction-shock, but also with a tetanizing in-

Fig. 27.

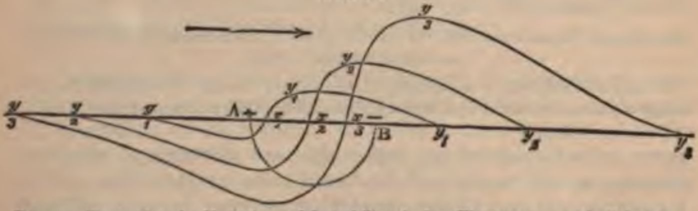


Diagram Illustrating the Variations of Irritability during Electrotonus, with Polarizing Currents of Increasing Intensity. (From Pflüger.)

The anode is supposed to be placed at *A*, the cathode at *B*; *A B* is consequently the intrapolar district. In each of the three curves, the portion of the curve below the base-line represents diminished irritability, that above, increased irritability. y_1 represents the effect of a weak current; the indifferent point x_1 is near the anode *A*. In y_2, a stronger current, the indifferent point x_2 is nearer the cathode *B*, the diminution of irritability in anelectrotonus and the increase in catelectrotonus being greater than in y_1; the effect also spreads for a greater distance along the extrapolar regions in both directions. In y_3 the same events are seen to be still more marked.

terrupted current, with chemical and with mechanical stimuli. The increase and decrease of irritability are most marked in the immediate neighborhood of the electrodes, but spread for a considerable distance in either direction in the extrapolar regions. The same modification is not confined to the extrapolar region, but exists also in the intrapolar region. In the intrapolar region there must be, of course, an indifferent point, where the catelectrotonic increase merges into the anelectrotonic decrease, and where therefore the irritability is unchanged. When the polarizing current is a weak one, this indifferent point is nearer the anode than the cathode, but as the polarizing current increases in intensity, draws nearer and nearer the cathode. (See Fig. 27.)

The catelectrotonic increase and anelectrotonic decrease reach a maximum soon after the making of the polarizing current, and thenceforward gradually diminish. The two effects however are not quite parallel. The catelectrotonic increase is the first to be developed; it rapidly rises to a maximum and somewhat rapidly declines. The anelectrotonic decrease is not manifest at first; when it does appear it increases slowly, and having reached a maximum diminishes slowly again.

When the polarizing current is shut off there is a rebound at both poles; a temporary increase of irritability in the anelectrotonic and a temporary decrease in the catelectrotonic regions.

The amount of increase and decrease is dependent: (1) On the strength of the current, the stronger current up to a certain limit producing the greater effect. (2) On the irritability of the nerve, the more irritable, better-conditioned nerve being the more affected by a current of the same intensity.

The increase or decrease of irritability applies not only to the origination of impulses, but also to their propagation or conduction. At least anelectrotonus offers an obstacle to the passage of a nervous impulse.

These variations of irritability at the cathode and anode respectively, must be the result of molecular changes, brought about by the action of the constant current. They are interesting because they show that the generation of a nervous impulse as the result of the making or breaking of a constant current is dependent on the change of a nerve from its normal condition into either catelectrotonus or anelectrotonus, or back again from one of these phases into its normal condition. And certain phenomena, which will be described below under the heading of the "law of contraction," go far to show that a nervous impulse is generated only when a nerve passes suddenly from a normal condition into the phase of catelectrotonus (making contraction), or returns from the phase of anelectrotonus (breaking contraction) to a normal condition, in other words, when it passes suddenly from a phase of lower to a phase of higher irritability.

An induction-shock is a current of very short duration, developed very suddenly and disappearing more gradually. Hence when it falls into a nerve, the nerve undergoes a sudden transition from its normal condition to the catelectrotonic phase, and consequently a nervous impulse giving rise to a contraction is the result. The return from the anelectrotonic phase to the normal condition is more gradual, and accordingly no nervous impulse is generated and no contraction is witnessed. We might add that the anelectrotonic phase to the normal condition appears from a number of considerations to be less effective as a generator of nervous impulses than the change from the normal condition to the catelectrotonic phase. Hence in the induced current we have to deal with a "making" contraction only, the breaking contraction being absent. This is true whether the induced current be produced by the making or the breaking of a constant current.

Law of Contraction.—At the making of a constant current, then, there is set up a condition of catelectrotonus and of anelectrotonus; on the breaking of the current these conditions, with more or less rebound, disappear. What have these changes to do with the generation of nervous impulses?

It has already been stated that when a constant current is applied to a nerve, a contraction is caused in the muscle, *i. e.*, a nervous impulse is started in the nerve, either at the make or at the break, or at both. On further examination it is found that the occurrence or non-occurrence of a contraction depends on the direction (*i. e.*, whether descending with the cathode nearest the muscle, Fig. 26, *A*, or ascending with the anode nearest the muscle, Fig. 26, *B*) and the intensity of the current. The results have been formulated in the following "law of contraction:"

	Descending.		Ascending.	
	Make.	Break.	Make.	Break.
Very weak, ...	C	—	—	—
Weak, ...	C	—	C	—
Moderate, ...	C	C	C	C
Strong, ...	C	—	—	C

where C indicates a contraction. This law becomes intelligible if we suppose that nervous impulses are originated only by the rise of catelectrotonus and by the fall of anelectrotonus, and not at all by the rise of anelectrotonus, or by the fall of catelectrotonus, or by the steady maintaincnce of either. Remembering that in catelectrotonus irritability is increased and in anelectrotonus diminished, we may formulate the law as follows: A nervous impulse is generated at any point of a nerve when there is a sudden change from a phase of lower to one of higher irritability, as from the normal condition to catelectrotonus or from anelectrotonus to the normal condition. We must, however, further suppose that the rise of catelectrotonus more readily gives rise to an impulse, or gives rise to a larger impulse, than does the fall of anelectrotonus, and that the condition of anelectrotonus, especially when pronounced, is an obstacle to the passage towards the muscle of impulses originating on the side away from the muscle. Thus, with weak currents, a contraction occurs only at the make, at the rise of catelectrotonus, of both the descending and ascending currents. But the contraction is easier to get with the descending than with the ascending current, because in the latter the impulse started at the cathode has to pass through an anelectrotonic region before it can arrive at the muscle, and hence with "very weak" currents we get a contraction with the make of the descending current only. With a moderate current, as for instance with a single Daniell acting as the source of the current, there is a contraction both at the make and at the break of both ascending and descending currents; the fall of anelectrotonus here is able, as well as the rise of catelectrotonus, to originate a nervous impulse. Lastly, when the current is very strong, as that for instance of two or more Groves, making the ascending current produces no contraction, because the anelectrotonus round the anode blocks the impulse starting from the cathode. The fall of anelectrotonus, however, at the anode, there being nothing between it and the muscle, does cause a contraction. With the descending current the rise of catelectrotonus produces a making contraction, but there is no breaking contraction; the absence of the latter may be accounted for, partly by the strong current depressing the irritability and especially the conductivity of the intrapolar nerve, and partly perhaps by supposing that the rebound on the disappearance of catelectrotonus at the cathode, occurring as it does in a part lying between the anode and the muscle, serves to block the downward progress of the impulse started by the fall of anelectrotonus at the anode. This blocking of nervous impulses by the defective conduction caused in anelectrotonus, is the reason why in testing the variations of irritability in anelectrotonus and catelectrotonus it is preferable to apply the stimulus between the muscle and the polarizing current.

It has already been stated that in many cases the making or breaking of a constant current gives rise not to a single spasm only but to a pronounced tetanus, often spoken of as the making or breaking tetanus. Of these two the most common is the breaking tetanus, or Ritter's tetanus, which appears when a strong current has been applied for some time to a nerve. It is developed most readily and lasts longest after the application of an ascending current, but may also make its appearance with a descending current. When it manifests itself it may be at once diminished or suspended altogether by applying the same current in the same direction. It is increased by applying the current in an opposite direction. The making tetanus is seen with currents of a certain intensity only, being absent with those of less or greater strength. Both forms are due to profound electrolytic changes in the nerve, those of the making tetanus being of a catelectrotonic, and those of the breaking tetanus of an anelectrotonic character.

The constant current applied directly to a muscle from which the purely nervous element has been eliminated by urari poisoning, has effects similar to and yet somewhat different from those which it has upon a nerve. The efficacy of the rise of catelectrotonus and the fall of anelectrotonus respectively in producing contraction is the same as in a nerve. In one respect the muscle is more striking, and offers a support of the hypothesis mentioned above. The making contraction may under favorable circumstances be seen to start from the cathode, and the breaking contraction from the anode. Another marked difference between muscle and nerve is that in muscle the current must act for a much longer time upon the tissue before it can call forth a contraction. This is what we might expect from the more sluggish nature of the muscular impulse-wave. Hence muscular tissue which has lost its nervous elements or does not possess them, is far less readily affected by the almost momentary induction-shocks than are nerves.

During the passage of a constant current the muscle is thrown into a partial tetanus, which, however, may be sufficiently weak to permit the simple make and break contractions to be readily observed.[1] Very frequently this tetanus changes into a regular rhythmic pulsation if the intramuscular nerves be intact.

SEC. 4. THE MUSCLE-NERVE PREPARATION AS A MACHINE.

The facts described in the foregoing sections show that a muscle with its nerve may be justly regarded as a machine which, when stimulated, will do a certain amount of work. But the actual amount of work which a muscle-nerve preparation will do is found to depend on a large number of circumstances, and consequently to vary within very wide limits. These variations will be largely determined by the condition of the muscle and nerve in respect to their nutrition; in other words, by the degree of irritability manifested by the muscle or by the nerve, or by both. But quite apart from the general influences affecting its nutrition, and thus its irritability, a muscle-nerve preparation is affected as regards the amount of its work by a variety of other circumstances, which we may briefly consider here, reserving to a succeeding section the study of variations in irritability.

---

[1] Cf. Romanes, Journal of Anat. and Phys., x, p. 707.

The Nature and Mode of Application of the Stimulus as affecting the Amount and Character of the Contraction.

Within the body, the stimuli which bring about natural muscular contractions are nervous impulses proceeding from the central nervous system. As far as we know, these natural nervous impulses are identical in character with the nervous impulses set going in the course of the nerve by artificial stimuli. Since in the majority of cases natural muscular contractions are tetanic in nature, the natural nervous impulses occur, not singly, but repeated in series, the interval between successive impulses being always about one-nineteenth of a second (see p. 80). Variations therefore in the energy and extent of natural muscular contractions must (apart from variations in the irritability of the muscles or nerves) depend on the energy of the individual nervous impulses as they leave the central nervous system, and not on any change in the rapidity of their sequence.

A mechanical stimulus in the shape of a single tap or blow, pinch or prick, may produce a single spasm, and slight taps repeated regularly and rapidly may be used to produce a tetanus. As a rule, however, the injury inflicted by a mechanical stimulus destroys the irritability of the spot stimulated, and so prevents a repetition of the spasms. On the other hand, even a momentary injury may produce changes leading to a tetanus. A chemical stimulus produces an irregular tetanus, as does also the sudden application of heat.

The constant current acts, as we have seen, as a stimulus only when its intensity suddenly rises or falls, making and breaking of the circuit being extreme cases of rise and fall. If the rise or fall be sufficiently gradual a current may, while still passing through a nerve, be very largely increased or diminished without giving rise to any contraction; whereas even a very slight sudden rise or fall may at once cause one, the effect being the greater the more sudden the change. This influence of the suddenness of the change is also seen in the case of single induction-shocks; the breaking shock, which is developed much more rapidly than the making shock, is by far the more potent of the two.

It is worthy of notice, as a matter of practical importance, that muscular substance, with its more sluggish impulse of stimulation (see p. 94), is when devoid of nerves more susceptible towards the more slowly acting (break and make of the) constant current than towards the momentary induction-shock.

Hence muscles which by degeneration have lost their nervous supply respond to the constant current much more readily than to an induction-shock. By this test the condition of the nerves in the muscle of cases of paralysis may be ascertained.

In order that a galvanic current of any kind may call forth a contraction, some appreciable length of nerve must be placed between the electrodes. If the current simply be sent transversely through a nerve, little or no contraction takes place.

According to Tschirjew,[1] however, both muscle and nerve are irritable in a transverse direction; which may be called the specific irritability, being in the case of muscle not at all less, and in the case of nerve only slightly less in a transverse than in a longitudinal direction.

With the same strength of current, the longer the piece of nerve the greater the contractions.

This when the constant current is used as a stimulus is said to be true of the descending but not of the ascending current, and the results are more constant with the making than breaking of the current.[2]

The amount of the contraction is, as might be expected, dependent on the strength of the stimulus, but a limit to the increase of the contraction caused by augmenting the stimulus is soon reached. Thus if the nerve of a muscle-nerve preparation be stimulated at intervals by currents of increasing intensity, beginning with those having no effect at all, it is found that the effect, as measured by the height of the contraction, rises very rapidly to a maximum, beyond which it remains constant so long as the irritability of the preparation continues unchanged.

We have in a preceding section (p. 78) discussed at length the manner in which a stimulus repeated sufficiently rapidly produces a complete and uniform tetanus, during which the constituent single contractions cannot be recognized either by the appearance of the muscle itself or by any features in the curve which it may be made to describe, though the "muscular sound" shows that the muscle is really in a state of vibration. If the frequency of the stimulus be reduced the tetanus becomes incomplete and a flickering of the muscle becomes obvious, and upon further reduction of the frequency the flickering gives place to a rhythmic series of single contractions. The exact frequency of repetition required to produce complete tetanus varies according to the condition of the muscle, and is not the same for all muscles, being dependent on the rapidity with which the muscle executes each single contraction. In those animals which possess two kinds of skeletal muscles, red and pale, the red muscles (the single contractions of which are slow and long-drawn) are thrown into complete tetanus with a repetition of much less frequency than that required for the pale muscles.[1]

---

[1] Archiv f. Anat. u. Physiol., 1877, p. 489.

[2] Willy, Pflüger's Archiv, v, 1872, 275. Cf. Marcuse, Verh. d. Phys. Med. Ges. in Würzburg, x, 1877, 158.

Kronecker and Stirling[2] find 10 stimuli per second quite sufficient to throw the red muscles of the rabbit into complete tetanus, while the pale muscles require at least 20 stimuli per second.

When the stimulus is repeated more frequently than is required to bring about a complete tetanus the contractions are still proportionately increased in frequency. This is shown by the increased pitch of the muscular sound. The interesting question then arises, How far can the increase in the frequency of the constituent contractions be carried by increasing the frequency of the stimulus? But this question obviously involves two problems: (1) How far can the frequency of nervous impulses be carried? What is the limit to which the duration of a stimulus may be reduced without the stimulus ceasing to evoke a nervous impulse? and (2) To what extent may the frequency of nervous impulses be increased without the muscle ceasing to respond by a contraction to each nervous impulse? One would naturally suppose that there is a limit to the duration of a stimulus (of a galvanic current for instance) necessary to efficiency, and that the limit would vary with the strength of the stimulus, the stronger stimuli remaining effective with the shorter duration. And the experience of many observers confirms this view. König[3] came to the conclusion that a galvanic current of even maximum strength as a stimulus must last at least about .0015 second in order to generate a nervous impulse. And Bernstein[4] found that when induction-shocks of submaximal intensity are thrown sufficiently rapidly (the necessary rapidity varying with the strength of the shocks) into a muscle-nerve preparation, tetanus of the muscle fails to appear; there is an initial contraction at the commencement of the series of shocks, and after that complete rest. By adequately increasing the strength of the stimulus, however, tetanus might always be brought about. The absence of tetanus with submaximal stimulation might be interpreted as indicating the failure not so much of nervous impulses as of the conversion of the nervous into the muscular impulse, *i. e.*, the molecular forerunner in the muscle of the visible contraction. Kronecker and Stirling,[1] by using a special instrument for rapid interruption, the so-called tone-inductorium, have been able to obtain in all cases a complete tetanus with alternating induction-shocks, even when repeated they believe as frequently as 22,000 times a second; and they conclude that "the upper limit of the frequency of electrical stimulation which can throw a muscle into tetanus lies near the limit where variations in the current can no longer be detected by the help of other physical rheoscopes," and therefore far beyond König's limit.

---

[1] Ranvier, Archives de Physiol., vi (1874), p. 5.

[2] Archiv Anat. u. Physiol., 1878, p. 1, and Journal Physiol., i (1878), p. 384.

[3] Wien. Sitzungs-Berichte, lxii (1870).

[4] Nerven- und Muskel-System, 1871. See also Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 121.

With regard to the second question, the following important observation is worth attention: Helmholtz[2] has shown that when an induction-shock giving a maximum contraction is followed at an interval of less than $\frac{1}{600}$th second by a second shock of equal strength, no second contraction appears at all. During $\frac{1}{600}$th second subsequent to the first shock the muscle is absolutely devoid of irritability; it is in a "refractory phase" similar to but much shorter than that which is so conspicuous in cardiac muscles. Hence if a number of maximum induction-shocks be sent into a muscle or nerve at intervals of a little less than $\frac{1}{600}$th second half the shocks sent in would seem to be without effect. But this is only true of maximum stimuli. We do not know where to place a similar limit to submaximal contractions.

When two pairs of electrodes are placed on the nerve of a long and a perfectly fresh and successful nerve-preparation, one near to the cut end, and the other nearer the muscle, it is found that the same stimulus produces a greater contraction when applied through the former pair of electrodes than through the latter. Two interpretations of this result are possible. Either the nerve at the part farther away from the muscle is more irritable, *i. e.*, that the stimulus gives rise *at the spot stimulated* to a larger nervous impulse; or the impulse started at the farther electrodes gathers strength, like an avalanche, in its progress to the muscle. The latter view has been strongly urged by Pflüger, and is generally known under the name of the "avalanche theory." As far as we know, however, the progress of the negative variation along a nerve is marked by no such increase. It is probable that the larger contraction produced by stimulation of the portions of the nerve near the spinal cord is due to the stimulus setting free a larger impulse, *i. e.*, to this part of the nerve being more irritable.

The effect is not due to the section merely, for it may be witnessed in nerves still in connection with the spinal cord. Heidenhain[1] states, however, that under these circumstances the diminution of the effect is not gradual from the central to the peripheral portions, as when the nerve is cut; on the contrary, the amount of contraction is at first large, then becomes smaller, and finally increases somewhat again as the stimulation is carried from the roots of the nerves to the muscular periphery.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Berlin. Monatsbericht, 1854.

Hällstén (*Arch. Anat. Phys.*, 1876, 242) moreover found that in the case of sensory nerves also the effect produced was greater when the stimulus was applied to the more central than when it was applied to the more peripheral portions of the nerve; at least reflex actions were more easily excited.

It is probable that the irritability of the nerve may vary considerably at different points along its course. And Fleischl[2] states that an induction-shock when applied as an ascending current has a greater effect on the more peripheral, and when applied as a descending current a greater effect on the more central portions of a nerve.

The Influence of the Load.

It might be imagined that a muscle, which, when loaded with a given weight, say 20 grams, and stimulated by a current of a given intensity, had contracted to a certain extent, would only contract to half that extent when loaded with twice the weight (40 grams) and stimulated with the same stimulus. Such, however, is not the case; the height to which the weight is raised may be in the second instance as great, or even greater, than in the first. That is to say, the resistance offered to the contraction actually increases the contraction, the tension of the muscular fibre increases the facility with which the explosive changes resulting in a contraction take place. And it has been observed by Heidenhain[3] that tension applied to a muscle increases both the chemical products (carbonic and lactic acids) and the rise of temperature which accompany a contraction. There is, of course, a limit to this favorable action of the resistance. As the load continues to be increased, the height of the contraction is diminished, and at last a point is reached at which the muscle is unable (even when the stimulus chosen is the strongest possible) to lift the load at all.

It is said that a muscle, loaded beyond its power, relaxes and lengthens when stimulated instead of shortening, in consequence of that increase of extensibility which is a characteristic of the contracted state. The occurrence of this lengthening is however doubtful.

---

[1] Stud. Physiol. Instit., Breslau, ii (1861).

[2] Wien. Sitz.-Bericht, lxxii (1875), lxxiv (1876). Compare, however, Tiegel, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 598.

[3] Mechanische Leistung, Wärmeentwicklung und Stoffumsatz bei der Muskelthätigkeit. Leipzig, 1864.

It is obvious that the work done (height to which the load is raised multiplied into the weight of the load) must, therefore, be largely dependent on the weight itself. Thus there is a certain weight of load with which in any given muscle, stimulated by a given stimulus, the most work will be done.

Since mere tension affects the changes going on in the muscular fibres, it is desirable in experiments in which muscles are loaded, that the weight should not bear upon the lever until the contraction actually begins. This is easily managed by interposing between the end of the muscle and the weight a lever with a support so arranged that, before contraction takes place, the weight only extends the muscle to the length natural to it during rest; but that the muscle directly it shortens at once begins to pull on the weight. The muscle is then said to be *after-loaded*.[1]

If the weight be determined which will stop a contraction when applied directly the contraction begins, and also that which stops any further contraction when applied at a moment when the contraction is already partly accomplished, it will be found that the second weight is much less than the first. It will be found, in fact, that the forces which produce the change in the form of the muscle are at their maximum at the beginning of the shortening, and thenceforwards decline until they become nothing when the shortening is complete.

Influence of the Size and Form of the Muscle.

Since all known muscular fibres are much shorter than the wave-length of a contraction, it is obvious that the longer the fibre the greater the height of the contraction with the same stimulus. Hence in a muscle of parallel fibres, the height to which the load is raised as the result of a given stimulus applied to its nerve, will depend on the length of the fibres, while the weight of the load so lifted will depend on the number of the fibres, since the load is distributed among them. Of two muscles, therefore, of equal length (and of the same quality) the most work will be done by that which has the greater sectional area; and of two muscles with equal sectional areas, the most work will be done by that which is the longer. If the two muscles are unequal both in length and sectional area, the work done will be the greater in the one which has the larger bulk, which contains the greater number of cubic units. In speaking, therefore, of the maximum of work which can be done by a muscle, we may use as a standard a cubic unit of bulk, or, the specific gravity of the muscle being the same, a unit of weight.

---

[1] This is perhaps the best equivalent of the German *überlastet*.

In the case of frog's muscle, the maximum of work which can be done under most favorable circumstances has been estimated by Fick[1] to vary between 3 and 7 grammeters for 1 grm. of muscle.

The weight which is just sufficient, but only just sufficient to keep a muscle, when stimulated, from actually shortening, may be taken as the measure of the "absolute power" of the muscle. It must, of course, be taken only in relation to the sectional area of the muscle. The absolute power of a square centimeter of a frog's muscle has been in this way estimated at about 2800 to 3000 grms.: of a square centimeter of human muscle at 6000 to 8000 grms.

SEC. 5. THE CIRCUMSTANCES WHICH DETERMINE THE DEGREE OF IRRITABILITY OF MUSCLES AND NERVES.

A muscle-nerve preparation, at the time that it is removed from the body, possesses a certain degree of irritability, it responds by a contraction of a certain amount to a stimulus of a certain strength, applied to the nerve or to the muscle. After awhile, the exact period depending on a variety of circumstances, the same stimulus produces a smaller contraction, *i. e.*, the irritability of the preparation has diminished. In other words, the muscle or nerve, or both, have become partially "exhausted," and the exhaustion subsequently increases, the same stimulus producing smaller contractions until at last all irritability is lost, no stimulus however strong producing any contraction whether applied to the nerve or directly to the muscle; and eventually the muscle, as we have seen, becomes rigid. The progress of this exhaustion is more rapid in the nerves than in the muscles; for some time after the nerve-trunk has ceased to respond to even the strongest stimulus, contractions may be obtained by applying the stimulus directly to the muscle. It is much more rapid in the warm-blooded than in the cold-blooded animals. The muscles and nerves of the former lose their irritability when removed from the body after a period varying, according to circumstances, from a few minutes to two or three hours; those of *cold-blooded* animals (or at least of an amphibian or a reptile) may, under favorable conditions, remain irritable for two, three, or even more days.

---

[1] Untersuch. ü. Muskelarbeit, Basel, 1867.

If a sharp blow with some thin body be struck across a muscle which has entered into the later stages of exhaustion, a wheal lasting for several seconds is developed. This wheal appears to be a contraction-wave limited to the part struck, and disappearing very *slowly* without extending to the neighboring muscular substance. It has been called an "idio-muscular" contraction, because it may be brought out even when ordinary stimuli have ceased to produce any effect. It may, however, be accompanied at its beginning by an ordinary contraction. It is readily produced in the living body on the pectoral and other muscles of persons suffering from phthisis and other exhausting diseases.

This natural exhaustion and diminution of irritability in muscles and nerves removed from the body may be modified both in the case of the muscle and of the nerve by a variety of circumstances. Similarly, while the nerve and muscle still remain in the body, the irritability of the one or of the other may be modified either in the way of increase or of decrease by various events. We have already seen (p. 106) how the constant current produces the variations in irritability known as catelectrotonus and anelectrotonus. We have now to study the effect of more general influences, of which the most important are severance from the central nervous system, and variations in temperature, in blood-supply, and in functional activity.

The Effects of Severance from the Central Nervous System.

When a nerve, such for instance as the sciatic, is divided *in situ*, in the living body, there is first of all observed a slight increase of irritability, noticeable especially near the cut end; but after awhile the irritability diminishes and gradually disappears. Both the slight initial increase and the subsequent decrease begin at the cut end and advance centrifugally towards the peripheral terminations. This centrifugal feature of the loss of irritability is often spoken of as the Ritter-Valli law. In a mammal it may be two or three days; in a frog, as many, or even more weeks, before irritability has disappeared from the nerve-trunk. It is maintained in the small (and especially in the intramuscular) branches for still longer periods.

A similar slight temporary increase of irritability is seen to follow the section of a nerve even when removed from the body. In the neighborhood of the section the nerve is for awhile more irritable after the section than it was before.

This centrifugal loss of irritability is the forerunner in the peripheral portion of the divided nerve of structural changes which proceed in a similar centrifugal manner. The medulla suffers changes similar to those seen in nerve-fibres after removal from the body. Its double contour, and its characteristic indentations become more marked; it breaks up into small irregular segments or drops, a separation apparently taking place between its proteid and its fatty constituents. The latter are soon absorbed, but the former remain for a longer time within the sheath of Schwann, being in some cases scarcely, if at all, to be distinguished from the swollen axis-cylinder. Meanwhile the nuclei of the sheath of Schwann divide and multiply rapidly. If no regeneration takes place the whole contents of the sheath are gradually absorbed, the axis-cylinder disappearing last.

In the central portion of the divided nerve similar changes may be traced as far only as the next node of Ranvier. Beyond this the nerve usually remains in a normal condition.

Regeneration, when it occurs, is carried out by the peripheral growth of the axis-cylinders of the intact central portion. When the cut ends of the nerve are close together the axis-cylinders growing out from the central portion run into and between the sheaths of Schwann of the peripheral portion; but much uncertainty still exists as to the exact parts played by the proliferated nuclei of the sheath of Schwann, the proteid remnants of the medulla, and the old axis-cylinders of the peripheral portion in giving rise to the new structures of the regenerated fibres.

This degeneration may be observed to extend down to the very endings of the nerve in the muscle, including the end-plates, but does not affect the muscular substance itself. The muscle, though it has lost all its nervous elements, still remains irritable towards stimuli applied directly to itself; an additional proof of the existence of an independent muscular irritability. As was mentioned before (p. 112), it is not easily stimulated by single induction-shocks, but responds readily to the make or break of a constant current. If it be thus artificially stimulated from time to time it will remain irritable for a very considerable, possibly for an indefinite time; but if it be not thus thrown into functional activity, its irritability ultimately disappears and its substance undergoes degeneration.

The Influence of Temperature.

We have already seen (p. 63) that sudden heat applied to a limited part of a nerve or muscle, as when the nerve or muscle is touched with a hot wire, will act as a stimulus, and the same might be said of cold when sufficiently intense. It is, however, much more difficult to generate nervous or muscular impulses by exposing a whole nerve or muscle to a gradual rise of temperature. Thus according to most observers a nerve belonging to a muscle[1] may be either cooled to 0° C. or below, or heated to 50° or even 100° C., without discharging any nervous impulses, as shown by the absence of contraction in the attached muscle.

The contractions, moreover, may be absent even when the heating has not been very gradual. Several observers, however, have found that contractions (of an irregular flickering tetanic nature) result when a nerve is heated in water, or in oil, or in a moist atmosphere to 50° or even less. It has been suggested that the contractions in these cases are due rather to spontaneous impulses (whose discharge was favored by the increased molecular activity caused by the rise of the temperature) than to the heat acting as a stimulus, but this seems hardly satisfactory.[2]

A muscle may be cooled to 0° C. or below without any contraction being caused; but when it is heated to a limit, which in the case of frog's muscles is about 45°, of mammalian muscles about 50°, a sudden change takes place: the muscle falls, at the limiting temperature, into a rigor mortis, which is initiated by a forcible contraction or at least shortening. The rigor mortis thus brought about by heat is often spoken of as rigor caloris.

Moderate warmth, *ex. gr.*, in the frog an increase of temperature to 45° C., favors both muscular and nervous irritability. All the molecular processes are hastened and facilitated; the contraction is for a given stimulus greater and more rapid, *i. e.*, of shorter duration, and nervous impulses are generated more readily by slight stimuli. Owing to the quickening of the chemical changes, the supply of new material may prove insufficient; hence muscles and nerves removed from the body lose their irritability more rapidly at a high than at a low temperature.

---

[1] The action of cold and heat on sensory nerves will be considered in the latter portion of the work.

[2] Grützner, Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 215. Cf. Lautenbach, Journ. Phys., ii (1879), p. 1.

The gradual application of cold to a nerve, especially when the temperature is thus brought near to 0°, slackens all the molecular processes, so that the wave of nervous impulse is lessened and prolonged, the velocity of its passage being much diminished, from 28 m. *e. g.* to 1 m. per sec. At about 0° the irritability of the nerve disappears altogether.

When a muscle is exposed to similar cold, *ex. gr.*, to a temperature very little above zero, the contractions are remarkably prolonged; they are diminished in extent at the same time, but not in proportion to the increase of their duration. Exposed to a temperature of zero or below, muscles soon lose their irritability, without, however, undergoing rigor mortis. After an exposure of not more than a few seconds to a temperature not much below zero, they may be restored, by gradual warmth, to an irritable condition, even though they may appear to have been frozen. When kept frozen, however, for some few minutes, or when exposed for a less time to temperatures of several degrees below zero, their irritability is permanently destroyed. When thawed they enter into rigor mortis of a most pronounced character.

The Influence of Blood-supply.

When a muscle still within the body is deprived by any means of its proper blood-supply, as when the bloodvessels going to it are ligatured, the same gradual loss of irritability and final appearance of rigor mortis are observed as in muscles removed out of the body. Thus if the abdominal aorta be ligatured, the muscles of the lower limbs lose their irritability and finally become rigid. So also in systemic death, when the blood-supply to the muscles is cut off by the cessation of the circulation, loss of irritability ensues, and rigor mortis eventually follows. In a human corpse the muscles of the body enter into rigor mortis in a fixed order: first those of the jaw and neck, then those of the trunk, next those of the arms, and lastly those of the legs. The rapidity with which rigor mortis comes on after death varies considerably, being determined both by external circumstances and by the internal conditions of the body. Thus external warmth hastens and cold retards the onset. After great muscular exertion, as in hunted animals, and when death closes wasting diseases, rigor mortis in most cases comes on rapidly. As a general rule it may be said that the later it is in making its appearance, the more pronounced it is, and the longer it lasts; but there are many exceptions, and when the state is recognized as being fundamentally due to a coagulation, it is easy to understand that the amount of rigidity, *i. e.*, the amount of the coagulum, and the rapidity of the onset, *i. e.*, the quickness with which coagulation takes place, may vary independently. The rapidity of onset after muscular exercise and wasting disease is apparently dependent on an excess of acid, which seems to be favorable to the coagulation of the muscle, plasma being produced under those circumstances in the muscle. When rigor mortis has once become thoroughly established in a muscle through deprivation of blood, it cannot be removed by any subsequent supply of blood. Thus where the abdominal aorta has remained ligatured until the lower limbs have become completely rigid, untying the ligature will not restore the muscles to an irritable condition; it simply hastens the decomposition of the dead tissues by supplying them with oxygen and, in the case of the mammal, with warmth also.

A muscle, however, may acquire as a whole a certain amount of rigidity on account of some of the fibres becoming rigid, while the remainder, though they have lost their irritability, have not yet advanced into rigor mortis. At such a juncture a renewal of the blood stream may restore the irritability of those fibres which were not yet rigid, and thus appear to do away with rigor mortis; yet it appears that in such cases the fibres which have actually become rigid never regain their irritability, but undergo degeneration. It is stated however by Preyer[1] that if the even completely rigid muscles of the frog be washed out with a 10 per cent. sodium-chloride solution (which dissolves myosin), and subsequently injected with blood, irritability will be restored.

Mere loss of irritability, even though complete, if stopping short of the actual coagulation of the muscle-substance may be with care removed. Thus if a stream of blood be sent artificially through the vessels of a separated (mammalian) muscle, the irritability may be maintained for a very considerable time. On stopping the artificial circulation, the irritability diminishes and in time entirely disappears; if however the stream be at once resumed, the irritability will be recovered. By regulating the flow, the irritability may be lowered and

---

[1] Centrbl. f. med. Wisschft., 1864, p. 769.

(up to a certain limit) raised at pleasure. From the epoch however of interference with the normal blood stream there is a gradual diminution in the responses to stimuli, and ultimately the muscle loses all its irritability and becomes rigid, however well the artificial circulation be kept up. This failure is probably in great part due to the blood sent through the tissue not being in a perfectly normal condition; but we have at present very little information on this point. Indeed with respect to the *quality* of blood thus essential to the maintenance or restoration of irritability, our knowledge is definite with regard to one factor only, viz., the oxygen. If blood deprived of its oxygen be sent through a muscle removed from the body, irritability, so far from being maintained, seems rather to have its disappearance hastened. In fact, if venous blood continue to be driven through the muscle, the irritability is lost even more rapidly than in the entire absence of blood. It would seem that venous blood is more injurious than none at all. If exhaustion be not carried too far, the muscle may, however, be revived by a proper supply of oxygenated blood.

In a muscle, the irritability of which has been suspended by a current of venous blood, the assumption of a minute fraction of oxygen is sufficient to restore irritability to such an extent that a very distinct amount of contraction is visible on the application of stimuli. Much more than this must be taken up before the muscle can regain the standard at which it was previous to the action of the venous stream.[1]

The influence of blood-supply cannot be so satisfactorily studied in the case of nerves as in the case of muscles; there can however be little doubt that the effects are analogous.

The Influence of Functional Activity.

This too is more easily studied in the case of muscles than of nerves.

When a muscle within the body is unused, it wastes; when used it (within certain limits) grows. Both these facts show that the nutrition of a muscle is favorably affected by its functional activity.

Part of this may be an indirect effect of the increased blood-supply which occurs when a muscle contracts. When a nerve going to a muscle is stimulated, the bloodvessels of the muscle dilate. Hence at the time of the contraction more blood flows through the muscle, and this increased flow continues for some little while after the contraction of the muscle has ceased.

---

[1] Ludwig and Schmidt, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1868, p. 1.

A muscle, even within the body, after prolonged action is fatigued, *i. e.*, a stronger stimulus is required to produce the same contraction; in other words, its irritability is reduced by functional activity.

The fatigue of which, after prolonged or unusual exertion, we are conscious in our own bodies, arises partly from an exhaustion of muscles, partly from an exhaustion of motor nerves, but chiefly from an exhaustion of the central nervous system concerned in the production of voluntary impulses. A man who says he is absolutely exhausted may, under excitement, perform a very large amount of work with his already wearied muscles. The will rarely, if ever, calls forth the greatest contractions of which the muscles are capable.

Absolute (temporary) exhaustion of the muscles, so that the strongest stimuli produce no contraction, may be produced even within the body by artificial stimulation; recovery takes place on rest. Out of the body absolute exhaustion takes place readily. Here also recovery may take place. Whether in any given case it does occur or not is determined by the amount of contraction causing the exhaustion, and by the previous condition of the muscle. In all cases recovery is hastened by renewal (natural or artificial) of the blood-stream. The more rapidly the contractions follow each other, the less the interval between any two contractions, the more rapid the exhaustion. A certain number of single induction-shocks repeated rapidly, say every second or oftener, bring about exhaustive loss of irritability more rapidly than the same number of shocks repeated less rapidly, for instance, every five or ten seconds. Hence tetanus is a ready means of producing exhaustion.

There are reasons for thinking that for each muscle it may be possible to choose such an interval between successful stimuli of suitable strength as shall not only not hasten, but, perhaps, even retard the gradual normal exhaustion following upon removal from the body. In other words, it is probable that the exhaustion caused by a contraction is immediately followed by a reaction favorable to the nutrition of the muscle; and this possibly is the real reason why a muscle is increased by use.

When a muscle is subjected to a prolonged tetanus the course of exhaustion, as indicated by the varying heights to which the load is successively raised by the repeated contractions, is at first very slow, afterwards more rapid, and finally slow again.

The amount of the load, provided this be not too great, has no marked effect on the course of exhaustion. If two muscles be after-loaded, one with a heavy, the other with a light weight, and stimulated at the same intervals with the same stimulus, the course of exhaustion will be parallel in the two cases, though the more heavily laden muscle, responding at the outset with smaller contractions than the more highly laden one, will be the first to enter that stage of exhaustion at which the contractions cease to be visible.[1] The above is probably only true for weights up to the standard which is most favorable for the muscle's doing work. See *ante*, p. 115. Weights heavier than this quicken exhaustion, and the mere extension caused by loading with a heavy weight (even when unaccompanied by a contraction) is exhausting.

Whether there be a third factor, *i. e.*, whether muscles, for instance, are governed by so-called trophic nerves, which affect their nutrition directly in some other way than by influencing either their blood-supply or activity, must at present be left undecided.

Muscles exhausted by prolonged action may have their irritability temporarily restored by passing through them for some time a constant current.

In exhausted muscles the elasticity is much diminished; the tired muscle returns less readily to its natural length than does the fresh one.

The exhaustion due to contraction may be the result: (1) Either of the consumption of the store of really contractile material present in the muscle. Or (2) of the accumulation in the tissue of the products of the act of contraction. Or (3) of both of these causes.

The restorative influence of rest may be explained by supposing that during the repose, either the internal changes of the tissue manufacture new explosive material out of the comparatively raw material already present in the fibres, or the directly hurtful products of the act of contraction undergo changes by which they are converted into comparatively inert bodies. A stream of fresh blood may exert its restorative influence, not only by quickening the above two events, but also by carrying off the immediate waste products, while at the same time it brings new raw material. It is not known to what extent each of these parts is played. That the products of contraction are exhausting in their effects is shown by the fact that exhausted muscles are recovered by the simple injection of inert saline solutions into their blood-vessels; and that such bodies as lactic acid injected into a muscle cause rapid exhaustion; a striking instance is seen in the effect of dilute alkalies in restoring the beat of the exhausted frog's heart. One important element brought by fresh blood is oxygen. This, as we have seen, is not necessary for the carrying out of the actual contraction, and yet is essential to the maintenance of irritability. It is probably of use as what may be called intramolecular oxygen[1] in preparing the explosive material whose decomposition gives rise to the carbonic acid, and other products of contraction.

---

[1] Kronecker, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1871.

It is stated by Kronecker[2] that oxygen, not in the form of oxyhæmoglobin, but administered roughly in the form of an injection of permanganate of potash, restores the irritability of exhausted muscle.

After prolonged artificial excitation of a muscle within the body the exhaustion is accompanied or rather followed by histological changes of the nature of degeneration.

SEC. 6. A FURTHER DISCUSSION OF SOME POINTS IN THE PHYSIOLOGY OF MUSCLE AND NERVE.

The Electrical Phenomena of Muscle and Nerve.

The Natural Currents—The Pre-existence Theory.—As was stated on p. 88, Du Bois-Reymond, and those with him, believe that electric currents naturally exist even in untouched, perfectly uninjured muscles and nerves; and their view is generally spoken of as the "Pre-existence Theory." According to that theory, the muscle (or nerve) is made up of electro-motive particles or molecules imbedded in an indifferent and imperfectly conducting medium.

FIG. 28.

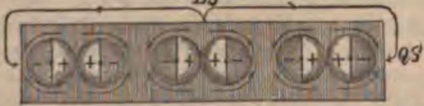


Diagram to Illustrate Du Bois-Reymond's Electro-motive Molecules. Peripolar Condition.

Each molecule is further conceived of as presenting a negative surface to the ends or transverse sections, and a positive surface to the longitudinal surface or section of the muscle; the molecule, in fact, may be regarded as a minute battery whose positive and negative poles are at the longitudinal and transverse surfaces respectively. For reasons which will appear presently the molecules are further supposed to be not single but double, each half-molecule consisting, as shown in Fig. 28, of a positive and negative part, and the two positive parts of the two halves being placed together so that the double molecule still presents a negative surface to each end or transverse section, and a positive surface to the longitudinal surface or section of the muscle.

---

[1] Compare the section, in a later portion of the work, on the Respiratory Changes in the Tissues.

[2] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1871.

The presence of these (so-called peripolar) molecules disposed throughout the substance of the muscle will give rise to currents in the medium by which they are surrounded. Around each molecule will stream currents circling from the positive middle to the negative ends; owing to the imperfect conductivity of the medium these currents will not only flow, as shown in the diagram, in the immediate neighborhood of each molecule, but will extend in more or less concentric lines at some distance from the molecule. Hence when the electrodes of a galvanometer are connected with two points of the surface of the muscle, the deflection of the needle will indicate a surface current which is a resultant of the numerous currents of the several molecules. And a little consideration will show that the direction and intensity of the currents passing through the galvanometer in different positions of the electrodes will be such as is described on p. 87 and illustrated by the diagram, Fig. 25. It need hardly be added that the hypothesis of electro-motive peripolar molecules is applied to nerves as well as to muscles.

Du Bois-Reymond was led to conceive of these molecules as being double instead of single in order that he might explain the origin of the so-called electrotonic currents which, as we shall presently see, are developed when a nerve is subjected to the action of a constant current. For he supposed that under certain circumstances (among these the passage into the nerve of a constant current) each half of each molecule could be partially or, as shown in Fig. 29, completely reversed, so that in each half-molecule the positive surface was directed to one end and the negative surface to the other end of the piece of nerve. The molecule thus, from being peripolar becomes bipolar, and the currents discharged by each molecule into the surrounding medium have all the same direction.

FIG. 29.

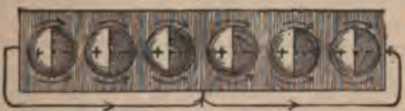


Diagram Illustrating Du Bois-Reymond's Molecules in their Bipolar Condition.

In order to explain the undoubted fact that "natural" currents are either absent or exceedingly feeble in untouched uninjured muscles, Du Bois-Reymond supposes that the ends of the muscles in contact with the tendons are composed of a layer or region in which all the molecules have their *positive* instead of their negative surfaces looking to the ends of the muscle. The molecules of this region, which he calls *the parelectronomic* region, may be looked upon as bipolar, and the arrangement shown in Fig. 29 may be taken as illustrating the condition of the molecules in this parelectronomic region.[1] Obviously the currents which the electro-motive molecules develop in this region are opposed in direction to those originating in the rest of the muscle, and hence either partially or wholly conceal the existence of the latter. The development of this parelectronomic region is stated by Du Bois-Reymond to be greatly assisted by cold, but Hermann, who of course wholly denies the existence of any such region, finds no electrical differences in frogs' muscles kept in a warm room from those kept in an ice-cold cellar, though when currents are developed they are increased by an elevation of temperature.

It is obviously reasonable to infer that if this view of Du Bois-Reymond's be correct, if natural currents do exist in muscles with untouched natural terminations but exist masked by the parelectronomic region, they would manifest themselves in full force immediately, without loss of time, upon the removal or destruction of the parelectronomic region; whereas if Hermann's view be correct that the currents do not pre-exist but are developed by chemical changes due to the injury (or commencing death) of the ends of the muscle, it would be expected that a measurable interval would elapse between, for instance, the tearing or cutting off of the end of a muscle and the appearance of the muscle-currents in their full intensity. And Hermann has attempted to show that such an interval does exist. For this purpose he makes use of the *fall-rheotome*, an instrument the nature of which may be explained here, as it is applicable for other purposes besides the one in question.

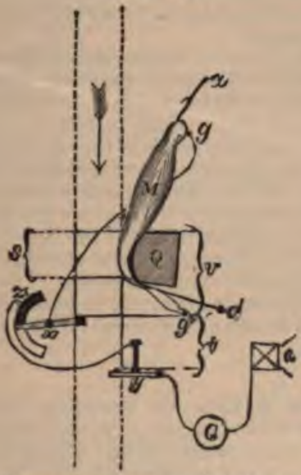
A weight (Fig. 30) is let fall from a height of about four feet in a course indicated by the arrow and the dotted lines. In falling it comes in contact with the exposed lower tendinous expansion of the gastrocnemius muscle M stretched over the ebonite block Q; and tearing this off presumably removes to a greater or less extent the paralectronomic region of Du Bois. The muscle itself at two points g and g' is connected with the galvanometer G, but in the circuit are inserted two keys x and y, which are so arranged that the weight in falling catches a projecting part of x, and *closes* the galvanometer circuit (by pushing the opposite end of x against the metal z); and then *opens* the circuit by pushing down the projecting part of y.

Thus in certain definite successive times, which can be calculated from the rate with which the weight falls, the tendinous end of the muscle is torn off, the galvanometer circuit is closed so that any muscle-current present passes into the galvanometer, and the circuit is again opened. Immediately after such an observation has been made and the deflection noted, the keys are replaced, the weight is again raised and again let fall, and the deflection again noted; during this second fall the muscle, though still in connection with the galvanometer wires, is not affected by the weight. The first deflection is produced by the current which is present in the muscle an extremely small fraction of a second after the stripping off the tendon, the second is produced by the current present in the muscle a certain number of seconds later. The currents pass through the galvanometer for the same time *t*, viz., that taken up by the weight in falling from *x* to *y*; hence then, if one deflection is greater than the other, the current producing it is the stronger of the two currents. In all cases, according to Hermann, the second deflection is stronger than the first, *i. e.*, in the first case the muscle-current has not reached its full strength, or, in other words, the current develops after the injury, and is not present in full force a measurable time after the removal of the parelectronomic layer.

---

[1] Since in the figure the positive surfaces of the molecules look to the left-hand side of the page, the end of the muscle, of which they may be supposed to represent parelectronomic elements, must also be considered as directed to the left-hand side of the page.

FIG. 30.



A Diagram to Illustrate the Fall-Rheotome.

The explanation of most of the figures of reference is given in the text. *s*, the space comprised between the first two dotted horizontal lines, serves as a measure for the time taken in stripping off the tendon. *v* similarly serves to measure the time elapsing between the beginning of the stripping off the tendon and the closure of the galvanometer circuit. *e* is a reversing key connected with a compensator, the use of which is not referred to in the text, for brevity's sake. *a* the hook by which the gastrocnemius is fastened.

The argument based on this is perhaps not very conclusive, but as far as it goes it is adverse to the pre-existence theory.

It might be imagined that the currents which may be observed when the electrodes connected with a galvanometer are placed in contact with various points on the surface of a living body (human or other) indicate the pre-existence of muscle-currents; but it is impossible to prove that these currents are anything but cutaneous currents; and indeed in fishes, according to Hermann, where cutaneous currents are absent, no such "body" currents can be witnessed.

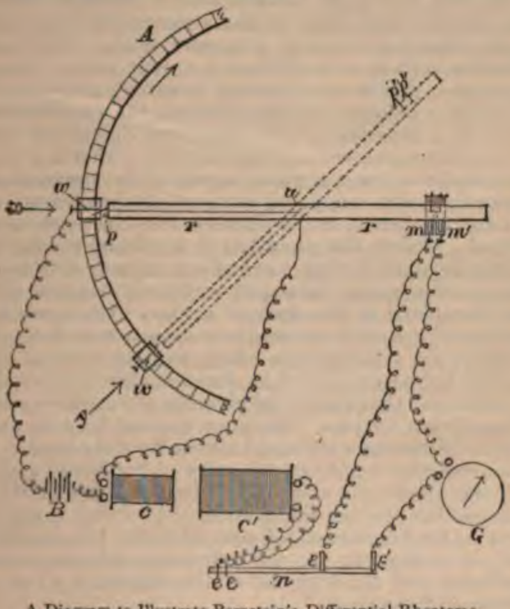
As regards the pre-existence of a current in nerves, a quite similar contention exists; the uninjured nerve in the body is isoelectric; the proof of a normal current here is, to say the least, no stronger than in the case of the muscle.

The diagram, Fig. 25, p. 86, as was stated, illustrates the currents observable in a cylindrical muscle composed of parallel fibres, and with tolerably rectangular terminations. In muscles not having this form, the direction of the currents is different. Thus in a rhomb cut from a muscle with parallel fibres the most positive portions instead of being at the equator of the longitudinal surface are nearer the obtuse angles; and the most negative points instead of being at the centres of the transverse sections are nearer the acute angles. In the frog's gastrocnemius, in which the fibres have a characteristic arrangement, the directions of the currents differ considerably from the scheme given for regular muscles. The currents observed agree however with those theoretically deduced from a consideration of the currents of a rhomb of muscle and of the arrangement of the gastrocnemius fibres.

The Currents of Action.—It was stated above, pp. 92–100, that Bernstein had shown that the "negative variation" or current of action passed along a muscle or nerve from the spot stimulated in the form of a wave travelling in the nerve at the same rate as the nervous impulse, in the muscle at the same rate as the contraction.

The principle of the *differential rheotome* by which Bernstein was enabled to establish this fact, is as follows: A rod r (Fig. 31) is made to rotate with a definite velocity about an axis a. At one end of the rod is a steel pointer p passing obliquely downwards, at the opposite end are two other steel pointers p', p'', also passing obliquely downwards and connected with one another. As the rod rotates the pointer p comes in contact at one part of its course with a stretched wire w, and the pointers p', p'' at one part of their course dip into two isolated mercury cups m, m'. The effect of p coming in contact with w is to stimulate the nerve n, since it closes the primary circuit $B\ c\ a\ w$, and thus causes an induced current in the secondary coil c'. The effect of p', p'' dipping into m, m' is to send into the galvanometer any nerve-current present, since it closes the circuit $m\ \varepsilon\ \varepsilon'\ G\ m'$. Any current of rest present in the nerve is compensated by an arrangement not shown in the figure, so that in the non-stimulated nerve, no deflection of the needle follows closure of the galvanometer circuit. It will be seen that in the position x of the wire w the contact of p with w, and of p', p'' with m, m' is made at the same time, that is, the nerve is stimulated and the galvanometer circuit closed at the same instant. Accordingly if the rod r be made to rotate rapidly, with w in the position x, the nerve will be stimulated, and the galvanometer circuit closed at the same instant, a number of times in succession corresponding to the number of rotations. When this is done, it is found that no deflection of the galvanometer needle takes place, though if the galvanometer circuit be kept closed by connecting m, m' without the aid of p', p'', the repeated contact of p with w as r rotates does produce a most distinct deflection. The conclusion from this is that the electric change in the nerve, started by each contact of p with w, has not had time to affect the galvanometer before p', p'' have left m, m', but has passed away before p', p'' come in contact with m, m' at the next rotation; in other words, that the change of condition which leads to the current is not established instantaneously in the nerve, but takes some appreciable time to pass from the stimulated spot to the electrodes connected with the galvanometer.

FIG. 31.



A Diagram to Illustrate Bernstein's Differential Rheotome.

The explanation of the figures of reference is given in the text. The letter p referring to the pointer which strikes the wire w, is attached to the rod only in the position x. Similarly the references p', p'' are only given in the position y.

If now the position of the wire w be shifted on the arc A a short distance towards y, then p will touch w before p', p'' come to the mercury cups; that is, there will be a short measurable interval between the stimulation of the nerve and the closure of the galvanometer circuit. Suppose then a succession of experiments are made, in each of which w is moved an increasing distance towards y; it will be found that at a certain distance from x a slight deflection is obtained, and as the distance from x increases the deflection increases, goes on increasing, reaches a maximum, then diminishes, and finally, when say w is at y, disappears again. Now in all cases the deflection is such as to indicate a current from ε' through the galvanometer ε, that is as w is moved towards y the first effect observed is that ε becomes slightly negative, the negativity then increases up to a maximum, and afterwards diminishes until once more ε is in the same electric condition as ε'. That is to say, when a nerve is stimulated at any point, a part of the nerve at some distance from the point stimulated does not become negative until a certain time, dependent on the distance from the point stimulated, has elapsed; further the negativity is developed gradually with a certain rapidity, and having reached a maximum declines and disappears; in other words, the negativity travels along the nerve from the spot stimulated in the form of a wave. Obviously by noting the position of w in the various experiments and the rapidity of rotation of r, the rapidity with which this condition of negativity travels down the nerve to ε and its duration there can be calculated. It was in this way that Bernstein[1] obtained the results quoted at the beginning of this section. The same method may be applied to muscle by substituting a curarized muscle for the nerve.

The necessity of employing a series of rotations, and thus of studying the effects, not of a single stimulus, but of the sum of a series, arises from the fact that though the current of action developed by a single induction-shock may be shown by a suitable galvanometer, the indications are not sufficiently delicate to mark the very beginning and the very end of the current, *i. e.*, to give the exact limits of the wave.

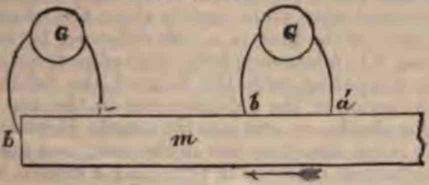
If then, as seems clearly shown by the above, each point of the nerve or muscle becomes negative during the nervous or muscular impulse, several difficulties present themselves. Thus it is obvious that a nervous (or muscular) impulse, started say by a single induction-shock, must give rise at any point not to one only but to two currents, and those in opposite directions. For as the wave of the impulse travels down the fibre (Fig. 32) in the direction of the arrow, a becomes negative and a current is developed which passes through the galvanometer[2] from b to a. Almost immediately afterwards b becomes negative, while the negativity of a diminishes or disappears. We should accordingly expect to find a second current passing through the galvanometer from a to b. And practically such a double current was observed long ago,[1] and has been called by Du Bois-Reymond the "double variation." Indeed the prominence at times of the one or the other current in the hands of various experimenters gave rise to a controversy as to whether the variation caused by a single induction-shock was positive or negative in character.

---

[1] Untersuch. ü. d. Erregungsvorgang im Nerven- und Muskelsysteme, 1871.

[2] In all the account which follows the direction of the current spoken of is to be supposed to be that of the current *through the galvanometer*.

FIG. 32.



But if such a double current is developed between any two points, it is obvious that when a muscle or nerve is tetanized and wave after wave of impulse and therefore of negativity passes over both points, the current from *a* to *b* of one impulse will neutralize, or, at least, tend to neutralize the current from *b* to *a* of the succeeding impulse. We are driven to suppose that the current which is observed during tetanus as the negative variation or current of action from *b* to *a*, is able to manifest itself because at each impulse it is greater than the current from *a* to *b*. Such a difference between the opposing currents might arise either from the wave of impulse diminishing along its whole progress, or from its diminishing suddenly at the end of the fibre, or from both causes combined. If the negativity assumed by *b* when the impulse reaches it is less than the negativity assumed by *a* when the impulse reaches it, the current from *a* to *b* will be less than that from *b* to *a*; and this will be true whatever the position of *a* and *b* on the fibre.

Bernstein found that in muscle the "negative variation" diminished in its course. Du Bois-Reymond stated that this was true of exhausted muscle, but was not true of uninjured muscle for a short time after removal from the body. Hermann finds that in muscle removed from the body and thus deprived of its blood circulation there is always a gradual diminution of the current of action as it travels down the fibres, whether the muscle be urarized and stimulated directly or not urarized and stimulated indirectly by means of its nerve. In the latter case two currents of action proceed from approximately the middle of the muscle (the region of the end-plates) towards the ends, diminishing as they go. He found that the diminution was greater as the muscle became more exhausted, in this confirming Du Bois-Reymond. Hermann brings forward also some experiments to show that the diminution is equally distributed throughout the course of the current, so that the diminution is equal for equal distances of muscle traversed.

---

[1] Mayer, Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1868, p. 655.

Now in muscles in which by cutting off one end currents of rest have become conspicuous, Du Bois-Reymond has shown that the current of action obtained by tetanizing the muscle is greater than that obtained by similarly tetanizing an uninjured muscle, so that in the former case either the current of action is in itself greater or the negativity diminishes more rapidly along the whole or in some part of the course of the fibre (*i. e.*, the difference between the currents *b* to *a* and *a* to *b* becomes more marked in favor of that from *b* to *a*). By comparing with the help of the fall-rheotome the amounts of deflection of the galvanometer in the two cases when single induction-shocks are sent into the muscle, Hermann concludes that the wave is not absolutely less in the uninjured muscle, so that the greater deflection obtained in tetanizing a muscle with an artificial cross-section must be due to the current from *a* to *b* being less than is the case in the uninjured muscle. This may in part be due to a greater diminution of the stimulus wave as it travels, but is, as we shall see, probably in large part due to a rapid diminution or indeed extinction of the wave when it reaches *b*.

Hermann, with the aid of the differential and fall-rheotome, finds that in all uninjured muscle, whether stimulated directly or indirectly, the two currents from *b* to *a* and from *a* to *b* may be observed as described above. This first he calls *ad-terminal*,[1] and the second *ab-terminal:* the two being named *phasic* currents. The former he finds always greater than the latter. In a muscle with an artificial cross-section he finds that as in an uninjured muscle two currents are developed between two points, provided one be not at the cross-section, as from *b′* to *a′* and from *a′* to *b′* (Fig. 32), but between two points, one of which is at the section, as *a* and *b*, only one current is observable, viz., that from *b* to *a*, *i. e.*, the wave disappears at *b;* the end of the muscle, for some reason or other, does not become more negative. From these experiments Hermann concludes that in uninjured muscle, the current of action observed by the ordinary method without a rheotome is due to the diminution of the stimulus wave as it travels, but that the current of action similarly observed when currents of rest are present has an additional factor, viz., the absence of any power of the wave to affect the end of the fibres.

Hermann further states that when two moistened threads are passed round the forearm of a man, the one about the middle, the other at the wrist, and connected by the usual electrodes with the galvanometer, tetanizing the muscles by stimulating the nerves in the upper arm causes no deflection of the galvanometer; no action currents are in this case perceptible.

(This is in contradiction to the result of the classical experiment of Du Bois-Reymond,[2] in which the index fingers of the two hands being dipped into vessels containing salt solution and connected with a galvanometer, a deflection of the needle takes place whenever the muscles of the one or the other arm are thrown into contraction by voluntary effort; the direction of the deflection indicates the development of an ascending current in the active arm, and the ascending current thus produced is regarded as the resultant of the "negative variations" or currents of action of the various muscles thrown into contraction. But this experiment, though long looked upon as a satisfactory proof of a "current of action" or "negative variation," is regarded by Hermann as valueless in this respect, inasmuch as the current observed is according to him simply a cutaneous current.)

---

[1] Since the direction of the current in the muscle completing the circuit would be towards the end of the fibre.

[2] Untersuch. ü. thierische Electricität, Bd. ii, Abth. 2, p. 276, 1860.

On the other hand, if the rheotome be used so that the ad- and ab-terminal waves present can be separated and recognized, the two waves are found to be present but to be of equal strength; thus in the body in an untired muscle with normal circulation the wave does not diminish in its course, and hence the two waves, the ad-terminal and the ab-terminal, compensate one another and cannot be detected in the ordinary manner of looking for currents of action in tetanus. The rapidity of transmission of the wave in the above experiments was from 10 to 13 meters per second.

In the case of nerves, since the rapidity of the nervous impulse is much greater than the rapidity of the stimulus wave of muscle, the separation of the ad- and ab-terminal current is naturally more difficult. But Hermann by using packets of the sciatic nerves (frog's), and cooling them down to 0° in order to lessen the rapidity of the nervous impulses, has obtained results analogous to those just described in reference to muscle.

Since the part of the muscle which is at any moment stimulated becomes negative, if the whole of the uninjured muscle from end to end were stimulated equally at the same time, every part would become equally negative, and no current would occur. Hermann finds that under such circumstances no current does occur. This experiment perhaps requires confirmation, as it is not certain that it is possible by the method given to equally stimulate all parts of the muscle.

To recapitulate. According to the views of Hermann and his followers, the living untouched muscle is isoelectric and the typical currents of rest are developed in consequence of the ends of the muscle dying and therefore becoming negative. To the experimental evidence quoted on p. 89, we may add that, according to Hermann, parts of other tissues besides muscle and nerve become on dying negative relatively to living parts of the same tissue, and that according to Engelmann,[1] although the section of a skeletal muscle removed from the body, unlike the section of cardiac muscle, remains negative for an indefinite time, the negativity which appears at the cross-section of a muscle divided subcutaneously disappears after awhile in consequence of the cut surfaces being restored to a living condition by the help of the blood-stream. It may be urged as a difficulty against Hermann's view, that if in a muscle it is only the negativity of the cut and dying portion which gives rise to the currents of rest, we should not expect the current from the equator to the cross-section to be greater than one from a point nearer the cross-section, seeing that the resistance is greater in the former case.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xv (1877), p. 328.

According to the same school the current of action is due to the substance of the muscle, which is at any moment the subject of an impulse wave becoming at that time negative towards the rest of the muscle; hence, as the wave proceeds along the fibres, ad-terminal and ab-terminal currents of necessity make their appearance as successive points of the muscle or nerve substance reach their maximum of negativity. In the tetanus of an uninjured, unexhausted muscle the ad-terminal and ab-terminal currents neutralize each other, and no total current can be manifested through the galvanometer. In exhausted, but otherwise uninjured muscle, the negativity of the impulse wave diminishes as the wave proceeds. Hence, the ab-terminal current is weaker than the ad-terminal, and the excess of the latter makes itself manifest as the so-called negative variation. In a muscle with an artificial cross-section the ad-terminal current and so the negative variation is still more conspicuous on account of the end of the fibre not being affected by the wave at all, and the ab-terminal current being here, therefore, wholly absent.

Du Bois-Reymond, on the other hand, and those with him, regard the currents of rest as due to the electro-motive molecules, and explain the absence of currents in the uninjured muscle by the presence of the parelectronomic region or layer. They regard the negative variation as due to an absolute diminution in the energy of the molecules. In the case of uninjured muscles they suppose that while the energy, both of the ordinary molecules constituting the chief substance of the muscle, and of the molecules constituting the parelectronomic region, and giving a current opposed in direction to the other, is diminished, the diminution of the latter is less than that of the former, and hence a negative variation can make its appearance in a muscle showing no currents of rest. In a muscle with an artificial cross-section, or with the parelectronomic region otherwise removed, the negative variation of the natural electric molecules occurs without any opposition of the molecules of the parelectronomic region, and is, consequently, greater than in the uninjured muscle. They further interpret the double current (ab-terminal and ad-terminal) seen in the gastrocnemius muscle with a single induction-shock, as due to a difference of time in the development of the negative variation in the parelectronomic regions of the upper and of the lower ends of the muscle.

Du Bois-Reymond found that, in tetanizing a muscle, the current of rest only acquired its normal strength after some interval; the negative variation did not at once disappear, there was an "after-action." In uninjured muscle this "after-action" he found to be considerable, amounting to as much as one-half or two-thirds of the total negative variation; in muscles with artificial transverse sections it was much less, viz., about one-tenth. He explains the difference by supposing that the removal of the end of the muscle does away with one factor of the after-action, for he considers that there are two kinds of after-action; one, the *inner* after-action, affecting the whole of the muscle substance; the other, or *terminal* after-action, concerning the ends of the muscle fibres only. The former he believes to be due to the formation of lactic acid during contraction, the electromotive force of the molecules throughout the muscle substance being thereby diminished. The latter, on the other hand, he considers to be generated by the several contraction-waves as they reach the ends of the fibres changing some of the peripolar molecules into a bipolar condition, thereby temporarily increasing the parelectronomic current. In a muscle with an artificial transverse section, in which no parelectronomic current is present, the tendency of the contraction-waves to establish such a current by the formation of bipolar molecules at the ends of the fibres, is prevented by the progressive death of the elements. Du Bois-Reymond further thinks that the normal presence of a parelectronomic region, in an uninjured muscle within the body is in reality a permanent terminal after-action, *i. e.*, contraction-waves arriving at the ends of the muscular fibres are continually tending to convert the peripolar into bipolar molecules. Hermann attributes the after-action to the muscle-plasma not being able under the circumstances to return at once to a condition of full nutrition, *i. e.*, to its normal positive state.

It is, we venture to think, obvious that further researches are needed before either the one view or the other can be regarded as established beyond dispute.

Electrotonic Currents.—During the passage of a constant current through a nerve, variations in the electric currents of the nerve, analogous in some respects to the variations of the irritability of the nerve, may be witnessed. Thus if a constant current, supplied by the battery *P* (Fig. 33), be applied to a piece of nerve by means of two non-polarizable electrodes, p, p', the currents obtainable from various points of the nerve will be different during the passage of the polarizing current from those which were manifest before or after the current was applied; and, moreover, the changes in the nerve-currents produced by the polarizing current will not be the same in the neighborhood of the anode (p) as those in the neighborhood of the cathode (p'). Thus let *G* and *H* be two galvanometers so connected with the two ends of the nerve as to obtain good and clear evidence of the natural nerve-currents. Before the polarizing current is thrown into the nerve the needle of *H* will occupy a position indicating the passage of a current of certain intensity from h to h' through the galvanometer (from the positive longitudinal surface to the negative cut end of the nerve), the circuit being completed by a current *in* the nerve from h' to h, *i. e.*, the current will flow in the direction of the arrow. Similarly the needle of *G* will, by its deflection, indicate the existence of a current flowing from g to g' through the galvanometer, and from g' to g through the nerve, in the direction of the arrow.

At the instant that the polarizing current is thrown into the nerve at *pp'*, the currents at *gg'*, *hh'* will suffer a negative variation corresponding to the nervous impulse, which, at the making of the polarizing current, passes in both directions along the nerve, and may cause a contraction in the attached muscle. The negative variation is, as we have seen (p. 102), of extremely short duration, it is over and gone in a small fraction of a second. It therefore must not be confounded with a permanent effect, which, in the case

Fig. 33.

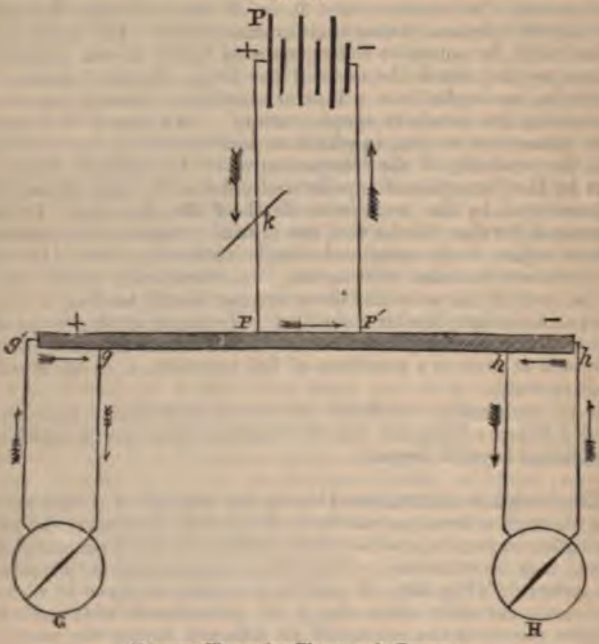


Diagram Illustrating Electrotonic Currents.

P the polarizing battery, with *k* a key, *p* the anode, and *p'* the cathode. At the left end of the piece of nerve the natural current flows through the galvanometer *G* from *g* to *g'*, in the direction of the arrows; its direction, therefore, is the same as that of the polarizing current; consequently it appears increased, as indicated by the sign +. The current at the other end of the piece of nerve, from *h* to *k'*, through the galvanometer *H*, flows in a contrary direction to the polarizing current; it consequently appears to be diminished, as indicated by the sign —.

N. B.—For simplicity's sake, the polarizing current is here supposed to be thrown in at the middle of a piece of nerve, and the galvanometer placed at the two ends. Of course it will be understood that the former may be thrown in anywhere, and the latter connected with any two pairs of points which will give currents.

we are dealing with, is observed in both galvanometers. This effect, which is dependent on the direction of the polarizing current, is as follows: Supposing that the polarizing current is flowing in the direction of the arrow in the figure; that is, passes in the nerve from the positive electrode, or anode p, to the negative electrode or cathode p', it is found that the current through the galvanometer G is increased, while that through H is diminished. We may explain this result by saying that the polarizing current has developed in the nerve outside the electrodes a new current, the "electrotonic" current, having the same direction as itself, which adds to, or takes away from, the natural nerve-current, according as it is flowing in the same or in an opposite direction.

The strength of the electrotonic current is dependent on the strength of the polarizing current, and on the length of the intrapolar region which is exposed to the polarizing current. When a strong polarizing current is used, the electromotive force of the electrotonic current may be much greater than that of the natural nerve-current. The existence of an electrotonic current in the intrapolar regions between the polarizing electrodes has been much disputed, some observers maintaining that it is in reality absent from this region, and confined entirely to the extrapolar districts, while others regard it as existing in the intrapolar region as well. All agree that it spreads, with a diminution in intensity, for some distance along the extrapolar districts in both directions.

When the polarizing current is broken there is a rebound in the opposite direction, the natural current previously diminished or increased being for a brief period increased or diminished.

The strength of the electrotonic current varies with the irritability, or vital condition of the nerve, being greater with the more irritable nerve; and a dead nerve will not manifest electrotonic currents. Moreover, the propagation of the current is stopped by a ligature, or by crushing the nerve.

Lastly, the electrotonic current, like the natural current, suffers a negative variation during the passage of a nervous impulse.[1]

The application of the constant current then throws a nerve, during its passage, into a peculiar condition characterized by the appearance of a new (electrotonic) current. This we may speak of as a *physical* electrotonus analogous to that *physiological* electrotonus which is made known by variations in irritability. And the one set of phenomena are in some respects so similar to the other that it seems difficult not to suppose that they are fundamentally connected. Indeed, Du Bois-Reymond, struck by the differences observable between the effects at the cathode and those at the anode, irrespective of the natural currents, has been led to complete the analogy of the physical with the physiological electrotonus by speaking of a catelectrotonic current and an anelectrotonic current. The catelectrotonic current, according to him, like the catelectrotonic increase of irritability, rises very rapidly (almost immediately) to a maximum and then speedily declines. The anelectrotonic current, like the anelectrotonic decrease of irritability, rises slowly to a maximum and slowly declines. And generally the catelectrotonic current is less than the anelectrotonic. There are difficulties in the way of estimating the force exactly, but Du Bois-Reymond[1] gives as an instance an electromotive force of .5 Daniell for the anelectrotonic, and .05 Daniell for the catelectrotonic current.

---

[1] Bernstein, Archiv Anat. Phys., 1866, p. 596.

Great difficulty has been experienced in obtaining evidence of the existence in muscles of electrotonic currents similar to those observed in nerves. Hermann[2] has, however, succeeded in satisfying himself of their presence.

The two schools of whose views we have so often spoken naturally offer totally different interpretations of the nature and mode of origin of the electrotonic current.

Du Bois-Reymond and those with him explain the phenomena by supposing that under the action of the constant current, one-half of each electromotive molecule is (partially or completely) reversed so that every half molecule has its positive portion directed to one end, and its negative portion directed to the other end of the nerve. By the action of the constant current, in fact, each molecule from being peripolar (Fig. 28) has become bipolar (Fig. 29), and the currents discharged by the molecule into its surrounding medium have all the same direction. The half molecules thus (more or less) reversed by the polarizing current are those the currents issuing from which were previously opposed in direction to itself; hence after the conversion from the peripolar to the bipolar condition, the currents discharged by the several molecules have the same direction as the polarizing current. In other words, an electrotonic current is developed. If further, we suppose that each (double) molecule is capable of acting on its fellows in such a way that when, as in the normal condition, it is peripolar it helps to maintain the peripolar condition of its neighbors; but when it becomes bipolar, tends to render them bipolar too, the influence diminishing at a distance, an explanation is furnished of the spreading of the electrotonic current along both extrapolar regions.

Hermann and his followers, rejecting the theory of electromotive molecules, regard the electrotonic current as due to the escape of the polarizing current along the nerve under certain peculiar conditions. Matteucci[3] long ago showed that phenomena very similar to those of electrotonus might be produced by surrounding a metal core with a moist sheath and applying a constant current to the sheath. Several writers have since insisted on similar experiments as demonstrating that the phenomena of electrotonus are not of a physiological nature, but they were always met with the valid argument that the electrotonic current varied with the irritability of the nerve, and was stopped by a ligature or by anything which destroyed the vital continuity of the nerve. The currents, simulating electrotonic currents, which Matteucci observed appear to have been due to the current escaping in a longitudinal direction, in consequence of the resistance offered by a polarization taking place between the core and its sheath. When no such polarization occurs, when for instance the core is amalgamated zinc and the sheath a layer of saturated zinc sulphate solution, the escape of the current in a longitudinal direction is slight. Under the influence of polarization set up between the core and the sheath the escape of the current in longitudinal loops along the sheath becomes more and more marked, and the galvanometer indicates in the extrapolar regions extending to some distance the existence of currents, having the same direction as the constant current which is being applied. The development of these currents is further dependent on an absolute continuity (mere contact of parts is insufficient) of the core and the sheath respectively. And Hermann contends that though we may not be justified in assuming between the sarcolemma of a muscle and the muscle substance, or between the primitive sheath of a nerve fibre and its contents, such a difference of conductivity as exists between the core and sheath in Matteucci's experiment, yet the fact of the electrical resistance of living muscle and nerve being so much greater in a transverse than in a longitudinal direction, is due to an inner polarization taking place between the muscle or nerve substance of a muscle or nerve fibre and its respective sheath, and hence the comparison of these structures with Matteucci's experiment is valid. Moreover this inner polarization is (in the muscle wholly, and in the nerve in large part) dependent on the vital condition of the tissue. Consequently Matteucci's experiment is really an illustration of what takes place in a living nerve (or muscle); the electrotonic current is simply an escape of the polarizing current. It is absent or insignificant in a dead nerve, because the inner polarization, which determines the longitudinal escape of the current, is a function of the living state; and it is stopped by ligature or crushing, because the nervous substance of the fibres is thereby converted into a dead and indifferent substance, and the functional continuity of the nervous core thereby broken.

---

[1] Gesaml. Abhandl., ii, 260.

[2] Die Ergebnisse neuerer Unters. a. d. Gebiet d. thierisch. Elect., 1878.

[3] Compt. Rend., lvi (1863), p. 760, and subsequent papers.

He further offers an explanation why the escape of the current under these circumstances leads to the physiological phenomena of catelectrotonus and anelectrotonus, but on this point we must refer the readers to the original Memoirs.[1]

---

[1] The views of Du Bois-Reymond will be found at length in his earlier publications, Untersuch. ü. thierische Electricität, 1848–60, and in the later articles published in Gesammelte Abhandlungen z. allgemeinen Muskel- und Nerven-Physik, 1875–77. The views of Hermann will be found in his Untersuch. zur Physiol. d. Muskeln u. Nerven, 1867–68, and in many subsequent papers in Pflüger's Archiv, viz., vol. iii (1870), p. 15, iv (1871), p. 149, Electromotorische Erscheinungen; v (1872), p. 223, vi (1872), p. 312, Wirkung galvanischer Ströme; vi (1872), p. 560, Galvanische Verhalten während der Erregung; vii (1873), p. 323, Gesetz der Erregungsleitung; viii (1874), p. 258, Electrotonus; x (1875), p. 215, Polarisation und Erregung;

The Energy of Muscle and Nerve and the Nature of the Chemical Changes.

The actual amount of energy developed by a most powerful nervous impulse is exceedingly slight, and hence chemical changes, insignificant in amount, may be the cause of all the phenomena, and yet remain too slight to be readily recognized. The muscular contraction itself is, as we have seen (p. 84), essentially a translocation of molecules. Whatever be the exact way in which this translocation is effected, it is fundamentally the result of a chemical change, of what we have already seen to be an explosive decomposition of certain parts of the muscle-substance. The energy which is expended in the mechanical work done by the muscle has its source in the latent energy of the muscle-substance set free by that explosion. Concerning the nature of that explosion we only know at present that it results in the production of carbonic and lactic acids, and that heat[1] is set free as well as the specific muscular energy. There is a general parallelism between the amount of decomposition (the quantity of carbonic (and lactic) acids produced) and the amount of energy set free. The greater the development of carbonic acid the larger is the contraction, and the higher the temperature.

It has not been possible hitherto to draw up a complete equation between the latent energy of the material and the two forms of actual energy set free. By an approximate calculation Helmholtz has arrived at the conclusion that in the human body one-fifth of the energy of the material goes out as mechanical work, thus contrasting favorably with the steam-engine, in which it hardly ever amounts to more than one-tenth. Fick[2] has come to the conclusion that the proportion of energy given out as heat to that taking on the form of work, varies according to the resistance which the muscle has to overcome; the greater the resistance the larger is the portion of the total energy set free which goes to the work. The muscle, in fact, when working against resistance does its work with increased economy. Under the most favorable conditions, *e. g.*, when contracting against great resistance, the energy of the work may (in the case of frogs' muscles deprived of blood-supply) amount to one-fourth that of the heat given out; but Fick believes that in ordinary circumstances the proportion is very much less, as low even as a twenty-fifth. The muscle, in fact, is by no means more economical than a steam-engine in respect to the conversion of the energy of chemical action into mechanical work.

---

xii (1876), p. 151, Querstand während Erregung; xv (1877), p. 233, Fall-Rheotom; xvi (1878), p. 191, p. 410, Actionsstrom der Muskeln; xix (1878), p. 574, Actionsströme des Nerven. A résumé of Hermann's views is given by himself in a small pamphlet, entitled Die Ergebnisse neuerer Unters. a. d. Gebiet d. thierisch. Electricität, 1878, and by Dr. Burdon-Sanderson in Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 196.

[1] The heat given out by muscles will be further discussed in Book II in connection with the general subject of Animal Heat.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xvi (1877), p. 58.

Nor can we at present say that it has been experimentally verified in any given contraction that the mechanical work is done at the expense of the heat which would be otherwise given out. Thus if of two muscles *A* and *B*, *A* be not loaded and *B* loaded before a contraction and unloaded at the height of contraction, it is obvious that *A* does no external work, for the muscle returns to its previous condition, while *B* does work, the more so the heavier the load and the more frequently it is raised. If now both *A* and *B* are excited by the same stimulus to equal contractions, the temperature of *A* ought to rise more than *B*, because of the same energy set free in each, some goes out as work in *B*, but in *A* none goes out as work, and all escapes as heat. Experiment shows, on the contrary, that *B* is the warmer of the two, the reason being that the tension caused by the load increases all the chemical changes in the muscle (as shown by the increased production of carbonic acid), and thus increases the total energy set free. If *A* and *B* be equally loaded, and while *A* does no work, the load remaining all the time, the load of *B* is removed at the height of contraction, it is then found that *A* becomes the warmer of the two. This experiment is not without objection; for *A* is (immediately after the contraction) stretched by its load, and so its chemical changes still increased, whereas *B* is not; and Heidenhain has shown that this is sufficient to account for *A* being the warmer.

Of the exact nature of the chemical changes we know nothing. As has been already stated (p. 99), there is no evidence of nitrogenous products being given off as waste; such nitrogenous crystalline bodies as are present in muscle, kreatin, etc., may be regarded as the wear and tear of the machine, and not as products of the material consumed in the work. Yet it is hardly consonant with what we know elsewhere, to suppose that the contraction of a muscular fibre has for its essence the decomposition of a non-nitrogenous substance; and we may suppose that the explosion does involve some nitrogenous products, which, however, are retained within the tissue and used up again. Hermann, insisting on the analogy between muscular contraction and rigor mortis, has suggested the existence of a hypothetical *inogen*, which during a contraction splits up into carbonic acid, lactic acid, and a nitrogenous body. He further supposes the nitrogenous body to be myosin, which, however, while still in the form of a gelatinous clot, is redissolved and reconverted into inogen. But the fact that myosin has probably antecedents like those of fibrin, and is not formed directly as a product of the decomposition of a more complex body, and especially the fact that while in rigor mortis extensibility is diminished, in a contraction it is increased, seem insuperable objections to this view. It may be worth while to point out that during even the most complete repose muscle is undergoing chemical changes, which, as we know, are the same in kind, and only differ in degree from those characteristic of a contraction. Thus carbonic acid is constantly being produced, and probably lactic acid, both being got rid of as they form, just as they are got rid of in larger quantities during the repose which follows contraction. Supposing the existence of a substance which splits up into these various products, and which we may speak of as the true contractile material, it is evident that this material being thus constantly used up, must be as constantly repaired. Thus a stream of chemical substances may be conceived of as flowing through muscle, the raw material brought by blood[1] being gradually converted into true contractile stuff, the breaking down again of which is gentle and gradual so long as the muscle is at rest; when a contraction takes place, the decomposition is excessive and violent. When rigor mortis sets in, the whole remaining contractile material is decomposed. It has been already stated that according to Hermann the total quantity of carbonic and probably of lactic acid produced after removal from the body is the same whether contraction takes place or not, the material for the contraction being apparently taken away from that destined for rigor mortis. This means that the manufacture of true contractile material is suddenly arrested immediately on the cessation of the blood-current, no more being afterwards formed. Such a state of things is quite contrary to our general physiological experience, and there are other facts which render it doubtful. Lastly, it may be mentioned that no satisfactory explanation can be given of the connection between the microscopic structure of a striated muscular fibre and its contraction. Striation is characteristic of muscles whose contraction is rapid, but the exact purpose of the striæ remains as yet unknown.

It was Haller[2] who laid the foundations of our knowledge of the Physiology of Muscle and Nerve by establishing the doctrine of muscular and nervous irritability. The most important results since that time have been those gained by the investigations of Weber[3] on the physical changes which attend a muscular contraction, of Du Bois-Reymond[4] on the electrical phenomena of muscle and nerve, of Helmholtz[5] on the velocity of nervous impulses, and on the relative duration of the several phases of a contraction, of Pflüger[6] on electrotonus, of Kühne[7] on the chemistry of muscle, and of Hermann[8] on the respiration of muscle and on the electrical phenomena of muscle and nerve. The researches of other and more recent authors are quoted in the previous text.

---

[1] Together with certain nitrogenous elements still remaining in the muscle, according to the view explained above.

[2] De Part. Corp. Hum. sentientibus et irritabilibus, 1753.

[3] Muskelbewegung, Wagner's Handwörterbuch.

[4] Op. cit.

[5] Müller's Archiv, 1850. Berichte Berlin. Acad., 1854, 1864.

[6] Untersuch. ü. d. Physiologie des Electrotonus, 1859.

[7] Protoplasma, 1864.

[8] Op. cit.

SEC. 7. UNSTRIATED MUSCULAR TISSUE.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Unstriated Muscles.*

The unstriated muscles consist of flattened bands or layers, which are made up of bundles of fibres. These fibres are composed of elongated, fusiform, protoplasmic cells, containing an elongated nucleus or nuclei, which is usually surrounded by a small amount of granular protoplasm. (Figs. 34 and 35.)

FIG. 34.

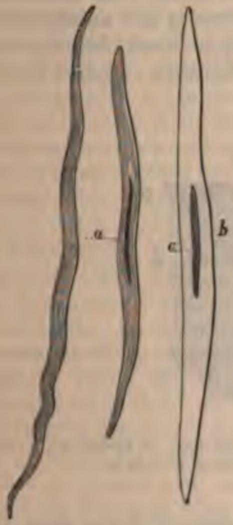


FIG. 35.

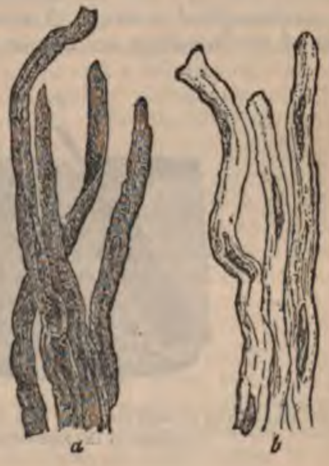


FIG. 34.—Three unstriped muscular fibre cells from human arteries. *a* and *b* show cells with nuclei; *b* is a cell treated with acetic acid, making nuclei more distinct.

FIG. 35.—Muscular fibre cells from the bladder. *a* shows them in a normal condition; *b*, treated with acetic acid, which dissolves the granular contents, leaving the nuclei.

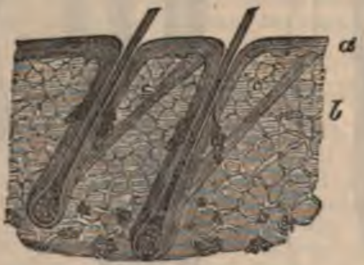
They do not possess a sheath, or sarcolemma, like the skeletal fibres, and when ruptured have somewhat irregularly squared ends.

The unstriated muscles are almost entirely distributed to the viscera, and are disposed as flattened bands or layers, which cross each other at various angles. Generally they appear as two layers; a superficial or longitudinal, and a deep or circular layer.

This form of muscular fibre is found in the skin, where the fibres are seen to have an oblique course, running from the superficial layers of the corium to the hair-follicles, where they are inserted. (Fig. 36) Unstriped muscular tissue is also abundant in the superficial layers of the corium, at the basis of the papillæ. When these fibres contract they cause numerous papillary elevations to appear on the skin, which give the surface the appearance of what is commonly termed "goose-skin."

The unstriated muscles appear to be more intimately connected with the sympathetic nervous system, and controlled chiefly by them, while the skeletal muscles are animated by the cerebro-spinal system. According to some observers the fibres of the intestines are almost exclusively supplied by the sympathetic nerves. In the former class of fibres, from the fact of their being generally uninfluenced by the will, and of their principal distribution being to the organs of nutrition and growth, they have been termed the muscles of *organic* life. In the latter class, because of their being presided over by the cerebro-spinal system, their more intimate connection with the animal functions, and their volitional character, are termed the muscles of *animal* life.]

FIG. 36.



Perpendicular Section through the Scalp, with two Hair-sacs. *a*, epidermis; *b*, cutis; *c*, muscles of the hair-follicles.—After KOLLIKER.

Our knowledge of the phenomena of these structures is very imperfect, since (in vertebrates) they do not exist in isolated masses, like the striated muscles, but occur as constituents of complex organs, such as the intestine, ureter, uterus, etc. They undergo rigor mortis; and what little information we do possess concerning their chemical and physical features leads us to believe that the processes which take place in them are fundamentally identical with those occurring in striated muscle, the two differing in degree rather than in kind. When stimulated, they contract. If a stimulus, mechanical or electrical, be applied to the intestine or ureter of a mammal, a circular contraction is seen to take place at the spot stimulated. The contraction, which is preceded by a very long latent period, lasts a very considerable time, in fact several seconds, after which relaxation slowly takes place. That is to say, over the circularly dispersed fibres of the intestine (or ureter) at the spot in question there has passed a contraction-wave remarkable for its long latent period and for the slowness of its development. From the spot so directly stimulated, the contraction may pass as a wave (with a length of 1 cm. and a velocity of from 20 to 30 millimeters a second in the ureter[1]), along the circular coat both upwards and downwards. The longitudinal fibres at the spot stimulated are also thrown into contractions of altogether similar character, and a wave of contraction may also travel longitudinally along the longitudinal coat both upwards and downwards. It is evident, however, that the wave of contraction, of which we are now speaking, is in one respect different from the wave of contraction treated of in dealing with striated muscle. In the latter case the contraction-wave was one propagated along the individual fibre; in the case of the intestine or ureter the wave is one which is propagated from fibre to fibre, both in the direction of the fibres, as when the whole circumference of the intestine is engaged in the contraction, or when the wave travels longitudinally along the longitudinal coat, and also in a direction at right angles to the axes of the fibres, as when the contraction-wave travels lengthways along the circular coat of the intestine, or when it passes across a breadth of the longitudinal coat. In addition to this difference, however, it is obvious that a contraction-wave passing along even a single unstriated fibre also differs from that passing along a striated fibre, in the very great length both of its latent period and of the duration of its contraction.

If the stimulus be severe when mechanical, or if the interrupted current be used as a stimulus, the duration of contraction may be still further prolonged; but there is no evidence that a series of contractions are fused into a tetanus, as is the case in the striated muscles.

---

[1] Engelmann, Pflüger's Archiv, ii (1869), 243.

Like the skeletal muscles, whose nervous elements have been rendered functionally incapable (p. 112), unstriated muscles are much more sensitive to the making and breaking of a constant current than to induction-shock.

The unstriated muscles seem to be remarkably susceptible to the influences of temperature. Thus according to Horvath[1] the unstriated muscles of the trachea will not contract at a temperature below 12° C., and are most active at a temperature above 21° C. So also the movements of the intestine cease at a temperature below 19° C.

Waves of contraction thus passing along the circular and longitudinal coats of the intestine give rise to what is called peristaltic action.

In striking contradistinction to what takes place in the striated muscles, automatic movements are exceedingly common in structures built up of non-striated muscles; these moreover exhibit a great tendency to rhythmic action. Thus the peristaltic action of the intestine and ureters and the corresponding movements of the uterus, are at once rhythmic, and largely automatic. How far the automatism and the rhythm are due to nervous elements is uncertain.

According to Engelmann[2] the middle and part of the upper third of the ureter in the rabbit[3] contains no discoverable nervous ganglia, yet this portion exhibits automatic rhythmic contractions. We may suppose that, in the absence of an adequate nervous arrangement, the propagation of the contraction-wave is, in this part of the ureter, carried on by the simple contact of the adjacent surface of the fibres (which, as is known, possess no sarcolemma). The fibres, by their complete contact, may be spoken of as being *physiologically continuous* with each other. [The muscles are variously affected by different poisons. Narcotics generally, nitrite of amyl, nitrite of potassium, apomorphine, hydrocyanic acid, and numerous other drugs depress or paralyze them. Physostigma and caffein stimulate them if directly applied. Veratria first stimulates and afterwards paralyzes them. Ergot seems to possess a remarkable power in causing contraction of the muscles of the uterus, and its chief therapeutic use is for this purpose. When they are placed in certain gases, such as carbonic acid, carbonic oxide, hydrogen, etc., they soon lose their irritability. In an atmosphere of oxygen they will remain irritable for a very long period.]

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), 508.

[2] Op. cit.

[3] This does not seem to hold good for other animals. Cf. Dogiel, Arch. f. micros. Anat., xiv (1878), p. 64.

SEC. 8. CARDIAC MUSCLES.

The most important features of this form of contractile tissue will be studied when we come to deal with the heart. It will be seen that they are intermediate between ordinary skeletal and non-striated muscles.

SEC. 9. CILIA.

Ciliary movement consists in the rapid flexion (into a sickle or hook form) of the cilium and its less rapid return to its previous straight form. The diminished velocity of the return leads to the force of the ciliary action being exerted in the same direction as the flexion. The cause of the flexion seems to be the contraction of the cilium, and that of the return an elastic reaction.

Various attempts to explain the movement by the presence of special mechanisms at the base of the cilia have hitherto failed. Some authors have attributed the movement to a protoplasmic contraction of the cell itself, the cilium acting merely as a minute elastic rod; and some such view as this is supported by the fact that no movement has ever been observed in an isolated cilium. It is difficult however to understand how the peculiar sickle-like flexion of the cilium can be brought about unless the contractile material is continued up into the cilium itself.[1]

Ciliary movement appears therefore to differ from ordinary muscular contraction chiefly in the size of the apparatus concerned. The movement is exceedingly rapid; thus Engelmann[2] has estimated that in the frog the flexions are repeated at least twelve times in a second. The movement in fact is too rapid to be visible; it can only be seen at a time when exhaustion and coming death have begun to retard the action; thus Engelmann found that he was first able to count them when their rapidity declined to eight in a second. The tail of a spermatozoon is practically a single cilium.

In the vertebrate animal, cilia are, as far as we know, wholly independent of the nervous system, and their movement is probably ceaseless. In such animals, however, as Infusoria, Hydrozoa, etc., a ciliary tract may often be seen to stop and go on again, to move fast or slow, according to the same cell) buried at some distance from the surface of the body, and thus less susceptible to external influences. (Fig. 37, A, B.) If in Hydra, we imagine the junction of the ectodermic muscular process with the body of its cell to be drawn out into a thin thread (as is said to be the case in some other Hydrozoa), we should have just such a primary nerve. Since there would be no need for such a means of communication to be contractile and capable of itself changing in form, but on the other hand an advantage in its remaining immobile, and in its dimensions being reduced as much as possible consistent with the maintenance of irritability, the primary nerve would in the process of development lose the property of contractility in proportion as it became more irritable, *i. e.*, more apt in the propagation of the waves of disturbance arising in the ectodermic cell.

---

[1] Cf. Nussbaum, Archiv f. micros. Anat., xiv, 1877, p. 390.

[2] Ueber die Flimmerbewegung, p. 22 (1868).

We have already seen that automatism, *i. e.*, the power of initiating disturbances or vital impulses, independent of any immediate disturbing event or stimulus from without, is one of the fundamental properties of protoplasm. In simpler, but less exact language, such a mass of protoplasm as an amœba, though susceptible in the highest degree to influences from without, "has a will of its own;" it executes movements which cannot be explained by reference to any changes in surrounding circumstances at the time being. A hydra has also a will of its own; and seeing that all the constituent cells (beyond the distinction into ectoderm and endoderm) are alike, we have no reason for thinking that the will resides in one cell more than in another, but are led to infer that the protoplasm of each of the cells (of the ectoderm at least) is automatic, the will of the individual being the co-ordinated wills of the component cells. In both Hydra and Amœba the processes concerned in automatic or spontaneous impulses, though in origin independent of, are subject to and largely modified by influences proceeding from without. Indeed, the great value of automatic processes in a living body depends on the automatism being affected by external influences, and on the simple effects of stimulation being profoundly modified by automatic action.

The next step of development beyond Hydra is evidently to differentiate the single (ectodermic) cell into two cells, of which one, by division of labor, confines itself chiefly to the simple development of impulses as the result of stimulation, leaving to the other the task of automatic action, and the more complex transformation of the impulses generated in itself. The latter, which we may call the eminently automatic cell (though much of the work which it has to do is of the kind we shall presently speak of as reflex action), will naturally be withdrawn from the surface of the body, while the other, which we may call the eminently sensitive cell, will still retain its superficial position, so that it may most readily be affected by all changes in the world without, Fig. 37, C. And just as a primary *motor* nerve arises as a retained thread of communication between a sensitive cell and its muscular process, so a primary *sensory* nerve may be conceived of as arising as a thread of communication between an eminently sensitive cell and its twin, the eminently automatic or central cell. By this arrangement the sensitive cell, relieved of the heavy burden of spontaneous action, is enabled to devote itself with greater vigor to the reception of external influences; while the automatic cell, no longer hampered by the physical necessities of being which are imposed on the superficial cell, exposed as this is to every wind and wave, but secure in its internal retreat, is able with similar increased energy to devote itself either to the production of spontaneous impulses, or to profoundly modifying the impulses which it receives from the sensitive cell. Naturally the muscular process or muscular fibre would, on the splitting of the original single cell, remain in connection with the more eminently automatic. We thus arrive at that triple fundamental arrangement of a nervous system in its simplest form, viz., a sensitive cell on the surface of the body connected by means of a sensory nerve with the internal automatic central nervous cell, which in turn is connected by means of a motor nerve with the muscular fibre-cell.

We have already seen that the physiology of the motor nerve cannot, without inconvenience, be separated from that of the muscular fibre. In the same way the physiology of the sensory nerve cannot well be separated from those modifications of superficial sensitive cells which constitute the organs of sense. We may add that the special physiology of the central nervous cells can only profitably be studied in connection with the sensory organs. In the present chapter, therefore, we purpose to confine ourselves to the consideration of the simplest and most general properties of the central nervous cells.

These are arranged in the vertebrate body in two great systems: the cerebro-spinal axis and the various ganglia scattered over the body; we shall deal with such properties only as are more or less common to the two systems. We may premise that as far as our knowledge at present goes, the processes which are concerned in the propagation of nervous impulses along a sensory nerve-trunk are identical with those which take place in a motor nerve-trunk. The phenomena of the natural nerve-current of the negative variation during the passage of an impulse, and of electrotonus (and these facts mark out, as we have seen, the limits of our information on this matter), are exactly the same, whether the piece of nerve-trunk experimented on be a mixed nerve-trunk, or an almost purely motor, or an almost purely sensory nerve-trunk, or an anterior or posterior nerve-root, or the special sensory nerve of a particular sense, such as the optic nerve. In both sensory and motor nerves the changes accompanying a nervous impulse are transmitted equally well in both directions.

We seem justified in concluding that the events which occur in a sensory nerve when it is an instrument of sensation, differ from those which take place in a motor nerve when that is an instrument of movement, only so far as the sensory impulses are generated by particular processes which bear the stamp of the sensory cell in which they originated, while the motor impulses are generated by particular processes which bear the stamp of the central nervous cells in which they in turn originated. All sensory impulses appear to be tetanic in nature, *i. e.*, to be composed of a series of constituent simple impulses; and it is probable that while the motor impulses which proceed from the central nervous system to the muscles are composed of simple impulses repeated with the same rapidity, and thus giving rise to the same muscular note (p. 79), the sensory impulses which proceed from the peripheral sense organs to the central nervous system vary exceedingly as to the way in which their constituent simple impulses are combined. It is indeed possible that the complex sensory impulses which give rise, for instance, to sight and touch respectively, may differ only in the wave-length, so to speak, of their constituent simple impulses, much in the same way as red light differs from blue light.

In the scheme sketched out above, the same central nervous cell is supposed to be engaged at once, both in originating automatic actions and in modifying sensory impulses (*i. e.*, impulses proceeding from the superficial sensitive cells) previous to these being passed on to the muscular fibre. It is evident that, where two or more central nervous cells occur together, a further differentiation would be of advantage: a
ntiation into cells which, though still susceptible of being
from without, should be more especially restricted
action, and into cells which should forego their

automatism for the sake of being more efficient in modifying sensory impulses, with a view of transmuting them into motor impulses, and so of giving rise to appropriate movements. We thus gain the fundamental and primary differentiation of the work of a central nervous system into automatic and into reflex operations. These are very clearly manifested by the brain and spinal cord, and probably also, though this is less certain, by the sporadic ganglia.

Automatic Actions.—In the vertebrate animal the highest form of automatism, individual volition, with which conscious intelligence is associated, is a function of certain parts of the brain. There are evidences of the existence in the brain of other forms of automatism. All these will be considered in detail hereafter.

In the spinal cord separated from the brain by section of the medulla oblongata, it becomes difficult to draw a line between purely automatic and reflex actions. Thus, when we come to deal with respiration, we shall see that while there can be no doubt that the muscular respiratory apparatus is kept at work by impulses proceeding, in a rhythmic manner, from a group of nerve-cells, or respiratory nervous centre, in the medulla oblongata, it is an open question whether those impulses, whose generation is certainly modified by centripetal impulses passing to the centre along various nerves, are absolutely automatic, *i. e.*, whether they can continue to make their appearance when no influences whatever from without are brought to bear upon the centre. Similar doubts hover round other automatic functions of the spinal cord. We shall see hereafter reasons for speaking of the existence in the medulla oblongata of a vaso-motor centre, that is of a group of nerve-cells, whence impulses habitually proceed along the so-called vaso-motor nerves to the muscular coats of the small arteries, and keep these vessels in a state of semi-contraction or tone. Here too it is doubtful whether these motor or efferent impulses can be generated in the absence of all sensory or afferent impulses. The posterior lymphatic hearts of the frog are connected by the small tenth pair of spinal nerves with the gray matter of the termination of the spinal cord, in such a manner that destruction of that part of the spinal cord or section of the tenth nerves apparently puts an end to the rhythmic pulsations of the lymphatic hearts. Here it would seem as if rhythmic impulses were automatically generated in the lower end of the cord, and proceeded along the efferent nerves to the hearts, thus determining their rhythmic pulsations. But if it be true, as asserted, that the rhythmic pulsations, though arrested for a time by severance of the nerves, or destruction of the lower end of the cord, are after awhile resumed, then these, too, can be no longer counted among the automatic phenomena of the cord. And so in other instances which we shall meet with in the course of this book. The existence of automatism, then, even of this comparatively simple character, is at least doubtful. That all higher automatism comparable at least to that of the cerebral hemispheres is absent, may be regarded as certain.

In the sporadic ganglia the evidence of automatic action seems more clear, and yet is by no means absolutely decisive. The beat of the heart is a typical automatic action; and, since the heart will continue to beat for some time when isolated from the rest of the body (that of a cold-blooded animal continuing to beat for hours, or even days), its automatism must lie in its own structures. When, however, we come to discuss the beat of the heart in detail, we shall find that it is still an open question whether the automatism is confined to the ganglia (either of the sinus venosus, auricles, or auriculo-ventricular boundary), or shared in by the muscular tissue: whether, in fact, the automatism is a muscular automatism like that of a ciliated cell, or the automatism of a differentiated nerve-cell. And yet the heart is the case where the automatism of the ganglia seems clearest.

The peristaltic contractions of the alimentary canal are automatic movements; we cannot speak of them as being simply excited by the presence of food in the canal, any more than we can say that the beat of the heart is caused by the presence of blood in its cavities. When absent they may be set agoing, and when present may be stopped without any change in the contents of the canal. They may, of course, be influenced by the contents, just as the beat of the heart is influenced by the quantity of blood in its cavities. Throughout the intestines are found the nerve plexus of Auerbach and that of Meissner; to each or both of these the automatism of the peristaltic movements has been referred. Yet in the ureter, whose peristaltic waves of contraction closely resemble that of the intestine, automatism is evident in the middle third of its length even when completely isolated; in which region (in the rabbit at least), according to Engelmann,[1] ganglia, and indeed nerve-cells, are entirely absent.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv (1869), ii, 243.

Thus, while in the spinal cord there is doubt whether purely automatic, as stringently distinguished from reflex, actions take place, in the case of the sporadic ganglia the uncertainty is whether the clearly automatic movements of the organs with which the ganglia are associated are due to the nerve-cells of the ganglia or to the muscular tissue itself.

Reflex Actions.—The spinal cord offers the best and most numerous examples of reflex action. In fact, reflex action may be said to be, *par excellence*, the function of the spinal cord; and the gray matter of the spinal cord may be broadly considered as a multitude of reflex centres. We have here to consider the cord merely in its general aspects, and must postpone the special consideration of the particular forms of reflex action which it exhibits, as they come before us in various connections, or until we have to deal with it as part of the great central nervous machinery.

In its simplest form a reflex action is as follows: All the machinery it demands is (*a*) a sentient surface (external or internal), connected by (*b*), or, to adopt the more general and better term, afferent nerve, with (*c*) a central nerve-cell or group of connected nerve-cells, which is in relation by means of (*d*) a motor, or efferent, nerve or nerves, with (*e*) a muscle or muscles, or some other irritable tissue elements, capable of responding, by some change in their condition, to the advent of efferent impulses. The afferent impulses started in *a*, passing along *b*, reach the centre *c*, are there transmuted into efferent impulses, which, passing along *d*, finally reach *e*, and there produce a cognizable effect. The essence of a reflex action consists in the transmutation, by means of the irritable protoplasm of a nerve-cell, of afferent into efferent impulses. As an approach to a knowledge of the nature of that transmutation we may lay down the following propositions:

[Fig. 38.

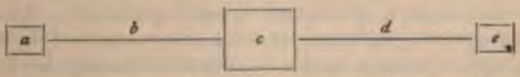


Diagram Illustrating Simplest Form of Reflex Apparatus.]

The number, intensity, character, and distribution of the efferent impulses is determined chiefly by the events which take place in the protoplasm of the reflex centre. It is not that the afferent impulse is simply *reflected* in the nerve-cell, and so becomes with but little change an efferent impulse. On the contrary, an afferent impulse passing along a single sensory fibre may give rise to efferent impulses passing along many motor nerves, and call forth the most complex movements. An instance of this disproportion of the afferent and efferent impulses is seen in the case where the contact with the glottis of a foreign body so insignificant as a hair causes a violent fit of coughing. Under such circumstances a slight contact with the mucous membrane, such as could not possibly give rise to anything more than few and feeble impulses, may cause the discharge of so many efferent impulses along so many motor nerves, that not only all the respiratory muscles, but almost all the muscles of the body, are brought into action. Similar though less striking instances of how incommensurate are afferent and efferent impulses may be seen in reflex actions. In fact the afferent impulse, when it reaches the protoplasm of the nerve, produces there a series of changes, of explosive disturbances, which, except that the nerve-cell does not in any way change its form, may be likened to the explosive changes in a muscle on the arrival of an impulse along its motor nerve.[1] The changes in a nerve-cell during reflex action, we might say during its activity, far more closely resemble the changes during a muscular contraction than those which accompany the passage along a nerve of either an afferent or efferent impulse. The simple passage along a nerve is accompanied by little expenditure of energy; it neither gains nor loses force to any great extent as it progresses. The transmutation in a nerve-cell is most probably (though the direct proofs are, perhaps, wanting) accompanied by a large expenditure of energy, and a simple nervous impulse in suffering this transmutation in a central nervous organ may accumulate in intensity to a very remarkable extent, as in the case of strychnia poisoning.

The nature of the efferent impulses is, however, determined also by the nature of the afferent impulses. The nerve-centre remaining in the same condition, the stronger or more numerous impulses will give rise to the more forcible or more comprehensive movements. Thus if the flank of a brainless frog be very lightly touched, the only reflex movement which is visible is a slight twitching of the muscles lying immediately underneath the spot of skin stimulated. If the stimulus be increased, the movements will spread to the hind-leg of the same side, which frequently will execute a movement calculated to push or wipe away the stimulus. By forcibly pinching the same spot of skin, or otherwise increasing the stimulus, the resulting movements may be led to embrace the fore-leg of the same side, then the opposite side, and finally, almost all the muscles of the body. In other words, the disturbance set going in the central nerve-cells confined when the stimulus is slight to a few nerve-cells and to a few nerve-fibres, *overflows*, so to speak, when the stimulus is increased, on to a number of adjoining (and we must conclude) connected cells, and thus throws impulses into a large and larger number of efferent nerves.

---

[1] The question as to how far these processes in the central cells are connected with the development of consciousness is here purposely passed over.

Certain relations may be observed between the sentient spot stimulated and the resulting movement. In the simplest cases of reflex action this relation is merely that the muscles thrown into action are those governed by a motor nerve, which is the fellow of the sensory nerve, the stimulation of which calls forth the movement. In the more common reflex actions of the brainless frog, and in other cases, the relation is of such a kind that the resulting movement bears *an adaptation* to the stimulus; the foot is withdrawn from the stimulus, or the movement is calculated to push or wipe away the stimulus. In other words, a certain *purpose* is evident in the reflex action.

Thus in all cases, except perhaps the very simplest, the movements called forth by a reflex action are exceedingly complex, compared with those which result from the direct stimulation of a motor trunk. When the peripheral stump of a divided sciatic nerve is stimulated with the interrupted current, the muscles of the leg are at once thrown into tetanus, continue in the same rigid condition during the passage of the current, and relax immediately on the current being shut off. When the same current is applied for a second only, to the skin of the flank of a brainless frog, the leg is drawn up and the foot rapidly swept over the spot irritated, as if to wipe away the irritation; but this movement is a complex one, requiring the contraction of particular muscles in a definite sequence, with a carefully adjusted proportion between the amounts of contraction of the individual muscles. And this complex movement, this balanced and arranged series of contractions, may be repeated more than once as the result of a single stimulation of the skin. When a deep breath is caused by a dash of cold water, the same co-ordinated and carefully arranged series of contractions is also seen to result, as part of a reflex action, from a simple stimulus. And many more examples might be given.

In such cases as these, part of the complexity may be due to the fact that the stimulus is applied to terminal sensory organs and not directly to a nerve-trunk. As we shall see in speaking of the senses, the impulses which are generated by the application of a stimulus to a sensory organ are more complex than those which result from the direct stimulation of a sensory nerve-trunk. Nevertheless, reflex actions of great if not of equal complexity may be induced by stimuli applied directly to a nerve-trunk. We are therefore obliged to conclude that in a reflex action, the processes which are originated in the central nerve-cells by the arrival of simple impulses along afferent nerves may be highly complex; and that it is the constitution and condition of the nerve-cells which determine the complexity and character of the movements which are effected. In other words, the central nerve-cells concerned in reflex actions are to be regarded as constituting a sort of molecular machinery, the character of the resulting movements being determined by the nature of the machinery set going and its condition at the time being, the character and amount of the afferent impulses determining exactly what parts of and how far the central machinery is thrown into action.

Actions of Sporadic Ganglia.—Seeing that in the spinal cord, the nerve-cells undoubtedly are the central structures concerned in the production of reflex action, it is only natural to infer that the nerve-cells of the sporadic ganglia possess similar functions. Yet the evidence of this is at present of very limited extent. With regard to the ganglia on the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, all the evidence goes to show that these possess no power whatever of reflex action. Of the larger ganglia visible to the naked eye, such as the ciliary, otic, etc., we have indications of reflex action in one only, viz., the submaxillary, and these indications are, as we shall see in treating of the salivary glands, disputed. We have no exact proof that the ganglia of the sympathetic chain, or of the larger sympathetic plexuses, are capable of executing reflex actions.

In fact, in searching for reflex actions in ganglia, we are reduced to the small microscopic groups of cells buried in the midst of the tissues to which they belong, such as the ganglia of the heart, of the intestine, the bladder, etc. When a quiescent frog's heart is stimulated by touching its surface, a beat takes place. This beat is, as we shall see, a complex, co-ordinated movement, very similar to a reflex action brought about by means of the spinal cord; and in its production it is probable that the cardiac ganglia are in some way concerned. When a quiescent intestine is touched or otherwise stimulated, peristaltic action is set up. Here again the ganglia present in the intestinal walls may be supposed to play a part; but this movement is much more simple than the beat of the heart, and as regards it, and more especially as regards the similar peristaltic action of the ureter, it becomes difficult to distinguish between a movement governed by ganglia, and one produced by direct stimulation of the muscular fibres. We have seen that the great distinction between a reflex action and a movement caused by direct stimulation of a nerve or of a muscle lies in the greater complexity of the former; and we may readily imagine, that by continued simplification of the central nervous machinery, the two might in the end become so much alike as to be almost indistinguishable.

In the vertebrate animal then the chief seat of reflex action is the spinal cord and brain. We say "and brain" because, as we shall see later on, the brain, in addition to its automatism, is as busy a field of reflex action as the spinal cord.

Inhibition.—In speaking of reflex action, we took it for granted that the spinal cord was, at the moment of the arrival of the afferent impulses at the central nerve-cells, in a quiescent state; that the nerve-cells themselves were not engaged in any automatic action. We were justified in doing so because, as far as the muscles generally of the body are concerned, the spinal cord is in a brainless frog perfectly quiescent; an afferent impulse reaching an ordinary nerve-cell of the spinal cord does not find it preoccupied in any other business. But what happens when afferent impulses reach a nerve-cell or a group of nerve-cells already engaged in automatic action?

We have already referred to an automatic respiratory centre in the medulla oblongata. We may here premise, what we shall show more in detail hereafter, that the pneumogastric nerve is peculiarly associated as an efferent nerve with this respiratory centre. Now if the central end of the divided pneumogastric be stimulated at the time when the respiratory centre is engaged in its accustomed rhythmic action, sending out complex co-ordinated impulses of inspiration (and of expiration) at regular intervals, one of two things may happen, the choice of events being determined by circumstances which need not be considered here.

The most striking event, and the one which interests us now, is that the respiratory rhythm *is slowed or stopped altogether.* This is to say, that afferent impulses which, under ordinary conditions would, on reaching a quiescent nervous centre, give rise to movement, may, under certain conditions, when brought to bear on an already active automatic nervous centre, check or stop movement by interfering with the production of efferent impulses in that centre. This stopping or checking an already present action is spoken of as an "inhibition;" and the effect of the pneumogastric in this way on the respiratory centre is spoken of as "the inhibitory action of the pneumogastric on the respiratory centre."

The other event is that the respiratory rhythm is accelerated. We shall hereafter discuss the explanation of the two events. We may, however, premise that according to one view the pneumogastric contains among its afferent fibres two sets, which are either of a different nature from each other, or are so differently connected with the respiratory centre, that impulses arriving along one stop, while those arriving along the other quicken, the action of that centre. Hence the one set are called "inhibitory," the other "accelerating" or "augmenting" fibres. But we are concerned at present only with the fact that the stimulation of a nerve may produce inhibitory or augmentative effects.

Similarly the vaso-motor centre in the medulla may, by impulses arriving along various afferent tracts, be inhibited, during which the muscular walls of various arteries are relaxed or augmented, whereby the tonic contraction of various arteries is increased.

The most striking instance of inhibition is offered by the heart. If, when the heart is beating well and regularly, the pneumogastric be divided, and the peripheral portion be stimulated even for a very short time with an interrupted current, the heart is immediately brought to a stand-still. Its beats are arrested, it lies perfectly flaccid and motionless, and it is not till after some little time that it recommences its beat. Here again it is usually said that the pneumogastric contains efferent cardio-inhibitory fibres, impulses passing along which, from the medulla, stop the automatic actions of the cardiac ganglia; the respiratory inhibitory fibres of the same nerve are afferent, *i. e.*, impulses pass along them up to the medulla. [Recent experiments made by Sedgwick (*Journal of Physiology*, 1880, p. 22,) seem to indicate that quinine diminishes reflex action mainly by a stimulation of the cardiac peripheries of the pneumogastric nerves.]

Though inhibition is most clearly seen in the case of automatic actions, other actions may be similarly inhibited. Thus, as we shall see later on, the reflex actions of the spinal cord may, by appropriate means, be inhibited.

To sum up, then, the most fundamental properties of nervous tissues.

Nerve-fibres are concerned in the propagation only, not in the origination or transformation of nervous impulses. As far as is at present known, impulses are propagated in the same manner along both sensory and motor nerves. Sensory impulses differ from motor impulses inasmuch as the former are generated in sensory organs and pass up to the central nervous cells, while the latter pass from the central nervous cells to the muscles or to some other peripheral organs.

The operations of the nerve-cells are either automatic or reflex. In both an automatic and a reflex action, the diversity and the co-ordination of the impulses is determined by the condition of the nerve-cells. During the passage of impulse along a nerve-fibre there is no augmentation of energy; in passing through a nerve-cell the augmentation may be, and generally is, most considerable.

When afferent impulses reach a centre already in action, the activity of that centre may, according to circumstances, be either depressed or exalted, may be "inhibited" or "augmented."

The sketch of the evolution of a nervous system given at the beginning of this chapter is based on the observations of Kleinenberg[1] and the subsequent results of Eimer,[2] O. and R. Hertwig,[3] and Romanes.[4] The view expressed as to the original continuity of muscle and nerve is supported by the now well-recognized fact that in skeletal muscles the axis-cylinder of the motor nerve not only pierces the sarcolemma, but comes into close contact with the contractile substance; and this truth we owe largely to Kühne.[5]

---

[1] Hydra, Leipzig, 1872.

[2] Zoologische Untersuch., 1874. Archiv f. micro. Anat., xiv (1877), p. 394.

[3] Das Nerven-System und die Sinnes-Organe der Medusen, 1878.

[4] Phil. Trans., 1876, p. 269, 1877, p. 659.

[5] Archiv f. Anat. und Phys., 1859, p. 564. Ueber d. peripherischen Endorgane der motorischen Nerven, 1862, and subsequent papers in Virchow's Archiv, Bde. 24, 27, 28, and 29. Doyère undoubtedly had previously (1840) seen the continuity of the motor nerve-fibre with the sarcolemma-less muscular fibre in invertebrates (tardigrades), and Wagner (1847) had expressed a belief that in vertebrates also the motor nerve-fibre ends in the muscular fibre. Yet we owe to Kühne the first definite proof that both in vertebrates and in invertebrates, the muscular fibres of which possess a sarcolemma, the axis-cylinder pierces the sarcolemma. We are indebted to him also for the discovery of the mode of termination of the axis-cylinder in the muscular fibres of amphibia, as well as for a correct appreciation of the structure and position within the sarcolemma of the end-plate or essential part of the nerve-eminence (nerven-hügel) discovered in other vertebrates by Rouget, Krause, and Engelmann.

CHAPTER IV.

THE VASCULAR MECHANISM.

In order that the blood may be a satisfactory medium of communication between all the tissues of the body, two things are necessary. In the first place, there must be through all parts of the body a flow of blood, of a certain rapidity and general constancy. In the second place, this flow must be susceptible of both general and local modifications. In order that any tissue or organ may readily adapt itself to changes of circumstances (action, repose, etc.), it is of advantage that the quantity of blood passing to it should be not absolutely constant, but capable of variation. In order that the material equilibrium of the body may be maintained as exactly as possible, it is desirable that the loading of the blood with substances proceeding from the unwonted activity of any one tissue should be accompanied by a greater flow of blood through some excretory or metabolic tissue by which these substances may be removed. Similarly it is of advantage to the body that the general flow of blood should in some circumstances be more energetic, and in others less so, than normal.

The first of these conditions is dependent on the mechanical and physical properties of the vascular mechanism; and the problems connected with it are almost exclusively mechanical or physical problems. The second of these conditions depends on the intervention of the nervous system; and the problems connected with it are essentially physiological problems.

I. The Physical Phenomena of the Circulation.

The **Apparatus** concerned in the **Maintenance of the Normal Flow** is as follows:

1. The heart, beating rhythmically by virtue of its contractility and intrinsic mechanisms, and at each beat discharging a certain quantity of blood into the aorta. For simplicity's sake we omit for the present the pulmonary circulation. [For the physiological anatomy of the heart, see page 191.]

2. The arteries, highly elastic throughout, with a circular muscular element increasing in relative importance as the arteries diminish in size. It must not be forgotten that the muscular element is also elastic.

[The walls of the arteries consist of three coats, called respectively the internal, middle, and external. The *inner* or serous coat consists of an internal layer of ovoid or fusiform, nucleated epithelial cells, resting upon a longitudinal layer of elastic fibres, which on account of its reticulated appearance is termed the *fenestrated membrane.* In the middle-sized arteries the inner coat is increased in thickness by the addition of connective tissue and elastic fibres between the epithelium layer and the fenestrated membrane.

The *middle* or muscular coat varies both in character and thickness according to the size of the vessel. In the smallest arteries this coat may be altogether absent, or merely exist as a delicate muscular layer. In large arteries there may be three or four muscular layers. In still larger vessels, like the femoral, numerous alternate layers of elastic and muscular tissues are present. In the great vessels of the heart the elastic tissue much predominates, the muscular element being proportionately less. The general arrangement of the fibres of the middle coat is in a transverse direction.

The *external* coat or *tunica adventitia* is composed principally of connective tissue, having intermingled with it a greater or less proportion of elastic fibres. In arteries of medium size the external coat is composed of two layers, an internal elastic and a superimposed connective tissue. In smaller arteries the elastic tissue entirely disappears, and the connective tissue alone forms the coat.

The arteries are generally inclosed in a fibro-areolar envelope, which is termed a sheath. The sheath is generally a prolongation or continuation of the fascia of the particular part through which the vessel runs or is distributed.

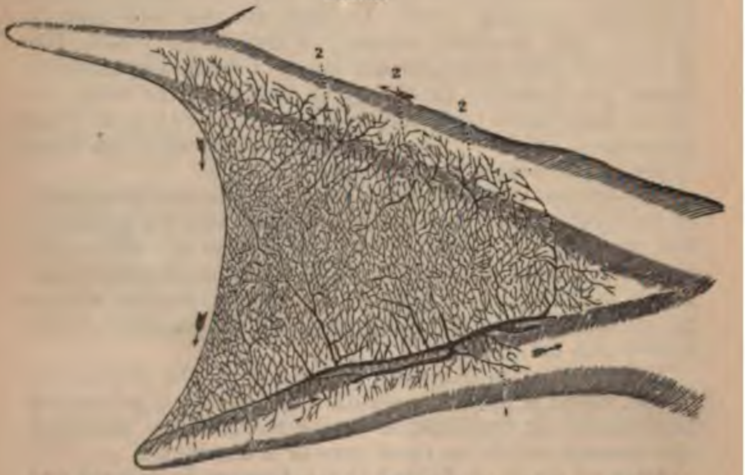
After an artery is ligated, if the ligature be severed and the vessel opened it will be seen that the internal and middle coats have been ruptured, and that the external coat alone remains intact, by reason of its comparative toughness.

The principal interest to the physiologist in the anatomy of the arteries lies in the middle coat, which, on account of its muscular and elastic element, plays a very important part in the pulse, and in the passage of the current of blood through the body of the capillaries.]

When an artery divides, the united sectional area of the branches is, as a rule, larger than the sectional area of the stem. Thus the collective capacity of the arteries is continually (and rapidly) increasing from the heart towards the capillaries. If all the arterial branches were fused together, they would form a funnel, with its apex at the aorta. The united sectional area of the capillaries has been calculated by Vierordt to amount to several (eight?) hundred times that of the aorta.

3. The capillaries, channels of exceedingly small but variable size. [They average about the $\frac{1}{100}$ of a mm. in diameter and pervade nearly all portions and tissues of the body, forming a complex interlacement of anastomoses which are found between the terminal ends of the arterioles and the beginnings of the veins. (Fig. 39.)

FIG. 39.

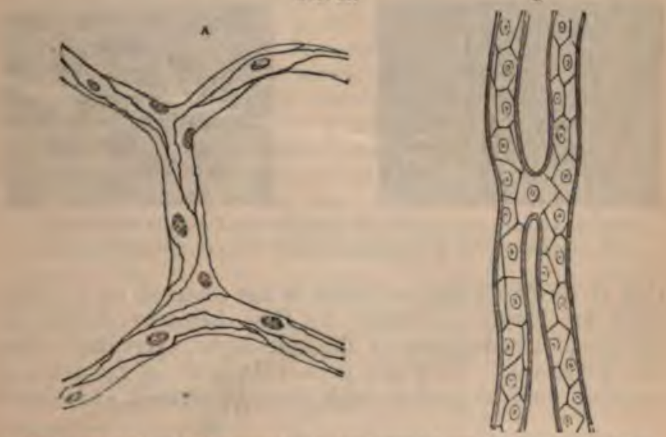


Web of a Frog's Foot. Showing arterioles (2, 2, 2), beginnings of veins (1, 1, 1); with intermediate capillaries with their anastomoses. Arrows indicate the direction of the blood-current.

In structure, the minutest capillaries are composed of a simple wall of ovoid, fusiform or irregularly shaped nucleated epithelial cells. (Fig. 40.) In larger capillaries they have also a delicate, transparent, structureless basement-membrane. The lines of juncture of these epithelium cells can be brought out in a microscopical preparation with silver nitrate, which stains them black.

The form and intricacy of the capillary plexuses in the different tissues depend principally upon the functional relation which the blood bears to the part, and to the molecular arrangement of the cells composing the organ or tissue. Thus, where respiratory changes in the blood are most active, the plexuses are relatively more intricate. This is also the case in the glands, where the blood-supply is necessarily very great. Where the vessels merely convey blood for nutritive purposes the plexuses are much simplified. Four of the different forms of capillary meshes, which are dependent

FIG. 40.



A, Fine capillaries from the mesentery.. B, capillaries of larger size and with thicker walls, from the pecten of the eye of a bird.

FIG. 41.

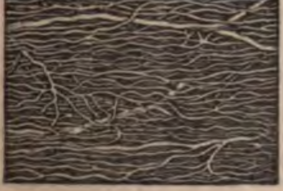


FIG. 42.

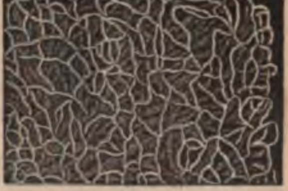


FIG. 41.—Distribution of Capillaries in Muscle.
FIG. 42.—Capillary Network around Fat-cells.

principally upon peculiarities in the molecular arrangement of the tissue elements, are shown in the accompanying Figs., 41, 42, 43, 44. Thus, around the follicles of mucous membrane, the capillary meshes are very much elongated; in the skin of the finger they are more or less rounded, etc.] Their walls are elastic (as shown by their behavior during the passage of blood-corpuscles through them), exceedingly thin, and permeable. They are permeable both in the sense of allowing fluids to pass through them by osmosis, and also in the sense of allowing white and red corpuscles to traverse them. The small arteries and veins, which gradually pass into and from the capillaries properly so called, are similarly permeable, the more so the smaller they are.

Fig. 43.

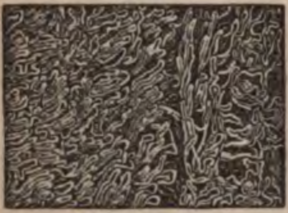


Fig. 44.

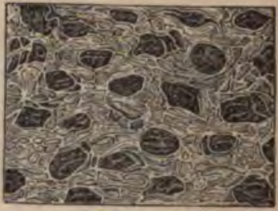


Fig. 43.—Distribution of Capillaries on the Surface of the Skin of the Finger.
Fig. 44.—Distribution of Capillaries around Follicles of Mucous Membrane.

Fig. 45.

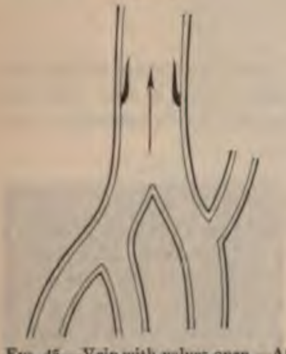


Fig. 46.

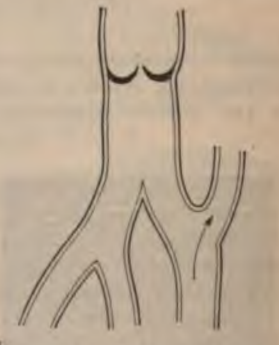


Fig. 45.—Vein with valves open.—After Dalton.
Fig. 46.—Vein with valves closed; stream of blood passing off by lateral channel.—After Dalton.

[4. *The Veins.*—The coats of the veins are three in number, similar to those of the arteries, the principal difference to the physiologist being in the component parts of the middle coat. This coat in the veins contains a larger proportion of connective tissue, with a smaller proportion of muscular and elastic fibres. An artery when empty retains its rounded form; a vein immediately collapses. This is due to the abundance or deficiency of the yellow elastic tissue element, as the case may be.

The arteries are active agents in the circulation of the blood; the veins are passive, and serve as channels to convey the blood from the capillaries to the internal organs.

At intervals on the internal surface of most of the veins, projecting semicircular pouches are seen, arranged in pairs, opposite each other. These pouches are the *valves* (Figs. 45, 46) of the veins, and are formed by reduplications of the internal and middle coats. Their function is to prevent a reflux of blood. The veins form numerous anastomoses; if, therefore, a vessel becomes filled, and the current stagnated, the blood will take a different channel, as is shown in the above figure. (Fig. 46.) These bloodvessels are all lined with pavement epithelium.

The walls of the arteries and veins are supplied with nourishment by small vessels, which are termed the *vasa vasorum.* These vessels form capillary plexuses in the middle and external coats. The portion of the inner coat upon which the epithelial lining rests, as well as the epithelium, probably receives its nourishment from the blood which courses the vessel. The arteries are supplied with nerves from both the sympathetic and cerebro-spinal systems; principally from the former. As a general rule, nerves have not been found in the venous walls.]

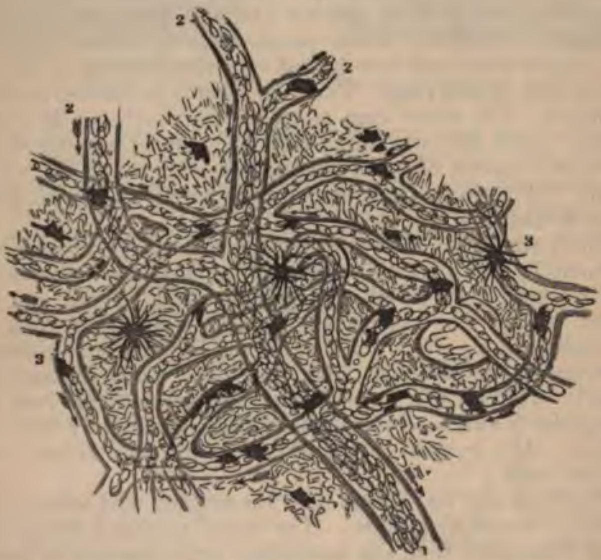
The veins are less elastic than the arteries and with a very variable muscular element. The united sectional area of the veins diminishes from the capillaries to the heart, thus resembling the arteries; but the united sectional area of the venæ cavæ at their embouchment into the right auricle is greater than that of the aorta at its origin. (The proportion is nearly two to one.) The total capacity of the veins is similarly much greater than that of the arteries. The veins alone can hold the total mass of blood which in life is distributed over both arteries and veins. Indeed nearly the whole blood is capable of being received by what is merely a part of the venous system, viz., the vena portæ and its branches. Such veins as are for various reasons liable to a reflux of blood from the heart towards the capillaries, are provided with valves.

SEC. 1. MAIN GENERAL FACTS OF THE CIRCULATION.

1. *The Capillary Circulation.*

If the web of a frog's foot be examined with a microscope, the blood, as judged of by the movements of the corpuscles, is seen to be passing in a continuous stream from the small arteries through the capillaries to the veins. (Fig. 47.) The velocity is greater in the arteries than in the veins, and greater in both than in the capillaries. In the arteries faint pulsations, synchronous with the heart's beat, are occasionally visible; and not unfrequently variations in velocity and in the distribution of the blood, due to causes which will be hereafter discussed, are witnessed from time to time.

[FIG. 47.

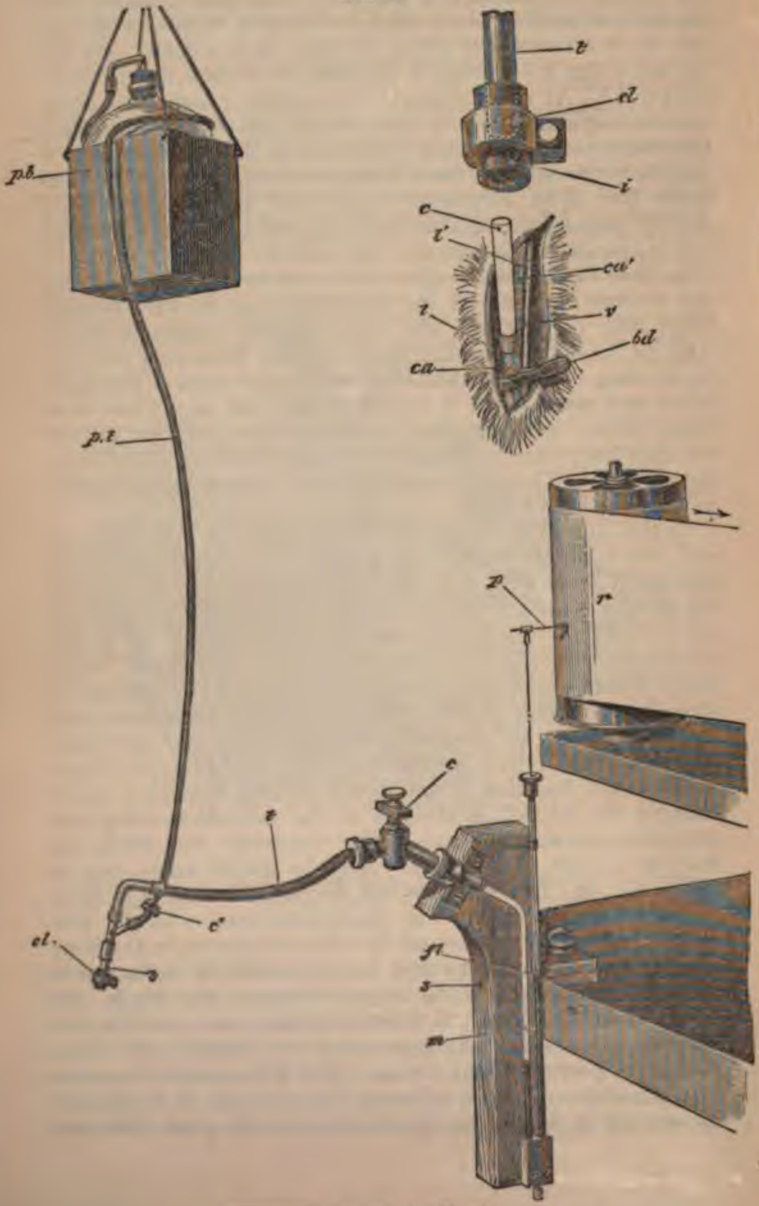


Capillary Plexus in a portion of the Web of a Frog's Foot, magnified 110 diameters. 1, trunk of vein; 2, 2, 2, its branches arising from the arterial capillaries; 3, 3, pigment-cells.]

The flow through the smaller capillaries is very variable. Sometimes the corpuscles are seen passing through the channel (which when collapsed may have a diameter smaller than the short axis of a red corpuscle) in single file with great regularity at a velocity of about .57 mm. in a second. (In the human retina the velocity is .75 mm. per second according to Vierordt.) At other times, the corpuscles which pass along a given capillary may be few and far between. Sometimes the corpuscle may remain stationary at the entrance into a capillary, the channel itself being for some little distance entirely free from corpuscles. Any one of these conditions readily passes into another, and, especially with a somewhat feeble circulation, instances of all of them may be seen in the same field of the microscope. It is only in the case of a very full circulation that all the capillaries can be seen equally filled with corpuscles. The long oval red corpuscle moves with its long axis parallel to the stream, frequently rotating on its long axis and sometimes on its short axis. The flexibility and elasticity of a corpuscle are well seen when it is being driven into a capillary narrower than itself, or when it becomes temporarily lodged at the angle between two diverging channels. The small mammalian corpuscles rotate largely as they are driven along.

In the larger capillaries, and especially in the small arteries and veins which permit the passage of several corpuscles abreast, it is observed that the red corpuscles run in the middle of the channel, forming a colored core, between which and the sides of the vessel all round is a layer, containing no red corpuscles. In this layer, the so-called "inert layer," especially in that of the veins, are frequently seen white corpuscles, sometimes clinging to the sides of the vessel, sometimes rolling slowly along, and in general moving irregularly, and often in jerks. This division into an inert layer and an axial stream is due to the fact that in any stream passing through a closed channel the friction is greatest at the immediate sides, and diminishes towards the axis. The corpuscles pass where the friction is least, in the axis. A quite similar axial core is seen when any fine particles are driven in a stream of fluid through a narrow tube. The phenomena cease with the flow of the fluid. The presence of the white corpuscles in the inert layer is said to be due to their being specifically lighter than the red corpuscles. When fine particles of two kinds, one lighter than the other, are driven through a narrow tube, the heavier particles flow in the axis and the lighter in the more peripheral portions of the stream. The white corpuscles, however, are distinctly more adhesive than the red, as is seen by the manner in which they become fixed to the glass slide and

FIG. 48.



— Investigating Blood-pressure.

At the upper right-hand corner is seen, on an enlarged scale, the carotid artery, clamped by the forceps *bd*, with the vagus nerve *v* lying by its side. The artery has been ligatured at *l''* and the glass canula *c* has been introduced into the artery between the ligature *l''* and the forceps *bd*, and secured in position by the ligature *l*. The shrunken artery on the distal side of the canula is seen at *ca'*.

p. b. is a box containing a bottle holding a saturated solution of sodium carbonate, and capable of being raised or lowered at pleasure. The solution of sodium carbonate flows by the tube *p. t.* regulated by the clamp *c''* into the tube *t*. The tube *t* is connected with the leaden tube *t*, and the stopcock *c* with the manometer, of which *m* is the descending and *m'* the ascending limb, and *s* the support. The mercury in the ascending limb bears on its surface the float *fl*, a long rod attached to which is fitted with the pen *p* writing on the recording surface *r*. The clamp *cl.* at the end of the tube *t* has an arrangement shown on a larger scale at the right-hand upper corner.

The descending tube *m* of the manometer, and the tube *t* being completely filled along its whole length with fluid to the exclusion of all air, the canula *c* is filled with fluid, slipped into the open end of the thick-walled india-rubber tube *i*, until it meets the tube *t* (whose position within the india-rubber tube is shown by the dotted lines), and is then securely fixed in this position by the clamp *cl*.

The stopcocks *c* and *c''* are now opened, and the pressure-bottle raised until the mercury in the manometer is raised to the required height. The clamp *c''* is then closed, and the forceps *bd* removed from the artery. The pressure of the blood in the carotid *ca* is in consequence brought to bear through *t* upon the mercury in the manometer.

cover-slip when a drop of blood is mounted for microscopical examination; and by reason of this adhesiveness they may become temporarily attached to the walls of the vessel, and consequently appear in the inert layer. The resistance to the flow of blood thus caused by the friction generated in so many minute passages, is one of the most important physical facts in the capillary circulation. In the large arteries the friction is small; it increases as they divide, and receives a very great addition in the minute arteries and capillaries. It need perhaps hardly be said that this peripheral friction not only opposes the flow of blood through the capillaries themselves, but, working backwards along the whole arterial system, has to be met by the heart at each systole of the ventricle.

2. *The Flow in the Arteries.*

When an artery is severed, the flow from the proximal section is not equable, but comes in jets, which correspond to the heart-beats, though the flow does not cease between the jets. The blood is ejected with considerable force; thus, in Dr. Stephen Hale's[1] experiments, when the crural artery of a mare was severed, the jet, even after much loss of blood, rose to the height of two feet. The larger the artery and the nearer to the heart, the greater the force with which the blood issues, and the more marked the intermittence of the flow. The flow from the distal section may be very slight, or may take place with considerable force and marked intermittence, according to the amount of collateral communication.

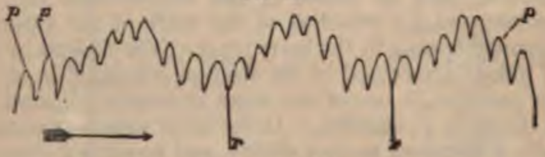
---

[1] Statistical Essays, vol. ii, p. 2 (1732).

Arterial Pressure.—If, while the blood is flowing normally along a large artery, *e. g.*, the carotid, a mercury (or other) manometer (Fig. 48) be connected with a hole in the side of the artery, so that there is free communication between the interior of the artery and the proximal (descending) limb of the manometer, the following facts are observed:

Immediately that communication is established between the interior of the artery and the manometer, blood rushes from the former into the latter, driving some of the mercury from the descending limb into the ascending limb, and thus causing the level of the mercury in the ascending limb to rise rapidly.

Fig. 49.



Tracing of Arterial Pressure with a Mercury Manometer.

The smaller curves *p*, *p* are the pulse-curves. The space from *r* to *r* embraces a respiratory undulation.

This rise is marked by jerks, corresponding with the heart-beats. Having reached a certain level, the mercury ceases to rise any more. It does not, however, remain absolutely at rest, but undergoes oscillations; it keeps rising and falling. Each rise, which is very slight compared with the total height to which the mercury has risen, has the same rhythm as the systole of the ventricle. Similarly, each fall corresponds with the diastole.

If a float, swimming on the top of the mercury in the ascending limb of the manometer, and bearing a brush or other marker, be brought to bear on a travelling surface, some such tracing as that represented in Fig. 49 will be described. Each of the smaller curves (*p*, *p*) corresponds to a heart-beat, the rise corresponding to the systole and the fall to the diastole of the ventricle. The larger undulations (*r*, *r*) in the tracing, which are respiratory in origin, will be discussed hereafter. This observation teaches us that the blood, as it is passing along the carotid artery, is capable of supporting a column of mercury of a certain height (measured by the difference of level between the mercury in the descending limb, and that in the ascending limb of the manometer), when the mercury is placed in direct communication with the side of the stream of blood. In other words, the blood, as it passes through the artery, exerts a lateral pressure on the sides of the artery equal to so many millimeters of mercury. In this lateral pressure we have further to distinguish between the slighter oscillations corresponding with the heart-beats, and a *mean pressure* above and below which the oscillations range. A similar mean pressure with similar oscillations is found when any artery of the body is examined in the same way. In all arteries the blood exerts a certain pressure on the walls of the vessels which contain it. This is generally spoken of as arterial pressure, and the pressure in the aorta of any animal is usually spoken of as its blood-pressure.

Description of Experiment.—The carotid, or other vessel, is laid bare, clamped in two places and divided between the clamps. Into the cut ends is inserted a hollow T piece of the same bore as the artery, the cross portion forming the continuation of the artery. The vertical portion is connected by means of a non-elastic flexible tube with the descending limb of the manometer. In order to avoid loss of blood fluid is injected into the flexible tube until the mercury in the manometer stands a very little below what may be beforehand guessed at as the probable mean pressure. The fluid chosen is a saturated solution of sodium carbonate, with a view to hinder the coagulation of the blood in the tube. When the clamps are removed from the artery the blood rushes through the cross of the ⊢ piece. Some passes into the side limb of the ⊢ piece, and continues to do so until the mean pressure is quite reached. Thenceforward there is no more escape; but the pressure continues in the interior of the cross of the ⊢ piece, is transmitted along the connecting tube to the manometer, and the mercury continues to stand at a height indicative of the mean pressure with oscillations corresponding to the heart's beats. Practically the use of the ⊢ piece is found inconvenient. Accordingly the general custom is to ligature the artery, to place a clamp on the vessel on the proximal side of the ligature, and to introduce a straight canula, Fig. 48, connected with the manometer, between the ligature and the clamp. In this case, on loosing the clamp, the whole column of blood in the artery is brought to bear on the manometer, and the tracings taken illustrate the lateral pressure, not of the artery, but of the vessel (aorta, etc., as the case may be), of which it is itself a branch.

Tracings of the movements of the column of mercury in the manometer may be taken either on a smoked surface of a revolving cylinder (Fig. 12), or by means of a brush and ink on a continuous roll of paper, as in the more complex kymograph (Fig. 52).

FIG. 50.

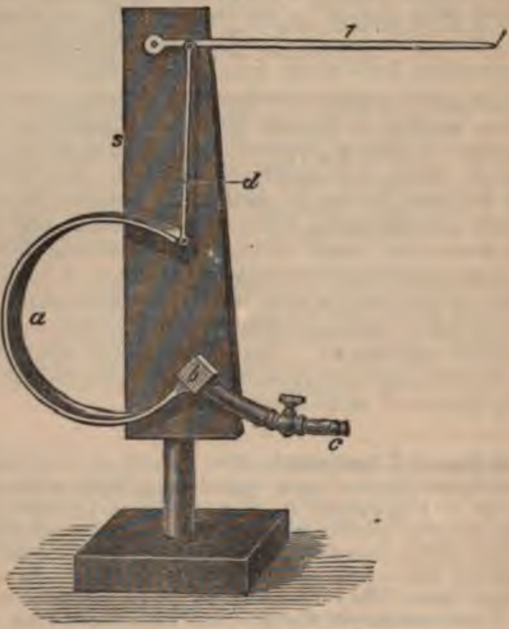


Diagram Illustrating Fick's Spring Manometer.

This consists essentially of a hollow flattened German silver tube *a*, curved in the form of an incomplete circle. The lower open end *b*, firmly fastened to the stand *s*, is connected with a tube *c*, bearing a stopcock. To the upper closed end is attached a light upright rod *d* connected with the writing lever *l*.

Through the tube *c* the hollow curved spring is filled with alcohol, and the stopcock closed. The tube *c* is then connected with the artery by means of a non-elastic flexible (leaden) tube filled with sodium carbonate solution. On opening the stopcock the variations of pressure of the blood in the artery are communicated to the fluid in the hollow curved spring; at each increase of pressure the spring expands, and the movements of the free end are transferred by *d* to the writing lever *l*. The instrument as generally sent out also bears an arrangement (not shown in the diagram) by which the point of the lever describes a straight instead of a curved line. The spring manometer is exceedingly useful where it is desirable to investigate closely the variations in the form of the pressure-curve. In order to measure the amount of variation, the instrument must be experimentally graduated.

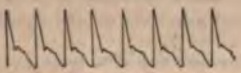
In such a mercury manometer, the inertia of the mercury obscures many of the features of the minor curves caused by the heart-beats. When, therefore, these, rather than variations in the mean pressure, are being studied, it is advisable to have recourse to the spring manometer (Fig. 50), introduced by Fick. In using this instrument, the tube *t*, Fig. 48, is connected with the tube *c*, Fig. 50. [A tracing obtained by Fick's manometer is shown in Fig. 51.]

The average pressure of the blood in the same body is greatest in the largest arteries, and diminishes as the arteries get less; but the fall is a very gradual one until the smallest arteries are reached, in which it becomes very rapid. In the carotid of the horse the mean arterial pressure varies from 150 to 200 mm. of mercury; of the dog from 100 to 175; of the rabbit from 50 to 90. In the carotid of man it probably amounts to 150 or 200.

Since in all arteries the blood is pressing on the arterial walls with some considerable force, all the arteries must be in a state of permanent distension so long as blood is flowing through them from the heart. When the blood-current is cut off, as by a ligature, this expansion or distension disappears.

Not only is there a permanent expansion corresponding to the mean pressure, but just as the mercury in the manometer rises above the level of mean pressure at each systole of the heart, and falls below it at each diastole, so at any spot in the artery there is for each heart-beat a temporary expansion, succeeded by a temporary contraction, the diameter of the artery in its temporary expansions and contractions oscillating, in correspondence with the oscillations of the manometer, beyond and within the diameter of permanent expansion. These temporary expansions constitute what is called the pulse, and will be discussed more fully hereafter.

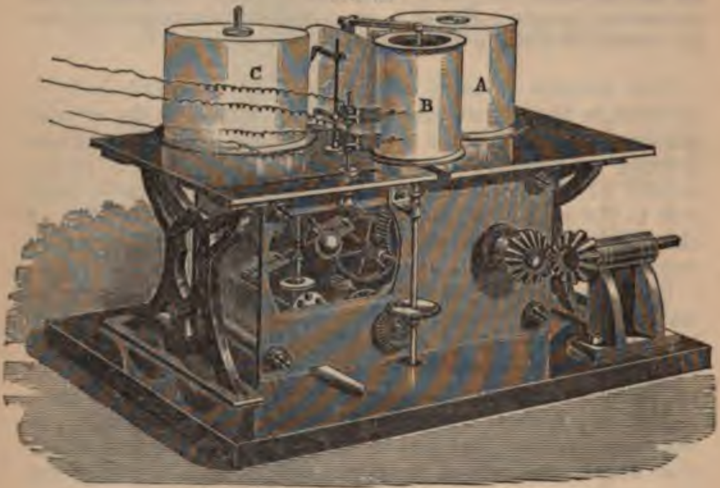
[FIG. 51.



Normal arterial tracing obtained with the Spring Manometer; dog under curara.]

The Velocity of the Flow.—When even a small artery is severed a considerable quantity of blood escapes from the proximal cut end in a very short space of time. That is to say, the blood moves in the arteries from the heart to the capillaries with a very considerable velocity. By various methods, this velocity of the blood-current has been measured at different parts of the arterial system; the results, owing to imperfections in the methods employed, cannot be regarded as satisfactorily exact, but may be accepted as approximatively true. The velocity of the arterial stream is greatest in the largest arteries, and diminishes from the heart to the capillaries, *pari passu*, with the increase, so to speak, of the width of the bed, *i. e.*, with the increase of the united sectional area.

FIG. 52.



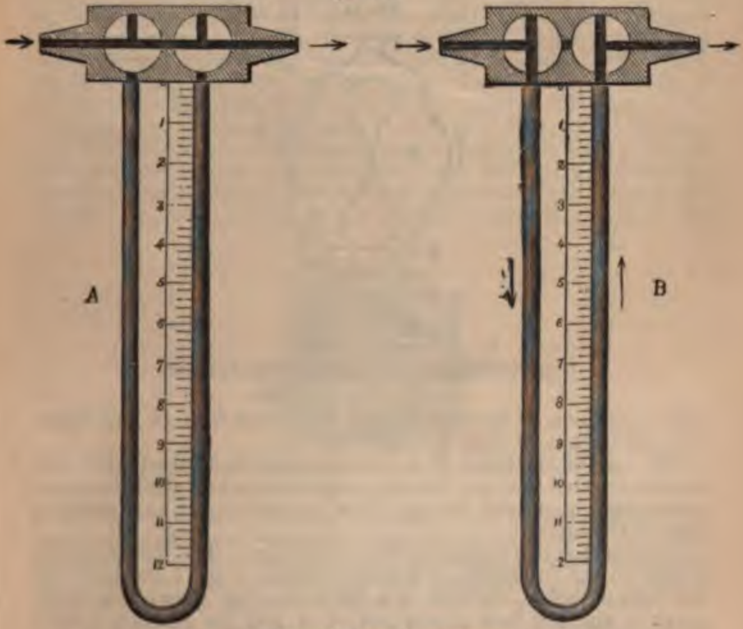
Large Kymograph with continuous roll of paper.

The clock-work machinery, some of the details of which are seen, unrolls the paper from the roll *C*, carries it smoothly over the cylinder *B*, and then winds it up into the roll *A*.

Two electromagnetic markers are seen in the position in which they record their movements on the paper as it travels over *B*. The manometer, or any other recording instrument used, can be fixed either in the notch immediately in front of *B*, or in any other position that may be desired.

Methods.—The Hæmadromometer of Volkmann (Fig. 53). An artery, *e. g.*, a carotid is clamped in two places, and divided between the clamps. Two canulæ, of a bore as nearly equal as possible to that of the artery, or of a known bore, are inserted in the two ends. The two canulæ are connected by means of two stopcocks, which work together, with the two ends of a long glass tube, bent in the shape of **U**, and filled with water or with a colored innocuous fluid. The clamps on the artery being released, a turn of the stopcocks permits the blood to enter the proximal end of the long **U** tube, along which it courses, driving the fluid out into the artery through the distal end. Attached to the tube is a graduated scale, by means of which the velocity with which the blood flows *along the tube* may be read off. Even supposing the canulæ to be of the same bore as the artery, it is evident that the conditions of the flow through the tube are such as will only admit of the result thus gained being considered as an approximative estimation of the real velocity in the artery itself.

[Fig. 53.

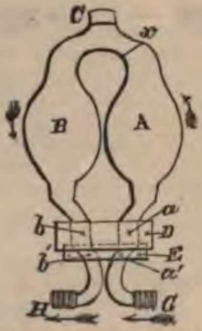


Volkmann's Hæmadromometer.

The conical portions of the instrument are inserted in the cut ends of a vein or artery. By a simple arrangement of a double stopcock the blood-current can be made to pass immediately through the transverse arm as in *A*, or to pass through the graduated U-shaped tube as in *B*.]

The Rheometer (Stromuhr) of Ludwig. This consists of two glass bulbs *A* and *B* (Fig. 54), communicating above with each other, and with the common tube *C* by which they can be filled. Their lower ends are fixed in the metal disk *D*, which can be made to rotate through two right angles, round the lower disk *E*. In the upper disk are two holes *a* and *b*, continuous with *A* and *B* respectively, and in the lower disk are two similar holes *a′* and *b′*, similarly continuous with the tubes *H* and *G*. Hence, in the position of the disks shown in the figure, the tube *G* is continuous through the two disks with the bulb *A* and the tube *H* with the bulb *B*. On turning the disk *D* through two right angles the tube *G* becomes continuous with *B* instead of *A*, and the tube *H* with *A* instead of *B*. There is a further arrangement, omitted from the figure for the sake of simplicity, by which, when the disk *D* is turned through one instead of two right angles from either of the above positions, *G* becomes directly continuous with *H*, both being completely shut off from the bulbs.

Fig. 54.

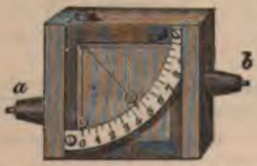


Diagrammatic Representation of Ludwig's Stromuhr.

The ends of the tubes *H* and *G* are made to fit exactly into two canulæ inserted into the two cut ends of the artery about to be experimented upon, and having a bore as nearly equal as possible to that of the artery.

The method of experimenting is as follows. The disk *D*, being placed in the intermediate position, so that *a* and *b* are both cut off from *a′* and *b′*, the bulb *A* is filled with pure olive oil up to the mark *x*, and the bulb *B*, the rest of *A*, and the junction *C* with defibrinated blood; and *C* is then clamped. The tubes *H* and *G* are also filled with defibrinated blood, and *G* is inserted into the canula of the central, *H* into that of the peripheral, end of the artery. On removing the clamps from the artery the blood flows through *G* to *H*, and so back into the artery. The observation now begins by turning the disk *D* into the position shown in the figure; the blood then flows into *A*, driving the oil there contained out before it into the bulb *B*, in the direction of the arrow, the defibrinated blood previously present in *B* passing by *H* into the artery, and so into the system. At the moment that the blood is seen to rise to the mark *x*, the disk *D* is with all possible rapidity turned through two right angles; and thus the bulb *B*, now largely filled with oil, placed in communication with *G*. The blood-stream now drives the oil back into *A*, and the new blood in *A* through *H* into the artery. As soon as the oil has wholly returned to its original position, the disk is again turned round, and *A* once more placed in communication with *G*, and the oil once more driven from *A* to *B*. And this is repeated several times; indeed generally until the clotting of the blood or the admixture of the oil with the blood puts an end to the experiment. Thus the flow of blood is used to fill alternately with blood or oil the space of the bulb *A*, whose cavity as far as the mark x has been exactly measured; hence if the number of times in any given time the disk *D* has to be turned round be known, the number of times *A* has been filled is also known, and thus the quantity of blood which has passed in that time through the canula connected with the tube *G* is directly measured. For instance, supposing that the quantity held by the bulb *A* when filled up to the mark x is 5 cc., and supposing that from the moment of allowing the first 5 cc. of blood to begin to enter the tube to the moment when the escape of the last 5 cc. from the artery into the tube was complete, 100 seconds had elapsed, during which time 5 cc. had been received 10 times into the tube from the artery (all but the last 5 cc. being returned into the distal portion of the artery), obviously .5 cc. of blood had flowed from the proximal section of the artery in one second. Hence supposing that the diameter of the canula (and of the artery, they being the same) were 2 mm., with a sectional area, therefore, of 3.14 square mm., an outflow through the section of .5 cc. or 500 cmm. in a second would give $(\frac{500}{3.14})$, a velocity of about 159 mm. in a second.

[FIG. 55.

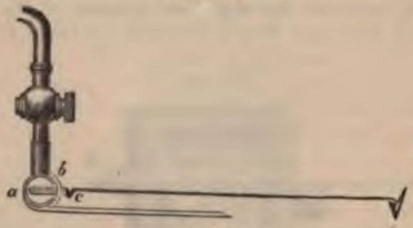


Hæmatochometer of Vierordt. *a* and *b*, mouthpiece.]

The Hæmatochometer of Vierordt (Fig. 55) is constructed on the principle of measuring the velocity of the current by observing the amount of deviation undergone by a pendulum, the free end of which hangs loosely in the stream. A square or rectangular chamber, one side of which is of glass and marked with a graduated scale in the form of an arc of a circle, is connected by means of two short tubes with the two cut ends of an artery; the blood consequently flows from the proximal (central) portion of the artery through the chamber into the distal portion of the artery. Within the chamber and suspended from its roof is a short pendulum, which when the blood-stream is cut off from the chamber hangs motionless in a vertical position, but when the blood is allowed to flow through the chamber, is driven by the force of the current out of its position of rest. The pendulum is so placed that a marker attached to its free end travels close to the inner surface of the glass side along the arc of the graduated side. Hence the amount of deviation from a vertical position may easily be read off on the scale from the outside. The graduation of the scale having been carried out by experimenting with streams of known velocity, the velocity can at once be calculated from the amount of deviation.

An instrument based on the same principle has been invented by Chauveau and improved by Lortet. In this the part which corresponds to the pendulum in Vierordt's instrument is prolonged outside the chamber, and thus the portion within the chamber is made to form the short arm of a lever, the fulcrum of which is at the point where the wall of the chamber is traversed and the long arm of which projects outside. (Fig. 56.) A somewhat wide tube, the wall of which is at one point composed of an india-rubber membrane, is introduced between the two cut ends of an artery. A long light lever pierces the india-rubber membrane. The short expanded arm of this lever projecting within the tube is moved on its fulcrum in the india-rubber ring by the current of blood passing through the tube, the greater the velocity of the current the larger being the excursion of the lever. The movements of the short arm give rise to corresponding movements in the opposite direction of the long arm outside the tube, and these, by means of a marker attached to the end of the long arm, may be directly inscribed on a recording surface. This instrument is very well adapted for observing changes in the velocity of the flow. In determining actual velocities, for which purpose it has to be experimentally graduated, it is not so useful.

[Fig. 56.



M. Lortet's Instrument.

a, tube open at both ends; *b*, square opening closed by india-rubber membrane, which is pierced by the lever, the thick end of which projects into the vessel.]

In the horse, Volkmann found the velocity of the stream to be in the carotid artery about 300 mm., in the maxillary artery 165 mm., and in the metatarsal artery 56 mm. in the second. Chauveau determined the velocity in the carotid e horse to vary from 520 to 150 mm. per sec.

each beat of the heart, flowing at the former rate during the height of each pulse-expansion, and at the latter in the interval between each two beats. Ludwig and Dogiel found the velocity in the dog and in the rabbit to vary within very wide limits, not only in different arteries, but in the same artery under different circumstances. Thus while in the carotid of the rabbit it may be said to vary from 100 to 200 mm. per sec., and in the carotid of the dog from 200 to 500 mm. per sec., both these limits were frequently passed.

3. *The Flow in the Veins.*

When a vein is severed the flow from the distal cut end (*i. e.*, the end nearest the capillaries) is continuous, the blood is ejected with comparatively little force, and with slight velocity.

When a vein is connected with a manometer, the lateral pressure is found to be very small; it is greater in the veins farther from the heart than in those nearer the heart. In the immediate neighborhood of the heart the pressure may (during the inspiratory movement) become negative, *i. e.*, when the manometer is brought into connection with the interior of the vein, the mercury in the distal limb falls, instead of, as in the case of the artery, rising.

In the brachial vein of the sheep Jacobson found the mean pressure to be 4 mm. of mercury, in a branch of the same 9 mm. In the crural it was 11.4 mm. In the subclavian the mean pressure was negative, viz., —.1 mm., becoming —1 mm. during inspiration, —3 mm. or —5 mm. during a strong inspiration, and changing to positive during expiration.

The level of mercury in the manometer, except in the case of certain veins, subject to influences which will be discussed hereafter, remains constant. The pulse-oscillations, so striking in the arteries, are absent in the veins. In the small veins the velocity of the current, measured in the same way as the arteries, is very slight. It increases in the larger veins, corresponding to the diminution of the area of "the bed;" it is about 200 mm. per sec. in the jugular vein of the dog.

Thus the flow in the veins presents strong contrasts with that in the arteries. In the arteries, even in the smallest branches, there is a considerable mean pressure. In the veins, even in the small veins where it is largest, the mean pressure is very slight. In other words, there is always a difference of pressure tending to make the blood flow continuously from the arteries into the veins. A pulse is present in the arteries, but, with certain exceptions, absent in the veins. The velocity of the stream of blood in the arteries is considerable; in the small veins it is much less, but it increases in the larger trunks; for in both arteries and veins it corresponds with the area of the bed, diminishing in the former from the heart to the capillaries, and increasing in the latter from the capillaries to the heart.

Hydraulic Principles of the Circulation.

All the above phenomena are the simple results of an intermittent force (like that of the systole of the ventricle) working in a closed circuit of branching elastic tubes, so arranged that while the individual tubes first diminish (from the heart to the capillaries) and then increase (from the capillaries to the heart), the area of the bed first increases and then diminishes, the tubes together thus forming two cones placed base to base at the capillaries, with their apices converging to the heart. To this it must be added that the friction in the small arteries or capillaries, at the junction of the bases of the cones, offers a very great resistance to the flow of the blood through them. It is this peripheral resistance (in the minute arteries and capillaries, for the resistance offered by the friction in the larger vessels may, when compared with this, be practically neglected), reacting through the elastic walls of the arteries upon the intermittent force of the heart, which gives the circulation of the blood its peculiar features.

Circumstances determining the Character of the Flow.—When fluid is driven by an intermittent force, as by a pump, through a perfectly rigid tube (or system of tubes) at each stroke of the pump there escapes from the distal end of the system just as much fluid as enters it at the proximal end. The escape, moreover, takes place at the same time as the entrance, since the time taken up by the transmission of the *shock* is so small that it may be neglected. This result remains the same when any resistance to the flow is introduced into the system. The force of the pump remaining the same the introduction of the resistance undoubtedly lessens the quantity [illegible] at the distal end of each stroke, but it does so simply [illegible] the quantity entering at the proximal end; the [illegible] outgo remain equal to each other, and occur at almost the same time. And what is true of the two ends is also true of any part of the course of the system, so far, at all events, as the following proposition is concerned, that in a system of rigid tubes, either with or without an intercalated resistance, the flow caused by an intermittent force is, in every part of the tubes, intermittent synchronously with that force.

In a system of elastic tubes in which there is little resistance to the progress of the fluid, the flow caused by an intermittent force is also intermittent. The outgo being nearly as the income, the elasticity of the walls of the tubes is scarcely at all called into play. These behave practically like rigid tubes. When, however, sufficient resistance is introduced into any part of the course, the fluid, being unable to pass by the resistance as rapidly as it enters the system from the pump, tends to accumulate on the proximal side of the resistance. This it is able to do by expanding the elastic walls of the tubes. At each stroke of the pump a certain quantity of fluid enters the system at the proximal end. Of this only a fraction can pass through the resistance during the stroke. At the moment when the stroke ceases the rest still remains on the proximal side of the resistance, the elastic tubes having expanded to receive it. During the interval between this and the next stroke, the distended elastic tubes, striving to return to their natural undistended condition, press on this extra quantity of fluid which they contain and tend to drive it past the resistance. Thus in the rigid system (and in the elastic system without resistance) there issues, from the distal end of the system, at each stroke just as much fluid as enters it at the proximal end, while between the strokes there is perfect quiet. In the elastic system with resistance, on the contrary, the quantity which passes the resistance is only a fraction of that which enters the system from the pump, the remainder or a portion of the remainder continuing to pass during the interval between the strokes. In the former case the system is no fuller at the end of the stroke than at the beginning. In the latter case there is an accumulation of fluid between the pump and the resistance, and a corresponding distension of that part of the system, at the close of each stroke—an accumulation and distension, however, which go on diminishing until the next stroke comes. The amount of fluid thus remaining after the stroke will depend on the amount of resistance in relation to the force of the stroke, and on the distensibility of the tubes; and the amount which passes the resistance before the next stroke will depend on the degree of elastic reaction of which the tubes are capable. Thus, if the resistance be very considerable in relation to the force of the stroke, and the tubes very distensible, only a small portion of the fluid will pass the resistance, the greater part remaining lodged between the pump and the resistance. If the elastic reactions be great, the large portion of this will be passed on through the resistance before the next stroke comes. In other words, the greater the resistance (in relation to the force of the stroke), and the greater the elastic force brought into play, the less intermittent, the more nearly continuous, will be the flow on the far side of the resistance.

If the first stroke be succeeded by a second stroke before its quantity of fluid has all passed by the resistance, there will be an additional accumulation of fluid on the near side of the resistance, an additional distension of the tubes, an additional strain on their elastic powers, and, in consequence, the flow between this second stroke and the third will be even more marked than that between the first and the second, though all three strokes were of the same force, the addition being due to the extra amount of elastic force called into play. In fact, it is evident that, if there be a sufficient store of elastic power to fall back upon, by continually repeating the strokes a state of things will be at last arrived at, in which the elastic force, called into play by the continually increasing distension of the tubes on the near side of the resistance, will be sufficient to drive through the resistance, in the interval between each two strokes, just as much fluid as enters the near end of the system at each stroke. In other words, the elastic reaction of the walls of the tubes will have converted the intermittent into a continuous flow. The flow on the far side of the resistance is in this case not the direct result of the strokes of the pump. All the force of the pump is spent, first in getting up, and afterwards in keeping up, the overdistension of the tubes on the near side of the resistance; it is the overdistended tubes which are the cause of the continuous flow, by emptying themselves into the far side of the resistance, at such a rate that they discharge through the resistance during a stroke and in the succeeding interval just as much as they receive from the pump by the stroke itself.

This is exactly what takes place in the vascular system. The friction in the minute arteries and capillaries presents a considerable resistance to the flow of blood through them into the small veins. In consequence of this resistance, the force of the heart's beat is spent in maintaining the whole of the arterial system in a state of overdistension, as indicated by the arterial pressure. The overdistended arterial system is, by the agency of its elastic walls, continually emptying itself by overflowing through the capillaries into the venous system, overflowing at such a rate, that just as much blood passes from the arteries to the veins during each systole and its succeeding diastole as enters the aorta at each systole.

It cannot be too much insisted upon that the whole arterial system is *overfull*. This is what is meant by the high arterial pressure. On the other hand, the veins are much less full. This is shown by the low venous pressure. The overflow arteries are continually striving to pass their surplus in a continuous stream through the capillaries into the veins, so as to bring both venous and arterial pressure to the same level. As continually the heart by its beat is keeping the arteries overfull, and thus maintaining the difference between the arterial and venous pressure, and thus preserving the steady capillary stream. When the heart ceases to beat, the arteries do succeed in emptying their surplus into the veins, and when the pressure on both sides of the capillaries is thus equalized, the flow through the capillaries ceases.

In the facts just discussed, it makes no essential difference whether the outflow on the far side of the resistance be an open one, or whether, as is the case in the vascular system, the fluid be returned to the pump, provided only that the resistance offered to that return be sufficiently small. We shall see, in speaking of the heart, that, so far from there being any resistance to the flow of blood from the great veins into the auricle, the flow is favored by a variety of circumstances. We have seen moreover that, besides the very sudden decrease in the immediate neighborhood of the capillaries, there is in passing along the whole vascular system from the aorta to the venæ cavæ a gradual fall of pressure. A little consideration shows that this must be the case. After what has been said it is obvious that the movement of the blood may be compared to that of a body of fluid, driven by pressure from the ventricle through the vessels to its outflow in the auricle. Were the pressure a continuous one, and were there no capillary resistance, there would be a gradual fall of pressure, from the part farthest from the outfall, viz., the aorta, to the part nearest the outfall, viz., the venæ cavæ. The introduction of the capillary resistance and its attendant phenomena gives rise to the feature of a very sudden and marked fall in the capillary region, but leaves untouched the gradual character of the fall in the rest of the course, from the aorta to the minute arteries, and from the minute veins to the venæ cavæ.

To recapitulate: There are three chief factors in the mechanics of the circulation, (1) the force and frequency of the heart-beat, (2) the peripheral resistance, (3) the elasticity of the arterial walls. These three factors, in order to produce a normal circulation, must be in a certain relation to each other. A disturbance of these relations brings about abnormal conditions. Thus, if the capillary resistance be reduced beyond certain limits, while the force and frequency of the heart remain the same, so much blood passes through the capillaries at each stroke of the heart that there is not sufficient left behind to distend the arteries, and bring their elasticity into play. In this case the intermittence of the arterial flow is continued on into the veins. An instance of this is seen in the experiments on the submaxillary gland, where sometimes the capillary resistance in the gland is so much lowered that the blood in the veins of the gland pulsates.[1] A like result occurs when, the capillary resistance remaining the same, the force or frequency of the heart's beat is lowered. Thus the beats may be so feeble that at each stroke no more blood, or but little more, enters the arterial system than can pass through the capillaries before the next stroke; or so infrequent that the whole quantity sent on by a stroke has time to escape before the next stroke comes. If, while the heart's beat and the resistance remain the same, the elasticity of the arterial walls be reduced, the arteries will be unable to expand sufficiently to retain the surplus of each stroke or to exert sufficient elastic reaction to carry forward the stream between the strokes; and in consequence more or less intermittence will become manifest.

Marey[2] states that when fluid is driven through two tubes of equal calibre, one elastic and the other rigid, with equal force and like intermittence, the outflow through the elastic tube is greater than through the rigid tube. This he attributes to the fact that in the rigid tube all the friction falls in the period of the stroke, when the velocity of the stream is greatest, and is therefore greater than in the elastic tube where it is distributed as well over the interval between the strokes. Under this view, the arrangements of the vascular system are useful, not only in causing the flow through the capillaries to be continuous, and therefore best adapted for carrying on the interchange between the tissues and the blood, but also in providing that the flow should be as large as possible.

Circumstances determining the Velocity of the Flow.—We have seen that the velocity of the blood-stream diminishes from the aorta to the capillaries, and increases from the capillaries to the great veins. Thus in the dog the velocity in the great arteries may be stated at from 300 to 500 mm., in the capillaries at less than 1 mm. (.5 to .75 mm.), and in the large veins at about 200 mm. in a second. In fact, the greater part of the time of the circuit is taken up in the capillary region. An iron salt, injected into the jugular vein of one side of the neck of a horse, makes its appearance in the blood of the jugular vein of the other side in about thirty seconds.

---

[1] See Book 1, cap. i, sec. 2, on the Secretion of the Digestive Juices.
[2] Ann. d. Sci. Nat. (iv), viii, p. 329.

Hering's mean result in the horse was 27.6 seconds. In the dog Vierordt found it to be 15.2 seconds; in the rabbit, 7 seconds.

Without laying too much stress on this experiment, it may be taken as a fair indication of the time in which the whole circuit may be completed. It takes about the same time (see p. 171) to pass through about 20 mm. of capillaries. Hence, if any corpuscle had in its circuit to pass through 10 mm. of capillaries, half the whole time of its journey would be spent in the narrow channels of the capillaries. Since, however, the average length of a capillary is about .5 mm., about one second is spent in the capillaries. Inasmuch as the purposes served by the blood are chiefly carried out in the capillaries, it is obviously of advantage that its stay in them should be prolonged.

The *permanent* variations in the velocity of the stream are directly dependent on the area of "the bed." When a fluid is driven by a uniform pressure through a narrow tube with an enlargement in the middle, the velocity of the stream diminishes in the enlargement, but increases again when the tube once more narrows. So a river slackens speed in a broad, but rushes on rapidly again when the banks close in. Exactly in the same way the velocity of the blood-stream slackens from the aorta to the capillaries corresponding with the increased total bed, but hurries on again as the numerous veins are gathered into the smaller bed of the venæ cavæ. The loss of velocity in the capillaries, as compared with the arteries, is not due to there being so much more friction in the narrow channels of the former than in the wide canals of the latter. For the peripheral resistance caused by the friction in the capillaries and small arteries is an obstacle not only to the flow of blood through these small vessels where the resistance is actually generated, but also to the escape of the blood from the large into the small arteries, and indeed from the heart into the large arteries. It exerts its influence along the whole arterial tract. And it is obvious that if it were this peripheral resistance which checked the flow in the capillaries, there could be no recovery of velocity along the venous tract. The rapidity of the flow in arteries, capillaries, and veins, is in each case determined by the total sectional area of the channels. There is, however, a loss of velocity on the whole course. At each stroke as much blood enters the right auricle as issues from the left ventricle; but the sectional area of the venæ cavæ is greater than that of the aorta, so that even if the auricle were filled in exactly the same time as the ventricle is emptied, the blood must pass more rapidly through the narrow aorta than through the broad venæ cavæ, in order that the same quantity of blood should pass each in the same time. The diastole of the auricle, however, is distinctly longer than the systole of the ventricle; the time during which the auricle is being filled is greater than that during which the ventricle is being emptied, and hence the velocity of the venous flow into the auricle must be still less than that of the arterial blood in the commencing aorta.

The *temporary* variations of the velocity of the stream in any given channel, and these we have already (p. 184) seen to be very considerable in the case of the arteries at least, are dependent on a variety of circumstances. In a tube of constant calibre, the velocity with which fluid flows from one point to another, for instance from the point a to the point b, will be in main dependent on the difference between the pressure, existing at a and b. The lower the pressure at b as compared with a the greater the rapidity with which the fluid flows from a to b. And temporary variations of pressures form undoubtedly the main cause of the temporary variations observable in the velocity of the arterial flow. Thus with each systole of the ventricle there is an increase of velocity in the whole arterial flow followed by a diminution during the diastole. So also if the peripheral resistance in the minute arteries into which a larger artery divides be suddenly lowered (by the action of vaso-motor nerves, in a manner which we shall presently discuss), *without the calibre of the larger artery itself being changed*, the pressure on the distal (peripheral) side of the artery may be much diminished, while the pressure on the proximal (cardiac) side remains at first unaltered; and this would necessarily cause an increase in the rapidity of the stream through that artery. But, as we shall see later on, from the complications of the vascular machinery such problems as these become very intricate; and the results of observations on variations in arterial velocity are not altogether intelligible. It has been suggested that varying conditions of the blood, by affecting the amount of adhesion between the blood and the walls of the vessels, may be an important factor in determining the variations in the velocity of the stream.[1]

SEC. 2.—THE HEART.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Heart.*

The heart is a hollow, muscular organ, having a shape similar to that of a flattened cone. It is situated obliquely within the chest, immediately posterior to the sternum; resting upon the diaphragm; supported in position by the blood-vessels; and covered by the pericardium. Roughly sketched, the position of the base of the cone corresponds to a line drawn a little to the right of the sternum, from the second intercostal space to the sternal articulation of the sixth and seventh cartilages of the right side. The apex corresponds to a point in the left fifth intercostal space, a little interior to a vertical line drawn across the nipple.

The muscular fibres composing the heart are peculiar in character to the organ itself. They are striated, but differ from the ordinary skeletal muscles. In the skeletal muscles the fibres are entirely distinct and separable, possessing distinct longitudinal and transverse lines of cleavage. But in the fibres of the heart, as seen in Fig. 57, the lines of cleavage are partially lost and apparent anastomoses formed. The fibres of the heart rarely have a sarcolemmatous covering. These fibres may conveniently be divided into two layers, the superficial and deep. The superficial layer of the fibres of the ventricles consists of several laminæ, which have a peculiar spiral arrangement running from right to left, simulating a figure 8. This peculiar arrangement is of physiological importance in explaining several of the phenomena observed in the cardiac beat, as will be pointed out hereafter. The deep layer is circular.

---

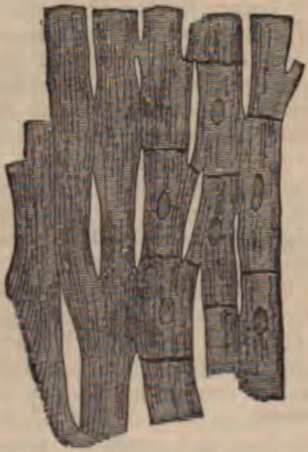
[1] Ludwig and Dogiel, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1867. Cf. also Ewald, Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1877, p. 208.

The heart can with great propriety be considered as a double organ—a right, or pulmonary; a left, or systemic heart; each containing two cavities, called respectively an auricle and ventricle. The right and left cavities of the heart are separated by a muscular partition called the inter-auriculo-ventricular septum. The position of this septum is marked on the external surface of the heart by two grooves.

The walls of the left heart are much thicker than those of the right. This is due to the fact of the greater propulsive force necessary to overcome the resistance of the systemic, than is necessary to overcome that of the pulmonic vessels.

The auricles are separated from the ventricles by peculiar valvelike pendulous curtains, so arranged as to freely allow of the passage of blood from the auricles into the ventricles, and, by a peculiar valvelike mechanism, as is commonly supposed, prevent a reflux current by becoming closed. (See note, p. 210.)

FIG. 57.

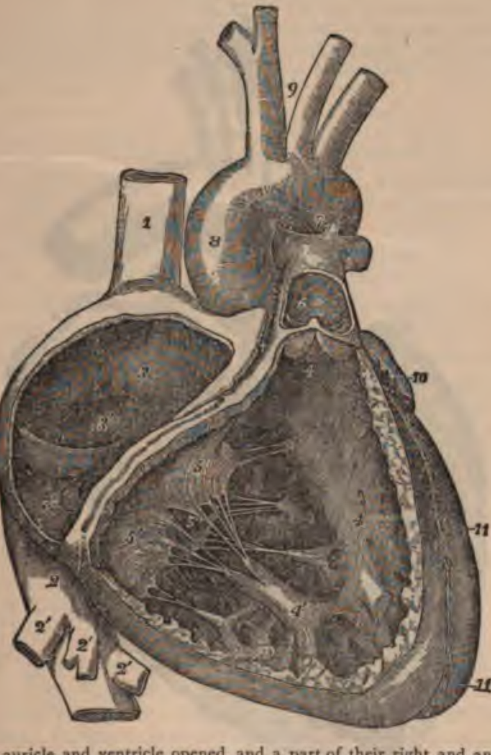


Anastomosing muscular fibres of the heart seen in longitudinal section. On the right the limits of the separate cells with their nuclei are exhibited somewhat diagrammatically.

There are two distinct sets of valves in the heart, the auriculo-ventricular and the semilunar. The auriculo-ventricular valves are two in number, the right and left (Figs.

58, 59, 60). The right is called the tricuspid, and consists of three cusps or leaflets (Figs. 58, 60). The left or mitral

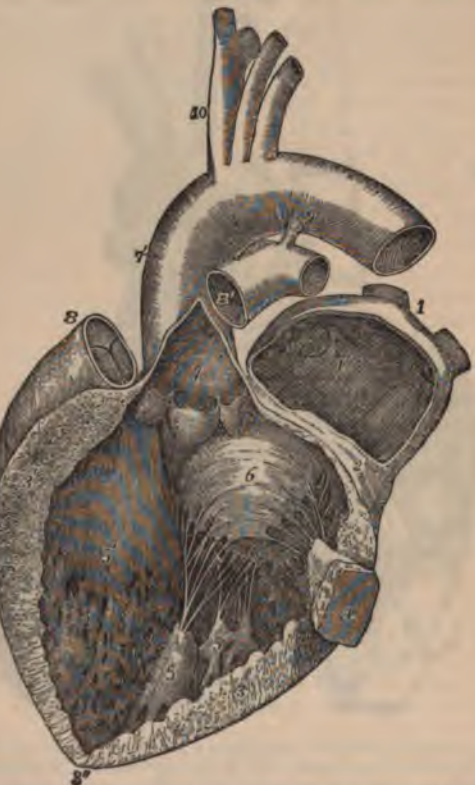
FIG. 58.



The right auricle and ventricle opened, and a part of their right and anterior walls removed, so as to show their interior —⅕ 1, superior vena cava; 2, inferior vena cava; 2', hepatic veins cut short; 3, right auricle; 3', placed in the fossa ovalis, below which is the Eustachian valve; 3'', is placed close to the aperture of the coronary vein; + +, placed in the auriculo-ventricular groove, where a narrow portion of the adjacent walls of the auricle and ventricle has been preserved; 4, 4, cavity of the right ventricle, also showing inter-ventricular septum: the upper figure is immediately below the semilunar valves; 4', large columna carnea or musculus papillaris; 5, 5', 5'', tricuspid valve; 6, placed in the interior of the pulmonary artery, a part of the anterior wall of that vessel having been removed, and a narrow portion of it preserved at its commencement where the semilunar valves are attached; 7, concavity of the aortic arch close to the cord of the ductus arteriosus; 8, ascending part or sinus of the arch covered at its commencement by the auricular appendix and pulmonary artery; 9, placed between the innominate and left carotid arteries; 10, appendix of the left auricle; 11, 11, the outside of the left ventricle, the lower figure near the apex.—From *Quain's Anatomy*.

valve, consists of two leaflets only (Figs. 59, 60), and is physiologically the stronger of the two. The auriculo-ven-

FIG. 59.



The left auricle and ventricle opened, and a part of their anterior and left walls removed, so as to show their interior—½. The pulmonary artery has been divided at its commencement so as to show the aorta; the opening into the left ventricle has been carried a short distance into the aorta, between two of the segments of the semilunar valves; the left part of the auricle with its appendix has been removed. The right auricle has been thrown out of view. 1, the two right pulmonary veins cut short; their openings are seen within the auricle; 1′, placed within the cavity of the auricle on the left side of the septum and on the part which forms the remains of the valve of the foramen ovale, of which the crescentic fold is seen towards the left hand of 1′; 2, a narrow portion of the wall of the auricle and ventricle preserved round the auriculo-ventricular orifice; 3, 3′, the cut surface of the walls of the ventricle seen to become very much thinner towards 3″ at the apex; 4, a small part of the anterior wall of the left ventricle, which has been preserved with the principal anterior columna carnea or musculus papillaris attached to it; 5, 5, musculi papillares; 5′, the left side of the septum, between the two ventricles, within the cavity of the left ventricle; 6, 6′, the mitral valve; 7, placed in the interior of the aorta, near its commencement and above the three segments of its semilunar valve, which are hanging loosely together; 7′, the exterior of the great aortic sinus; 8, the root of the pulmonary artery and its semilunar valves; 8′, the separated portion of the pulmonary artery remaining attached to the aorta by 9, the cord of the ductus arteriosus; 10, the arteries rising from the summit of the aortic arch.—From *Quain's Anatomy.*

tricular valves are formed by reduplications of the endocardium, and strengthened by fibrous tissue. They are attached by their bases to the auriculo-ventricular orifices; the portions of their sides nearest the bases are attached to each other, thus forming a continuous circular membrane. To the free margin and ventricular surfaces of these valves are attached numerous tendinous cords, which connect the valves with the *musculi papillares.* They are called the *chordæ tendineæ.* On the intra-ventricular surface of the heart numerous muscular bands are seen, which are called the *columnæ carneæ.* These bands are of three kinds: those attached by one of their sides and by both extremities to the ventricles; those attached by both extremities; and those attached by one extremity alone, the other extremity connecting with the auriculo-ventricular valves by means of the intervening chordæ tendineæ. These latter *columnæ carneæ* are distinguished by the name of *musculi papillares* (Figs. 58, 59).

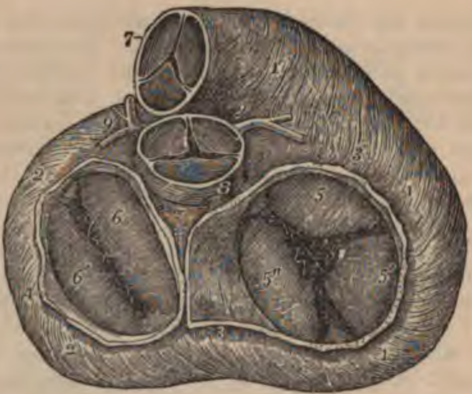
There are also two sets of semilunar valves, the aortic and pulmonary (Figs. 58, 59, 60). Each of these sets of valves consists of three semilunar segments. The pulmonary is situated at the junction of the pulmonary artery with the right ventricle. The aortic is situated at the junction of the aorta with the left ventricle. On the middle of each of the free edges of these valves is a small nodule, called the *corpus Arantii,* which, when the valves become closed, come together and are disposed in a spiral form. They thus close up an opening which would obviously be present were they absent.

Behind each of the semilunar valves is a pouch-like expansion; these are termed the *sinuses of Valsalva.* In the aortic walls, at about the free margin of the right and left semilunar valves, the orifices of the coronary arteries which supply the heart with blood are seen.

The semilunar valves are formed by reduplications of the lining membrane, and strengthened by fibrous tissue.

The passage of blood through the heart can thus be briefly stated: coming from the system through the venæ cavæ it enters the right auricle; from the right auricle it passes to the right ventricle; thence to the lungs through the pulmonary artery. After passing through the lungs it again enters the heart through the pulmonary veins into the left auricle; from the left auricle it passes into the left ventricle, and from thence through the aorta into the general system (Fig. 61).]

[Fig. 60.



View of the base of the ventricular part of the heart, showing the relative position of the arterial and auriculo-ventricular orifice —⅗. The muscular fibres of the ventricles are exposed by the removal of the pericardium, fat, bloodvessels, etc.; the pulmonary artery and aorta have been removed by a section made immediately beyond the attachment of the semilunar valves, and the auricles have been removed immediately above the auriculo-ventricular orifices. The semilunar and auriculo-ventricular valves are in the nearly closed condition. 1, 1, the base of the right ventricle; 1', the conus arteriosus, which is a conical expansion of the right ventricle, immediately at the point where the pulmonary artery arises; 2, 2, the base of the left ventricle; 3, 3, the divided wall of the right auricle; 4, that of the left; 5, 5', 5'', the tricuspid valve; 6, 6', the mitral valve. In the angles between these segments are seen the smaller fringes frequently observed; 7, the anterior part of the pulmonary artery; 8, placed upon the posterior part of the root of the aorta; 9, the right, 9', the left coronary artery.—From *Quain's Anatomy*.]

The heart is a pump, the motive power of which is supplied by the contraction of its muscular fibres. Its action, consequently, presents problems which are partly mechanical and partly vital. Regarded as a pump, its effects are determined by the frequency of the beats, by the force of each beat, by character of each beat,—whether, for instance, slow and ring, or sudden and sharp,—and by the quantity of fluid ejected at each beat. Hence, with a given frequency, force, and character of beat, and a given quantity ejected at each beat, the problems which have to be dealt with are for the most part mechanical. The vital problems are chiefly connected with the causes which determine the frequency, force, and character of the beat. The quantity ejected at each beat is governed more by the state of the rest of the body than by that of the heart itself.

[Fig. 61.

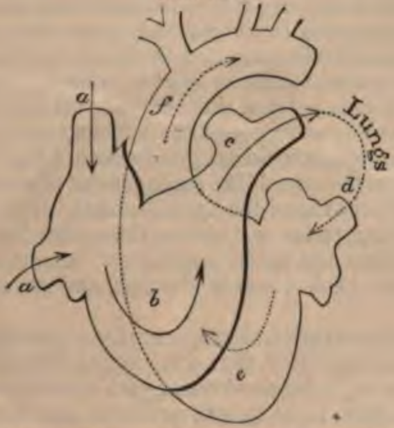


Diagram of the Circulation through the Heart. *a*, *a*, Vena cava, superior and inferior. *b*, Right ventricle. *c*, Pulmonary artery. *d*, Pulmonary vein. *e*, Left ventricle. *f*, Aorta.—After DALTON.]

The Phenomena of the Normal Beat.

The Visible Movements.—When the chest of a mammal is opened and artificial respiration kept up, a complete beat of the whole heart, or cardiac cycle, may be observed to take place as follows:

The great veins, inferior and superior venæ cavæ and pulmonary veins are seen, while full of blood, to contract in the neighborhood of the heart; the contraction runs in a peristaltic wave towards the auricles, increasing in intensity as it goes. Arrived at the auricles, which are then full of blood, the wave suddenly spreads, at a rate too rapid to be fairly judged by the eye, over the whole of those organs, which accordingly contract with a sudden sharp systole. In the systole the walls of the auricles press towards the auriculo-ventricular orifices, and the auricular appendages are drawn inwards, becoming smaller and paler. During the auricular systole the ventricles may be seen to become more and more turgid. Then follows, as it were immediately, the ventricular systole, during which the ventricles become shorter and thicker. Held between the fingers they are felt to become tense and hard. As the systole progresses the aorta and pulmonary arteries are seen to expand and elongate, and the heart to twist slightly on its long axis, so that while the base is fixed by the great arteries, the apex moves from the left and behind towards the front and right; hence more of the left ventricle becomes displayed. [This peculiar twisting movement of the apex during systole is due to the whorl-like arrangement of the spiral layer of muscular fibres around the apex.] As the systole gives way to the succeeding pause or diastole, the ventricles flatten and elongate, the aorta and pulmonary artery contract and shorten, the heart turns back towards the left, and thus the cycle is completed.

More exact observation shows, as regards the change of form of the ventricular portion, that this, during diastole, has somewhat the shape of a flattened cone, with an ellipse, having its long diameter from right to left, as a base, but during the systole becomes a shorter, more regular cone, with a circle for its base, having lessened chiefly in its longitudinal and right-to-left diameters, and slightly only in its antero-posterior diameter. According to Kürschner,[1] the circumference of the base of the ventricle is absolutely increased during the systole; a tape placed around the base becomes tense at the commencement of the systole, while the cavity is still full of blood.

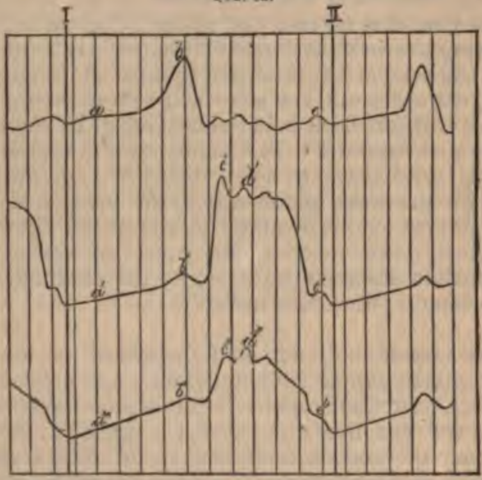
When the chest is opened, the heart is deprived of its natural supports; and consequently, under such circumstances, its change of position during the systole cannot be properly studied. For it must be remembered that the heart, closely covered by the pericardium, lies immediately under the sternum and ribs, there being between them nothing more than a small amount of mediastinal connective tissue, and rests on the slope of the diaphragm below, with the lungs on either side. If, in the unopened chest of a rabbit or dog, three needles be inserted through the chest-wall so that their points are plunged into the substance of the ventricle, one (B) at the base, close to the auricles, another (A) through the apex, and a third (M) at about the middle of the ventricle, all three needles will be observed to move at each beat of the heart. The head of B will move suddenly upwards, showing that the point of the needle plunged in the ventricle moves downwards, whereas A will only quiver, and move neither distinctly upwards nor downwards. M will move upwards (and therefore its point downwards), but not to the same extent as B. The nearer to B M is, the more it moves; the nearer to A, the less. Thus, while during the beat, the base (B) moves downwards as the result of the contraction (and longitudinal shortening) of the ventricle, the apex (A) does not change its place, the shortening of the ventricle itself being compensated by the lengthening of the great arteries. The middle of the ventricle moves downwards more than the apex, but less than the extreme base. After the death of the animal the needles, if properly inserted at first, perpendicularly to the chest, will be found with all their heads directed downwards, indicating that the whole ventricle has been drawn up by the contraction of the empty aorta and pulmonary artery.

---

[1] Wagner's Handwörterbuch, Art. Hertzthätigkeit.

Cardiac Impulse.—If the hand be placed on the chest, a shock or impulse will be felt at each beat, and on examination this impulse, "cardiac impulse," will be found to be synchronous with the systole of the ventricle. In man, the cardiac impulse may be most distinctly felt in the fifth costal interspace, about an inch below and a little to the median side of the left nipple. The same impulse may be felt in an animal by making an incision through the diaphragm from the abdomen, and placing the finger between the chest-wall and the apex. It then can be distinctly recognized as the result of the hardening of the ventricle during the systole. And the impulse which is felt on the outside of the chest is the same hardening of the stationary portion of the ventricle in contact with the chest-wall, transmitted through the chest-wall to the finger. In its flaccid state, during diastole, the apex is (in a standing position at least) here in contact with the chest-wall, lying between it and the tolerably resistant diaphragm. During the systole, while occupying, as we have seen, the same position, it suddenly grows tense and hard. The ventricles, in executing their systole, have to contract against resistance. They have to produce within their cavities, tensions greater than those in the aorta and pulmonary arteries, respectively. This is, in fact, the object of the systole. Hence, during the swift systole, the ventricular portion of the heart becomes suddenly tense, just as a bladder full of fluid would become tense and hard when forcibly squeezed. The sudden onset of this hardness gives an impulse or shock both to the chest-wall and to the diaphragm, which may be felt readily both on the chest-wall, and also through the diaphragm when the abdomen is opened, and the finger inserted. [The twisting of the apex throws it against the chest-wall, and is therefore another factor in the formation of the cardiac impulse. The recoil of the heart (which may be compared to "the kicking of a gun when

FIG. 62.



Tracing of the Variations of Pressure in the Right Auricle and Ventricle, and of the Cardiac Impulse, in the Horse.—After MAREY. To be read from left to right.[1]

The upper curve represents the variation of pressure within the auricle, the middle curve the variations of pressure within the ventricle; these two therefore illustrate changes taking place in the interior of the heart. The lower curve represents the variations of pressure transmitted to a lever outside the chest and constituting the cardiac impulse. A complete cardiac cycle, beginning at the close of the ventricular systole, is comprised between the thick vertical lines I and II. The thin vertical lines represent tenths of a second. *a*, The gradual filling of the auricle and ventricle; *b*, the auricular systole; *c*, the ventricular systole; *d*, oscillations of pressure, interpreted by Marey as caused by vibrations of the auriculo-ventricular valves; *e* probably marks the closing of the semilunar valves.

---

[1] It must be remembered that the curves in the diagram are intended merely to illustrate the variations of pressure occurring at different in the same chamber, or to show what changes in the one er are coincident in point of time with changes in the other. no way indicate the *amount of pressure* in the auricle as with that in the ventricle.

it is fired off") is also a factor in causing the impulse.] If the modification of the sphygmograph (see section on Pulse), called the cardiograph, be placed on the spot where the impulse is felt most strongly, the lever is seen to be raised during the systole of the ventricles, and to fall again as the systole passes away, very much as if it were placed on the heart directly. A tracing may thus be obtained (Fig. 62), of which we shall have to speak more fully immediately. If the button of the lever be placed, not on the exact spot of the impulse, but at a little distance from it, the lever will be *depressed* during the systole. While at the spot of impulse itself the contact of the ventricle is increased during systole, away from the spot the ventricle retires from the chest-wall (by the diminution of its right-to-left diameter), and hence, by the mediastinal attachments of the pericardium, draws the chest-wall after it.

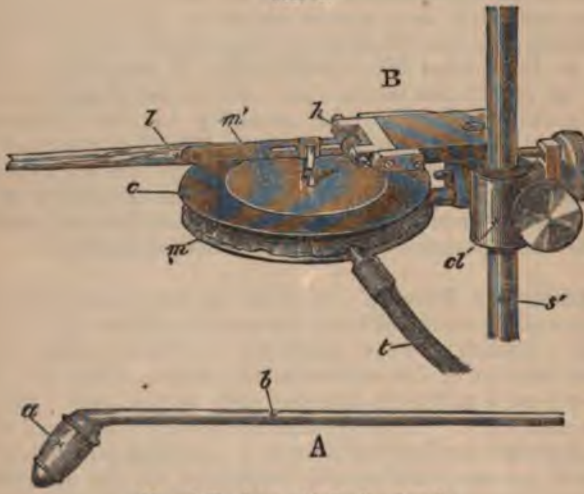
Endocardiac Pressure.—In order to study more fully the changes going on in the heart during the cardiac cycle, it becomes necessary to know something of what is taking place in the interior of the cavities of the heart. Chauveau and Marey,[1] by introducing into the right auricle and ventricle respectively of the horse, through the jugular vein, small elastic bags, each communicating with a recording tambour, were enabled to take simultaneous tracings of all the changes of pressure occurring in the two cavities. These results are embodied in Fig. 62, of which the upper curve represents the changes of pressure in the auricle, the middle curve the changes of pressure in the ventricle, and the lower curve the cardiographic tracing of the cardiac impulse. All these curves were taken simultaneously on the same recording surface.

Method.—A tube of appropriate curvature is furnished with two small elastic bags, one at the extreme end and the other at such a distance that when the former is within the cavity of the ventricle the latter is in the cavity of the auricle. Each bag (Fig. 63, *A*) communicates by a separate air-tight tube with an air-tight tambour (Fig. 63, *B*), on which a lever rests so that any pressure on either bag is communicated to the cavity of its respective tambour, the lever of which is raised in proportion. The writing-points of all three levers are brought to bear on the same recording surface exactly underneath each other. The tube is carefully introduced through the right jugular vein into the right side of the heart until the lower (ventricular) bag is fairly in the cavity of the right ventricle, and consequently the upper (auricular) bag in the cavity of the right auricle. Changes of pressure in either cavity then cause movements of the corresponding lever. When the pressure is increased, for instance in the auricle, the auricular lever is raised and

---

[1] Marey, Circulation du Sang.

Fig. 63.



Marey's Tambour, with Cardiac Sound.

A. A simple cardiac sound such as may be used for the exploration of the left ventricle. The portion *a* of the ampulla at the end is of thin india-rubber, stretched over an open framework, with metallic supports above and below. The long tube *b* serves to introduce it into the cavity which it is desired to explore.

B. The Tambour. The metal chamber *m* is covered in an air-tight manner with the india-rubber *c*, bearing a thin metal plate *m'* to which is attached the lever *l* moving on the hinge *h*. The whole tambour can be placed by means of the clamp *cl* at any height on the upright *s'*. The india-rubber tube *t* serves to connect the interior of the tambour either with the cavity of the ampulla of *A* or with any other cavity. Supposing that the tube *t* were connected with *b*, any pressure exerted on *a* would cause the roof of the tambour to rise and the point of the lever would be proportionately raised.

describes on the recording surface an ascending curve; when the pressure is taken off the curve descends; and so also with the ventricle.

A complete cardiac cycle is comprised between the vertical lines I and II, Fig. 62. The recording surface was travelling at such a rate that the intervals between any two of the thin vertical lines corresponds to one-tenth of a second. Hence in this case the whole cardiac cycle occupied about $\frac{12}{10}$ths o a second. Any point in the cycle might, of course, be taken as its commencement. In the figure the cycle is supposed to begin shortly after the end of the ventricular systole, and the beginning of the diastole.

On examining the three curves we see, at *a*, a steady rise of the auricular, accompanied by similar gradual ascents of the ventricular, and also of the cardiograph lever. These may be interpreted as indicating that the blood is pouring from the great veins into the auricle, increasing the pressure there, and at the same time passing on into the ventricle, increasing also the internal pressure there, *a′*, and also by distending the ventricle, causing it to press somewhat on the chest-wall and thus to raise the cardiograph lever, *a″*. This continues for about $\frac{4}{10}$ths of a second, and is then followed by the sudden rise of auricular pressure *b* due to the auricular systole, followed by a sudden fall as the blood escapes into the ventricle. The sudden entrance of blood into the ventricle causes a sudden increase of the pressure in the ventricle as indicated by the ventricular lever. *b′*, and a sudden increase in the pressure on the chest-wall *b″*. The auricular systole is followed immediately by the sudden strong ventricular systole *c′*, the pressure rising very abruptly. Owing to the presence of the tricuspid valves, this increase of pressure is kept off the auricle altogether; but the chest-wall, as shown by the tracing *c″*, feels the sudden increase of the pressure of the ventricle against it. The ventricular pressure lasts for some time, gradually declining, and then suddenly falls. This may be interpreted as indicating that the systole rapidly reaches a maximum, maintains that maximum with a slight decline only for some little time, and then suddenly ceases. The oscillations during the maximum, as seen at *d′*, and also manifest in the auricular curve, and in the impulse curve at *d″*, are interpreted by Marey as due to the vibrations of the tricuspid valves, but their causation is at present by no means clear. At the end of the ventricular systole, the descent of the lever is broken by a slight rise at *e′*, visible also in the auricle at *e*, and even in the impulse curve at *e″*. This is interpreted by Marey as indicating the closure of the semilunar valves. After this slight rise, the ventricular curve and the impulse curve fall to their lowest points, while the auricle is already beginning to fill; and the cardiac cycle egins anew.

Thus of the whole period of a beat, the largest fraction is at of the diastole, or "passive interval," *i. e.*, of the interval tween the end of the ventricular and the commencement of the auricular systole. The next largest is that of the ventricular systole, and the smallest that of the auricular systole. The duration of the diastole is usually given as $\frac{3}{5}$ of the whole period, that of the whole systole being $\frac{2}{5}$, of which far the greatest part is taken up by the ventricle; but in these measurements the systole is supposed to end with the cessation of the ventricle's contraction, and not to include its relaxation. Donders found the ventricular systole, as determined by the time elapsing between the commencement of the first and of the second sounds, and, therefore, including the relaxation, as well as the contraction of the ventricular fibres, to occupy on the average .301 to .327 sec., or 40 to 46 per cent. of the whole period. Landois[1] gives the following measurements, the whole cycle lasting 1.130 sec.

Mean duration of auricular systole to beginning of ventricular systole, ...	.177 sec.		
Mean duration of ventricular contraction, ...	.192 "	.451 sec.	— systole of the heart as usually understood.
Mean duration of maintenance of contraction, ...	.082 "		
Mean duration from beginning of relaxation to closure of semilunar valves, ...	.072 "	.346 "	— systole of ventricle as measured by Donders.
Mean duration of closure of valves to beginning of pause, . .	.200 "		
Mean duration of remainder of cycle, ...	.407 "	.679 "	— diastole of the heart as usually understood.
	1.130		

The proportions, however, are not fixed, but vary somewhat. Practically speaking, there is no interval between the auricular and ventricular systole, the latter being separated from the former by a fraction of time which is almost inappreciable.

Although the instrument of Chauveau and Marey may be experimentally graduated and thus used to measure the amount of pressure in the several cavities of the heart, more exact results may be gained by passing through the jugular vein into the right auricle and thence into the right ventricle, or through the carotid artery into the left ventricle, a tube open at the end introduced into the heart and connected at the other end with a manometer. Variations of pressure in the cardiac cavities are thus transmitted directly to the mercury column of the manometer in the same way as those of an artery when arterial pressure is measured. Further, by using maximum and minimum manometers, the maximum and minimum pressures of the several cavities may be determined. In this way in the dog a maximum pressure has been observed in the left ventricle of about 140 mm. (mercury), in the right ventricle of about 60 mm., and in the right auricle of about 20 mm. During the diastole, or rather immediately after the systole, the pressure in the two ventricles and even in the auricle may become negative, *i. e.*, sink below the pressure of the atmosphere. In the left ventricle (of the dog) a minimum pressure varying from —52 to —20 mm. may be reached, the minimum of the right ventricle being from —17 to —16 mm., and of the right auricle from —12 to —7 mm.[1] Part of this diminution of pressure in the cardiac cavities may be due, as will be explained in a later part of this work, to the aspiration of the thorax in the respiratory movements. But even when the thorax is opened and artificial respiration kept up, under which circumstances no such aspiration takes place, the pressure in the left ventricle may sink as low as —24 mm. The occurrence of so marked a negative pressure in the ventricular cavities shows that these cavities, but especially the left, exert a considerable suction power during diastole. The heart, in fact, appears to act not only as a force-pump, but also as a suction-pump, thereby aiding to refill itself with blood at each stroke; the suction of the left ventricle besides greatly assisting the circulation through the lungs.

---

[1] Cbt. med. Wiss., 1866, p. 179.

The results given above are those of Goltz and Gaule.[2] The principle of their maximum manometer, Fig. 64, consists in the introduction into the tube leading from the heart to the mercury column of a (modified cup and ball) valve, opening, like the aortic semilunar valves, easily from the heart, but closing firmly when fluid attempts to return to the heart. By reversing the direction of the valve, the manometer is converted from a maximum into a minimum. When an ordinary manometer is connected with a ventricular cavity, the movements of the mercury do not follow exactly the rapid variations of pressure of the cavity, and the height of the column fails to indicate both the highest and the lowest pressures. Hence, as Fick[3] observed, especially with rapidly beating hearts, the pressure in the ventricle may *appear to be less* than that in the aorta. Thus in Fig. 65, when the tube is slipped at *b* from the aorta into the left ventricle, and the manometer at the same time converted from a maximum into an ordinary manometer, the curve of the ventricular pressure falls below that of the aorta. As soon, however, as the manometer is converted, as at *c*, into a maximum manometer, it becomes evident that the maximum pressure in the left ventricle is as high (in the figure slightly higher) as that in the aorta. Goltz and Gaule regard the negative pressure of diastole as due to the elasticity of the ventricular walls, by virtue of which these structures, pressed closely in contact during the latter part of the systole, spring asunder with considerable energy when the relaxation of the muscular fibres begins; Brücke, however, has given another explanation of the dilation of the ventricular cavities, see p. 210. Marey[1] had previously, by a graduation of the instrument described above, determined the pressure in the horse to be in the left ventricle about 200 mm., in the right ventricle only about 25 mm., while that of the right auricle he estimated at not more than 2 or 3 mm. He too believed the pressure in both ventricles to become negative after systole, especially in the case of the left side. Fick[2] had also by introduc-

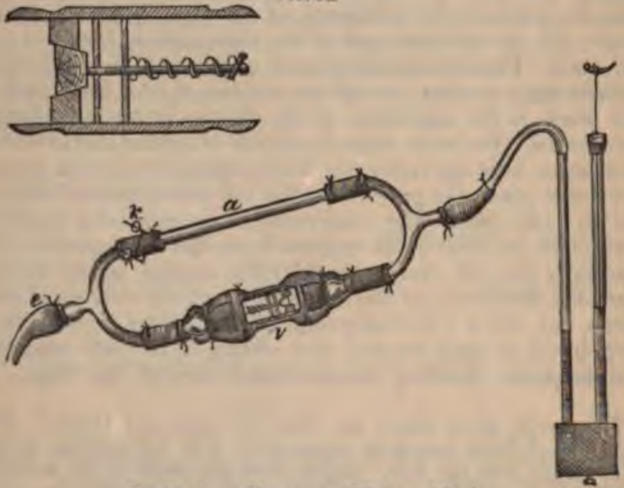
---

[1] These numbers are to be considered merely as instances which have been observed, and not as averages drawn from a large number of cases.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 100.

[3] Arbeiten a. d. physiolog. Laborator. d. Würzburger Hochschule, Lief. ii (1873), p. 183.

FIG. 64.



The Maximum Manometer of Goltz and Gaule.

At *e* a connection is made with the tube leading to the heart. When the screw-clamp *k* is closed, the valve *v* comes into action, and the instrument, in the position of the valve shown in the figure, is a maximum manometer. By reversing the direction of *v* it is converted into a minimum manometer. When *k* is opened, the variations of pressure are conveyed along *a*, and the instrument then acts like an ordinary manometer.

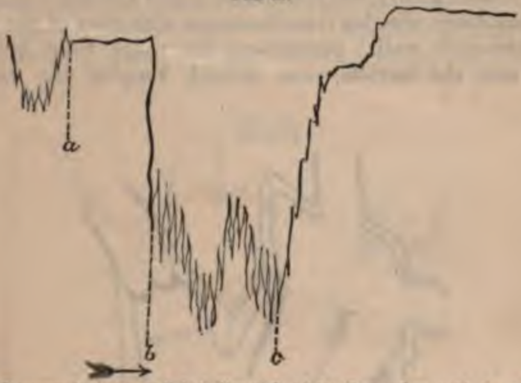
---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Op. cit.

ing a tube in the several cavities of the heart and making use of his spring manometer (see Fig. 50, p. 176) arrived at results which agree with those of Goltz and Gaule in so far as the ventricular cavities are concerned. He found in the dog the pressure to be in the right ventricle from 20 to 40 mm., in the left ventricle about 140 mm. According to him, however, the pressure in the right auricle is nearly constant, varying not more than 2 mm. from the base line of atmospheric pressure, and remaining for the most part slightly below. This Fick gives as a support to the view held by him, that the proper function of the auricles is to equalize and keep constant the pressure at the entrance of the great veins into the heart.

FIG. 65.



Curve of Pressure in Aorta and Left Ventricle of the Dog, taken with the Manometer of Goltz and Gaule. (To be read from left to right.)

Before *a*, the manometer is working as an ordinary manometer connected with the aorta, and the curve shows both the heart-beats and the respiratory curves, the latter strongly marked. At *a* the manometer is made maximum by clamping *k* (Fig. 64), and the curve then shows the straight line of the maximum aortic pressure. At *b* the tube of the manometer is slipped down into the left ventricle, and at the same time converted into an ordinary manometer by opening *k*; the heart-beats, marked on the respiratory curves, are seen at a level lower than that of the aortic pressure. But when at *c* the manometer is changed back again into a maximum manometer, the pressure rises at each heart-beat until a maximum is reached, which is as high, and in this case, probably on account of the heart beating more strongly, very distinctly higher than the aortic maximum.

The Mechanism of the Valves.

The auriculo-ventricular valves present no difficulty. As the blood is being driven by the auricular systole into the ventricle, a reflux current is set up, by which the blood, passing along the sides of the ventricle, gets between them and the flaps of the valve (whether tricuspid or mitral). As the pressure of the auricular systole diminishes, the same reflux currents float the flaps up, until at the extreme end of the systole they meet, and thus the orifice is at once and firmly closed, at the very beginning of the ventricular beat. (Figs. 66 and 67.) The increasing intra-ventricular pressure serves only to render the valve more and more tense, and in consequence more secure, the chordæ tendineæ and the contraction of the papillary muscles (simultaneous with that of the rest of the ventricular walls) preventing the valve from being inverted into the auricle, and, indeed, keeping the valvular

[FIG. 66.

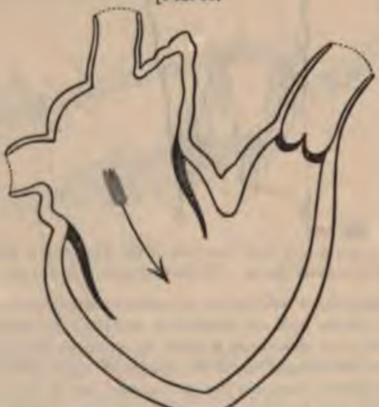


Diagram of Valves of the Heart.—After DALTON.]

sheet convex to the ventricular cavity, by which means the complete emptying of the ventricle is more fully effected. Since the same papillary muscle is in many cases connected by chordæ with the adjacent edges of two flaps, its contraction also serves to keep these flaps in more complete apposition. Moreover, the extreme borders of the valves, outside the attachments of the chordæ, are excessively thin, so that when the valve is closed, these thin portions are pressed flat together back to back; hence while the tougher central parts of the valves bear the force of the ventricular systole, the opposed thin membranous edges, pressed together by the blood, more completely secure the closure of the orifice. [According to experiments recently made on the horse, in France, it seems very doubtful if the auriculo-ventricular valves have anything whatever to do with the regurgitation of the blood into the auricles. According to these experiments, it appears that during the ventricular systole these valves are pulled down by the action of the ventricular walls and musculi papillares on the chordæ tendineæ. Consequently, it is thought that these valves merely serve to guide the blood-current from one cavity to another, while the circular layer of fibres of the heart-muscle which surround the auricular-ventricular orifices, by contracting serve to close these openings. If this is so, and which is extremely probable, the heart-sound which has generally been attributed to the closure of the valves is in reality due to a sudden tension of them which is likened to the sudden pulling of a sail taut.]

[FIG. 67.

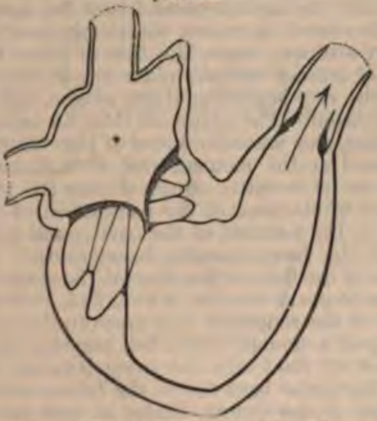


Diagram of Valves of the Heart.—After DALTON.]

The semilunar valves are, during the ventricular systole, pressed outwards towards the arterial walls, and thus offer no obstacle to the escape of blood from the cavities of the ventricles. As the ventricular systole diminishes, a reflux current partially fills the pockets, and tends to carry their free margins towards the middle of the tube. Upon the sudden close of the systole, the elastic rebound of the arterial walls causes a sudden current backwards, which, filling and distending the pockets, causes their free margins to come into complete and firm contact, and thus entirely blocks the way. The corpora Arantii meet in the centre, and the thin membranous festoons or lunulæ are brought into exact apposition. As in the tricuspid valves, so here, while the pressure of the blood is borne by the tougher bodies of the several valves, each two thin adjacent lunulæ, pressed together by the blood acting on both sides of them, are kept in complete contact, without any strain being put upon them; in this way the orifice is closed in a most efficient manner.

An ingenious view has been put forward by Brücke[1] concerning the action of the semilunar valves. He maintains that during the ventricular systole, the flaps are pressed back flat against the arterial walls, and in the case of the aorta completely cover up the orifices of the coronary arteries; hence the flow of blood from the aorta into the coronary arteries can take place only during the ventricular diastole, or at the very beginning of the systole, and not at all during the systole itself. The object of this, he argues, is twofold. In the first place, the muscular tissue of the ventricle is not burdened with blood at the moment that it is undergoing contraction, but receives its nutritive supply during the phase of relaxation; hence the whole force of the contraction of the ventricular fibres is spent on the contents of the cavity, and none is wasted in compression of the intra-muscular bloodvessels. In the second place, the effect of the flow, at the close of the systole, into the previously emptied coronary arteries, is to unfold, so to speak, the collapsed cavities of the ventricles very much in the same way as the collapsed cavity of a double-walled ball may be reinstated by the forcible injection of fluid into the space between the two walls. Through this particular behavior of the valves, in fact, the heart, as an after-effect of the systole, dilates its own ventricles; hence the mechanism has been called by Brücke a "self-regulating mechanism."

Brücke's view has, however, been much disputed. In the first place, we know that the flow of blood from an ordinary skeletal muscle, though it may suffer a brief initial check (probably from compression of the larger veins), is increased and not diminished by a tetanic contraction of the muscle, the increase being visible while the contraction is still at its height.[2] Corresponding to this lasting increased flow from the veins there must be an increased flow into the arteries. And in certain dispositions of the bloodvessels and muscular fibres (as when a vessel is surrounded by fibres running lengthways parallel to itself), the increased thickening of the fibres will tend not to compress but to dilate the vessel. The advantage to the muscular tissue, therefore, of the closure of the coronary arteries seems at least doubtful. In the second place, it has been urged that, in point of fact, the coronary arteries are not covered by the valves. Brücke replies that they may appear uncovered during dissection after death, but are actually covered during life. He moreover brings forward an experiment on a pig's heart removed from the body, in which a stream of water sent through the pulmonary veins and auricle into the left ventricle issues through the open aorta, without a drop of it appearing at the cut end of an open coronary artery, if the aorta be maintained in a proper position, and all vibration and jar be avoided; and argues that it is the closure of the orifices by the valves which prevents the flow, because any shake sufficient to develop a backward current in the aorta and thus to lift up the valves, at once gives rise to a flow. If, however, as has been stated, the experiment will succeed equally well in the absence of the valves, and will not succeed if the free exit of fluid from the end of the aorta be hindered though the valves be intact, the absence of a flow through the coronary artery must be due to a deficiency of pressure in the aorta and not to any action of the valves. The undoubted fact that blood flows from a wounded coronary artery in jerks corresponding to the systole and not to the diastole, Brücke meets with the observation that the coronary arteries must share just previous to the closure of the valves in that increased pressure in the aorta which is the cause of the closure of the valves, and that the higher pressure thus gained at the beginning of the systole is maintained during the systole by the obstruction to the outward flow arising from the contracting fibres compressing the small vessels; while the empty condition of the small branches of the coronary arteries and of the veins at the commencement of the diastole, must diminish the pressure in the main coronary arteries themselves during diastole, and so prevent a diastolic spurt from a wound in them. This, however, is hardly satisfactory, since as regards the systole, as has been urged above, an obstruction of the flow from compression by the muscular fibres is at least doubtful, and as regards the diastole the supposed empty condition of the coronary vessels can produce an effect only at the very beginning of the diastole. On the other hand, Ceradini,[1] who observed the condition of the valves in an excised heart by looking down through a wide glass tube inserted into the aorta, is of opinion that during the systole the valves are not applied close to the arterial wall, but float in an intermediate position of equilibrium, maintained by reflux currents, their orifice taking on the form of an equilateral triangle with curved sides. The same reflux currents gradually (but of course rapidly) close the orifice as the force of the systole diminishes, and the effect of the elastic rebound is simply to render the closure tense and firm. Thus, argues Ceradini, no regurgitation of fluid from the aorta into the ventricle at the end of the systole and the beginning of the diastole is possible, and a hurtful waste, which on Brücke's hypothesis seems unavoidable, is averted. [In experiments recently made by Sedgwick with the isolated mammalian heart, it was found by placing a canula in the coronary artery and also one in the carotid that the pressure was the same in both, and the pulsations synchronous. It is obvious that these things could not occur if Brücke's view of the closure of the orifices of the coronary arteries by the semilunar valves was correct.]

---

[1] Wien. Sitz.-Berichte, 1854; and Der Verschluss d. Kranzschlagadern.

[2] Gaskell, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1876; and Journ. Anat. and Phys., xi, 360.

---

[1] Der Mechanismus der halbmondförmigen Herzklappen. Leipzig, 1872.

The passage of the blood through the heart takes place as follows: The right auricle during its diastole, by the relaxation of its muscular fibres, and by the fact that all pressure from the ventricle is removed by the tension of the tricuspid valves, offers but little resistance to the ingress of blood from the veins. On the other hand, the blood in the trunks, both superior and inferior vena cava, is under a certain though low pressure, augmented in the case of the superior vena cava by gravity, and in consequence flows into the empty auricle. At each inspiration, this flow is favored by the negative pressure in the heart and great vessels caused by the respiratory movements. Before this has gone on very long, the diastole of the ventricle begins, its cavity suddenly dilates, the pressure in that cavity becomes negative, drawing the blood into it, the flaps of the tricuspid valve fall back, and blood for some little time flows in an unbroken stream from the venæ cavæ into the ventricle. In a short time, however, before much blood has had time to enter the ventricle, the auricle is full, and forthwith its sharp sudden systole takes place. Partly by reason of the onward pressure in the veins, which increases rapidly from the heart towards the capillaries, partly from the presence of valves in the venous trunks and at the mouth of the inferior vena cava, but still more from the fact that the systole begins at the great veins themselves and spreads thence over the auricle, the force of the auricular contraction is spent in driving the blood, not back into the veins, but into the ventricle where the pressure is still exceedingly low.

Whether there is any backward flow at all into the veins, or even an interruption to the forward flow, or whether by the progressive character of the systole the flow of blood continues, so to speak, to follow up the systole without break so that the stream from the veins into the auricle is really continuous, is at present doubtful: though a slight positive wave of pressure synchronous with the auricular systole, travelling backward along the veins, has been observed at least in cases where the heart is beating vigorously. The question of a negative venous pulse, *i. e.*, the transmission backwards of the negative pressure of the right cardiac cavities, will be considered later on.

The ventricle thus being filled, the play of the tricuspid valves described above comes into action, the auricular systole is followed by that of the ventricle, and the pressure within the ventricle, cut off from the auricle by the tricuspid valves, is brought to bear entirely on the *conus arteriosus* and the pulmonary semilunar valves. As soon as, by the rapidly increasing force of the ventricular contraction, the pressure within the ventricle becomes greater than that in the pulmonary artery, the semilunar valves open, and the still increasing systole discharges the contents of the ventricle into that vessel. But as the systole passes off, the pressure in the artery becomes greater than that in the cavity of the ventricle, and a rebound of the blood takes place. The first act of this rebound however is, as we have seen, firmly to close the semilunar valves, and thus to shut off the overdistended artery from the now empty, or nearly empty, ventricle.

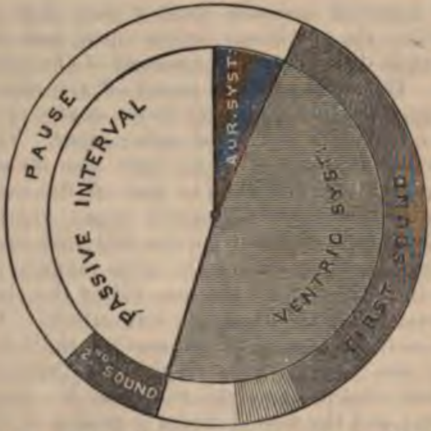
During the whole of this time the left side has with still greater energy been executing the same manœuvre. At the same time that the venæ cavæ are filling the right auricle, the pulmonary veins are filling the left auricle. At the same time that the right auricle is contracting, the left auricle is contracting too. The systole of the left ventricle is synchronous with that of the right ventricle, but executed with greater force; and the flow of blood is guided on the left side by the mitral and aortic valves in the same way that it is on the right by the tricuspid valves and those of the pulmonary artery.

The Sounds of the Heart.

When the air is applied to the chest, either directly or by means of a stethoscope, two sounds are heard, the first a comparatively long dull booming sound, the second a short sharp sudden one. Between the first and second sounds, the interval of time is very short, too short to be measurable, but between the second and the succeeding first sound there is a distinct pause. The sounds have been likened to the pronunciation of the syllables, lŭbb, dŭp, so that the cardiac cycle, as far as the sounds are concerned, might be represented by: lŭbb, dŭp, pause. The relative duration of the sounds, and of the pause, as well as their relations in point of time to the changes taking place in the heart, are shown in the following diagram, Fig. 68.

The second short sharp sound presents no difficulties. It is coincident in point of time with the closure of the semilunar valves, and is heard to the best advantage over the second right costal cartilage close to its junction with the sternum, *i. e.*, at the point where the aortic arch comes nearest to the surface. Its characters are such as would belong to a sound generated by the sudden tension of valves like the semilunar valves. It is obscured and altered, replaced by "murmurs" when the semilunar valves are affected by disease, the alteration being most manifest to the ear at the above-mentioned spot when the aortic valves are affected. When the aortic valves are hooked up by means of a wire introduced down the arteries, the second sound is obliterated and replaced by a murmur. These facts prove that the second sound is due to the sudden tension of the aortic (and pulmonary) semilunar valves.

Fig. 68.



Diagrammatic Representation of the Movements and Sounds of the Heart during a Cardiac Period.—After Dr. Sharpey.

The ventricular systole, which is here used to denote the action of the ventricle up to the closure of the semilunar valves, is represented as occupying about 45 per cent., and the two sounds together as rather more than half, of the whole period; but the diagram is intended to show merely the general relations of the various events, and not to serve as a means of measurement.

The first sound, longer, duller, and of a more "booming" character than the second, heard with greatest distinctness at the spot where the cardiac impulse is felt, presents many difficulties in the way of a complete explanation. It is heard distinctly when the chest-walls are removed. The cardiac impulse therefore can have little or nothing to do with it. In point of time, and in the position in which it may be heard to the greatest advantage (at the spot of the cardiac impulse where the ventricles come nearest to the surface), it corresponds to the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves. [If the new theory of the action of these valves be accepted (p. 210) the first sound would correspond to the sudden pulling open and tension of the valves by the ventricular walls and musculi papillares.] In point of character it is not such a sound as one would expect from the vibration of membranous structures, but has, on the contrary, many of the characters of a muscular sound. In favor of its being a valvular sound, may be urged the fact that it is obscured, altered, replaced by murmurs, when the tricuspid or mitral valves are diseased; and Halford[1] found that clamping the great veins stopped the sound though the beat continued. On the other hand, Ludwig and Dogiel[2] heard the sound distinctly in a bloodless dog's heart, in which there was no fluid to render the valves tense and set them vibrating. But there is a great difficulty in regarding it as a muscular sound, for a muscular sound is the result of a tetanic contraction, the height of the note produced varying with the number per second of the simple contractions which go to make up the tetanus. A simple contraction or spasm cannot possibly produce a musical sound, such as is the cardiac sound. The beat of the heart is a comparatively slow long-continued single spasm, and not a tetanic contraction. In its long latent period, and in all its characters, the heart's beat bears the stamp of being a single spasm. If so it cannot give rise to a note; and the attempt to solve the difficulty by supposing that, though the contraction of each cardiac fibre is simple, there is a sequence of these simple contractions over the whole heart in consequence of the several fibres not contracting at the same time, and that this sequence generates the sound, does not appear very satisfactory.

When the nerve of the rheoscopic muscle-nerve preparation (p. 90) is placed over the heart, each beat of the heart (ventricle or auricle) is followed by a single spasm, not by tetanus, of the rheoscopic muscle. By properly disposing the nerve of the preparation a contraction corresponding to the systole of the auricle followed rapidly by a second corresponding to the systole of the ventricle may be obtained, but in each case the contraction in the leg is simple and not tetanic. This result is consistent with the view that the systole is a simple spasm, but cannot be regarded as a proof that it is such. For it is not every tetanus in a muscle which will give a secondary tetanus in the rheoscopic muscle. When the tetanus in a muscle is induced by the ordinary interrupted current applied directly to the nerve of the muscle, the tetanus in the rheoscopic muscle appears without difficulty; but where the tetanus is produced by a constant current, the so-called breaking or making tetanus (p. 104), the rheoscopic muscle responds by a single (initial) spasm instead of a tetanus. The pronounced tetanus of strychnia similarly gives rise to a simple initial spasm and not to a tetanus of the rheoscopic muscle, and the same feature is characteristic of the natural respiratory contractions of the diaphragm, and probably of all voluntary contractions.[1]

---

[1] Action and Sounds of the Heart. London, 1860.
[2] Ludwig's Arbeiten, Jahrg., 1868.

Moreover, in cases of hypertrophy, where the muscular element and action is increased, the sound, so far from being increased, is impaired. Hence, the first sound, whether it be regarded as the result of the vibration of the auriculo-ventricular valves, acted upon by, and in turn acting on columns of blood, or as a muscular sound, presents great difficulties. No other cause, in the least satisfactory, has been suggested; and the difficulties are rather increased than met by supposing that the sound is at once both valvular and muscular in origin.

[The first sound of the heart seems to be a complex one—a fact which seems to be substantiated by the difficulty of isolating any one factor to satisfactorily account for it. It may be fairly considered in the light of our present knowledge that the impulse, the closure (or sudden opening and tension) of the valves, the sound made by the contraction of the heart-muscle, and the rushing of the blood over the roughened surfaces in the interior of the heart, may all contribute to form the first sound.]

The Work Done.

We can measure with exactness the intra-ventricular pressure, the length of each systole, and the number of times the systole is repeated in a given period, but perhaps the most important factor of all in the determination of the work of the vascular mechanism, the quantity ejected from the ventricle into the aorta at each systole, cannot be accurately determined; we are obliged to fall back on calculations having many sources of error. The mean result of these calculations gives about 180 grams (6 ounces) as the quantity of blood which is driven from each ventricle at each systole in a full-grown man of average size and weight. It is evident that exactly the same quantity must issue at a beat from each ventricle; for if the right ventricle at each beat gave out rather less than the left, after a certain number of beats the whole of the blood would be gathered in the systemic circulation. Similarly, if the left ventricle gave out less than the right, all the blood would soon be crowded into the lungs. The fact that the pressure in the right ventricle is so much less than in the left (30 or 40 mm. as compared with 200 mm. of mercury), is due, not to differences in the quantity of blood in the cavities, but to the fact that the peripheral resistance which has to be overcome in the lungs is so much less than that in the rest of the body.

---

[1] Wien. Sitzungs-Berichte, lxxii (1875).

Various methods have been adopted for calculating the average amount of blood ejected at each ventricular systole. It has been calculated from the capacity of the recently removed and as yet not rigid ventricle, filled with blood under a pressure equal to the calculated average pressure in the ventricle. This method of course presupposes that the whole contents of the ventricle are ejected at each systole. Volkmann[1] measured the sectional area of the aorta, and taking an average velocity of the blood in the aorta (a very uncertain datum), calculated the quantity of blood which must pass through the sectional area in a given time. The number of beats in that time then gave him the quantity flowing through the area and consequently ejected from the heart at each beat. The mean of many experiments on different animals came out .0025 per cent. of the body weight, which in a man of 75 kilos would be 187.5 grams. Vierordt measured the mean velocity and the sectional area in the carotid, and thence, from a measurement of the sectional area of the aorta, and from a calculation of the blood's mean velocity in it, based on the supposition that the mean velocity in an artery was inversely as its sectional area, arrived at the quantity flowing through the aortic sectional area in a given time, and thus at the quantity passing at each beat. Both these calculations are vitiated by the fact that the variations of velocity in the aorta are so great that any mean has really but little positive value.

Fick[2] by means of calculations based partly on the data gained by observing the increase of the volume of the whole arm at each cardiac systole, arrived at results much less than either of the above. In one case he estimated the quantity ejected from the heart at each beat at 53 grms., and in a second case at 77 grms.

It must be remembered that though it is of advantage to speak of an average quantity ejected at each stroke, it is more than probable that that quantity may vary within very wide limits. Taking, however, 180 grms. as the quantity, in man, ejected at each stroke at a pressure of 250 mm.[1] of mercury, which is equivalent to 3.21 meters of blood, this means that the left ventricle is capable at its systole of lifting 180 grms. 3.21 m. high, *i. e.*, it does 578 grammeters of work at each beat. Supposing the heart to beat 72 times a minute, this would give for the day's work of the left ventricle, nearly 60,000 kilogrammeters; calculating the work of the right ventricle at one-fourth that of the left, the work of the whole heart would amount to 75,000 kilogrammeters. A calculation of more practical value is the following. Taking the quantity of blood as $\frac{1}{13}$ of the body weight, the blood of a man weighing 75 kilos would be about 5760 grms. If 180 grms. left the ventricle at each beat, a quantity equivalent to the whole blood would pass through the heart in 32 beats, *i. e.*, in less than half a minute.

---

[1] Hämodynamik, p. 206.

[2] Untersuch. physiol. Lab. Zürich. Hochschule, Hft. 1, p. 51, 1869.

Variations in the Heart's Beat.

These are for the most part in reality vital phenomena, *i. e.*, brought about by events depending on changes in the vital properties of some or other of the tissues of the body. It will be convenient, however, briefly to review them here, though the discussion of their causation must be deferred to its appropriate place.

The **frequency** of the heart, *i. e.*, the number of beats in any given time, may vary. The average rate of the human pulse or heart-beat is 72 a minute. It is quicker in children than in adults, but quickens again a little in advanced age. It is quicker in the adult female than in the adult male, in persons of short stature than in tall people. It is increased by exertion, and thus is quicker in a standing than in a sitting, and in a sitting than in a lying posture. It is quickened by meals, and while varying thus from time to time during the day, is on the whole quicker in the evening than in early morning. It is said to be on the whole quicker in summer than in winter. Even independently of muscular exertion it seems to be quickened by great altitudes. Its rate is profoundly influenced by mental conditions.

---

[1] A high estimate is purposely taken here.

The **length of the systole** may vary, though as a general and broad rule it may be stated that a frequent differs from an infrequent pulse chiefly by the length of the diastole.

Donders found the length of the systole as measured by the interval between the first and second sounds to be for ordinary pulses remarkably constant in different persons, varying not more than from .327 to .301 sec., and being therefore relatively to the whole cardiac period less in slow than in quick pulses.

The **force of the beat** may vary; the ventricular systole may be weak or strong.

When the rate of beat is suddenly increased there is a tendency for the individual beats to be diminished in force, and on the other hand to be increased in force when the rate is diminished. But there is no necessary connection between rate and strength; both a frequent and an infrequent pulse may be either weak or strong.

The **character of the beat** may vary; the systole may be sudden and sharp, rapidly reaching a maximum and rapidly declining, or slow and lengthened, reaching its maximum only after some time and declining very gradually; the latter being the slow pulse (*pulsus tardus*) as distinguished from the infrequent pulse (*pulsus rarus*). The pulse is also sometimes spoken of as being slapping, and sometimes as heaving.

The **rhythm** may be *intermittent* or *irregular*. Thus in an intermittent pulse, a beat may be so to speak dropped: the hiatus occurring either regularly or irregularly. In an irregular rhythm succeeding beats may differ in length, force, or character.

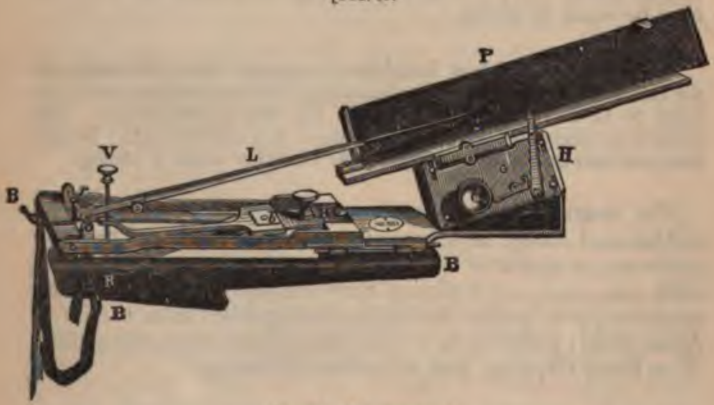
SEC. 3. THE PULSE.

When the finger is placed on an artery, such as the radial, an intermittent pressure on the finger, coming and going with the beat of the heart, is felt. When a light lever such as that of the sphygmograph (Fig. 69) is placed on the artery, the lever is raised at each beat, falling between. The pressure on the finger, and the raising of the lever, are expressions of the expansion of the elastic artery, of the temporary additional distension which the artery undergoes at each systole of the ventricle. This intermittent expansion is called the pulse; it corresponds exactly to the intermittent outflow of blood from a severed artery, being present in the arteries only, and except under particular circumstances, absent from the veins and capillaries. The expansion is frequently visible to the eye, and in some cases, as where an artery has a bend, may cause a certain amount of locomotion of the vessel.

All the more important phenomena of the pulse may be witnessed on an artificial scheme (Fig. 70).

If two levers be placed on the arterial tubes of an artificial scheme,[1] one near to the pump, and the other near to the peripheral resistance, with a considerable length of tubing between them, and both levers be made to write on a recording surface, one immediately below the other, so that their curves can be more easily compared, the following facts may be observed when the pump is set to work regularly:

[FIG. 69.



Marey's Sphygmograph.

B, *B*, is where the sphygmograph is applied to the arm; *R*, spring which rests upon radial artery; *V*, screw for adjusting marking lever *L*; *H*, clock-work; *P*, smoked paper upon which tracing is made; *r*, small spring for causing descent of lever after raising.]

1. With each stroke of the pump each lever (Fig. 71, I and II) rises to a maximum, 1*a*, 2*a*, and then falls again,

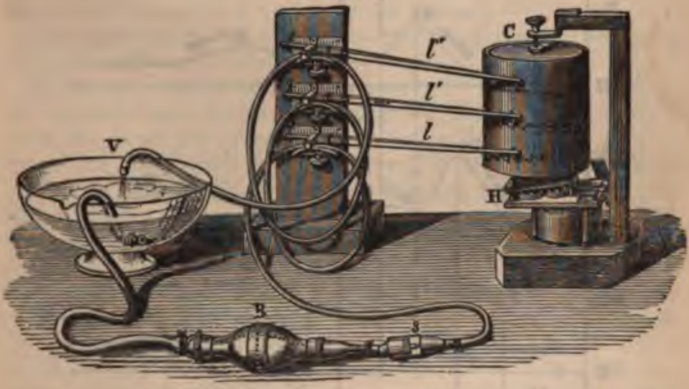
---

[1] By this is simply meant a system of tubes, along which fluid can be driven by a pump worked at regular intervals. In the course of the tubes a (variable) resistance is introduced in imitation of the capillary resistance. The tubes on the proximal side of the resistance consequently represent arteries; those on the distal side, veins.

thus describing a curve—the pulse-curve.[1] This shows that the expansion of the tubing passes the point on which the lever rests in the form of a wave. At one moment the lever is quiet: the tube beneath it is simply distended to the normal permanent amount indicative of the mean arterial pressure; at the next moment the pulse expansion reaches the lever, and the lever begins to rise, and continues to do so until the top of the wave reaches it, after which it falls again until it is once more at rest, the wave having completely passed by.

The rise of each lever is somewhat sudden, but the fall is more gradual, and is generally marked with some irregularities. The suddenness of the rise is due to the suddenness with which the sharp stroke of the pump expands the tube; the fall is more gradual because the elastic reaction of the walls, whereby the tube returns to its former condition after the expanding power of the pump has ceased, is gradual in its action.

[FIG. 70.



Apparatus of Marey for showing Mode in which Pulse is Propagated in the Arteries.

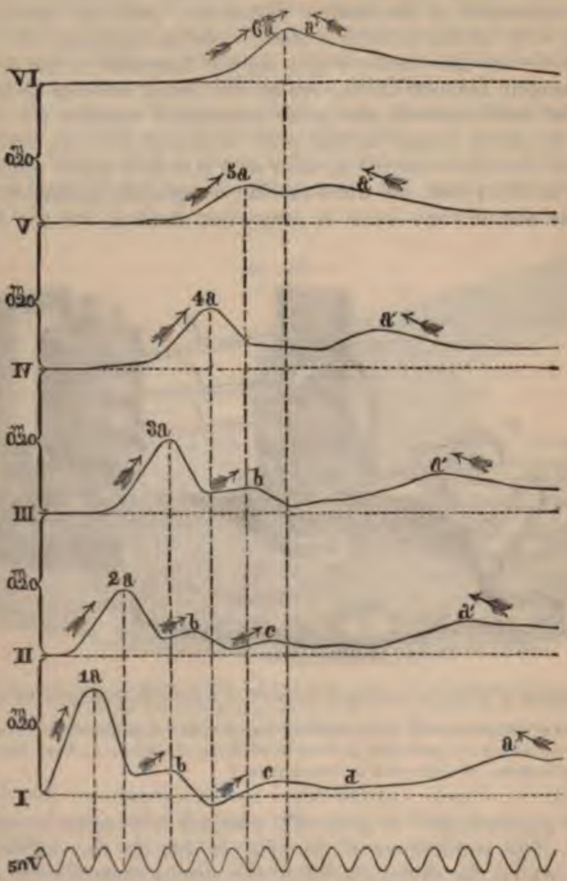
B is a rubber pump, with valve attachment, to prevent a regurgitant current; *l*, *l'*, *l''*, are levers resting on a gum tube, at intervals of 20 cm. of tubing; *C*, drum upon which tracing is made; *H*, clock-work to revolve drum.]

2. The size and form of each curve depends in part on the amount of pressure exerted by the levers on the tube. If

---

[1] Cf. Marey, Trav. d. Lab., i (1875), p. 100.

FIG. 71.



Pulse-curves described by a series of six sphygmographic levers placed at intervals of 20 cm. from each other along an elastic tube into which fluid is forced by the sudden stroke of a pump. The pulse-wave is travelling from left to right, as indicated by the arrows over the primary (*a*) and secondary (*b*, *c*) pulse-waves. The dotted vertical lines drawn from the summit of the several primary waves to the tuning-fork curve below, each complete vibration of which occupies $\frac{1}{50}$ sec., allow the time to be measured which is taken up by the wave in passing along 20 cm. of the tubing. The waves *a'* are waves *reflected* from the closed distal end of the tubing; this is indicated by the direction of the arrows. It will be observed that in the more distant lever, VI, the reflected wave, having but a slight distance to travel, becomes fused with the primary wave. —After MAREY.

the levers only just touch the tube in its expanded state, the rise in each will be insignificant. If, on the other hand, they be pressed down too firmly, the tube beneath will not be able to expand as it otherwise would, and the rise of the levers will be proportionately diminished. There is a certain pressure, depending on the expansive power of the tubing, at which the tracings are best marked.

3. If the points of the two levers be placed exactly one under the other on the recording surface, it is obvious that, the levers being alike except for their position on the tube, any difference in time between the movements of the two levers will be shown by an interval between the beginnings of the curves they describe, if the recording surface be made to travel sufficiently rapidly.

If the movements of the two levers be thus compared, it will be seen that the far lever (Fig. 71, II) commences later than the near one (Fig. 71, I); the farther apart the two levers are the greater is the interval in time between their curves. Compare the series I to VI (Fig. 71). This means that the wave of expansion, the pulse-wave, takes some time to travel along the tube. By exact measurement it would similarly be found that the rise of the near lever began some fraction of a second after the stroke of the pump.

This travelling of the expansion-wave, or pulse-wave, must be carefully distinguished from the propagation of the *shock* given by the stroke of the pump. When a long glass (or other rigid) tube filled with water is smartly tapped at one end, the blow is immediately felt as a shock at the other end. The transmission of this shock, if carefully measured, would be found to be exceedingly rapid; compared with the pulse-wave now under consideration it would be practically instantaneous. When fluid is driven by the strokes of a pump along a rigid tube, a similar shock, travelling equally rapidly, may be readily felt, and might be registered with a lever. When, however, the tube along which the fluid is being pumped is elastic, the force of the pump is so much taken up in expanding the tube that the shock is reduced to very small dimensions. It becomes so slight that it makes no impression on such levers as are used to register the expansion-wave.

The velocity with which the pulse-wave travels depends chiefly on the amount of rigidity possessed by the tubing. The more extensible (with corresponding elastic reaction) the tube, the slower is the wave; the more rigid the tube becomes, the faster the wave travels. According to Donders the size of the tube has no marked influence; but Moens[1] finds it to be less in the wider tubes. According to Marey the initial velocity, the steepness of the wave, has an influence on its rate of progress. In the human body the wave has been estimated to travel at a rate of 9 to 10 meters (Weber, 9.240; Garrod, 9–10.8; or, according to Landois, 5 to 6 meters) a second. It probably varies very considerably. According to all observers the velocity of the wave in passing from the groin to the foot is greater than that in passing from the axilla to the wrist (6743 mm. against 5772). This is probably due to the fact that the femoral artery with its branches is more rigid than the axillary.

Since with increase of mean tension the arteries become more and more rigid, it would be expected that the velocity would increase with the mean tension; and Moens,[2] in opposition to Weber's earlier results, finds that it does.

4. When two curves taken at different distances from the pump are compared with each other, the far curve will be found to be shallower, with a less sudden rise, and with a more rounded summit than the near curve; compare 5*a* with 1*a*, Fig. 71. In other words, the pulse-wave, as it travels onward, becomes diminished and flattened out. If a series of levers, otherwise alike, were placed at intervals on a piece of tubing sufficiently long to convert the intermittent stream into a continuous flow, the pulse-wave might be observed to gradually flatten out and grow less until it ceased to be visible.

Care must be taken not to confound the progression of the pulse-wave with the progression of the fluid itself. The pulse-wave travels over the moving blood somewhat as a rapidly moving natural wave travels along a sluggishly flowing river, the velocity of the pulse-wave being 9 meters per second, while that of the current of blood is not more than .5 meter per second even in the large arteries, and diminishes rapidly in the smaller ones.

Taking the duration of the systole of the ventricle as $\frac{4}{10}$ of a second, it is evident that the pulse-wave started by any one systole, if it travels at 9 m. per second, will *before the end of the systole* have reached a point $\frac{4}{10}$ of 9 m. = 3.6 m. distant from the ventricle. In other words, the wave-length of the pulse-wave is much longer than the whole of the arterial system, so that the beginning of each wave has become lost in the small arteries and capillaries some time before the end of it has finally left the ventricle.

---

[1] Die Pulscurve, Leiden, 1878.

[2] Op. cit.

The general causation of the pulse may then be summed up somewhat as follows: The systole of the ventricle drives a quantity of fluid into the already full aorta. The portion of the aorta next to the heart expands to receive it, thus giving rise to the sudden up-stroke of the pulse-curve. The systole over, the aortic walls, by virtue of their elasticity, tend to return to their former calibre, and the aortic valves being closed, this elastic force is spent in driving the blood onward. The elastic recoil being slower than the initial expansion, the down-stroke of the pulse-curve is more gradual than the up-stroke. Of this portion of the aorta, which actually receives the blood ejected from the heart, the part immediately adjacent to the semilunar valves begins to expand first, and the expansion travels thence on to the end of this portion. In the same way it travels on from this portion through all the succeeding portions of the arterial system. For the total expansion required to make room for the new quantity of blood cannot be provided by that portion alone of the aorta into which the blood is actually received; it is supplied by the whole arterial system; the old quantity of blood which is replaced by the new in this portion has to find room for itself in the rest of the arterial space. As the expansion travels onward, however, the *increase* of pressure which each portion transmits to the succeeding portion will be less than that which it received from the preceding portion, for the whole increase of pressure due to the systole of the ventricle has to be distributed over the whole of the arterial system; and a fraction of it must, therefore, be left behind at each stage of its progress; that is to say, the expansion is continually growing less as the pulse travels from the heart to the capillaries; hence the diminished height of the pulse-curve in the more distant arteries, and its disappearance in the capillaries.

Secondary Waves.—In the natural pulse-curve the fundamental wave is seen to be marked by two or more *secondary* waves imposed upon it. These secondary waves vary much according to circumstances, and are consequently of interest, as throwing light on the condition of the vascular system.

In an artificial scheme, two kinds of secondary waves are seen.

1. Waves of oscillation. When a moderate quantity of fluid is injected into the tube at each stroke, one, two, or

FIG. 72*f*.

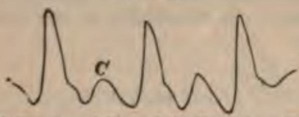
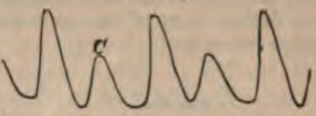


FIG. 72*g*.



f. Tracing of Pulse fully Dicrotic: Predicrotic Wave also shown. Pressure, 3 oz. (? Typhoid fever.)

g. Pulse fully Dicrotic, and Dicrotic Wave very large. Pressure, 1 oz. (Typhoid fever.)

FIG. 72*h*.

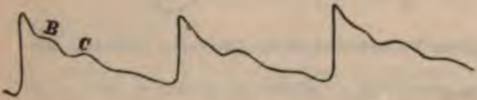
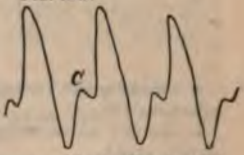


FIG. 72*k*.



h. Pulse with very large Predicrotic Wave. Pressure, 4 ounces. (Acute albuminuria.)

k. Hyperdicrotic Pulse, the Dicrotic Wave becoming lost on the succeeding beat. Pressure, ½ ounce. After hæmorrhage in typhoid fever.

The conditions which favor the prominence of the dicrotic wave are chiefly: (1) A sudden strong ventricular systole. (2) Low tension. Hence dicrotism, not previously well marked, may be brought on at once by diminution of the peripheral resistance by section of the vaso-motor nerves. (See Section 5.) (3) Extensibility (with elastic reaction) of the arterial walls. Hence dicrotism is not well seen in arteries rigid from disease. It may be well marked in one artery and yet very slight in another.

Can we explain the dicrotic wave by showing that it is either a wave of oscillation or a reflected wave? That the dicrotic wave is not one reflected from the periphery is clearly shown by the fact that its distance from the summit of the primary curve is either greater or at least is not regularly less at points of the arteries nearer the capillaries than at points farther from them. This feature, indeed, shows that the dicrotic wave cannot be in any a retrograde wave. Again, the more the primary wave is obliterated by the elastic action of the arterial walls, the less should be the reflected wave. Hence dicrotism should diminish with increased extensibility and elastic reaction of the walls. The reverse is the case. Besides, the multitudinous peripheral division of the arterial system would render one large peripherally reflected wave impossible.

On the other hand, all the conditions which favor dicrotism also favor the occurrence of waves of oscillation. If Fig. 71, I, be compared with Fig. 72 *c*, the similarity between the wave of oscillation *b* in the one case and the dicrotic wave *C* in the other is very striking. And we shall probably not go far wrong if we regard the dicrotic wave as in the main a wave of oscillation. There is, however, evidence that it is not a simple wave of oscillation but one of mixed character, the movement of oscillation being reinforced by a wave of expansion arising from the closure of the aortic valves.

It has been questioned whether waves of oscillation, so manifest in an artificial scheme, do occur to any extent in the arteries of the body, surrounded as these are by tissues which it is argued must tend to act as dampers towards any oscillations due to inertia. But there is no positive evidence of the existence of any such marked damping action, and the remarkable similarity between the tracings obtained by means of exposed tubes and those given by arteries *in situ* is sufficient evidence that in this respect the two behave alike.

That, however, the dicrotic wave is not simply due to the inertia of the vessels but mixed in character, is shown by its peculiar features. In simple waves of oscillation, such as those shown in Fig. 71, I, the first wave of oscillation is the largest, the succeeding ones diminishing in size. Now the dicrotic wave, though undoubtedly the most prominent and in many cases the only observable secondary wave, is not the first secondary wave. It is frequently preceded by the so-called "predicrotic" wave, which sometimes (Fig. 72 *h*), of considerable size, is probably also a wave of oscillation. If both of these are waves of oscillation, there must be causes at work tending to diminish the first (predicrotic) or to exaggerate the second (dicrotic). And there is an event which readily suggests itself as likely to reinforce the later occurring wave of oscillation, viz., the closure of the aortic valves. At the close of the ventricular systole the pressure in the aorta becomes higher than that in the ventricle itself, and the blood in consequence tends to flow back towards the ventricle. Thus the pressure of the aorta having reached its maximum begins to fall by reason of the backward as well as of the forward flow of the blood. But the closure of the semilunar valves gives a check to this fall. A new wave of expansion starting from the valves is propagated along the aorta and great arteries in sequence to the main primary wave. If we suppose this wave, due to the closure of the aortic valves, to coincide with a wave of oscillation, the prominence of the latter as the dicrotic wave becomes intelligible. This view is supported by the fact that insufficiency in the working of the semilunar valves, the so-called aortic regurgitation, materially interferes with the development of the dicrotic wave. That the wave in question should wholly disappear under these circumstances is not to be expected, seeing on the one hand that it is partly a wave of oscillation, and on the other that the valves need not be perfectly closed in order that a secondary wave of expansion may be started at the end of the systole. Such a wave would be originated by any obstacle to the return of blood into the ventricle; and such an obstacle must exist with even the most imperfect valves, or otherwise the circulation would soon come to an end.

Burdon-Sanderson, however, denies that the aortic valves act as above explained in producing the dicrotic wave, basing his opinion on the grounds: 1st. That not only may the dicrotic wave be produced, but that a tracing presenting *all* the graphical characters of the radial pulse tracing may be obtained on an artificial scheme in the absence of any valves corresponding to the aortic valves; 2d. That the form of a tracing taken at any point of an artificial scheme may be modified at pleasure, and any natural pulse tracing imitated by introducing changes into the distal portion of the scheme while the portion corresponding to the heart remains absolutely the same. The view he takes is somewhat as follows: If *A* be a point in the arterial system and *B* a more distal point, the maximum expansion of *B* will take place somewhat later than the maximum expansion of *A;* when *B* is at its maximum of expansion, *A* will be already declining. As the elastic reaction of *B* sets in it exerts a pressure not only forwards but backwards, so that the decline of expansion in *B* may be regarded as giving rise to a wave of expansion travelling forwards, and to a wave of expansion travelling backwards, the latter reaching *A* during the decline of expansion at that point, and therefore giving rise in *A* to a secondary expansion. This secondary expansion due to the action of the artery at the single point *B* is of course small; but what is true of *B* is also true of all the points distal to *A*. Consequently the artery at the point *A* is, during the decline of its primary expansion, subject to a secondary expansion, caused by the elastic reaction of all the arteries in front of, *i. e.*, more distal than itself. The dicrotic wave at any given point is, in fact, a secondary expansion, brought about by the combined elastic reaction of the more distal portions of the system.

Moens[1] compares the dicrotic wave to the waves which he calls "waves of closure," seen when the flow of fluid through a tube is suddenly checked, and looks upon it as simply a wave generated by the reflux of blood against the closed aortic valves.

Mosso,[2] while admitting the dicrotic wave to be a wave of oscillation, affirms, in opposition to most other observers, that it is diminished by a diminution of tension, being lessened, or even abolished, when the artery dilates.

The other secondary wave worthy of notice, the so-called predicrotic wave, Fig. 72*h*, *B*, is much more variable than the dicrotic. Its mode of origin is obscure, but it is probably a wave of oscillation.

Sometimes, though rarely, the dicrotic wave is followed by still another wave, which seems to be simply a wave of oscillation. The pulse is then said to be "tricrotic."

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Variazioni Locali del Polso, 1878.

In some instances the predicrotic wave appears to be broken into two, and it becomes often very difficult to distinguish those secondary waves of the pulse-curve which are really due to events taking place in the artery from those which have their origin (through inertia in the spring, etc.) in the instrument itself.[1] It is worthy of notice that the summit of the curve of intra-ventricular pressure, Fig. 62, is also marked by one or more secondary waves, bearing a considerable resemblance to the predicrotic wave. In the curves obtained by Landois,[2] by allowing the blood from the end of a divided artery to spurt out on to a recording surface, there is no trace of a predicrotic wave, though the dicrotic wave is exceedingly well marked.

The pulse then is the expression of two sets of conditions: one pertaining to the heart, and the other to the arterial system. The arterial conditions remaining the same, the characters of the pulse may be modified by changes taking place in the beat of the heart; and again, the beat of the heart remaining the same, the pulse may be modified by changes taking place in the arterial walls. Hence the diagnostic value of the pulse-characters. It must, however, be remembered that arterial changes may be accompanied by compensating cardiac changes to such an extent that the same features of the pulse may obtain under totally diverse conditions, provided that these conditions affect both factors in compensating directions.

Venous Pulse.—Under certain circumstances the pulse may be carried on from the arteries through the capillaries into the veins. Thus, when the salivary gland is actively secreting, the blood may issue from the gland through the veins in a rapid pulsating stream. This, as will be explained hereafter, is due to a dilation of the arteries. Such exceptional cases do not militate against the general assertion made on p. 220, that the pulse is absent from the veins.

If, as was stated on p. 205, the pressure in the right ventricle and auricle becomes negative at the beginning of the diastole of the ventricle, we should expect to find that a wave of diminished pressure travelled backwards from the heart, along the great veins; and many authors have insisted on the existence of such a "negative pulse" even in health. Thus Mosso[3] gives tracings of the pressure curves of the jugular and other veins which are marked by depressions corresponding to the elevations of the arterial pressure curves.

---

[1] Compare Galabin, Journ. of Anat. and Phys., vol. viii, p. 1; also l. x, p. 297.

[2] *Pflüger's* Archiv, ix (1874), 71.

Archivio p. l. Scien. Med., ii (1878), p. 401.

Variations of pressure in the great veins due to the respiratory movements are sometimes spoken of as a venous pulse; the nature of these variations will be explained in treating of respiration.

II. THE VITAL PHENOMENA OF THE CIRCULATION.

So far the facts with which we have had to deal, with the exception of the heart's beat itself, have been simply physical facts. All the essential phenomena which we have studied may be reproduced on a dead model. Such an unvarying mechanical vascular system would, however, be useless to a living body whose actions were at all complicated. The prominent feature of a living mechanism is the power of adapting itself to changes in its internal and external circumstances. In such a system as we have sketched above, there would be but scanty power of adaptation. The well-constructed machine might work with beautiful regularity; but its regularity would be its destruction. The same quantity of blood would always flow in the same steady stream through each and every tissue and organ, irrespective of local and general wants. The brain and the stomach, whether at work and needing much, or at rest and needing little, would receive their ration of blood allotted with a pernicious monotony. Just the same amount of blood would pass through the skin on the hottest as on the coldest day. The canon of the life of every part of the whole period of its existence would be furnished by the inborn diameter of its bloodvessels, and by the unvarying motive power of the heart.

Such a rigid system, however, does not exist in actual living beings. The vascular mechanism in all animals which possess one is capable of local and general modifications, adapting it to local and general changes of circumstances. These modifications fall into two great classes:

1. Changes in the heart's beat. These being central, have, of course, a general effect.

2. Changes in the peripheral resistance, due to variations in the calibre of the minute arteries, brought about by the agency of their contractile muscular coats. These changes may be either local or general.

To these may be added as subsidiary modifying events:

3. Changes in the peripheral resistance of the capillaries

due to alterations in the adhesiveness of the capillary walls or to other influences arising out of the as yet obscure relations existing between the blood within and the tissue without the thin permeable capillary walls, and depending on the vital conditions of the one or of the other. Such changes causing an increase of peripheral resistance are seen to a marked degree in inflammation.

4. Changes in the quantity of blood in circulation.

The first two and chief classes of events (and probably the third) are directly under the dominion of the nervous system. It is by means of the nervous system that the heart's beat and the calibre of the minute arteries are brought into relation with each other, and with almost every part of the body. It is by means of the nervous system acting either on the heart, or on the small arteries, or on both, that a change of circumstances affecting either the whole or a part of the body is met by compensating or regulative changes in the flow of blood. It is by means of the nervous system that an organ has a more full supply of blood when at work than when at rest, that the stream of blood through the skin rises and ebbs with the rise and fall of the temperature of the air, that the work of the heart is tempered to meet the strain of overfull arteries, and that the arterial gates open and shut as the force of the central pump waxes and wanes. Each of these vital factors of the circulation must therefore be considered in connection with those parts of the nervous system which are concerned in their action.

SEC. 4. CHANGES IN THE BEAT OF THE HEART.

We have already discussed the more purely mechanical phenomena of the heart. We have therefore in the present section only to inquire into the nature and working of the mechanism by which the beat of the heart is maintained, varied, and regulated.

When a frog's ventricle which has ceased to beat spontaneously is stimulated by touching it with a blunt needle, a beat is frequently called forth; this artificial beat differs in no obvious characters from a natural beat. The latent period of such an artificial beat is remarkably long, the length varying within very wide limits. Thus the cardiac contraction is more like that of an unstriated than of a striated muscle. The beat is in fact a modified or peculiar form of peristaltic contraction. In the hearts of some animals, the ventricle forms a straight tube; and in these the peristaltic character of the beat is obvious; but in a twisted tube like that of the vertebrate ventricle, ordinary peristaltic action would be impotent to drive the blood onward, and is accordingly so far modified that the peristaltic character of the beat is recognized only when the action of the heart becomes slow and feeble.

The cardiac, like the skeletal muscular fibre, after a contraction returns by relaxation to its previous shape, and the whole ventricle (or whole heart) regains after a beat the form natural to its quiescent state. This diastolic expansion, though increased by, is not dependent on, the influx of fluid into the cavities of the heart. Thus the cavity of the empty quiescent mammalian left ventricle, though smaller than when it is distended with blood as in its normal action, is larger than when it is in systole or when rigor mortis has set in; moreover if its dimensions be artificially lessened, as when it is squeezed with the hand, it returns by an elastic reaction to its former volume when the pressure is removed. It is by this elastic expansion that the negative pressure during diastole (p. 205) is probably brought about.

One great feature of the cardiac beat produced by artificial stimulation is seen in the absence of any relationship between the strength of the stimulus employed to produce a beat and the amount of contraction evoked. The beat with which a heart responds to a stimulus, *e. g.*, a single induction-shock, is, if there be any response at all, equally large when a feeble as when a strong stimulus is used, though the strength of the beat evoked either by a strong or a weak stimulus may vary considerably within even a very short period of time.

When a second induction-shock is sent in at a certain interval after a first, the beat due to the second shock is often larger than the first, the beneficial effects of a contraction (see p. 120) being even still more manifest in the heart than in an ordinary skeletal muscle. Frequently by successive shocks of equal intensity a "staircase" of beats of successively increasing amplitude may be produced.

When a second induction-shock follows upon the first too rapidly, it is apparently without effect; no second beat is produced. So also when a series of rapidly repeated induction-shocks are set in, a certain number of them are thus "ineffectual;" the application of the ordinary interrupted current gives rise not to a tetanus but to a rhythmic series of beats. The "refractory period," which is so brief in the skeletal muscle (see p. 114), is very prolonged in the cardiac muscle. So also in a spontaneously beating heart, induction-shocks sent in at a certain phase of a cardiac cycle, *e. g.*, the commencement of the systole, are ineffectual, though they produce forced beats when sent in at the other phases of the cycle.[1]

The elasticity of the cardiac walls is, in a healthy condition, like that of a skeletal muscle, very perfect. It is, however, soon interfered with by imperfect nutrition; and a "contraction remainder" (p. 84) under certain circumstances is readily developed.[2]

Under the influences of certain poisons, veratrin, digitalin, etc., the length of the beat is enormously prolonged, and the ventricle eventually thrown into a remarkably contracted condition, the exact nature of which is perhaps not thoroughly understood, though it is believed by many to be due to a deficiency of elastic reaction.[3]

[The force of the cardiac beat is extremely modified by the action of certain drugs, such as hellebore, chloroform, hydrocyanic acid, aconite, jervia, tartar emetic, nitrite of amyl, nitrite of potassium, which reduce the force by a direct paralysant action on the heart muscle. Alcohol, ammonia, and quinine have the same paralytic effect if given in very large doses. Calabar bean, ether, opium, alcohol, and ammonia increase the force by direct cardiac action. Veratria and caffein increase the force, which is soon followed by a diminution.

Hellebore, calabar bean, potassium bromide, aconite, jervia, and quinine (large doses) diminish the frequency of the pulse; and ether, alcohol, and the nitrites increase the frequency by direct action on the heart. Many of the above-named drugs act also upon the cardiac nerves or centres (see pp. 241 and 246) which more or less influences or modifies their direct cardiac action. Quinine in large doses diminishes blood pressure; calabar bean causes first a decrease, then a rise, followed by a fall; and digitalis (also stimulates vasomotor centre) and ammonia cause an increase by direct cardiac action.]

Nervous Mechanism of the Beat.—The beat of the heart is an automatic action; the muscular contractions which constitute the beat are caused by impulses which arise spontaneously in the heart itself.

The heart of a frog (or of a turtle or fish, etc.) will continue to beat for hours, or under favorable circumstances for days, after removal from the body. The beat goes on even after the cavities have been cleared of blood, and indeed when they are almost empty of all fluid. The beats are more vigorous and last longer when the heart is removed by incisions which leave the sinus venosus still attached to the auricles. The excised heart does, however, though for a shorter time and not so readily, continue to beat spontaneously when removed by an incision carried through the auricles so that a portion or even the whole of the auricles together with the sinus venosus is left behind in the body. In this case the parts left behind are seen also to go on beating by themselves.

---

[1] Cf. Bowditch, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1871, and Marey, Travaux du Laborat., ii (1876), p. 63.

[2] Roy, Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 452.

[3] Schmiedeberg, Ludwig's Festgabe (1874), p. 222.

If in an excised heart the ventricle be divided from the auricles, both ventricle and auricle will go on beating. Each moiety has then an independent rhythm. If the spontaneously beating auricle be bisected longitudinally, each lateral half will go on beating spontaneously. Each lateral half may be still further divided, and yet the pieces will, under favorable circumstances, go on pulsating. The ventricle will go on beating when bisected longitudinally; but if it be cut across transversely, the lower half remains motionless, while the upper goes on pulsating. The power of spontaneous pulsation is limited to the extreme base, for if the transverse incision be carried only at a little distance from the auriculo-ventricular groove all power of spontaneous pulsation is lost in the lower part. When these several parts of the heart are examined, it is found that in all of those which beat spontaneously ganglia are present, while from the ventricle except at the extreme base ganglia are absent. There are ganglia in the sinus, ganglia in the auricular septum and walls, ganglia in the auriculo-ventricular groove, but none have been found in the mass of the ventricle itself. From these facts the conclusion is drawn that the spontaneous pulsations in the heart are in some way associated with, and due to the action of, the ganglia scattered in its substance. Of these ganglia those in the sinus seem more potent than those in other parts of the heart.

The exact manner in which these ganglia act is still obscure. The vigor of the rhythmic contractions, and the time they continue to go on is so much greater in the case of the heart retaining the sinus venosus than in that from which it has been removed, that many regard the beats of the former only as really automatic. They look upon the beats of the latter, though repeated rhythmically, and that for even a long series, to be the result of some stimulation or other. They accordingly speak of the sinus ganglia as being automatic, and of the rest as being of reflex or other function.

Though the portion comprising the lower two-thirds of the ventricle remains after separation from the basal third permanently quiescent, it may be thrown into rhythmic contractions, indistinguishable in their character from normal beats, by the application of the constant current. It will also give apparently spontaneous rhythmic be[illegible] the Leipzig method, with rabbit's serum or dilute rabbit's blood.[1] For this purpose, a tube, completely divided by a longitudinal partition into two canals, is introduced into the cavity of the ventricle, and the latter securely ligatured round the tube at the junction of the upper and middle thirds. Fluid introduced through one canal at a low pressure dis-

[FIG. 73.

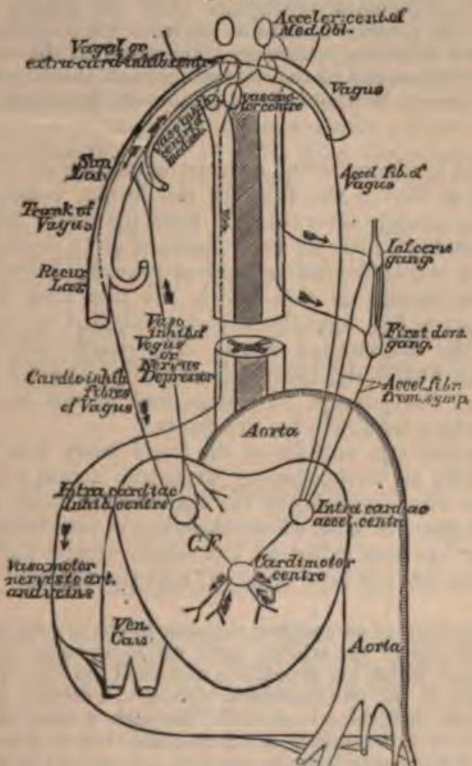

Acceler: cent. of Med. Obl.
Vagal or extra-card. inhib. centre
Vagus
Vaso-motor centre
Vaso-inhib. centre of Med. obl.
Sup. Lar.
Accel. fib. of Vagus
Trunk of Vagus
Inf. cerv. gang.
Recur. Lar.
Vaso-inhib. Vagus or Nervus Depressor
First dors. gang.
Cardio-inhib. fibres of Vagus
Accel. fibr. from symp.
Aorta
Intra-cardiac inhib. centre
Intra-cardiac accel. centre
C.F.
Cardimotor centre
Vaso-motor nerves to art. and veins
Ven. Cav.
Aorta

Diagram to aid in understanding the Action of the Nerves upon the Heart. The right half represents the course of the inhibitory, and the left the course of the accelerating nerves of the heart; the arrows showing the direction in which impressions are conveyed. The ellipse at the upper extremity of the vagus looking like the section of the nerve is intended to represent the vagal nucleus or centre.—After CARPENTER.]

---

[1] Merunowicz, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1875, p. 132. Compare, however, Bernstein, Centralbt. f. med. Wiss., 1876, 385, 435. Bowditch, Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 104.

tends the ventricle, and when a beat takes place, is driven out through the other canal. Fed in this way with rabbit's (or sheep's, etc.) serum or blood, almost any part of the ventricle may be made after a period of rest to execute what are apparently spontaneous rhythmic pulsations. If it be urged that the serum or blood is a stimulus which provokes contractions, there still remains the difficulty, why the continued stimulus produces not a continued contraction, but a rhythmic pulsation. Moreover, in the case of the rhythmic beats evoked by the constant current, the current cannot during its passage be regarded as a stimulus in the ordinary sense of the word.

The beat of the mammalian heart cannot be studied in the same way as that of the frog, for the former ceases to beat almost immediately after removal from the body; but all the facts which have hitherto been observed go to prove that the heart of a warm-blooded animal is governed by a nervous mechanism similar to that which has just been described. [Prof. Martin has recently almost succeeded in completely isolating the mammalian heart. The vessels, etc., were divided until finally the heart was entirely separated from the rest of the body except the lungs, and in this condition it kept pulsating regularly for five hours.]

Just as the two auricles of the frog's heart beat synchronously under all circumstances (excepting actual separation), so also the two ventricles of the mammalian heart act completely as one. A want of synchronism in the two ventricles, though it has been called in to explain certain pathological phenomena, has not been observed experimentally.

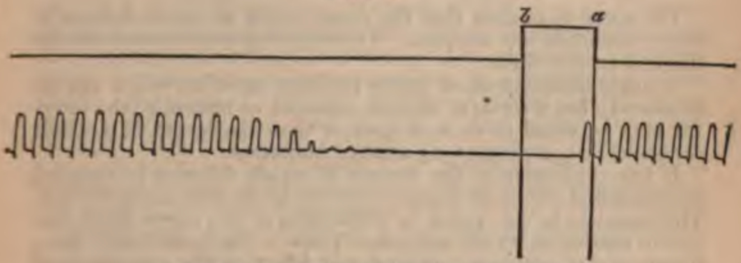
The occurrence of two cardiac impulses to one arterial pulse, *i. e.*, an intermittence of the arterial pulse unaccompanied by a cardiac intermittence, which has sometimes suggested the idea of a want of synchronism in the two ventricles, leading to a double cardiac impulse, may be otherwise explained. In such a case, of the two contractions of the ventricle one is so weak that it fails to throw into the arterial system enough blood to give rise to a pulse-wave.

Inhibition of the Beat.—The beat of the heart may be stopped or checked, *i. e.*, may be inhibited by efferent impulses descending the vagus nerve (Fig. 73).

If while the beats of the heart of a frog or rabbit are being carefully registered (Fig. 74) an interrupted current of moderate strength be sent through one of the vagi, the heart is seen to stop beating. It remains for a time in diastole, perfectly motionless and flaccid. If the duration of the current be short and the strength of the current great, the standstill may continue after the current has been shut off; the beats when they reappear are generally at first feeble and infrequent, but soon reach or even go beyond their previous vigor and frequency. A wholly similar inhibition may be seen in the mammal; and indeed in man. Czermak, by pressing his vagus against a small osseous tumor in his neck, and thus mechanically stimulating the nerve, was able to stop at will the beating of his own heart; it need hardly be added that such an experiment is a dangerous one.

The effect is not produced instantaneously; if on the curve the point be exactly marked as at *a* (Fig. 74), where the current is made, it will frequently be found that one beat at least occurs after the current has passed into the nerve. In other words, the inhibitory action of the vagus has a long latent period; this has been estimated by Donders to last in the rabbit .16 second. The inhibitory effect is at a maximum soon after the moment of application of the current, and diminishes gradually onward; so much so is this the case that, when the current is applied for more than a very short time, the heart recommences beating before the current is removed. The effect, especially with weak currents, is much more in the direction of prolonging the diastole than of diminishing the extent of the systole. Hence with weak currents no actual stoppage takes place, but the pauses between the beats are much prolonged, especially at the beginning of the action of the current, and the pulse thereby rendered slow. During the standstill direct stimulation of the heart, as by touching the

FIG. 74.



Inhibition of Frog's Heart by Stimulation of the Vagus.

The contractions of the ventricle are registered by means of a simple lever, so that each rise of the lever corresponds to a beat. The interrupted current was thrown in at *a*, and shut off at *b*. It will be seen that one beat occurred after *a*, and that the pause continued for some time after *b*. (To be read from right to left.)

auricle or ventricle, will produce a simple beat; though spontaneous pulsations are absent, the irritability of the muscular fibres is not destroyed.

The stimulus need not be an interrupted current; mechanical and chemical stimulation of the vagus also produces inhibition, though less readily.

After atropin, even in a minute dose, has been injected into the blood, stimulation of the vagus, even with the most powerful currents, produces no inhibition whatever. The heart continues to beat as if nothing were happening; atropin, in some way or other, does away with the normal inhibitory action of the vagus.

The above facts show that the events which are at the bottom of vagus inhibition are complex. The following considerations render this still more evident:

A single induction-shock rarely produces an effect which can be measured: but a series of shocks, repeated at intervals (the interval may be equal to or even greater than the length of a whole cardiac cycle), produces very marked inhibition.

If one application of the current be rapidly followed by a second application of the same current, the effects are very markedly less. This seems to be due partly to exhaustion of the vagus fibres, but also to something which has taken place in the heart itself; for a stimulation of one vagus, immediately following the stimulation of the other, at least when prolonged, is diminished in effect.[1]

The stimulus may be applied at any part of the course of either vagus (though it frequently happens in the frog that one vagus is more efficient than the other); but, perhaps, the most marked effects are produced when the electrodes are placed on the boundary-line between the sinus venosus and the auricles.

In slight urari poisoning the inhibitory action of the vagus is still present; in the profounder stages it disappears, but even then inhibition may be obtained by applying the electrodes to the sinus.

In order to explain this result it has been supposed that the inhibitory fibres of the vagus terminate in an inhibitory mechanism (probably ganglionic in nature), seated in the heart itself, and that the urari, while in large doses it may paralyze the terminal fibres of the vagus, leaves this inhibitory mechanism intact and capable of being thrown into activity by a stimulus applied directly to the sinus. After atropin has been given, inhibition cannot be brought by stimulation either of the vagus fibres or of the sinus: or, indeed, of any part of the heart. Hence it is inferred that atropin, unlike urari, paralyzes this intrinsic inhibitory mechanism itself (Fig. 73).

After the application of muscarin or jaborandi the heart stops beating, and remains in diastole in perfect standstill. Its appearance is then exactly that of a heart inhibited by profound and lasting vagus stimulation. This effect is not hindered by urari. The application, however, of a small dose of atropin at once restores the beat. These facts are interpreted as meaning that muscarin (or jaborandi) stimulates or excites the inhibitory apparatus spoken of above, which atropin paralyzes or places *hors de combat*. It is doubtful whether the standstill produced by muscarin, after it has been put on one side by atropin, can be brought back again by further doses of muscarin. In the case of jaborandi it can. When jaborandi is carefully applied to the ventricle externally the ventricle may be brought to a standstill while the auricles continue to go on beating as usual.[1]

---

[1] Cf. Gamgee and Priestley, Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 3[illegible]9.

Nicotin, when given first, slows the heart even to a standstill; but after awhile the beats recover their usual rhythm. Stimulation of the vagus is then found to have no effect; muscarin, however, at once produces a standstill, which in turn may be removed by atropin. The initial slowing effect is absent if atropin or urari be previously given. These facts are interpreted as showing that nicotin first excites the terminal fibres of the vagus, producing inhibitory effects, but that this excitement ends in an exhaustion of these fibres. The action of the drug, however, is limited to the terminal fibres of the vagus, and does not bear on the intrinsic inhibitory apparatus with which these fibres are connected; hence while, after nicotin poisoning, stimulation of the trunk of the vagus is ineffectual, a small dose of muscarin, which acts directly on the apparatus itself, produces standstill.

[Calabar bean, ergot, hydrocyanic acid and veratria stimulate the vagi nerves. Digitalis and opium stimulate both the vagi nerves and the vagi or "cardio-inhibitory" centres (p. 242). Strychnia and belladonna paralyze the vagi nerves. Nitrite of amyl paralyzes the centres. Opium, veratroidia, and alcohol in large doses primarily stimulate then paralyze the inhibitory nerves. Chloroform, veratria, first stimulate, and then paralyze the centres. Digitalis also stimulates the intra-cardiac inhibitory ganglia.]

According to Nuël,[2] stimulation of the vagus, while it produces in the ventricle simply lengthening of the diastole, without change in the force of the systole, has a marked effect on the force of the systole of the auricle. Roy[3] finds direct stimulation of the auricle to bring about, according to the spot stimulated, sometimes slowing, sometimes quickening of the beat, with increase or with decrease of force.

If a ligature be drawn tightly round the junction of the sinus venosus with the auricles, or if the auricles be separated from the sinus by an incision carried along the boundary-line between the two, a standstill is produced closely resembling a very prolonged vagus inhibition. The quiescence thus induced may last an indefinite time. This experiment we owe to Stannius.[4] During the standstill, a pulsation may be induced by a stimulus applied directly to the heart, a whole series of beats being evoked when a mechanical stimulus, such as the prick of a needle, is applied over the seat of Bidder's ganglia at the junction of the auricles with the ventricles, or to the ganglia in the auricles and in the bulbus;[1] and when the ventricle is separated by an incision from the auricles, the former will recommence beating, while the latter remain as quiescent as before. A rhythmic beat may also be induced during the standstill by applying the constant current, during the action of which there is a great tendency for the ventricle to beat before the auricles.

---

[1] Langley, Journ. Anat., x (1875), 187.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, ix.(1874), p. 83.

[3] Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 452.

[4] Müller's Archiv, 1852, p. 85.

Two interpretations have been offered of this standstill. It has been suggested that the ligature or section stimulates the endings of the vagus, and so produces inhibition. This is disproved by the fact that the standstill appears equally well, whether atropin have been previously given or not. According to the other view, the really automatic movements of the heart depend on the ganglia in the sinus, the pulsations which appear in the isolated ventricle or auricles being in reality reflex pulsations, or pulsations caused by some stimulus not really automatic, and therefore not so lasting; or, if there be an automatic apparatus in ventricle or auricle, it is kept in check by the action of the inhibitory apparatus spoken of above, and only makes its presence felt on some stimulus being applied. This view again is disproved by the fact that if the sinus be gradually separated from the auricles no standstill takes place. The whole subject needs further elucidation.

Reflex Inhibition.—This inhibitory action of the vagus may be brought about by reflex action. If the abdomen of a frog be laid bare, and the intestine be struck sharply, as with the handle of a scalpel, the heart will stand still in diastole with all the phenomena of vagus inhibition. If the *nervi mesenterici* or the connections of these nerves with the sympathetic chain be stimulated with the interrupted current, cardiac inhibition is similarly produced. If in these two experiments both vagi are divided, or the medulla oblongata destroyed, inhibition is not produced, however much either the intestine or the mesenteric nerves be stimulated. This shows that the phenomena are caused by impulses ascending along the mesenteric nerves to the medulla, and so affecting a portion of that organ as to give rise by reflex action to impulses which descend the vagi as inhibitory impulses. The portion of the medulla thus mediating between the afferent and efferent impulses may be spoken of as the cardio-inhibitory [or vagal] centre.

If the peritoneal surface of the intestines be inflamed, very gentle stimulation of the inflamed surface will produce marked inhibition; and in general the alimentary tract seems in closer connection with the cardio-inhibitory centre than other parts of the body; but apparently stimuli if sufficiently powerful will through reflex action produce inhibition from whatever part of the body they may come. Thus crushing a frog's foot will stop the heart. In ourselves the fainting from emotion or from severe pain is the result of a reflex inhibition of the heart, the afferent impulses in the one case at least, and probably in both cases, reaching the medulla from the brain.

---

[1] Munk, Verhandl. Berl. physiol. Gesell., reported in Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1879, p. 569.

Direct stimulation of the centre itself, such as occurs during the destruction of or results from injury to the medulla, of course produces inhibition; and inhibition through one vagus may be brought about by stimulation of the centre end of the other.

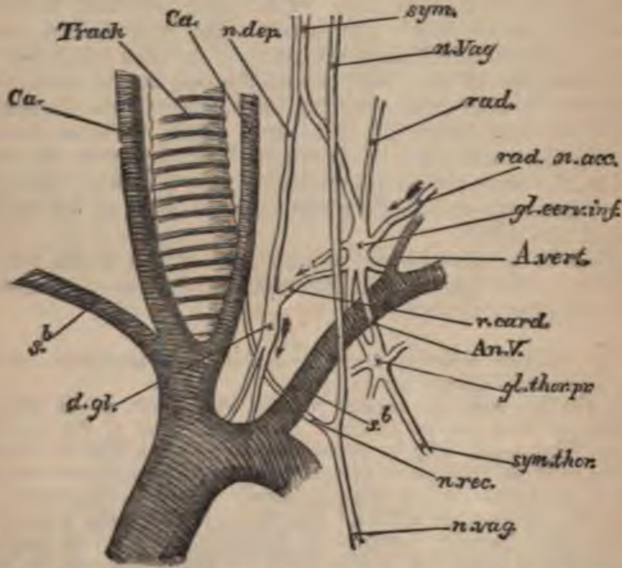
Thus by nervous links, the regulative action of the inhibitory mechanism is brought into more or less close communion with all parts of the body.

The question naturally arises, Has this cardio-inhibitory centre any constant automatic action?

In the dog, and also, though to a far less extent, in the rabbit, section of both vagi is followed by a quickening of the heart's beat. This result may be interpreted as showing that the centre in the medulla exercises a permanent restraining influence on the heart; that organ in fact being habitually curbed. (The argument that the effects of an artificial stimulation of the vagus soon wear off, and that therefore a permanent stimulation of the vagi, leading to permanent inhibitory action, would be impossible, may be met by the suggestion that the effects of natural stimulation need not necessarily wear off.) If, however, previous to the section of the vagi, afferent impulses to the centre in the medulla are cut off by the section of the spinal cord below the medulla and by the division of the cervical sympathetic chain, no acceleration follows the division of the vagi. This would show that the action of the medulla in this matter is purely reflex and not automatic. Such an experiment, however, introduces many sources of error; and, perhaps, the question itself is at bottom a barren one. Granting, however, the existence of a centre in the medulla, which either automatically or otherwise is in permanent action, it is obviously open to us to speak of reflex inhibition as being brought about by influences which augment the action of that centre. But we have seen that active nervous centres are subject, not only to augmentative, but also to inhibitory influences. Hence the cardio-inhibitory centre might itself be inhibited by impulses reaching it from various quarters. In other words, the beat of the heart might be quickened by a lessening of the normal action of its inhibitory centre in the medulla. It is in fact probable that many cases of quickening of the heart's beat are produced in this way, though the matter requires further investigation.

Accelerator Nerves.—The heart's beat may in the mammal be quickened, even after division of both vagi, by direct stimulation of the cervical spinal cord. The effects produced, however, are very complex, and led, on their first being made known, to much discussion, one outcome of which was the discovery of certain nerves of a very peculiar character, which pass from the cervical spinal cord, frequently along the nerve accompanying the vertebral artery, and reach the heart through the last cervical and first thoracic ganglia; these have been called the "accelerator nerves" (Fig. 73).

Fig. 75.

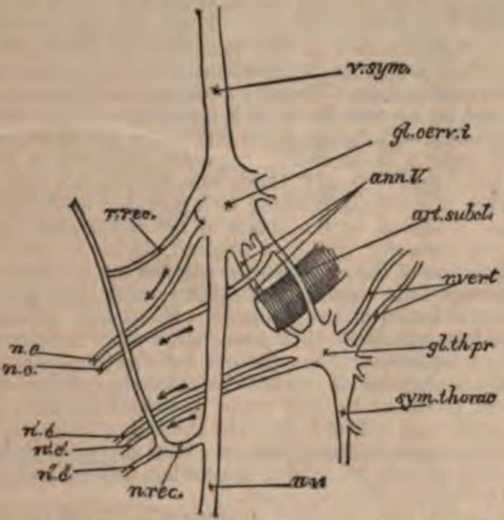


The Last Cervical and First Thoracic Ganglia in the Rabbit. (Left side.) (Somewhat diagrammatic, many of the various branches being omitted.)

Trach., trachea. *Ca.*, carotid artery. *sb.*, subclavian artery. *n. Vag.*, the vagus trunk. *n. rec.*, the recurrent laryngeal. *sym.*, the cervical sympathetic nerve ending in the inferior cervical ganglion, *gl. cerv. inf.* Two roots of the ganglion are shown, *rad.*, the lower of the two accompanying the vertebral artery, *A. vert.*, being the one generally possessing accelerator properties. *gl. thor. pr.*, the first thoracic ganglion. Its two branches communicating with the cervical ganglion surround the subclavian artery forming the annulus of Vieussens. *sym. thor.*, the thoracic sympathetic chain. *n. dep.*, depressor nerve. This is joined in its course by a branch from the lower cervical ganglion, there being a small ganglion at their junction, from which proceed nerves to form a plexus over the arch of the aorta. It is this branch from the lower cervical ganglion which possesses accelerator properties—hence the course of the accelerator fibres is indicated in the figure by the arrows.

Their course is different in the rabbit and in the dog, Figs. 75 and 76, and, indeed, varies even in the same kind of animal. Stimulation of these nerves with the interrupted current causes a quicken-

FIG. 76.



The Last Cervical and First Thoracic Ganglia in the Dog.

The cardiac nerves of the dog. The figure is largely diagrammatic, and represents the left side.

v. sym., the united vagus and cervical sympathetic nerves. *gl. cerv. i.*, the inferior cervical ganglion. *n. v.*, the continuation of the trunk of the vagus. *ann. V.*, the two branches forming the annulus of Vieussens round the subclavian artery, *art. subcl.*, and joining *gl. th. pr.*, the first thoracic or stellate ganglion (the branch running in front of the artery is considered by Schmiedeberg to be an especial channel of accelerator fibres). *sym. thorac.*, the sympathetic trunk in the thorax. *r. vert.*, communicating branches from the cervical nerves running alongside the vertebral artery, the rami vertebrales. *n. rec.*, the recurrent laryngeal. *n. c.*, cardiac branches from the lower cervical ganglion, accelerator nerves of Schmiedeberg. *n'. c'.*, cardiac branches from the first thoracic ganglion, accelerator nerves of Cyon. *n''. c''.*, cardiac branch from recurrent nerve. *r. rec.*, branch from lower cervical ganglion to the recurrent nerve, often containing accelerator fibres.

ing of the heart's beat, in which what is gained in rate is lost in force, for the blood-pressure is not necessarily increased, but may remain the same, or even be diminished. Not only is the latent period of the action of these nerves considerable, but it moreover takes a very long time, as much as 10 seconds, even with maximal lation, before the maximum of acceleration is reached (the acceleration often continuing after the stimulus has been removed), and the decline back to the normal pulse-rate is still slower. Stimulation for even a second may thus produce an acceleration lasting a considerable time. These accelerator nerves seem[1] to be unaffected by the various poisons, including urari, which act upon the vagus and other parts of the nervous system of the heart, and are effective in the midst of profound asphyxia. Their influence is closely dependent on temperature; at low temperatures their influence is slight, and long in making its appearance; as the temperature rises their action becomes more speedily developed and more powerful. They are not to be considered as antagonistic to the vagi; for if during maximum stimulation of the accelerator nerves the vagus be stimulated, even with minimum currents, inhibition is produced with the same readiness as if these were not acting.[2] The period of inhibition, however, is followed by a period of acceleration similar to that produced by the action of the accelerator alone, the vagus action appearing simply to suspend, during its continuance, the manifestation of the accelerator action but not to annul it. We know at present little concerning the share which these nerves take in the natural action of the economy. If, as later researches of Baxt[3] would seem to show, their accelerating effect is characterized, not only by a diminution of the diastole, but also by an actual shortening of the cardiac systole, it is obvious that the quickening of the heart's beat produced by their action is something quite different from the quickening indirectly brought about by a diminution of the activity of the cardio-inhibitory centre. Baxt compares their action to that of heat directly influencing the cardiac tissues: and the comparison is certainly a suggestive one.

Many observers have obtained an acceleration of the heart's beats upon stimulation, under certain circumstances, of the trunk of the vagus (Fig. 73). And Schiff[4] maintains that the accelerator nerves described above come from the vagus and not from the spinal cord.

[Alcohol (in small doses), ethylene bichloride, and ammonia stimulate the accelerator nerves; belladonna stimulates both the accelerator nerves and centres. Apomorphia[5] probably stimulates the accelerator fibres of the vagi nerves.]

The beat of the heart may also be modified by influences bearing directly on the nutrition of the heart. The tissues of the heart, like all other tissues, need an adequate supply of blood of a proper quality; if the blood vary in quality or quantity, the beat of the heart is correspondingly affected.

---

[1] Schmiedeberg, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1871.

[2] Baxt., Die Stellung des N. vagus zum N. accelerans, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1875.

[3] Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1878, p. 121.

[4] Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 172. See also many previous papers there quoted.

[5] [Reichert, Phys. Action of Apomorphiæ Hydrochloras; Phil. Med. Times, X, Nos. 314, 315, 316.]

The excised frog's heart, as we have seen, continues to beat for some considerable time, though apparently empty of blood. After awhile, however, the beats diminish and disappear; and their disappearance is greatly hastened by washing out the heart with a normal saline solution which, when allowed to flow through the cavities of the heart, readily permeates the tissues on account of the peculiar construction of the frog's cardiac walls. If such a "washed out" quiescent heart be fed in the manner described at p. 237, with diluted blood (of the rabbit, sheep, etc.) it may be restored to functional activity. A similar but less complete restoration may be witnessed if serum be used instead of blood; and a heart fed regularly with fresh supplies of blood, or even of serum, may be kept beating for a very great length of time.

The beneficial action seems to be partly due to the alkaline serum neutralizing the acids continually produced by the muscular contractions; for dilute alkaline solutions, *ex. gr.*, a solution of sodium hydrate .005 per cent. in the normal saline solution, are even more efficient than serum.[1] Gaule[2] further finds that the beats are assisted, especially as regards their force, by adding to the alkaline solution a trace of peptone.

When the heart is fed with rabbit's serum, the beats, whether spontaneous or provoked by stimulation, are apt to become intermittent and to arrange themselves into groups. This intermittence is due to the chemical action of the serum; and it is probable that cardiac intermittences seen during life have often a similar causation. Various chemical substances in the blood, natural or morbid, may thus affect the heart's beat by acting on its muscular fibres, its reflex or automatic ganglia, or its intrinsic inhibitory apparatus.

The physical or mechanical circumstances of the heart also affect its beat; of these perhaps the most important is the amount of the distension of its cavities. The contractions of cardiac muscle, like those of ordinary muscle (see p. 115), are increased up to a certain limit by the resistance which they have to overcome; a full ventricle will, other things being equal, contract more vigorously than one less full; though as in muscle, the limit at which resistance is beneficial may be passed, and an overfull ventricle will cease to beat at all.

The influences of resistance in the case of the heart are, however, more complex than those of ordinary muscle, since in the former we have to deal with the rate as well as the vigor of the beat.

---

[1] Merunovicz, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1875, p. 132. Gaule, Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1878, p. 291.

[2] Op. cit.

Under normal conditions the ventricle probably empties itself completely at each systole. Hence an increase in the quantity of blood in the ventricle would augment the work done in two ways: the quantity thrown out would be greater, and the increased quantity would be ejected with greater force. Further, since the distension of the ventricle is (at the commencement of the systole at all events) dependent on the auricular systole, the work of the ventricle (and therefore of the heart as a whole) is in a measure governed by the auricle.[2]

The Relation of the Heart's Beat to Blood-pressure.—When the blood-pressure is high, not only is the resistance to the ventricular systole increased, but other things being equal, more blood flows through the coronary artery. Both these events would increase the work of the heart, and we might expect that the increase would be manifest in the rate of the rhythm as well as in the force of the individual beats. As a matter of fact, however, we do not find this. On the contrary, as Marey has insisted, the relation of heart-beat to pressure may be put almost in the form of a law, that "the rate of the beat is in inverse ratio to the arterial pressure;" a rise of pressure being accompanied by a diminution, and fall of pressure with an increase of the pulse-rate. This, however, only holds good if the vagi be intact. If these be previously divided, then in whatever way the blood-pressure be raised—whether by injecting blood or clamping the aorta, or increasing the peripheral resistance, through that action of the vaso-motor nerves which we shall have to describe directly—or in whatever way it be lowered, no very clear and decided relation between blood-pressure and pulse-rate is observed.[3] It is inferred, therefore, that increased blood-pressure causes a slowing of the pulse, when the vagi are intact, because the cardio-inhibitory centre in the medulla is thereby stimulated, and the heart in consequence to a certain extent inhibited.

[1] When the blood-pressure, after section of the vagi, is raised b
on of additional blood or by clamping the aorta, the heart
ncreased in strength, as shown by the larger excursio
meter; the fact that this is not accompanied by a
ate, suggests that there must be some compensati

---

[2] Roy, Journ. of Phys., i (1878), p. 452.

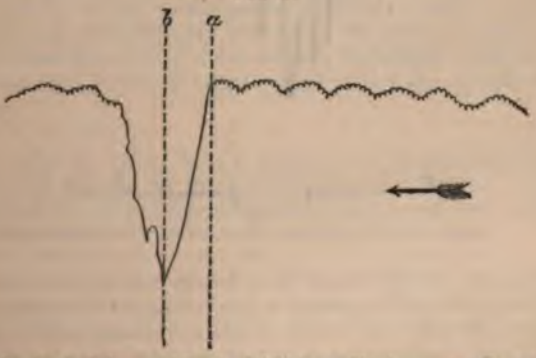
[3] wrocki, Ludwig's Festgabe, p. ccv.

agency at work. Sometimes, even after section of the vagi, a slight slowing is observed when the pressure is increased; this has been attributed to the action of the increased arterial pressure on the endings of the vagus fibres in the heart itself.

The Effects on the Circulation of Changes in the Heart's Beat.

Any variation in the heart's beat directly affects the blood-pressure unless some compensating influence be at work. The most extreme case is that of complete inhibition. Thus, if while a tracing of arterial pressure is being taken, the beat of the heart be suddenly arrested, some such curve as that represented in Fig. 77 will be obtained. It will be observed that immediately after the last beat there is a sudden rapid fall of

FIG. 77.



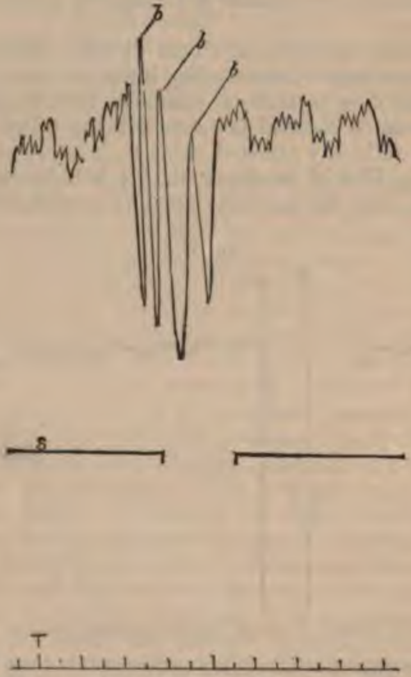
racing showing the Influence of Cardiac Inhibition on Blood-pressure. From a Rabbit.

The current was thrown into the vagus at *a* and shut off at *b*. It will be observed that
e beat is recorded after the commencement of the stimulation. Then follows a very
pid fall, continuing after the cessation of the stimulus. With the returning beats, the
rcury rises by leaps until the normal pressure is regained.

ood-pressure, the curve described by the float more or
closely resembling a parabola. At the close of the last
ole, the arterial system is at its maximum of distension;
with the elastic reaction of the arterial walls propels the
forward into the veins, and there being no fresh fluid
d from the heart, the fall of the mercury is unbroken,
apid at first, but slower afterwards as the elastic force
rterial walls is more and more used up. With the re-
beats, the mercury correspondingly rises in successive

leaps until the normal pressure is regained. The size of these returning leaps of the mercury may seem extraordinary, Fig. 78, but it must be remembered that by far the greater part of the force of the first few strokes of the heart is expended in distending the arterial system, a small portion only of the blood which is ejected into the arteries passing on into the veins. As the arterial pressure rises, more and more blood

FIG. 78.



Blood-pressure during Cardiac Inhibition. From a Dog.

(The tracing reads from right to left.)

The line *T* indicates the velocity at which the recording surface was travelling, the vertical lines marking seconds. The line *S* indicates the application of the stimulus, an interrupted current being thrown into the vagus during the break in the line. It will be noticed that, in this case, the stimulus being comparatively weak, the effect is rather an extreme slowing than an actual cessation of the beats. The large leaps of the mercury, *b*, caused partly by the slowness of the beats, are very conspicuous, indeed unusually large.

passes at each beat through the capillaries, and the rise of the mercury at each beat becomes less and less, until at last the whole contents of the ventricle pass at each stroke into the veins, and the mean arterial pressure is established. To this it may be added that the force of the individual beats is somewhat greater after than before inhibition; that is to say, the period of depression is followed by a period of reaction, of exaltation. Besides, the inertia of the mercury tends to magnify the effects of the initial beats.

If while the force of the individual beats remains constant the frequency is increased or diminished—and *vice versa,* if while the frequency remains the same the force is increased or diminished—the pressure is proportionately increased or diminished. This clearly must be the case; but obviously it is quite possible that the beats might, while more frequent, so lose in force, or while less frequent, so increase in force, that no difference in the mean pressure should result. And this indeed is not unfrequently the case. So much so, that variations in the heart-beat must always be looked upon as a far less important factor of blood-pressure than the peripheral resistance.

Thus when the heart's beat is quickened by stimulation of the accelerator, no increase in the blood-pressure is observed. This, in the absence of any peripheral changes, must result from a proportionate diminution of the force of the individual strokes.

An increase in the quantity of blood ejected at each beat must necessarily augment, and a decrease diminish, the blood-pressure, other things remaining the same. But the quantity sent out at each beat, on the supposition that the ventricle always empties itself at each systole, will depend on the quantity entering into the ventricle during each diastole, and that will be determined by the circumstances not of the heart itself, but of some other part or parts of the body.

SEC. 5. CHANGES IN THE CALIBRE OF THE MINUTE ARTERIES. VASO-MOTOR ACTIONS.

The middle coast of all arteries contains circularly disposed plain muscular fibres. As the arteries become smaller the muscular element becomes more and more prominent as compared with the elastic element, until in the minute arteries, the middle coat consists entirely of a series of plain muscular fibres wrapped round the elastic internal coat. Nerve-fibres belonging to the sympathetic system are distributed largely to bloodvessels, but their terminations have not as yet been clearly made out. By galvanic, or still better by mechanical, stimulation, this muscular coat may, in the living artery, be made to contract. During this contraction, which has the slow character belonging to the contractions of all plain muscle, the calibre of the vessel is diminished.

If the web of a frog's foot be examined under the microscope any individual small artery will be found to vary in calibre, being sometimes narrowed and sometimes dilated. During the narrowing, which is obviously due to a contraction of the muscular coat of the artery, the attached capillary area with the corresponding veins becomes less filled with blood and paler. During the stage of dilation, which corresponds to the relaxation of the muscular coat, the same parts are fuller of blood and redder. It is obvious that the pressure at the entrance into any given artery remaining the same, more blood will enter the artery when relaxation takes place, and consequently the resistance offered by the artery is lessened, and less when contraction occurs, and the resistance is consequently increased. The blood always flows in the direction of least resistance.

The small arteries frequently manifest what may be called spontaneous variations in their calibre, and these variations are very apt to take on a distinctly rhythmical character. If a small artery in the web of the frog be carefully watched, it will be seen from time to time to vary very considerably in width, without any obvious change taking place in the heart's beat, or any events occurring in the general vaso-motor system. Similar variations may be witnessed in the vessels of the mesentery of a mammal.

The most striking and most easily observed instance of rhythmical constriction and dilation is to be found in the median artery of the ear of the rabbit. If the ear be held up before the light it will be seen that at one moment the artery appears as a delicate, hardly visible pale streak; the whole ear being at the same time pallid. After awhile the artery slowly widens out, becomes thick and red, the whole ear blushing, and many small vessels previously invisible coming into view. Again the artery narrows and the blush fades away; and this may be repeated at somewhat irregular intervals several times a minute. The extent and regularity of the rhythm are usually markedly increased if the rabbit be held up by the ears for a short time previous to the observation. If the sympathetic be severed, these rhythmic movements cease for a time; but in the course of a few days are re-established, even if the superior cervical ganglion be removed. Thus though normally dependent on the central nervous system (unless we suppose that the mere section of the nerve is sufficient to create a shock lasting days) these rhythmic movements can make their appearance independently of that system. Some local mechanism is, therefore, suggested; and yet no ganglionic cells have been discovered which would serve as such a mechanism. Similar rhythmic variations in the calibre of the arteries have been observed in several places, *ex. gr.*, in the saphena artery of the rabbit, in the axillary artery of the tortoise, and in the small arteries of the muscles of the frog; probably they are widely spread. They may be compared with the rhythmic movements of the veins in the bat's wing and of the caudal vein of the eel.

The extent and intensity of the constriction or dilation are found to vary very largely. Irregular variations of slight extent occur even when the animal is apparently subjected to no disturbing causes; while as the result of experimental interference the arteries may become either constricted, in some cases almost to obliteration, or dilated until they acquire double or more than double their normal diameter. This constriction or dilation may be brought about not only by treatment applied directly to the web, but also by changes affecting the nerve of the leg. Thus section of the sciatic nerve is generally followed by a very marked dilation, while stimulation of the peripheral stump of the divided nerve by an interrupted current of moderate intensity, is followed by a constriction, often so great as almost to obliterate some of the minute arteries.

The facts show that the contractile elements of the minute arteries of the web of the frog's foot are capable by contraction or relaxation of causing constriction or dilation of the calibre of the arteries; and that this condition of constriction or dilation may be brought about through the agency of nerves.

These effects are not absolutely constant. Sometimes the dilation following upon section is preceded by a passing constriction, and sometimes the section is followed by no distinct alteration in the calibre of the vessels of the web beyond perhaps an initial constriction. Sometimes the constriction consequent on stimulation is followed by a dilation, which may or may not be marked. The constriction of the arteries of the web as the result of nerve stimulation, is more certain when the small nerve supplying the foot is operated on than when the main trunk of the sciatic is stimulated high up. We shall, later on, discuss the nature of these variations.

Vaso-motor Nerves.—In warm-blooded animals, though we cannot readily, as in the frog, watch the circulation under the microscope, we have abundant evidence of the influence of the nervous system on the calibre of the arteries. Thus in the mammal, division of the cervical sympathetic on one side of the neck causes a dilation of the minute arteries of the head on the same side, shown by an increased supply of blood to the parts. If the experiment be performed on a rabbit, the effect on the circulation in the ear is very striking. The whole ear of the side operated on is much redder than normal, its arteries are obviously dilated, its veins unusually full, innumerable minute vessels before invisible come into view, and the temperature may be more than a degree higher than on the other side.

Division of the sciatic nerve in a mammal causes a similar dilation of the small arteries of the foot and leg. Where the condition of the circulation can be readily examined, as for instance in the hairless balls of the toes, especially when these are not pigmented, the vessels are seen to be dilated and injected, and a thermometer placed between the toes shows a rise of temperature amounting, it may be, to several degrees. Division of the brachial plexus produces a similar dilation of the bloodvessels of the front limb. Division of the splanchnic nerve produces a dilation of the bloodvessels of the intestines and other abdominal viscera. Division in the mammal of the lingual nerve on one side of the head causes a dilation of the vessels in the corresponding half of the tongue. A similar effect follows division of the hypoglossal; and if both lingual and hypoglossal be severed the effect is still more marked.

Division of a nerve supplying a muscle causes a large and sudden increase in the venous flow from the muscle, indicating that the muscular arteries have become dilated; and in the frog this dilation, consequent on section of the nerve, may be actually observed by placing a thin muscle, such as the mylo-hyoid, under the microscope and watching the calibre of the small arteries and the circulation of the blood through them while the nerve is being cut.

We find, in fact, that in almost all parts of the body certain "vascular areas" stand in such a relation to certain nerves that the division of one of these nerves causes a dilation of the minute arteries in, and consequently an increased supply of blood to, a corresponding vascular area. We may speak of these nerves as "vaso-motor" nerves, or more correctly, since in the vast majority of cases the nerves in question have other functions than that of governing arteries, as containing vaso-motor fibres, much in the same way as an ordinary spinal nerve is spoken of as containing sensory and motor fibres; and from what has been said above it is evident that these vaso-motor fibres are found sometimes in sympathetic, sometimes in cerebro-spinal nerves.

Since division of a vaso-motor nerve, or nerve containing vaso-motor fibres, leads to the dilation of the arteries of its appropriate vascular area, it is obvious that previous to that division these arteries were in a state of permanent constriction, due to a permanent contraction of their muscular coats. This permanent constriction, which may vary considerably in degree (the dilating effects of section of the vaso-motor nerve correspondingly varying in amount), is spoken of as "tone," "arterial tone." Arteries in such a state of permanent constriction as under ordinary circumstances is normal to arteries whose vaso-motor fibres have not been divided and which are otherwise in a normal condition, are said to "possess tone." When, as after division of the vaso-motor fibres, the constriction gives place to dilation the arteries are said to have "lost tone," and when, under various circumstances which we shall study hereafter, the constriction becomes greater than normal, their tone is said to be increased.

A very little consideration will show that this arterial tone is a most important factor in the circulation. In the first place the whole flow of blood in the body is adapted to and governed by what we may call the *general tone* of the arteries of the body at large. In a normal condition of the body, if not all, at least the vast majority of the minute arteries of the body are in a state of tonic, *i. e.*, of moderate, constriction, and it is the narrowing due to this constriction which forms a large item of that peripheral resistance which we have seen (p. 185) to be one of the two great factors of blood-pressure. The normal general blood-pressure, and therefore the normal flow of blood, is in fact dependent on the "general tone" of the minute arteries. In the second place, changes in *local tone*, *i. e.*, the tone of any particular vascular area, have very decided effects on the circulation. These effects are both local and general, as the following considerations will show.

Let us suppose that the artery A is in a condition of normal tone, is midway between extreme constriction and dilation. The flow through A is determined by the resistance in A and in the vascular tract which it supplies, in relation to the mean arterial pressure, which again is dependent on the way in which the heart is beating and on the peripheral resistance of all the small arteries and capillaries, A included. If, while the heart and the rest of the arteries remain unchanged, A be constricted, the peripheral resistance in A will increase, and this increase of resistance will lead to an increase of the general arterial pressure. This increase of pressure will tend to cause the blood in the body at large to flow more rapidly from the arteries into the veins. The constriction of *A*, however, will prevent any increase of the flow through it, in fact will make the flow through it less than before. Hence the whole increase of discharge from the arterial into the venous system must take place through channels other than *A*. Thus as the result of the constriction of any artery there occur, (1) diminished flow through the artery itself, (2) increased general arterial pressure, leading to (3) increased flow through the other arteries. If, on the other hand, *A* be dilated, while the heart and other arteries remain unchanged, the peripheral resistance in *A* is diminished. This leads to a lowering of the general arterial pressure, which in turn causes the blood to flow less rapidly from the arteries into the veins. The dilation of *A*, however, permits, even with the lowered pressure, more blood to pass through it than before. Hence the diminished flow tells all the more on the rest of the arteries. Thus, as the result of the dilation of any artery, there occur (1) increased flow of blood through the artery itself, (2) diminished general pressure, and (3) diminished flow through the other arteries. Where the artery thus constricted or dilated is small, the local effect, the diminution or increase of flow through itself, is much more marked than the general effects, the change in blood-pressure and the flow through other arteries. When, however, the area the arteries of which are affected is large, the general effects are very striking. Thus if while a tracing of the blood-pressure is being taken by means of a manometer connected with the carotid artery, the splanchnic nerves be divided, a conspicuous but steady fall of pressure is observed, very similar to that which is seen in Fig. 79. The section of the splanchnic nerves causes the mesenteric and other abdominal arteries to dilate, and these being very numerous, a large amount of peripheral resistance is taken away, and the blood-pressure falls accordingly; a large increase of flow into the portal veins takes place, and the supply of blood to the face, arms, and legs is proportionally diminished. It will be observed that the dilation of the arteries is not instantaneous but somewhat gradual, the pressure sinking not abruptly, but with a gentle curve.

Arterial tone then, both general and local, is a powerful instrument for determining the flow of blood to the various organs and tissues of the body, and thus becomes a means of indirectly influencing their functional activity. We should accordingly expect to find that the vaso-motor nerves were connected with, and arterial tone regulated by, the central nervous system, in order that the calibre of the arteries of, and the supply of blood sent to, this or that vascular area might be varied according to the varying needs of the economy. And experiment proves this to be the case.

We stated that section of the cervical sympathetic in the neck causes dilation or loss of tone in the bloodvessels of the head and face. This is true at whatever point of the course of the nerve from the upper to the lower cervical ganglion, both included, the section be made. No such dilation of the vessels of the head and face takes place when the thoracic sympathetic chain is divided anywhere below the upper thoracic ganglion; but dilation does occur after division of certain of the *rami communicantes* connecting the spinal cord with the cervical sympathetic through the lower cervical or upper thoracic ganglion. Hence it is clear that the normal tone of the arteries of the head and face is maintained by influences (whose exact nature we shall study presently) proceeding from the central nervous system, passing through certain *rami communicantes* (the exact path being somewhat uncertain or possibly not constant) into the cervical sympathetic, and ascending to the head and face by that nerve. In other words, the vaso-motor fibres of the vessels of the head and face may be traced down the sympathetic to the lower cervical ganglion, and thence by *rami communicantes* into the spinal cord.

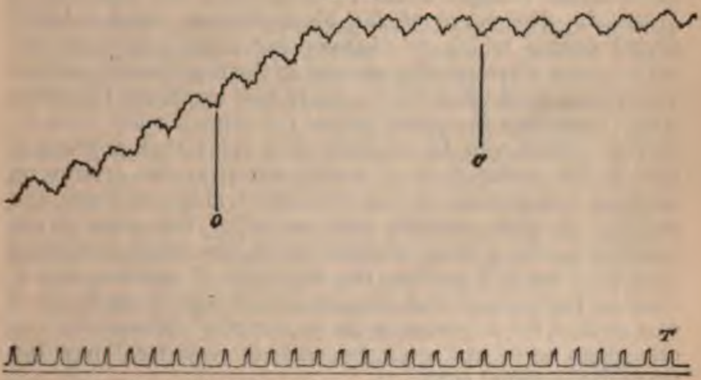
In a similar manner the vaso-motor fibres of the splanchnic nerves governing the mesenteric and other abdominal arteries can also be traced into the spinal cord, as may also those of the sciatic governing the bloodvessels of the hind limb and of the brachial nerves governing those of the fore limb. In fact all the vaso-motor fibres (with certain special exceptions which will be discussed presently) may thus be traced into the spinal cord; they are all connected with the central nervous system. There is at present some uncertainty in certain cases as to the exact manner in which the fibres pass from the spinal cord to this or that nerve, as, for instance, along which nerve-roots the vaso-motor fibres eventually joining the sciatic trunk run, whether they all pass on their way into the abdominal sympathetic or not, and the like; but these are questions which need not delay us now; in whichever way they may be settled, they do not affect the important fact that in some way or other all vaso-motor fibres spring from the central nervous system, and that (with certain special exceptions) what we have called the normal tone of the various vascular areas is maintained by influences proceeding from the central nervous system.

Far more important, however, than the maintenance of a normal tone which, indeed, might be at once and forever arranged for by the proper natural calibre of the elastic bloodvessels, is the power which the central nervous system possesses of varying the tone of this or that artery or group of arteries, of increasing it or of diminishing it, of producing constriction or dilation in those arteries, and thus, as we have seen on p. 256, of effecting changes in general or local blood-pressure or in both, and consequently of determining a flow of blood in this or that direction, according to the needs of the economy. And the exercise of this carefully arranged manipulation of the muscular walls of the arteries may be called forth in either direction, in the way of constriction or in the way of dilation (or of both at the same time, one in one area, and the other in others), by means of nervous impulses either originating in the central nervous system itself or started by afferent impulses passing up to the central nervous system from some sentient surface.

Blushing is a familiar instance of vascular dilation brought about by the action of the central nervous system. Nervous impulses started in some parts of the brain by an emotion produce certain changes in the central nervous system (the exact nature and locality of these changes we shall discuss presently) which have in turn an effect on the vaso-motor fibres of the cervical sympathetic almost exactly the same as that produced by section of the nerve. In consequence, the muscular walls of the arteries of the head and face relax, the arteries dilate, and the whole region becomes suffused. Sometimes an emotion gives rise, not to blushing, but to the opposite, pallor. In a great number of cases this has quite a different cause, being due to a sudden diminution, or even temporary arrest of the heart's beats; but in some cases it may occur without any change in the beat of the heart, and is then due to a condition the very converse of that of blushing, that is, to an increased arterial constriction; and this increased constriction, like the dilation of blushing, is effected through the agency of the central nervous system and the cervical sympathetic. These are familiar examples, but we have in abundance exact experimental evidence of the effect of afferent impulses in inducing through the central nervous system vaso-motor changes, and thus bringing about sometimes constriction, sometimes dilation, sometimes the two together. The action of the so-called depressor nerve is a striking instance of reflex dilation, as it may be called.

If, while the pressure in an artery such as the carotid is being registered, the depressor nerve, which is a branch of the vagus running alongside the carotid artery and sympathetic nerve (Fig. 75, *n. dep.*), be divided, and its central end (*i. e.*, the one connected with the brain) be stimulated with the interrupted current, a gradual but marked fall of pressure in the carotid is observed, lasting, where the period of stimulation is short, some time after the removal of the stimulus (Fig. 79). Since the beat of the heart is not markedly changed, the fall of pressure must be due to the diminution of peripheral resistance occasioned by the dilation of some arteries. And there is evidence that the arteries thus dilated are chiefly, if not exclusively, those arteries of the abdominal viscera which are governed by the splanchnic nerve. For if both the splanchnic nerves are divided previous to the experiment, the fall of pressure when the depressor is stimulated is very small, in fact almost insignificant. The inference from this is clear; the afferent impulses passing along the depressor have so affected some part of the central nervous system that the influences which, in a normal condition of things, passing along the splanchnic nerves keep the minute arteries of the abdominal viscera in a state of moderate tonic constriction, fail alto-

FIG. 79.



Tracing showing the Effect on Blood-pressure of Stimulating the Central End of the Depressor Nerve in the Rabbit. (To be read from right to left.)

T indicates the rate at which the recording surface was travelling; the intervals marked correspond to seconds. *C*, the moment at which the current was thrown into the nerve. *O*, the moment at which it was shut off. The effect is some time in developing, and lasts after the current has been taken off. The larger undulations are the respiratory curves; the pulse-oscillations are very small.

gether, and those arteries in consequence dilate just as they do when the splanchnic nerves are divided, the effect being possibly increased by the similar dilation of other smaller vascular areas.

The condition of the splanchnic or other vascular areas may moreover be changed, and thus the general blood-pressure modified, by afferent impulses passing along other nerves than the depressor, the modification taking on according to circumstances the form either of decrease or of increase.

Thus, if in an animal placed under the influence of urari the central stump of the divided sciatic nerve be stimulated, an increase of blood-pressure, almost exactly the reverse of the decrease brought about by stimulating the depressor, is observed. The curve of the blood-pressure, after a latent period during which no changes are visible, rises steadily without any corresponding change in the heart's beat, reaches a maximum, and after awhile slowly falls again, the fall sometimes beginning to appear before the stimulus has been removed. There can be no doubt that the rise of pressure is due to the constriction of certain arteries; the arteries in question being those of the splanchnic area certainly, and possibly of other vascular areas as well. The effect is not confined to the sciatic; stimulation of any nerve containing afferent fibres will produce the same rise of pressure, and so constant is the result that the experiment may be made use of as a method for determining the existence of afferent fibres in any given nerve and even the paths of centripetal impulses through the spinal cord.

If, on the other hand, the animal be not under urari but chloral, instead of a rise of blood-pressure a fall, quite similar to that caused by stimulating the depressor, is observed when an afferent nerve is stimulated. The condition of the central nervous system seems to determine whether the reflex effect on the vaso-motor fibres is in the direction of constriction leading to a rise, or of dilation leading to a fall of blood-pressure.

The causes of the difference between chloral and urari are not yet clearly worked out. Variations in respiration will not explain it. Nor can the solution be found by supposing that in urari poisoning cerebral functions are active while in chloral poisoning they are in abeyance. If the brain be removed without much bleeding, subsequent stimulation of a sensory nerve under urari still gives a rise of pressure. If there be much bleeding, however, a fall is witnessed. This suggests the idea that after bleeding and under chloral, the part of the central nervous system concerned in the action, and serving a nervous centre, is enfeebled or exhausted, and that stimulation of the enfeebled or exhausted centre always causes depression. This view is supported by the fact, that in ordinary stimulation under urari the decline of the rise appears sooner the more often the stimulation is repeated, and that after many repetitions the decline passes into a distinct fall, and at last only a fall is observed.[1]

In the instances just quoted, the effect of the stimulation of the afferent nerve may be spoken of as a general one; it is the general blood-pressure which is diminished or increased; though in the case of the depressor at all events it is chiefly in the splanchnic area that the constriction or dilation takes place.

There are, however, some remarkable cases where a local effect can be readily distinguished from the general effect, because the two are in opposite directions. Thus if in a rabbit, under urari, the central stump of the auricularis magnus nerve or of the auricularis posterior be stimulated, the rise of general pressure which is caused by the stimulation of this as of any other afferent nerve, is accompanied by a dilation of the artery of the ear. That is to say, the afferent impulses passing along the auricular nerve while affecting the central nervous system in an ordinary way, so as to cause constriction of many of the arteries of the body (but chiefly probably the splanchnic vessels), at the same time so affect some particular part more especially connected with the vaso-motor fibres governing the artery of the ear, as to lead to the dilation of that vessel.

According to Lovén,[2] to whom we are indebted for this observation, the local dilation in the ear is preceded by an initial constriction. A similar initial constriction has been witnessed in other cases of reflex dilation.

According to Heidenhain,[3] this experiment illustrates not so much the contrasts between local and general effects as the difference of behavior between vessels supplying the skin and those distributed to other tissues; for he affirms that reflex vaso-motor action in respect to cutaneous arteries is at all events when caused by artificial stimulation always in the direction of dilation.

So also in the same animal stimulation of branches of the tibial nerve causes dilation of the saphena artery, together with constriction of other arteries, as shown by the concomitant rise of pressure. And there are probably innumerable instances of the same kind of action going on in the body during life, for it is evident that the increased flow of blood to the organ which is the object of the local dilation, must be assisted if a general constriction is at the same time taking place in other regions.

---

[1] Cf. Latschenberger and Deahna, Pflüger's Archiv, xii (1876), p. 157.

[2] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1866.

[3] Cf. Ostroumoff, Pflüger's Archiv, xii (1876), p. 219.

The general effect may not always be obvious, may perhaps be often absent, so that the local dilation or constriction, as the case may be, is the only obvious result of the vaso-motor action. When the ear of the rabbit is gently tickled, the effect that is seen is a blushing of the ear, and though this may be in part due, as we shall see, to the action of a local mechanism, the case we have just cited shows that the central nervous system must be largely engaged. When the right hand is dipped in cold water, the temperature of the left hand falls, on account of a reflex constriction of the vessels of the skin of that hand caused by the stimulus applied to the other. Many more instances might be quoted, and we shall again and again come upon examples. The numerous pathological phenomena classed under sympathetic action, such as the affection of one eye by disease in the other, are probably in part at least the results of reflex vaso-motor action.

We have said enough to show that the calibre of the small arteries, which by determining the peripheral resistance forms one important factor regulating the flow of blood, is subject to influences proceeding from all parts of the body, the influences reaching the arteries in a reflex manner by means of the central nervous system, the afferent impulses being for the most part carried by ordinary sensory nerves, while the efferent impulses pass along special vaso-motor nerves, which, though the centre of the reflex action lies in the cerebro-spinal axis, have a great tendency to run in sympathetic tracts.

The afferent impulses of course need not start from the peripheral nerve-endings. They may, for instance, arise in the brain. Thus, as we have seen, an emotion originating in the cerebrum may, by vaso-motor action, give rise either to blushing or to pallor. Nay more, changes may be induced in the central nervous system itself without the need of any impulses reaching it from without. When we come to discuss the relations of respiration to the circulation, we shall see reason to think that the vaso-motor action of the central nervous system may be directly affected by the condition of the blood passing through it, so that if the quantity of oxygen in the blood be reduced, a general arterial constriction takes place, and a rise of blood-pressure follows; while with a return of oxygen to the blood, the vessels dilate and pressure falls. We shall return to these phenomena later on.

It is more than probable that many substances introduced into the blood, or arising in the blood from natural or morbid changes, may affect blood-pressure by acting directly on the nervous centres.

In many ways then, and to a varying degree and extent, the central nervous system can bring about arterial constriction or dilation, general or local. We have now to study the question, What is more exactly the nature of the nervous influences which lead to constriction and dilation respectively? How do those which cause constriction differ from those which cause dilation?

In the fundamental experiment of the cervical sympathetic, when arterial dilation has followed upon section of the nerve, if the peripheral stump of the divided nerve be stimulated, the dilation gives place to constriction, the blush is replaced by pallor. If the stimulus be very strong the constriction is greater than normal, but by carefully adjusting the strength of the stimulus, the circulation may be brought to quite a normal condition, the "loss of tone" consequent on the severance of the vaso-motor fibres from the central nervous system may be replaced, and not more than replaced, by an artificial tone generated by the action of the stimulus on the sympathetic nerve. The most natural interpretation, therefore, of the vaso-motor action in this case is to suppose that the normal tone of the arteries of the face is maintained by "tonic" constrictive impulses of a certain intensity which pass from the central nervous system along the sympathetic, and that the dilation of the same arteries is due simply to a diminution or absence of these constrictive impulses, an increased constriction or pallor being similarly due to an increase beyond what is normal of these same impulses. In other words, the nervous influences leading to arterial dilation and constriction differ in degree only, not in kind, and may be considered as being merely phases (of decrease or of increase, as the case may be) of the same action. And if we turn to the splanchnic nerve we find a similar interpretation equally valid. Stimulation of the splanchnic nerve causes constriction of the arteries governed by that nerve, apparently because the stimulation supplies artificially the constrictive impulses which, so long as the nerve is intact, pass down it from the central nervous system, giving the requisite tone to its vascular area, and the loss of which by division of the nerve gives rise to dilation. So that were we to stop our inquiries at this point, our explanation of vaso-motor action would be very simple. We might speak of constrictive impulses as passing from the central nervous system to the various vascular areas, to such an extent as to constitute normal tone, but as being susceptible either of inhibition, complete or partial, thus leading to greater or less arterial dilation, or of augmentation, thus leading to excessive constriction.

But this simple view appears insufficient when we push our studies further.

In the first place, such a conception does not cover all the facts connected even with the two nerves just mentioned. For the dilation or loss of tone which follows upon section of the cervical sympathetic (and the same is true of the splanchnic) is not permanent; after awhile, it may be not until after several days, it may be sooner, the dilation disappears and the arteries regain their usual calibre. This recovery is not due to any regeneration of vaso-motor fibres in the sympathetic, for it may be observed when the whole length of the nerve including the superior cervical ganglion is removed. When recovery of tone has thus taken place, dilation or increased constriction may be occasioned by local treatment; the ear may be made to blush or to pale by the application of heat or cold, by gentle stroking or rough handling and the like; but neither the one nor the other condition can be brought about by the intervention of the central nervous system. From this it is clear that what we have spoken of as the tone of the vessels of the face, though influenced by and in a measure dependent on the central nervous system, is not simply the result of an effort of that system. The muscular walls of the arteries are not mere passive instruments worked by the cerebro-spinal axis through the cervical sympathetic; obviously they have an intrinsic tone of their own, dependent possibly on some local nervous mechanism, though in the ear at least no such mechanism has yet been found; and it seems natural to suppose that when the central nervous system causes dilation or constriction of the vessels of the face, it makes use, in so doing, of this intrinsic local tone. But if so, then the simple view entertained above, that arterial dilation and constriction are simply determined by the decrease or increase of tonic constrictive impulses passing directly from the central nervous system is not a complete representation of the facts.

In the second place, if we turn from the sympathetic or splanchnic to other nerves containing vaso-motor fibres, we meet with still greater difficulties. To take, for instance, a nerve supplying a muscle, such as that going, in the frog, to the mylo-hyoid muscle. Here, as in the cervical sympathetic, section of the nerve produces dilation, but that dilation is even more transient than in the case of the sympathetic; the vessels speedily return to their former calibre. And then it is found that stimulation of whatever strength of the peripheral portion of the divided nerve brings about not constriction, but dilation. A similar dilation is seen when the nerve of a mammalian muscle is stimulated, and probably occurs in the case of all muscular nerves.[1] So, also, with the lingual, section of which, as we have already stated, produces dilation of the vessels of the tongue; stimulation of the peripheral portion of the divided nerve gives rise to dilation, no constriction ever making its appearance. There are, therefore, in the body nerves, stimulation of which, as well as mere section, always brings about arterial dilation.

There are other nerves in the body of a mixed character, intermediate between the cervical sympathetic on the one hand and the lingual or muscular nerves on the other, stimulation producing now constriction, now dilation. Such a nerve is the sciatic of a mammal. We have already seen that section of this nerve produces dilation of the vessels of the foot; but the dilation so caused after a few days disappears; the foot on the side on which the nerve was divided becomes not only as cool and pale, but frequently cooler and paler than the foot on the sound side. If the peripheral portion of the divided nerve be stimulated with an interrupted current, immediately or very shortly after division, the dilation due to the division gives place to constriction; the sciatic acts then quite like the cervical sympathetic, except, perhaps, that this artificial constriction cannot be maintained for so long a time, and is very apt to be followed by increased dilation. If, however, the stimulation be deferred for some days, until the dilation has given place to a returning constriction, the effect is not constriction, but dilation; the nerve then acts like a muscular nerve, and not like the cervical sympathetic. In fact, by variations in the attendant circumstances, and in the mode of stimulation, into the details of which we cannot enter now, stimulation of the divided sciatic may, at the will of the experimenter, be made to produce either arterial dilation or arterial constriction.

---

[1] Gaskell, Journal Physiol., i (1878), p. 262.

In all the above cases section of the nerve produces dilation, whether the subsequent stimulation causes constriction or dilation; the dilation after section may be sometimes not very marked, but is always present to some extent or other. But there are certain nerves section of which produces no marked changes in the vascular areas to which they are distributed, and yet stimulation of which brings about dilation often of an extreme character. A striking example of this is seen in the so-called nervi erigentes. The erection of the penis is, putting aside the subsidiary action of muscular bands in restraining the outflow through the veins, chiefly due to the dilation of branches of the pudic arteries, whereby a large quantity of blood is discharged into the venous sinuses. Erection may in the dog be artifically produced by stimulating the *peripheral* ends of the divided nervi erigentes, which are branches from the first and second, and sometimes from the third, sacral nerve passing across the pelvis. On applying the interrupted current to the peripheral ends of these nerves the corpora cavernosa at once become turgid. And yet simple section of these nervi erigentes will not in itself give rise to erection.

According to Lovén[1] and Nicolski,[2] section of the pudic nerves causes a partial dilation of the vessels of the penis, under which circumstances Nicolski finds section of the nervi erigentes to produce a constriction, which also appears even when the pudic nerves have not previously been divided. This result indicates the existence of tonic dilating impulses passing normally down the nervi erigentes, and normally restrained by antagonistic constrictive impulses passing along the pudic nerves.

A similar case is presented by the submaxillary gland. As will be explained more in detail in treating of secretion, this gland is supplied by two nerves, by branches of the chorda tympani reaching it along its duct, and by branches of the cervical sympathetic reaching it along its arteries. Neither section of the chorda tympani nor section of the cervical sympathetic produces any very marked effect in the circulation of the gland. Yet stimulation of the former will bring about a most striking dilation, of the latter a no less striking constriction, of the arteries of the gland.

How can we construct a view of the action of vaso-motor nerves which will be consistent with all these various facts?

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Hofmann ú. Schwalbe, Bericht. vi (1877), p. 79.

In the first place, we must admit the existence of a local tone in the several vascular areas, independent of the central nervous system. In such cases as the corpora cavernosa of the penis and the submaxillary gland, this independence is unmistakable; in other regions it is not at first sight so apparent, but, as we have already urged, must be admitted even for these.

In the second place, as is strikingly shown by the case of the submaxillary gland, there are nerves which, since they always cause dilation, may be called *vaso-dilator* nerves, and nerves which, since they always cause constriction, may be called *vaso-constrictor* nerves. Examples of the first are seen in the nervi erigentes, the chorda tympani, the nerves of muscles, etc.; of the second, in the cervical sympathetic, the splanchnic, etc. Or, to be more exact, we may say that the vaso-motor fibres of the former are vaso-dilator; of the latter, vaso-constrictor. It will not escape notice that the vaso-dilator fibres run chiefly at least in the cerebro-spinal, vaso-constrictor in the sympathetic nerves.

In the third place, the cases of the corpora cavernosa of the penis and the submaxillary gland suggest the idea that dilation is the result of the complete or partial loss of local tone, that in fact vaso-dilators act by inhibiting, and vaso-constrictors by augmenting, the activity of the mechanism (whatever it be) which gives rise to the local tone.

The erection of the penis which follows stimulation of the nervi erigentes, and the injection of the submaxillary gland which follows stimulation of the chorda tympani, present a very close analogy to the inhibition of the heart by stimulation of the vagus. Just as the rhythmic contraction of the cardiac fibre is stopped by the vagus, so the tonic contraction of the arterial fibre (and this tonic contraction is indeed at bottom an obscure rhythmic contraction) is stopped by the chorda or the nervi erigentes. And it seems to be very natural to draw the conclusion that dilation is in all cases mere inhibition, and constriction in all cases mere augmentation, of local tone. But tempting as this view is, and useful perhaps as it may be as a working hypothesis, it must not be regarded as definitely proved. It is quite possible that dilation may be brought about in different ways in different cases; and so also with constriction.

The "inhibitory" explanation of dilation must of necessity remain unsatisfactory until our information concerning the nature of the local mechanism is increased.

Along the course both of the chorda tympani and nervi erigentes numerous ganglion cells are distributed, and their presence gives additional point to the comparison of the local mechanism with the intrinsic nervous mechanism of the heart. Nicolski[1] has still further extended the analogy of the nervi erigentes with the inhibitory fibres of the pneumogastric, by showing that atropin paralyzes the dilating fibres of the nervi erigentes, while muscarin produces erection apparently by stimulating the local dilator mechanism. Still, atropin does not paralyze the dilator fibres of the chorda.

Further, the occurrence of dilation after simple section of a nerve raises an interesting question. Do the arteries in such a case dilate because the very section of the nerve acts as a stimulus to vaso-dilator fibres, or because the local tone is insufficient to keep up an adequate arterial constriction unless it be supplemented by additional tonic impulses reaching the local mechanism from the central nervous system, which supplement is lost by section of the nerve? Obviously, if mere section is a stimulus to vaso-dilator fibres of such a potency as to give rise to a dilation lasting hours, or it may be days, all evidence of "tonic" impulses proceeding from the central nervous system is done away with. We can then only speak of dilation and constriction as being the result of the action of vaso-dilator and vaso-constrictor fibres respectively, both worked in a reflex manner by the central nervous system. Into the discussion whether such an interpretation of the effects of simple section is justified by facts or not, and into the allied controversy concerning the reason why the vaso-motor effects of stimulating the afferent fibres of the sciatic and other nerves vary so much under different circumstances, we cannot enter here. We must content ourselves with the general conclusion that though local tone may exist independently of the central nervous system, the condition of the various vascular areas, in the living body in a normal condition, is arranged and modified to meet passing or permanent needs, by the central nervous system through the agency of vaso-motor nerves, and that these vaso-motor nerves in some cases, since they are used to give rise to dilation only, may be spoken of as vaso-dilator nerves, or as containing vaso-dilator fibres, in other cases may similarly be called vaso-constrictor, and in yet a third class of cases be regarded as mixed in character, since according to circumstances they give rise either to dilation or to constriction.

There remains the important question, What part of the central nervous system is it which intermediates as a nervous vaso-motor centre or centres either of purely reflex or of partly reflex and partly automatic action, between various afferent impulses and the efferent vaso-motor impulses leading either to dilation or constriction?

---

[1] Op. cit.

We have seen (p. 260) that stimulation of the central stump of the divided sciatic gives rise, in an animal under urari, to an increase of general blood-pressure, brought about chiefly, if not entirely, by an augmentation of constrictive impulses passing along the splanchnic nerves. This increase of blood-pressure is manifested, with (in satisfactory experiments) undiminished intensity, even when the whole of the brain, down to a certain limit in the medulla oblongata, has been removed. But if the removal be carried beyond this limit, or if a small area of the medulla oblongata lying above the calamus scriptorius be removed, the effect on the general blood-pressure of stimulating the central stump of the sciatic, we might add, of any other afferent nerve, is comparatively insignificant. Obviously this small portion of the medulla oblongata acts as a vaso-motor centre, by the action of which ordinary afferent impulses coming from the sciatic or any other afferent nerve, are transformed into vaso-motor impulses of constrictive or, as in the case of an animal under chloral (see p. 260), of dilating effect, and so discharged along the splanchnic nerves.

The vaso-motor fibres of the cervical sympathetic and of many other nerves may similarly be traced to this same region of the medulla oblongata. Whether all vaso-motor fibres are actually in connection with it is more than doubtful; but at all events the fibres passing to so many vascular areas, and those of such magnitude and importance, are by means of it brought into functional relationship with so many, if not all, of the afferent nerves of the body, that it may fairly be spoken of as the general vaso-motor centre.

Owsjannikow[1] places the lower limit of this medullary vaso-motor centre in the rabbit at a horizontal line drawn about 4 or 5 mm. above the point of the calamus scriptorius, and the upper limit at about 4 mm. higher up, *i. e.*, about 1 or 2 mm. below the corpora quadrigemina. When in carrying transverse sections of the brain successively lower and lower down, the upper limit was first reached, the first effects in the way of diminishing the rise of blood-pressure resulting from stimulation of the sciatic, were observed. On carrying the sections still lower, the effects of the stimulation of the sciatic became less and less, until when the lower limit was reached no effects at all were observed. The centre is, according to him, bilateral, the halves being placed, not in the middle line, but more sideways and rather nearer the anterior than the posterior surface.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1871, p. 21.

Dittmar,[1] while confirming in general Owsjannikow's results, limits the nervous area thus capable of acting as a reflex vaso-motor centre to a small prismatic space in the forward prolongation of the lateral columns after they have given off their fibres to the decussating pyramids. This space is largely occupied by a mass of gray matter, called by Clarke the antero-lateral nucleus, containing large multipolar cells, and lying close to the origin of the facial. Miescher[2] had previously shown that the afferent impulses which affect the vaso-motor centre run in the lateral columns.

Whether this medullary vaso-motor centre has any distinct automatic action, whether it may be regarded as continually generating out of its own molecular oscillations, and discharging along the vaso-motor fibres, impulses whereby the general arterial tone is maintained, is a question which, like the allied question mooted on p. 263, need not be discussed here. Granting even the existence of such automatic functions, they must be of secondary importance. As we have already urged, the great use of the whole vaso-motor system is not to maintain a general arterial tone, but to modify, according to the needs of the economy, the condition of this or that vascular area.

Besides this general vaso-motor centre in the medulla, other parts of the spinal cord are capable of acting as vaso-motor centres, *i. e.*, of transforming afferent impulses into efferent vaso-motor impulses of dilation or constriction. Thus, when in the dog the spinal cord is divided in the dorsal region, the vascular areas of the hinder part of the body, after a temporary dilation (which may be due in part at least to their severance from the medullary vaso-motor centre, but which probably is rather to be attributed to the shock of the operation on the lumbar cord and the nervous mechanisms connected with it), regain their tone; and then the tone of one or other of these areas may be modified in the direction certainly of dilation, and possibly, but this is by no means so certain, of constriction by afferent impulses reaching the lumbar cord. Erection of the penis through the nervi erigentes may be brought about by suitable stimulation of sensory surfaces, and dilation of various vessels of the limbs readily produced by stimulation of the central stump of one or another nerve.

And what is true of the lumbar, is apparently true also of the dorsal cord, and, indeed, of all parts of the spinal cord. Interlaced with the reflex and other mechanisms for the contraction of the skeletal muscles, with which the spinal cord, as we shall hereafter see, is crowded, are probably vaso-motor centres or mechanisms, the details of whose topography and functions have yet to be worked out. Prominent among them, whether by reason solely of its special connection with the splanchnic nerves, and thus with the capacious vascular area of the abdominal viscera, or whether because in addition it exercises a controlling co-ordinating power over the minor centres in the rest of the cord, is the centre or mechanism placed in the particular part of the medulla oblongata spoken of above. Through it and through them, the delicate machinery of the circulation, which determines the blood-supply, and so the activity of each tissue and organ, is able to respond by narrowing or widening arteries to the ever-varying demands, and to meet by compensating changes the shocks and strains of daily life.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1873, p. 103.

[2] Ibid., 1860, p. 172.

Vaso-constrictor and Vaso-dilator Nerves.—The problems connected with this topic may profitably be studied under three heads:

1. Is dilation merely the consequence of the diminution, partial or complete, of what we may call central tonicity, *i. e.*, of constrictive impulses proceeding from the central nervous system, or may it occur as the direct result of the stimulation of dilator fibres?

There is no difficulty in answering this question in favor of the latter view. In such cases as those of the chorda tympani and nervi erigentes, stimulation of the peripheral portion of the nerve brings about a dilation far exceeding that resulting from simple section. [It is supposed by some investigators that the dilatation of the capillaries caused by amyl nitrite is due, in part at least, to a stimulation of dilator fibres or of the peripheral dilating mechanism (p. 274).]

Further, Luchsinger,[1] reviving and extending a very old experiment of Schiff's,[2] finds that when an animal, a kitten, is warmed in a heated chamber till the feet become red from dilation of the blood-vessels, division of the sciatic nerve causes the foot of the same side to become paler. Similarly if the sciatic on one side, say the left, is first divided, the left foot in consequence becoming warmer and redder, and the animal then exposed to heat, not only does the right foot become redder, but the left foot (in consequence of the blood-current being diverted to other parts) even paler than before, so that the difference in respect to dilation in favor of the right foot becomes very marked. That is to say, the influence of the heat on the central nervous system produces by the agency of vaso-motor nerves a dilation greater than that which results from the mere loss of central tonicity through severance of the peripheral vessels from the central nervous system.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), 391.

[2] Mitth. d. Naturforsch. Gesellsch. in Bern., 1856, p. 69.

2. The more difficult question then arises: Is the dilation which follows section of a nerve always due to the section acting as a stimulus to dilator fibres, or may it in some cases at least have its origin in a loss of central tonicity, or may it in still a third class of cases be brought about by both causes combined?

Goltz[1] was led to insist on the view that dilation following section is the result of the stimulation of dilator fibres, from the following experiment. The sciatic of a dog is divided and carefully replaced in the wound. In the course of a few days, when the vascular tone of the foot has been regained, the nerve is again laid bare, and a cut made in the peripheral stump; forthwith the vessels of the foot dilate and if the nerve be crimped by a series of cuts carried successively downwards, a very marked dilation of the bloodvessels and rise of temperature in the foot is observed. The question why dilation only results under these circumstances, whereas when the nerve is in the first instance divided a passing constriction followed by the more lasting dilation is observed, is answered by the hypothesis that the constrictor fibres, which are present in the nerve together with the dilator fibres, degenerate rapidly, so that at the time the crimping produces dilation, the latter fibres only are in functional activity. This experiment undoubtedly shows that the effects of mere section in the way of a stimulus must not be underrated; but is not valid as an argument against the view that dilation may be the result of mere loss of central tonicity. For besides the fact that the dilation which follows upon crimping is far more transient than the initial dilation which results from the primary division of the nerve, section of an undoubted dilator nerve such as the chorda tympani does not produce anything more than the slightest and briefest dilation, and even that sometimes is absent.[2] Moreover if mere section were so powerful a stimulus to dilator fibres, it ought, unless the contrary can be shown, to act similarly as a stimulus to constrictor fibres when these are in functional activity; and indeed such an effect on constrictor fibres may be supposed to be indicated by the initial constriction which sometimes may be seen to precede the dilation following on section of the sciatic. But in a section of a purely constrictive nerve, like the cervical sympathetic, the initial constriction, which is sometimes but not always seen to precede the more lasting dilation, is of the slightest kind.

We must therefore conclude that the dilation which follows section of the nerve is due largely, and probably in some cases exclusively, to actual loss of central tonicity.

3. The third question suggested is, What is the nature and mode of action of vaso-dilator and vaso-constrictor fibres respectively? Are they separate and distinct fibres, with altogether different mech-

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, ix (1874), p. 174; xi (1875), p. 52.

[2] Kendall and Luchsinger, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 197.

anisms? Or may the same fibre according to circumstances act now as a dilator, now as a constrictor?

In reference to this the following facts deserve attention. When the sciatic nerve is stimulated with an interrupted current immediately after division, constriction in the vessels of the foot, as shown by a fall of temperature, or diminished injection of vascular surfaces, or diminished outflow from an incision, is the result which has been observed by nearly all experimenters. In a degenerating nerve (*i. e.*, one which has been divided some days previously), stimulation produces dilation.[1] Indeed the same stimulation which on an early day after division causes constriction may on a later day give rise to dilation.[2] Single induction-shocks repeated at intervals (one or two seconds) applied to a fresh nerve give when weak dilation, when strong constriction; the same rhythmical stimulus, however strong, applied to a degenerating nerve causes dilation, even in cases where the interrupted current still gives rise to constriction.[3] Similarly with the degenerating peripheral stump of the *auricularis magnus* in the rabbit weak stimulation sometimes causes dilation, strong stimulation constriction. So that in general when the stimulus is weak in relation to the irritability of the nerve, dilation results; when it is strong, constriction. When the stimulus is very strong and prolonged the constriction may be followed by dilation, but this appears to be merely the result of exhaustion.[4]

On the other hand, stimulation of the chorda tympani produces dilation, never constriction, whatever be the strength of the stimulus; and stimulation of the cervical sympathetic similarly always causes constriction.

In the case of the mylo-hyoid of the frog stimulation of the nerve always produces dilation, though constriction may be brought about by applying the electrodes directly to the muscle.[1]

---

[1] Goltz, op. cit. [2] Kendall and Luchsinger, op. cit.

[3] Kendall and Luchsinger, op. cit.

[4] Dastre and Morat (Compt. Rend., T. 87 (1878), p. 771, p. 880) judging of the condition of the vessels governed by the cervical sympathetic, by relative variations in the arterial and venous pressure of the region, find that the constriction which is caused by stimulation of the sympathetic is of short duration, and is followed even before the removal of the stimulus when this is of long duration, by a dilation greater than that which existed before the application of the stimulus, by, in fact, a super-dilation. The same phenomena was seen in the vessels of the foot (of the horse or ass) when the posterior tibial nerve was stimulated, and it may be remarked that the authors never in any case saw the stimulus fail to produce constriction; whether the stimulus was weak or strong, rhythmic or tetanic, whether the nerve had been divided recently, or for days before, stimulation always caused constriction; dilation never occurred otherwise than as subsequent super-dilation. The effects then observed by these authors on stimulating this smaller branch in the horse are opposed to those of stimulating the sciatic trunk in other animals, for the dilation spoken of above has been repeatedly observed without any previous constriction, even when the state of the vessels was judged by inspection of the unpigmented feet, and not merely inferred from a rise of temperature.

So far facts are compatible with the hypothesis that while the cervical sympathetic contains only constrictor and the chorda tympani only dilator fibres, the sciatic nerves contain both kinds of fibres, the constrictor fibres being less irritable, and degenerating sooner, the dilating effects in consequence appearing as degeneration is setting in and when the stimulus used is too weak to excite the constrictor fibres. But Burnstein[2] finds that the transition from constriction may be effected without any change in the nerve-trunk itself. It is simply sufficient in the case of the sciatic of the dog to reduce the temperature of the foot by plunging it into a cold bath, in order that stimulation of even the just divided sciatic, whether by rhythmical induction-shocks, or by the interrupted current, or by crimping, may bring about dilation. And Lepine[3] had previously arrived at a similar conclusion with regard to the sciatic of the frog. From this we may infer that the same fibre may act as dilator or constrictor *according to the condition of the peripheral mechanism*; at all events these results throw great doubt on the necessity of supposing the existence of two kinds of fibres. Moreover were the two kinds of fibres distinct we should expect to find them running, in some part of their course at least, in different tracts; but this has not as yet been observed, as will appear from the following paragraph.

The Course of Vaso-Motor Fibres.—Schiff[4] concluded that the vaso-motor fibres for the front and hind limbs passed partly directly from the cord through the anterior roots of the nerves forming the sciatic and brachial plexuses respectively, and partly indirectly from the anterior roots of the last three or five dorsal nerves to the abdominal sympathetic and thus to the trunk of the sciatic, and from the anterior roots of the 3d, 4th, 5th, or sometimes 6th dorsal nerves to the thoracic sympathetic, and thence by the stellate or first thoracic ganglion to the brachial plexus. Schiff made no distinction between the paths of constrictor and dilator fibres; he supposed the fibres of direct origin to supply the lower parts, those of indirect origin the upper and middle parts, of the respective limbs. Bernard,[5] on the contrary, found that all the fibres for both limbs took the indirect course through the sympathetic. And subsequent observers have supported now one, now the other view. E. Cyon[6] in respect to the fore limb (the fibres running in a single nerve passing from the thoracic chain to the stellate ganglion), and Ostroumoff[7] in respect to the hind limb, support Bernard; while

---

[1] Gaskell, Journ. Anat. Phys., xi (1877), p. 720.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xv (1877), p. 575.

[3] Compt. Rend. Soc. Biol., March 4th, 1876.

[4] Comptes Rendus, 1862, ii, p. 400, p. 425, and previously, Untersuch. z. Physiol. d. Nerven-System, 1855.

[5] Comptes Rendus, 1862, ii, p. 228, p. 305.

[6] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1868, p. 62.

[7] Pflüger's Archiv, xii (1876), p. 219.

Luchsinger and Puelma[1] agree with Schiff in so far that some of the fibres issue from the cord through the proper anterior roots of the nerve. Heidenhain and Gaskell[2] find that the vaso-motor nerves of the muscles of the leg run, in the dog, in the abdominal sympathetic, but apparently not exclusively so. All these observers either find constrictors and dilators running in the same tract, or at least make no difference between them. The evidence, however, as to the exact course is more satisfactory in the case of the constrictors than in the case of the dilators. The view of Stricker,[3] that dilator fibres for the hind limb run in the *posterior* roots of the 4th and 5th lumbar nerves, has been contested by Crossy[4] and Vulpian.[5] In the frog the vaso-motor fibres for the hind limb, at least the web, appear to leave the cord through the anterior roots of the sciatic nerve.[6] Lastly it may be observed that Bernard[7] traces the vaso-motor fibres of the cervical sympathetic into the first thoracic ganglion on their way from the spinal cord.

Spinal Vaso-motor Centres.—Evidence has already been given (p. 270) of the existence even in the mammal of spinal vaso-motor centres, in addition to the medullary centre. In the frog this power of the spinal cord to act as a vaso-motor centre is still more marked and general.[8] And even the statement on p. 269, that the rise of pressure following upon stimulation of an afferent nerve is absent or very slight when the medullary vaso-motor has been removed, does not apply in certain conditions. Thus in strychnized animals, such a rise when an afferent nerve is stimulated is quite distinct.[9] A rise of pressure is similarly observed, in the absence of the medulla, as a consequence of dyspnœa,[10] and as the direct result, without any concomitant stimulation of afferent nerves, of poisoning by picrotoxin,[11] and by antiarin,[12] and by strychnia.[13] [Schlesinger's experiments strongly indicate that the rise of pressure caused by strychnia is due to a paralysis of vaso-*inhibitory* centres.] It is probable at all events, that in these cases the rise in blood-pressure is due to constrictive impulses passing down the splanchnic nerves. If so, then the vaso-motor mechanism of the spinal cord would bear to the ordinary reflex mechanisms by which the skeletal muscles are worked, the additional analogy that the paths along which the impulses of afferent or central origin issue as efferent impulses are determined in part by the condition of the cord and the character of the afferent impulses or of the central disturbances.[1]

---

[1] Pflüger, xviii (1878), p. 489. [2] Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 262.

[3] Wien. Sitzungsberichte, lxxiv (July, 1876).

[4] Archives de Physiolog., iii (1876), p. 832.

[5] Ibid., v (1878), p. 36.

[6] Pflüger, Allg. Med. Central Zeitung, Jahrg., xxiv, No. 6876. Nussbaum, Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 374.

[7] Comptes Rendus, 1862, ii, p. 381.

[8] Cf. Lister, Phil. Trans., 1858, ii, p. 607; Nussbaum, Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 374.

[9] Schlesinger, Wien. Med. Jahrb., 1874; Heidenhain, Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1876), p. 518.

[10] Schlesinger, op. cit.; Luchsinger, Pflüger's Archiv, xvi (1877), p. 510.

[11] Luchsinger, op. cit.

[12] Stricker, Wien. Sitzungsberichte, lxxv, March, 1877; Schroff, Wien. Med. Jahrb., 1874, p. 259.

[13] Stricker, op. cit.

[Digitalis, belladonna (small doses), and ergot stimulate the vaso-motor centres in the medulla oblongata. Veratria primarily stimulates, secondarily depresses these centres. Chloroform and jervia paralyze the centres. Strychnia stimulates both the vaso-motor centres in the medulla and spinal cord. Nitrite of amyl paralyzes the vaso-motor centres in the medulla, and the muscles of the arterioles. Belladonna in large doses paralyzes the muscles of the arterioles.]

The Effects of Local Vascular Constriction or Dilation.

Whatever be determined ultimately to be the *modus operandi* of vaso-motor mechanisms, the following fundamental facts remain of prime importance.

The tone of any given vascular area may be altered, positively in the direction of augmentation (constriction), or negatively in the way of inhibition (dilation), quite independently of what is going on in other areas. The change may be brought about by (1) stimuli applied to the spot itself, and acting either directly on some local mechanism, or indirectly by reflex action through the general central nervous system; (2) by stimuli applied to some other sentient surface, and acting by reflex action through the central nervous system; (3) by stimuli (chemical, blood stimuli) acting directly on the central nervous system.

The effects of local dilation are local and general.

Local Effects of Dilation.—The arteries in the area being dilated, offer less resistance than before to the passage of blood. Consequently, more blood than usual passes through them, filling up the capillaries and distending the veins. Owing to the diminution of the resistance, the fall of pressure in passing from the arteries to the veins will be less marked than usual; that in the small arteries themselves will be lowered, that in the corresponding veins heightened. The lowering of the pressure in the arteries means that their elastic coats are not put to the stretch as much as usual *i. e.*, their elasticity is not called into play to the same extent as before. Now, as has been seen, every portion of the arterial wall has its share in destroying the pulse by converting the intermittent into a continuous flow. Hence, the dilated arteries, their elasticity not being called into play so much as before, will not contribute their usual share towards destroying the pulsations which reach them at the cardiac side. The pulsations will travel through them less changed than before, and may, in certain cases, pass right on into the veins. This is frequently seen in the submaxillary gland, when the chorda tympani is stimulated. The channels being wider, resistance being less, and the force of the heart behind remaining the same, more blood than before passes through the area in a given time; or, put differently, the same quantity of blood passes through the area in a shorter time. The blood, consequently, as it passes into the veins is less changed than in the normal condition of the area. Usually the flow is so rapid that the oxy-hæmoglobin of the corpuscles is deoxidized to a much less extent than usual, and the venous blood still possesses an arterial hue. On the other hand, since more blood passes in a given time, there is an opportunity for an increase in the total interchange between the blood and the tissue. Thus the total work may be greater, though the share borne by each quantity of blood is less.

---

[1] Cf. Heidenhain, Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 518.

General Effects of Dilation.—Supposing that the total quantity of blood issuing from the ventricle remains the same, that is to say, supposing that the quantity of blood put into circulation is constant, the surplus passing through the dilated area must be taken away from the rest of the circulation. Consequently the fulness of the dilated area will lead to an emptying of the other areas. This is seen very clearly when the dilated area is a capacious one. At the same time, local dilation causes a local diminution of peripheral resistance. This in turn causes a lowering of the general arterial pressure; to this we have already called attention.

The **effects of local constriction**, similarly local and general, are naturally the reverse of those of dilation.

In the vascular area directly affected, less blood passes through the capillaries in a given time, and in consequence less total interchange between the blood and the tissues takes place, though each unit volume of blood which does pass through is more deeply affected. The blood-pressure in the corresponding arteries is increased, and, if the area be large, the pressure in even distant arteries may be heightened.

Thus, to indicate results in a general manner, local dilation encourages a copious flow of blood through the area where the dilation is taking place, and, by reducing the blood-pressure, hinders the flow of blood into other areas. Local constriction, on the other hand, lessens the flow of blood in the particular area, and by heightening the blood-pressure tends to throw the mass of the blood on to other areas. Hence the great regulative value of the vaso-motor system. By augmenting or inhibitory influences (constrictor or dilating) applied either to peripheral mechanisms or to cerebro-spinal centres, and called forth by stimuli either intrinsic and acting through the blood, or extrinsic and acting through nervous tracts, the supply of blood to this or that organ or tissue may be increased or reduced; the surplus or deficit being carried away to, or brought up from, either the rest of the body generally, or some other special organ or tissue.

SEC. 6. CHANGES IN THE CAPILLARY DISTRICTS.

Possessing no muscular element in their texture, the capillaries, unlike the arteries, are subject to no active change of calibre. They are expanded when a large supply of blood reaches them through the supplying arteries, and, by virtue of their elasticity, shrink again when the supply is lessened or withdrawn; in both these events their share is a passive one.

It is true that certain active changes of form, due to movements in the protoplasm of their walls, have been described; but the effects of any such changes, even if common, must be quite subordinate.

Nevertheless the capillaries do possess active properties of a certain kind, which cause them to play an important part in the work of the circulation. They are concerned in maintaining the vital equilibrium which exists between the intra-vascular blood and the extra-vascular tissue, an equilibrium which is the central fact of a normal interchange between the blood and the tissue, and thus of a normal life of the tissue. The existence of this equilibrium is best shown when it is overthrown, as in the condition known as inflammation.

If an irritant, such as silver nitrate, or mustard, etc., be applied to a small portion of a frog's web or a frog's tongue, inflammation is set up over a circumscribed area. In this area the following changes may be successively observed under the microscope. The first effect that is noticed is a dilation of the arteries, accompanied by a quickening of the stream. The capillaries become filled with corpuscles, and many passages previously invisible, or nearly so on account of their containing no corpuscles, come into view. The veins at the same time appear enlarged and full. These events, the filling of the capillaries and veins, and the quickening of the stream, are all simply the results of the diminution of peripheral resistance caused by the dilation of the small arteries. If the stimulus be very slight, this may all pass away, the arteries gaining their normal constriction, and the capillaries and veins in consequence returning to their half-filled condition; in other words, the effect of the stimulus in such a case is rather a temporary blush than actual inflammation. When the stimulus, however, is stronger, the quickening of the stream gives way to a slackening; this is not due to any returning constriction of the arteries, for they still continue dilated. The capillaries and veins get more and more crowded with corpuscles, the stream becomes slower and slower, until at last the movement of the blood in the now distinctly inflamed area ceases altogether. The phase of accelerated flow has given place to *stasis*. The capillaries, veins, and small arteries are choked with corpuscles, and it may now be remarked that the red corpuscles seem to run together, so that their outlines are no longer distinguishable; they appear to have become fused into a yellow homogeneous mass. The large number of white corpuscles in the capillaries and veins is also a conspicuous feature. This stasis, this arrest of the current, is not due to any lessening of the heart's beat; the arterial pulsations, or at least the arterial flow, may be seen to be continued down to the inflamed area, and there to cease very suddenly. It is not due to any increase of peripheral resistance caused by constriction of the small arteries, for these continue dilated rather than constricted. It must therefore be due to some new and unusual resistance occurring in the capillary area itself. The increase of resistance is not caused by any change confined to the corpuscles themselves; for if after a temporary delay one set of corpuscles has managed to pass away from the inflamed area, the next set of corpuscles is subjected to the same delay and the same apparent fusion.

The cause of the resistance must, therefore, lie in the capillary walls, or in the tissue surrounding them; or, to speak, perhaps, more correctly, it depends on a disturbance of the relations which in a healthy area subsist between the blood in the capillaries on the one hand, and the capillary walls, with the tissue of which they are a part, on the other. After stasis has continued for some time, the tissue outside the capillary wall is seen to become crowded with white corpuscles, and in the tissue outside the veins are seen not only white, but also red corpuscles. There can be no doubt that these have passed through the capillary and venous walls; they may, indeed, be seen in transit, but the mechanism of their passage is not exactly known. We have no clear proof that any distinct pores do exist in the vascular walls; and it seems probable that in the protoplasmic tissue, which constitutes these walls, a temporary breach made by the passage of a corpuscle may be immediately and completely obliterated, just as a body may be thrust through a film such as that of a soap-bubble, and yet leave the film apparently entire, the internal cohesion of the film at once repairing the breach.

Except in cases where the stimulus produces permanent mischief, the inflammation after awhile subsides. The outlines of the corpuscles become once more distinct; those on the venous side of the block gradually drop away in the neighboring currents; little by little the whole obstruction is removed; the current through the area is re-established; and, though the arteries and capillaries remain dilated for some considerable time, they eventually return to their normal calibre. Thus it is evident that the peripheral resistance in the capillaries (and consequently all that depends on peripheral resistance) is not merely a matter of the mechanical friction of the blood against the smooth walls of the bloodvessels, but is concerned with the vital condition of the tissues. When the tissue is in health, a certain resistance is offered to the passage of blood through the capillaries, and the whole vascular mechanism is adapted to overcome this resistance to such an extent that a normal circulation can take place. When the tissue becomes inflamed, the disturbance of the equilibrium between the tissue and the blood so augments the resistance that the passage of the blood becomes difficult or impossible. And it is quite open to us to suppose that there are conditions the reverse of inflammation, in which the resistance may be lowered below the normal, and the circulation in the area quickened.

Such a diminution of peripheral resistance may possibly in part explain the remarkable quickening of the flow of blood, which is seen in any tissue after a temporary interruption of the stream, and which is also witnessed in the case of an artificial stream kept up in an organ, such as the liver or kidney, removed from the body. Mosso,[1] by means of the Plethysmograph,[2] determined that the amount of resistance offered to the artificial flow of blood through an excised kidney depends upon the gases present in the blood passed through, the resistance being greater in proportion to the amount of carbonic acid, irrespective of the quantity of oxygen.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1874.

[2] By this instrument variations in volume are measured, and where these depend on variations in the quantity of blood passing the organ which is being studied, changes in the circulation may thereby be in-

Thus the vital condition of the tissue becomes a factor in the maintenance of the circulation.

It is, perhaps, hardly necessary to observe that the considerations urged above are quite distinct from what is sometimes spoken of under the name of "capillary" force as an agent of the circulation. If, by capillary force, it is intended to refer to the rise of fluids in capillary tubes, it is evident that since such phenomena are the results of adhesion, capillarity can only be a greater or less hindrance to the flow of blood, seeing that this is propelled by a force (the heart's beat) which has been proved by experiment to be equal to the task of driving the blood from ventricle to auricle through the capillary regions. If by capillary force it is meant that the tissues have some vital power of withdrawing the fluid parts of the blood from the small arteries, and thus of assisting an onward flow, it becomes necessary also to assume that they have as well the power of returning the fluid parts to the veins. Both these assumptions are unnecessary and without foundation.

SEC. 7. CHANGES IN THE QUANTITY OF BLOOD.

In an artificial scheme changes in the total quantity of fluid in circulation will have an immediate and direct effect on the arterial pressure, increase of the quantity heightening and decrease diminishing it. This effect will be produced partly by the pump being more or less filled at each stroke, and partly by the peripheral resistance being increased or diminished by the greater or less fulness by the capillaries. The venous pressure will, under all circumstances, be raised with the increase of fluid; but the arterial pressure will be raised in proportion only so long as the elastic walls of the arterial tubes are able to exert their elasticity.

In the natural circulation, the direct results of change of quantity are obscured by compensatory arrangements. Thus experiment shows[1] that when an animal with normal blood-

---

vestigated. Cf. Mosso, "Sopra un nuovo metodo per scrivere movimenti dei vasi sanguigni nell' uomo," Atti d. Real. Accad. d. Sci. d. Torino, vol. xi; François-Franck, Marey's Travaux du Laborat., vol. ii, p. 1; and the earlier memoir of Fick, Untersuch. Zürich, Physiol. Lab., Hft. i, p. 51.

[1] Worm Müller, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1873, p. 159. Lesser, ibid., 1874, p. 50.

pressure is bled from one carotid, the pressure in the other carotid sinks so long as the bleeding is going on (this, of course, not so much from loss of blood as from diminution of peripheral resistance in the open artery), and remains depressed for a brief period after the bleeding has ceased. In a short time, however, it regains or nearly regains the normal height. This recovery of blood-pressure, after hæmorrhage, is witnessed until the loss of blood amounts to about 3 per cent. of the body-weight. Beyond that, a large and frequently a sudden dangerous permanent depression is observed.

The restoration of the pressure after the cessation of the bleeding is too rapid to permit us to suppose that the quantity of fluid in the bloodvessels is repaired by the withdrawal of lymph from the extra-vascular elements of the tissues. In all probability the result is gained by an increased action of the vaso-motor nerves, increasing the peripheral resistance, the vaso-motor centres being thrown into increased action by the diminution of their blood-supply. When the loss of blood has gone beyond a certain limit, this vaso-motor action is insufficient to compensate the diminished quantity (possibly the vaso-motor centres in part become exhausted), and a considerable depression takes place; but at this epoch the loss of blood frequently causes anæmic convulsions.

Similarly when an additional quantity of blood is injected into the vessels, no marked increase of blood-pressure is observed so long as the vaso-motor centre in the medulla oblongata is intact. If, however, the cervical spinal cord be divided previous to the injection, the pressure, which, on account of the removal of the medullary vaso-motor centre, is very low, is permanently raised by the injection of blood. At each injection the pressure rises, falls somewhat afterwards, but eventually remains at a higher level than before. This rise continues until the amount of blood in the vessels above the normal quantity reaches from 2 to 3 per cent. of the body-weight. Beyond this point there is no further rise of pressure.

These facts show, in the first place, that when the volume of the blood is increased, compensation is effected by a lessening of the peripheral resistance by means of a diminished action of the vaso-motor centres, so that the normal blood-pressure remains constant. They further show that a much greater quantity of blood can be lodged in the bloodvessels than is normally present in them. That the additional quantity injected does remain in the vessels is proved by the absence of extravasations, and of any considerable increase of the extra-vascular lymphatic fluids. It has already been insisted that the bloodvessels are, in health, but partially filled, that the veins and capillaries are alone able to receive all the blood in the body. In these cases of large addition of blood, the extra quantity appears to be lodged in the small veins and capillaries (especially of the internal organs), which are abnormally distended to contain the surplus.

We learn from these facts the two practical lessons, first, that blood-pressure cannot be lowered directly by bleeding, unless the quantity removed be dangerously large; and secondly, that there is no necessary connection between a high blood-pressure and fulness of blood or plethora, since an enormous quantity of blood may be driven into the vessels without any marked rise of pressure.

The Mutual Relations and the Co-ordination of the Vascular Factors.

The foregoing considerations show how complicated and sensitive, and, therefore, how useful is the vascular mechanism. It may be worth while briefly to summarize the relations of the different factors, and to point out the manner in which they are made to work in harmony for the good of the body.

Two facts stand out prominent above all others: (1) The heart's beat may be made slow by vagus inhibition, and probably quickened by withdrawal of the constant inhibitory influence exercised by the cardio-inhibitory centre in the medulla. (2) The peripheral resistance may be diminished by diminished action (dilating action) of the vaso-motor centres, and increased by increased action (constricting action) of the same centres.

These two facts are, by the mediation of the nervous system, placed in mutual regulative dependence on each other. Thus, if with a given peripheral resistance, and proportionate blood-pressure, the heart begins to beat violently, afferent impulses passing up the depressor nerves diminish peripheral resistance (by opening the splanchnic flood-gates), and prevent the rise of blood-pressure which would otherwise take place. In this way a delicate organ, such for instance as the retina, is sheltered from the turbulence of the heart by a change in the flow of blood through the less noble organs of the abdomen. Conversely, if peripheral resistance be in any area increased, the general blood-pressure is prevented from rising too high by reason of the actual increase of blood-pressure so affecting the medulla, that inhibitory impulses descend the vagus, and by producing a less frequent pulse, tone down the distension of the arteries.

The more we learn of the working of the body, the more aware we become of the fact that it is crowded with regulative and compensating arrangements no less striking and exquisite than the two we have just described. Some of these will be seen in the following almost tabular statement of the various modifications of the vascular factors, and of their causes.

A. *The beat of the heart* is affected

1. By the amount of distension of the ventricular cavities preceding the systole. This will depend on

a. The quantity of blood passing into the ventricular cavities during the diastole. This in turn is determined by the flow of blood through the veins, the flow itself being influenced by the arterial pressure, respiratory movements, etc.

b. The force of the auricular contractions.[1]

c. The amount of resistance which has to be overcome by the systole. This is determined by the mean arterial pressure, and is influenced by everything which influences that.

2. By the quantity of the blood passing through the coronary arteries. In the frog the thin walls of the auricle and the spongy texture of the ventricle permit the nourishment of the cardiac substance to be carried on by direct contact with the blood in the cavities. In mammals this mode of nutrition must be insignificant. In them the condition of the cardiac muscles and nervous appendages depends almost exclusively on the blood distributed by the coronary arteries. Putting aside the vaso-motor supply of the coronary arteries, of which we know nothing, we may say that the amount so sent will depend on the arterial pressure in the aorta.

If the blood-current through the muscles of the heart be intermittent, instead of constant as in other muscles, the beat of the heart must be itself self-regulative, and the whole matter becomes very complicated.[2]

3. By the quality of the blood passing through the coronary arteries, and acting upon simply the muscular tissues, or upon the various nervous mechanisms, or upon both. This is well illustrated by the action of poisons (see pp. 235 and 241). The quantitative relations of the normal and presence of ab-

---

[1] Cf. Roy, Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 452.

[2] Cf. Garrod, Journ. Anat. and Phys., vii, p. 219, viii, p. 54.

normal constituents must of necessity profoundly affect the heart's beat.

4. Through the inhibitory fibres of the vagus.

a. By the blood directly stimulating [or depressing] the endings of the vagus fibres. This is only seen in the case of poisons (pp. 240 and 241).

b. By the blood [or poisons, p. 241] directly affecting the cardio-inhibitory centre in the medulla oblongata, either positively by augmenting the normal inhibitory influences and so slowing the heart, or negatively by depressing those influences and so quickening the heart.

c. By reflex stimulation of the same centre. Cases of exaltation through reflex stimulation have already been quoted. Instances of depression leading to quickening of the heart's beat are not so clear.[1] The afferent impulses may be started in any part of the body; but, as we have seen, there seems to be a special connection between this centre and the alimentary canal.

5. By the accelerator nerves [as is seen in the action of poisons, p. 246]. We have, however, at present, no evidence of the natural activity of this nerve.

B. The *peripheral resistance* is affected

1. By the vital, *i. e.*, the nutritive condition of the tissue of the part. This is again influenced by

a. The quality (and quantity?) of the blood brought to it.

b. Through the agency of the nervous system, as in cases of inflammation caused by nervous influences.

Both these points are very obscure.

2. By the varying calibre (constriction, dilation) of the minute arteries, brought about

a. By the blood or other stimulus [or poisons, p. 275] acting directly on the peripheral vaso-motor mechanism.

b. By the blood [or poisons, p. 275] acting directly on the vaso-motor centres in the central nervous system.

c. By reflex stimulation of the vaso-motor centres.

d. It is more than probable that the peripheral resistance, *i. e.*, the amount of constriction of the minute arteries, is directly dependent on the blood-pressure itself. In common with all muscles, the contraction of the circular muscles of the arteries will be greater when the resistance is greater, *i. e.*, when the distension of the vessels is greater. That is to say, other things being equal, with an increase of pressure, due for instance to an increase of heart-beat, the distension so caused will be more than counterbalanced by the increased contraction of the muscular fibre, and thus the pressure still further increased. This, of course, will take place within certain limits only.[1]

---

[1] [The irritable heart of soldiers is supposed to be due to a depression of these nerves.]

Through these intricate ties it comes to pass that an event which takes place in one part of the body is felt, to a greater or less extent, by all parts. To take a simple instance; a change in the condition of the skin at any one spot, such as that produced by the application of cold or heat, may lead

α. By direct local action to a constriction or dilation of the vessels of the part, giving rise to local pallor or suffusion.

β. By reflex action through the central nervous system, to an increase of the same local effects, and in addition to a change in the calibre of the bloodvessels in other parts. This distant reflex change may be of the same or the opposite nature as the local change.

γ. By reflex action to a quickening or slowing of the heart's beat, though the heart is in this respect less intimately connected with the skin than with other parts.

Out of these primary effects there may arise secondary effects; the constriction or dilation produced locally will effect the general blood-pressure, which in turn will produce all its effects.

The modifications of the heart-beat will not only affect the general blood-pressure, but in a reflex manner may affect the peripheral resistance, and hence the flow of blood in particular areas (*e. g.*, the splanchnic area). The modifications of the flow through the area directly, and also through those secondarily affected, will influence the temperature and chemical changes of the blood, and those again will produce their effects everywhere. And so on.

On the other hand, the turbulence which would be the natural outcome of all these events is softened down, by the compensating effects of which we have spoken, into the smoothness which we call health. Still the greatness of the possibilities of change which lie hidden in the body are clearly enough shown by the violence of disease, when compensation fails of accomplishment.

The proofs of the circulation brought forward by Harvey (1628) required for their completion an explanation of the manner in which the blood passed from the small arteries to the small veins. For this the use of the microscope was necessary, and Malpighi (1661) was the first to demonstrate the capillary circulation. Leuwenhoek afterwards (1674) more fully described the passage of blood through the capillaries as seen in the web of the frog's foot, in the fin of the fish's tail, and in other transparent structures.

---

[1] Cf. Latschenberger and Deahna, Pflüger's Archiv, xii (1876), p. 157.

Observations on blood-pressure were first made by Dr. Stephen Hales,[1] who inserted a tall tube into the crural artery of a mare, and observed the height (more than eight feet) to which the column of blood rose. He thus used not a mercury, nor a water, but a blood manometer. Poiseuille[2] introduced the mercury manometer, and to him we are indebted for our knowledge of the fundamental principles of the subject. The elaborate treatise of Volkmann[3] helped to formulate our knowledge; and we are indebted to Ludwig for many of our present methods of investigation.

Claude Bernard[4] was the first to observe that section of the cervical sympathetic on one side of the neck was followed by a rise of temperature and dilation of the bloodvessels of the same side of the head. Brown-Séquard in the same year[5] was apparently the first to observe that stimulation of the peripheral portion of the divided sympathetic brought about a return of the pallor and a fall of temperature; he clearly recognized that the effects of the section of the sympathetic were the results of a paralysis of the bloodvessels. Bernard himself, somewhat later,[6] observed the effects of galvanic stimulation of the divided nerve, though he seems not to have obtained so distinct a grasp of the matter as did A. Waller,[7] who in February, 1853, clearly recognized the vaso-motorial functions of the cervical sympathetic, and the relation of these functions to the action of the same nerve on the iris. These discoveries formed the beginning of our knowledge of the vaso-motor nerves. Among the numerous investigations which have since been carried on, none can be considered more important than those for which we are indebted to Ludwig and his pupils.

---

[1] Statical Essays, vol. ii (1732).

[2] Rech. s. l. Causes du Mouvement du Sang, 1831.

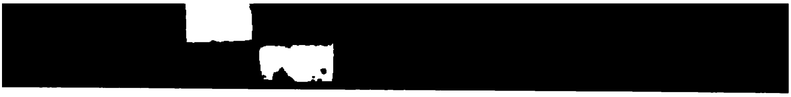
[3] Hämodynamik, 1850.

[4] Comptes Rendus, xxxiv (1852), p. 472.

[5] Philadelphia Medical Examiner, Aug. 1852, p. 489, quoted in Experimental Researches applied to Physiology and Pathology, New York, 1853, p. 9.

[6] Comptes Rendus de la Société de Biologie Nov., 1852.

[7] Comptes Rendus, xxxvi (1853), p. 378.



BOOK II.

THE TISSUES OF CHEMICAL ACTION WITH THEIR RESPECTIVE MECHANISMS. NUTRITION.

CHAPTER II.

[THE EPITHELIA.

THE epithelia are found in the body as single or multiple layers of nucleated protoplasmic cells. They have a large area of distribution in the economy, and play a very important part in many of the vital processes. These cells are

FIG. 80.

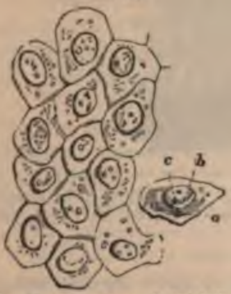


FIG. 81.

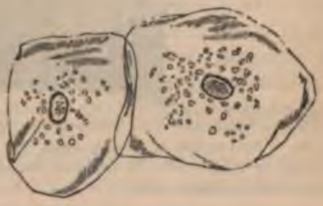


FIG. 80.—Fragment of Epithelium from a Serous Membrane (peritoneum); magnified 410 diameters. *a*, cell; *b*, nucleus; *c*, nucleoli.—HENLÉ.

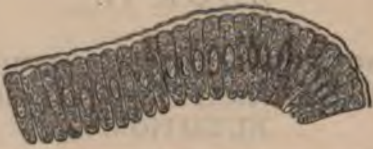
FIG. 81.—Epithelium Scales from the Inside of the Mouth; magnified 260 diameters. —HENLÉ.

more or less modified in form and structure in the different epithelia, and so differentiated in their "amœbiform units" as to perform very diverse functions.

They have been divided into four principal varieties, distinguished by certain characteristic appearances of the cells. They are generally known as *pavement*, *tessellated* or *squamous*; *columnar* or *cylindrical*; *ciliated*; and *spheroidal* epithelia.

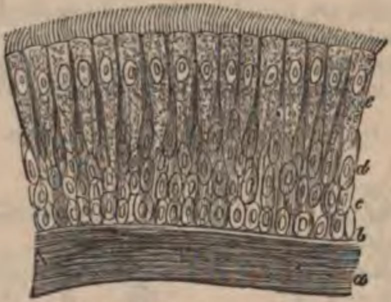
Pavement, *tessellated* or *squamous* epithelium is found widely distributed, forming the epidermal covering, the lining of the bloodvessels, serous sacs, many of the mucous membranes, etc. This form of epithelium consists of irregular, polygonal flattened cells, which are overlapped, or more or less merged into each other at their edges. (Figs. 80 and 81.)

FIG. 82.



Cylindrical Epithelium from Intestinal Villus of a Rabbit; magnified 300 diameters. After KÖLLIKER.

FIG. 83.



Ciliated Epithelium from Trachea (magnified). *a*, basement membrane; *b*, *c*, *d*, cells in the several stages of development, and which will ultimately be fully developed ciliated cells, and take the place of the matured ones which will be thrown off; *e*, shows fully developed cells.

Columnar or *cylindrical* epithelium (Fig. 82) is found in the form of elongated cylindrical cells, which are more or less angular on their sides from mutual compression; they are placed parallel with each other, and vertically on the basement membrane. This form of epithelium is found principally as a lining of the mucous membrane of the gastro-intestinal tract, and of many of the ducts.

Ciliated epithelium (Fig. 83) usually is found in a form similar to that of the columnar variety. These cells have projecting from their free extremities very numerous hair-like bodies or *cilia*. If these cells are examined with a microscope during life or immediately after death, the cilia will be seen to be in a state of constant vibratile motion. This form of epithelium is found in the greater portion of the respiratory tract, in the Fallopian tubes, etc.

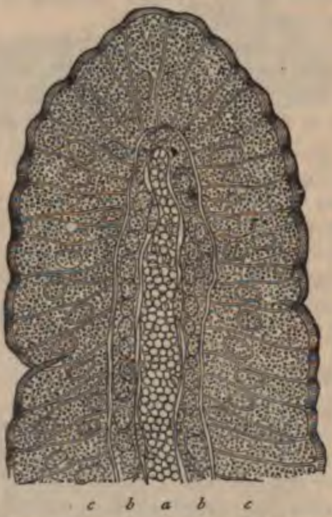
Spheroidal or *glandular* (Fig. 92) epithelium is in the form of somewhat globular or spheroidal cells, which are more or less angular on their sides, from compression of adjoining cells. This epithelium is found principally in the secretory portions of the glands, and in many, if not in all of them, forms the essential physiological constituent.

The functions of these different epithelia are as diverse as are their forms and structures. Pavement epithelium is so distributed that its use often appears to be of a mere *mechanical* or *physical* character. Thus in the skin it consists of numerous stratifications of cells which form a tough, more or less impermeable layer, which protects the true skin from effects of friction, and at the same time protects the body from over-loss of water by evaporation. The horns of animals, the nails and hairs, are all modifications of this form of epithelium. In the bloodvessels it forms a smooth lining membrane and seems to be endowed with a vital property in preventing an intra-vascular coagulation of the blood. In the capillaries it also plays a very important part in the interchange of the secretive and excretive materials which are conveyed in the blood. In both the systemic and pulmonic capillaries it is an active agent in the interchange of gases, and is therefore a *respiratory* tissue. In the bladder, where its form is somewhat modified, it forms a membrane which prevents the re-absorption of urine.

Other epithelia, such as the spheroidal, are principally *secretive*, and possess the power of selecting certain elements from the blood, and by a process of metabolism convert them into new substances. In certain glands these cells themselves undergo certain metamorphoses and are elaborated as elements of the secretion. The function of this epithelium in some of the glands is *excretory*. The spheroidal and columnar varieties are the principal secretory epithelia.

Absorption is the principal function of others. The intestinal villi, which are covered with a layer of columnar epithelial cells, are intimately connected with the function of absorption. It is through these cells that the chyle passes to reach the lacteals, and through which other products of digestion pass to reach the intestinal capillaries of the portal vein. The cells in this position are somewhat modified by possessing a striated outer surface (Fig. 84). The striæ were supposed by some physiologists to be minute canals which lead into the intra-cellular protoplasm. These cells during fasting contain clear granular protoplasm, but during digestion they are seen to contain very numerous fat-globules. They will be referred to more fully hereafter.

Fig. 84.



Section of a Villus from the Intestine of a Rabbit. Above (*a*) is the central canal bounded on either side by the matrix (*b*), which again is covered by long columnar cells (*c*), containing a nucleus and granules. The outer surface of these cells is seen to be striated.

The ciliated epithelia possess a special function by virtue of their ciliary appendages. In the respiratory tract they assist in the expulsion of mucus and foreign bodies, also in the expiration of air. In the Fallopian tubes they are probably active agents in propelling the ovule along the interior of the tubes to the uterine cavity.

The epithelia have no bloodvessels, and must therefore obtain their nutriment by diffusion from the adjoining tissues.

After epithelium cells are matured, and no longer capacitated for the performance of their proper functions, they are cast off and replaced by cells which are produced beneath. (See Fig. 83.)]

THE TISSUES AND MECHANISMS OF DIGESTION.

The food, in passing along the alimentary canal, is subjected to the action of certain juices which are the products of the secretory activity of the epithelium cells of the alimentary mucous membrane itself, or of the glands which belong to it. These juices (viz., saliva, gastric juice, bile, pancreatic juice, succus entericus, and the secretion of the large intestine), poured upon and mingling with the food, produce in it such changes that, from being largely insoluble, it becomes largely soluble, or otherwise modify it in such a way that the larger part of what is eaten passes into the blood, either directly by means of the capillaries of the alimentary canal, or indirectly by means of the lacteal system, while the smaller part is discharged as excrement.

We have, therefore, to consider: 1st, the properties of the various juices, and the changes they bring about in the food eaten; 2d, the nature of the processes by means of which the various epithelium cells of the various glands and various tracts of the canal are able to manufacture so many various juices out of the common source, the blood, and the manner in which the secretory activity of the cells is regulated and subjected to the needs of the economy; 3d, the mechanisms, here as elsewhere, chiefly of a muscular nature, by which the food is passed along the canal, and most efficiently brought in contact with successive juices; and 4th and lastly, the means by which the nutritious digested material is separated from the indigested or excremental material, and absorbed into the blood.

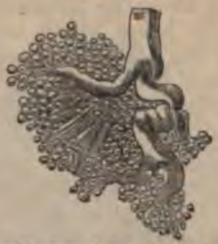
SEC. 1. THE PROPERTIES OF THE DIGESTIVE JUICES.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Salivary Glands.*

The saliva is a compound secretion, being the product of four distinct sets of glands. Three of these exist in pairs, and are termed respectively the *parotid*, *submaxillary*, and *sublingual*. The fourth set comprises the simple follicular glands, which are very numerous and found in the buccal mucous membrane.

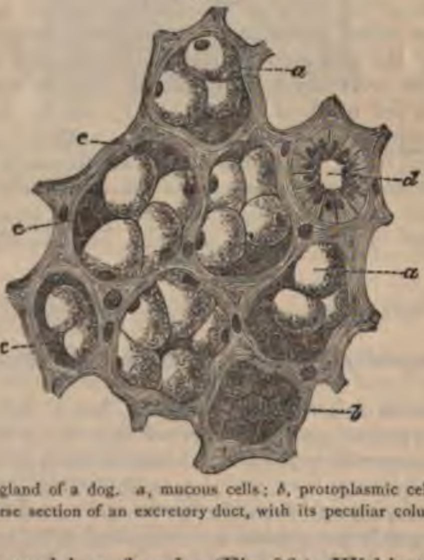
The larger salivary glands are composed of lobes, which are subdivided into lobules. The lobules are composed of smaller vesicular divisions, which are termed the *alveoli*. The clustered appearance of the alveoli, which compose the lobule, resembles somewhat the form of a bunch of grapes, hence they have been termed *racemose* glands. (Fig. 85.) The alveoli are composed of a delicate basement membrane, lined by spheroidal epithelium, which is the proper secretory portion of the organ. These cells contain non-granular protoplasm, with an eccentric nucleus. In some of the alveoli granular protoplasmic cells, with centric nuclei are found. (Fig. 86.) Within the alveolar vesicles containing the spheroidal cells there are frequently

FIG. 85.



Lobule of Parotid Gland of a Newborn Infant, injected with Mercury. (Magnified.)

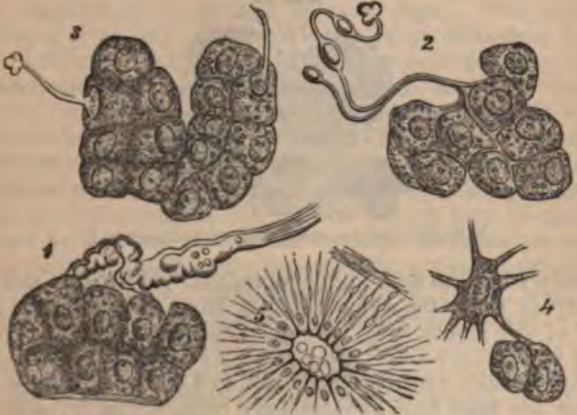
FIG. 86.



Submaxillary gland of a dog. *a*, mucous cells; *b*, protoplasmic cells; *c*, demilune cells; *d*, transverse section of an excretory duct, with its peculiar columnar epithelial cells.

found halfmoon-shaped cells which are called *demilune* cells. These are always found external to the spheroidal cells, and are supposed to be young spheroidal cells in rapid growth, which will replace the old cells when they have matured. The alveoli of a lobule empty their secretion by a common duct, which by uniting with the ducts from other lobules forms the common duct or ducts of the gland. These ducts are all lined by columnar epithelium. The sublingual gland has multiple ducts. The parotid and submaxillary glands each have a single duct.

FIG. 87.



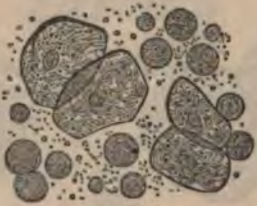
Modes of termination of the nerves in the salivary glands. 1 and 2, branching of the nerves between the salivary cells; 3, termination of the nerve in the nucleus; 4, union of a ganglion cell with a salivary cell; 5, varicose nerve fibres entering the cylindrical cell of the excretory ducts.

The alveoli are surrounded by dense plexuses of capillaries, in the meshes of which arise the lymphatics. The substance of the gland is closely bound together by a fibro-areolar tissue. The mode by which the nerves terminate in these glands is as yet undetermined. Pflüger believes that the medulla of the nerve penetrates the cells and unites with the nucleus (Fig. 87, 1 and 2); that others (4) (probably from the *sympathetic system*) terminate in multipolar ganglion cells, which send prolongations into the nuclei of the gland cell; other nerves (3) terminate in an expanded extremity, which he considers an intermediate organ; others (5) terminate in the columnar cells lining the ducts. Whether these supposed terminations of the nerves are the real ones or not is still a question involved in much doubt.]

Saliva.

Mixed saliva, as it appears in the mouth, is a thick, glairy, generally frothy and turbid fluid. Under the microscope it is seen to contain, beside the molecular debris of food (and frequently cryptogamic spores), epithelium scales, mucus-corpuscles and granules, and the so-called salivary corpuscles. (Fig. 88.) Its reaction in a healthy subject is alkaline, especially when the secretion is abundant. When the saliva is scanty, or when the subject suffers from dyspepsia, the reaction of the mouth may be acid. Saliva contains but little solid matter, on an average probably about 0.5 per cent., the specific gravity varying from 1.002 to 1.006. Of these solids, rather less than half, about 0.2 per cent., are salts (including a small quantity of potassium sulphocyanide).

[Fig. 88.



Salivary corpuscles, epithelial scales and granules.]

[Analysis of Human Saliva.

Water,		995.16
Epithelium,		1.62
Soluble organic matter,		1.34
Sodium, calcium, and magnesium phosphates,	0.98	
Potassium chloride, Sodium chloride,	0.84	
Potassium sulphocyanide,	0.06	
		1.88]

The organic bodies which can be recognized in it are chiefly mucin, with small quantities of globulin and serum-albumin.

The chief purpose served by the saliva in digestion is to moisten the food, and to assist in mastication and deglutition.

In some animals this is its only function. In other animals and in man it has a specific solvent action on some of the food-stuffs. Such minerals as are soluble in slightly alkaline fluids are dissolved by it. On fats it has no effect save that of producing a very feeble emulsion. On proteids it has also no action. Its characteristic property is that of converting starch into sugar (grape-sugar, glucose, dextrose).

Action of Saliva on Starch.—If to a quantity of thin boiled starch, which has been ascertained to be free from sugar, a small quantity of saliva be added, it will be found after a time that the whole of the starch has disappeared, having been replaced by a quantity of grape-sugar. The mixture no longer gives any blue color with iodine, but when boiled with Fehling's fluid (cupric sulphate dissolved in an excess of a concentrated solution of sodium or potassium hydrate),[1] gives a copious red or yellow [salmon color] deposit of cuprous oxide. [It also well to note, when adding the liquid to a solution suspected of containing sugar, to add only sufficient to give a distinct blue tinge; otherwise, if the quantity of sugar be very small, the color of the deposit may be entirely masked by the deep blue of the liquid.] If iodine be added to the mixture in the early stages of the action of the saliva, a red or violet color (more or less obscured by the blue) will be observed. This indicates the presence of *dextrin*, which, at a later stage, like the starch itself, disappears. In fact, the saliva either converts the starch into dextrin and then into sugar, or first splits the starch into dextrin and sugar, and then changes the dextrin into sugar. The essence of both changes is the assumption of a molecule of water. Thus starch, $C_6H_{10}O_5$, or more probably

$$C_{18}H_{30}O_{15} + 3H_2O = \overset{\text{(Grape-sugar.)}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \overset{\text{(Dextrin.)}}{2(C_6H_{10}O_5)} + 2H_2O = 3(C_6H_{12}O_6).$$

While boiled starch is thus converted into grape-sugar with considerable rapidity, raw, unboiled starch also suffers the same change, though more slowly. If a quantity of raw starch be suspended in water and saliva be added, the water will after a time be found to contain sugar. If the water be replaced from time to time, the starch will gradually disappear, until a remnant is left which gives no blue color with iodine, unless acid be previously added. The starch-corpuscle consists of *granulose* giving a blue color with iodine alone, and *cellulose* giving a blue color with iodine on the addition of sulphuric acid. The saliva acts on the granulose, converting it into sugar; it is unable to act on the cellulose. When starch is boiled the cellulose coats of the starch-corpuscle are ruptured and the saliva has ready access to the granulose. Hence the comparative rapidity of the action. In raw starch the saliva can only get at the granulose by traversing the coat of cellulose.

---

[1] [(1) Dissolve 8.66 grams. of pure crystallized cupric sulphate in 40 cc. of distilled water.

(2) Dissolve 43 grams. of pure crystallized potassic-sodic tartrate in 150–175 grams. of sodic hydrate, sp. gr. 1.12.

Then add together, and add sufficient distilled water to make one-fourth of a litre.

The solution spoils by keeping, and should be frequently made fresh.]

Brücke[1] distinguishes in the starch-corpuscle, besides granulose and cellulose, a third body which he calls *erythrogranulose*. This gives a red, not a blue color with iodine, not usually seen when iodine is added to starch, because erythrogranulose is much less abundant than ordinary granulose. Erythrogranulose is converted by saliva into grape-sugar, but not so readily as granulose. Brücke further regards dextrin resulting from the conversion of starch as a mixture of *erythrodextrin* giving a red color with iodine *achroodextrin* which is not colored by iodine. The former is readily converted by saliva and similar agents into grape-sugar, the latter with considerable difficulty, if at all; so that a fluid originally containing starch, after it has been acted upon by saliva until iodine gives no longer either a blue or red color, may still contain a considerable quantity of dextrin in the form of achroodextrin. When starch is acted upon by dilute acids, the conversion into dextrin is preceded by the appearance of *soluble starch*, *i. e.*, of starch which, like dextrin, forms a clear solution with water, but, unlike dextrin, gives a blue color with iodine.

There is, moreover, some doubt whether the sugar resulting from the action of the saliva on starch is all, or, indeed, even in part true grape-sugar or dextrose. According to Musculus and v. Mering,[2] the products are a small quantity of true grape-sugar, a large quantity (70 per cent.) of the kind of sugar known as maltose, and achroodextrin. Maltose, which, as its name implies, is produced by the action of diastase on starch, is a sugar with stronger rotary power, but with less reducing power than dextrose; it may be converted into dextrose by the action of dilute acids.[3] Other observers[4] also affirm that the sugar produced by the action of saliva is not true dextrose, though they do not admit that it is maltose. It is very probable that future researches may bring to light many varieties of sugar allied to dextrose, possibly having different physiological properties, as well as many varieties of dextrin. Since achroodextrin, which appears, according to all observers, to be one of the products of the action of saliva, itself resists the further action of the ferment, all the starch subjected to the action of the saliva does not pass into sugar.

---

[1] Vorlesungen, i, p. 221.

[2] Zt. f. Physiol. Chem., ii (1879), p. 403.

[3] See Appendix.

[4] Nasse, Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 473. Seegen, ibid, xix (1879), p. 106.

The conversion of starch into sugar, or the amylolytic action of saliva, will go on at the ordinary temperature of the atmosphere. The lower the temperature the slower the change, and at about 0° C. the conversion is indefinitely prolonged. After exposure to cold of even as much as some degrees below 0°, when the temperature is again raised the action recommences. Increase of temperature up to about 35°–40°, or even higher, favors the change. Beyond 60° or 70° increase of temperature is injurious, and saliva which has been boiled for a few minutes not only has no action on starch while at that temperature, but does not regain its powers on cooling. By being boiled, the amylolytic activity of saliva is permanently destroyed.

The action of saliva on starch is favored by a slightly alkaline medium. It will, however, still go on even in the presence of a small quantity of free acid. Increase of acidity, however, checks it. Thus, in a mixture containing .1 per cent. of free hydrochloric acid, the conversion of starch is arrested. After a short exposure to a dilute acid, saliva will regain its powers on neutralization. Its activity is, however, permanently destroyed by long exposure to weak, or by shorter exposure to strong, acids. Strong alkalies also destroy it.

The action of saliva is hampered by the concentrated presence of the product of its own action, that is, of sugar. If a small quantity of saliva be added to a thick mass of boiled starch, the action will after awhile slacken, and eventually come to almost a standstill long before all the starch has been converted. On diluting the mixture with water, the action will recommence. If the products of action be removed as soon as they are formed, a small quantity of saliva will, if sufficient time be allowed, convert into sugar a very large, one might almost say an indefinite, quantity of starch.

It is at present uncertain whether the constituent of the saliva, on which its activity depends, is at all consumed in its action. Paschutin[1] argues that it is; but other observers have come to a contrary conclusion.

On what constituent do the amylolytic virtues of saliva depend?

If saliva, filtered and thus freed from mucus and the formed constituents, be treated with ten or fifteen times its bulk of alcohol, a precipitate containing all the proteid matters takes place. Upon standing under the alcohol for some time (several days or, better, weeks), the proteids thus precipitated become coagulated and insoluble in water. Hence, an aqueous extract of the precipitate, made after this interval, contains little or no proteid material. Yet it is as active, or almost as active, as the original saliva (the solution being brought to the same bulk as the saliva). If the precipitate be treated with concentrated glycerin, very little passes into solution. Nevertheless, the glycerin diluted with water is found to be highly amylolytic. Now we cannot say that even this small quantity of matter which is thus soluble in glycerin is entirely composed of the really active constituents; it may be, and probably is, a mixture of this with other bodies. An amylolytic solution, free from proteid matter, may also be prepared by Brücke's method for isolating pepsin (see p. 312); but this also probably contains other bodies besides the really active constituent; whatever the active substance be in itself, it exists in such extremely small quantities that it has never yet been satisfactorily isolated; and, indeed, the only evidence we have of its existence is the manifestation of its peculiar powers.

---

[1] Centrbt. f. Med. Wissen., 1871.

The salient features of this body, which we may call *ptyalin*, are then 1st, its presence in minute and almost inappreciable quantity; 2d, the close dependence of its activity on temperature; 3d, its permanent and total destruction by a high temperature and by chemical reagents such as strong acids; 4th, the want of any clear proof that it itself undergoes any change during the manifestation of its powers; that is to say, the energy necessary for the transformation which it effects *does not come out of itself.* If it is at all used up in its action, the loss is rather that of simple wear and tear of a machine than that of a substance expended to do work; 5th, the action which it induces is of such a kind (splitting up of a molecule with assumption of water) as is effected by the agents called catalytic, and by that particular class of catalytic agents called hydrolytic.

These features mark out the amylolytic active body of saliva as belonging to the class of *ferments;*[1] and we may henceforward speak of the amylolytic ferment of saliva.

---

[1] Ferments may, for the present at least, be divided into two classes, commonly called *organized* and *unorganized.* Of the former, yeast may be taken as a well-known example. The fermentative activity of yeast which leads to the conversion of sugar into alcohol is dependent on the life of the yeast-cell. Unless the yeast-cell be living and functional, fermentation does not take place; when the yeast-cell

Mixed saliva, whose properties we have just discussed, is the result of the mingling in various proportions of saliva from the parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual glands with the secretion from the buccal glands.

Parotid saliva, as obtained by introducing a canula into the Stenonian duct, is clear and limpid, not viscid; the reaction of the first drops secreted is always acid, and according to some observers the succeeding portions are also faintly acid, except when the flow is very copious; other observers, however, find with even a moderate flow an alkaline reaction after the first drops.[1] On standing, it becomes turbid from a precipitate of calcic carbonate, due to an escape of carbonic acid. It contains globulin and some other forms of albumin, with little or no mucin. Potassium sulphocyanide is present, but structural elements are absent. In man, at least, it acts powerfully on starch.

Submaxillary saliva, as obtained by introducing a canula into the duct of Wharton, differs from parotid saliva in being more alkaline and, from the presence of mucus, more viscid; it contains, often in abundance, salivary corpuscles, and amorphous masses of proteid material. The so-called chorda saliva in the dog (see Sec. 2) is under ordinary circumstances thinner and less viscid, contains less mucus, and fewer structural elements, than the so-called sympathetic saliva, which is remarkable for its viscidity, its structural elements, and for its larger total of solids.

Sublingual saliva is more viscid, and contains more mucin and more total solids (in the dog 2.75 per cent.), than even the submaxillary saliva.

The action of saliva varies in intensity in different animals.

Thus in man, the pig, the guinea-pig, and the rat, both parotid and submaxillary and mixed saliva are amylolytic; the submaxillary saliva (or infusion of gland) being in most cases more active than the parotid.[2] In the rabbit the submaxillary saliva is said to have scarcely any action, while that of the parotid is energetic. In the dog parotid saliva is wholly inert on starch, submaxillary and mixed saliva have a slight effect only; the saliva of the cat is more active than that of the dog. In the horse, sheep, and ox the amylolytic powers of either mixed saliva, or of any one of the constituent juices, are extremely feeble.

Where the saliva of any gland is active, an aqueous infu-

---

dies fermentation ceases; and no substance obtained from yeast, by precipitation with alcohol or otherwise, will give rise to alcoholic fermentation. The salivary ferment belongs to the latter class; it is a substance, not a living organism like yeast.

[1] Astaschewsky, Cbt. Med. Wiss., 1878, p. 257.

[2] Grützner, Pflüger's Archiv, xvi, 1877, p. 105.

sion of the same gland is also active. The importance and bearing of this statement will be seen later on. From the aqueous infusion of the gland, as from saliva itself, the ferment may be approximately isolated.

In some cases at least a ferment may be extracted from the gland even when the secretion is itself inactive.

The readiest method indeed of preparing from the gland a highly amylolytic liquid as free as possible from proteid and other impurities, is to mince the gland finely, dehydrate it by allowing it to stand under absolute alcohol for some days, and then, having poured off most of the alcohol, and removed the remainder by evaporation at a low temperature, to cover the pieces of gland with strong glycerin. A mere drop of such a glycerin extract rapidly converts starch into grape-sugar.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Mucous Membrane of the Stomach.*

The mucous membrane of the stomach is soft and velvety, and of a pale grayish color. It is lined throughout with columnar epithelium. When the stomach is empty, the muscular walls contract and cause the mucous membrane to form numerous longitudinal folds, which are termed rugæ. If the surface be examined with the aid of a lens, numerous vascular ridges or processes will be seen, at the bases of which are numbers of minute openings, which are the orifices of the *gastric follicles* or *glands* (Fig. 89). If a vertical section be made of the membrane (Fig. 90), it will be seen to consist of tubuli closely arranged side by side, and resting upon a submucous fibrous tissue which contains a layer of unstriated muscular fibres, called the *muscularis mucosæ*. These muscular fibres are entirely distinct from the muscles forming the stomachal walls. The tubuli or gastric glands form the greater portion of the thickness of the mucous membrane, and according to Sappey, number about five millions. They are bound together by an adenoid tissue and surrounded by plexuses of capillaries. The nerves are derived from the pneumogastric and sympathetic.

The gastric glands consist of two principal kinds: the *acid* and *peptic*. The acid glands (Figs. 91 and 92) are distributed over nearly the whole area of the mucous membrane; but near the pylorus are absent. They consist of a trunk with its branching divisions and terminal canals, or cæca. The trunk at the superficial extremity has an open orifice on the surface of the membrane, at the other extremity it terminates in two or more branching divisions; these divisions are again subdivided into small canals, which are the cæca. The canals are lined by a wall of small epithelium cells. Surrounding this wall is a compact layer of larger spheroidal or ovoidal nucleated granular protoplasmic cells. These glands are probably the ones which especially secrete the acid of the gastric juice.

FIG. 89.

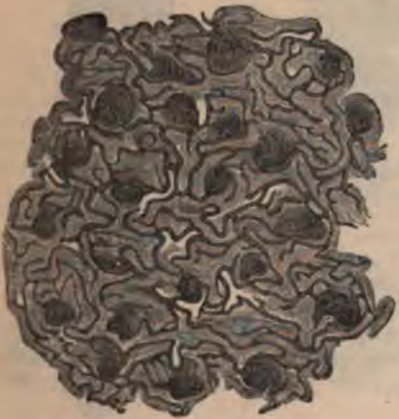


FIG. 90.

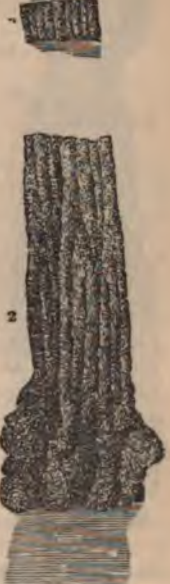


FIG. 89.—Capillary Network of the Lining Membrane of the Stomach, with the Orifices of the Gastric Follicles.

FIG. 90.—Vertical Section of the Mucous Membrane of the Stomach, near the Pylorus; magnified 20 times.

The trunk and its primary divisions are lined with columnar epithelium.

The peptic glands are found in greatest number about the region of the cardia and pylorus. Their principal structural difference from the acid glands is in the cæcal appendages and in the epithelial lining. (Fig. 93.) The cæcal appendages are very short as compared with those of the acid glands, and the glands are lined throughout with columnar epithelium. The function of the peptic glands and probably of the columnar epithelium of the acid glands is to secrete pepsin.

FIG. 91.

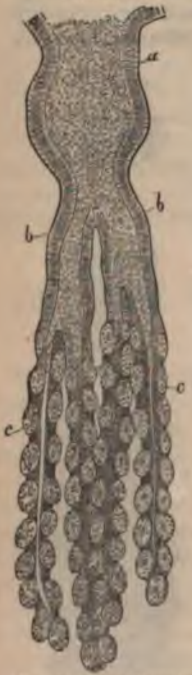


FIG. 92.

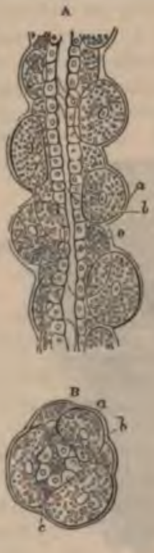


FIG. 93.

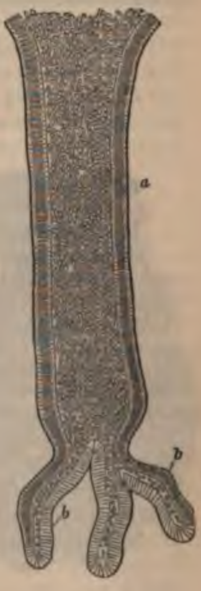


FIG. 91.—Acid Gastric Gland. *a*, common trunk; *b*, *b*, its chief branches; *c*, *c*, terminal cæca with spheroidal or "peptic" gland-cells.

FIG. 92.—Portions of one of the Cæca more highly magnified, as seen longitudinally (A), and in transverse section (B). *a*, basement membrane; *b*, large glandular or peptic cell; *c*, small "central" epithelium cells surrounding the cavity.

FIG. 93.—Peptic Gastric Gland, with Columnar Epithelium. *a*, wide trunk; *b*, *b*, its cæcal appendages.

Within the membrane are found a variable number of small *lenticular glands*. These are closed sacs, and are similar in structure to the solitary glands of the small intestines. They are probably accessories of the lymphatic system.]

Gastric Juice.

Gastric juice, obtained by artificial stimulation from the healthy stomach of a fasting dog, by means of a gastric fistula, is a thin almost colorless fluid with a sour taste and odor.

[Analysis of Gastric Juice (Bidder and Schmidt).

Water, ...		973.062
Ferment (pepsin), ...	17.127	
Free hydrochloric acid (?), . . .	3.050	
Potassium, sodium, calcium, and ammonium chlorides, ...	4.724	
Calcium, iron, and magnesium phosphates, ...	2.037	
		26.938]

In the operation for gastric fistula, an incision is made through the abdominal walls, along the *linea alba*, the stomach is opened, and the lips of the gastric wound securely sewn to those of the incision in the abdominal walls. Union soon takes place, so that a permanent opening from the exterior into the inside of the stomach is established. A tube of proper construction, introduced at the time of the operation, becomes firmly secured in place by the contraction of healing. Through the tube the contents of the stomach can be received, and the mucous membrane stimulated at pleasure.

When obtained from a natural fistula in man, its specific gravity has been found to differ little from that of water, varying from 1.001 to 1.010, and the amount of solids present to be very small, viz., about 0.56 per cent.

In the dog, Bidder and Schmidt[1] found the amount of solids to be as much as 2.7 per cent., and in the sheep 1.9; from this it might be inferred that the estimate given above for man represents not a thoroughly healthy but a diluted juice. But Heidenhain[2] finds in the dog, that the secretion of the isolated fundus of the stomach does not contain more than 0.45 per cent. of solids, and the higher figures of Bidder and Schmidt are probably due to an admixture with remnants of digested food and secretions of the œsophagus and mouth.

Of these about half, 0.24 per cent., are inorganic salts, chiefly alkaline (sodium) chlorides, with small quantities of phosphates. The organic material consists of pepsin, a body to be described immediately, mixed with other substances of undetermined nature. In a healthy stomach gastric juice contains a very small quantity only of mucus, unless some submaxillary saliva has been swallowed.

---

[1] Bidder u. Schmidt, Die Verdauungssäfte, p. 73.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xix, 1879, p. 148.

The reaction is distinctly acid, and the acidity is normally due to free hydrochloric acid. This is proved by the fact that the amount of hydrochloric acid is more than can be neutralized by the bases, and the excess corresponds to the quantity of free acid present.[1] Lactic and butyric, and other acids when present, are secondary products, arising either by their respective fermentations from articles of food, or from decomposition of their alkaline or other salts. In man the amount of free hydrochloric acid in healthy juice is probably about 0.2 per cent.[2]

The amount of free acid actually found by Bidder and Schmidt in the juice whose specific gravity is given above was only 0.02 per cent., but this is undoubtedly below the normal of health, and, indeed, in the dog, Bidder and Schmidt[3] found free acid to the extent of 0.3 per cent., and in the sheep 0.123 per cent., while Heidenhain[4] obtained by his method a percentage in the dog as high as 0.5.

According to Richet,[5] the acid does not behave exactly as does absolutely free hydrochloric acid; he infers that it exists in combination with some substance which does not destroy its free acidity. The same observer states that lactic acid makes its appearance in gastric juice on keeping, even when unmixed with food.

On starch gastric juice has, *per se*, no effect whatever; indeed, the acidity of the juice tends to weaken, and may possibly be sufficient to arrest the amylolytic action of any saliva with which it may be mixed.

On grape-sugar and cane-sugar healthy gastric juice has no effect.

When the stomach contains mucus, gastric juice has the power of converting cane-sugar into grape-sugar. This power seems to be due to the presence in the mucus of a special ferment, analogous to, but quite distinct from, the ptyalin of saliva. An excessive quantity of cane-sugar introduced into the stomach causes a secretion of mucus, and hence provides for its own conversion.[6]

---

[1] Bidder u. Schmidt, op. cit. Richet, Journ. de l'Anat. et de la Physiol., xiv (1878), p. 170. Szabó, Zt. f. Physiol. Chem., i (1877), p. 140. Reoch, Journ. of Anat. and Physiol., viii (1874), p. 274.

[2] Richet, op. cit. Szabó, op. cit.

[3] Op. cit. [4] Op. cit. [5] Op. cit.

[6] Hoppe-Seyler, Virchow's Archiv, x (1856), p. 144.

On fats gastric juice is powerless. They undergo by reason of it no change whatever in themselves. When adipose tissue is eaten, all that happens in the stomach is that the proteid and gelatiniferous envelopes of the fat-cells are dissolved and the fats set free; the fat itself undergoes no change except the very slightest emulsion.

Such minerals as are soluble in free hydrochloric acid are for the most part dissolved; though there is a difference in this respect between gastric juice and simple free hydrochloric acid diluted with water to the same degree of acidity as the juice.

The essential property of gastric juice is the power of dissolving proteid matters, and of converting them into a substance called peptone.

Action of Gastric Juice on Proteids.—The results are essentially the same whether natural juice obtained by means of a fistula or artificial juice, *i. e.*, an acid infusion of the mucous membrane of the stomach be used.

Artificial gastric juice may be prepared in any of the following ways:

1. By scraping the surface of a (pig's or dog's) stomach, rubbing up the scrapings with pounded glass and water in a mortar, filtering, and adding hydrochloric acid, till the filtrate, which is in itself somewhat acid, has a free acidity corresponding to 0.2 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. The juice thus prepared contains but little peptone, but is not very potent.

2. By removing the mucous membrane from the muscular coat, mincing the former finely, and allowing it to digest at 35° C. in a large quantity of hydrochloric acid diluted to 0.2 per cent. The greater part of the membrane disappears, shreds only being left, and the somewhat opalescent liquid can be decanted and filtered. The filtrate has powerful digestive (peptic) properties, but contains a considerable amount of the products of digestion (peptone, etc.), arising from the digestion of the mucous membrane itself.[1]

3. From the mucous membrane, similarly prepared and minced, the superfluous moisture is removed with blotting-paper, and the pieces are thrown into a comparatively large quantity of concentrated glycerin, and allowed to stand. The membrane may be previously dehydrated by being allowed to stand under alcohol, but this is not necessary. The decanted clear glycerin, in which scarcely

---

[1] These, however, may be removed by concentration at 40° C., and subsequent dialysis.

any of the ordinary proteids of the mucous membrane are dissolved, if added to hydrochloric acid of 0.2 per cent. (a few drops of glycerin to 100 cc. of the dilute acid are sufficient), makes an artificial juice free from ordinary proteids and peptone, and of remarkable potency, the presence of the glycerin not interfering with the results.

If a few shreds of fibrin, obtained by whipping blood, after being thoroughly washed and boiled, be thrown into a quantity of gastric juice, and the mixture exposed to a temperature of from 35° to 40° C., the fibrin will speedily, in some cases in a few minutes, be dissolved. The shreds first swell up and become transparent, then fall to pieces into flakes, especially when the vessel containing them is shaken, and finally disappear with the exception of a little granular debris, the amount of which varies according to circumstances.

If small morsels of coagulated albumin, such as white of egg, be treated in the same way, the same solution is observed. The pieces become transparent at their surfaces; this is especially seen at the edges, which gradually become rounded down; and solution steadily progresses from the outside of the pieces inwards.

If any other form of coagulated albumin (*e. g.*, precipitated acid or alkali albumin, suspended in water and boiled) be treated in the same way, a similar solution takes place. The readiness with which the solution is effected will depend, *cœteris paribus*, on the smallness of the pieces, or rather on the amount of surface as compared with bulk, which is presented to the action of the juice.

Gastric juice then readily dissolves coagulated proteids, which otherwise are insoluble, or soluble only, and that with difficulty, in very strong acids.

Nature of the Change as shown by the Products of the Action.—If raw white of egg, largely diluted with water and strained, be treated with a sufficient quantity of dilute hydrochloric acid, the opalescence or turbidity which appeared in the white of egg on dilution, and which is due to the precipitation of various forms of globulin, disappears, and a clear mixture results. If a portion of the mixture be at once boiled, a large deposit of coagulated albumin occurs. If, however, the mixture be exposed to 35° or 40° C. for some time, the amount of coagulation which is produced by boiling a specimen becomes less, and, finally, boiling produces no coagulation whatever. By neutralization, however, the whole of the albumin (with such restrictions as the presence of certain neutral salts may cause) may be obtained in the form of acid-albumin or syntonin, the filtrate after neutralization containing no proteids at all (or a very small quantity). Thus the whole of the albumin present in the white of egg is converted, by the simple action of dilute hydrochloric acid, into acid-albumin or syntonin.

If the same white of egg be treated with gastric juice instead of simple dilute hydrochloric acid, the events for some time seem the same. Thus after awhile boiling causes no coagulation, while neutralization gives a considerable precipitate of a proteid body, which, being insoluble in water and in dilute sodium chloride solutions, and soluble in dilute alkali and acids, at least closely resembles syntonin. But it is found that only a portion of the proteids originally present in the white of egg can thus be regained by precipitation. A great deal is still retained in the filtrate after neutralization, in the form of what is called *peptone*, and, on the whole, the longer the digestion is carried on the greater is the proportion borne by the peptone to the precipitate thrown down on neutralization; indeed, in some cases at all events, all the proteids are brought into the condition of peptone.

Peptone is a proteid, having the same approximate elementary composition as other proteids, and giving most of the usual proteid reactions.

It is distinguished from other proteids by the following marked features:

1st. It is not precipitated by potassium ferrocyanide and acetic acid, as are all other proteids.

2d. Though soluble in distilled water and in neutral saline solutions, even the most dilute, and therefore not precipitated from its acid or alkaline solutions by neutralization, it is not, like the other similarly soluble proteids, coagulated by heat.

3d. It is highly diffusible, passing through membranes with the greatest ease. (For the other less important reactions, see Appendix.)

The neutralization precipitate resembles, in its general characters, acid albumin or syntonin. Since, however, it probably is distinguishable from the body or bodies produced by the action of simple acid on muscle or white of egg, it is best to reserve for it the name of *parapeptone*. Thus the digestion by gastric juice of white of egg results in the conversion of all the proteids present into peptone and parapeptone, of which the former must be considered as the final and chief product, the latter a by-product or initial product of variable occurrence and importance. The gastric digestion of fibrin, either raw or boiled, and of all forms of coagulated albumin, gives rise to the same products, peptone and parapeptone. Milk when treated with gastric juice is first of all coagulated or curdled. This is the result partly of the action of the free acid and partly of the special action of a particular constituent of gastric juice, of which we shall speak hereafter. The coagulated milk is subsequently dissolved with the same appearance of peptone and parapeptone as in the case of other proteids. In fact, the digestion by gastric juice of all the varieties of proteids consists in the conversion of the proteid into peptone, with the concomitant appearance of a certain variable amount of parapeptone.

When raw unboiled fibrin is treated with gastric juice, the digesting mixture is found, when examined immediately after the solution of the fibrin, to contain, in addition to peptone and parapeptone, soluble albumin coagulable by heat. No such soluble albumin is formed during the digestion of boiled fibrin or of any form of coagulated albumin.

Circumstances affecting Gastric Digestion.—In order to come to a satisfactory conclusion on this matter it is desirable to use the same proteid in all the experiments; and of all proteids fibrin is most convenient. It should be boiled rather than raw, because the latter is, for reasons of which we shall speak presently, soluble to a certain extent in dilute acids alone. Since, as will be seen, a given amount of gastric juice may, by proper management, be made to digest an almost indefinite quantity of fibrin if sufficient time be allowed, we are obliged to take, as a measure of the activity of a specimen of gastric juice, the rapidity with which it dissolves a given quantity of fibrin.

The greater the surface presented to the action of the juice the more rapid the solution. Hence minute division and constant movement favor digestion. Neutralization of the juice wholly arrests digestion. Fibrin may be submitted for an almost indefinite time to the action of neutralized gastric juice without being digested. If the neutralized juice be again properly acidified it becomes quite as active as before. Digestion is most rapid with dilute hydrochloric acid of 0.2 per cent. (the acidity of natural gastric juice). If the juice contains much more or much less free acid than this its activity is visibly impaired. Other acids, lactic, phosphoric, etc., may be substituted for hydrochloric; but they are not so effectual, and the degree of acidity most useful varies with the different acids. The presence of neutral salts, especially sodium chloride, in excess is injurious.[1] The presence in a concentrated form of the products of digestion hinders the process. If a large quantity of fibrin be placed in a small quantity of juice digestion is soon arrested; on dilution with the normal hydrochloric acid (0.2 per cent.), or if the mixture be submitted to dialysis, and its acidity be kept up to the normal, the action recommences. Digestion is most rapid at about 35°–40° C.; at the ordinary temperature it is much slower, and at about 0° C. ceases altogether. Gastric juice may be kept, however, at 0° C. for an indefinite period without injury to its powers.

The gastric juice of cold-blooded vertebrates is relatively more active at low temperatures than that of warm-blooded mammals or birds; whether this is due to a different nature of the gastric juice, or to attendant circumstances, is uncertain.[2] The digestive fluids in the stomachs or intestines of invertebrata frequently contain a ferment wholly similar to pepsin, but mixed with another proteolytic ferment resembling that of the pancreas.[3]

At temperatures much above 40° or 45° the action of the juice is impaired. By boiling for a few minutes the activity of the most powerful juice is irrevocably destroyed. By removing the products of digestion as fast as they are formed, and by keeping up the acidity to the normal, a given amount of gastric juice may be made to digest an almost unlimited quantity of proteid. This shows that the energies of the juice are not exhausted by the act of digestion.

It has been debated whether this statement is absolutely true. Ransome,[4] however, thinks that the powers of the juice are even increased by action.

Nature of the Action.—All these facts go to show that the digestive action of gastric juice on proteids, like that of saliva on starch, is a ferment action; in other words, that the solvent action of gastric juice is essentially due to the presence in it of a ferment body. To this ferment body, which as yet has been only approximately isolated, the name of *pepsin* has been given. The glycerin extract of mucous membrane, especially of that which has been dehydrated, contains a minimal quantity of proteid matter, and yet is intensely active. The elaborate method of Brücke gives us a residue which possesses none of the ordinary proteid reactions, and yet in concert with normal dilute hydrochloric acid is peptic in the highest degree. We may, therefore, safely assert that pepsin is not a proteid. Brücke's residue contained nitrogen, but it would be hazardous to assert that that residue was nothing but pepsin. At present the manifestation of peptic powers is our only test of the presence of pepsin.

---

[1] A. Schmidt, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 93.

[2] Fick, Arbeiten Physiol. Lab. Würz., ii (1873), p. 181.

[3] Krukenberg, Unt. Phys. Inst. Heidelberg, i (1877), p. 327, ii (1877), p. 1, p. 261; also Hoppe-Seyler, Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 395.

[4] Journ. Anat. Phys. (1876), vol. x.

Brücke's[1] method is as follows: Gastric mucous membrane is digested with dilute phosphoric, instead of hydrochloric, acid. To the filtered digest clear lime-water is added, until a violet reaction with litmus is gained. The bulky precipitate of calcium phosphate carries down with it mechanically the greater part of the pepsin; the supernatant fluid when reacidified has very little peptic power. The precipitate is collected, pressed, suspended in water, and redissolved carefully, with a minimal quantity of dilute hydrochloric acid, and reprecipitated with lime-water; much of the peptone which went down with the first precipitate is thus left behind, while the pepsin still clings to the calcic salt. The precipitate is again dissolved in dilute hydrochloric acid, placed in a flask, and a solution of cholesterin in 4 parts alcohol to 1 ether is poured in slowly through a long funnel reaching to the bottom of the flask. The cholesterin rises as a bulky mass to the top of the liquid, carrying the pepsin with it. After several shakings the cholesterin is collected, washed with water acidulated with acetic acid, and then with pure water. While still moist it is transferred to a vessel and shaken with alcohol-free ether, which, dissolving the cholesterin and floating on the top, leaves a watery stratum below. This must be repeated until all the cholesterin is dissolved. The ether is removed, and the watery residue is filtered. The filtrate, though it does not give the ordinary reactions of proteids, is, when acidulated, most strongly peptic. By dialysis it may be still further purified (for pepsin will not pass through ordinary dialysis paper); but even the dialyzed fluid gives a precipitate with basic and neutral lead acetate.

In one important respect pepsin, the ferment of gastric juice, differs from ptyalin, the ferment of saliva. Though saliva is most active in a faintly alkaline medium, there seems to be no special connection between the ferment and any alkali. In gastric juice, however, there is a strong tie between the acid and the ferment, so strong that some writers speak of pepsin and hydrochloric acid as forming together a compound, pepto-hydrochloric acid.

---

[1] Moleschott's Untersuch., vi (1859), p. 479.

In the absence of exact knowledge of the constitution of proteids, we cannot state distinctly what is the precise nature of the change into peptone. Judging from the analogy with the action of saliva on starch, we may fairly suppose that the process is at bottom one of hydration; but we have no exact proof that it is, and it is at least quite as probable that peptone arises by a simple splitting up of larger proteid molecules. Peptone closely resembling, if not identical with, that obtained by gastric digestion, may be obtained by the action of strong acids, by the prolonged action of dilute acids especially at high temperature, or simply by digestion with superheated water in a Papin's digester. The *rôle* of pepsin, therefore, is only to facilitate a change which may be effected without it. Since, in the act of digestion, the pepsin itself is not exhausted, it is clear that the energy which is spent in the conversion of the proteid into peptone does not come from the ferment.

We have seen that a particular acid and a particular dilution are most favorable to digestion. We may add that the natural action of the acid is modified by the presence of the pepsin. It is not that in digestion the acid converts the proteid into acid-albumin, which, in turn, is converted by the pepsin into peptone. Ordinary albumin is less readily converted into neutralization products when pepsin is present than when pepsin is absent, and, as we shall see, the neutralization products probably differ also in nature in the two cases. When bones are treated with simple hydrochloric acid, the earthy salts are dissolved out, and the animal basis left; when bones are treated with gastric juice, the animal basis is acted on more speedily than the earthy salts.[1] The nature of the peptic digestion will however be more fully discussed under pancreatic digestion.

All proteids, as far as we know, are converted by pepsin into peptone. Of its action on other nitrogenous substances not truly proteid in nature, we need only say that mucin, nuclein, and the chemical basis of horny tissues are wholly unaffected by it, but that the gelatiniferous tissues are dissolved and changed into a substance so far analogous with peptone that the characteristic property of gelatinization is entirely lost.

Chondrin and the elastic tissues are also dissolved.[2]

Milk is peculiarly affected by gastric juice, whether natural or artificial. It is curdled, that is to say, its casein is precipitated. The change will go on at the ordinary temperature, but is favored by that of 35°–40°. This property of gastric juice (which has long been known in domestic life, the *rennet* used for the purpose of curdling milk in the manufacture of cheese, or for other purposes, being an infusion of calves' stomach) does not depend on the acidity of the juice, *i. e.*, the casein is not directly precipitated by the free acid of the juice; for neutralized gastric juice is efficacious. Since the property is lost when the neutralized juice is boiled, and the effects are so closely dependent on temperature, it seems probable—and the conclusion is supported by other facts—that the effect is produced by the action of a special ferment.

---

[1] Kühne, Lehrb., p. 40.

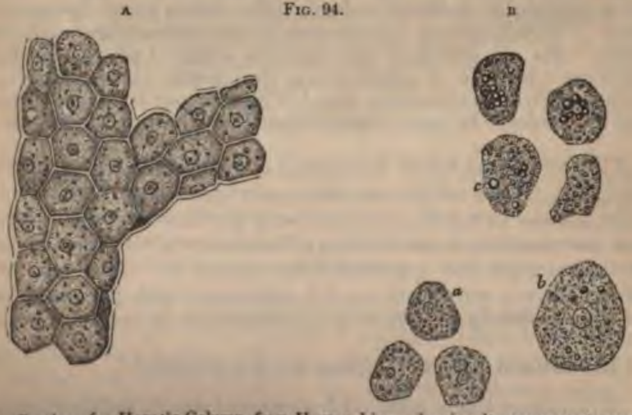
[2] Etzinger, Zt. f. Biolog., x (1874), 84.

This ferment is not identical with pepsin, and Hammarsten[1] has succeeded in separating the two. According to him the presence of milk-sugar is not necessary to the change, and the ferment itself does not give rise to a lactic acid fermentation. He therefore does not regard the curdling as the mere precipitation of casein caused by the development of lactic acid. He believes the process to be a species of coagulation, in which an insoluble casein arises from the splitting up, under the influence of the ferment, of a previously soluble body.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Liver.*

The liver is the largest gland in the body. It is very vascular, receiving not only the arterial blood from the hepatic

FIG. 94.



A. Portion of a Hepatic Column, from Human Liver, showing its component secreting cells. B. Secreting cells detached. *a*, in their normal state; *b*, a cell more highly magnified, showing the nucleus and distinct oil-particles; *c*, in various stages of fatty

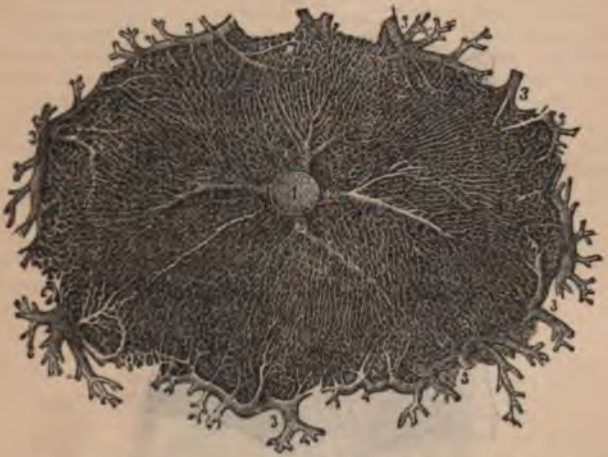
---

nings Förhandlingar, Bd. viii (1872), p. 63.

artery for its own nutrition but also the blood of the portal vein, which contains the great portion of the products of digestion. The blood is conveyed from the liver by the hepatic veins which empty into the inferior vena cava. The bile, which is the principal secretion of the organ, is conducted from the liver through two ducts which unite to form the hepatic duct.

The liver is covered with a delicate areolar tissue which sends processes or trabeculæ into its substance between the lobules. A prolongation of this areolar tissue accompanies the vessels as a sheath into the organ, and is called Glisson's capsule. The liver is partially covered with peritoneum, which by its reduplications forms the hepatic ligaments which suspend the viscus in the abdominal cavity.

FIG. 95.



Cross-section of a Lobule of the Human Liver, in which the capillary network between the Portal and Hepatic Veins has been fully injected (from Sappey) $\frac{60}{1}$. 1, section of the *intra*-lobular vein; 2, its smaller branches collecting blood from the capillary network; 3, *inter*-lobular branches of the vena portæ with their smaller ramifications passing inwards towards the capillary network in the substance of the lobule.—After KIRKE.

The substance of the liver is composed of lobules having a polygonal outline. These lobules are made up of irregular polyhedral rounded cells, which are granular and nucleated, sometimes containing two or more nuclei. (Fig. 94.) The from the sympathetic, the pneumogastric (the left especially), and the right phrenic.

On the inferior surface of the liver is an accessory organ, called the gall-bladder, which, during the intervals of digestion, serves as a receptacle for the bile. The mechanism by which the bile is carried into the gall-bladder is somewhat obscure. The bile is conveyed from the liver through the hepatic duct, which, uniting with the cystic duct of the gall-bladder, forms the *ductus communis choledochus*, which conveys the bile during digestion to the duodenum. The mechanism by which the bile gets into the gall-bladder is probably due to both a tonic condition of sphincteric muscular fibres surrounding the outlet of the *ductus communis choledochus*, and a reversed paristalsis of the muscular fibres in the wall of the duct.

FIG. 98.

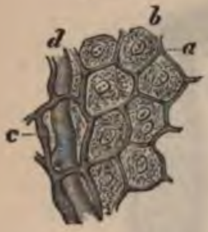


FIG. 99.

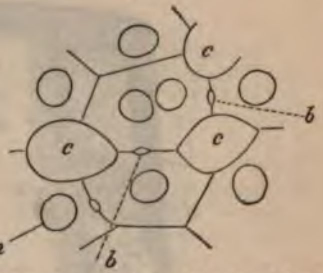


FIG. 98.—Injected Biliary Capillaries of the Liver of the Rabbit. Part of a lobule showing the arrangement of the biliary ducts in relation to the hepatic cells. *a*, capillaries of the biliary ducts; *b*, hepatic cells; *c*, biliary ducts; *d*, capillary bloodvessels.

FIG. 99.—Section of Rabbit's Liver Injected. *c*, blood capillaries; *b*, bile passages; *n*, nucleus of hepatic cell.

The function of the liver is both secretive and excretive. Its principal secretions are the bile and a peculiar amyloid substance called glycogen. Its principal excretion is an alcohol termed cholesterin. It is supposed by Prof. A. Flint, Jr., that this substance is converted in the intestine into a new substance which he calls stercorin.]

Bile.

The quality of bile varies much, not only in different animals, but in the same animal at different times. It is moreover affected by the length of the sojourn in the gall-bladder;

bile taken direct from the hepatic duct, especially when secreted rapidly, contains little or no mucus; that taken from the gall-bladder, as of slaughtered oxen or sheep, is loaded with mucus. The color of the bile of carnivorous and omnivorous animals, and of man, is a bright golden-red; of graminivorous animals, a golden-green, or a bright green, or a dirty green, according to circumstances, being much modified by retention in the gall-bladder. The reaction is alkaline. The following may be taken as the average composition of human bile (Frerichs).

		In 1000 parts.
Water,		859.2
Solids:		
Bile Salts,	91.4	
Fats, etc.,	9.2	
Cholesterin,	2.6	
Mucus and pigment,	29.8	
Inorganic salts,	7.8	
	——	140.8

The entire absence of proteids is a marked feature of bile. With regard to the inorganic salts, the points of interest are the presence of a large quantity of sodium chloride (0.2 to 0.27 per cent.), the presence of phosphates, of iron (about 0.006 per cent. Fe), manganese, and occasionally, at all events, of copper. The ash contains soda in a very large amount, and also sulphates, both coming from the bile-salts. The constituents which deserve chief attention are the pigments and the bile-salts.

Pigments of Bile.—The natural golden-red color of normal human or carnivorous bile is due to the presence of *Bilirubin*. This, which is also the chief pigmentary constituent of gall-stones, and occurs largely in the urine of jaundice, may be obtained in the form either of an orange-colored powder, or of well-formed rhombic tablets and prisms. Insoluble in water, and but little soluble in ether and alcohol, it is readily soluble in chloroform and in alkaline fluids. Its composition is $C_{16}H_{18}N_2O_3$. Treated with oxidizing agents, such as nitric acid yellow with nitrous acid, it displays a succession of colors in the order of the spectrum. The yellowish golden-red becomes a green, this a greenish-blue, then blue, next violet, afterwards a dirty red, and finally a pale yellow. This characteristic reaction of bilirubin is the basis of the so-called Gmelin's test for bile-pigments. Each of these stages represents a distinct pigmentary substance. An alkaline solution of bilirubin, exposed in a shallow vessel to the action of the air, turns green, becoming converted into *Biliverdin* ($C_{16}H_{20}N_2O_5$ or $C_{16}H_8N_2O_4$ Maly), the green pigment of the herbivorous bile. Biliverdin is also found in the edges of the placenta of the bitch, and at times in the urine of jaundice, and is probably the body which gives to bile which has been exposed to the action of gastric juice, as in biliary vomits, its characteristic green hue. It is the first stage of the oxidation of bilirubin in Gmelin's test. Treated with oxidizing agents biliverdin runs through the same series of colors as bilirubin, with the exception of the initial golden-red.

We have already discussed (p. 58), the relation of bilirubin to hæmatoidin. Other pigments, *bilifuscin*, *biliprasin*, have been found in small quantities in gallstones.

Fresh normal bile, either of man, the cow, the pig, or dog, exhibits no absorption bands, though these make their appearance in the alcoholic extracts, and when the bile has become altered.

When bilirubin has been oxidized down to the last (yellowish) stage in Gmelin's test, the liquid is found to contain a body with characteristic absorption-bands. To this the name of *choletelin*[1] has been given. Bilirubin treated, on the other hand, with reducing agents (sodium amalgam) is converted into a body called *urobilin* (hydrobilirubin), also with characteristic spectrum appearances.[2]

The Bile-salts.—These consist, in man and many animals, of *sodium glycocholate* and *taurocholate*, the proportion of the two varying in different animals. In man both the total quantity of bile-salts and the proportion of the one bile-salt to the other seem to vary a good deal, but the glycocholate is always the more abundant.[3] In ox-gall, sodium glycocholate is abundant and taurocholate scanty. The bile-salts of the dog, cat, bear, and other carnivora consist exclusively of the latter, the former being entirely absent.

In the bile of the pig two peculiar acids are present, in union with sodium, viz., glycohyocholic and taurohyocholic, differing, however, but slightly from the above. Similarly, the bile of the goose contains taurochenocholic acid.

Insoluble in ether but soluble in alcohol and in water, the aqueous solutions having a decided alkaline reaction, both salts may be obtained by crystallization in fine acicular needles.

---

[1] Maly, Wien. Sitzungsberichte, Bd. 50 (1869).

[2] See p. 58.

[3] Cf. Jacobsen, Ber. d. deutsch. Chem. Gesell. vi, p. [illegible] 1026. Trifanowski, Pflüger's Archiv, ix (1874). p. 492. Socoloff, i[illegible] xii (1875), p. 54. Hoppe-Seyler, Lehrb. (1878), p. 301.

They are exceedingly deliquescent. The solutions of both acids have a dextro-rotary action on polarized light.

Preparation.—Bile, mixed with animal charcoal, is evaporated to dryness and extracted with alcohol. If not colorless, the alcoholic filtrate must be further decolorized with animal charcoal and the alcohol distilled off. The dry residue is treated with absolute alcohol, and to the alcoholic filtrate anhydrous ether is added as long as any precipitate is formed. On standing, the cloudy precipitate becomes transformed into a crystalline mass at the bottom of the vessel. If the alcohol be not absolute, the crystals are very apt to be changed into a thick syrupy fluid. This mass of crystals has been often spoken of as *bilin*. Both salts are thus precipitated, so that in such a bile as that of the ox or man bilin consists both of sodium glycocholate and sodium taurocholate. The two may be separated by precipitation from their aqueous solutions with sugar of lead, which throws down the former much more readily than the latter. [Both of these salts are precipitated by lead subacetate. The acetate has no effect on the taurocholate, but precipitates the glycocholate. If, therefore, the glycocholate be precipitated first with lead acetate, the taurocholate can be obtained from the filtered liquid by means of the lead subacetate.] The acids may be separated from their respective salts by dilute sulphuric acid, or by the action of lead acetate and sulphydric acid.

On boiling with dilute acids (sulphuric hydrochloric), or caustic potash, or baryta-water, glycocholic acid is split up into cholalic (cholic) acid and glycin. Taurocholic acid may similarly be split up into cholalic acid and taurin. Thus:

$$\overset{\text{(Glycocholic acid.)}}{C_{26}H_{43}NO_6}+H_2O=\overset{\text{(Cholalic acid.)}}{C_{24}H_{40}O_5}+\overset{\text{(Glycin.)}}{C_2H_5NO_2}$$

$$\overset{\text{(Taurocholic acid.)}}{C_{26}H_{45}NSO_7}+H_2O=\overset{\text{(Cholalic acid.)}}{C_{24}H_{40}O_5}+\overset{\text{(Taurin.)}}{C_2H_7NSO_3}.$$

Both acids contain the same nitrogenless acid, cholalic acid; but this acid is in the first case associated or conjugated with the important nitrogenous body glycin, or amidoacetic acid, and in the second case with taurin, or amidoisethionic (amido-ethyl-sulphuric) acid. The decomposition of the bile acids into cholalic acid and taurin or glycin respectively takes place naturally in the intestine;[1] so that from the two acids, after they have served their purpose in digestion, the two ammonia compounds are returned into the blood. Either of the two acids, or cholalic acid alone, when treated with sulphuric acid and cane-sugar, gives a magnificent purple color (Pettenkofer's test) with a characteristic spectrum. A similar color is produced by the action of the same bodies on albumin, amyl, alcohol, and some other organic bodies.

---

[1] Hoppe-Seyler, Virchow's Archiv, xxv, 181; xxvi (1863), 519.

By dehydration cholalic acid is converted into choloidic acid $C_{24}H_{38}O_4$, or into dyslysin $C_{24}H_{36}O_3$.

Action of Bile on Food.—In some animals at least bile contains a ferment capable of converting starch into sugar; but its action in this respect is wholly subordinate.

On proteids bile has no direct digestive action whatever. But when bile, or a solution of bile-salts, is added to a fluid containing the products of gastric digestion, a copious precipitate takes place, consisting both of parapeptone and peptone [also albumin, mucin, glycocholic acid, biliary coloring matter, etc.], the greater part of the pepsin present being at the same time carried down mechanically, so that the supernatant liquid, even when reacidified, has little or no peptic powers. The precipitate, however, is redissolved in an excess of bile or solution of bile-salts. [In Dalton's[1] and also in my own experiments on digestion it was found that peptone (albuminose) was not precipitated by bile.] The purpose of this precipitation, which actually takes place in the duodenum, is probably to shield the ferment of the pancreatic juice (see below) from the destructive action of the pepsin. And, in general, the alkaline bile, by neutralizing the acid contents of the stomach as they pass into the duodenum, prepares the way for the action of the pancreatic juice.

With regard to the action of bile on fats, the following statements may be made:

Bile has a slight solvent action on fats, as seen in its use by painters. It has by itself a slight, but only slight, emulsifying power; a mixture of oil and bile separate after shaking less rapidly than a mixture of oil and water. With free fatty acids bile forms soaps. It is, moreover, a solvent of solid soaps, and it would appear that the emulsion of fats is, under certain circumstances, at all events facilitated by the presence of soaps in solution. Hence bile is probably of much greater use as an emulsion agent when mixed with pancreatic juice than when acting by itself alone. To this point we shall return. Lastly, the wetting of membranes with bile, or with a solution of bile-salts, assists in the passage of fats through membranes. Oil passes with considerable ease through a filter-paper kept wet with a solution of bile-salts, whereas it passes with extreme difficulty through one kept constantly wet with distilled water.

---

[1] [Human Physiology, sixth edition, 1875, p. 222.]

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Pancreas.*

The physiological anatomy of the pancreas is essentially that of the salivary glands. The lobes are composed of lobules, which are made up of alveoli. It possesses a single duct, which conveys the pancreatic fluid into the intestine either through an individual orifice, or by one common to it and the ductus communis choledochus.]

Pancreatic Juice.

Natural healthy pancreatic juice, obtained by means of a temporary pancreatic fistula, differs from the preceding fluids in the comparatively large quantity of proteids which it contains. [When cooled to .0 it becomes of a gelatinous consistence, and when heated in a test-tube, often forms such a solid coagulum that the tube can be inverted without any of the liquid pouring out.] Its composition varies according to the rate of secretion, for with the more rapid flow the increase of total solids does not keep pace with that of the water, though the ash remains remarkably constant.

By an incision through the linea alba the pancreatic duct can easily be found either in the rabbit or in the dog, and a canula secured in it. There is no difficulty about a temporary fistula; but Bernard found that, with permanent fistulæ, the secretion altered in nature, and lost many of its characteristic properties. N. O. Bernstein,[1] however, has succeeded in obtaining permanent fistulæ without any impairment of the secretion.

Healthy pancreatic juice is a clear viscid fluid, frothing when shaken. It has a very decided alkaline reaction, and contains few or no structural constituents.

The average amount of solids in the pancreatic juice of the dog when obtained from a temporary fistula is about 8 to 10 per cent.;[2] but Bernstein[3] found in the thoroughly active secretion from a permanent fistula about 2.5 per cent. (1.68–5.39), 0.8 being inorganic matter. The important constituents are albumin, a peculiar form of casein, or alkali-albumin (precipitable by saturation with magnesium sulphate), leucin and tyrosin, a small amount of fats and soaps, and a comparatively large quantity of sodium carbonate, to which the alkaline reaction of the juice is due, and which seems to be peculiarly associated with the albumin.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1869, p. 1.

[2] Bernard, Leç. Phys. Exp., 1855, ii, 237.

[3] Op. cit.

When cooled to 0° C. it is apt to undergo a sort of coagulation, becoming fluid again on being gently heated.[1]

According to Kühne,[2] fresh pancreatic juice of the dog always contains corpuscles similar to salivary corpuscles, and the coagulation observed by Bernard is a true coagulation, resulting in a product very similar to myosin. The coagulum, however, is speedily digested. *Perfectly* fresh juice, Kühne states, contains neither peptone nor tyrosin, and only the barest trace of leucin.

Action on Food-stuffs.—On *starch*, raw or boiled, pancreatic juice acts with great energy, rapidly converting it into grape-sugar. All that has been said in this respect concerning saliva might be repeated in the case of pancreatic juice, except that the activity of the latter is far greater than that of the former; the pancreatic juice and the aqueous infusion of the gland are always capable of converting starch into grape-sugar, whether the animal from which they were taken be starving or well fed.

As in the case of saliva (p. 298), it is probable that the sugar formed is not true grape-sugar.

From the juice, or, by the glycerin method, from the gland itself, an amylolytic ferment may be approximately isolated. On *proteids* pancreatic juice also exercises a solvent action, so far similar to that of gastric juice that by it proteids are converted into peptone. If a few shreds of fibrin are thrown into a small quantity of pancreatic juice, they speedily disappear, especially at a temperature of 35° C., and the mixture is found to contain peptone. The activity of the juice in thus converting proteids into peptone, is favored by increase of temperature up to 40° or thereabouts, and hindered by low temperatures; it is permanently destroyed by boiling. The digestive powers of the juice in fact depend, like those of gastric juice, on the presence of a ferment, to which the name *trypsin* has been given. A glycerin extract of pancreas, prepared in the same method as that of the gastric mucous membrane, is (under appropriate conditions) active on proteids, like the native juice.

---

[1] Bernard, Leç. Phys. Exp., ii, 230.

[2] Verhandl. Heidelb. Naturhist. Med. Vereins, 1876.

The appearance of fibrin undergoing pancreatic digestion is, however, different from that undergoing peptic digestion. In the former case the fibrin does not swell up, but remains as opaque as before, and appears to suffer corrosion rather than solution. But there is a still more important distinction between pancreatic and peptic digestion of proteids. Peptic digestion is essentially an acid digestion; we have seen that the action only takes place in the presence of an acid and is arrested by neutralization. Pancreatic digestion, on the other hand, is essentially an alkaline digestion; the action will not take place unless some alkali be present; and the activity of an alkaline juice is arrested by acidification, and hindered by neutralization. The glycerin extract of pancreas is, under all circumstances, as inert in the presence of free acid as that of the stomach in the presence of alkalies. If the digestive mixture be supplied with sodium carbonate to the extent of 1 per cent., digestion proceeds rapidly, just as does a peptic mixture when acidulated with hydrochloric acid to the extent of 0.2 per cent. Sodium carbonate of 1 per cent. seems in fact to play, in pancreatic digestion, a part altogether comparable to that of hydrochloric acid 0.2 per cent. in gastric digestion.

With distilled water the digestion goes on but very slowly, and the addition of sodium carbonate quickens the change in proportion to the quantity added, up to about 0.9 or 1.2 per cent. Beyond this further alkali is a hindrance, and large quantities stop the process altogether. Bile which arrests peptic digestion, seems, if anything, favorable to pancreatic digestion.[1] When isolated ferment, as the glycerin extract of pancreas, is operated with, 0.1 per cent. of free hydrochloric acid is sufficient to arrest the action.

Corresponding to this difference in the helpmate of the ferment, there is in the two cases a difference in the nature of the products. In both cases peptone is produced, and such differences as can at present be detected between pancreatic and gastric peptones are comparatively slight; but in pancreatic digestion the by-product is not, as in gastric digestion, a kind of acid-albumin, but a body having more analogy with alkali-albumin.

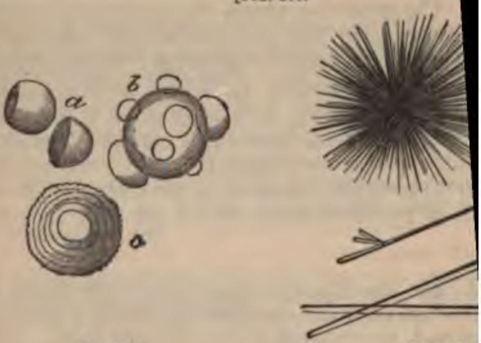
Before solution has actually taken place the fibrin becomes altered in character. It is soluble not only in dilute acids and alkalies, but also in a 10 per cent. solution of sodium chloride, and the solutions obtained by the latter reagent are

---

[1] Heidenhain, Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 557.

of two remarkable nitrogenous crystallin
and *tyrosin*. (Fig. 100.) When fibrin (or o

[Fig. 100.



Leucin. Tyrosin.]

submitted to the action of pancreactic juice, t
peptone which can be recovered from the mix
short of the original amount of proteids, much
in the case of gastric juice; and the longer the
tion, the greater is this apparent loss. If a pa
tive mixture be freed from the alkali-albumin
tion, and after concentration by evaporation be
excess of alcohol, most of the peptone will be
The alcoholic filtrate when concentrated give
crystals of tyrosin, and the mother liquor from
will afford abundance of

nor tyrosin can at present be considered as natural products of the action of pepsin.

As is well known, leucin and tyrosin are the bodies which make their appearance when proteids or gelatin are acted on by dilute acids, alkalies, or various oxidizing agents. Now leucin is amido-caproic acid, and thus belongs distinctly to the fatty bodies, while tyrosin is a member of the aromatic group, being closely related to benzoic acid. So that in pancreatic digestion we have the large complex proteid molecule split up into its constituent fatty acid and aromatic molecules, and into its other less distinctly known components.

The presence of these bodies and of the alkali-albumin in pancreatic juice is probably due to an intrinsic digestion taking place in the secretion as it passes along the duct or after it has been collected. Among the supplementary products of pancreatic digestion may be enumerated a body which gives a violet color with chlorine-water (this reaction is often seen in the juice itself), and *indol*, to which apparently the strong and peculiarly fæcal odor, which makes its appearance during pancreatic digestion, is due.

Indol, however, unlike the leucin and tyrosin, is possibly not a product of pure pancreatic digestion, but of an accompanying decomposition due to the action of organized ferments. A pancreatic digestive mixture soon becomes swarming with bacteria, in spite of careful precautions, when natural juice or an infusion of the gland is used. When isolated ferment is used, and atmospheric germs excluded, no odor whatever is produced,[1] though carbonic acid and nitrogen are set free; and Kühne found no indol produced when pancreatic digestion was carried on in the presence of salicylic acid, which prevents the development of bacteria and like organisms.

After long-continued digestion, especially when accompanied by putrefactive decomposition, the amount of proteids which are carried beyond the peptone stage and broken up may be very great. A slight difference between pancreatic and gastric digestion may be found in the fact, that while fibrin boiled as well as raw is readily acted on by pancreatic juice, boiled albumin, syntonin, etc., resist the action of pancreatic juice to a much greater extent than they do that of gastric juice.

Theory of Digestive Proteolysis.—The simplest view of peptic digestion is that of Brücke,[2] that the fibrin or albumin, etc., is first converted into syntonin (parapeptone), and that the syntonin (parapeptone) is converted into peptone; and is moreover supported by the fact that the final result of digestion with a very active juice is nothing but peptone. There are facts, however, which show that so simple a view cannot be accepted. Meissner[3] came to the conclusion, based on very laborious researches, that the conversion into syntonin was followed by the splitting up of that body into *peptone* and *parapeptone*, the latter being distinguished from ordinary syntonin not by its general characters, but by the fact that it was incapable of being further converted into peptone by the action of gastric juice, though it could undergo that change under the influence of pancreatic juice. He further described two subsidiary products, *metapeptone* and *dyspeptone*, but the characters he assigned to those bodies were unsatisfactory. He moreover spoke of three kinds of peptone, *A*, *B*, and *C* peptone, the last not being precipitable, whilst the first two are, by acetic acid and potassium ferrocyanide, *A* in a weakly acid, *B* in a strongly acid solution; in other words, *C* is a perfect peptone and *A* and *B* are imperfect peptones. Kühne[1] is of opinion that every natural proteid consists of, and may be split up into, two elements, belonging to what he calls respectively the *anti* group and the *hemi* group. When a proteid is digested by trypsin, two peptones are produced, an *antipeptone* and a *hemipeptone*. Of these the first, antipeptone, undergoes no further change under the action of trypsin; it remains a peptone. Hemipeptone, on the other hand, is readily decomposed by trypsin into leucin, tyrosin, and the other products of pancreatic digestion. So also when a proteid is digested by pepsin, the same antipeptone and hemipeptone are formed; but, unlike trypsin, pepsin cannot produce any further change in the hemipeptone. (The assertion that leucin and tyrosin appear as products of peptic digestion, is explained by the fact that pepsin is associated in the gastric membrane with a proteid body, which gives up considerable quantities of leucin and tyrosin when dissolved in a dilute acid. Trypsin also is associated with a similar body in the pancreas.) Thus the results of peptic and tryptic digestion together are antipeptone with leucin, tyrosin, etc., the latter arising from the profounder tryptic digestion of hemipeptone. Between these peptones, however, and the original proteid are various stages, and, under certain circumstances, various by-products. Thus antipeptone has for its antecedent *antialbumose* (Brücke's parapeptone), agreeing in its general characters with the syntonins, but capable of conversion into antipeptone only, never into hemipeptone. Similarly hemipeptone has an antecedent *hemialbumose* (apparently Meissner's *A* peptone) soluble in dilute acids and alkalies and in a 10 per cent. sodium-chloride solution, and convertible, by the agency of pepsin or trypsin, into hemipeptone, and of trypsin alone into leucin, tyrosin, etc. The action of dilute hydrochloric acid at 40° on proteids gives rise, on the side of the hemi-group, to hemialbumose and so to hemipeptone. By the action of sulphuric acid at 100° C. the hemipeptone is further reduced to leucin, tyrosin, etc. On the side of the anti-group these agents give rise to a body which Kühne calls *antialbumate*. This substance also occurs in digestive mixtures where the pepsin is insufficient. It is not capable of any change under the influence of pepsin, but by trypsin is converted into antipeptone. It is evidently the real parapeptone of Meissner. These results of Kühne it will be seen reconcile some previous contradictions; and the distinction of the anti- and hemi-groups, if it prove as general as Kühne supposes, throws a great light on proteid metabolism. It may be remarked, in passing, that hemialbumose agrees very closely with the peculiar proteid body discovered by Bence Jones in the urine of a case of osteomalacia. According to Kühne, while the activity of trypsin is entirely destroyed by digestion with pepsin, trypsin has no such effect on pepsin.

---

[1] Hüfner, J. f. Prakt. Chem. N. F., x, 1.

[2] Wien. Sitzungsbericht, xxxvii, 131; xliii, 601.

[3] Zt. f. Rat. Med., vii, 1; viii, 280; x, 1; xii, 46; xiv, 303.

---

[1] Verhandl. Naturhist. Med. Vereins, Heidel., 1876.

On the gelatiniferous elements of the tissues, unless they have been previously treated with acid or heated with water, pancreatic juice appears to have no solvent action. In this respect it affords a striking contrast to gastric juice.[1]

Trypsin, unlike pepsin, will dissolve mucin. Like pepsin, it is inert towards nuclein, horny tissues, and the so-called amyloid matter.

On *Fats* pancreatic juice has a twofold action; it emulsifies them, and it splits up neutral fats into their respective acids and glycerin.

If hog's lard be gently heated till it melts and be then mixed with pancreatic juice before it solidifies on cooling, a creamy emulsion, lasting for almost an indefinite time, is formed. So also when olive oil is shaken up with pancreatic juice, the separation of the two fluids takes place very slowly, and a drop of the mixture under the microscope shows the division of the fat is very minute. An alkaline aqueous infusion of the gland has similar emulsifying powers.

If perfectly neutral fat be treated with pancreatic juice, especially at the body-temperature, the emulsion speedily takes on an acid reaction, and by appropriate means not only the corresponding fatty acids, but glycerin may be obtained from the mixture. When an alkali is present, the fatty acids thus set free form their corresponding soaps.

Pancreatic juice contains fats, and is consequently apt after collection to have its alkalinity reduced, and an aqueous infusion of a pancreatic gland (which always contains a considerable amount of fat) very speedily becomes acid.

Thus pancreatic juice is remarkable for the power it pos-

---

[1] Ewald and Kühne, Verhandl. Naturhist. Med. Vereins, Heidelberg, Bd. i (1876).

general composition of the juice (or of the
sion of the gland), being probably in large measure
the alkali-albumin present. The proteolytic fermen
tains, according to Kühne, a considerable quantity of
the fact that it can be digested by pepsin would see
that it is really proteid in nature. There are no me
guishing the amylolytic ferment of the pancreas from

The action of pancreatic juice, or of the infusio
of the gland, on starch, is seen under all circumstan
the animal be fasting or not. The same may prob
of the action on fats.

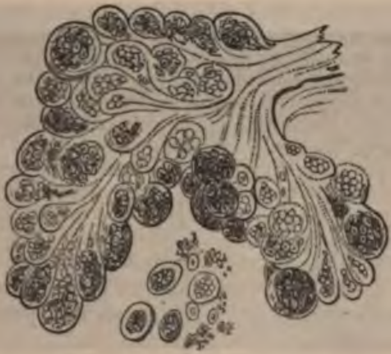
Pancreatic juice, when secreted in a normal stat
active on proteids.[2] The glycerin extract or aque
of the gland, on the contrary, differs at different
pared from an animal some 4 to 10 hours after foo
taken, it is very powerful; prepared from a fasting
exhibits scarcely any action at all. To this poi
return immediately.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Mucous Membran*
Small Intestine.

The mucous membrane lining the small intestin
into numerous transverse folds, which are called *v*
niventes. These folds are best marked near the p
and are relatively few in the ileum. They affor
surface for the contact of food with the absorbing
while at the same time its passage along the inte
is retarded. The surface of the membrane has a s
appearance, and if seen by the aid of a

of Brunner (Fig. 101) are racemose glands, and are confined to the duodenum. They are partially imbedded in the submucous tissue. In their physiology they are closely allied to the pancreatic glands.

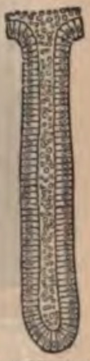
FIG. 101.



Portions of one of Brunner's Glands, from the Human Duodenum.

The *glands of Lieberkühn* or *simple follicles* resemble the finger of a glove inverted. They are profusely distributed in both the large and small intestine, and appear as simple depressions of the mucous membrane. Like the whole of the intestine, they are lined by columnar epithelium. They are surrounded by capillary plexuses of bloodvessels and lymphatics, and are the principal glands concerned in the secretion of the *succus entericus* (Fig. 102).

FIG. 102.

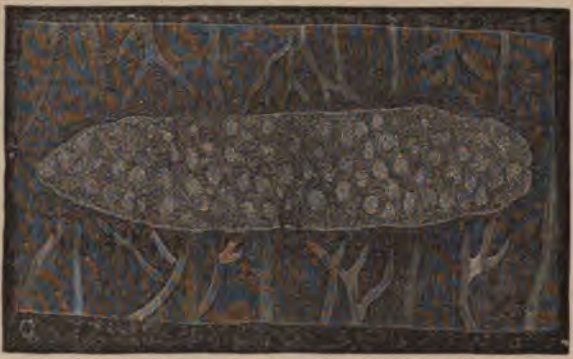


A Gland of Lieberkuhn.

The *agminate glands* or Peyer's patches occur as localized collections of small white *sacculi.* (Fig. 103.) These sacculi are surrounded by dense capillary plexuses of bloodvessels, which send numerous vascular loops into the interior to form a framework for the stroma of the organ. The stroma consists of an adenoid tissue containing in its meshes lymph corpuscles and an opaque substance with oil-globules.

These sacculi are imbedded in the submucous tissue, and generally project more or less above the free surface of the membrane. Each sacculus is sometimes surrounded at its free surface by an annular depression or fossa and encircled by a zone of openings, which are the orifices of the intestinal follicles. (Fig. 104.) Villi are sometimes seen on their surface.

FIG. 103.



Agminate Follicles, or Peyer's Patch, in a state of distension; magnified about five diameters.—After BOEHM.

When the sacculi exist singly, they are termed *solitary glands.* (Fig. 105.)

FIG. 104.

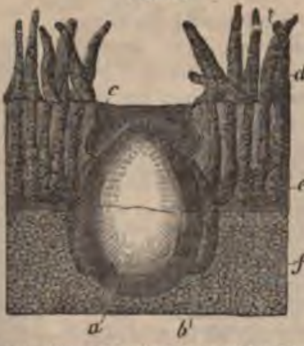


FIG. 105.

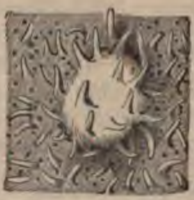


FIG. 104.—Side view of a portion of Intestinal Mucous Membrane of a Cat, showing a Peyer's gland (*a*); it is imbedded in the submucous tissue (*f*), the line of separation between which and the mucous membrane passes across the gland; *b*, one of the tubular follicles, the orifices of which form the zone of openings around the gland; *c*, the fossa in the mucous membrane; *d*, villi; *e*, follicles of Lieberkühn.—After BENDZ.

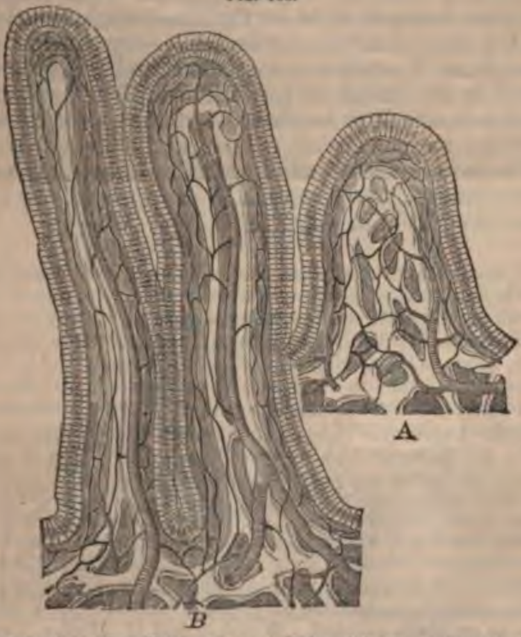
FIG. 105.—Solitary gland of small intestine.—After BOEHM.

The function of the agminate glands is not known, but it is probable that they are accessories of the lymphatic system and are actively concerned in absorption.

The villi are covered with columnar epithelium, which is continuous with the intestinal lining, but is somewhat modified on its free surface by being striated. (Fig. 84.) Internally, they are composed of a stroma of adenoid tissue, which contains the bloodvessels, muscular fibres, lacteals, and also fibro-plastic cells and fat-globules. (Fig. 106.)

The lacteals usually appear as a single or double loop, and have no definable openings. They empty into the lacteals at the base of the villi. The unstriated muscular fibres are fibres of the *muscularis mucosæ* and are supposed to be active elements in emptying the lacteals. The longitudinal fibres, in contraction, serve to pull the villus down, and force the con-

FIG. 106.



(Slightly altered from Teichmann.) *A*, Villus of sheep. *B*, Villi of man.

Villi of intestine showing columnar epithelium covering them; also adenoid tissue, having in its meshes the dark vessels, which are portal capillaries, and a lacteal appearing as a white loop.

tents of the lacteals out, while valves in the larger vessels prevent a reflux of the fluid. The part which the villi take in the digestive process is to absorb the products of digestion. This function will be again referred to more in detail. The nerves are derived from the pneumogastric and sympathetic.]

Succus Entericus.

When, in a living animal, a portion of the small intestine is ligatured, so that the secretions coming down from above cannot enter its canal, while yet the blood-supply is maintained as usual, a small amount of secretion collects in its interior. This is spoken of as the *succus entericus*, and is supposed to be furnished by the glands of Lieberkühn. We have no exact knowledge, however, as to what extent such a secretion takes place under normal circumstances; and the statements with regard to its action are conflicting. Probably it has no direct action on either fats or proteids; but is amylolytic in some animals, though not in all.

Thiry[1] divided the small intestine in two places at some distance apart. By fine sutures he united the lower end of the upper with the upper end of the lower section, thus as it were cutting out a whole piece of the small intestine from the alimentary tract. In successful cases, union between the cut surfaces took place, and a shortened but otherwise satisfactory canal was re-established. Of the isolated piece the lower end was carefully closed by sutures, while the upper was brought to the wound in the abdominal wall and secured there. A fistula was thus formed, leading into a short piece of intestine quite isolated from the rest of the alimentary canal. From this isolated intestine Thiry obtained a thin yellowish alkaline albuminous secretion which dissolved fibrin very much in the same way as does pancreatic juice, but was ineffectual on other proteids and had no action on starch. Masloff[2] finds that the juice obtained (from dogs) by Thiry's method acts on starch feebly, but has no action on fibrin or other proteids in neutral or alkaline solutions if putrefactive changes be carefully avoided. Kölliker and H. Müller found that proteids introduced into the intestines were digested in the case of carnivora, but not in the case of herbivora. Funke[3] also agrees with Thiry that starch injected into isolated loops of rabbit's intestine is not converted into sugar; while Frerichs and Busch came to the opposite conclusion.[4] Certainly pieces of the intestine of the pig or of the rabbit, or a glycerin extract of the pieces, will rapidly convert starch into sugar; and it is difficult to suppose that this action is due to an admixture of pancreatic juice which had not been thoroughly removed by washing, since pieces of the intestine of the sheep, which are also subject to admixture with active pancreatic juice, are, when similarly treated, inert as far as starch is concerned. Still, no great stress can be laid on this, since an amylolytic ferment can be obtained from almost every part of the body of a pig or a rabbit.

---

[1] Wien. Sitzungsbericht, Bd. l (1864), p. 77.

[2] Unters. Physiol. Inst. Heidelberg, ii (1879), p. 290.

[3] Lehrb., p. 190.

[4] Cf. also Paschutin, Archiv Anat. Physiol., 1871, p. 305. Eichhorst, Pflüger's Archiv, iv (1871), p. 575.

Succus entericus has also been said to change cane- into grape-sugar, and by a fermentative action to convert cane-sugar into lactic acid, and this again into butyric acid with the evolution of carbonic acid and free hydrogen.

Of the possible action of other secretions of the alimentary canal, as of the cæcum and large intestine, we shall speak when we come to consider the changes in the alimentary canal.

Concerning the secretion of Brunner's glands our information is at present imperfect. The cells of the glands closely resemble the central cells of the gastric glands;[1] and Grützner[2] finds that an extract of the gland will digest fibrin in an acid solution, but has no distinct amylolytic action.

SEC. 2. THE ACT OF SECRETION IN THE CASE OF THE DIGESTIVE JUICES AND THE NERVOUS MECHANISMS WHICH REGULATE IT.

The various juices whose properties we have just studied, though so different from each other, are all drawn ultimately from one common source, the blood, and they are poured into the alimentary canal, not in a continuous flow, but intermittently as occasion may demand. The epithelium cells which supply them have their periods of rest and of activity, and the amount and quality of the fluids which these cells secrete are determined by the needs of the economy as the food passes along the canal. We have therefore to consider how the epithelium cell manufactures its special secretion out of the materials supplied to it by the blood, and how the cell is called into activity by the presence of food at some distance from itself, or by circumstances which do not bear directly on itself. In dealing with these matters in connection with the digestive juices, we shall have to enter at some length into the physiology of secretion in general.

The question which presents itself first is, Does the epithelium cell simply serve as a filter, merely draining off from the blood the already formed constituents of its secretion, each cell being fitted in some way to catch and deliver particular substances? In other words, Is secretion merely selection, just as from a mixture of shots of various sizes a selection might be made by passing them over a series of sieves with meshes of varying width? or does the cell draw upon the blood for the nutritive elements required for the growth of all protoplasm, and out of those common elements manufacture in the recesses of its own substance the chemical bodies which characterize the fluid it pours forth?

---

[1] Schwalbe, Arch. f. micro. Anat., viii (1872), p. 97.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xii (1876), p. 288.

This question is naturally the first to be asked, nevertheless it will be of advantage to defer it for the present, and, while still bearing it in mind, to pass on to the second question: By what mechanism is the activity of the secreting cells brought into play?

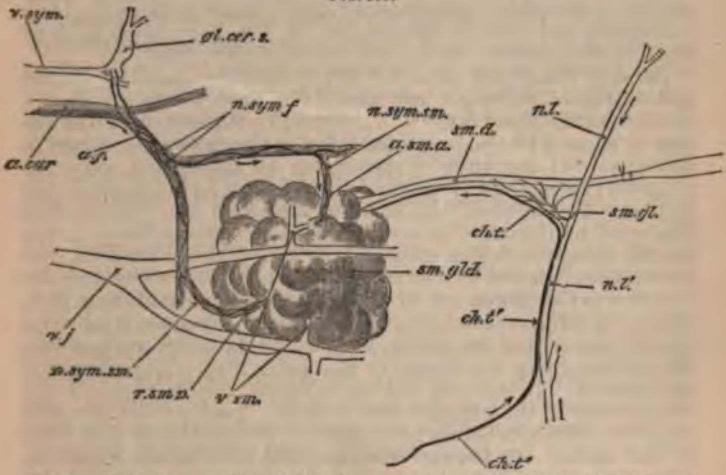
While fasting, a small quantity only of saliva is poured into the mouth; the buccal cavity is just moist, and nothing more. When food is taken, or when any sapid or stimulating substance, or indeed a body of any kind, is introduced into the mouth, the flow induced may be very copious. Indeed the quantity secreted in ordinary life during 24 hours has been roughly calculated at as much as from 1 to 2 litres. An abundant secretion in the absence of food in the mouth may be called forth by an emotion, as when the mouth waters at the sight of food, or by a smell, or by events occurring in the stomach, as in some cases of nausea. Evidently in these cases some nervous mechanism is at work. In studying the action of this nervous mechanism, it will be of advantage to confine our attention at first to the **submaxillary gland.**

The submaxillary gland (Fig. 107) is supplied with nerves from two sources: from the cervical sympathetic along the submaxillary arteries, and from the seventh or facial nerve by fibres, which, running in the chorda tympani, join the lingual branch of the fifth nerve, from which they diverge close under the lower jaw, and run as a small nerve close beside the duct to the gland.

If a tube be placed in the duct, it is seen that when sapid substances are placed on the tongue, or the tongue is stimulated in any other way, or the lingual nerve is laid bare and stimulated with an interrupted current, a copious flow of saliva takes place. If the sympathetic be divided, stimulation of the tongue or lingual nerve still produces a flow. But if the small chorda nerve spoken of above be divided, stimulation of the tongue or lingual nerve produces no flow.

Evidently the flow of saliva is a nervous reflex action, the lingual nerve serving as the channel for the afferent and the small chorda nerve for the efferent impulses. If the trunk of the lingual be divided above the point where the chorda leaves it, as at Fig. 107, *n. l'.*, stimulation of the tongue produces, under ordinary circumstances, no flow. This shows that the

Fig. 107.



Diagrammatic Representation of the Submaxillary Gland of the Dog with its Nerves and Bloodvessels.

(This is not intended to illustrate the exact anatomical relations of the several structures.)

sm. gld. The submaxillary gland, into the duct (*sm. d.*) of which a canula has been tied. The sublingual gland and duct are not shown.

n. l., *n. l'.* The lingual branch nerve. *ch. t.*, *ch. t'.* The chorda tympani, proceeding from the facial nerve, becoming conjoined with the lingual at *n. l'.* and afterwards diverging and passing to the gland along the duct.

sm. gl. The submaxillary ganglion with its several roots. *n. l.* The lingual proceeding to the tongue.

a. car. The carotid artery, two branches of which, *a. sm. a.* and *r. sm. p.*, pass to the anterior and posterior parts of the gland. *v. sm.* the anterior and posterior veins from the gland, falling into *v. j.* the jugular vein.

v. sym. The conjoined vagus and sympathetic trunks.

gl. cer. s. The super-cervical ganglion, two branches of which forming a plexus (*a. f.*) over the facial artery, are distributed (*n. sym. sm.*) along the two glandular arteries to the anterior and posterior portions of the gland.

The arrows indicate the direction taken by the nervous impulses during reflex stimulation of the gland. They ascend to the brain by the lingual and descend by the chorda tympani.

centre of the reflex action is higher up than the point of section; it lies, in fact, in the brain.

In the angle between the lingual and the chorda, where the latter leaves the former to pass to the gland, lies the small submaxillary ganglion (represented diagrammatically in Fig. 107, *sm. gl.*), from which branches pass to the lingual on the one hand and to the chorda on the other; branches may also be traced towards the ducts and glands and towards the tongue. It has been much debated whether this ganglion can act as a centre of reflex action.

Bernard[1] found that after he had divided the conjoined lingual and chorda at about one cm. above the place where the chorda diverges to the gland (as at *n. l′.*, Fig. 107), stimulation of the lingual at about 3 or 4 cm. distance below the ganglion still caused a flow of saliva; this effect, however, was no longer seen when the branches passing from the ganglion to the lingual had been previously divided. He explained the result by supposing that the impulses generated by the stimulus were conveyed by afferent fibres in the lingual, along the lingual roots of the ganglion to the ganglion, and were thence reflected by afferent fibres along the branches from the ganglion to the chorda and so to the gland. The ganglion, in fact, acted as a reflex centre. The same apparent reflex secretion could also be induced, but less readily, by pinching the peripheral branches of the lingual near the tongue, or by dipping them into concentrated salt solution. In this case also the secretion failed to appear if the lingual roots of the ganglion were divided. Such a reflex secretion was very difficult to obtain by stimulation of the mucous membrane of the tongue; but Bernard was successful when he stimulated the tongue directly with a galvanic current or drew the tongue out and placed ether on its surface. The secretion in all these cases was accompanied by a dilation of the bloodvessels of the gland, and the effect on the gland was indeed wholly similar to that of directly stimulating the chorda. Bernard further insisted that in these experiments no anæstheties were to be used, and observed that the reflex effect was no longer visible when two or three days had elapsed after section of the conjoined lingual and chorda trunks. Both these facts rather militate against his view, since it seems improbable that a sporadic ganglion should be so susceptible of anæsthetics, or that degeneration and functional incapacity of the ganglion should follow upon section of the conjoined lingual and chorda so long as the afferent and efferent connections of the ganglion with the gland and tongue were kept up.

Eckhard[2] in repeating Bernard's experiments failed to obtain any effect upon dipping the endings of the lingual nerve in salt solution or from placing ether on the tongue, and he very naturally argued (being supported in this by Heidenhain[3]) that the effects seen when galvanic stimulation was employed were due to an escape of the current upon the chorda fibres. Schiff[1] did obtain reflex secretion after section of the conjoined lingual and chorda, by direct galvanic stimulation of the tongue and by pouring ether on the surface of that organ: but the currents necessary in the first case to produce any effect were so strong that escape must have taken place, and in the second case the secretion appeared even though the lingual was divided close under the tongue, and when, therefore, this nerve could not have been the channel for conveying impulses to the submaxillary ganglion. He further pointed out that in large dogs at all events, certain fibres of the chorda after running along the conjoined lingual and chorda do not leave the lingual with the rest of the fibres going straight to the gland, but continue in the lingual close up to the tongue, then bend round and as recurrent fibres run back and eventually join the nerve going to the gland. He in consequence argued that Bernard in stimulating the lingual below the divergence of the chorda was in reality stimulating not afferent but efferent fibres. But in such a case these recurrent fibres must pass to the chorda through the ganglion, if Bernard's result be true that the reflex effect ceases when the lingual roots of the ganglion are divided. Schiff further states, that these recurrent fibres degenerate in the retrograde portion of their course when the lingual is divided near the tongue, and that no effect follows upon stimulation of the lingual after section of the conjoined chorda and lingual if the lingual have some five or six days previously been divided close to the tongue so as to cause degeneration of the recurrent fibres, provided that the stimulation be not so strong as to lead to an escape of the current to the main chorda fibres. In small dogs Schiff could not so readily demonstrate these recurrent fibres, and though he says the apparent reflex secretion is more easily obtained in large dogs, such as Bernard probably used, than in smaller ones, it is improbable that mere size should make such a difference in nervous distribution; and if an escape of current can explain the results in the one case, it can also probably in the other.

---

[1] Comptes Rendus, 1862, ii, 341.

[2] Zt. f. rat. Med., xxix (1867), p. 74.

[3] Breslau. Studien, 1868.

Bidder's[2] account of the nerves in the ganglion at first sight offers support to Bernard's views. In the dog he finds, passing from the ganglion direct to the tongue, medullated nerve-fibres which do not degenerate when the chorda is divided at its exit from the skull. These fibres accordingly would seem to take their origin in the ganglion and to be the afferent nerve required for Bernard's views. When Bidder divided the conjoined lingual and chorda, he found the chorda fibres after about three weeks completely degenerated, not only those forming the nerve going to the gland, but those also constituting the branches going to the ganglion, *i. e.*, the chorda roots of the ganglion. In the ganglion and in the branches going from the ganglion to the gland were seen numerous degenerated fibres in the midst of undegenerated (but non-medullated) fibres which seem to have their origin in the ganglion itself. Thus after complete degeneration of the two chorda fibres, there still remained intact (1) the ganglion, (2) fibres from the ganglion to the tongue, and (3) fibres from the ganglion to the gland, in fact, exactly the nervous mechanism demanded by Bernard's view. But Bidder, like Eckhard, failed to obtain a reflex secretion by pouring ether on the tongue after division of the conjoined lingual and chorda, and he found that galvanic stimulation of the nerves going from the ganglion to the tongue was of no effect, provided that errors due to escape of current on to the main chorda fibres were avoided by previously inducing through section degeneration of the chorda fibres including the chorda roots of the ganglion. So that Bidder's results in the end oppose the view that the ganglion can act as a centre of reflex action. In fact, such a view must be regarded at present as not proven.

---

[1] Moleschott's Untersuchungen, x (1870), 423.
[2] Reichert u. Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1867, p. 1.

We have, contrary to our wont, given this controversy in detail, on account of the great importance of the subject. The submaxillary ganglion is almost the only case in which it has been with any success attempted to demonstrate by experiment the reflex action of a sporadic ganglion, and the question whether sporadic ganglia can or cannot serve as centres of reflex action is at the present time at least a question of much interest.

Stimulation of the glosso-pharyngeal is even more effectual than that of the lingual. Probably this, indeed, is the chief afferent nerve in ordinary secretion. Stimulation of the mucous membrane of the stomach (as by food introduced through a gastric fistula) or of the vagus also produces a flow of saliva, as indeed may stimulation of the sciatic, and probably of many other afferent nerves. All these cases are instances of reflex action, the cerebro-spinal system acting as a centre. In most cases the centre lies in the medulla oblongata, and secretion may be caused by direct stimulation of this organ; where ideas or emotions cause a flow, the stimulation begins higher up in the brain; and in cases where the sense of taste, as distinguished from general sensation, is concerned in the matter, it is probable that the afferent impulses ascend into the brain higher up than the medulla before they return as efferent impulses. In all these cases the chorda tympani is the sole efferent nerve. Section of that nerve, either where the fibres pass from the lingual nerve and the submaxillary ganglion to the gland, or where it runs in the same sheath as the lingual, or in any part of its course from the main facial trunk to the lingual, puts an end at once (with the disputed exception mentioned above) to the possibility of any flow being excited by stimuli applied to the mouth, or any part of the body other than the gland itself.

This statement is probably too absolute; for, though satisfactory evidence of reflex excitation of the submaxillary gland by means of the sympathetic is not forthcoming, it seems unlikely that the secretory, as distinguished from the vaso-motor activity of this nerve, should never be put to use in actual life.

In life, then, the flow of saliva is brought about by the advent to the gland along the chorda tympani of efferent impulses, started chiefly by reflex actions. The inquiry thus narrows itself to the question: In what manner do these efferent impulses cause the increase of flow?

If in a dog a tube be introduced into Wharton's duct, and the chorda be divided, the flow, if any be going on, is from the lack of efferent impulses arrested. On passing an interrupted current through the peripheral portion of the chorda, a copious secretion at once takes place, and the saliva begins to rise rapidly in the tube; a very short time after the application of the current the flow reaches a maximum, which is maintained for some time, and then, if the current be long continued, gradually lessens. If the current be applied for a short time only, the secretion may last for some time after the current has been shut off. The saliva thus obtained is but slightly viscid, and contains but few salivary corpuscles or protoplasmic lumps. If the gland itself be watched, while its activity is thus roused, it will be seen that its arteries are dilated and its capillaries filled, and that the blood flows rapidly through the veins in a full stream and of bright arterial hue, frequently with pulsating movements. If a vein be opened, this large increase of flow, and the lessening of the ordinary deoxygenation of the blood, consequent upon the rapid stream, will be still more evident. It is clear that excitation of the chorda acts on some local vaso-motor centre in the gland, and largely dilates the arteries; the nerve acts energetically as a dilator nerve.

Thus stimulation of the chorda brings about two events, a dilation of the bloodvessels of the gland and a flow of saliva. The question at once arises, Is not the latter simply the result of the former? The activity of the epithelial secreting cell, like that of any other form of protoplasm, is dependent on blood-supply. When the small arteries of the gland dilate, the capillaries become fuller, more blood passes through them in a given time, a larger amount of nutritive material passes away from them into the surrounding lymph-spaces, and so into the epithelium cells (and it must be remembered that though by the dilation the pressure in the arteries of the gland is diminished, that of the capillaries and veins is increased), the result of which must be to quicken the processes going on in the cells, and to stir these up to greater activity. This must be so; but it does not necessarily follow that the activity thus excited should take on the form of secretion. It is quite possible to conceive that the increased blood-supply should lead only to the accumulation in the cell of the constituents of the saliva, or of the materials for their construction, and not to a discharge of the secretion. A man works better for being fed, but feeding does not make him work in the absence of any stimulus. The increased blood-supply therefore, while favorable to active secretion, need not necessarily bring it about. Moreover, the following facts deserve attention: When the chorda is energetically stimulated, the pressure acquired by the saliva in the duct exceeds the arterial blood-pressure for the time being; that is to say, the pressure of fluid in the gland outside the bloodvessels is greater than that of the blood inside the bloodvessels. This must, whatever be the exact mode of transit of nutritive material through the vascular walls, tend to check that transit. [It is also an interesting fact that the temperature of the saliva at the time of secretion is from 1° to 2° F. higher than that of the arterial blood supplying the gland.] Again, if the head of an animal be rapidly cut off, and the chorda immediately stimulated, a flow of saliva takes place far too copious to be accounted for by the emptying of the salivary channels through any supposed contraction of their walls. In this case secretion is excited in the absence of blood-supply. Lastly, if a small quantity of atropin be injected into the veins, stimulation of the chorda produces no secretion of saliva at all, though the dilation of the bloodvessels takes place as usual. This remarkable fact can only be accounted for by supposing that the chorda contains two sets of fibres, one secreting fibres, acting directly on the epithelium cells only, and the other vaso-motor or dilating fibres acting on the bloodvessels only; and that atropin, while it has no effect on the latter, paralyzes the former just as it paralyzes the inhibitory fibres of the vagus. These facts, and especially the last, clearly prove that, when the chorda is stimulated, there pass down the nerve, in addition to impulses affecting the blood-supply, impulses affecting directly the protoplasm of the secreting cells, and calling it into action, just as similar impulses call into action the contractility of the protoplasm of a muscular fibre. Indeed, the two things, secreting activity and contracting activity, are quite parallel. We know that when a muscle contracts its bloodvessels dilate; and, just as by atropin the secreting action of the gland may be isolated from the vascular dilation, so by urari muscular contraction may be removed, and leave dilation of the bloodvessels as the only effect of stimulating the muscular nerve. In both cases the greater flow of blood is an adjuvant to, not the exciting cause of, the activity of the protoplasm.

If the chorda acts thus directly on the secreting cell, there must be a physiological and probably an anatomical connection between the cell and the nerve-fibre. Although Pflüger's[1] observations as to the actual mode in which the nerves end in the gland have not been generally accepted, nerve-fibres have been traced to the exterior of the alveoli, and Kupffer[2] has shown that in the so-called salivary glands of *Blatta*, the nerve-fibres certainly pass into the protoplasm and apparently end in the nuclei of the cells.

When the cervical sympathetic is stimulated, the vascular effects are the exact contrary of those seen when the chorda is stimulated. The small arteries are contracted, and a small quantity of dark venous blood escapes by the vein. Sometimes, indeed, the flow through the gland is almost arrested. The sympathetic, therefore, acts as a constrictor nerve, and in this sense is antagonistic to the chorda. We have already referred to the probable existence of a local vaso-motor centre situated in the gland itself, in which indeed there are found ganglionic cells in abundance. The fact that section of the cervical sympathetic does not cause complete dilation of the vessels of the gland—the dilating effects of stimulation of the chorda being fully evident after previous section of the sympathetic—affords additional support to this view. We may accordingly state that, while the chorda tympani inhibits, the sympathetic exalts, the action of this local centre.

The antagonism between the two, as far as the blood-supply is concerned, is very imperfect, the sympathetic being the more powerful; thus stimulation of the chorda produces very little effect in altering the results of a concomitant *strong* stimulation of the sympathetic.[3]

The effects on the flow of saliva from the submaxillary gland of the dog brought about by stimulation of the sympathetic, are very peculiar. A slight increase of flow is seen, but this soon passes off, and what saliva is secreted is remarkably viscid, of higher specific gravity, and richer in corpuscles and protoplasmic lumps, and it is said to be more active on starch than the chorda saliva.[1] This action of the sympathetic is not affected by atropin.

---

[1] Stricker's Histology, Syd. Soc. Trans., Art. Salivary Glands (by Pflüger).

[2] Ludwig's Festgabe, p. lxiv.

[3] Frey, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1876, p. 89.

In the cat, on the contrary, the chorda saliva is distinctly more viscid than the sympathetic saliva, though it is produced in greater abundance upon stimulation. The secretory activity of the cat's sympathetic is also arrested by atropin, though a larger dose than that which paralyzes the chorda is required.[2] In the rabbit both chorda and sympathetic saliva are free from mucus, though the latter is secreted more scantily than the former. The marked contrast, therefore, shown in the dog between the two kinds of saliva must not be considered as of fundamental origin. We shall return later on to a discussion of the essential differences between chorda and sympathetic action.

Most observers agree that when both chorda and sympathetic are stimulated at the same time with strong currents, the action of the chorda, contrary to what takes place as far as the blood-supply is concerned, prevails as far as secretion is concerned, *i. e.*, the flow is copious and watery. But the nature of the differences exhibited by the chorda and sympathetic in reference to the character of the secretion and the relations of the two will be discussed later on. See p. 360.

Bernard[3] observed that after section of all the nerves going to the gland, a continuous and fairly copious secretion of a watery saliva soon set in and continued for some time. Heidenhain[4] observed the same thing, the continuous flow beginning from four to twenty-four hours after section of the nerves, soon reaching a maximum, and after some weeks decreasing again as regeneration of the nerves took place. During this "paralytic secretion," as it is called, the gland diminishes in size, and in some cases where the nerves are not restored appears to undergo degeneration. A paralytic secretion also appears if the chorda only be divided; and urari poisoning[5] produces a similar flow. The paralytic secretion is watery, but contains both mucin and salivary corpuscles. The mechanism of its production is obscure, but Heidenhain observed a similar continuous secretion to result when the duct of the gland was kept ligatured for twenty-four hours and then opened. Heidenhain also observed that when the nerves of the gland on one side were cut, a paralytic secretion appeared in the gland of the other side also.

The natural reflex act of secretion may be inhibited, like the reflex action of the vaso-motor nerves, as its cerebral centre. Thus when, as in the old rice ordeal, fear parches the mouth, it is probable that the afferent impulses passing from the mouth cease, through emotional inhibition of their reflex centre, to give rise to efferent impulses.

---

[1] Eckhard, Beiträge, ii (1860), p. 81; iii (1864), p. 39.

[2] Langley, Journ. Physiol., i (1878), p. 96.

[3] Robin's Journal de l'Anat. et de la Physiolog., i (1864), p. 511.

[4] Op. cit.

[5] Bernard, op. cit.

The history of the submaxillary gland then teaches us that secretion in this instance is a reflex action, the efferent impulses of which directly affect the secreting cells, and that the vascular phenomena may assist, but are not the direct cause of the flow. We have dwelt long on this gland because it has been more fruitfully studied than any other. The nervous mechanisms of the other secretions may be passed over much more rapidly.

Parotid.—The secretion of this gland, like that of the submaxillary, is governed by two sets of fibres; one of cerebro-spinal origin, running along the auriculo-temporal branch of the fifth nerve, but originating either in the glosso-pharyngeal or the facial, and the other of sympathetic origin coming from the cervical sympathetic. Stimulation of the cerebro-spinal fibres produces a copious flow of watery saliva, free from mucus, the secretion reaching in the dog a pressure of 118 mm. mercury; stimulation of the cervical sympathetic gives rise in the rabbit to a secretion free from mucus but rich in organic matter and of greater amylolytic power than the cerebro-spinal secretion, but in the dog little or no secretion is produced, though, as we shall see later on, certain changes are brought about in the gland itself.[1] In both animals the cerebro-spinal fibres are vaso-dilator, and the sympathetic fibres vaso-constrictor in action. Stimulation of the central end of the glosso-pharyngeal produces by reflex action a secretion of the parotid, but that of the lingual is said to be without effect.[2]

In the dog the secretory fibres of cerebro-spinal origin arise from the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, pass by the *ramus tympanicus glosso-pharyngei* to the tympanum, and then join the *nervus petrosus superficialis minor*, by which they reach the *ramus auriculo-temporalis* of the fifth.[3] In the rabbit the fibres also run in the *ramus auriculo-temporalis*, but it does not seem clear whether they spring from the glosso-pharyngeal as in the dog, or from the facial.

Eckhard[4] failed, in the parotid of the sheep, to get any effect, whatever nerve he stimulated; a continuous secretion going on, and being neither increased nor decreased by nerve stimulation.

---

[1] Heidenhain, Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 1.

[2] Nawrocki, Breslau. Studien, iv (1868), p. 125.

[3] Nawrocki, op. cit. Loeb, Eckhard's Beiträge, v (1869), p. 1. Heidenhain, op. cit.

[4] Beiträge, vii (1876), p. 161.

Gastric Juice.—The pressure of food in the stomach causes a copious flow of gastric juice. The quantity secreted in man in the twenty-four hours has been calculated at from 13 to 14 litres. When the gastric mucous membrane is stimulated mechanically, as with a feather, secretion is excited; but to a very small amount even when the whole interior surface of the stomach is thus repeatedly stimulated. The most efficient stimulus is the natural stimulus, viz., food; but dilute alkalies seem to have unusually powerful stimulating effects; thus the swallowing of saliva at once provokes a flow of gastric juice. During fasting the gastric membrane is of a pale-gray color; during digestion it becomes red and flushed, and to a certain extent tumid. The secretion of gastric juice, therefore, seems to be accompanied by vascular dilation in the same way as in the secretion of saliva.

Seeing that, unlike the case of the salivary secretion, food is brought into the immediate neighborhood of the secreting cells, it is exceedingly probable that a great deal of the secretion is the result of the working of a local mechanism; and when a mechanical stimulus is applied to one spot of the gastric membrane the secretion is limited to the neighborhood of that spot and is not excited in distant parts. Nevertheless, since the flow of gastric juice may be excited or arrested by events in distant parts, as by emotions, the gastric membrane must be in some way or other brought into relation with the central nervous system; and probably future inquires will disclose a mechanism as complete as that of the submaxillary gland. At present, however, the matter is very imperfectly known.

Heidenhain[1] has succeeded in the dog in isolating (after the manner of Thiry's method with the intestine) a portion of the fundus from the rest of the stomach. He finds that introduction of food into the (main) stomach gives rise to a secretion of gastric juice in the isolated fundus portion. This would at first sight seem to indicate a nervous action, but the secretion in the isolated fundus is insignificant unless the material introduced into the main stomach be such as can be digested and absorbed. A similar connection between the act of secretion and the absorption of digested material is indicated by the rate of secretion of pepsin after a meal. Grützner[2] states that the rate of secretion of pepsin, abundant immediately upon food being taken, falls during the first and second hours afterwards, rises again up to a second maximum at the fourth or fifth hours, after which it finally but gradually sinks, the curve in fact being not unlike that of the pancreatic secretion (see Fig. 108). And Heidenhain[1] finds this to be true also of the secretion of the isolated fundus excited by the introduction of food into the main stomach. Schiff[2] has for many years maintained that the secretion of gastric juice is dependent on the gastric cells becoming "laden" with pepsinogenous material derived from the absorbed products of digestion, and especially from absorbed dextrin. But the amount either of pepsin or pepsinogenous material in the gastric membrane does not, according to Grützner, run parallel to the amount of pepsin in the secretion.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xix (1879), p. 148.

[2] Untersuch. ü. Bildung u. Ausscheidung des Pepsin, 1875.

The amount of acid in the secretion is much more constant than the pepsin, in fact varies but slightly. The increase of acidity in the contents of a meal is due simply to the fact that the acid accumulates as the gastric juice continues to be secreted.

Rutherford[3] found that the gastric membrane, flushed during digestion, became pale when the vagi were cut. Stimulation of the central end of either vagus caused a reddening of the gastric membrane, but stimulation of the peripheral end produced no constant effect. From these results we may infer that afferent impulses pass up the vagus and by inhibiting in the medulla the vaso-motor centre governing the gastric bloodvessels, cause a dilation of the latter. The efferent impulses evidently do not descend by the vagus; probably, therefore, their path is along the sympathetic. After division of both vagi, gastric juice of normal acidity and peptic power continues to be secreted. The same occurs after division of both splanchnic nerves, and even after extirpation of the cœliac ganglion.

Bile.—When the acid contents of the stomach are poured over the orifice of the biliary duct, a gush of bile takes place. Indeed, stimulation of this region of the duodenum with a dilute acid at once calls forth a flow, whereas alkaline fluids so applied have little or no effect. This, probably, is a reflex action leading to contraction of the muscular walls of the gall-bladder and ducts, accompanied by a relaxation of the sphincter of the orifice; it refers, therefore, to the discharge rather than to the secretion of bile.

When the secretion of the bile is studied by means of a biliary fistula (which, however, probably induces errors by the total withdrawal from the body of the bile which should naturally flow into the intestine), it is seen to rise rapidly after meals, reaching its maximum in from four to ten hours. There seems to be an immediate sudden rise when food is taken, then a fall, followed subsequently by a more gradual rise up to the maximum, and ending in a final fall. It is exceedingly probable that these variations are due to the action of the nervous system, but the exact nature of the nervous mechanism is unknown.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] See also Leçons sur la Physiologie de la Digestion, ii, 1867.

[3] Phil. Trans. Edin., xxvi (1870).

Stimulation of the splanchnics causes an increase in the flow from a biliary fistula, but this is probably due to contraction of the bile-ducts.

Rutherford[1] finds that the injection of various substances, ipecacuanha, podophyllin, etc., into the duodenum causes an increase in the actual secretion, but the manner of the increase is not yet explained.

Unlike the case of saliva, the pressure under which the bile is secreted never exceeds that of the blood, and is in general very low. When a water manometer is connected with the gall-bladder of a guinea-pig, the *ductus choledochus* being ligatured, the fluid may rise in the manometer to about 200 mm. (equivalent to about 16 mm. mercury), but not much beyond. If water be poured into the open end of the manometer so as to raise the pressure much above 200 mm., resorption into the circulation takes place, and the fluid in the manometer sinks to, or even below, the normal level.[2] The quantity secreted in man in the 24 hours has been estimated roughly at about 10 kilos, but the calculations are based on very imperfect data.

Pancreatic Juice.—The relation of the nervous system to the secretion of the pancreatic juice has been studied rather more fully. N. O. Bernstein[3] finds that in the dog the secretion, after food has been taken, follows the curve given in Fig. 108. There is a sudden maximum rise immediately after food has been taken. This must be due to nervous action. Then follows a fall, after which there is, as in bile, a secondary rise, the causation of which may, or may not, be nervous in nature. The quantity secreted in 24 hours by man has been calculated at 300 cc. Like the salivary glands, the pancreas while secreting is flushed, through dilation of its bloodvessels.

According to N. O. Bernstein,[4] the secretion is at once stopped by nausea or vomiting. Section of the vagus stops the secretion for a short time; it soon, however, recommences. Stimulation of the central vagus causes an arrest lasting for some time after the stimulus has been removed. It is probable, therefore, that the arrest of secretion during vomiting is due to afferent impulses ascending the vagus and descending by some other channel. If all the nerves going to the pancreas around the pancreatic artery be severed as completely as possible, a continuous paralytic flow, not increased but rather diminished by food, and very slightly if at all hindered by nausea or stimulation of vagus, is brought on. Heidenhain[1] states that a stimulation of the medulla oblongata causes an increased flow.

---

[1] Journ. Anat. Phys., x, xi (1876, 1877); Brit. Med. J., 1878, 1879.

[2] Friedländer u. Barisch (Heidenhain), Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1860, p. 646.

[3] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1869.

[4] Op. cit.

FIG. 108.

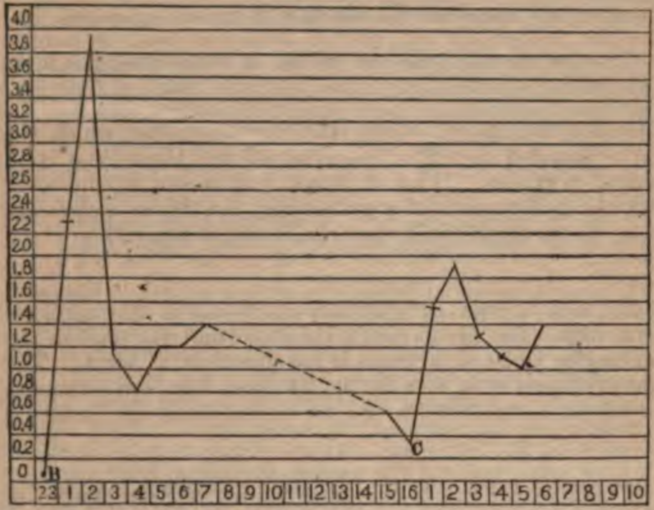


Diagram Illustrating the Influence of Food on the Secretion of Pancreatic Juice.—After N. O. BERNSTEIN.

The abscissæ represent hours after taking food; the ordinates represent in cc. the amount of secretion in 10 minutes. A marked rise is seen at *B* immediately after food was taken, with a secondary rise between the 4th and 5th hours afterwards. Where the line is dotted, the observation was interrupted. On food being again given at *C*, another rise is seen, followed in turn by a depression and a secondary rise at the 4th hour. A very similar curve would represent the secretion of bile.

Succus Entericus.—With regard to the secretion furnished by the intestine itself our information is very limited. Thiry[2] found that in the isolated intestine the secretion was not a constant one, but needed for its production some stimulus (mechanical or other), which probably acted in a reflex manner.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 557.
[2] Wien. Sitzungsbericht, l, p. 77.

Moreau[1] found that after section of the nerves going to a piece of intestine isolated after Thiry's method, a copious flow of a dilute intestinal juice takes place. This appears to be comparable to the paralytic flow of saliva and pancreatic juice.

Thus, while the influence of the nervous system is in the case of the submaxillary gland tolerably clear, in the case of the other secretions we have much yet to learn, and must rest rather on the analogy with the submaxillary gland than on any known facts. We cannot, however, go far wrong, if we conclude that in all cases secretion is essentially due to an increase in the activity of the epithelium cells, and that variations in the blood-supply have a secondary effect only.

It must, however, be borne in mind that substances brought to the secreting cell by the blood may possibly act as chemical stimuli of its protoplasm, just as certain chemical substances may stimulate a muscular fibre to contraction in the absence of all nerves. Thus, any substance, such as a therapeutic drug, may affect any given secretion, in various ways, viz., (1) by dilating the bloodvessels and increasing the blood-supply, (2) by acting as a direct chemical stimulus on the protoplasm, (3) by exciting secretion in the cell through reflex action of the nervous mechanism belonging to the cell, (4) by acting directly on the nervous centre of that mechanism. We shall return to these questions when we come to speak of the secretion of urine.

We are now in a position to attack the second problem. What is the exact nature of the activity which is thus called forth?

We learn from the researches of Heidenhain[2] that each secreting cell of a pancreas of an animal (dog) which has been fasting for thirty hours or more consists of two zones; an inner zone, next to the lumen of the alveolus, which is studded with fine granules, and a small outer zone, which is homogeneous or marked with delicate striæ. Carmine stains the outer zone easily, the inner zone with difficulty. The nucleus, more or less irregular in shape, is placed partly in the one and partly in the other zone. When, however, the pancreas of an animal in full digestion (about six hours after food and onwards) is examined, the outer homogeneous zone is found to be much wider, the granular inner zone being correspondingly narrower, and in some cases actually disappearing. The whole cell is smaller, and owing to the relatively larger size of the outer zone, stains well. The nucleus is spherical and well formed. If the pancreas be examined at the end of digestion, when its activity has once more ceased, and it has entered into a state of rest, the outer zone is again found to be narrow, the granular inner zone occupying the greater part of the cell, which in consequence stains with difficulty; and the whole cell has once more become larger. There seems to be but one interpretation of these facts. During the time that the pancreas is secreting most rapidly, there is a diminution of the inner zone; that is to say, the inner zone furnishes material for the secretion. But while the inner zone is diminishing, the outer zone is increasing, that is to say, the outer zone is being built up again out of materials brought to it from the blood, though not to such an extent as to prevent the whole cell from becoming smaller. When digestion is ended, after the pancreas has ceased to secrete, the inner zone again enlarges, evidently at the expense of the outer zone, though the latter also continues to increase, causing the whole cell to become bigger. From thence till the next meal there occurs a partial consumption of the inner zone, so that the outer zone becomes more conspicuous again, though the whole cell becomes smaller. Evidently out of the protoplasm of the cell, which is itself formed at the expense of the blood, the granules are formed, and these being deposited towards the lumen of the alveolus distinguish the outer homogeneous from the inner granular zone, and the secretion is produced at the expense of the granules.

---

[1] Centrbt. Med. Wiss., 1868, p. 209.

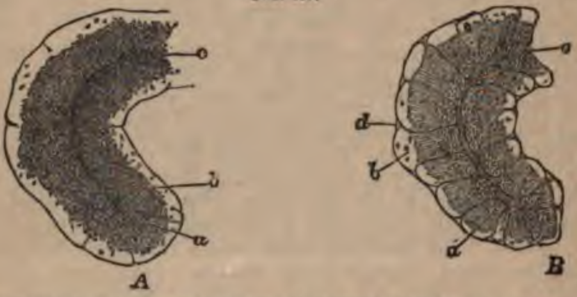
[2] Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 557.

Kühne and Sheridan Lea,[1] observing, under the microscope, the pancreas of the living rabbit, have been able to watch the actual process of secretion; and their results, while they extend, in the main corroborate those of Heidenhain. In the quiescent pancreas of the rabbit, Fig. 109, *A*, the cells are for the most part filled with granules, the transparent outer zone being reduced to small dimensions; the outlines of the individual cells are very indistinct, with the margins of the alveoli smooth; the lumen of the alveolus is obscure, and the blood-supply is scanty. Upon secretion being set up, Fig. 109, *B*, the margins of the active alveoli become indented through a bulging of their constituent cells, the outlines of which now become distinct; the granules retreat towards the inner zone, bordering on the cavity of the alveolus, and as secretion goes on, evidently diminish in number, the whole cell becoming hyaline and transparent from the outer border inwards; at the same time the bloodvessels dilate largely, and the stream of blood through the capillaries becomes full and rapid.

---

[1] Verhandl. Naturhist. Med. Vereins, Heidelberg, Bd. i (1877), Hft. 5.

FIG. 109.



A portion of the Pancreas of the Rabbit (Kühne and Sheridan Lea). *A* at rest, *B* in a state of activity.

a, the inner granular zone, which in *A* is larger and more closely studded with fine granules than in *B*, in which the granules are fewer and coarser.

b, the outer transparent zone, small in *A*, larger in *B*, and in the latter marked with faint striæ.

c, the lumen, very obvious in *B*, but indistinct in *A*.

d, an indentation at the junction of two cells, seen in *B*, but not occurring in *A*.

We have already seen, p. 330, that, in order to obtain an actively proteolytic aqueous pancreatic extract, the animal must be killed during full digestion. This statement now requires modification.

If the pancreas of an animal, even in full digestion, be treated, *while still warm from the body*, with glycerin, the glycerin extract is inert, or nearly so, as regards proteid bodies. If, however, the same pancreas be kept for twenty-four hours before treating with glycerin, the glycerin extract readily digests fibrin and other proteids in the presence of an alkali. If the pancreas, while still warm, be rubbed up in a mortar for a few minutes with dilute acetic acid, and then treated with glycerin, the glycerin extract is strongly proteolytic. If the glycerin extract obtained without acid from the warm pancreas, and therefore inert, be diluted largely with water, and kept at 35° C. for some time, it becomes active. If treated with acidulated instead of distilled water, its activity, as judged of by its action on fibrin in the presence of sodium carbonate, is much sooner developed. If the inert glycerin extract of warm pancreas be precipitated with alcohol in excess, the precipitate, inert as a proteolytic ferment when fresh, becomes active when exposed for some time in an aqueous solution, rapidly so when treated with acidulated water. These facts show that a pancreas taken fresh from the body, even during full digestion, *contains but little ready-made ferment*, though there is present in it a body which, by some kind of decomposition, *gives birth to the ferment*. They further show that though the presence of an alkali is essential to proteolytic action of the actual ferment, the formation of the ferment out of the body in question is favored by the presence of an acid. To this body, this mother of the ferment, Heidenhain has given the name of *zymogen*.[1] It has not at present been satisfactorily isolated.

Hence, in judging of the functional activity of the pancreas under various circumstances, we must not look to the ready-made ferment, but the ferment giving zymogen. And Heidenhain has made the important observation that the amount of zymogen in a pancreas at any given time rises and sinks *pari passu* with the granular inner zone. The wider the inner zone the larger the amount, the narrower the zone the smaller the amount of zymogen; and in cases of so-called paralytic secretions from old-established fistulæ, where the juice is wholly inert over proteids, the inner granular zone is absent from the cells. Evidently so far from the proteolytic ferment being simply drained off from the blood, in the first place the actual ferment is formed in the pancreas out of the zymogen, and in the second place the zymogen of the inner granular zone is formed in the cell itself out of the homogeneous outer zone. We have in fact two distinct processes to deal with: (1) the manufacture of zymogen; this is part of the growth or nutrition of the cell, and is slow and continued; (2) the splitting up or conversion of the zymogen into the proteolytic ferment; this is the real act of secreting, and is intermittent and rapid; this is the form of activity which can be called forth by nervous impulses, the form of activity which is comparable to a muscular contraction.

The thought at once suggests itself that the appearance of an acid in the protoplasm of the cell under circumstances similar to those which give rise to the acid formed during muscular contraction, might be the immediate cause of the zymogen becoming converted into ferment.

---

[1] Or zymogen may be reserved as a generic name for "mother of ferment;" in that case the particular mother of the pancreatic proteolytic ferment might be called *trypsinogen*.

In the case, then, of the proteolytic ferment of the pancreas we have striking proof that the process of secretion, both in its preparatory and executive stages, is a laborious, active, manufacturing function of the cell, and not simply a passive, selective, filtering function. How far this is also true of the other ferments of the pancreas, and of the active constituents of the other digestive juices, cannot at present be authoritatively affirmed, but we have, both in the case of the stomach and of the salivary glands, facts pointing very distinctly in that direction.

In the gastric glands of an animal previous to taking a meal, the central (as distinguished from the ovoid [acid] or "peptic") cells are pale and finely granular, and in sections taken from glands hardened in alcohol, do not stain readily with carmine and other dyes. During the early stages of gastric digestion, the same cells are found somewhat swollen, but turbid and more coarsely granular; they stain much more readily. At a later stage they become smaller and shrunken, but are even more turbid and granular than before, and stain even still more deeply. This is true, not only of the central cells of the so-called peptic [acid] glands, but also of the cells of which the so-called mucous [peptic] glands of the pyloric end of the stomach are built up. (The ovoid [acid] or peptic cells themselves during digestion appear swollen, and project more on the outside of the gland, but otherwise appear unchanged.) Evidently, during digestion, the central cells become changed in nature so as to be more readily stained with carmine and at the same time loaded with a more closely granular material.[1]

In the glands of the pylorus there is seen in the lumen also of the gland a granular material, which, since it makes its appearance after the mechanical stimulation of the membrane of an empty stomach, cannot, when it occurs during digestion, be regarded as simply digested food about to be absorbed. The granular character of the cells themselves therefore must also come from within, and cannot be due to material absorbed from the cavity of the stomach.

It will be observed that the phenomena of the gastric cells are somewhat different from those of the pancreatic cells. In the case of the pancreatic cell it is the part of the cell which contains the granules which does not stain readily; and the granules make their appearance during rest, and disappear upon stimulation. In the case of gastric central cells, it is when the cell becomes loaded with granules that it stains most deeply, and it becomes loaded with granules not during rest but during stimulation, or at least when the stomach is digesting. The observations of Kühne and Lea show that in the pancreas the granules are actually used up to form the secretion. If in the gastric cell the granules are really elements of the secretion, they must during active digestion be formed more rapidly than they are used up, and must cease to be formed as the work of digestion languishes.

---

[1] Heidenhain, Archiv f. micr. Anat., vi (1870), p. 368. Rollett, Untersuch. a. d. Inst. f. Physiol. u. Hist. in Graz, Hft. ii (1871), p. 143.

There has been a great dispute as to whether the pyloric end of the stomach, that containing the so-called peptic glands only, has peptic powers. But the researches of Heidenhain[1] have decided the question in the affirmative. This observer succeeded in isolating the pylorus from the rest of the stomach after the manner of Thiry's operation on the small intestine, and obtained from the isolated portion a small quantity of viscid alkaline secretion, which when treated with dilute hydrochloric acid rapidly digested fibrin. The secretion also, without the addition of acid, rapidly curdled milk, but showed no amylolytic action. A reconciliation of some of the previous contradictory statements may perhaps be found in the fact,[2] that while the glycerin extract of the fresh pylorus, even in the presence of free hydrochloric acid, is inert, care being taken to avoid admixture with the secretion of the cardiac end, an acid infusion of the same part rapidly becomes peptic. This would seem to indicate that the pyloric glands are free from actual pepsin but contain a pepsinogen, comparable to pancreatic zymogen, which by the action of an acid is split up into pepsin. Apparently, however, pepsinogen differs from zymogen in being insoluble in glycerin, while the latter is, as we have seen, freely soluble in that fluid. This point requires to be more fully worked out.

We may therefore with good reason suppose that pepsin is formed by the direct activity of the gastric cells; and in that case the pepsin which is present in blood,[3] in muscle, and in urine,[4] is not the source of the pepsin in the gastric juice, but is already-used pepsin reabsorbed from the stomach and intestine, and on its way to be discharged from the body.

The formation of the free acid of the gastric juice is very obscure. It seems natural to suppose that it arises in some way from the decomposition of sodium chloride; but nothing definite can at present be stated as to the mechanism of that decomposition; and even admitting that sodium chloride is the ultimate source of the chlorine element of the acid, it appears more likely that that element should be set free in the stomach by the decomposition of some highly complex and unstable chlorine compound previously generated, than that it should arise by the direct splitting up of so stable a body as sodium chloride, at the time when the acid is secreted.[1] One thing, however, seems certain, that the acid is formed only at the surface of the gastric membrane.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 169; also Klemensiewicz, Wien. Sitzungsbericht, Bd. 71, March, 1875.

[2] Ebstein and Grützner, Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), p. 122. Grützner, Untersuch. ü. Bild. u. Ausschied. d. Pepsin, 1875.

[3] The presence of pepsin in blood is one reason why boiled fibrin should be used in peptic experiments rather than raw. The boiling destroys the pepsin clinging to the fibrin.

[4] Brücke, Moleschott's Untersuch., vi, 474.

If the reaction of the mucous membrane of the stomach be tested at different depths from the surface, as in the long tubular glands of a bird, it will be seen that the acidity is confined to the upper portion, indeed to the mouths, of the glands. So also when potassium ferrocyanide and an iron salt are injected into the veins, a blue color is developed only on the surface of the mucous membrane, and not in the depths of the gland, showing that an acidity sufficient to allow of the development of the blue is present only at the surface.

Heidenhain has made the suggestion not only that the central cells manufacture pepsin (or pepsinogen), (and of this after the proved peptic powers of the pylorous there can be hardly any doubt), but also that the large ovoid (peptic) cells manufacture the acid of the gastric juice. Since the ovoid cells lie chiefly in the middle portions of the gland, the superficial development of the acid requires, on this view, some special explanation. In favor of such a function of the "ovoid" cells has been adduced the curious circumstance that in the frog pepsin is largely present in the lower part of the œsophagus, where cells altogether like the "central" cells of the gastric glands are abundant, whereas the stomach itself, which is richly supplied with "ovoid" or peptic cells, appears to secrete an acid fluid, which when the œsophagus is ligatured is extremely poor in pepsin.[2]

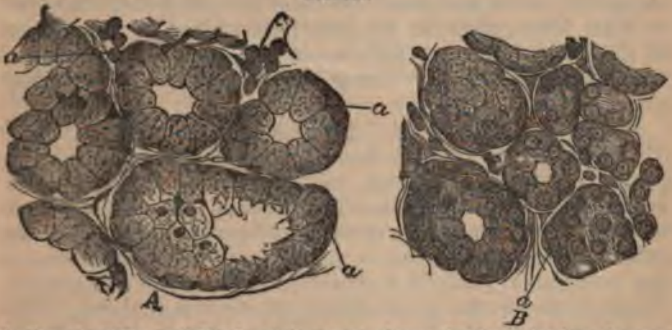
In the case of the salivary glands the phenomena, to a certain extent, differ according as the gland is a "mucous" gland, *i. e.*, one containing a larger or smaller number of mucus-producing cells, and secreting a more or less viscid mucous saliva, or a "serous" gland, *i. e.*, one containing no such mucus-producing cells, and secreting a thin limpid saliva free from mucus. The submaxillary gland of the dog may be taken as the type of mucous glands. If a section is prepared of this gland when at rest, *i. e.*, when it has not for some time been actively secreting, the cells of the alveoli (Fig. 110) are found not to stain readily with carmine; and this lack of staining appears to be due to the fact that the greater part of the protoplasm of the cells has become converted into a mucin-bearing substance, only a small portion of unchanged protoplasm, easily staining with carmine, remaining round the nucleus.

---

[1] Cf. Maly, Liebig's Annalen, Bd. 173 (1874), p. 227.

[2] Swiecicki, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 444. Partsch, Archiv f. micros. Anat., xiv (1877), 179.

FIG. 110.



Section of a "Mucous" Gland. *A*, in a state of rest; *B*, after it has been for some time actively secreting.—After LAVDOWSKY.

a, demilune cells. *c*, leucocytes lying in the inter-alveolar spaces. The darker shading in both figures is intended to indicate the amount of staining.

In addition to these "muciparous cells" are seen a number of smaller half-moon-shaped (demilune) cells, the protoplasm of which stains deeply with carmine. These half-moon cells which lie outside the muciparous cells, between them and the basement membrane, are apparently young cells, frequently possess two or more nuclei, and in general seem to be in a state of active growth and multiplication.

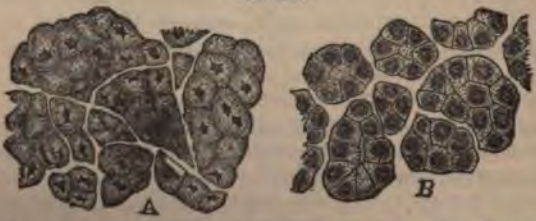
When similar sections are prepared from a gland which has been thrown into long-continued activity by stimulation of the chorda,[1] the muciparous portion of the alveolar cells, that portion which does not stain rapidly, is found to have diminished, and the protoplasmic staining portion to have increased in quantity in proportion to the amount of stimulation (Fig. 110, *B*). In some cases no muciparous cells can anywhere be seen; all the cells are small, all are alike composed of protoplasm, and all stain deeply. It has been disputed whether a muciparous cell simply discharges its mucin, the removal of the mucin being followed by a growth of the protoplasm round the nucleus, to be in turn followed by a new development of mucin, the same cell thus forming and discharging mucin again and again; or whether the whole cell goes to pieces at the time it discharges the mucus, its place being taken by one of the half-moon cells, which grows up rapidly for that purpose. In all probability both events occur, at least after prolonged stimulation, the simple discharge of mucus and regeneration of the cell being analogous to what takes place in the pancreas, while the substitution of the young half-moon cell, in place of the old disintegrated muciparous cell, is something special to the submaxillary gland.

---

[1] Cf. Lavdowsky, Archiv f. micros. Anat., xiii (1877), p. 281.

In the case of a "serous" gland such as the submaxillary of the rabbit, no very marked differences in microscopic appearance can be recognized even after long-continued stimulation of the chorda tympani, and a similar absence of structural changes seems to be characteristic of the parotid of the rabbit, also a serous gland, even when a most copious secretion has been called forth by stimulation of the auriculo-temporal. When, however, the cervical sympathetic is stimulated, either in the rabbit or the dog, very marked changes occur in the parotid, although in the dog no saliva whatever may be secreted; and these changes are quite similar to those witnessed in the central cells of the gastric glands. During rest the cells of the parotid as seen in sections of the gland hardened in alcohol (Fig. 111, *A*), are pale, transparent, with sparse

FIG. 111.



Section of a "Serous" Gland, the Parotid of the Rabbit. *A*, at rest. *B*, after stimulation of the cervical sympathetic.—After HEIDENHAIN.

ining with difficulty, and the nuclei possess irreg-
if shrunken. After stimulation of the sym-
lasm of the cells becomes turbid, and laden
111, *B*), and stains much more readily,
their irregular outline grow round and

larger, with conspicuous nucleoli, the whole cell at the same time, at least after prolonged stimulation, becoming distinctly smaller.[1]

Putting all the above facts together, it is clear that in the case of the salivary glands, gastric glands, and pancreas, and presumably in the case of all secreting glands, the secretion is the result of the activity of the protoplasm of the secreting cell. Where mucin is an important element of the secretion, the microscopic changes are very conspicuous. During rest the protoplasm of the cell becomes converted into a mucigenous substance; when the gland is excited to activity the mucigenous substance gives rise to mucin, which is ejected from the cell. The cell is either thus broken up entirely or reduced in dimensions; but coincidently a rejuvenescence of the protoplasm, either of the remnant of the cell itself or of the adjoining demilune, takes place, and the old cell is thus replaced by a new cell of smaller size, but composed of fresh, deeply-staining protoplasm, which at first is native undifferentiated protoplasm, but which subsequently generates out of itself fresh mucigenous material. Where the secretion does not contain mucus the changes are less gross and not so readily recognizable, but we have a descending series from the mucous salivary gland, through the pancreas and gastric gland and serous gland stimulated by the sympathetic to the serous gland stimulated by a cerebro-spinal nerve, in each of which more or less distinctly an explosive decomposition, leading to a discharge of the secreted material, is accompanied by an increased growth of protoplasm whereby the supply of a further secretion is provided for. In the last case, the serous gland stimulated by means of a cerebro-spinal nerve, the destructive and constructive metabolic processes appear to be so exactly adjusted that no obvious change in the appearance of the cells results. It must be left for future inquiry to determine the nature of the various granules, which make their appearance in the various cases, and their relation to the ferments or other constituents of the secretions.

We are now in a better position to discuss the exact nature of the changes effected in the salivary gland by stimulation of the chorda tympani (or auriculo-temporal) and sympathetic nerves respectively.

Czermak[2] was the first to point out that in the dog the effect of chorda stimulation was hindered by a concomitant stimulation of the sympathetic; and Kühne[3] observed that no flow at all took place when both nerves were simultaneously stimulated with minimum currents, *i. e.*, with currents which applied to either nerve separately were just sufficient to produce an obvious flow; each nerve, in fact, seemed to be the antagonist of the other.

---

[1] Heidenhain, Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 1.
[2] Wien. Sitzungsberichte, xxv (1857), p. 3.
[3] Lehrb., p. 5 (1866).

But Langley[1] finds that in the cat (in which animal, contrary to what occurs in the dog, the sympathetic saliva is less viscid than the chorda saliva, and the action of the sympathetic is like the chorda paralyzed by atropin), minimal stimuli, when applied simultaneously to the chorda and sympathetic nerves, are not antagonistic as regards secretion; on the contrary, the amount of secretion following simultaneous stimulation of the two nerves is at least equal to the sum of the amounts of separate stimulation.

Ludwig and Becker[2] observed, in the submaxillary gland of the dog, that after continued stimulation of the chorda (*i. e.*, a long series of stimulations repeated with very brief intervals) the percentage of solids in the saliva very considerably diminished, the lessening being largely confined to the organic matter, and the inorganic salts being only slightly affected. Heidenhain[3] confirmed this result, and extended it to the sympathetic as well; he found, in fact, that after prolonged stimulation the sympathetic saliva became watery. He also observed that prolonged stimulation of the chorda or sympathetic diminished the organic matter in the saliva produced by a stimulation of the sympathetic or chorda immediately following. These facts show that there is in the salivary cell a store of material upon which both chorda and sympathetic can alike draw, material which may give rise to the organic constituents of either chorda or sympathetic saliva, according as the one or the other nerve is stimulated; and, further, that during nerve-stimulation the supply of this material does not keep pace with its consumption.

These results Heidenhein[4] has confirmed and extended by additional recent observations. Thus he finds that, in the case of the submaxillary and parotid of the dog, the rate of secretion when the cerebro-spinal nerves are stimulated, exhaustion being avoided, increases up to a maximum with increase of the stimulation, and that the percentage of *saline matters* in the saliva increases similarly up to a certain maximum, whatever may have been the condition of the gland before the beginning of the stimulation; but that the percentage of *organic matter*, though also a function of the strength of the stimulus, is dependent on the condition of the gland, increasing with the stimulus if the gland had been previously at rest, but not so increasing if the gland had been previously thrown into a state of prolonged activity; moreover, so long as the gland has not become completely exhausted, strong stimulation may be followed by a period of *after-action*, during which the percentage of organic matter is once more increased. In other words, the organic constituents of the secretion are derived from the store of material laid up in the cell, which store is comparatively soon exhausted, and requires time and nutritive labor for its restoration. The saline constituents, on the other hand, seem to be ejected from the gland during secretion by some operation of a more simple, and of presumably a more physical, nature, being apparently taken up from the surrounding lymph and merely passed through the cell, so that an unlimited quantity may be got rid of without the loss being felt by the gland-cell. He, moreover, has ascertained that, in the parotid of the dog, stimulation of the sympathetic, even when it gives rise of itself to no secretion, has a remarkable effect on the constitution of the secretion produced by simultaneous or sequent stimulation of the cerebro-spinal secretory fibres; the percentage of organic constituents of the saliva secreted under the influence of stimulation of the cerebro-spinal nerve is very largely increased by a previous or simultaneous stimulation of the cervical sympathetic. In the parotid of the rabbit (and sometimes in the parotid of the dog) stimulation of the sympathetic does produce a secretion; and since the saliva thus secreted is markedly richer in organic matter than that secreted under stimulation of the cerebro-spinal nerve, the larger amount of organic matter which is observed in the saliva secreted under simultaneous stimulation of both nerves as compared with the amount in that secreted under stimulation of the cerebro-spinal nerve alone, might be explained as the result of mere admixture with sympathetic secretion. No such explanation can be given of the change which sympathetic stimulation produces in the character of the cerebro-spinal secretion, when, as is generally the case in the parotid of the dog, it is unable by itself to give rise to any secretion. And in all cases the microscopic changes in the parotid gland induced by sympathetic stimulation are very pronounced, while those resulting from cerebro-spinal stimulation are comparatively slight. The interpretation which Heidenhain puts on his results is that in the act of secretion of saliva there are at least two processes: one by which the stored-up organic material of the cell is converted into the soluble organic constituents of the secretion, and a second by which a stream of saline-holding fluid passes from the lymph spaces around the alveolus through the cell into the lumen of the duct, carrying with it as it goes the organic material furnished by the first process. Both these processes, he suggests, are governed by distinct fibres, which he calls respectively *trophic* fibres, viz., those bringing about the metabolism of the cell-substance and *secretory* fibres, *i. e.*, those giving rise to the flow of fluid outwards to the duct. The latter may be regarded as dominant in those nerves, such as the chorda tympani of the dog, stimulation of which produces a copious but watery solution; the former in those, such as the cervical sympathetic of the same animal, stimulation of which produces a secretion rich in organic matter. In other words, the quantity and quality of the secretion produced by the stimulation of any nerve, sympathetic or cerebro-spinal, will depend on the relative amount of trophic and secretory fibres present in the nerve. This view of Heidenhain's is very acceptable as enabling us to form clearer notions of the complex act of secretion, but it obviously leaves much yet to be cleared up. The metabolic action of the trophic fibres is fairly comparable to the explosive decomposition which is the basis of a muscular contraction, but the hypothesis of a purely secretory activity, of the starting and maintenance of a rapid flow through the cell independent of physiological changes in the substance of the protoplasm, and yet directly dependent on the action of nerves, lands us in considerable difficulties.[1]

---

[1] Journal Physiol., i (1878), p. 96.

f. rat. Med., i, 278.

lau. Studien, iv (1868).

ger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 1.

Relying on the analogy of the glands just studied, we may fairly assume that the secretion of even such a complex fluid as the bile is in the main the result of the direct metabolic activity of the protoplasm of the hepatic cells. And this view is supported by the fact that after extirpation of the liver, no accumulation of the biliary constituents is observed to take place during the few hours of life remaining to the animal after the operation. Still the great complexity of the secretion introduces several very important considerations. In the first place, the liver, unlike the other digestive glands, has a double supply of blood; and vain attempts have been made to settle by direct experiment the question whether the hepatic artery or the vena portæ is the more closely concerned in the production of bile. Ligature of the hepatic artery has sometimes had no effect on the secretion, sometimes has interfered with it. Sudden ligature of the vena portæ at once stops the flow of bile; but gradual obliteration may be effected without either causing death or even interfering with the secretion, anastomatic branches forming a collateral circulation and thus maintaining an efficient flow of blood through the liver. The problem, which is probably a barren one, cannot be settled in this way.

In the second place, the hepatic cells not only secrete bile, but, as we shall see later on, take an active part in other operations of even greater importance. The consideration of the question in what way these several functions of the hepatic cells are related to each other must be deferred for the present.

In the third place, even if we maintain that the chief constituents of the bile are manufactured in the hepatic cells, and not simply drained off from the blood, we are not thereby precluded from admitting that the hepatic cells may avail themselves of certain half-made materials, the arrival of which in the blood may, so to speak, lighten their labors, or that they may even boldly seize upon and pass off as their own handiwork any wholly manufactured constituents which may be offered to them. Thus we have already seen reasons for thinking that the bile-pigments are not made *de novo* in the hepatic cells, but spring from hæmoglobin, the change in the liver being simple transformation. So, also, it is quite possible, though not proved, that much, if not all, of the cholesterin of bile is merely withdrawn by the liver from the body at large. And even with the central components of bile, the bile salts, we know that in the case of taurocholic acid, taurin is normally present in certain tissues, and that in the case of glycocholic acid, glycin, if not a normal constituent of any tissue, is present in the liver, since the liver can convert benzoic into hippuric acid, as we shall see in a succeeding section; so that the formation of these bodies by the hepatic cells may be limited to the production of cholalic acid and its conjugation with one or other of the above amido-acids. Moreover, as a matter of fact, we find that the flow of bile from a biliary fistula is much increased by the injection of bile into the small intestines.[1] This experiment renders it possible that some of the bile, which in natural digestion is poured into the intestine, is reabsorbed and carried back to the liver to do duty over again.

---

[1] Cf. Hering, Wien. Sitzungsberichte, Bd. 66 (1872), p. 83.

Possibly, however, the effect may be explained by some more indirect action of the bile in the intestine.

In medical practice distinction is drawn between jaundice by suppression of the secreting functions of the liver and jaundice by retention, brought about by an obstruction existing in some part of the biliary passages. The gravity of the symptoms in the first class of cases shows that an arrest or a too great diminution of the normal functions of the hepatic cells is at least accompanied by the presence in the blood of substances injurious to life; but how far the presence of those substances is due to a failure of the manufacture of bile and the accumulation in the system of the materials for the formation of bile, or to a failure of other functions of the hepatic cells must be regarded as at present undetermined. The presence of the bile-pigment in this form of jaundice would seem to indicate that the formation of the pigment, *i. e.*, the transformation of hæmoglobin into bilirubin, requires but little labor on the part of the cell, and may be carried on even when the protoplasm of the cell is highly deranged.

Seeing the great solvent power of both gastric and pancreatic juice, the question is naturally suggested, Why does not the stomach digest itself? After death the stomach is frequently found partially digested, viz., in cases where death has taken place suddenly on a full stomach. In an ordinary death the membrane ceases to secrete before the circulation is at an end. That there is no special virtue in living things which prevents their being digested is shown by the fact that the legs of a frog, or the ear of a rabbit, introduced into a gastric fistula, are readily digested. Pavy[1] has suggested that the blood-current keeps up an alkalinity sufficient to neutralize the acidity of the juice; and he shows by experiment that tracts of the gastric membrane from which the circulation is cut off are digested. But tracts so cut off soon die; they lose not only the alkalinity of the blood but also all their powers; and the alkalinity of the blood will not explain why the mouths of the glands, which are acid, are not digested, or why the pancreatic juice, which is active in an alkaline medium, does not digest the proteids of the pancreas itself, or why the gastric membrane of the bloodless actinozoon or hydrozoon does not digest itself. We might add, it does not explain why the amœba, while dissolving the protoplasm of the swallowed diatom, does not dissolve its own protoplasm. We cannot answer this question at all at present, any more than the similar one, why the delicate protoplasm of the amœba resists during life all osmosis, while a few moments after it is dead, osmotic effects become abundantly evident.

---

[1] Schiff, Pflüger's Archiv, iii (1870), p. 398.

SEC. 3. THE MUSCULAR MECHANISMS OF DIGESTION.

From its entrance into the mouth until such remnant of it as is undigested leaves the body, the food is continually subjected to movements having for their object the trituration of the food as in mastication, or its more complete mixture with the digestive juices, or its forward progress through the alimentary canal. These various movements may briefly be considered in detail.

Mastication.—Of this it need only be said that in man it consists chiefly of an up and down movement of the lower jaw, combined, in the grinding action of the molar teeth, with a certain amount of lateral and fore and aft movement. The lower jaw is raised by means of the temporal, masseter, and internal pterygoid muscles. The slighter effort of depression brings into action chiefly the digastric muscle, though the mylo-hyoid and genio-hyoid probably share in the matter. Contraction of the external pterygoids pulls forward the condyles, and thrusts the lower teeth in front of the upper. Contraction of the pterygoids on one side will also throw the teeth on to the opposite side. [These muscles are frequently denominated the rotators of the jaw, and are the principal muscles concerned in this movement which is so well marked in the ruminants.] The lower horizontally placed fibres of oral serve to retract the jaw.

---

[1] Proc. Roy. Soc., xii, 386, 559.

During mastication the food is moved to and fro, and rolled about by the movements of the tongue [and is kept between the teeth of the upper and lower jaws by a conjoint action of the tongue and cheek muscles]. These movements are effected by the muscles of that organ, and which are governed by the hypoglossal nerve.

The act of mastication is a voluntary one, guided, as are so many voluntary acts, not only by muscular sense, but also by contact sensations. The motor fibres of the fifth cranial nerve convey motor impulses from the brain to the muscles; but paralysis of the sensory fibres of the same nerve renders mastication difficult by depriving the will of the aid of the usual sensation.

Deglutition.—The food when sufficiently masticated is, by the movements of the tongue, gathered up into a bolus on the middle of the upper surface of that organ. The front of the tongue being raised—partly by its intrinsic muscles, and partly by the stylo-glossus—the bolus is thrust back between the tongue and the palate through the anterior pillars of the fauces or *isthmus faucium*. Immediately before it arrives there, the soft palate is raised by the levator palati, and so brought to touch the posterior wall of the pharynx, which, by the contraction of the upper margin of the superior constrictor of the pharynx, bulges somewhat forward. The elevation of the soft palate causes a distinct rise of pressure in the nasal chambers; this can be shown by introducing a water manometer into one nostril, and closing the other just previous to swallowing. By the contraction of the palato-pharyngeal muscles which lie in the posterior pillars of the fauces, the curved edges of those pillars are made straight, and thus tend to meet in the middle line, the small gap between them being filled up by the uvula. Through these manœuvres, the entrance into the posterior nares is blocked, while the soft palate forms a sloping roof, guiding the bolus down the pharynx. By the contraction of the stylo-pharyngeus and palato-pharyngeus, the funnel-shaped bag of the pharynx is brought up to meet the descending morsel, very much as a glove may be drawn up over the finger.

Meanwhile in the larynx, as shown by the laryngoscope, the arytenoid cartilages and vocal cords are approximated, the latter being also raised, so that they come very near to the false vocal cords; the cushion at the base of the epiglottis covers the rima glottidis, while the epiglottis itself is depressed over the larynx. The thyroid cartilage is now, by the action of the laryngeal muscles, suddenly raised up behind the hyoid bone, and thus assists the epiglottis to cover the glottis. This movement of the thyroid can easily be felt on the outside. Thus, both the entrance into the posterior nares and that into the larynx being closed, the impulse given to the bolus by the tongue can have no other effect than to propel it beneath the sloping soft palate, over the incline formed by the root of the tongue and the epiglottis, into the grasp of the constrictor muscles of the pharynx: the *palato-glossi* or *constrictores isthmi faucium*, which lie in the anterior pillars of the fauces, by contracting, close the door behind the food which has passed them. The morsel being now within the reach of the constrictors of the pharynx, these contract in sequence from above downwards, and thus necessarily thrust the food into the œsophagus.

Deglutition, therefore, though a continuous act, may be regarded as divided into three stages. The first stage is the thrusting of the food through the *isthmus faucium;* this being a voluntary act, may be either of long or short duration. The second stage is the passage through the upper part of the pharynx. Here the food traverses a region common both to the food and to respiration, and in consequence the movement is as rapid as possible. The third stage is the descent through the grasp of the constrictors. Here the food has passed the respiratory orifice, and in consequence its passage may again become comparatively slow.

The first stage in this complicated process is undoubtedly a voluntary action; the raising of the soft palate and the approximation of the posterior pillars must also be in a measure voluntary, since they were seen, in a case where the pharynx was laid bare by an operation, to take place before the food had touched them;[1] but they may take place without any exercise of the will or presence of consciousness, and indeed the whole part of the act of deglutition which follows upon the passing of the food through the anterior pillars of the fauces must be regarded as a reflex act: though some of the earlier component movements are, as it were, on the borderland between the voluntary and involuntary kingdoms. The constricting action of the constrictors on the other hand is purely reflex; the will has no power whatever over it; it cannot either originate, stop, or modify it.

Deglutition as a whole is a reflex act and cannot take place unless some stimulus be applied to the mucous membrane of the fauces. When we voluntarily bring about swallowing movements with the mouth empty, we supply the necessary stimulus by forcing with the tongue a small quantity of saliva into the fauces, or by touching the fauces with the tongue itself.

---

[1] Brücke, Vorlesungen, i, p. 281.

In the reflex act of deglutition the afferent impulses originated in the fauces are carried up chiefly by the glosso-pharyngeal, but also by branches of the fifth, and by the pharyngeal branches of the superior laryngeal division of the vagus. The efferent impulses descend the hypoglossal to the muscles of the tongue, and pass down the glosso-pharyngeal, the vagus through the pharyngeal plexus, the fifth and the facial, to the muscles of the fauces and pharynx: their exact paths being as yet not fully known, and probably varying in different animals. The laryngeal muscles are governed by the laryngeal branches of the vagus.

The centre of the reflex act lies in the medulla oblongata. Deglutition can be excited, by tickling the fauces, in an animal rendered unconscious by removal of the brain, provided the medulla be left. If the medulla be destroyed, deglutition is impossible. The centre for deglutition lies higher up than that of respiration, so that the former act is frequently impaired or rendered impossible while the latter remains untouched. It is probable that, as is the case in so many other reflex acts, the whole movement can be called forth by stimuli affecting the centre directly, and not acting on the usual afferent nerves.

As each successive segment of the pharyngeal constrictors contracts in sequence from above downwards, the bolus is carried down into the upper end of the œsophagus. Here it is subjected to the influence of a peculiar muscular action known as "peristaltic." Since this kind of muscular action is, with local variations, characteristic of the whole alimentary canal from the beginning of the œsophagus to the end of the rectum, it will be of advantage to disregard the strict topographical order of events, and to consider, first of all, the movement in that part of the canal where it is comparatively simple in nature, and has been best studied, viz., in the small intestine; and afterwards to deal with the variations occurring in particular places and under special circumstances.

Peristaltic Action of the Small Intestine.—We have already seen, in treating of unstriated muscular fibre (p. 145), that a stimulus applied to any part of the small intestine gives rise to a circular contraction, or contraction of the circular muscular coat, which travels lengthways as a wave along the intestine, and also to a longitudinal contraction, or contraction of the longitudinal coat, which also travels lengthways as a wave along the intestine. Since the circular coat is much thicker than the longitudinal one, the circular wave is more powerful and more important than the longitudinal one; the circular coat has by far the greater share in propelling the food along the intestine. It is obvious that a circular contraction travelling down the intestine (and in the natural state of things it does travel downwards, and not both upwards and downwards) must drive the contents of the intestine onwards towards the cæcum. And practically when the intestines are watched after opening the abdomen, the contents are seen to be thus thrust onward by the contraction of the circular coat. The contractions of the longitudinal coat appear to be chiefly of use in producing peculiar oscillating movements of the pendant loops in which the intestine is arranged. The rhythmic occurrence of these circular and to-and-fro movements, together with the passive movements caused by the entrance of the fluid contents into or their exit from the various loops, gives rise to the peculiar writhing of the intestines which is known as peristaltic action.

The movements, as we have said, take place from above downwards, and a wave beginning at the pylorus may be traced a long way down. But contractions may, and in all probability occasionally do, begin at various points along the length of the intestine. In the living body the intestines have periods of rest, alternating with periods of activity, the occurrence of the periods depending on various circumstances.

With regard to the causation of the peristaltic movements of the intestines, this much may be affirmed. They may occur, as in a piece of intestine cut out from the body, wholly independently of the central nervous system. The only nervous elements which can be regarded as essential to their development are the ganglia of Auerbach or those of Meissner in the intestinal walls.

Though peristaltic movements can readily be excited by stimuli, applied either to the outside, or more especially to the inside of the intestine, they are probably at bottom automatic. The presence of food, especially of food in motion, may at times act as a stimulus, and may in all cases be a condition affecting the nature and extent of the movement, but cannot be regarded as the real cause of the action. When any body is introduced into the intestine, a contraction at first occurs, but soon passes off as the intestine becomes accustomed to the presence of the body. There is no reason why the intestine should not become equally accustomed to the presence of food; and, as a matter of fact, peristaltic movements are ofte absent when the intestines are full. The presence of food bears about the same relation to the movements of the intestine that the presence of blood bears to the beat of the heart. Both are favoring but not indispensable conditions; in both cases the action can go on without them. We may add that just as the tension of a muscle increases up to a certain extent the amount of its contraction, and a full heart beats more strongly than an empty one, so distension of the intestine largely increases peristaltic action. Hence in cases of obstruction of the bowels, the movements become distressing by their violence.

Among the chief circumstances affecting peristaltic action may be mentioned in the first place the condition of the blood. A lack of oxygen or an excess of carbonic acid in the blood excites powerful movements. This is well seen in asphyxia, and the post-mortem peristaltic movements witnessed on opening a recently killed animal, are probably due to the deficiency of oxygen or the accumulation of carbonic acid in the blood and tissues of the intestinal walls. Conversely, saturation of the blood with oxygen, as in the peculiar condition known as apnœa (see chapter on Respiration), tends to check peristaltic movements.

Judging from the analogy of the respiratory and other nervous centres, the effects should be attributed to variations in the quantity of oxygen rather than of carbonic acid; this, however, does not at present seem clearly proved.

In the second place, peristaltic action is largely influenced by nervous influences passing along the splanchnic and vagus nerves. The movements will go on after section of both these nerves; but, as a general rule, while stimulation of the splanchnic tends to check,[1] that of the vagus tends to excite them. It is probably through the vagus that peristaltic movements can be effected in a reflex manner, as in that increase of the movements of the intestine in consequence of emotions, which has given rise to the phrase "my bowels yearned."

It is generally stated that sudden stoppage of the blood-current excites peristaltic action, the explanation given being that, as after general death, there is an accumulation of carbonic acid and a lack of oxygen in the intestinal tissues. Van Braam Houckgeest,[2] however, states, on the contrary, that it brings the intestine to rest; and Nasse[3] found that the injection of arterial blood, at a high pressure, caused very powerful movements. On the other hand, exposure to air has been considered as an exciting cause of the movements; and undoubtedly a very large amount of movement may frequently be observed, on laying open the abdomen, even in animals whose circulation is active. Since, however, the movements continue when the body is immersed in weak sodium chloride solution and the intestine thereby excluded from direct contact with air, they cannot be attributed to mere exposure. If the splanchnic nerve be stimulated while active movement is going on, the intestine is undoubtedly brought to rest. Since, at the same time, the bloodvessels of the intestine are by the vaso-constrictor action of the splanchnic constricted, the quiescence of the intestine may be indirectly due to insufficient blood-supply.[1] Houckgeest, however, denies this, on the ground that when by exposure to the air the bloodvessels of the intestine are so far paralyzed as to be no longer constricted by the action of the splanchnic, quiescence of the intestine is still observed on irritating that nerve. The splanchnic thus appears to be a direct inhibitory nerve as regards peristaltic action, while the vagus is undoubtedly an adjuvant or accelerator nerve. It is stated that after section of the splanchnics peristaltic movements are more active and more readily brought about by stimulation of the vagus than when the splanchnics are entire. According to Ludwig,[2] however, stimulation of the splanchnic, while it stops an already-developed peristaltic action, will bring on the movement when brought to bear on an intestine previously at rest.

---

[1] Pflüger. Die Hemmungsnerven des Darms, 1857.
[2] Pflüger's Archiv, vi (1872), p. 266.
[3] Beitr. z. Physiol. d. Darmbewegungen, 1866.

When the vagus is stimulated, peristaltic contraction is seen to begin at the pylorus of the stomach and so to descend along the intestine. It has been stated that no so-called antiperistaltic action, that is, a wave of contraction passing upwards instead of downwards along the intestine, ever occurs naturally in the intestine, the backward flow undoubtedly seen when an obstruction exists being explained as being simply due to a central return current. When, however, the duodenum is mechanically stimulated, both a peristaltic and an antiperistaltic wave may be observed, the former passing downwards and ceasing at the ileo-cæcal valve if not before, the latter passing up and ceasing at the pylorus. And when in the exposed intestines a wave, as occasionally happens, begins spontaneously in the duodenum, it may sometimes be seen to pass both upwards and downwards. It is worthy of notice that stimulation of the small intestine is said not to cause movement either in the stomach or large intestine, and stimulation of the large causes no movement of the small intestine, the ileo-cæcal valve and the pylorus barring the progress of the waves.[3]

Certain drugs, such as nicotin, induce strong peristaltic action; the modus operandi of these and of the more specific purgative drugs is at present uncertain.

Having thus studied the general characters of peristaltic action in its most marked form, we may briefly consider the same movement in other parts of the alimentary canal.

---

[1] Basch, Wien. Sitzungsbericht, lxviii (1873).

[2] Lehrb., Bd. ii, p. 616.

[3] Engelmann, Pflüger's Archiv, iv (1871), p. 33.

Movements of the Œsophagus.—The descent of the food along the œsophagus is effected by a peristaltic contraction of the circular and longitudinal coats, resembling in its general characters that of the intestine. It differs, however, in being more closely dependent on the central nervous system, and may in fact be considered as being in large measure a reflex act, with the centre in the medulla oblongata, both afferent and efferent impulses being supplied by the vagus. It may be readily excited by stimulating the central end of the superior laryngeal nerve; and this nerve, since it is connected by its pharyngeal branch both with the mucous membrane of the pharynx and with the lower pharyngeal constrictor, may serve to inaugurate the œsophageal movement, by carrying afferent impulses started by the presence of food in the pharynx or by the muscular act of swallowing. Section of the trunk of the vagus renders difficult the passage of food along the œsophagus, and stimulation of the peripheral stump causes œsophageal contractions. Hence the motor tracts of the reflex act are to be sought for in the vagus also. The force of this movement is considerable; thus Mosso[1] found that in the dog a ball pulling by means of a pulley against a weight of 250 grams was readily carried down from the pharynx to the stomach.

Mosso[2] states that section and even removal of portions of the œsophagus do not prevent the progression of a peristaltic wave from the pharynx to the stomach, provided the reflex machinery of the medulla be intact. He argues in consequence that the natural movement in swallowing is entirely carried on by the medulla as a reflex act. Nevertheless an œsophagus according to his own account will when removed from the body, and therefore entirely separated from any extrinsic nervous mechanism, exhibit good peristaltic movements. The extrinsic central mechanism, therefore, would seem only to be useful in perfecting a movement which in its absence would be imperfect and inefficient.

Goltz[3] has shown that if, in a urarized frog, fluid be poured down the throat, both stomach and œsophagus will, after the first peristaltic movements carrying down the first portions of fluid have passed away, remain perfectly quiescent in an enormously distended condition (the contraction of the pylorus preventing the descent of the fluid into the duodenum) so long as the medulla oblongata and vagi are intact. Destruction of the medulla or section of the vagi gives rise to the development of abundant downward and upward peristaltic waves of contraction, by which the stomach becomes wrinkled and the top of the œsophagus closed; and these movements last as long as the irritability of the organs continues. During the quiescence observed with intact vagi and medulla, temporary peristaltic action may be induced by direct irritation of the vagus, or in a reflex manner through the medulla, by stimulation of the skin or intestine. Chauveau[1] and Schiff[2] also saw occasional movements in the œsophagus after section of the vagus. Goltz interprets his result by supposing that the movements are primarily caused by local motor centres in the œsophagus and stomach, habitually inhibited by the action of a centre in the medulla. Hence when this inhibition is removed by destruction of the medulla or section of the vagi, the energy of the local centres is free to act. Stimulation of the skin or other distant spots produces movements by depressing the medullary inhibitory centre. Stimulation of the vagus probably produces movements by directly augmenting the local centres.

---

[1] Moleschott's Untersuch., xi (1874), p. 327.

[2] Loc. cit.

[3] Pflüger's Archiv, vi (1872), p. 616.

The junction of the œsophagus with the stomach remains in a more or less permanent condition of tonic or obscurely rhythmic contraction, more particularly when the stomach is full of food, and thus serves as a sphincter to prevent the return of food from the stomach into the œsophagus. During the passage of the food from the œsophagus into the stomach this sphincter becomes relaxed, probably by a mechanism which will be described in treating of vomiting.

Movements of the Stomach.—These are at bottom peristaltic in nature, though largely modified by the peculiar arrangement of the gastric muscular fibres. When food first enters the stomach, the movements are feeble and slight, but as digestion goes on they become more and more vigorous, giving rise to a sort of churning within the stomach, the food travelling from the cardiac orifice along the greater curvature to the pylorus, and returning by the lesser curvature, while at the same time subsidiary currents tend to carry the food which has been passing close to the mucous membrane towards the middle of the stomach, and *vice versa*. At the pyloric end strong circular contractions are set up, by which portions of food, more especially the dissolved parts, but also[3] small solid pieces, are carried through the relaxed sphincter into the duodenum. As digestion proceeds, more and more material leaves the stomach, which is thus gradually emptied, the last portions which are carried through being those matters which are least digestible, and foreign bodies which happen to have been swallowed. The presence of food then leads to the development of obscurely peristaltic rhythmic movements, the stomach when empty being contracted, but quiescent; but evidently it is not the mere mechanical repletion of the organ which is the cause of the movements, since the stomach is fullest at the beginning when the movements are slight, and becomes empty as they grow more forcible. The one thing which does increase *pari passu* with the movements is the acidity, which is at a minimum when the (generally alkaline) food has been swallowed, and increases steadily onwards. It has not, however, been definitely shown that the increasing acidity is the efficient stimulus, giving rise to the movements.

---

[1] Journal de Physiologie, v (1863), p. 337.
[2] Leçons sur la Physiologie de Digestion, p. 377.
[3] Kühne, Lehrb., p. 53.

The nervous mechanism of the gastric movements is very perplexing. Judging from the analogy of the intestine, one would imagine that they originated in the stomach itself, being modified but not directly caused by the action of the central nervous system. Spontaneous movements, however, of a stomach, whose nervous connections have been severed, even of a full one, are at least much more rare than those seen in the intestine or even in the œsophagus; and such movements as are occasioned by local mechanical or other stimulation are limited in extent, and rarely put on all the characters of the natural complex contractions. Since there are abundant ganglia in the walls of the stomach, it may fairly be doubted whether the automatic movements of the excised intestine are due to the action of ganglia, otherwise why should not the ganglia in the stomach set up spontaneous movements in that organ also? For if ganglia are par excellence the organs of automatic actions, we should expect spontaneous movements to accompany their presence.

The stomach receives its nervous supply from the vagi and also from the solar plexus, with which the splanchnics are connected. When the vagi are divided, a spasmodic constriction of the cardiac orifice takes place, the tonic action of the sphincter is increased, no dilation takes place, and food is thus prevented, for a time at least, from leaving the œsophagus. This result is in harmony with the observations of Goltz on the frog. In addition the natural movements of the stomach itself cease, though the introduction of food after section of the vagi is said to cause some amount of contraction. They may be induced by stimulation of the peripheral stumps of the vagi, when the stomach is full, but not if it be empty. Neither section nor stimulation of the splanchnics or of the branches from the solar plexus produce, it is said, any effect on the stomach as far as its movements are concerned. Evidently the movements of the stomach, far more than those of the intestine, are dependent on and governed by the central nervous system, but the exact manner in which they are governed and the proper share to be allotted to exciting and inhibitory mechanisms, remain yet to be discovered. The sort of tonic contraction, into which the walls of the stomach fall when its cavity is empty, does not occur in the intestine; and this feature probably modifies all the nervous working of the organ. Nor do we know the exact mechanism by which the pyloric sphincter is used to strain off gradually the more digested portions of the food. The movements of even a full stomach are said by Busch[1] to cease during sleep.

Movements of the Large Intestine.—These are fundamentally the same as those of the small intestine, but distinct in so far as the latter cease at the ileo-cæcal valve, at which spot the former normally begin.

They are said, however, not to be inhibited by stimulation of the splanchnics.[2]

The fæces in their passage through the colon are lodged in the sacculi during the pauses between the peristaltic waves. Arrived at the sigmoid flexure, they are supported by the bladder and the sacrum, so that they do not press on the sphincter ani.

Defecation.—This is a mixed act, being superficially the result of an effort of the will, and yet carried out by means of an involuntary mechanism. Part of the voluntary effort consists in producing a pressure-effect, by means of the abdominal muscles. These are contracted forcibly as in expiration, but the glottis being closed, and the escape of air from the lungs prevented, the whole force of the pressure is brought to bear on the abdomen itself, and so drives the contents of the descending colon onward into the rectum. The sigmoid flexure is by its position sheltered from this pressure; a body introduced per anum into the empty rectum is not affected by even forcible contractions of the abdominal walls.

The anus is guarded by the sphincter ani, which is habitually in a state of normal tonic contraction, capable of being increased or diminished by a stimulus applied, either internally or externally, to the anus. The tonic contraction is in part at least due to the action of a nervous centre situated in the lumbar spinal cord.[3] If the nervous connection of the sphincter with the spinal cord be broken, relaxation takes place. If the spinal cord be divided in the dorsal region, the sphincter, after the depressing effect of the operation, which may last several days, has passed off, still maintains its tonicity, showing that the centre is not placed higher up than the lumbar region of the cord. The increased or diminished contraction following on local stimulation is probably due to a reflex augmentation or inhibition of the action of this centre. The centre is also subject to influences proceeding from higher regions of the cord, and from the brain. By the action of the will, by emotions, or by other nervous events, the lumbar sphincter centre may be inhibited, and thus the sphincter itself relaxed; or augmented, and thus the sphincter tightened. A second item, therefore, of the voluntary process in defecation is the inhibition of the lumbar sphincter centre, and consequent relaxation of the sphincter muscle.

---

[1] Virch. Archiv, xiv, p. 166.

[2] Pflüger, op. cit.; Nasse, op. cit.

[3] Masius, Bull. de l'Acad. R. de Belgique, xxiv (1867), p. 312.

According to Goltz,[1] in the dog after division of the dorsal cord, and consequent separation of the sphincter centre from the cerebrum, local stimulation, such as the introduction of the finger, causes not a steady increase or decrease of the action of the sphincter, but a rhythmic alternation of tightening and relaxing. The absence of this rhythm with an intact cord indicates some obscure action of the cerebral centres on the lumbar centre. The conversion of the tonic into the rhythmic action also illustrates the close relationship between these two kinds of movements.

Though the tonic contraction of the sphincter seems so largely dependent on the lumbar centre, still this dependence is probably not an absolute one. In the case of a man in whom as the result of injury the sacral nerves were entirely paralyzed, and the sphincter accordingly had no nervous connection with the lumbar centre (unless there were a roundabout connection by means of the sympathetic), Gower[2] observed the maintenance of a certain amount of tonic contraction which could be inhibited, and relaxation induced, by stimulation of the mucous membrane of the rectum and anus. As in the case of the arteries, we have apparently to deal here with a tonic contraction which is habitually dependent on a spinal centre, but which may nevertheless exist without the action of that centre.

Since the lumbar centre is wholly efficient when separated from the brain, the paralysis of the sphincter which occurs in certain cerebral diseases is probably due to inhibition of this centre, and not to paralysis of any cerebral centre.

Thus a voluntary contraction of the abdominal walls, accompanied by a relaxation of the sphincter, might press the contents of the descending colon into the rectum and out at the anus. Since, however, as we have seen, the pressure of the abdominal walls is warded off the sigmoid flexure, such a mode of defecation would always end in leaving the sigmoid flexure full. Hence the necessity for these more or less voluntary acts being accompanied by an entirely involuntary augmentation of the peristaltic action of the large intestine and sigmoid flexure. Or, rather, to describe matters in their proper order, defecation takes place in the following manner: The sigmoid flexure and large intestine becoming more and more full, stronger and stronger peristaltic action is excited in their walls. By this means the fæces are driven against the sphincter. Through a voluntary act, or sometimes at least by a simple reflex action, the lumbar sphincter centre is inhibited and the sphincter relaxed. At the same time the contraction of the abdominal muscles presses firmly on the descending colon, and thus the contents of the rectum are ejected.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), 460.

[2] Proc. Roy. Soc., xxvi (1877), p. 77.

It must, however, be remembered that, while in appealing to our own consciousness, the contraction of the abdominal walls and the relaxation of the sphincter seem purely voluntary efforts, the whole act of defecation, including both of these seemingly so voluntary components, may take place in the absence of consciousness, and, indeed, in the case of Goltz's dog,[1] after the complete severance of the lumbar from the dorsal cord. In such cases the whole act must be purely reflex, excited by the presence of fæces in the rectum.

Vomiting.—In a conscious individual this act is preceded by feelings of nausea, during which a copious flow of saliva into the mouth takes place. This being swallowed carries down with it a certain quantity of air, the presence of which in the stomach, by assisting in the opening of the cardiac sphincter, subsequently facilitates the discharge of the gastric contents. The nausea is generally succeeded at first by ineffectual retching, in which a deep inspiratory effort is made, so that the diaphragm is thrust down as low as possible against the stomach, the lower ribs being at the same time forcibly drawn in; since during this inspiratory effort the glottis is kept closed, no air can enter into the lungs; but some is drawn into the pharynx, and thence probably descends by a swallowing action into the stomach. In actual vomiting this inspiratory effort is succeeded by a sudden violent expiratory contraction of the abdominal walls, the glottis still being closed, so that the whole force of the effort is spent, as in defecation, in pressure on the abdominal contents. The stomach is, therefore, forcibly compressed from without. At the same time, or rather immediately before the expiratory effort, by a contraction of its longitudinal fibres, the œsophagus is shortened, and the cardiac orifice of the stomach brought close under the diaphragm, while apparently by a contraction of the fibres which radiate from the end of the œsophagus over the stomach, the cardiac orifice, which is normally closed, is somewhat suddenly dilated. This dilation opens a way for the contents of the stomach, which, pressed upon by the contraction of the abdomen, and to a certain, but probably only to a slight extent by the contraction of the gastric walls, are driven forcibly up the œsophagus, their passage along that channel being possibly assisted by the contraction of the longitudinal muscles. The mouth being widely open, and the neck stretched to afford as straight a course as possible, the vomit is ejected from the body. At this moment there is an additional expiratory effort which serves to prevent the vomit passing into the larynx. In most cases, too, the posterior pillars of the fauces are approximated, in order to close the nasal passage against the ascending stream. This, however, in severe vomiting is frequently ineffectual.

---

[1] Op. cit.

Thus in vomiting there are two distinct acts, the dilation of the cardiac orifice and the extrinsic pressure of the abdominal walls in an expiratory effort. Without the former the latter, even when distressingly vigorous, is ineffectual. Without the latter, as in urari poisoning, the intrinsic movements of the stomach itself are rarely sufficient to do more than eject gas, and, it may be, a very small quantity of food or fluid. Pyrosis or waterbrash is probably brought about by this intrinsic action of the stomach.

During vomiting the pylorus is generally closed, so that but little material escapes into the duodenum. When the gall-bladder is full, a copious flow of bile into the duodenum accompanies the act of vomiting. Part of this may find its way into the stomach, as in bilious vomiting, the pylorus then being evidently open.

The experiment of Magendie, showing that vomiting can take place when a simple bladder is substituted for the stomach, is said to fail unless the œsophageal sphincter be removed or the dilating mechanism be left intact. Schiff,[1] by introducing his finger through a gastric fistula, was able to ascertain by direct touch both the normal occlusion of the cardiac orifice, broken only during the descent of food, and its sudden dilation just preceding the expiratory pressure during vomiting. He found that when the muscular fibres radiating from the œsophagus over the stomach were injured, as by crushing them with a ligature forcibly applied for a few seconds, the change takes place.

---

[1] Moleschott's Untersuch., x (1870), p. 353.

In the stomach, the arrival of the food, th
which is either naturally alkaline, or is made a
least is reduced in acidity, by the addition of sa
flow of gastric juice. This already commencin
food is as yet in the mouth, increases as the food
in the stomach, and as, by the churning gastric
unchanged particles are continually being broug
tact with the mucous membrane. Moreover (see
absorption of the earlier digested portions give
further increase of secretion, and especially of p
secretion of acid appears to continue at a fairly co
and consequently, unless neutralized by fresh alk
the reaction of the gastric contents becomes more
distinctly acid as digestion proceeds. The chang
into sugar is lessened or perhaps arrested. The
selves remain unchanged; but, through the con
proteids into peptone, not only are the more distinc
articles of food, such as meat, broken up and dis
the proteid framework, in which the starch an
frequently imbedded, is loosened, the starch-granu
free, and the fats, melted for the most part by the
stomach, tend to run together in large drops, whi
are more or less apt to be broken up into an impe
sion. The collagenous tissues are dissolved; and
natural bundles of meat and vegetables fall asu
muscular fibre splits up into disks, and the pro
dissolved from the vegetable cells. While these c
proceeding, the thick turbid grayish liquid or *chy*
by the imperfectly dissolved

Busch[1] saw, in the case of a duodenal fistula, portions of food pass into the duodenum within fifteen or twenty minutes from the beginning of the meal. Beaumont[2] gives a very full statement of the time during which various articles of food remained in the stomach of Alexis St. Martin. The length of stay, however, of the same substance varied very much under various circumstances. Moreover, it would be very hazardous to make a fistulous stomach the canon of what takes place in a healthy organ. In animals the stay of the food in the stomach is very variable. Heidenhain[3] found food in the stomach of dogs sixteen to twenty-four hours after a meal, and it is well known the stomachs of rabbits are never empty, but always more or less filled with food.

In the presence of healthy gastric juice, and in the absence of any nervous interference, the question of the digestibility of any food is determined chiefly by mechanical conditions. The more finely divided the material, and the less the proteid constituents are sheltered by not easily soluble envelopes, such as those of cellulose, the more rapid the solution. So, also, pieces of hard-boiled egg, which have to be gradually dissolved from the outside, are less easily digested than the more friable muscular fibre, the repeated transverse cleavage of which increases the surface exposed to the juice. Unboiled white of egg, again, unless thoroughly beaten up and mixed with air, is less digestible than the same boiled. The unboiled white forms a viscid clotted mass, of low diffusibility, into which the juice permeates with the greatest difficulty. And so with other instances. Beyond this mechanical aspect of indigestibility, it is to be remembered that different substances may differently affect the gastric membrane, promoting or checking the secretion of the juice. Hence a substance, the mass of which is readily dissolved by gastric juice, and which offers no mechanical obstacles to digestion, may yet prove indigestible by so affecting the gastric membrane through some special constituent (or possibly in other ways) as to inhibit the secretion of the juice.

That substances can be absorbed from the cavity of the stomach into the circulation is proved by the fact that food when introduced disappears very largely from the stomach of an animal, the pylorus of which has been ligatured. But we cannot speak with certainty as to what extent in ordinary life gastric absorption takes place, or by what mechanism it is carried out. The presumption is, that the diffusible sugars and peptone pass by osmosis direct into the capillaries, and so into the gastric veins. The filtrate of chyme taken from a stomach in full digestion contains parapeptone, but scarcely any peptone. From this it may fairly be inferred that the peptone has been absorbed.

---

[1] Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 14 (1858), p. 140.

[2] Expos. and Obs. on Gastric Juice, 1834.

[3] Pflüger's Archiv, xix (1879), p. 148.

In the act of swallowing, no inconsiderable quantity of air is carried down into the stomach, entangled in the saliva, or in the food. This is returned in eructations. When the gas of eructation or that obtained directly from the stomach is examined it is found to consist chiefly of nitrogen and carbonic acid, the oxygen of the atmospheric air having been largely absorbed. In most cases the carbonic acid is derived by simple diffusion from the blood, or from the tissues of the stomach, which similarly take up the oxygen. In many cases of flatulency, however, it may arise from a fermentative decomposition of the sugar which has been taken as such in food, or which has been produced from the starch.

In the latter case, however, hydrogen ought also to make its appearance; thus $C_6H_{12}O_6 = 2C_3H_6O_3$ (lactic acid) $= C_4H_8O_2$ (butyric acid) $+ 2CO_2 + H_4$, whereas hydrogen has only been found in the small intestine. In the dog, Planer[1] found in the stomach after a meat diet a small amount of gas of the composition CO 25.20, N 68.68, O 6.12, after a meal of bread, CO_2 32.91, N 66.30, O .79.

The enormous quantity of gas which is discharged through the mouth in cases of hysterical flatulency, even on a perfectly empty stomach, and which seems to consist largely of carbonic acid, presents difficulties in the way of explanation; it is possible that it may be simply diffused from the blood.

In the small intestine the semi-digested acid food, or chyme, as it passes over the biliary orifice, causes gushes of bile, and at the same time, as we have seen (p. 348), the pancreatic juice, which flowed freely into the intestine at the taking of the meal, is secreted again with renewed vigor, when the gastric digestion is completed. These two alkaline fluids tend to neutralize the acidity of the chyme, but the contents of the duodenum do not become distinctly alkaline until some distance from the pylorus is reached. Even in the lower part of the ileum the chyme may be acid;[2] possibly, however, in such cases it has been reacidified. The conversion of starch into sugar, which may have languished in the stomach, is resumed with great activity by the pancreatic juice, though portions of undigested starch may be found in the large intestine and even at times in the fæces.

---

[1] Wien. Sitzungsberichte, xlii, p. 307.

[2] Losnitzer, Henle, and Meissner's Bericht, 1864, p. 250.

The pancreatic juice, as we have seen, emulsifies fats, and also splits them into their respective fatty acids and glycerin. The fatty acids thus set free become converted by means of the alkaline contents of the intestine into soaps; but to what extent saponification thus takes place is not exactly known. Undoubtedly soaps have to a small extent been found both in portal blood and in the thoracic duct after a meal; but there is no proof that any large quantity of fat is introduced in this form into the circulation. On the other hand, the presence of neutral fats, both in portal blood, and especially in the lacteals, is a conspicuous result of the digestion of fatty matters; and in all probability saponification in the intestine is a subsidiary process, intended rather to facilitate the emulsion of neutral fats than to introduce soaps as such into the blood. For the presence of soluble soaps favors the emulsion of neutral fats. Thus a rancid fat, *i. e.*, a fat containing a certain amount of free fatty acid, forms an emulsion with an alkaline fluid more readily than a neutral fat. A drop of rancid oil let fall on the surface of an alkaline fluid, such as a solution of sodium carbonate of suitable strength, rapidly forms a broad ring of emulsion, and that even without the least agitation. As saponification takes place at the junction of the oil and alkaline fluid, currents are set up, by which globules of oil are detached from the main drop and driven out in a centrifugal direction. The intensity of the currents and the consequent amount of emulsion depend on the concentration of the alkaline medium and on the solubility of the soaps which are formed; hence some fats, such as cod-liver oil, are much more easily emulsionized in this way than others. Now the bile and pancreatic juice supply just such conditions as the above for emulsionizing fats: they both together afford an alkaline medium, the pancreatic juice supplies an adequate amount of free fatty acid, and the bile renders duly soluble the soaps thus formed. So that we may speak of the emulsion of fats in the small intestine as being carried on by both bile and pancreatic juice;[1] and as a matter of fact the bile and pancreatic juice do largely emulsify the contents of the small intestine, so that the grayish turbid chyme is changed into a creamy-looking fluid, which has been sometimes called chyle. It is advisable, however, to reserve this name for the contents of the lacteals.

---

[1] Cf. Brücke, Wien. Sitzungsberichte, Bd. 61 (1870), p. 362; Steiner, Archiv f. Anat. u. Physiol., 1874, p. 286; Gad, ibid., 1878, p. 181; Quincke, Pflüger's Archiv, xix, 1879, p. 129.

This mutual help of bile and pancreatic juice in producing an emulsion, explains to a certain extent the controversy which long existed between those who maintained that the bile and those who maintained that the pancreatic juice was necessary for the digestion and absorption of fatty food. That the pancreatic juice does produce in the intestine such a change as favors the transference of neutral fats from the intestine into the lacteals, is shown by the fact that in diseases affecting the pancreas, much fatty food frequently passes through the intestine undigested, and great wasting ensues. On the other hand, that the bile is of use in the digestion of fat is shown by the prevalence of fatty stools in cases of obstruction of the bile-ducts; and though the operation of ligaturing the bile-ducts, and leading all the bile externally through a biliary fistula, is open to objection, since it so exhausts the animal as indirectly to affect digestion, still the results of Bidder and Schmidt, in which the resorption of fat was distinctly lessened (the quantity of fat in the lacteals falling from 3.2 to 0.02 per cent.) by the ligature and fistula, obviously point to the same conclusion. Thus while the view that the bile alone, or the view that the pancreatic juice alone, is the agent in the digestion of fat, is contradicted by facts, the conflicting experiments are reconciled in the conclusion that both help towards the same end; a conclusion which is in harmony with the properties of the juices, as seen when studied out of the body, and which is supported by the observation of Busch, in a case where the duodenum opened on the surface by a fistula in such a way that the lower part of the intestine could be kept free from the contents of the upper part containing the bile and pancreatic juice. Fats introduced into the lower part, where they could not be acted upon either by the bile or by the pancreatic juice, were but slightly digested. The succus entericus may have a slight emulsifying power, but one wholly insufficient to meet the needs of the economy.

We have seen that bile, when added to a digesting mixture, first precipitates and then redissolves the parapeptone and peptone, the pepsin being carried down with them. The object of this precipitation is probably to render inert the pepsin and thus prevent it from impairing the pancreatic trypsin, as well as perhaps to hinder the too rapid passage of the semi-digested liquids along the intestine. The granular material which is found lining the duodenum is possibly the result of such a precipitation. We have seen that bile, while it stops gastric digestion, favors rather than hinders the pancreatic digestion of proteids. As a matter of fact, since the contents of the stomach as they issue from the pylorus consist very largely of undigested proteids, these must be digested by the pancreatic juice (with or without the assistance of the succus entericus), since the pepsin of the gastric juice is either precipitated by the bile, or rendered inert by the increasing alkalinity of the intestinal contents. To what stage the pancreatic digestion is carried, whether peptone is chiefly formed, and when formed at once absorbed, or to what extent the pancreatic juice in the body, as out of the body, carries on its work in the more destructive form, whereby the proteid material subjected to it is broken down largely into leucin and tyrosin, is at present not exactly known. Leucin and tyrosin are found in the intestinal contents, and are therefore formed during normal digestion, but whether a large quantity or a small quantity of the proteid material of food is thus hurried into a crystalline form cannot be definitely stated. Possibly where large quantities of proteids are taken at a meal, the excess is at once got rid of by this form of so-called "luxus consumption;" and possibly also, in the intestine as in the laboratory, this pancreatic digestion of proteids in excess is accompanied by a considerable development of bacteria and other organized bodies, which create trouble by inducing fermentative changes in the accompanying saccharine constituents of the chyme.

That fermentative changes do occur in the small intestine is indicated by the fact that the gas present there does contain free hydrogen. Planer[1] found the gas from the small intestine of a dog fed on a meat diet to consist of CO_2 40.1, H 13.86, N 45.52, with only a trace of oxygen. In a dog fed on vegetable diet the composition of the gas was CO_2 47.34, H 48.69, N 3.97. Chyme after removal from the intestine continues at the temperature of the body to produce carbonic acid and hydrogen in equal volumes. As was stated above during butyric acid fermentation from sugar, carbonic acid and hydrogen are evolved in equal volumes. These facts suggest the way in which the carbo-hydrate constituents of food may become converted into fat, for by this butyric acid fermentation the sugar is converted into a member of the fatty acid series; and it is at least within the bounds of possibility that, by fermentative changes of some sort or other, the lower members of the series may be raised to the higher. But did butyric acid fermentations occur largely in the intestine, we should expect to find a large quantity of free hydrogen discharged from the system by the bowel or lungs. As a matter of fact it is discharged in small quantities only. Hence, unless we suppose that the nascent hydrogen is used up in some contemporaneous processes of reduction, we must regard butyric acid fermentation as slight and unimportant. Indeed, the quantity of gas on which Planer worked was small. It is probable, however, that by fermentative changes a considerable quantity of sugar is converted into lactic acid, since this acid is found in increasing quantities as the food descends the intestine.

---

[1] Op. cit.

Thus during its transit through the small intestine, by the action of the bile and pancreatic juice, assisted possibly to some extent by the succus entericus, the proteids are largely dissolved and converted into peptone and other products, the starch is changed into sugar, the sugar possibly being in part further converted into lactic acid, and the fats are largely emulsified, and to some extent saponified. These products, as they are formed, pass into either the lacteals or the portal bloodvessels, so that the contents of the small intestine, by the time they reach the ileo-cæcal valve, are largely, but by no means wholly, deprived of their nutritious constituents. As far as water is concerned, the secretion into the small intestine is about equal to the absorption from it, so that the intestinal contents at the end of the ileum, though much more broken up, are about as fluid as in the duodenum.

In the large intestine the contents become once more distinctly acid. This, however, is not caused by any acid secretion from the mucous membrane; the reaction of the intestinal walls in the large as in the small intestine is alkaline. It must, therefore, arise from acid fermentations going on in the contents themselves; as, indeed, is shown by the composition of the gases which make their appearance in this portion of the alimentary canal. In carnivora the contents of the cæcum are said to be alkaline,[1] and naturally the amount of fermentation will depend largely on the nature of the food.

Ruge[2] found the gas of the large intestine, collected *per anum*, to have the following composition:

	Mixed diet.	Leguminous diet.	Meat diet.
CO_2, ...	40.54	21.05	8.45
N, ...	17.50	18.96	64.41
CH_4, ...	19.77	55.94	26.45
H, ...	22.22	5.03	.69

SH_2, a trace only.

Of the particular changes which take place in the large intestine we have no definite knowledge; but it is exceedingly probable that in the voluminous cæcum of the herbivora, a large amount of digestion of a peculiar kind goes on. We know that in herbivora a considerable quantity of cellulose disappears in passing through the canal, and even in man some is probably digested. We are driven to suppose that this cellulose digestion is carried on in the large intestine, though we know nothing of the nature of the agency by which it is effected. The other digestive changes are probably of a fermentative kind.

---

[1] Bernard, Liquides de l'Organisme.

[2] Wien. Sitzungsberichte, 1862, p. 729.

Be this as it may, whether digestion, properly so called, is all but complete at the ileo-cæcal valve, or whether important changes still await the chyme in the large intestine, the chief characteristic of the work done in the colon is absorption. By the abstraction of all the soluble constituents, and especially by the withdrawal of water, the liquid chyme becomes, as it approaches the rectum, converted into the firm solid fæces, and the color shifts from the bright orange, which the gray chyme gradually assumes after admixture with bile, into a darker and dirtier brown.

In the fæces there are found in the first place the indigestible and undigested constituents of the meal; shreds of elastic tissue, hairs and other corneous elements, much cellulose and chlorophyll from vegetable, and some connective tissue from animal food, fragments of disintegrated muscular fibre, fat-cells, and not unfrequently undigested starch corpuscles. The amount of each must of course vary very largely, according to the nature of the food and the digestive powers, temporary or permanent, of the individual. In the second place, to these must be added substances not introduced as food, but arising as part of, or as products of, the digestive secretions. The fæces contain a ferment similar to pepsin, and an amylolytic ferment similar to that of saliva or pancreatic juice. They also contain mucus in variable amount, sometimes albumin, cholesterin, hydrobilirubin, butyric and other fatty acids, lime and magnesia soaps, *excretin* (a non-nitrogenous crystalline body, containing sulphur, obtained by Marcet), and salts, especially those of magnesia. Cholalic acid (and dyslysin) are found in very small quantities only, thus indicating that the bile-salts have been in part at least destroyed (they may have been in part reabsorbed, see p. 363), the less stable taurocholic acid (of the dog) disappearing more readily than the glycocholic acid (of the cow). The fact that the fæces become "clay-colored" when the bile is cut off from the intestine, shows that the bile-pigment is at least the mother of the fæcal pigment; and the special pigment, which has been isolated and called stercobilin,[1] is said to be identical with urobilin, *i. e.*, with hydrobilirubin. We have already seen that during artificial pancreatic digestion, a distinctly fæcal odor due to the presence of indol is generated; and the fact that the presence of bacteria, or other similar organism, is essential to the production of this body, does not preclude the possibility of it, with its derivatives, being the chief cause of the natural odor of fæces, for undoubtedly bacteria may exist throughout the whole length of the intestinal canal. At the same time it is quite possible, if not probable, that specific odoriferous substances may be secreted directly from the intestinal wall, especially from that of the large intestine.

Brieger[2] finds in human excrement a small quantity only of indol, but a considerable quantity of a similar body, which he calls *skatol*, possessing an intense fæcal odor.

SEC. 5. ABSORPTION OF THE PRODUCTS OF DIGESTION.

We have seen that absorption does, or at least may, take place from the stomach. We have also stated that a large absorption, especially of water, occurs along the whole large intestine.

Absorption from the large intestine after injection *per anum*, or through a fistula, has been observed not only in the case of soluble peptone and sugar, but also in that of starch, white of egg, and casein; but the exact changes undergone by the latter previous to absorption are unknown.[3]

Nevertheless the largest and most important part of the digested material passes away from the canal, during the transit of food along the small intestine, partly into the lacteals, partly into the portal vessels.

Digestion being, broadly speaking, the conversion of non-diffusible proteids and starch into highly diffusible peptone and sugar, and the emulsifying, or division into minute particles of various fats, it is natural to suppose that the diffusible peptone and sugar pass by osmosis into the bloodvessels, and that the emulsified fats pass into the lacteals. That a large part of the fat which enters the body from the intestine does pass through the lacteals, there can be no doubt; and there can be but little doubt that a considerable quantity of peptone and sugar does pass into the portal blood. But we are unable to say at present how far the fat in its difficult passage into the lacteals is accompanied by soluble peptone or by less diffusible forms of proteids arising as subsidiary products of proteolytic digestion or by carbo-hydrate products.

---

[1] Vaulair and Masius, Centrbt. f. med. Wiss., 1871, No. 24. Jaffe, ibid., No. 31.

[2] Ber. deutsch. Chem. Gesellsch., x (1877), p. 1027.

[3] Bauer, Zeitschft. f. Biol., v, 536.

Characters of Chyle.—In a fasting animal the contents of the thoracic duct are clear and transparent; shortly after a meal they become milky and opaque, the change being entirely due to a difference in the quantity of the fluid brought to the duct by the lacteals, that fluid also being, as seen by inspection of the mesentery, transparent during fasting, and becoming milky and opaque after a meal, especially after one containing much fat. The contents of the thoracic duct, therefore, after a meal may be taken as illustrative of the nature of the chyle present in the lacteals, though strictly speaking the chyle of the thoracic duct is mixed with lymph coming from the intestines and from the rest of the body. During fasting the contents of the lacteals agree in their general character with lymph obtained from other structures.

The contents of the thoracic duct may be obtained by laying bare the junction of the subclavian and jugular veins and introducing a canula into the duct as it enters into the venous system at that point. The operation is not unattended with difficulties.

Chyle obtained from the thoracic duct, after a meal, is a white-looking fluid, which after its escape coagulates, forming a not very firm clot. The nature of the coagulation seems to be exactly the same as that of the blood. The surface of the clot after exposure to air becomes pink, even though no blood be artificially mixed with the chyle during the operation; the color is due to immature red corpuscles proper to the chyle. Examined microscopically, the coagulated chyle consists of fibrin, a large number of white corpuscles, a small number of developing red corpuscles, an abundance of oil-globules of various sizes but all small, and a quantity of fatty granules, too minute to be recognized under the microscope as fatty in nature, forming the so-called "molecular basis." Each oil globule is invested with an albuminous envelope; this may be dissolved by the aid of alkalies, whereupon the globules run together. The fibrin and white corpuscles are very scanty (and the red corpuscles entirely absent) in lymph or chyle taken from peripheral vessels; but they increase in quantity as the lymph passes through the lymphatic glands.

The composition of chyle varies considerably, not only in different animals but in the same animal at different times. The average percentage of solids may perhaps be put down as about 9, that of proteid material as about 4 or 5, and that of fat as about 3 or 4, the remainder being extractives and salts. The fats occur chiefly in the form of neutral fats, though some soaps or fatty acids are present.

The percentages of solid matters vary in the different analyses from 3 to 11, of proteids from 2 to 7, of fats from less than 1 to 4;[1] but Zawilski[2] finds that in dogs, after a meal rich in fat, the percentage of fat in the chyle may vary from 14.6 to 0.25. The proteids consist chiefly of serum-albumin, with a globulin or alkali-albumin precipitable by acids, and a variable but small quantity of fibrin. Among the extractives have been found sugar, urea, and leucin; cholesterin is also frequently present in considerable quantity. Since these extractives are found in lymph as well as chyle, they cannot be regarded as derived exclusively from the intestinal contents. The amount of peptone is very small indeed. The gas which can be extracted from chyle or lymph consists almost entirely of carbonic acid, there being only a small quantity of nitrogen, and no satisfactory evidence of the presence of any free oxygen at all. Hammarsten[3] obtained from the 100 vols. of lymph of the dog about **1.5** (1.17)[4] vols. nitrogen, and about **53** (40.36) vols. carbonic acid. The ash is remarkable for the abundance of sodium chloride and the scantiness of phosphates. Iron is present in greater quantity than can be accounted for by the presence of red corpuscles.

The nature of the fat is supposed to vary with that of the food, but this has not been conclusively shown.

The lymph taken from the duct during fasting differs chiefly from that taken after a meal, in the much smaller quantity of fat, the microscope showing white corpuscles with very few oil-globules, and in the almost entire absence of the molecular basis. Lymph in fact is, broadly speaking, blood *minus* its red corpuscles, and chyle is lymph *plus* a very large quantity of minutely divided neutral fat.

It has been calculated that a quantity equal to that of the whole blood may pass through the thoracic duct in twenty-four hours, and of this it is supposed that about half comes from food through the lacteals and the remainder from the body at large; but these calculations are based on uncertain data.

---

[1] Cf. Hensen, Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 94.

[2] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1876, p. 147.

[3] Ibid., 1871, p. 121.

[4] The larger figures are the measurements obtained at 0° C. and pressure of 760 mm. mercury, the smaller figures in parentheses measurements according to the prevalent German method at 0° C. 1 meter of mercury pressure.

Entrance of the Chyle into the Lacteals.—The lacteal begins as a club-shaped (or bifurcate) lymphatic space lying in the centre of the villus (p. 333), and connected with the smaller lymphatic spaces of the adenoid tissue around it; it opens below into the submucous lymphatic plexus from which the lacteal vessels spring. The adenoid tissue of the surrounding crypts of Lieberkühn is by its lymphatic spaces connected with the same lymphatic plexus. That the finely divided fat does pass from the intestine, through the epithelial envelope of the villus, into the adenoid tissue, and so into the lacteal chamber, is certain, but much discussion has arisen as to the exact mechanism of the transit. The passage is probably assisted by the movements of the intestine, though even in the contractions of strong peristaltic movements the pressure within the intestine is never very great. Of more obvious use is the contraction of the villus itself. The longitudinal muscular fibre-cells, in contracting, pull down the villus on itself; the contents of the lacteal chamber are thus forced into the underlying lymphatic plexus. When the fibre-cells relax, the empty lacteal chamber is expanded; the chyle cannot flow back from the lymphatic channels by reason of the valves present in them, and in consequence the lacteal chamber is filled from the substance of the villus, and thus the entrance into the villus of material from the intestine is facilitated. The villus in fact acts as a kind of muscular suction-pump.

Merunowicz[1] finds the flow of lymph increased by muscarin poisoning, and attributes the increase of flow to the coincident increase of the peristaltic movements of the intestine.

After a meal, the epithelium cells of the villus are found crowded with fat. Since the striation of the hyaline border of the cells is not due to pores, as was once thought, the particles must have entered into the cells very much as foreign particles enter the body of an amœba. The epithelium may in fact be said to eat the fat. Since the (frequently) branched and protoplasmic base of the cell is in intimate connection with the spaces of the adenoid tissue of the villus, the fat could more readily pass from the cell in this direction than from the intestine into the cell. There would thus be a stream of fatty particles through the cell from without inwards, a stream in the causation of which the cell took an active part. In fact, under this view, absorption by the cell might be regarded as a sort of inverted secretion, the cell taking much material from the chyme and secreting it, with little or no change, into the villus. The observations of Watney[1] have led him to believe the fat passes not through but between the epithelium cells, being taken up by the inter-epithelium processes of the peculiar epitheloid cells, described by him as forming a continuous protoplasmic reticulum, the epithelium cells themselves therefore having no active share in absorption. It is difficult on this view, however, to explain the almost unanimous opinion of previous observers, that the fat may be seen in the substance of the cell itself, though Watney argues that particles of fat adhering to the outside of the cell have been erroneously supposed to be really within the cells.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1876, p. 117.

Movements of the Chyle.—Having reached the lymphatic channels the onward progress of the chyle is determined by a variety of circumstances. Putting aside the pumping action of the villi, the same events which cause the movement of the lymph generally also further the flow of the chyle; and these are briefly as follows: In the first place, the widespread presence of valves in the lymphatic vessels causes every pressure exerted on the tissues in which they lie to assist in the propulsion forward of the lymph. Hence all muscular movements increase the flow. If a canula be inserted in one of the larger lymphatic trunks of the limb of a dog, the discharge of lymph from the canula will be more distinctly increased by movements, even passive movements, of the limb than by anything else. In addition to the valves along the course of the vessels, the embouchement of the thoracic duct into the venous system is guarded by a valve, so that every escape of lymph or chyle from the duct into the veins becomes itself a help to the flow. In the second place, considering the whole lymphatic system as a set of branching tubes passing from the extravascular regions just outside the small arteries, veins and capillaries, to the large venous trunks, it is obvious that the mean pressure of the blood in the subclavian vein, at its junction with the jugular, must be considerably less than that of the lymph in the lymphatic spaces around the small bloodvessels, even though the pressure in the tissues outside the small bloodvessels is distinctly less than that of the blood within the same vessels. In other words, there is a distinct fall of pressure in passing from the beginning to the end of the lymphatics; this of course would alone cause a continuous flow. Further, this flow, caused by the lowness of the mean venous pressure at the subclavian, will be assisted at every respiratory movement, since at every inspiration the pressure in the venous trunks becomes negative, and thus lymph will be sucked in from the thoracic duct, while the increase of pressure in the great veins during expiration is warded off from the duct by the valve at its opening. In the third place, the flow may be increased by rhythmical contractions of the muscular walls of the lymphatics themselves; but this is doubtful, since it is not clear whether the rhythmic variations seen by Heller[1] in the mesentery of the guinea-pig were active or simply passive, *i. e.*, caused by the rhythmic peristaltic action of the intestine, each contraction of the intestine filling the lymph-channels more fully. Lastly, it is quite open for us to suppose that just as osmosis may give rise to increased pressure on one side of a diffusion septum, so the diffusion of substances from the intestines into the lacteals, or from the tissues into the lymphatics, may be itself one of the causes of the flow of lymph. We have at least, under all circumstances, one or other of these causes at work promoting a continual flow from the lymphatic roots to the great veins. We have no very satisfactory evidence that the flow of lymph is in any way directly governed by the nervous system.

---

[1] Phil. Trans., 1876, p. 451.

In frogs and some other animals the centripetal flow of lymph from the limbs is assisted by rhythmically pulsating muscular lymph-hearts.

The observations of Paschutin[2] and Emminghaus[3] failed to show any direct connection between the nervous system and the lymph-flow. Section of the sciatic, leading to arterial dilation and consequent increased pressure in the capillaries and small veins, had very little effect, whereas ligature of the veins led to a very marked increase. Active movements of the limb, caused by stimulation of the sciatic, produced no greater flow than did passive movements. Goltz[4] has recorded an interesting observation, bearing on the influence of the nervous system on absorption. Of two frogs placed under the influence of urari so as to do away with muscular movements and the action of the lymph-hearts, the brain and spinal cord of one are destroyed, but in the other are left intact. Both animals are suspended by the lower jaw; chloride of sodium solution (0.75 per cent.) is poured into the dorsal lymphatic sacs of both: and in both the aorta is cut across. In the one where the nervous system is intact, absorption from the lymphatic sac takes place copiously, and the heart pumps out large quantities of fluid by the aorta. In the other, absorption does not occur; the heart, though beating, remains empty, and the skin becomes dry. The result, however, shows rather the influence of the nervous system in maintaining the tonicity of the bloodvessels and keeping up the connection of the heart with the peripheral vessels, than any distinct connection between absorption proper and the nervous system. When the nervous system is destroyed, dilation of the splanchnic vascular area causes all the blood to remain stagnant in the portal vessels, so that little or none reaches the heart, and with the enfeebled circulation the absorption from the lymphatic sac is slight. So long as the nervous system is still intact this stagnation does not occur, the blood reaches the heart, and with the more vigorous circulation absorption from the lymphatic sac goes on rapidly. As the blood is pumped away its place is renewed by the lymph, supplied by the fluid in the sac, and thus the heart may be made for a long time to pump away the fluid poured into the sac. Still, though we cannot prove any direct connection between the nervous system and absorption, the phenomena of disease render such a connection at least probable.

---

[1] Cbt. Med. Wiss., 1869, p. 545.
[2] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1872, p. 197.
[3] Ibid., 1873, p. 51.
[4] Pflüger's Archiv, v (1872), p. 53.

The Course taken by the Several Products of Digestion.

The digested contents of the intestine pass into the blood either directly by the portal system (Fig. 112) or indirectly by means of the lymphatics. It cannot be a matter of indifference which course is taken by the particular digestive products; for in the latter case, they pass into the general blood-current with only such changes as they may undergo in the lymphatic system, while in the former they are subjected to the powerful influences of the liver before they find their way to the right side of the heart. What those influences are we shall study in a future chapter.

Fats.—As we have seen, a special mechanism is provided for the passage of fats into the lacteals. On the other hand, it is difficult to suppose that solid particles of fat can pass into the interior of the blood capillaries. So that we are led *a priori* to the view that the whole of the fat takes the course of the lacteals. But we cannot say that this is definitely proved. On the contrary, a deficit is observed when the quantity of fat disappearing after a meal from the alimentary canal is compared with that flowing into the thoracic duct; and if it be true, as stated, that the blood of the portal vein contains during digestion more fat than the general venous blood, some of this deficit may be explained by the fat passing into the blood capillaries, difficult as that passage may appear. The portal blood, moreover, during digestion contains a small but appreciable quantity of soaps.

[FIG. 112.

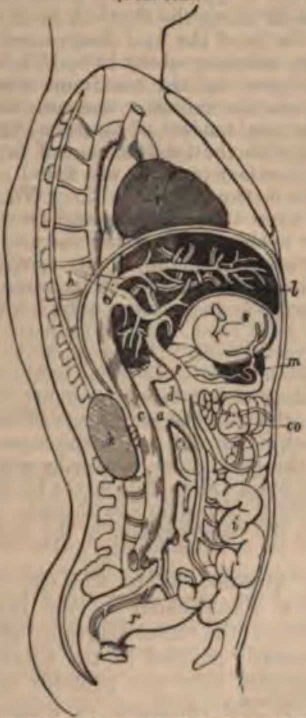


Diagram showing the larger Vessels concerned in the so-called Portal Circulation or System.—After MARSHALL.

The trunk, or body, is supposed to be divided down the middle line, so as to show the cavity of the thorax or chest above the arched diaphragm, and that of the abdomen below it. In the abdomen, *l*, is the liver; *s*, the stomach; *d*, a section of the duodenum and pancreas; *i*, the small intestine; *co*, a part of the colon; *r*, the rectum; *m*, the lower end of the spleen, and *k*, the right kidney. The blood of all these parts is supplied through arteries which are branches of the abdominal aorta, marked *a*. From the rectum, *r*, and the kidney, *k*, the blood is returned by veins, which end in the great ascending vein, named the ascending vena cava, marked *c*, which conveys the venous blood directly through the diaphragm, and into the right side of the heart, *o*. But the blood from the stomach, *s*; spleen, *m*; duodenum and pancreas, *d*; small intestine, *i*; and large intestine, *co* (excepting the rectum, *r*), is collected by venous branches, which end in a large venous trunk, named the vena portæ, or portal vein, *p*, by which this venous blood is conveyed to and distributed by branches through the liver. From this organ it is collected by other veins, which unite to form hepatic veins, *h*, which then join the ascending vena cava, *c*, and so reach the right side of the heart.]

of digestion. We may suppose moreover that that which does pass is immediately converted, possibly by some ferment action, into one or other of the natural proteids of the blood, or otherwise disposed of; and Plósz and Gyergyai[1] have shown that peptone injected carefully into a vein disappears from the blood, though little or even none passes out by the kidney. Hence the failure to find peptone in the blood (and the same may be said of the chyle) does not disprove the view which seems to follow legitimately from the results of artificial digestion, that proteid food is converted into peptone before passing from the alimentary canal into the system; and we know that artificially formed peptone is available for nutrition; for Plósz[2] and Plósz and Gyergyai[3] found that dogs fed on peptone and non-nitrogenous food actually put on flesh and gained weight.[4]

On the other hand, that the proteids pass by the portal blood (and if so, probably in the form of peptone) is indicated by the experiments of Schmidt-Mülheim,[5] who finds that when the chyle is entirely prevented from entering the blood, not only are proteids absorbed, but that they are so metabolized in the body that the quantity of urea which in consequence makes its appearance in the urine is the same as when the chyle flows into the venous system as usual. Except, therefore, on the very improbable view that proteids absorbed into the lacteals of the villi escape from the lymphatic system before they reach the thoracic duct, we must infer that they are absorbed by the blood capillaries.

Sugar.—With regard to the path taken by the sugar, the careful inquiries of v. Mering[6] show that the percentage of sugar, both in chyle and in general blood, is fairly constant, being to no marked extent increased by even amylaceous meals; but that a meal of sugar or starch does temporarily increase the quantity of sugar in the portal blood. From this we may infer that such portions of the sugar of the intestinal contents as are absorbed as sugar pass exclusively by the portal vein. But it must be remembered that at present we have no accurate information as to how large a proportion of the sugar resulting from a meal passes in this way unchanged until it reaches the liver, and how much undergoes the lactic acid or analogous fermentation. Nor do we know as yet how much of the starch taken as food is removed from the alimentary canal in the form, not of sugar but of dextrin.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 36.

[2] Ibid., ix (1874), p. 325.

[3] Op. cit.

[4] Cf. Adamkiewicz, Die Natur und der Nährwerth des Peptons, 1877.

[5] Archiv f. Anat. u. Physiol., 1877, p. 549.

[6] Ibid., p. 379.

When a solution of sugar is injected into an empty isolated loop of intestine a large quantity disappears, without the contents of the loop becoming acid.[1] In such a case it may fairly be inferred that the sugar is directly absorbed without undergoing any change. And where sugar is introduced in large quantities into the alimentary canal the percentage of sugar in the blood may be temporarily increased; to such an extent indeed that sugar may appear in the urine.[2] But neither of these facts prove that the sugar of an ordinary meal, passing as it does along the intestine with the other portions of the food and products of digestion, and appearing as it does in most cases in comparatively small quantities at a time, owing to the more or less gradual conversion of the starch of the meal, is similarly absorbed unchanged; while, in order that the marked acidity of the contents of the lower intestine should be kept up, a considerable quantity of sugar must suffer lactic acid fermentation, if the acidity be due as stated to lactic acid.

To sum up, the evidence is distinctly in favor of the fats passing largely by the chyle, and of the proteids and sugar passing largely by the portal veins; but there still remains much doubt as to the course and fate of a not inconsiderable portion of the fat, and the question as to the exact form in which proteids and carbohydrates leave the alimentary canal, cannot be answered in a perfectly definite manner.

Absorption by Diffusion.—It is evident, from the discussion just concluded, that simple diffusion is far from explaining the whole transit of the digested food from the intestine into the blood. Nevertheless, it must not be supposed that the great and general property of diffusion does not make itself felt in the process of absorption, however much it may, in the case of various substances, be subordinated and held in check by more potent influences. Thus the passage of water from the alimentary cavity into the blood, or from the blood into the alimentary cavity, and the behavior of various inorganic salts, when taken as food or medicine, illustrate very clearly the influence of osmosis. When the intestine contains a large quantity of watery matter the surplus water passes by diffusion into the blood, just as it passes through the membrane of a dialyzer, with blood or serous fluid on the one side and water on the other. When an albuminous fluid of the specific

---

[1] Funke, Lehrb., 6th Aufl., i, p. 235.

[2] C. Schmidt und v. Becker, quoted in Funke, op. cit., p. 236.

passage through the skin, lung, or kidney. B
the circulation an almost unlimited quantity of
absorbed from the alimentary canal.

It is a matter of common experience that su
and organic salts as are readily diffusible, pas
rapidity into the blood (and thus into the urine)
by the mouth; and the rapidity with which they
is in large measure proportionate to their diffu
course, coincident with this passage of the salt
testine into the blood, there is a proportionate curr
in the contrary direction from the blood into th
but this, though opposed to, is, under ordinary cir
too small to diminish to any serious extent the
water from the intestine into the blood, of whic
just now, as caused by the osmotic influence of the
constituents of the blood. But, under certain circ
the former may overcome the latter. Thus, when
trated solution of a highly diffusible salt, such as
sulphate, is introduced into the alimentary canal,
water from the blood into the intestine accomp
osmotic transit of the salt from the intestine into
is so great as largely to exceed the current in th
direction; and the intestine becomes filled with w
expense of the blood. This is probably the ca
purgative action of large doses of many saline ma
even the purgative action of more dilute solutio
explained in the same way, since in the case of so
least the transit of water as compared with the tra
salt is relatively more rapid with very dilute solu
with more concentrated solutions. Salts such as th
when introduced into the

Reaumur, Spallanzani, Tiedemann and Gmelin, Eberle (who first obtained artificial digestion with gastric mucus and an acid), Prout, Schwann (who first introduced the idea of *pepsin*,[1] though Wasmann first obtained it in a comparatively pure state), Berzelius and other chemists, we owe much. The observations of Dr. Beaumont,[2] carried on by means of the accidental gastric fistula of Alexis St. Martin, not only added largely to our positive knowledge, but were also of great indirect use as indicating a method of investigation which has since proved so fruitful. The labors of Bidder and Schmidt[3] and Frerichs[4] were of great value. The publication of Bernard's work on pancreatic juice[5] marked a distinct step in advance; but of far greater importance was the same illustrious physiologist's discovery of the vaso-motor action of the sympathetic (see p. 258), followed up as that was by Ludwig's demonstration[6] of the secretory activity of the chorda tympani, and enlarged, as this has been in turn, as well by the labors of Ludwig and his school, as by those of Bernard, Eckhard, Wittich, Heidenhain and others. To the importance of Heidenhain's later observations we have called attention in the text. The proofs offered by Corvisart,[7] and amplified by Kühne,[8] of the proteolytic action of the pancreatic juice opened out a line of inquiry of great importance, which is as yet far from being exhausted.

---

[1] Müller's Archiv, 1836, p. 90.

[2] Exps. and Obs. on the Gastric Juice and Phys. of Digestion, Boston, U. S., 1834.

[3] Die Verdauungssäfte, etc., 1852.

[4] Art. "Verdauung," Wagner's Handwörterbuch, 1846.

[5] Mém. sur l. Pancreas, 1856.

[6] Zt. f. rat. Med., N. F., i, p. 255, 1851.

[7] Sur une Fonction peu connue du Pancreas, 1857.

[8] Virchow's Archiv, xxxix (1867), p. 130.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Trachea and*

THE trachea is a membrano-cartilaginous cyli
somewhat flattened posteriorly. It is about fou
inches long, about three-fourths of an inch in d
is composed of an external fibrous and an inte
coat. The fibrous coat consists of several layer
composed of elastic and non-elastic fibrous tissu
and longitudinal layer of unstriated muscular
about twenty imperfect cartilaginous rings, whicl
parallel with each other and partially encircle the
rings are imperfect posteriorly, where the tube is
by a fibro-muscular membrane. The mucous coa
a basement membrane which is covered by a layer
columnar epithelium. On the surface of this mer
be seen numerous orifices, which are the apertures
leading from the tracheal mucous glands. These
of the racemose and follicular varieties, and are
dant in the posterior portions of the trachea.

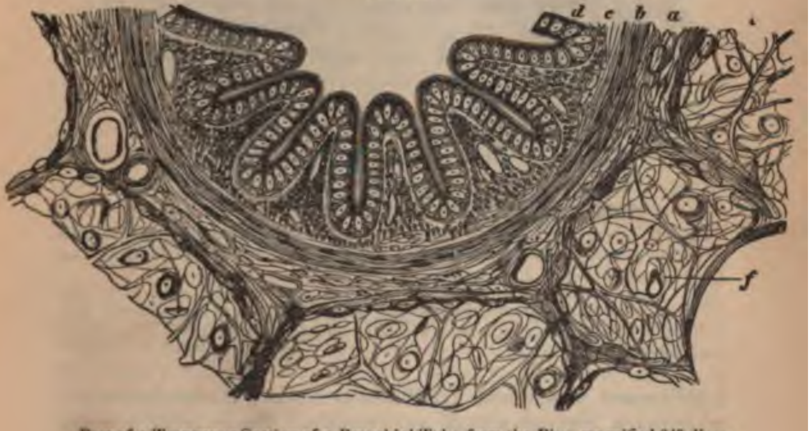
The lungs are bilateral organs, situated within t
cavity. When the chest is opened they are seen
but a portion of the space, or in other words are
This is not the case in the unopened chest, wher
are partially expanded and in contact with the ch

The lungs are divided into lobes, which are subd
lobules, and are composed of a *parenchyma*, and a
subserous coat. The serous coat is a continuation o
thoracic lining, and forms the pulmonary or visce
the pleura. The subserous coat is composed of
tissue containing a very

turn to their normal condition, contract, and thus assist in expelling the air.

The trachea is connected above with the larynx; below, it divides into two branches, which are the *right* and *left* bronchial tubes. The right is larger, shorter, and placed more horizontal than the left. The reason of the larger size of the right is obviously due to the greater capacity of the right lung. These primary bronchial tubes undergo subdivision through numerous gradations of smaller tubes until the ultimate divisions, or *alveolar passages*, are reached. The coats of the bronchial tubes become more delicate in structure as the tubes are diminished in size. The layer of cartilaginous rings, which is seen in the trachea, is continued in the larger bronchi, but the rings soon become replaced by irregular cartilaginous plates, which themselves disappear when the size of the bronchi have reached a diameter of about 2 mm. The mucous glands disappear consentaneously with the disappearance of the cartilaginous plates. The muscular fibres are in the form of a continuous transverse layer. The fibrous and muscular tissues are continued into the smallest bronchi.

FIG. 113.



Part of a Transverse Section of a Bronchial Tube from the Pig: magnified 240 diameters. *a*, external fibrous layer; *b*, muscular layer; *c*, internal fibrous layer; *d*, epithelial layer; *f*, one of the surrounding alveoli.

The mucous membrane is also continuous with that of the trachea, and is lined with ciliated columnar epithelium.

The smallest bronchi terminate in subdivisions, called the *alveolar passages.* (Figs. 114 and 115.) Each of these passages subdivide through several gradations, and ultimately terminate in cæcal processes, which gradually become expanded towards their cæcal extremities, and present an appearance similar to that of the expanded part of a funnel, hence they have been called the *infundibula.* The interior of each infundibulum is marked by fifteen or twenty incomplete cells, which are termed *alveoli* or *air-cells.* These cells average about 0.25 mm. in diameter. Their walls consist of a delicate basement membrane, which is lined by a layer of pavement epithelium. This membrane forms by its reduplications the incomplete septa between the air-cells. The space in the interior of an infundibulum is termed an *intercellular passage.*

FIG. 114.

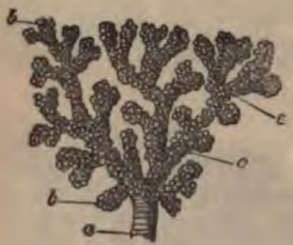


FIG. 115.

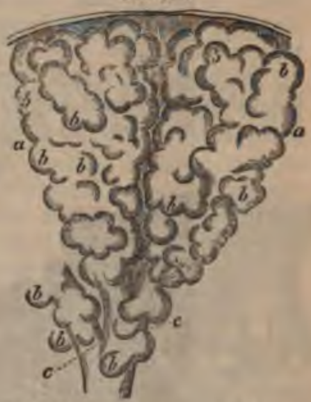


FIG. 114.—System of Alveolar Passages and Infundibula from the Margin of the Lung of a Monkey (Cercopethecus) injected with mercury; magnified 10 diameters. *a*, Terminal bronchial twig; *b*, *b*, infundibula; *c*, *c*, alveolar passages.

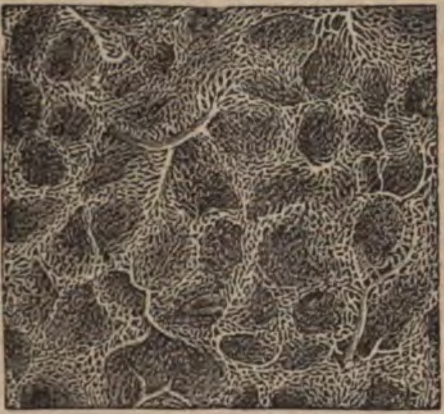
FIG. 115.—Two small groups of air-cells, or *infundibula*. *a*, *a*, with air-cells; *b*, *b*, and the alveolar passages; *c*, *c*, with which the air-cells communicate. From a newborn child.—After KÖLLIKER.

Each lobule or infundibulum is composed of an ultimate alveolar passage, with its terminal alveoli, and of nerves, bloodvessels, and lymphatics; all of which are bound together by fibro-elastic tissue.

The capillaries (Fig. 116) form a plexus between the cells, which is remarkable for its density. The diameters of the intercapillary spaces are often less than the diameters of the vessels. These capillaries are so arranged in the intercellular tissue that both sides of the vessels are in contact with the walls of contiguous cells.

The cartilaginous rings of the trachea and larger bronchi keep them continually open. The smaller bronchi, in which these cartilages are absent, are capable of considerable expansion and contraction by virtue of their elastic and muscular tissues. The nerves of the lungs are derived from the pneumogastric and sympathetic. Blood is conveyed through the pulmonary artery to the lungs, where it is arterialized, and then returned through the pulmonary veins to the heart. The lungs receive blood for their nutrition, principally, through the bronchial arteries.]

FIG. 116.



Capillary Network of the Pulmonary Bloodvessels in the Human Lung.

We have already seen (Introduction, p. 16) that one particular item of the body's income, viz., oxygen, is peculiarly associated with one particular item of the body's waste, viz., carbonic acid, the means which are applied for the introduction of the former being also used for the getting rid of the latter. Both are gases, and in consequence the ingress of the one as well as the egress of the other is far more dependent on the simple physical process of diffusion than on any active vital processes carried on by means of tissues. Oxygen passes from the air into the blood mainly by diffusion, and mainly by diffusion also from the blood into the tissue; in the same chea until equilibrium is once more established. This constitutes expiration; the inspiratory and expiratory act together forming a respiration. The fresh air introduced into the upper part of the pulmonary passages by the inspiratory movement contains more oxygen and less carbonic acid than the old air previously present in the lungs. By diffusion the new or *tidal* air, as it is frequently called, gives up its oxygen to, and takes carbonic acid from, the old or *stationary* air, as it has been called, and thus when it leaves the chest in expiration has been the means of both introducing oxygen into the chest and of removing carbonic acid from it. In this way, by the ebb and flow of the tidal air, and by diffusion between it and the stationary air, the air in the lungs is being constantly renewed through the alternate expansion and contraction of the chest.

In ordinary respiration the expansion of the chest never reaches its maximum; by more forcible muscular contraction, by what is called labored inspiration, an additional thoracic expansion can be brought about, leading to the inrush of a certain additional quantity of air before equilibrium is established. This additional quantity is often spoken of as *complemental* air. In the same way, in ordinary respiration, the contraction of the chest never reaches its maximum. By calling into use additional muscles, by a labored expiration, an additional quantity of air, the so-called *reserve* or *supplemental* air, may be driven out. But even after the most forcible expiration, a considerable quantity of air, the *residual* air, still remains in the lungs. The natural condition of the lungs in the chest is in fact one of partial distension. The elastic pulmonary tissue is always to a certain extent on the stretch; it is always, so to speak, striving to pull asunder the pulmonary from the parietal pleura; but this it cannot do, because the air can have no access to the plural cavity. When, however, the chest ceases to be air-tight, when by a puncture of the chest-wall or diaphragm air is introduced into the pleural chamber, the elasticity of the lungs pulls the pulmonary away from the parietal pleura, and the lungs collapse, driving out by the windpipe a considerable quantity of the residual air. Even then, however, the lungs are not completely emptied, some air still remaining in the air-cells and passages. It need hardly be added that when the pleura is punctured, and air can gain *free* admittance from the exterior into the pleural chamber, the effect of the respiratory movement is simply to drive air in and out of that chamber, instead of in and out of the lung. There is in consequence no renewal of the air within the lungs under those circumstances.

bronchi; the pressure, however, which can be exerted
ably does not exceed 1 or 2 mm.

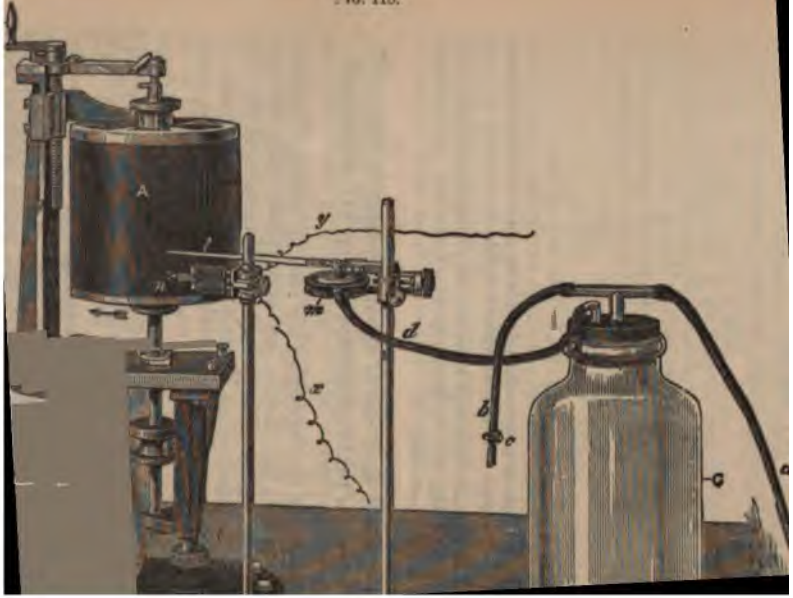
When a manometer is introduced into a lateral
windpipe of an animal, the mercury will fall, indicat
pressure as it is called, during inspiration, and rise
positive pressure, during expiration, the former or n
ure amounting to about 3 mm., and the latter or po
to 2 mm. of mercury. When a manometer is fitted
closure into the mouth, or better, in order to avoid t
tion of the mouth, into one nostril, the other nostril a
being closed, and efforts of inspiration and expiration
mercury falls or undergoes negative pressure with in
rises, or undergoes positive pressure during expirati
found in this way that the negative pressure of a stro
effort varied from 30 to 74 mm., while the positive
strong expiration varied from 62 to 100 mm.

The total amount of air which can be given
most forcible expiration following upon a most
spiration, that is, the sum of the complementa
reserve airs, was called by Hutchinson "the vita
"extreme differential capacity" is a better phrase.
measured by a modification of a gas-meter called
The medium vital capacity may be put down at
(200 to 250 cubic inches).

Independent of other causes of variation, Hutchins
vital capacity to be decidedly dependent on stature, tl
sons having the greater capacity.

Of the whole measure of vital capacity, about
c. inch) may be put down as the average amount
the remainder being nearly equally divided betwe

FIG. 118.



The recording apparatus shown is the ordinary cylinder-recording apparatus. The cylinder *A* covered with smoked paper is by means of the friction-plate *B* put into revolution by the spring clock-work in *C* regulated by Foucault's regulator *D*. By means of the screw *E*, the cylinder can be raised or lowered, and by means of the screw *F* its speed may be increased or diminished.

The tracheotomy tube *t* fixed in the trachea of an animal is connected by india-rubber tubing *a* with a glass **T** piece inserted into the large jar *G*. From the other end of the **T** piece proceeds a second piece of tubing *b*, the end of which can be either closed or partially obstructed at pleasure by means of the screw-clamp *c*. From the jar proceeds a third piece of tubing *d*, connected with a Marey's tambour *m* (see Fig. 63, p. 202), the lever of which *l* writes on the recording surface. When the tube *b* is open the animal breathes freely through this, and the movements in the air of *G* and consequently in the tambour are slight. On closing the clamp *c*, the animal breathes only the air contained in the jar, and the movements of the lever of the tambour become consequently much more marked.

Below the lever is seen a small time-marker *n* connected with an electro-magnet, the current through which coming from a battery by the wires *x* and *y* is made and broken by a clock-work or metronome.

the fashion of a pair of callipers, the ivory button at one free end being placed on the spine of a vertebra behind and the tambour at the other on the sternum in front in the line of the diameter which is being studied. The distance between the free ends of the instrument being carefully adjusted so that the button of the tambour presses slightly on the sternum, any variations in the length of the diameter in question will, since the framework of the tambour is immobile, give rise to variations of pressure within the tambour. These variations of the "receiving" tambour as it is called are conveyed by a flexible tube containing air to a second or "recording" tambour similar to that shown in Figs. 63 and 118, the lever of which records the variations on a travelling surface. For the purpose of measuring the extent of the movements, the instrument must be experimentally graduated. In Marey's pneumograph, a long elastic chamber is used as a pectoral girdle. When the chest expands, the girdle is elongated, and the air within it rarefied, and the lever of the tambour connected with it depressed; and conversely, when the chest contracts, the lever is elevated. The pneumograph of Fick is somewhat similar. The movements of the diaphragm may be registered by means of a needle, which is thrust through the sternum so as to rest on the diaphragm, the head of the needle being connected with a lever.[1]

It is seen that in Fig. 117 inspiration begins somewhat suddenly and advances rapidly, that expiration succeeds inspiration immediately, advancing at first rapidly, but afterwards more and more slowly. Such pauses as are seen occur between the end of expiration and the beginning of inspiration. In normal breathing, hardly any pause is observed between the extreme end of expiration and the beginning of inspiration, but in cases where the respiration becomes infrequent, pauses of considerable length may be observed.

---

[1] See Hdb. Physiol. Laborat., p. 295.

In what may be considered as normal breathing, the respiratory act is repeated about seventeen times a minute; and the duration of the inspiration as compared with that of the expiration (and such pause as may exist) is about as ten to twelve.

The rate of the respiratory rhythm varies very largely, and in this as in the volume it is very difficult to fix a satisfactory average. While Hutchinson places it at 20 a minute, Vierordt puts it at 11.9, and Funke at 13.5. The frequency is greater in children than in adults, but rises again somewhat after 30 years of age. Quetelet gives the rate of respiration of new-born infants at 44; from 1 to 5 years, 26; from 25 to 30, 16; from 30 to 50, 18.1 per minute. The rate is influenced by the position of the body, being quicker in standing than in lying, and in lying than in sitting. Muscular exertion and emotional conditions affect it deeply. In fact, almost every event which occurs in the body may influence it. We shall have to consider in detail hereafter the manner in which this influence is brought to bear.

When the ordinary respiratory movements prove insufficient to effect the necessary changes in the blood, their rhythm and character become changed. Normal respiration gives place to labored respiration, and this in turn to dyspnœa, which, unless some restorative event occurs, terminates in asphyxia. These abnormal conditions we shall study more fully hereafter.

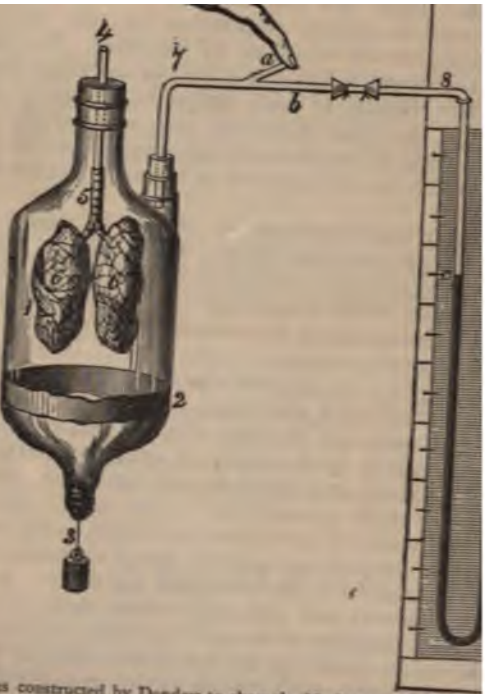
The Respiratory Movements.

When the movements of the chest during normal breathing are watched, it is seen that during respiration an enlargement takes place in the antero-posterior diameter, the sternum being thrown forwards, and at the same time moving upwards. The lateral width of the chest is also increased. The vertical increase of the cavity is not so obvious from the outside, though when the movements of the diaphragm are watched by means of an inserted needle, the upper surface of that organ is seen to descend at each inspiration, the anterior walls of the abdomen bulging out at the same time. In the female human subject, the movement of the upper part of the chest is very conspicuous, the breast rising and falling with every respiration; in the male, however, the movements are almost entirely confined to the lower part of the chest. In labored respiration all parts of the chest are alternately expanded and contracted, the breast rising and falling as well in the male as in the female. We have now to consider these several movements in greater detail, and to study the means by which they are carried out.

Inspiration.—There are two chief means by which the chest is enlarged in normal respiration, viz., the descent of the diaphragm and the elevation of the ribs. The former causes that movement in the lower part of the chest and abdomen so characteristic of male breathing, which is called diaphragmatic; the latter causes the movement of the upper chest characteristic of female breathing, which is called costal. These two main factors are assisted by less important and subsidiary events.

The descent of the diaphragm is effected by means of the contraction of its muscular fibres. When at rest the diaphragm presents a convex surface to the thorax; when contracted it becomes much flatter, and in consequence the level of the chest-floor is lowered, the vertical diameter of the chest being proportionately enlarged. (Fig. 119.) In descending, the diaphragm presses on the abdominal viscera, and so causes a projection of the flaccid abdominal walls. From its attachments to the sternum and the false ribs, the diaphragm, while contracting, naturally tends to pull the sternum and the upper false ribs downwards and inwards, and the lower false ribs upwards and inwards, towards the lumbar spine. In normal breathing this tendency produces little effect, being counteracted by the accompanying general costal elevation, and by certain special muscles to be mentioned presently. In forced inspiration, however, and especially where there is any obstruction to the entrance of air into the lungs, the lower ribs may be so much drawn in by the contraction of the diaphragm, that the girth of the trunk at this point is obviously diminished.

The elevation of the ribs is a much more complex matter than the descent of the diaphragm. If we examine any one rib, such as the fifth, and observe that while it moves freely on its vertebral articulation, it descends when in the position of rest in an oblique direction from the spine to the sternum, it is obvious that when the rib is raised, its sternal attachment must not only be carried upwards but also thrown forwards. (Fig. 120.) The rib may, in fact, be regarded as a radius, moving on the vertebral articulation as a centre, and causing the sternal attachment to describe an arc of a circle in the

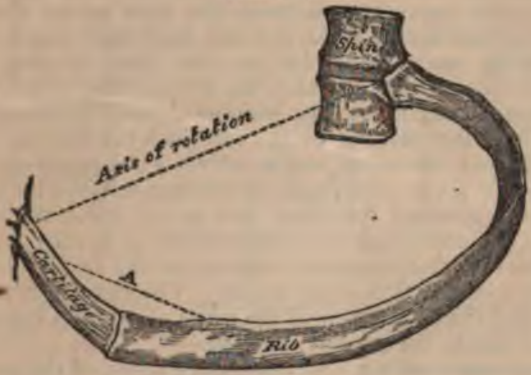


Apparatus constructed by Donders to show the Mechanism of the Dia
Respiration.

1, a bottle having three openings; 2, is closed by a rubber membrane, w
elevated or depressed at will; 4, is closed with a cork, having a tube runnin
centre, and having

ment must of necessity be carried farther away in front of the spine. Since all the ribs have a downward slanting direction, they must all tend, when raised towards the horizontal position, to thrust the sternum forward, some more than others, according to their slope and length. The elasticity of the sternum and costal cartilages, together with the articulation of the sternum to the clavicle above, permit the front surface of the chest to be thus thrust forwards as well as upwards, when the ribs are raised. By this action the antero-posterior diameter of the chest is enlarged.

[FIG. 120.]



According to A. Ransome,[1] the forward movement in inspiration, especially of the upper ribs, is so great that it can only be accounted for by an expiratory bending in and inspiratory straightening of the ribs.

Since the ribs form arches which increase in their sweep as one proceeds from the first downwards as far at least as the seventh, it is evident that when a lower rib such as the fifth is elevated so as to occupy or to approach towards the position of the one above it, the chest at that level will become wider from side to side, in proportion as the fifth arch is wider than the fourth. Thus the elevation of the rib increases not only the antero-posterior but also the transverse diameter of the chest. Further, on account of the resistance of the sternum, the angles between the ribs and their cartilages are, in the

---

[1] On Stethometry, 1876, p. 96.

action of the external intercostal
intervening space raises the two ribs, thus br
towards the position in which the fibres of the
the shortest length, viz., the horizontal one. Th
action is further favored by the fact that the firs
movable than the second, and so affords a compar
base for the action of the muscles between the two
in turn supporting the third, and so on, while
muscles in addition serve to render fixed, or to ra
two ribs. So that, in normal respiration, the act
ably by a contraction of the scaleni. The first tw
thus fixed, the contraction of the series of external
muscles acts to the greatest advantage.

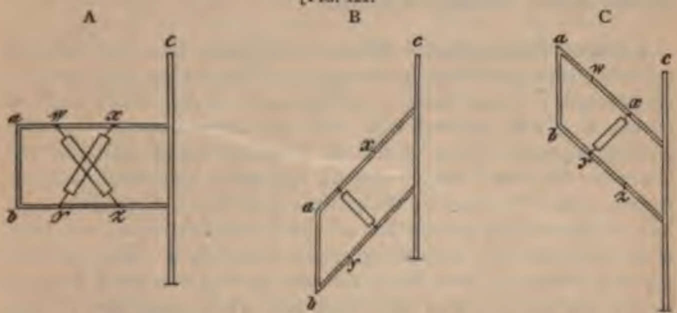
While the elevating, *i. e.*, inspiratory action of t
intercostals is admitted by all authors, the funct
internal intercostals has been much disputed.

Haller may be regarded as the leader of those who re
ternal intercostals as inspiratory, while Hamberger was t
successfully advocated the perhaps more commonly ac
that, while those parts of them which lie between the s
lages act like the external intercostals as elevators, *i.e.*, as
in function, those parts which lie between the osseous ri
pressors, *i. e.*, as expiratory in function.

In the well-known model invented by Bernoulli and
Hamberger, consisting of two rigid bars, representing th
ing vertically by means of their articulations with an up
senting the spine, and connected at their free ends by a
senting the sternum, it is undoubtedly true that stret
bands attached to the bars in such a way as to represent
the external and internal intercostals, viz., sloping in
downwards and forwards, and in the other downwards and
do, on being left free to contract, in the former case

in front and the internal behind seems to point to both sets of muscles acting towards the same end. The mechanical conditions, however, are in the case of these muscles so complex that a deduction of their actions from simple mechanical principles, or from the direction of the fibres, must be exceedingly difficult and dangerous. Newell-Martin and Hartwell[1] have shown, by an ingenious experiment, that in the cat and the dog the internal intercostals, along their whole length, contract, even in the early stages of dyspnœa, *alternately* with the diaphragm, and are therefore to be regarded as expiratory in function.

[Fig. 121.



a and *b* represent cross-bars, articulating on the vertical bar *c*; *x*, *y*, and *w*, *z* are two rubber bands, which represent respectively the external and internal intercostal muscles. Diagram A represents the muscles in a state of rest. If, now, the band *x* and *y* was free to contract, it is obvious that, in order to attain its shortest length, it would assume a position as in diagram C. If, now, the band *w* and *z* was free to move, the converse would take place of what was seen when *x* and *y* became shortened. Thus, in diagram B, the cross-bars are depressed.

The bands *x* and *y* represent the external intercostal muscles, which, by contraction, elevate the ribs. The bands *w* and *z* represent the internal intercostals, which, by contracting, depress the ribs.]

Next in importance to the external intercostals come the levators costarum, which, though small muscles, are able, from the nearness of their costal insertions to the fulcrum, to produce considerable movement of the sternal ends of the ribs. The external intercostals and the levatores costarum, with the scaleni, may fairly be said to be the elevators of the ribs, *i. e.*, the chief muscles of costal inspiration in normal breathing.

Additional space in the transverse diameter is afforded probably by the rotation of the ribs on an antero-posterior axis, but this

---

[1] Journ. Physiol., ii (1879), p. 24.

other muscles are brought into play. The scale
contracted, so as to raise, or at least give a very
to the first and second ribs. In the same wa
posticus superior, which descends from the fixed
lower cervical and upper dorsal regions to the
fourth, and fifth ribs, by its contractions raises t
labored breathing a function of the lower false r
noticeable in easy breathing, comes into play.
pressed, retracted, and fixed, thereby giving incr
to the diaphragm, and directing the whole ene
muscle to the vertical enlargement of the chest.
the *serratus posticus inferior*, which passes upwa
lumbar aponeurosis to the last four ribs, by de
fixing those ribs becomes an adjuvant inspira
The *quadratus lumborum* and lower portions of th
balis may have a similar function.

All these muscles may come into action even i
which, deeper than usual, can hardly perhap
labored. When, however, the need for greater
efforts becomes urgent, all the muscles which ca
fixed point, act in enlarging the chest, come into
the arms and shoulder being fixed, the *serratus*
ing from the scapula to the middle of the first ei
ribs, the *pectoralis minor* passing from the coracoid
parts of the third, fourth, and fifth ribs, the *pect*
passing from the humerus to the costal cartilag
second to the sixth, and that portion of the *lati*
which passes from the humerus to the last three ri
to elevate the ribs and thus to enlarge the chest.
mastoid and other muscles passing from the
sternum are also called

the main a simple effect of elastic reaction. By the inspiratory effort the elastic tissue of the lungs is put on the stretch; so long as the inspiratory muscles continue contracting, the tissue remains stretched, but directly those muscles relax, the elasticity of the lungs comes into play and drives out a portion of the air contained in them. Similarly the elastic sternum and costal cartilages are, by the elevation of the ribs, put on the stretch; they are driven into a position which is unnatural to them. When the intercostal and other elevator muscles cease to contract, the elasticity of the sternum and costal cartilages causes them to return to their previous position, thus depressing the ribs and diminishing the dimensions of the chest. When the diaphragm descends, in pushing down the abdominal viscera, it puts the abdominal walls on the stretch; and hence, when at the end of inspiration the diaphragm relaxes, the abdominal walls return to their place, and by pressing on the abdominal viscera, push the diaphragm up again into its position of rest. Expiration then is, in the main, simple elastic reaction; but it is obvious that since external work has been effected by the respiratory act, viz., the movement of the column of air, the reaction of expiration must fall short of the action of inspiration; there must be some, though it may be a very slight, additional expenditure of energy to bring the chest completely to its former condition. This is, as we have seen, supposed by many to be afforded by the internal intercostals acting as depressors of the ribs. If these do not act in this way, we may suppose that the elastic return of the abdominal walls is accompanied and assisted by the contraction of the abdominal muscles. The triangularis sterni, the effect of whose contraction is to pull down the costal cartilages, may also be regarded as an expiratory muscle.

When expiration becomes labored, the abdominal muscles become important expiratory agents. By pressing on the contents of the abdomen, they thrust them and the diaphragm up into the chest, the vertical diameter of which is thereby lessened, and by pulling down the sternum and the middle and lower ribs they lessen also the cavity of the chest in its antero-posterior and transverse diameters. They are, in fact, the chief expiratory muscles, though they are doubtless assisted by the serratus posticus inferior and portions of the sacro-lumbalis, since when the diaphragm is not contracting, the depression of the lower ribs which the contraction of these muscles causes serves only to narrow the chest. As expiration becomes more and more forced, every muscle in the

In normal healthy respiration the current of air wh
and out of the lungs, travels, not through the mouth,
the nose, viz., chiefly through the lower nasal meatus.
ing air, by exposure to the vascular mucous membran
row and winding nasal passages, is more efficiently war
would be if it passed through the mouth; and at the sa
mouth is thereby protected from the desiccating effect
tinual inroad of comparatively dry air.

During each inspiratory effort the nostrils are expand
by the action of the dilatores naris, and thus the ent
facilitated. The return to their previous condition du
tion is effected by the elasticity of the nasal cartilag
perhaps, by the compressores naris. This movement of
perceptible in many people, even during tranquil bre
comes very obvious in labored respiration.

When the mouth is closed, the soft palate, which is
what tense, is swayed by the respiratory current, but e
passive manner, and it is not until the larynx is reached
going air that any active movements are met with.
larynx is examined with the laryngoscope, it is frequentl
while during inspiration the glottis is widely open, with
ration the arytenoid cartilages approach each other so a
the glottis, the cartilages of Santorini projecting inwa
same time. Thus, synchronous with the respiratory ex
contraction of the chest, and the respiratory elevation a
sion of the alæ nasi, there is a rhythmic widening and
of the glottis. Like the movements of the nostril, this
action of the glottis is much more evident in labored th
quil breathing. Indeed, in the latter case it is freque
The manner in which this rhythmic opening and n
effected will be described when we come to study the pr
the voice. Whether there exists a rhythmic contraction
sion of the trachea and bronchial passages effected by m
plain muscular tissue of those organs and synchronous w
piratory movements of the chest, is uncertain.[1]

chiefly) effects exchanges with the stationary air; in consequence the expired air differs from inspired air in several important particulars.

1. The temperature of expired air is variable, but under ordinary circumstances is higher than that of the inspired air. At an average temperature of the atmosphere, for instance at about 20° C., the temperature of expired air is in the mouth 33.9°, in the nose 35.3°. When the external temperature is low, that of the expired air sinks somewhat, but not to any great extent, thus at —6.3° C. it is 29.8° C. When the external temperature is high, the expired air may become cooler than the inspired, thus at 41.9° it was found by Valentin to be 38.1°. The exact temperature in fact depends on the relative temperatures of the blood and inspired air, and on the depth and rate of breathing.

2. The expired air is loaded with aqueous vapor. The point of saturation of any gas, that is, the utmost quantity of water which any given volume of gas can take up as aqueous vapor, varies with the temperature, being higher with the higher temperature. For its own temperature expired air is according to most observers saturated with aqueous vapor. According to Edward Smith it is, when fasting, only half saturated.

3. When the total quantity of tidal air given out at any expiration is compared with that taken in at the corresponding inspiration, it is found that, both being dried and measured at the same pressure, the expired air is less in volume than the inspired air, the difference amounting to about $\frac{1}{40}$th or $\frac{1}{50}$th of the volume of the latter. Hence, when an animal is made to breathe in a confined space, the atmosphere is absolutely diminished, as was observed so long ago as 1674 by Mayow. The approximate equivalence in volume between inspired and expired air arises from the fact that the volume of any given quantity of carbonic acid is equal to the volume of the oxygen consumed to produce it; the slight falling short of the expired air is due to the circumstance that all the oxygen inspired does not reappear in the carbonic acid expired, some having formed other combinations.

4. The expired air contains about 4 or 5 per cent. less oxygen, and about 4 per cent. more carbonic acid than the

inspired air, the quantity of nitrogen suffering but little change. Thus

	Oxygen.	Nitrogen.	Carbonic Acid.
Inspired air contains	20.81	79.15	.04
Expired " "	16.033	79.557	4.380

The quantity of nitrogen in the expired air is sometimes found to be greater, as in the table above, but sometimes less than that of the inspired air.

W. Edwards thought that nitrogen was absorbed in cold and thrown out in warm weather. W. Müller observed that in an atmosphere consisting entirely of nitrogen, an absorption, and in one devoid of nitrogen or containing little nitrogen, an escape of nitrogen took place; a result which appears probable.

In a single breath the air is richer in carbonic acid (and poorer in oxygen) at the end than at the beginning. Hence the longer the breath is held, the greater the pause between inspiration and expiration, the higher the percentage of carbonic acid in the expired air. Thus Becher found that by increasing the pause from 0 to 100 seconds, the percentage was raised from 3.6 to 7.5. The rate of increase, however, continually diminishes, being greatest at the beginning of the period.

When the rate of breathing remains the same, by increasing the depth of the breathing the percentage of carbonic acid in each breath is lowered, but the total quantity of carbonic acid expired in a given time is increased. Similarly, when the depth of breath remains the same, by quickening the rate the percentage of carbonic acid in each breath is lowered, but the quantity expired in a given time is increased.

The variations in both the consumption of oxygen and production of carbonic acid, due to variations in pressure, will be considered in connection with the respiratory changes of blood.

Taking, as we have done, at 500 cc. the amount of tidal air passing in and out of the chest of an average man, such a person will expire about 22 cc. of carbonic acid at each breath; this, reckoning the rate of breathing at 17 a minute, would give over 500 liters of carbonic acid for the day's production. By actual experiment, however, Pettenkofer and Voit, of whose researches we shall have to speak hereafter, determined the total daily excretion of carbonic acid in an average man to be 800 grams, *i. e.*, rather more than 400 liters (406), containing 218.1 grams carbon, and 581.9 grams oxygen, the oxygen actually consumed at the same time being about 700 grams. This amount represents the gases given out and taken in, not by the lungs only, but by the whole body; but the amount of carbonic acid given out by the skin is, as we shall see, very slight (ten grams or even less), so that 800 grams may be taken as the average production of carbonic acid by an average man. The quantity, however, both of oxygen consumed and of carbonic acid given out, is subject to very wide variations; thus in Pettenkofer and Voit's observations, the daily quantity of carbonic acid varied from 686 to 1285 grams, and that of the oxygen from 594 to 1072 grams. These variations and their causes will be discussed when we come to deal with the problems of nutrition.

The quantity of carbonic acid produced and oxygen consumed increases in man from birth up to about thirty years, and after that diminishes. In the female the quantity, always less than that of man, increases up to puberty, remains during the menstrual life at a standstill, and after the climacteric declines.

5. Besides carbonic acid, expired air contains various impurities, many of an unknown nature, and all in small amounts. Ammonia has been detected in expired air, even in that taken directly from the trachea, in which case its presence could not be due to decomposing food lingering in the mouth. According to Lossen, the amount given off in ordinary respiration in 24 hours is 0.014 gram. When the expired air is condensed by being conveyed into a cooled receiver, the aqueous product is found to contain organic matter, and rapidly to putrefy. The organic substances thus shown to be present in the expired air are the cause in part of the odor of breath. It is probable that many of them are of a poisonous nature; for an atmosphere containing simply 1 per cent. of carbonic acid (with a corresponding diminution of oxygen) has very little effect on the animal economy, whereas an atmosphere in which the carbonic acid has been raised to 1 per cent. by breathing, is highly injurious. In fact, air rendered so far impure by breathing that the carbonic acid amounts to 0.08 per cent. is distinctly unwholesome, not so much on account of the carbonic acid as of the accompanying impurities. Since these impurities are of unknown nature and cannot be estimated, the easily determined carbonic acid is usually taken as the measure of their presence. We have seen that the average man loads, at each breath, 500 cc. of air with carbonic acid to the extent of 4 per cent. He will accordingly at each breath load 2 liters to the extent of 1 per cent.; and in one hour, if he breathe 17 times a minute, will load rather more than 2000 liters to the same extent.

At the very least, then, a man ought to be supplied with this quantity of air hourly; and if the air is to be kept fairly wholesome, that is with the carbonic acid reduced to 0.1 per cent., he should have ten times as much.

SEC. 3. THE RESPIRATORY CHANGES IN THE BLOOD.

While the air, passing in and out of the lungs, is thus robbed of a portion of its oxygen, and loaded with a certain quantity of carbonic acid, the blood, as it streams along the pulmonary capillaries, undergoes important correlative changes. As it leaves the right ventricle, it is venous blood of a dark-purple or maroon color; when it falls into the left auricle, it is arterial blood of a bright-scarlet hue. In passing through the capillaries of the body, from the left to the right side of the heart, it is again changed from the arterial to the venous condition. We have to inquire, What are the essential differences between arterial and venous blood; by what means is the venous blood changed into arterial in the lungs, and the arterial into venous in the rest of the body; and what relations do these changes in the blood bear to the changes in the air which we have already studied?

The facts, that venous blood at once becomes arterial on being exposed to or shaken up with air or oxygen, and that arterial blood becomes venous when kept for some little time in a closed vessel, or when submitted to a current of some indifferent gas, such as nitrogen or hydrogen, prepare us for the statement that the fundamental difference between venous and arterial blood is in the relative proportion of the oxygen and carbonic acid gases contained in each. From both a certain quantity of gas can be extracted by means which do not otherwise materially alter the constitution of the blood; and this gas, when obtained from arterial blood, is found to contain more oxygen and less carbonic acid than that obtained from venous blood. This is the real differential character of the two bloods; all other differences are either, as we shall see to be the case with the color, dependent on this, or are unimportant and fluctuating.

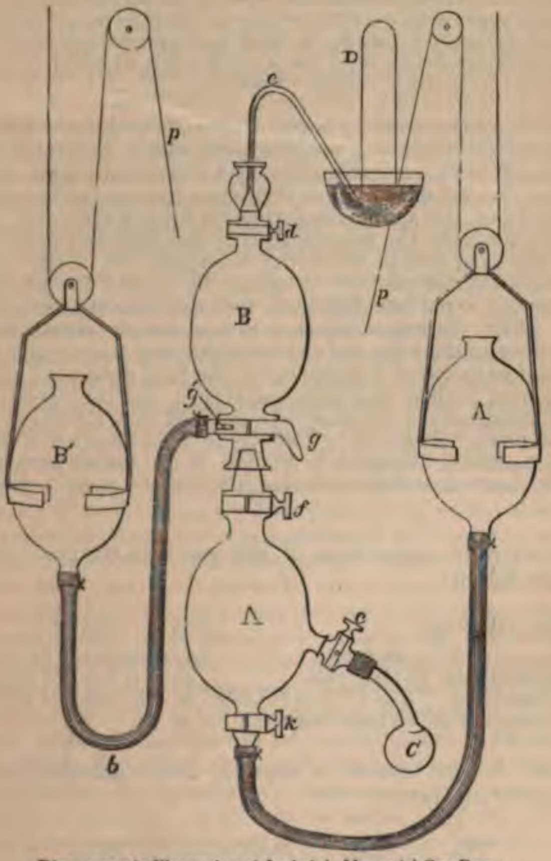
If the quantity of gas which can be extracted by the mercurial air-pump from 100 vols. of blood be measured at 0° C., and a pressure of 760 mm., it is found to amount, in round numbers, to 60 vols.[1]

The vacuum produced by the ordinary mechanical air-pump is insufficient to extract all the gas from blood. Hence it becomes necessary to use either a large Torricellian vacuum or a Sprengel's pump. In the former (Fig. 122) case two large globes of glass, one fixed and the other movable, are connected by a flexible tube; the fixed globe

---

[1] Or, at a pressure of 1 meter, about 50 vols.

FIG. 122.



Diagrammatic Illustration of Ludwig's Mercurial Gas-Pump.

A and B are two glass globes, connected by strong india-rubber tubes, a and b, with two similar glass globes, A' and B'. A is further connected by means of the stopcock c with the receiver C containing the blood (or other fluid) to be analyzed, and B by means of the stopcock d and the tube e with the receiver D for receiving the gases. A and B are also connected with each other by means of the stopcocks f and g, the latter being so arranged that B also communicates with B' by the passage g'. A' and B' being full

vacuum of A and B. By raising A', after the closure
of d, the gases so set free are driven from A into B, and by the rais
through e into the receiver D, standing over mercury.

is made to communicate by means of air-tight stopcoc
with a receiver containing the blood, and with a rece
the gas. When the movable globe filled with mercury i
the fixed one, the mercury from the former runs into ar
fills the latter, the air previously present being driven
adjusting the cocks, the movable globe is then depressed
below the fixed one, in which the consequent fall of
produces an almost complete vacuum. By turning the
this vacuum is put into connection with the receiver c
blood, which thereupon becomes proportionately exh
again adjusting the cocks, and once more elevating the m
the gas thus extracted is driven out of the fixed globe in
The vacuum is then once more established, and the o
peated as long as gas continues to be given off from the
form of pump, introduced by Ludwig, or a modificatio
drying apparatus, employed by Pflüger, is the one whi
hitherto most extensively used; but a Sprengel's pump
by some.

The average composition of this gas is in the tw
blood as follows:

From 100 vols.	may be obtain	
	Of Oxygen.	Of Carbonic Acid.
Of arterial blood,	20 (16)[1] vols.	39 (30) vols.
Of venous blood,	8 to 12 (6 to 10) vols.	46 (35) vols.

All measured at 760 mm. and 0° C.

It will be convenient to consider the relations
these gases separately.

dissolved in the water, that is to say, will be absorbed from the atmosphere. The quantity which is so absorbed will depend on the quantity of oxygen which is in the atmosphere above; that is to say, on the pressure of the oxygen; the greater the pressure of the oxygen the larger the amount which will be absorbed. If, on the other hand, water already containing a good deal of oxygen dissolved in it, be exposed to an atmosphere containing little or no oxygen, the oxygen will escape from the water into the atmosphere. The oxygen in fact which is dissolved in the water is in a state of tension, the degree of tension depending on the quantity dissolved; and when water containing oxygen dissolved in it is exposed to any atmosphere, the point whether the oxygen escapes from the water into the atmosphere, or passes from the atmosphere into the water, depends on whether the tension of the oxygen in the water is greater or less than the pressure of the oxygen in the atmosphere. Hence, when water is exposed to oxygen, the oxygen either escapes or is absorbed until equilibrium is established between the pressure of the oxygen in the atmosphere above and the tension of the oxygen in the water below. This result is, as far as mere absorption and escape are concerned, quite independent of what other gases are present in the water or in the atmosphere. Suppose a half liter of water were lying at the bottom of a two-liter flask, and that the atmosphere in the flask above the water was one-third oxygen; it would make no difference, as far as the absorption of oxygen by the water was concerned, whether the remaining two-thirds of the atmosphere were carbonic acid, or nitrogen, or hydrogen, or whether the space above the water was a vacuum filled to one-third with pure oxygen. Hence it is said that the absorption of any gas depends on the *partial pressure* of that gas in the atmosphere to which the liquid is exposed. This is true not only of oxygen and water, but of all gases and liquids which do not enter into chemical combination with each other. Different liquids will of course absorb different gases with differing readiness, but with the same gas and the same liquid the amount absorbed will depend directly on the partial pressure of the gas. It should be added that the process is much influenced by temperature. Hence, to state the matter generally, the absorption of any gas by any liquid will depend on the nature of the gas, the nature of the liquid, the pressure of the gas, and the temperature at which both stand.

Now it might be supposed, and indeed was once supposed, that the oxygen in the blood was simply dissolved by the blood. If this were so, then the amount of oxygen present in any given quantity of blood exposed to any given atmosphere, ought to rise and fall steadily and regularly as the partial pressure of oxygen in that atmosphere is increased or diminished. But this is found not to be the case. If we expose blood containing little or no oxygen to a succession of atmospheres containing increasing quantities of oxygen, we find that at first there is a very rapid absorption of the available oxygen, and then this somewhat suddenly ceases or becomes very small; and if, on the other hand, we submit arterial blood to successively diminishing pressures, we find that for a long time very little is given off, and then suddenly the escape becomes very rapid. The absorption of oxygen by blood does not follow the general law of absorption according to pressure. The phenomena, on the other hand, suggest the idea that the oxygen in the blood is in some particular combination with a substance or some substances present in the blood, the combination being of such a kind that dissociation readily occurs at certain pressures and certain temperatures. What is that substance or what are those substances?

If serum, free from red corpuscles, be used in such absorption experiments, it is found that as compared with the entire blood, very little oxygen is absorbed, about as much as would be absorbed by the same quantity of water; but such as is absorbed does follow the law of pressures. In natural arterial blood the quantity of oxygen which can be obtained from serum is exceedingly small; it does not amount to half a volume in one hundred volumes of the entire blood to which the serum belonged. It is evident that the oxygen which is present in blood is in some way or other peculiarly connected with the red corpuscles. Now the distinguishing feature of the red corpuscles is the presence of hæmoglobin. We have already seen (p. 49) that this constitutes 90 per cent. of the dried red corpuscles. There can be *a priori* little doubt that this must be the substance with which the oxygen is associated; and to the properties of this body we must, therefore, direct our attention.

Hæmoglobin; its Properties and Derivatives.

separated from the other constituents of the serum,
appears as a substance, either amorphous or crys-
ily soluble in water (especially in warm water)
h.

Since it is soluble in serum, and since the identity of the crystals observed occasionally within the corpuscles with those obtained in other ways shows that the hæmoglobin, as it exists in the corpuscle, is the same thing as that which is artificially prepared from blood, it is evident that some peculiar relationship between the stroma and the hæmoglobin must, in natural blood, keep the latter from being dissolved by the serum. Hence, in preparing hæmoglobin, it is necessary first of all to break up the corpuscles. This may be done by the addition of chloroform or of bile-salts, or by repeatedly freezing and thawing. It is also of advantage previously to remove the alkaline serum, so as to operate only on the red corpuscles. The corpuscles being thus broken up, an aqueous solution of hæmoglobin is the result. The alkalinity of the solution, when present, being reduced by the cautious addition of dilute acetic acid, and the solvent power of the aqueous medium being administered by the addition of one-fourth its bulk of alcohol, the mixture, set aside in a temperature of 0° C. still further to reduce the solubility of the hæmoglobin, readily crystallizes, when the blood used is that of the dog, cat, horse, rat, guinea-pig, etc. The crystals may be separated by filtration, redissolved in water and recrystallized.

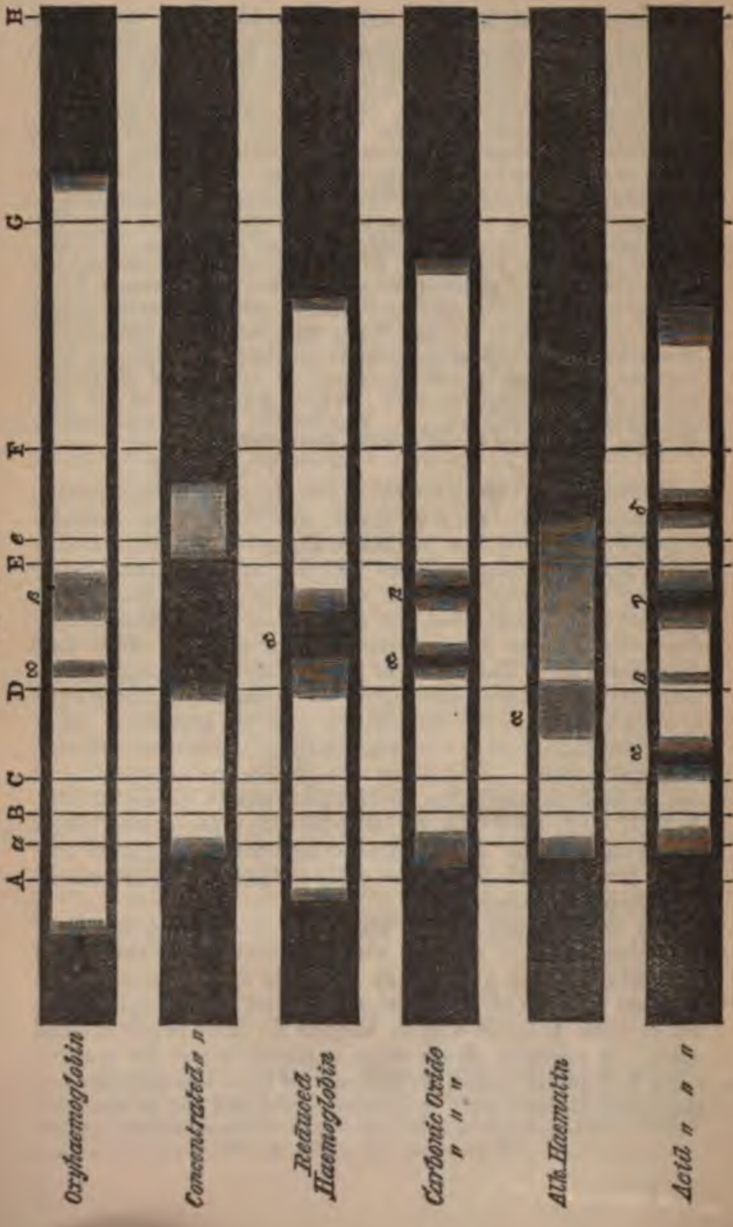
Hæmoglobin from the blood of the rat, guinea-pig, squirrel, hedge-hog, horse, cat, dog, goose, and some other animals, crystallizes readily, the crystals being generally slender four-sided prisms, belonging to the rhombic system, and often appearing quite acicular. The crystals from the blood of the guinea-pig are octahedral, but also belong to the rhombic system; those of the squirrel are six-sided plates. (Figs. 124, 125, and 126.) The blood of the ox, sheep, rabbit, pig, and man, crystallizes with difficulty. Why these differences exist is not known; but the composition, and the amount of water of crystallization, vary somewhat in the crystals obtained from different animals. In the dog, the percentage composition of the crystals is, according to Hoppe-Seyler,[1] C 53.85, H 7.32, N 16.17, O 21.84, S 0.39, Fe .43, with 3 to 4 per cent. of water of crystallization. It will thus be seen that hæmoglobin contains iron, in addition to the other elements usually present in proteid substances.

The crystals, when seen under the microscope, have the same bright-scarlet color as arterial blood has to the naked eye; when seen in a mass they naturally appear darker. An aqueous solution of hæmoglobin, obtained by dissolving purified crystals in distilled water, has also the same bright arterial color. A tolerably dilute solution placed before the spectroscope is found to absorb certain rays of light in a peculiar and characteristic manner. A portion of the red end of the spec-

---

[1] Untersuch., iii (1868), p. 370.

FIG. 123.

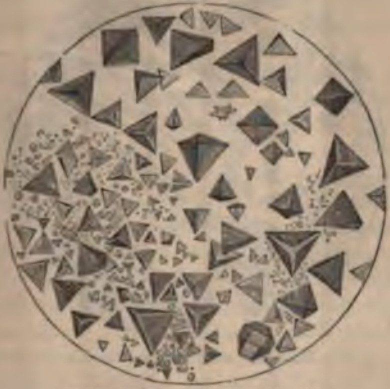


The Spectra of Hæmoglobin and some of its derivatives shown in reference to Frauenhofer's lines.

The first spectrum of oxyhæmoglobin is that of an exceedingly dilute solution. That of a solution intermediate between the first and second spectra would resemble in the *intensity* of its absorption-bands the spectrum given as that of carbonic oxide hæmoglobin.

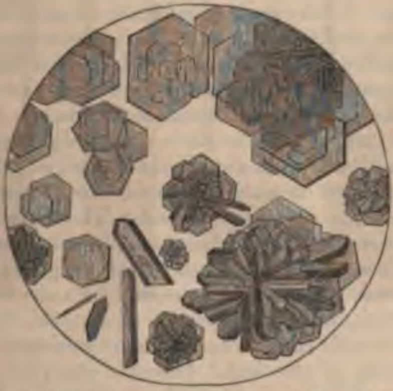
trum is absorbed, as is also a much larger portion of the blue end; but what is most striking is the presence of two strongly marked absorption-bands, lying between the solar lines *D* and *E*. (See Fig. 123.) Of these the one *a*, towards the red side,

[FIG. 124.



Tetrahedral, from Blood of the Pig.]

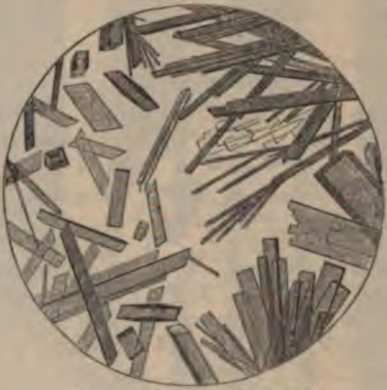
[FIG. 125.



Hexagonal Crystals, from Blood of Squirrel. On these six-sided plates, prismatic crystals, grouped in a stellate manner, not unfrequently occur.—After FUNKE.]

is the thinnest but the most intense, and in extremely dilute solutions is the only one visible; its middle lies at some little distance to the blue side of *D*. The other, β, much broader, lies a little to the red side of *E*, its blue-ward edge, even in moderately dilute solutions, coming close up to that line. Each band is thickest in the middle, and gradually thins away at the edges. These two absorption-bands are extremely characteristic of a solution of hæmoglobin. Even in very dilute solutions both bands are visible (they may be seen in a thickness of 1 cm. in a solution containing 1 gram of hæmoglobin in 10 liters of water), and that when scarcely any of the extreme red end, and very little of the blue end, is cut off. They then appear not only faint but narrow. As the strength of the solution is increased, the bands broaden, and become more intense; at the same time both the red end, and still more the blue end, of the whole spectrum, are encroached upon. This may go on until the two absorption-bands become fused together into one broad band. The only rays of light which then pass through the hæmoglobin solution are those in the green between the united bands and the general absorption at the blue end, and those in the red between the band and the general absorption at the red end. (See Fig. 123.) If the solution be still further increased in strength, the interval on the blue side of the band becomes absorbed also, so that the only rays which pass through are the red rays lying to the red side of *D;* these are the last to disappear, and hence

[Fig. 126.



Prismatic, from Human Blood.]

the natural red color of the solution as seen by transmitted light. Exactly the same appearances are seen when crystals of hæmoglobin are examined with a microspectroscope. They are also seen when arterial blood itself (diluted with saline solutions so that the corpuscles remain in as natural condition as possible) is examined with the spectroscope, as well as when a drop of blood, which from the necessary exposure to air is always arterial, is examined with the microspectroscope. In fact, the spectrum of hæmoglobin is the spectrum of normal arterial blood.

When crystals of hæmoglobin, prepared in the way described above, are subjected to the vacuum of the mercurial air-pump, they give off a certain quantity of oxygen, and at the same time they change in color. The quantity of oxygen given off is definite, 1 gram of the crystals giving off 1.76[1] ccm. of oxygen.[2] In other words, the crystals of hæmoglobin over and above the oxygen which enters intimately into their composition (and which alone is given in the elementary composition stated on p. 429), contain another quantity of oxygen, which is in loose combination only, and which may be dissociated from them by establishing a sufficiently low pressure. The change of color which ensues when this loosely combined oxygen is removed is characteristic; the crystals become darker and more of a purple hue, and at the same time dichroic, so that while the thin edges appear green, the thicker ridges are purple.

An ordinary solution of hæmoglobin, like the crystals from which it is formed, contains a definite quantity of oxygen in a similarly peculiar loose combination; this oxygen it also gives up at a sufficiently low pressure, becoming at the same time of a purplish hue. This loosely combined oxygen may also be removed by passing a stream of hydrogen or other indifferent gas through the solution, whereby dissociation is effected. It may also be got rid of by the use of reducing agents. Thus, if a few drops of ammonium sulphide or of an alkaline solution of ferrous sulphate, kept from precipitation by the presence of tartaric acid,[3] be added to a solution of hæmoglobin, or even to an unpurified solution of blood-corpuscles such as is afforded by the washings from a blood-clot, the oxygen in loose combination with the hæmoglobin is immediately seized upon by the reducing agent. This may be recognized at once, without submitting the fluid to the air-pump, by a characteristic change of color; from a bright-scarlet the solution becomes of a purplish-claret color, when seen in any thickness, but green when sufficiently thin; the color of the reduced solution is exactly like that of the crystals from which the loose oxygen has been removed by the air-pump.

---

[1] Or, 1.34 measured at a pressure of 1 meter.

[2] Cf. Hüfner, Zt. f. Physiol. Chem., i (1877), p. 317.

[3] Stokes, Proc. Roy. Soc., xiii (1864), p. 355.

Examined by the spectroscope, this reduced solution, or solution of reduced hæmoglobin as we may now call it, offers a spectrum (Fig. 123) entirely different from that of the unreduced solution. The two absorption-bands have disappeared, and in their place is seen a single, much broader, but at the same time much fainter band *a*, whose middle occupies a position about midway between the two absorption-bands of the unreduced solution, though the red-ward edge of the band shades away rather farther towards the red than does the other edge towards the blue. At the same time the general absorption of the spectrum is different from that of the unreduced solution; less of the blue end is absorbed. Even when the solutions become tolerably concentrated, many of the bluish-green rays to the blue side of the single band still pass through. Hence the difference in color between hæmoglobin which retains the loosely combined oxygen,[1] and hæmoglobin which has lost its oxygen and become reduced. In tolerably concentrated solutions, or tolerably thick layers, the former lets through the red and the orange-yellow rays, the latter the red and bluish-green rays. Accordingly, the one appears scarlet, the other purple. In dilute solutions, or in a thin layer, the reduced hæmoglobin lets through so much of the green rays that they preponderate over the red, and the resulting impression is one of green. In the unreduced hæmoglobin or oxyhæmoglobin, the potent yellow which is blocked out in the reduced hæmoglobin makes itself felt, so that a very thin layer of hæmoglobin, as in a single corpuscle seen under the microscope, appears yellow rather than red.

When the hæmoglobin solution (or crystal) which has lost its oxygen by the action either of the air-pump or of a reducing agent or by the passage of an indifferent gas, is exposed to air containing oxygen, an absorption of oxygen at once takes place. If sufficient oxygen be present, the whole of the hæmoglobin seizes upon its complement, each gram taking up in combination 1.76 (1.34) c.cm. of oxygen; if there be an insufficient quantity of oxygen, a part only of the hæmoglobin gets its allowance and the remainder continues reduced. If the amount of oxygen be sufficient, the solution (or crystal), as it takes up the oxygen, regains its bright-scarlet color, and its characteristic absorption spectrum, the single band being replaced by the two. Thus if a solution of oxyhæmoglobin in a test-tube after being reduced by the ferrous salt, and showing the purple color and the single band, be shaken up with air, the bright-scarlet color at once returns, and when the fluid is placed before the spectroscope, it is seen that the single faint broad band of the reduced hæmoglobin has wholly disappeared, and that in its place are the two sharp thinner bands of the oxyhæmoglobin. If left to stand in the test-tube the quantity of reducing agent still present is generally sufficient again to rob the hæmoglobin of the oxygen thus newly acquired, and soon the scarlet hue fades back again into the purple, the two bands giving place to the one. Another shake and exposure to air will, however, again bring back the scarlet hue and the two bands; and once more these may disappear. In fact, a few drops of the reducing fluid will allow this game of taking oxygen from the air and giving it up to the reducer to be played over and over again, and at each turn of the game the color shifts from scarlet to purple, and from purple to scarlet, while the two bands exchange for the one, and the one for the two.

---

[1] For brevity's sake we may call the hæmoglobin containing oxygen in loose combination, *oxyhæmoglobin*, and the hæmoglobin from which his loosely combined oxygen has been removed, reduced hæmoglobin simply hæmoglobin.

Color of Venous and Arterial Blood.—Evidently we have in these properties of hæmoglobin an explanation of at least one-half of the great respiratory process, and they teach us the meaning of the change of color which takes place when venous blood becomes arterial or arterial venous. In venous blood, as it issues from the right ventricle, the oxygen present is insufficient to satisfy the whole of the hæmoglobin of the red corpuscles; much reduced hæmoglobin is present, hence the purple color of venous blood.

When ordinary venous blood, diluted without access of oxygen, is brought before the spectroscope, the two bands of oxyhæmoglobin are seen. This is explained by the fact that in a mixture of oxyhæmoglobin and (reduced) hæmoglobin, the two sharp bands of the former are always much more readily seen than the much fainter band of the latter. Now in ordinary venous blood there is always some loose oxygen, removable by diminished pressure or otherwise; there is always some, indeed a considerable quantity, of oxyhæmoglobin as well as (reduced) hæmoglobin. It is only in the last stages of asphyxia that all the loose oxygen of the blood disappears; and then the two bands of the oxyhæmoglobin vanish too. So distinct are the two bands of even a small quantity of oxyhæmoglobin in the midst of a large quantity of hæmoglobin that a solution of (completely reduced) hæmoglobin may be used as a test for the presence of oxygen.[1]

As the blood passes through the capillaries of the lungs, this reduced hæmoglobin takes from the pulmonary air its complement of oxygen, all or nearly all the hæmoglobin of the red corpuscles becomes oxyhæmoglobin, and the purple color forthwith shifts into scarlet.

The hæmoglobin of arterial blood is saturated or nearly saturated with oxygen. By increasing the pressure of the oxygen, an additional quantity may be driven into the blood, but this is effected by simple absorption. The quantity so added is extremely small compared with the total quantity combined with the hæmoglobin, but its physiological importance is increased by its being present at a high tension.

Passing from the left ventricle to the capillaries, some of the oxyhæmoglobin gives up its oxygen to the tissues, becomes reduced hæmoglobin, and the blood in consequence becomes once more venous, with a purple hue. Thus the red corpuscles, by virtue of their hæmoglobin, are emphatically oxygen-carriers. Undergoing no intrinsic change in itself, the hæmoglobin combines in the lungs with oxygen, which it carries to the tissues; these, more greedy of oxygen than itself, rob it of its charge, and the reduced hæmoglobin hurries back to the lungs in the venous blood for another portion. The change from venous to arterial blood is then in part (for as we shall see there are other events as well) a peculiar combination of hæmoglobin with oxygen, while the change from arterial to venous is, in part also, a reduction of oxyhæmoglobin; and the difference of color between venous and arterial blood depends almost entirely on the fact that the reduced hæmoglobin of the former is of purple color, while the oxyhæmoglobin of the latter is of a scarlet color.

There may be other causes of the change of color, but these are wholly subsidiary and unimportant. When a corpuscle swells, its refractive power is diminished, and in consequence the number of rays which pass into and are absorbed by it are increased at the expense of those reflected from its surface; anything, therefore, which swells the corpuscles, such as the addition of water, tends to darken blood, and anything, such as a concentrated saline solution, which causes the corpuscles to shrink, tends to brighten blood. Carbonic acid has apparently some influence in swelling the corpuscles, and therefore may aid in darkening the venous blood.

---

[1] Hoppe-Seyler, Zt. f. Physiol. Chem., i (1877), p. 121.

We have spoken of the combination of hæmoglobin with oxygen as being a peculiar one. The peculiarity consists in the facts that the oxygen may be associated and dissociated, without any general disturbance of the molecule of hæmoglobin, and that dissociation may be brought about very readily. Hæmoglobin combines in a wholly similar manner with other gases. If carbonic oxide be passed through a solution of hæmoglobin, a change of color takes place, a peculiar bluish tinge making its appearance. At the same time the spectrum is altered; two bands are still visible, but on accurate measurement it is seen that they are placed more towards the blue end than are the otherwise similar bands of oxyhæmoglobin. (See Fig. 123.) When a known quantity of carbonic oxide gas is sent through a hæmoglobin solution, it will be found on examination that a certain amount of the gas has been retained, an equal volume of oxygen appearing in its place in the gas which issues from the solution. If the solution so treated be crystallized, the crystals will have the same characteristic color, and give the same absorption spectrum as the solution; when subjected to the action of the mercurial pump, they will give off a definite quantity of carbonic oxide, 1 gram of the crystals affording 1.76 (1.34) c.cm. of the gas. In fact, hæmoglobin combines loosely with carbonic oxide just as it does with oxygen; but its affinity with the former is greater than with the latter. While carbonic oxide readily turns out oxygen, oxygen cannot so readily turn out carbonic oxide. Indeed, carbonic oxide has been used as a means of driving out and measuring the quantity of oxygen present in any given blood. This property of carbonic oxide explains its poisonous nature. When the gas is breathed, the reduced and the unreduced hæmoglobin of the venous blood unite with the carbonic oxide, and hence the peculiar bright cherry-red color observable in the blood and tissues in cases of poisoning by this gas. The carbonic oxide hæmoglobin, however, is of no use in respiration; it is not an oxygen-carrier, nay more, it will not readily, though it does so slowly and eventually, give up its carbonic oxide for oxygen, when the gas no longer enters the chest and pure air is supplied. The organism is killed by suffocation, by want of oxygen, in spite of the blood not assuming any dark venous color. As Bernard phrased it, the corpuscles are paralyzed.

Hæmoglobin similarly forms a compound, having a characteristic spectrum with nitric oxide, more stable than that with carbonic oxide, 1 gram of hæmoglobin uniting with 1.76 (1.34) c.cm. of the gas. In all these compounds, in fact, the same volume of gas unites with the same quantity of the substance, and all three compounds are isomorphous. Compounds also exist between hæmoglobin and hydrocyanic acid. Nitrous oxide reduces hæmoglobin.

Hæmoglobin is a so-called ozone-carrier. If to a mixture of ozonized turpentine (turpentine kept for some time) and tincture of guaiacum, a drop of blood or hæmaglobin solution be added, the turpentine at once oxidizes the guaiacum and produces a blue color; this, before the addition of the hæmoglobin, it is unable to. [If to such a mixture of ozonized turpentine tincture of guaiacum and blood, either quinine, nitrite of amyl, or any alkaline nitrite be added, it will be found that the ozonizing power is diminished by the action of these drugs on the hæmoglobin.] If a drop of tincture of guaiacum (the experiment fails with many specimens of tincture) be spread out and allowed to dry on a piece of white filtering-paper, and a drop of blood or hæmoglobin solution be placed on it, a blue ring is developed. This was held by A. Schmidt to indicate that the oxygen in combination with hæmoglobin was in an active or ozonic condition. Since, however, the experiment fails when glass or even smooth paper is used instead of filtering-paper, it is more than probable that the result is caused by a decomposition of the hæmoglobin due to the porous nature of the paper.[1]

Although a crystalline body, hæmoglobin diffuses with great difficulty. This arises from the fact that it is in part a proteid body; it consists of a colorless proteid, associated with a colored compound named *hæmatin*. All the iron belonging to the hæmoglobin is in reality attached to the hæmatin. A solution of hæmoglobin, when heated, coagulates, the exact degree at which the coagulation takes place depending on the amount of dilution; at the same time it turns brown from the setting free of the hæmatin. If a strong solution of hæmoglobin be treated with acetic (or other) acid, the same brown color, from the appearance of hæmatin, is observed. The proteid constituent, however, is not coagulated, but by the action of the acid passes into the state of acid-albumin. On adding ether to the mixture, and shaking, the hæmatin rises into the supernatant ether, which it colors a dark red, and which, examined with a spectroscope, is found to possess a well-marked spectrum, the spectrum of the so-called acid hæmatin of Stokes (Fig. 123). The proteid in the water below the ether appears in a coagulated form. In a somewhat similar manner alkalies split up hæmoglobin into a proteid constituent and hæmatin.

---

[1] Pflüger, Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 252.

The exact nature of the proteid constituent has not as yet been clearly determined; it was supposed to be globulin, hence the name hæmatoglobulin contracted into hæmoglobin. The proteid which is precipitated when a solution of hæmoglobin is exposed to the air, though belonging to the globulin family, has characters of its own. It has been named by Preyer[1] *globin.* It is free from ash. Hæmatin, when separated from its proteid fellow and purified, appears as a dark-brown amorphous powder, or as a scaly mass with a metallic lustre, having the probable composition of $C_{32}, H_{34}, N_4, Fe, O_5$. It is readily soluble in dilute alkaline solutions, and then gives a characteristic spectrum (Fig. 123).

An interesting feature in hæmatin is that its *alkaline* solution is capable of being reduced by reducing agents, the spectrum changing at the same time, and that the reduced solution will, like the hæmoglobin, take up oxygen again on being brought into contact with air or oxygen. This would seem to indicate that the oxygen-holding power of hæmoglobin is connected exclusively with its hæmatin constituent. By the action of strong sulphuric acid hæmatin may be robbed of all its iron. It still retains the feature of possessing color, the solution of iron-free hæmatin being a dark rich brownish-red; but is no longer capable of combining loosely with oxygen. This indicates that the iron is in some way associated with the peculiar respiratory functions of hæmoglobin; though it is obviously an error to suppose, as was once supposed, that the change from venous to arterial blood consists essentially in a change from a ferrous to a ferric salt.

Though not crystallizable itself, hæmatin forms with hydrochloric acid a compound, occurring in minute rhombic crystals, the so-called hæmin crystals.

The spectrum of hæmatin in an alkaline solution (Fig. 123) gives one broad band to the red side of the line *D*. The blue end of the spectrum suffers much absorption; and since the characteristic single band is faint, and only seen in concentrated solutions, the whole appearance of the spectrum of hæmatin is far less striking than that of hæmoglobin. The solutions are dichroic, of a reddish-brown in a thick, and of an olive-green in a thin layer. The spectrum of reduced hæmatin is marked by two faint bands to the blue side of the single band of the unreduced hæmatin; there is at the same time less absorption of the blue end. The spectrum of the so-called acid-hæmatin, *i. e.*, of hæmatin prepared, as spoken of above, by treatment with acetic acid and ether, is marked by a very characteristic and easily seen band, *a*, in the red, to the blue side of *C* (Fig. 123), the other bands (β, γ, δ) shown in the figure being less easily seen. This so-called hæmatin band readily appears when hæmoglobin is acted upon by weak acids, and hence is seen when carbonic acid is passed for some time through hæmoglobin. A wholly similar band, however, makes its appearance when blood is acted upon for some time by ammonium sulphide, or when blood is allowed to stand for any length of time, or after the action of weak alkalies; in these cases it is supposed to indicate the existence of a hypothetical body, methæmoglobin, an intermediate stage which hæmoglobin is supposed to pass through on its way to be split up into hæmatin and the proteid body. When hæmatin or hæmoglobin is dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid a spectrum is obtained, on diluting with the acid, resembling but in some points differing from that of acid hæmatin as given in Fig. 123. The iron-free hæmatin, obtained by precipitating with a large quantity of water the solution of hæmatin or hæmoglobin in concentrated sulphuric acid, also gives in ammoniacal and in acetic acid solutions spectra differing in minor points only from the same spectrum. Preyer[1] believes that Stokes's acid hæmatin, *i. e.*, the substance in solution in the ether added to blood treated with acetic acid, is in reality iron-free hæmatin, or, as he prefers to call it, *hæmatoin*. Hæmatin also forms a special compound with a characteristic spectrum, when acted on by potassium cyanide. Hoppe-Seyler,[2] by treating reduced hæmoglobin with acids or alkalies, in the total absence of oxygen, obtained a coloring body, with a characteristic spectrum, to which he gave the name of hæmochromogen, regarding it as the substance, forming part of hæmoglobin, which by oxidation passes into hæmatin.

---

[1] Die Blut-Krystalle, 1871.

In conclusion, the condition of oxygen in the blood is as follows: Of the whole quantity of oxygen in the blood, only a minute fraction is simply absorbed or dissolved, according to the law of pressures (the Henry-Dalton law). The great mass is in a state of combination with the hæmoglobin, the connection being of such a kind that while the hæmoglobin readily combines with the oxygen of the air to which it is exposed, dissociation readily occurs at low pressures, or in the presence of indifferent gases, or by the action of substances having a greater affinity for oxygen than has hæmoglobin itself. The difference between venous and arterial blood, as far as oxygen is concerned, is that while in the latter there is an insignificant quantity of reduced hæmoglobin, in the former there is a great deal; and the characteristic colors of venous and arterial blood are in the main due to the fact that the lor of reduced hæmoglobin is purple, while that of oxy-oglobin is scarlet.

---

[1] Die Blut-Krystalle (1871), p. 181.

[2] Untersuch., iv (1871), p. 540.

The Relations of the Carbonic Acid in the Blood.

The presence of carbonic acid in the blood appears to be determined by conditions more complex in their nature and at present not so well understood as those which determine the presence of oxygen. The carbonic acid is not simply dissolved in the blood; its absorption by blood does not follow the law of pressures. It exists in association with some substance or substances in the blood, and its escape from the blood is a process of dissociation. We cannot, however, speak of it as being associated like the oxygen with the hæmoglobin of the red corpuscles. So far from the red corpuscles containing, as is the case with the oxygen, the great mass of the carbonic acid, the quantity of this gas which is present in a volume of serum is actually greater than that which is present in an equal volume of blood, *i. e.*, an equal volume of mixed corpuscles and serum.

When serum is subjected to the mercurial vacuum, by far the greater part of the carbonic acid is given off; but a small additional quantity (2 to 5 vols. per cent.) may be extracted by the subsequent addition of an acid. This latter portion may be spoken of as "fixed" carbonic acid in distinction to the larger "loose" portion which is given off to the vacuum. When, however, the whole blood is subjected to the vacuum all the carbonic acid is given off, so that when serum is mixed with corpuscles all the carbonic acid may be spoken of as "loose;" and according to Fredericq,[1] the excess of carbonic acid in serum over that present in entire blood, corresponds to the fixed portion in serum which has to be driven off by an acid. Moreover, though the quantity of carbonic acid in blood is less than that in an equal volume of serum, the *tension* of the carbonic acid in blood is greater than in serum.

Putting these facts together it seems probable that the carbonic acid exists associated with some substance or substances in the serum, but that the condition of its association (and therefore of its dissociation) are determined by the action of some substance or substances present in the corpuscles. It is further probable that the association of the carbonic acid in the serum is with sodium as sodium bicarbonate, and it is even possible that the hæmoglobin of the corpuscles plays a part in promoting the dissociation of the sodium bicarbonate, or even the carbonate, and thus keeping up the carbonic acid tension of the entire blood. But further investigations are necessary before the matter can be said to have been placed on wholly satisfactory footing.

---

[1] Compt. Rend., t. 84 (1877), p. 661, t. 85 (1878), p. 29.

Gaule[1] puts forward the view that a constituent of the red corpuscles (probably the hæmoglobin) possesses an affinity for sodium carbonate, and by continually withdrawing this from the serum, promotes the dissociation of the bicarbonate and the setting free of carbonic acid. He further suggests that so long as the tension of the carbonic acid in the serum is low, the hæmoglobin is able to split up even the simple carbonate, uniting with the sodium, and setting free carbonic acid. As the tension in the serum increases, however, he supposes this process to be reversed, and thus, by a constant action and reaction of hæmoglobin and sodium carbonate, the tension of carbonic acid in the blood is kept constant.[2]

The Relations of the Nitrogen in the Blood.

The small quantity of this gas which is present in both arterial and venous blood seems to exist partly in a state of simple solution, partly in some loose chemical combination, but the conditions of the association are unknown.

SEC. 4. THE RESPIRATORY CHANGES IN THE LUNGS.

The Entrance of Oxygen.—We have already seen that the blood in passing through the lungs takes up a certain variable quantity (from 8 to 12 per cent. vols.) of oxygen. We have further seen that the quantity so taken up, putting aside the insignificant fraction simply absorbed, enters into direct but loose combination with the hæmoglobin. We have also seen that at low pressures the oxygen is dissociated from the hæmoglobin and set free, but not at high pressures. If the tension of the oxygen in the lungs is higher than the tension of the oxygen in the venous blood of the pulmonary artery, there will be no difficulty in the reduced hæmoglobin of that blood taking up oxygen; and this may go on until the hæmoglobin of the blood in the pulmonary capillaries is all converted into oxyhæmoglobin, or until the oxygen tension in the blood is increased so as to be equal to that of the air in the lungs. Now the oxygen in the expired air amounts to about 16 per cent., having lost 4 or 5 per cent. in the lungs. Of course the air at the bottom of the lungs will contain still less oxygen. How much less we do not exactly know, but we may probably put the limit of reduction at 10 per cent. We may say, then, that the tension of the oxygen in the pulmonary air-cells is at least 10 per cent., or to measure it in millimeters of mercury, since the pressure of the one entire atmosphere is 760 mm., $\frac{1}{10}$th of that will amount to 76 mm.

---

[1] Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1878, Phys. Abth., p. 469.
[2] Cf. however Bert, Comp. Rend., t. 87 (1878), p. 628.

Now the tension of oxygen in the arterial blood of the dog[1] amounts to 3.9 per cent. (varying from 5.6 to 2.8), or about 30 mm. of mercury. That is to say, the arterial blood of the dog exposed to an atmosphere containing 3.9 per cent. of oxygen neither gives off nor takes up any oxygen. The tension of the oxygen in the average venous blood of the dog amounts to 2.9 per cent. (varying from 4.6 to 1.4).[2] Both these numbers are far below ten per cent., in fact, we may suppose the percentage of oxygen in the pulmonary alveoli to be less than half the amount stated above, and see no difficulty in ordinary venous blood taking up oxygen while passing through the lungs. But what takes place when the tension of the oxygen in the air is lowered, as when the windpipe is obstructed, and asphyxia sets in? It has been ascertained that in the dog, in the last breath given out in such an asphyxia, the expired air has an oxygen tension of 2.3 per cent., and when the heart ceases to beat, the oxygen of the pulmonary air sinks to .403 per cent. These tensions are of course lower than that of ordinary venous blood, but in asphyxia the blood is no longer ordinary venous blood; instead of containing a comparatively small amount, it contains a large and gradually increasing amount, of reduced hæmoglobin. And as the reduced hæmoglobin increases in amount, the oxygen tension of the venous blood decreases; it thus keeps below that of the air in the lungs; and hence even the last traces of oxygen in the lungs are taken up by the blood, and carried away to the tissues. Even with the last heart's beat, when the oxygen in the lungs has sunk to .403 per cent., the bands of oxyhæmoglobin may still for a moment be detected in the blood of the left side of the heart.[3]

The Exit of Carbonic Acid.—It seems natural to suppose that the carbonic acid would escape by diffusion from the blood of the alveolar capillaries into the air of the alveoli. But in order that diffusion should thus take place, the car-

---

[1] Strassburg, Pflüger's Archiv, vi (1872), p. 65.
[2] Wolffberg, Pflüger's Archiv, iv (1871), 465; vi (1872), 23.
[3] Stroganow, Pflüger's Archiv, xii (1876), p. 18.

much greater), and of the carbonic acid
the blood at the same time, so as to be in a
compare the one with the other. Hence, though t
of evidence is in favor of the escape of carbonic
simply a process of diffusion, and against it being
any special action taking place in the alveoli, the
hardly be said at present to be satisfactorily cleare

An experiment distinctly in favor of the process being
of diffusion has been brought forward by Wolffberg.[1] Th
introduced into the bronchus of the lung of a dog a cath
which was arranged a small bag, by the inflation of
bronchus, whenever desired, could be completely blocked
without any disturbance of the general breathing, and
without any change in the normal proportions of the g
blood, he was able to stop the ingress of fresh air into
portion of the lung. The blood passing through the alve
laries of this limited portion would naturally possess the
bonic acid tension as the rest of the venous blood flowin
the pulmonary artery, a tension which, though varyin
from moment to moment, would maintain a normal ave
the supposition that carbonic acid passes simply by diffu
the pulmonary blood into the air of the alveoli, because th
acid tension of the latter is normally lower than that of t
one would expect to find that the air in the occluded port
lung would continue to take up carbonic acid until an e
was established between it and the carbonic acid tensi
venous blood, and consequently that if after an occlusi
some minutes (by which time the equilibrium might fa
sumed to have been established), the carbonic acid tens
air of the occluded portion were determined, it would be
be equal to, and not more than equal to, the carbonic ac
of the venous blood of the pulmonary artery. And thi
result at which Wolffberg arrived; he found that the car
of the occluded air and of the

tates that the carbonic acid in the expired air of the dog is less than this, much less in fact than that in the expired air of man. Moreover in the normal condition of the lung when the venous blood is becoming arterial (which of course was not the case in the occluded lung), the continuance of diffusion depends on the carbonic acid tension of the alveoli having for its limits the degree of carbonic acid, not of the venous but of the arterial blood, and this Wolffberg puts as low as 2.8 per cent. Consequently the expired air (of the dog) ought to contain less than 2.8 per cent. of carbonic acid, a result which does not agree with those of other observers.

The belief that some local action in the pulmonary alveoli temporarily raised the carbonic acid tension of the blood, as it passed through the alveolar capillaries, above that of the venous blood flowing along the trunk of the pulmonary artery, was originally based on Becher's conclusion (see *ante*, p. 422) that in man at least the carbonic acid tension of the pulmonary alveoli is as high as 7.5 or 8 per cent., a degree of tension which had not been found by experiment to exist in the normal venous blood of any animal. Becher's results, however, are clearly invalidated by the consideration that in holding his breath he necessarily increased beyond the normal the carbonic acid tension of his blood; and he of course did not determine the gases of his own blood. Hence though Wolffberg's results seem to require repetition they probably give a more correct view of the matter.

On the supposition that the carbonic acid tension of the pulmonary alveoli is really higher than that of the venous blood, and that, therefore, some additional process is necessary to promote the escape of the carbonic acid, it has been suggested that the act of absorption of oxygen by the hæmoglobin in some way or other raises temporarily at the same time the carbonic acid tension of the blood, *ex gr.*, brings about an exaggeration of that function of the corpuscles of which we have already spoken on p. 441. In support of this it is stated that the carbonic acid tension of venous blood is greater when determined by the agitation of the blood with air containing oxygen than when air free from oxygen is used. And it might be urged against Wolffberg's result that in the occluded portion of the lung the absorption of oxygen after awhile did not take place, as usual, and that in consequence the limit of carbonic acid tension in the occluded portion is not a measure of that of the normal lung.

It has also been suggested that the escape of carbonic acid is effected by a direct activity of the pulmonary epithelium, that the cells of the alveoli actively excrete, in fact, carbonic acid. The arguments in favor of this view are based on the experiments of J. J. Müller,[1] who found that more carbonic acid was given off when venous blood was driven through the pulmonary artery, and so expired to air in a normal manner through the walls of the alveoli of a living lung, than when it was simply agitated with air.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1869, p. 37.

SEC. 5. THE RESPIRATORY CHANGES IN THE TISSUES.

In passing through the several tissues the arterial blood becomes once more venous. A considerable quantity of the oxyhæmoglobin becomes reduced, and a quantity of carbonic acid passes from the tissues into the blood. The amount of change varies in the various tissues, and in the same tissue may vary at different times. Thus in a gland at rest, as we have seen, the venous blood is dark, showing the presence of a large quantity of reduced hæmoglobin; when the gland is active, the venous blood in its color, and in the amount of hæmoglobin which it contains, resembles closely arterial blood. The blood, therefore, which issues from a gland at rest is more "venous" than that from an active gland, though the total quantity of carbonic acid formed in a given time may be greater in the latter. The blood, on the other hand, which comes from a contracting muscle, is not only richer in carbonic acid, but also, though not to a corresponding amount, poorer in oxygen than the blood which flows from a muscle at rest.

In all these cases the great question which comes up for our consideration is this: Does the oxygen pass from the blood into the tissues, and does the oxidation take place in the tissues, giving rise to carbonic acid, which passes in turn away from the tissues into the blood? or do certain oxidizable reducing substances pass from the tissues into the blood, and there become oxidized into carbonic acid and other products, so that the chief oxidation takes place in the blood itself?

There are, it is true, reducing oxidizable substances in the blood, but these are small in amount, and the quantity of carbonic acid to which they give rise when the blood containing them is agitated with air or oxygen, is so small as scarcely to exceed the errors of observation.

The conclusion of Estor and St. Pierre, that the oxygen diminishes even in the great arteries from the heart outwards, has been shown by Pflüger to be based on erroneous analyses.

On the other hand, it will be remembered that in speaking of muscle, we drew attention to the fact that a frog's muscle removed from the body (and the same is true of muscles of
imals) contained no free oxygen whatever; none could
from it by the mercurial air-pump. Yet such a
not only when at rest go on producing and dis-
ain quantity, but also when it contracts evolve

a very considerable quantity of carbonic acid. Moreover this discharge of carbonic acid will go on for a certain time in muscles under circumstances in which it is impossible for them to obtain oxygen from without. Oxygen, it is true, is necessary for the life of the muscle; when venous instead of arterial blood is sent through the bloodvessels of a muscle, the irritability speedily disappears, and unless fresh oxygen be administered the muscle soon dies. The muscle may, however, during the interval in which irritability is still retained after the supply of oxygen has been cut off, continue to contract vigorously. The presence of oxygen, though necessary for the *maintenance* of irritability, is not necessary for the *manifestation* of that irritability, is not necessary for that explosive decomposition which develops a contraction. A frog's muscle will continue to contract and to produce carbonic acid in an atmosphere of hydrogen or nitrogen, that is in the total absence of free oxygen both from itself and from the medium in which it is placed. And a considerable quantity of carbonic acid may be set free from living muscle by simply exposing it to the temperature of boiling water,[1] the quantity being largely diminished if the muscle be thrown immediately before into a violent tetanus.

Thus on the one hand the muscle seems to have the property of taking up and fixing in some way or other the oxygen to which it is exposed, of converting it into intra-molecular oxygen, in which condition it cannot be removed by simple diminished pressure, so that the tension of oxygen in the muscular substance may be considered as always nil; while on the other hand the muscular substance is always undergoing a decomposition of such a kind that carbonic acid is set free, sometimes, as when the muscle is at rest, in small, sometimes, as during a contraction, in large, quantities. But if the oxygen tension of the muscular tissue be thus always nil, the oxygen of the blood-corpuscles, in which it is at a comparatively high tension, will be always passing over, through the plasma, through the capillary walls, the lymph spaces and the sarcolemma, into the muscular substance, and as soon as it arrives there will be hidden away as intra-molecular oxygen, leaving the oxygen tension of the muscular substance once more nil. Conversely, the carbonic acid produced by the decomposition of the muscular substance will tend to raise the carbonic-acid tension of the muscle until it exceeds that of the blood; whereupon it will pass from the muscle into the blood, its place in the muscular substance being supplied by freshly generated carbonic acid. There will always, in fact, be a stream of oxygen from the blood to the muscle and of carbonic acid from the muscle to the blood. The respiration of the muscle then does not consist in throwing into the blood oxidizable substances there to be oxidized into carbonic acid and other matters; but it does consist in the assumption of oxygen as intramolecular oxygen, in the building up by help of that oxygen of explosive decomposable substances, and in the occurrence of decompositions whereby carbonic acid and other matters are discharged first into the substance of the muscle and subsequently into the blood. We cannot as yet trace out the steps taken by the oxygen from the moment it slips into its intra-molecular position to the moment when it issues united with carbon as carbonic acid. The whole mystery of life lies hidden in the story of that progress, and for the present we must be content with simply knowing the beginning and the end.

---

[1] Stintzing, Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 388.

Our knowledge of the respiratory changes in muscle is more complete than in the case of any other tissue; but we have no reason to suppose the phenomena of muscle are exceptional. On the contrary, all the available evidence goes to show that in all tissues the oxidation takes place in the tissue, and not in the adjoining blood. It is a remarkable fact, that lymph, serous fluids, bile, urine, and milk[1] contain a mere trace of free or loosely combined oxygen, and saliva or pancreatic juice a very small quantity only (about 0.5 per cent.), while the tension of carbonic acid in peritoneal fluid is as high as 6 per cent., and in bile and urine is still higher. The tension of carbonic acid in lymph, while higher than that of arterial blood, is lower than that of the general venous blood; but this probably is due to the fact that the lymph in its passage onwards is largely exposed to arterial blood in the connective tissues and in the lymphatic glands, where the production of carbonic acid is slight as compared to that going on in muscles. Strassburg[3] has attempted to determine the tension of carbonic acid in the intestinal walls; the experiment is perhaps open to objection, but the result is worth recording; he found the tension to be 7.7 per cent., *i. e.*, higher than that of the venous blood examined at the same time. All these facts point to the conclusion that it is the tissues, and not the blood, which become primarily loaded with carbonic acid, the latter

---

Pflüger's Archiv, i (1868), p. 686; ii (1869), p. 156.
- Zt. f. Physiol. Chem., i (1877), p. 137.
rchiv, vi (1872), p. 65.

simply receiving the gas from the former by diffusion, except the (probably) small quantity which results from the metabolism of the blood-corpuscles; and that the oxygen which passes from the blood into the tissues is at once taken up in some combination, so that it is no longer removable by diminished tension.

As a matter of fact, Oertmann[1] has shown that if in a frog the whole blood of the body be replaced by normal saline solution, the total metabolism of the body is, for some time, unchanged. The saline medium is able, owing to the low rate of metabolism, and large respiratory surface of the animal, to supply the tissues with all the oxygen they need, and to remove all the carbonic acid they produce. It is difficult to believe that, in such an experiment, the oxidation took place in the saline solution itself while circulating in the bloodvessels and tissue-spaces of the animal.

We may add, that the oxidative power which the blood itself removed from the body is able to exert on substances which are undoubtedly oxidized in the body is so small that it may be neglected in the present considerations. If grape-sugar be added to blood, or to a solution of hæmoglobin, the mixture may be kept for a long time at the temperature of the body without undergoing oxidation.[2]

Almost the only indication, and that an indirect one, that blood is capable of oxidizing sugar is to be found in the fact,[3] that when the sugar in shed blood is quantitatively determined, the amount is greatest when the blood is examined immediately on leaving the bloodvessels, and diminishes afterwards. Schememetjewski[4] found that sodium lactate injected into the veins increased the respiratory interchange; but that the increase was not due to the direct combustion of the salt in the blood seems to be indicated by the fact that no oxidation of the salt took place when it was simply exposed to the action of shed blood; moreover the injection of sugar did not even increase the respiratory interchange.

Even within the body a slight excess of sugar in the blood over a certain percentage wholly escapes oxidation, and is discharged unchanged. Many easily oxidized substances, such as pyrogallic acid, pass largely through the blood of a living body without being oxidized. The organic acids, such as

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xv (1877), p. 381.

[2] Hoppe-Seyler, Untersuch., i (1866), p. 136. See also Pflüger's Archiv, vii (1873), p. 399.

[3] Bernard, Leçons sur le Diabète, 1877. Pavy, Proc. Roy. Soc., xxvi (1877), p. 346.

[4] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1868, p. 114.

not have such a power. But did oxidation take p
in the blood itself, one would expect even highl
substances to be oxidized in their transit; whereas
pose the oxidation to take place in the tissues, it l
telligible why such diffusible substances as those
tissues in general refuse to take up largely, sho
pass unchanged from the blood through the secreti

We have seen that in muscle the production c
acid is not directly dependent on the consumption
The muscle produces carbonic acid in an atmosp
drogen. What is true of muscle is true also of o
and of the body at large. Spallanzani and W
showed long ago that animals might continue to
carbonic acid in an atmosphere of nitrogen or hyd
recently Pflüger[1] has shown, by a remarkable exper
a frog kept at a low temperature will live for sev
and continue to produce carbonic acid, in an atmo
solutely free from oxygen. The carbonic acid pro
ing this period was made by help of the oxygen
the hours anterior to the commencement of the e
The oxygen then absorbed was stowed away from
globin into the tissues, it was made use of to build
plosive compounds, whose explosions later on gave
carbonic acid; or, to adopt Pflüger's simile, the ox
to wind up the vital clock; but once wound up, th
go on for a period without further winding. Th
continue to live, to move, to produce carbonic acid
without any fresh oxygen, as we know of old it w
any fresh food; it will continue to do so till the exp
pounds which the oxygen built up are exhausted; i
till the vital clock has run down.

thin layer of blood-plasma to the red corpuscle, and the reduced hæmoglobin of the venous blood becomes wholly, or all but wholly, oxyhæmoglobin. Hurried to the tissues, the oxygen, at a *comparatively* high tension in the arterial blood, passes largely into them. In the tissues the oxygen tension is always kept at an exceedingly low pitch by the fact that they, in some way at present unknown to us, pack away at every moment into some stable combination each molecule of oxygen which they receive from the blood. With much but not all of its oxyhæmoglobin reduced, the blood passes on as venous blood. How much hæmoglobin is reduced will depend on the activity of the tissue itself. The quantity of hæmoglobin in the blood is the measure of limit of the oxidizing power of the body at large; but within that limit the amount of oxidation is determined by the tissue, and by the tissue alone.

Though the quantity of carbonic acid expired (p. 422) may be temporarily increased by an increase of the respiratory movements, this, according to Pflüger, is to be regarded as the result of increased ventilation rather than of increased metabolic production. This physiologist[1] has brought forward strong evidence in favor of the view urged by him, that neither the extent of the respiratory movements nor the velocity of the flow of blood are to be regarded as prime factors determining the amount of general metabolism. It is, according to him, the quicker metabolism which determines the more active circulation and the more vigorous respiration; not *vice versa.*

We cannot trace the oxygen through its sojourn in the tissue. We only know that sooner or later it comes back combined in carbonic acid (and other matters not now under consideration). Owing to the continual production of carbonic acid, the tension of that gas in the extravascular elements of the tissue is always higher than that of the blood; the gas accordingly passes from the tissue into the blood, and the venous blood passes on not only with its hæmoglobin reduced, *i. e.*, with its oxygen tension decreased, but also with its carbonic acid tension increased. Arrived at the lungs, the blood finds the pulmonary air at a lower carbonic acid tension than itself. The gas accordingly streams through the thin vascular and alveolar walls, till the tension without the bloodvessel is equal to the tension within. Thus the air of the pulmonary alveoli, having given up oxygen to the blood and taken up carbonic acid from the blood, having a higher carbonic acid tension and a lower oxygen tension than the tidal air in the bronchial passages, mixes rapidly with this by diffusion. The mixture is further assisted by ascending and descending currents; and the tidal air issues from the chest at the breathing out poorer in oxygen and richer in carbonic acid than the tidal air which entered at the breathing in.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, vi (1872), p. 43; x (1875), p. 251; xiv (1877), p. 1. Finkler, ibid., x, p. 368. Finkler and Oertmann, ibid., xiv, p. 38.

SEC. 6. THE NERVOUS MECHANISM OF RESPIRATION.

Breathing is an involuntary act. Though the diaphragm and all the other muscles employed in respiration are voluntary muscles, *i. e.*, muscles which can be called into action by a direct effort of the will, and though respiration may be modified within very wide limits by the will, yet we habitually breathe without the intervention of the will; the normal breathing may continue, not only in the absence of consciousness, but even after the removal of all the parts of the brain above the medulla oblongata.

We have already seen how complicated is even a simple respiratory act. A very large number of muscles are called into play. Many of these are very far apart from each other, such as the diaphragm and the nasal muscles; yet they act in harmonious sequence in point of time. If the lower intercostal muscles contracted before the scaleni, or if the diaphragm contracted while the other chest muscles were enjoying an interval of rest, the satisfactory entrance and exit of air would be impossible. These muscles, moreover, are co-ordinated also in respect of the amount of their several contractions; a gentle and ordinary contraction of the diaphragm is accompanied by gentle and ordinary contractions of the intercostals, and these are preceded by gentle and ordinary contractions of the scaleni. A forcible contraction of the scaleni, followed by simply a gentle contraction of the intercostals, would hinder rather than assist inspiration. Further, the whole complex inspiratory effort is often followed by a less marked but still complex expiratory action. It is impossible that all these so carefully co-ordinated muscular contractions should be brought about in any other way than by co-ordinate nervous impulses descending along efferent nerves from a co-ordinating centre. By experiment we find this to be the case.

When in a rabbit the trunk of a phrenic nerve is cut, the phragm on that side remains motionless, and respiration goes on without it. When both nerves are cut, the whole diaphragm remains quiescent, though the respiration becomes excessively labored.

The occasional slight rhythmic movements of the diaphragm observed by Brown-Séquard, after section of the phrenic, interesting from another point of view, do not militate against the above statement.

When an intercostal nerve is cut no active respiratory movement is seen in that space, and when the spinal cord is divided below the origin of the seventh cervical spinal nerve, costal respiration ceases, though the diaphragm continues to act, and that with increased vigor. When the cord is divided just below the medulla, all thoracic movements cease, but the respiratory actions of the nostrils and glottis still continue. These, however, disappear when the facial and recurrent laryngeal are divided. We have already stated that after removal of the brain above the medulla, respiration still continues very much as usual, the modifications which ensue from loss of the brain being unessential. Hence, putting all these facts together, it is clear that in respiration, co-ordinated impulses do, as we suggested, descend from the medulla along the several efferent nerves. The proof is completed by the fact that the removal or injury of the medulla alone at once stops all respiratory movements, even though every muscle and every nerve concerned be left intact. Nay more, if only a small portion of the medulla, a tract whose limits are not as yet exactly fixed, but which lies below the vaso-motor centre, between it and the *calamus scriptorius*, be removed or injured, respiration ceases forever, though every other part of the body be left intact.[1] When this spot is excised or injured, breathing at once ceases, and since the inhibitory vagus centre is generally at the same time stimulated, and the heart's beat arrested, death ensues instantaneously. Hence this portion of the nervous system was called by Flourens the vital knot, or ganglia of life, *nœud vital*. We shall speak of it as the respiratory centre. The nature of this centre must be exceedingly complex; for while even in ordinary respiration it gives rise to a whole group of co-ordinate nervous impulses of inspiration, followed in due sequence by a smaller but still co-ordinate group of expiratory impulses, in labored respiration fresh and larger impulses are generated, though still in co-ordination with the normal ones, the expiratory events being especially augmented; and in the more extreme cases of dyspnœa and asphyxia impulses overflow, so to speak, from it in all directions, though only gradually losing their co-ordination, until almost every muscle in the body is thrown into contractions.

---

[1] Stricker, Wien. Sitzungsberichte, Bd. 75 (1877), p. 8, has seen in dogs poisoned by antiarin, respiratory efforts after division of the medulla oblongata.

The first question we have to consider is: Are we to regard the rhythmic action of this respiratory centre as due essentially to changes taking place in itself, or as due to afferent nervous impulses or other stimuli which affect it in a rhythmic manner from without? In other words: Is the action of the centre automatic or purely reflex? We know that the centre may be influenced by impulses proceeding from without, and that the breathing may be affected by the action of the will, or by an emotion, or by a dash of cold water on the skin, or in a hundred other ways; but the fact that the action of the centre may be thus modified from without, is no proof that the continuance of its activity is dependent on extrinsic causes.

In attempting to decide this question we naturally turn to the pneumogastric as being the nerve most likely to serve as the channel of afferent impulses setting in action the respiratory centre. If both vagi be divided, respiration still continues, though in a modified form. This proves distinctly that afferent impulses ascending those nerves are not the efficient cause of the respiratory movements. We have seen that when the spinal cord is divided below the medulla, the facial and laryngeal movements still continue. This proves that the respiratory centre is still in action, though its activity is unable to manifest itself in any thoracic movement. But when the cord is thus divided the respiratory centre is cut off from all sensory impulses, save those which may pass into it from the cranial nerves; and the division of these cranial nerves in no way destroys respiration. Hence it is clear that the respiratory impulses proceeding from the respiratory centre are not simply afferent impulses reaching the centre along afferent nerves, and transformed by reflex action in that
ntre. They evidently start *de novo* from the centre itself,
ver much their characters may be affected by afferent
es reaching that centre at the time of their being gen-
The action of the centre is automatic, not simply

g the afferent impulses which affect the automatic ac-
e centre, the most important are those which ascend
vagi. If one vagus be divided, the respiration be-

comes slower; if both be divided, it becomes very slow, the pauses between expiration and inspiration being excessively prolonged. The character of the respiratory movement, too, is markedly changed, each respiration is fuller and deeper, so much so that what is lost in rate is gained in extent, the amount of carbonic acid produced and oxygen consumed in a given period remaining after division of the nerves about the same as when they were intact. It is evident from this, in the first place, that during life afferent impulses are continually ascending the vagi and modifying the action of the respiratory centre, and in the second place, that the modification bears simply on the distribution in time of the efferent respiratory impulses, and not at all on the amount to which they are generated. These afferent impulses are probably started in the lungs by the condition of the blood in the pulmonary capillaries acting as a stimulus to the peripheral endings of the nerves, though possibly the altered air in the air-cells may also act as a stimulus on the nerve endings.

It has been suggested that the mere movements of expansion and contraction may also serve as a stimulus. According to Hering and Breuer,[1] when air is mechanically driven into the chest, an expiratory movement follows, and when air is drawn out, an inspiratory; and this not only with atmospheric air but with indifferent gases, such as nitrogen; when both vagi are cut, these effects do not appear. They infer from this that the mere mechanical expansion of the lungs transmits along the vagus an impulse tending to inhibit inspiration and to generate an expiration, and the mechanical contraction of the lungs an impulse tending to inhibit expiration and to generate an inspiration. Hence, according to them the very expansion of the lungs, which is the natural effect of an inspiration, tends of itself to cut short that inspiration and to inaugurate the sequent expiration, and similarly the contraction of an expiration promotes the following inspiration. They speak in fact of the lungs as being so far self-regulating. This view, however, though very interesting, can perhaps hardly at present be regarded as proved.[2]

When the central stump of one of the divided vagi is stimulated with a gentle interrupted current, the respiration, which from the division of the nerves had become slow, is quickened again; and with care, by a proper application of the stimulus, the normal respiratory rhythm may for a time be restored. Upon the cessation of the stimulus, the slower rhythm returns. If the current be increased in strength, the rhythm may in some cases be so accelerated that at last the diaphragm is brought into a condition of prolonged tetanus, and a standstill of respiration in an extreme inspiratory phase is the result.

---

[1] Wien. Sitzungsberichte, Nov. 5, 1868.

[2] Guttmann, Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1875, p. 500.

If the central end of the superior laryngeal branch of the vagus be stimulated, whether the main trunk of the nerve be severed or not, a slowing of the respiration takes place, and this may by proper stimulation be carried so far that a complete standstill of respiration in the phase of rest is brought about, *i. e.*, the respiratory apparatus remains in the condition which obtains at the close of an ordinary expiration, the diaphragm being completely relaxed. In other words, the superior laryngeal nerve contains fibres, the stimulation of which produces afferent impulses whose effect is to inhibit the action of the respiratory centre; while the main trunk of the vagus contains fibres, the stimulation of which produces afferent impulses whose effect is to accelerate or augment the action of the respiratory centre. In some cases stimulation of the main trunk of the vagus also causes a slowing or even standstill of the respiration especially when the nerve has become exhausted by previous stimulation. We may, for the present at least, explain these results by supposing that while the superior laryngeal contains only inhibitory fibres, the main trunk of the vagus contains both accelerating and inhibitory fibres, the former, however, greatly preponderating. While, from the results of simple section of the main trunk, it is clear that the accelerating fibres are continually at work, it is not so clear that the inhibitory fibres are always in action, since section even of both superior laryngeals does not necessarily quicken respiration.

The statement made above, if not wholly satisfactory, has at least the merit of reconciling conflicting statements. For a long time a controversy was carried on between those authors who maintained that stimulation of the central end of the vagus, when the nerve was divided in the neck, brought about a tetanic contraction of the diaphragm and so had an inspiratory effect, and those who observed a complete relaxation to follow upon stimulation, and so regarded the effect as expiratory. We are indebted to Rosenthal[1] for pointing out the contrast between the action of the main trunk of the vagus and that of the superior laryngeal branch; and the view just put forward in the text is in the main that of Rosenthal, except that he denies the existence, admitted by most other observers,[2] of any inhibitory fibres in the main trunk. We further owe to Rosenthal a consistent theory of the manner in which the vagus acts on the respiratory centre. According to him we may regard the respiratory centre as the seat of two conflicting forces, one tending to generate respiratory impulses and the other offering resistance to the generation of these impulses, the one and the other alternately gaining the victory and thus leading to a rhythmic discharge. The afferent impulses passing upward along the main trunks of the vagi are further to be looked upon as acting not on the generation of impulses but on the resistance offered by the centre, diminishing that resistance in proportion to their intensity. Hence when the vagi are divided, the central resistance is increased, owing to the absence of the usual afferent impulses tending to diminish that resistance; in consequence, the respiratory impulses take a longer time in gathering head sufficient to overcome the increased resistance, and therefore are less frequent, though the discharge, when it does occur, is proportionately more forcible. Stimulation of the divided vagi, on the other hand, by increasing the afferent impulses and so diminishing the central resistance, renders the discharge more frequent. The impulses which ascend to the medulla along the superior laryngeal branches may in like manner be regarded as increasing the central resistance, and thus as inhibitory of the respiratory discharge.

---

[1] Die Athembewegungen, 1862, and Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1864, p. 456; 1865, p. 191; 1870, p. 423.

[2] Cf. Burkart, Pflüger's Archiv, xvi (1878), p. 427.

It is obvious that this theory, though constructed chiefly with the view of explaining inspiratory impulses and their inhibition, must, in order to be satisfactory, also include the consideration of distinctly expiratory impulses; for in labored respiration we must, in some way or other, admit the existence of specific expiratory impulses, and, if Hering and Breuer's view be correct, the vagus must even in ordinary breathing be the channel of stimuli which excite expiratory impulses. Many writers regard the standstill which is produced by stimulation of the superior laryngeal nerve as an expiratory effect, and indeed frequently speak of it as an "expiratory standstill." But it is obvious that distinction ought to be made between a state of things in which there is a complete absence of all respiratory muscular activity, and in which the chest remains in a condition of passive rest, and one in which the chest is maintained in a fixed condition by the continued contraction of certain expiratory muscles; it is the latter which is the true expiratory standstill, the antithesis of the inspiratory standstill, in which the diaphragm remains in tetanic contraction. The inhibition of inspiratory impulses is, however, the natural precursor of expiratory impulses, and it would seem that the same impulses which bring about a standstill of inspiration may, when increased in strength, give rise to movements of a distinctly expiratory character. Thus stimulation of the superior laryngeal branch, when carried beyond the strength necessary to inhibit inspiration, may give rise to contraction of the abdominal muscles indicative of expiratory efforts. We may, therefore, complete the hypothesis of the respiratory centre by supposing it to consist of an inspiratory part and an expiratory part, so disposed in reference to each other that the impulses which tend to excite the one part tend at the same time to inhibit the other part, and *vice versa*, the expiratory tract, however, being less irritable than the quiet transition from this condition to that of normal respiration shows that the subsequent generation of impulses is attended by no great disturbance. The cause of this state of things, which is known as that of *apnœa*, is to be sought for in the condition of the blood. By the increased vigor of the artificial respiratory movements the hæmoglobin of the arterial blood, which is naturally not quite saturated, becomes almost completely so, and the dissolved oxygen is increased, its tension being largely augmented. Respiration is arrested because the blood is more highly arterialized than usual. Thus we have in apnœa the converse to dyspnœa; and both states point to the same conclusion, that the activity of the respiratory centre is dependent on the condition of the blood, being augmented when the blood is less arterial and more venous, being depressed when it is more arterial and less venous than usual.

The question now arises, Does this condition of the blood affect the respiratory centre directly, or does it produce its effect by stimulating the peripheral ends of afferent nerves in various parts of the body, and, by the creation there of afferent impulses, indirectly modify the action of the centre? Without denying the possibility that the latter mode of action may help in the matter, as regards not only the vagi, but all afferent nerves, it is clear from the following reasons that the main effect is produced by the direct action of the blood on the respiratory centre itself. If the spinal cord be divided below the medulla oblongata, and both vagi be cut, want of proper aeration of the blood still produces an increased activity of the respiratory centre, as shown by the increased vigor of the facial respiratory movements. If the supply of blood be cut off from the medulla by ligature of the bloodvessels of the neck, dyspnœa is produced, though the operation produces no change in the blood generally, but simply affects the respiratory condition of the medulla itself, by cutting off its blood-supply, the immediate result of which is an accumulation of carbonic acid and a paucity of available oxygen in the protoplasms of the nerve-cells in that region. If the blood in the carotid artery in an animal be warmed above the normal, dyspnœa is at once produced. The over-warm blood hurries on the activity of the nerve-cells of the respiratory centre, so that the normal supply of blood is insufficient for their needs. The condition of the blood then affects respiration by acting directly on the respiratory centre itself.

Deficient aeration produces two effects in blood: it diminishes the oxygen, and increases the carbonic acid. Do both of these changes affect the respiratory centre, or only one, and if so, which? When an animal is made to breathe an atmosphere containing nitrogen only, the exit of carbonic acid by diffusion is not affected, and the blood, as is proved by actual analysis, contains no excess of carbonic acid.[1] Yet all the phenomena of dyspnœa are present. In this case these can only be attributed to the deficiency of oxygen. On the other hand, if an animal be made to breathe an atmosphere rich in carbonic acid, but at the same time containing an abundance of oxygen, though the breathing becomes markedly deeper and also somewhat more frequent, there is no culmination in a convulsive asphyxia, even when the quantity of carbonic acid in the blood, as shown by direct analysis, is very largely increased.[2] On the contrary, the increase in the respiratory movements after awhile passes off, the animal becoming unconscious, and appearing to be suffering rather from a narcotic poison than from simple dyspnœa. It does not seem certain that the increased respiratory movements seen at first are the direct result of the action of the carbonic acid on the respiratory centre; it is possible that the carbonic acid may affect the respiratory centre in an indirect way, by stimulating the respiratory passages, or by its action on higher parts of the brain; and in all cases there is a marked contrast between the slow development and evanescent character of the hyperpnœa of carbonic acid poisoning, and the rapid onset and speedy culmination in convulsions and death of the dyspnœa due to the absence of oxygen. There can in fact be no doubt that the action of deficiently arterialized blood on the respiratory centre, as manifested in an augmentation of the respiratory explosions, is due primarily to a want of oxygen, and in a secondary manner only to an excess of carbonic acid.

[The action of drugs upon the respiratory centres and peripheral pulmonic vagi nerves, is both physiologically and therapeutically of considerable interest. Thus it has been found that ammonia stimulates the respiratory centres; belladonna first stimulates, afterwards paralyzes (?) them; and salicylic acid in small doses stimulates and in large doses paralyzes the centres. Apomorphia stimulates the peripheral nerves, and in rabbits the centres also. Aconite, hydrocyanic acid, opium, caffein, ether, chloral, nitrite of amyl, veratria, and many other drugs paralyze the centres.]

---

[1] Pflüger, Pflüger's Archiv, i (1868), p. 61.

[2] Dohmen, Untersuch. a. d. Physiol. Lab. in Bonn, 1865. Pflüger, op. cit.

Cheyne-Stokes Respiration.—A remarkable abnormal rhythm of respiration, first observed by Cheyne[1] but afterwards more fully studied by Stokes[2] and hence called by their combined names, occurs in certain pathological cases. The respiratory movements gradually decrease both in extent and rapidity until they cease altogether, and a condition of apnœa, lasting it may be for several seconds, ensues. This is followed by a feeble respiration, succeeded in turn by a somewhat stronger one, and thus the respiration returns gradually to the normal, or may even rise to hyperpnœa or slight dyspnœa, after which it again declines in a similar manner. A secondary rhythm of respiration is thus developed, periods of normal or slightly dyspnœic respiration alternating by gradual transitions with periods of apnœa. The cause of the phenomena is not thoroughly understood. Stokes connected it with a fatty condition of the heart, but it has been met with in various maladies. Schiff[3] observed it as the result of compression of the medulla oblongata; and closely similar phenomena have been observed during sleep, under perfectly normal conditions.[4] It presents a striking analogy with the "groups" of heart-beats so frequently seen in the frog's ventricle placed under abnormal circumstances.

SEC. 7. THE EFFECTS OF RESPIRATION ON THE CIRCULATION.

We have seen, while treating of the circulation, that the blood-pressure curves are marked by undulations, which, since their rhythm is synchronous with that of the respiratory movements, are evidently in some way connected with respiration. An analysis of these undulations shows that their causation is complex; several events apparently may combine to bring them about.

When the brain of a living mammal is exposed by the removal of the skull, a rhythmic rise and fall of the cerebral mass, a pulsation of the brain, quite distinct from the movements caused by the pulse in the arteries of the brain, is observed; and upon examination it will be found that these movements are synchronous with the respiratory movements, the brain rising up during expiration and sinking during inspiration. They disappear when the arteries going to the brain are ligatured, or when the venous sinuses of the dura mater are laid open so as to admit of a free escape of the venous blood. They evidently arise from the expiratory movements in some way hindering and the inspiratory movements assisting the return of blood from the brain. We have already (p. 177) stated that during inspiration the pressure of blood in the great veins may become negative, *i. e.*, sink below the pressure of the atmosphere; and a puncture of one of these veins may cause immediate death by air being actually drawn into the vein and thus into the heart during an inspiratory movement. When the veins of an animal are laid bare in the neck and watched, the so-called *pulsus venosus* may be observed in them, that is, they swell up during expiration and diminish again during inspiration. And indeed a little consideration will show that the expansion and contraction of the chest must have a decided effect on the flow of blood through the thoracic portion of, and thus indirectly through the whole of, the vascular system.

---

[1] Dublin Hospital Reports, ii (1816), p. 21.

[2] See Diseases of Heart, etc., 1854, p. 324.

[3] Lehrb., 1858, p. 324.

[4] Cf. Mosso, Arch. Anat. u. Phys., 1878, Phys. Abth., p. 441.

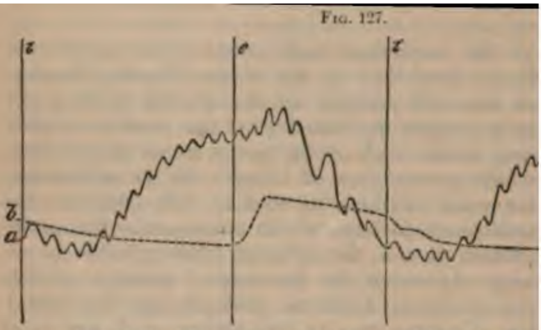
The heart and great bloodvessels are, like the lungs, placed in the air-tight thoracic cavity, and are subject like the lungs to the pumping action of the respiratory movements. Were the lungs entirely absent from the chest, the whole force of the expension of the thorax in inspiration would be directed to drawing blood from the extra-thoracic vessels towards the heart, and conversely the effect of the contraction of the thorax in expiration would be to drive the blood back again from the heart towards the extra-thoracic vessels. In the presence of the lungs, however, the free entrance of air into the interior of the chest tends to maintain the pressure around the heart and great vessels within the thorax equal to the ordinary atmospheric pressure on the vessels of the rest of the body outside of the thorax; but it is unable completely to equalize the two pressures. Did the air enter as freely into the lungs as it does into the pleural cavities when wide openings are made in the thoracic walls, the respiratory movements would have very little effect indeed on the flow of blood to and from the heart, just as under similar circumstances (p. 407) they would be ineffectual in promoting the entrance and exit of air to and from the lungs. But the air does *not* pass into the pulmonary alveoli as freely as it would do into a pleural cavity through an opening in the thoracic wall. Before the inspired air can fill a pulmonary alveolus, the walls of the alveolus have to be distended *at the expense of the pressure which causes the inspired air to enter.* Part of the atmospheric pressure in fact which causes the entrance of the air into the lung is spent in overcoming the elasticity of the pulmonary passages and cells. Consequently, any structure lying within the thorax but outside the lungs, is never, even at the conclusion of an inspiration, when the lungs are filled with air, subject to a pressure as great as that of the atmosphere. The pressure on such a structure always falls short of the pressure of the atmosphere by the amount of pressure necessary to counterbalance the elasticity of the pulmonary passages and cells. And since the fraction of the atmospheric pressure which is thus spent in distending the lungs increases as the lungs become more and more stretched, it follows that the fuller the inspiration the greater is the difference between the pressure on structures outside the lungs but within the thorax and the ordinary pressure of the atmosphere. Now we have seen (p. 408) that the pressure necessary to counterbalance the elasticity of the lungs, when they are completely at rest (in the pause between expiration and inspiration) is in man about 5 to 7 mm. of mercury, and that when the lungs are fully distended, as at the end of a forcible inspiration, the pressure rises to as much as 30 mm. of mercury. Hence at the height of a forcible inspiration the pressure exerted on the heart and great vessels within the thorax is 30 mm. less than the ordinary atmospheric pressure of 760 mm., and even when the chest is completely at rest, at the end of an expiration, the pressure on the heart and great vessels is slightly (by about 5 mm. mercury) below that of the atmosphere.

During an inspiration, then, the pressure around the heart and great bloodvessels becomes considerably less than that of the atmosphere on the vessels outside the thorax. During expiration this pressure returns towards that of the atmosphere, but in ordinary breathing never quite reaches it. It is only in forcible expiration that the pressure on the thoracic vascular organs exceeds that of the atmosphere. But if during inspiration the pressure bearing on the right auricle and the venæ cavæ becomes less than the pressure which is bearing on the jugular, subclavian, and other veins outside the thorax, this must result in an increased flow from the latter into the former. Hence, during each inspiration a larger quantity of blood enters the right side of the heart. This probably leads to a stronger stroke of the heart, and at all events causes a larger quantity to be ejected by the right ventricle; this causes a larger quantity to escape from the left ventricle, and thus re blood is thrown into the aorta, and the arterial tension portionately increased: During expiration the converse takes place. The pressure on the intra-thoracic bloodvessels returns to the normal, the flow of blood from the veins outside the thorax into the venæ cavæ and right auricle is no longer assisted, and in consequence less blood passes through the heart into the aorta, and arterial tension falls again. During forced expiration, the intra-thoracic pressure may be so great as to afford a distinct obstacle to the flow from the veins into the heart.

The effect of the respiratory movements on the arteries is naturally different from that on the veins. During inspiration the diminution of pressure in the thorax around the aortic arch tends to draw the blood from the arteries outside the thorax back to the arch of the aorta, or in other words, tends to check the onward flow of blood. At the same time, and this is the point to which we wish to call attention, the aortic arch itself tends to expand; in consequence the pressure of blood within it, *i. e.*, the arterial tension, tends to diminish. During expiration, the increase of pressure outside the aortic arch of course tends to increase also the blood-pressure within it, acting in fact just in the same way as if the coats of the aorta themselves contracted. Thus, as far as arterial blood-pressure is concerned, the effects of the respiratory movements on the great veins and great arteries respectively, are antagonistic to each other; the effect on the veins being to increase arterial tension during inspiration and to diminish it during expiration, while the effect on the arteries is to diminish arterial tension during inspiration and to increase it during expiration. But we should naturally expect the effect on the thin-walled veins to be greater than that on the stout thick-walled arteries, so that the total effect of inspiration would be to increase, and the total effect of expiration to diminish, arterial tension.

These facts seem at first sight to afford a ready explanation of the respiratory undulations of the blood-pressure curve; the rise of pressure in each undulation might be supposed to be due to the inspiratory, the fall to the expiratory movement. When, however, the respiratory undulations of the blood-pressure curve are compared carefully with the variations of intra-thoracic pressure, it is seen that neither the rise nor the fall of the former are exactly synchronous with either diminution or increase of the latter. Fig. 127 shows two tracings from a dog taken at the same time, one, *a*, being the ordinary blood-pressure curve from the carotid, and the other, *b*, representing the condition of the intra-thoracic pressure as obtained by carefully bringing a manometer into connection with the

Fig. 127.



Comparison of Blood-Pressure curve with curve of Intra-thoracic
read from left to right.)

a is the blood-pressure curve, with its respiratory undulations, the
descent being very marked. *b* is the curve of intra-thoracic pressur
necting one limb of a manometer with the pleural cavity. Inspiratio
ration at *e*. The intra-thoracic pressure rises very rapidly after the
spiratory effort, and then slowly falls as the air issues from the chest
of the inspiratory effort the fall becomes more rapid.

has begun; the fall continues during the remai
ration, and passes on into the succeeding ins
order to reconcile the facts represented by thes
the mechanical explanation given above, we
that the beneficial effects of the inspiratory mo
larger supply of blood brought to the heart, ta
to develop themselves, and last beyond the move

But there are phenomena which show that i
tion of the respiratory undulations other influ
those just discussed are at work.

ral respiration; for when air is blown into the trachea to distend the lungs, the pressure within the chest is increased instead of diminished. Evidently the explanation given above is not valid for the respiratory undulations of blood-pressure which occur during artificial respiration.

But another explanation, still of a mechanical nature, suggests itself. When the lung is expanded, whether by artificial or natural respiration, *i. e.*, whether by means of a tracheal positive pressure or a pleural negative pressure, the increase in the area of the wall of each pulmonary alveolus tends to stretch and elongate the capillaries lying in the alveolar walls, and in elongating them necessarily narrows them, just as an india-rubber tube is narrowed when it is stretched lengthways. This narrowing of the capillaries is an obstacle to the passage of blood through them; and hence the expansion of the alveoli in inspiration, other things being equal, will be unfavorable to the flow of blood through the lungs. In artificial respiration moreover the positive pressure on the alveolar walls will tend as well to compress the capillaries and still further to hinder the flow of blood through them; and direct experiments show that when blood is driven artificially at a constant rate through the pulmonary artery, the outflow through the pulmonary veins is diminished when the lungs are inflated (by tracheal positive pressure) and increases again when the lungs are allowed to return to their former volume.[1] The diminished or increased flow of blood through the lungs will naturally, by diminishing or increasing the quantity in the left heart, diminish or increase the blood-pressure. And it is exceedingly probable that the respiratory undulations seen when artificial respiration is carried on are thus brought about by changes in the calibre of the pulmonary capillaries and small vessels. The case of natural respiration is somewhat different: the narrowing of the capillaries due to the increase of the dimensions of the pulmonary alveoli comes into play as before, but instead of the tracheal positive pressure a pleural negative pressure is brought to bear on the capillaries, and this probably tends to widen them; but the problem then becomes very complicated, and though it is stated[2] that when inspiration is carried out by means of a negative pleural pressure, the artificial flow through the lungs, contrary to the case when positive tracheal pressure is employed, is increased, the matter is too unsettled to enable us to state how far the undulations of blood-pressure during normal respiration are brought about by change in the pulmonary circulation.

---

[1] Poiseuille, Compt. Rend., T. xliv, 1855, p. 1072. Quincke u. Pfeiffer, Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1871, p. 90.

[2] Quincke u. Pfeiffer, op. cit.

We have moreover evidence of other influences, not mechanical but nervous in nature, having at least some share in producing the phenomena we are discussing. One striking feature of the respiratory undulation in the blood-pressure curve of the dog is the fact that the pulse-rate is quickened during the rise of the undulation and becomes slower during the fall. The quickening of the beat might be considered as itself partly accounting for the rise, were it not for two facts. In the rabbit, the respiratory undulations, though well marked, present a very small difference of pulse-rate in the rise and fall. In the dog, the difference is at once done with, without any other essential change in the undulations, by section of both vagi. Evidently the slower pulse during the fall is caused by a coincident stimulation of the cardio-inhibitory centre in the medulla oblongata, the quicker pulse during the rise being due to the fact that, during that interval, the centre is comparatively at rest. We have here most important indications that, while the respiratory centre in the medulla oblongata is at work, sending out rhythmic impulses of inspiration and expiration, the neighboring cardio-inhibitory centre is, as it were by sympathy, thrown into an activity of such a kind that its influence over the heart waxes and wanes with each respiratory movement.

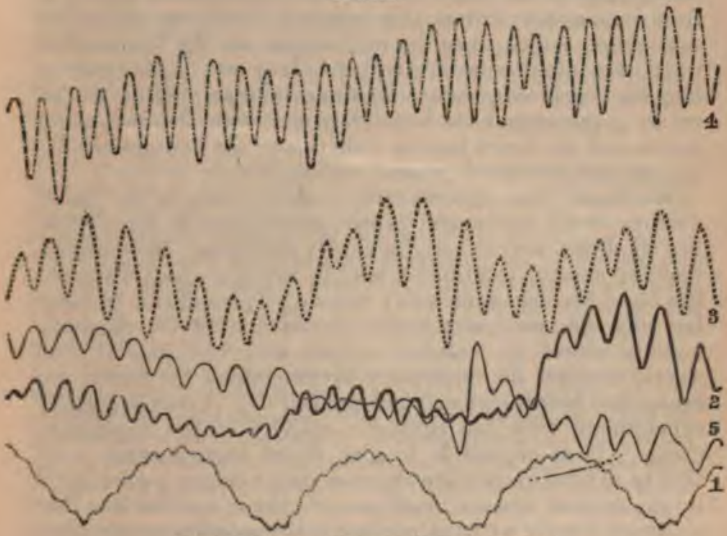
But if the cardio-inhibitory centre is thus synchronously affected, ought we not to expect that the vaso-motor centre should also be involved in the action? We have evidence that it is.

When artificial respiration is stopped, a very large but steady rise of pressure is observed. This may be in part due to the increased force of the cardiac beat, caused by the increasingly venous character of the blood; but only in part, and that a small part. The rise so witnessed is very similar to that brought about by powerfully stimulating a number of vaso-constrictor nerves; and there can be no doubt that it is due to the venous blood stimulating the vaso-motor centre in the medulla, and thus causing constriction of the small arteries of the body, particularly those of the splanchnic area. We say "stimulating the medullary vaso-motor centre," because, though the venous blood may stimulate other vaso-motor centres in the spinal cord[1] and possibly even act directly on local peripheral mechanisms, or on the muscular coats of the small arteries themselves, since a rise of pressure follows upon dyspnœa when the spinal cord has been previously divided below the medulla, yet the fact that it is much less under these circumstances shows that the medullary centre plays the chief part. Upon the cessation of the artificial respiration, the respiratory undulations cease also, so that the blood-pressure curve rises at first steadily in almost a straight line; yet after awhile new undulations, the so-called Traube's curves, make their appearance (Fig. 128, 2, 3), very similar to the previous ones, except that their curves are larger and of a more sweeping character. These

---

[1] Luchsinger, Pflüger's Archiv, xvi, 1878, p. 510.

Fig. 128.



Traube's Curves. (To be read from left to right.)

The curves 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, were taken at intervals, and all form part of one experiment. Each curve is placed in its proper position relative to the base line, which, to save space, is omitted. During 1, artificial respiration was kept up, the undulations visible are therefore not due to the mechanical action of the chest. When the artificial respiration was suspended these undulations for awhile disappeared, and the blood-pressure rose steadily while the heart-beats became slower. Soon, as shown in curve 2, the undulations reappeared. A little later, the blood-pressure was still rising, the heart-beats still slower, but the undulations still obvious (curve 3). Still later (curve 4), the pressure was still higher, but the heart-beats were quicker, and the undulations flatter. The pressure then began to fall rapidly (curve 5), and continued to fall until some time after artificial respiration was resumed.

when the spinal cord is divided. They are m
long as the blood-pressure continues to rise. V
creasing venosity of the blood, however, both th
centre and the heart become exhausted; the und
appear, and the blood-pressure rapidly sinks.

We have, then, experimental evidence that, i
absence of all mechanical causes, undulations of
ure, of direct nervous origin, closely simulating
panying natural respiration, may be brought abo
the blood becomes sufficiently venous. It is diffi
ine why the vaso-motor centre should exhibit t
activity shown in Traube's curves, and why
should simulate the respiratory rhythm, unless th
centre had been previously accustomed to a rhyth
synchronous with the rhythmic activity of the
centre. It is impossible to give direct experin
that in natural respiration the vaso-motor centre
by the natural venous blood to a rhythmic activ
shown in Traube's curves, because it is impossible
the mechanical factors discussed above. And t
that because the undulations seen in artificial
continue, as is asserted, after division of the
vaso-motor events can have no share in produ
dulations of natural respiration, is invalid, since
seen, the undulations of artificial respiration hav
different mechanical origin from those of natura
On the other hand, if, as is stated by others, the
even of artificial respiration, though not obliter
minished by section of the medulla, these too must
vaso-motorial origin; for the mere diminution
blood-pressure which results from section of the m

respiratory curves may be seen superimposed. He regards these longer curves as of vaso-motorial origin.

We may conclude, then, that the respiratory undulations of blood-pressure are of complex origin, being partly the mechanical results of the thoracic movements, possibly also produced by the alternate expansion and collapse of the pulmonary alveoli, but probably in addition brought about by a rhythmic variation of the vascular peripheral resistance, the result of a rhythmic activity of the vaso-motor centre.

In estimating the mechanical effects on the flow of blood to and from the heart produced by the respiratory movements, attention must be paid, not only to the action of the thorax, but also to that of the abdomen. Thus on the descent of the diaphragm, though the flow of blood to the right heart from the upper part of the body is thereby undoubtedly assisted, that from the lower part of the body and abdomen is diminished. Conversely in expiration the compression of the abdomen tends at first to drive the blood onward to the heart, though subsequently, especially if long continued and labored, it may prove an obstacle both to the flow to the heart along the vena cava and to that from the heart along the aorta.

Funke and Latschenberger,[1] who insist on the expansion and collapse of the lungs as the chief factor of the respiratory undulations, point out that while the main effect of expansion is, by lengthening and narrowing the capillaries, to hinder the flow through the lungs, yet the initial result is to drive an extra quantity of blood from the capillaries onwards, and that similarly the initial result of the collapse is, by the shortening and widening of the same capillaries, to retain a certain quantity of blood for awhile in the lungs. They offer by help of these considerations very ingenious explanations of the variations in the character of the respiratory undulations accompanying variations in the rhythm and character of the respiratory movements. And they contend that their explanations are valid, not only in artificial respiration, but also in natural respiration, even when the negative pleural pressure bears on the large vessels of the chest as well. Kowalewsky,[2] on the other hand, explains the undulations seen in artificial respiration, by reference not so much to the narrowing and widening of the capillaries due to their longitudinal stretching and return, as to the variations of pressure in the air of the pulmonary alveoli; but argues, in opposition to Funke and Latschenberger, that in natural respiration, these variations, produced by pleural negative pressure and not by tracheal positive pressure, are more than compensated by the simultaneous effects of the same pleural pressure on the great vessels.[3]

It has been suggested that the increased frequency of beat during

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xv (1877), p. 405; ibid. (1878), p. 547.

[2] Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1877, Phys. Abth., p. 416.

[3] Cf. Zuntz, Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 374.

The Effects of Deficient Air—Asphyxi

When, on account of occlusion of the trachea, ing in a confined space, a due supply of air is normal respiration gives place through an intern of dyspnœa to the condition known as asphyxia remedial measures be taken, rapidly proves fatal.

Phenomena of Asphyxia.—As soon as the o arterial blood sinks below the normal, the respi ments become deeper and at the same time m both the inspiratory and expiratory phases are the supplementary muscles spoken of on p. 418 into play, and the rate of the rhythm is hurr respect, dyspnœa, or hyperpnœa, as this first st called, contrasts very strongly with the peculia condition caused by section of the vagi, in whic tory movements, while much more profound tha are diminished in frequency.

As the blood continues to become more and the respiratory movements continue to increase and frequency, a larger number of muscles bei action, and that to an increasing extent. Ve ever, it may be observed that the expiratory m becoming more marked than the inspiratory. which can in any way assist in expiration is in into play; and at last almost all the muscles of involved in the struggle. The orderly expirato culminate in expiratory convulsions, the order removed. It is usual to speak of a "convulsive centre" in the medulla, the stimulation of which gives rise to these convulsions; but if we accept the existence of such a centre we must at the same time admit that it is connected by the closest ties with the normal expiratory division of the respiratory centre, since every intervening step may be observed between a simple slight expiratory movement of normal respiration and the most violent convulsion of asphyxia. An additional proof that these convulsions are carried out by the agency of the medulla is afforded by the fact that convulsions of a wholly similar character are witnessed when the supply of blood to the medulla is suddenly cut off by ligaturing the bloodvessels of the head. In this case the nervous centres, being no longer furnished with fresh blood, become rapidly asphyxiated through lack of oxygen, and expiratory convulsions quite similar to those of ordinary asphyxia, and preceded like them by a passing phase of dyspnœa, make their appearance. Similar "anæmic" convulsions are seen after a sudden and large loss of blood from the body at large, the medulla being similarly stimulated by lack of arterial blood.

Such violent efforts speedily exhaust the nervous system, and the convulsions after being maintained for a brief period suddenly cease and are followed by a period of calm. The calm is one of exhaustion; the pupils, dilated to the utmost, are unaffected by light; touching the cornea calls forth no movement of the eyelids, and indeed no reflex actions can anywhere be produced by the stimulation of sentient surfaces. All expiratory active movements have ceased; the muscles of the body are flaccid and quiet; and though from time to time the respiratory centre gathers sufficient energy to develop respiratory movements, these resemble those of quiet normal breathing, in being, as far as muscular actions are concerned, almost entirely inspiratory. They occur at long intervals, like those after the section of the vagi; and like them are deep and slow. The exhausted respiratory centre takes some time to develop an inspiratory explosion; but the impulse when it is generated is proportionately strong. It seems as if the resistance which had in each case to be overcome was considerable, and the effort in consequence, when successful, productive of a large effect.

As time goes on, these inspiratory efforts become less frequent; their rhythm becomes irregular; long pauses, each one of which seems a final one, are succeeded by several somewhat rapidly repeated inspirations. The pauses become longer, and the inspiratory movements shallower. Each inspiration is accompanied by the contraction of accessory muscles, especially of the face, so that each breath becomes more and more a prolonged gasp. The inspiratory gasps spread into a convulsive stretching of the whole body; and with extended limbs, and a straightened trunk, with the head thrown back, the mouth widely open, the face drawn, and the nostrils dilated, the last breath is taken in.

Thus we are able to distinguish three stages in the phenomena which result from a continued deficiency of air: (1) A stage of dyspnœa, characterized by an increase of the respiratory movements both of inspiration and expiration. (2) A convulsive stage, characterized by the dominance of the expiratory efforts, and culminating in general convulsions. (3) A stage of exhaustion, in which lingering and long-drawn inspirations gradually die out. When brought about by sudden occlusion of the trachea these events run through their course in about 4 or 5 minutes in the dog, and in about 3 or 4 minutes in the rabbit. The first stage passes gradually into the second, convulsions appearing at the end of the first minute. The transition from the second stage into the third is somewhat abrupt, the convulsions suddenly ceasing early in the second minute. The remaining time is occupied in the third stage.

The duration of asphyxia varies not only in different animals but in the same animal under different circumstances. Newly-born and young animals need much longer immersion in water before death by asphyxia occurs than do adults. Thus while in a full-grown dog recovery from drowning is unusual after 1½ minutes, a new-born puppy has been known to bear an immersion of as much as 50 minutes. The cause of the difference lies in the fact that in the young animal the respiratory changes of the tissues are much less active. These consume less oxygen, and the general store of oxygen in the blood has a less rapid demand made upon it. The respiratory activity of the tissues may also be lessened by a deficiency in the circulation; hence bodies in a state of syncope at the time when the deprivation of oxygen begins can endure the loss for a much longer period than can bodies in which the circulation is in full swing. There being the same store of oxygen in the blood in each case, the quicker circulation must of necessity bring about the speedier exhaustion of the store. In many cases of drowning, death is hastened by the entrance of water into the lungs.

By training, the respiratory centre may be accustomed to bear a scanty supply of oxygen for a much longer time than usual before dyspnœa sets in, as is seen in the case of divers.

The phenomena of slow asphyxia, where the supply of air is gradually diminished, are fundamentally the same as those resulting from a sudden and total deprivation. The same stages are seen, but their development takes place more slowly.

The Circulation in Asphyxia.—If the carotid or other artery of an animal be connected with a manometer during the development of the asphyxia just described, the following facts may be observed. During the first and second stages the blood-pressure rises rapidly, attaining a height far above the normal. During the third stage it falls even more rapidly, repassing the normal and becoming nil as death ensues. The respiratory undulations of the pressure-curve are abrupt and somewhat irregular, the inspiratory movements being accompanied by a fall of pressure. When the animal has been previously placed under urari, so that the respiratory impulses cannot manifest themselves by any muscular movements, the rise of the pressure-curve, as we have already said, is at first steady and unbroken, but after a variable period Traube's curves make their appearance. As during the third stage the pressure sinks, these undulations pass away.

The heart-beats are at first somewhat quickened, but speedily become slow, while at the same time they acquire great force; so that the pulse-curves on the tracing are exceedingly bold and striking, Fig. 128. Even while the blood-pressure is sinking, the pulse-curves still maintain somewhat these characters; and the heart continues to beat for some seconds after the respiratory movements have ceased, the strokes at last rapidly failing in frequency and strength.

If the chest of an animal be opened under artificial respiration, and asphyxia brought on by cessation of the respiration, it will be seen that the heart during the second and third stages becomes completely gorged with venous blood, all the cavities as well as the large veins being distended to the utmost. If the heart be watched to the close of the events, it will be seen that the feebler strokes which come on towards the end of the third stage are quite unable to empty its cavities; and when the last beat has passed away its parts are still choked with blood. The veins spirt out when pricked; and it may frequently be observed that the beats recommence when the over-distension of the heart's cavities is relieved by puncture of the great vessels. When rigor mortis sets in after death by asphyxia, the left side of the heart is more or less emptied of its contents; but not so the right side. Hence in an ordinary post-mortem examination in cases of death by asphyxia, while the left side is found comparatively empty, the right appears gorged.

These various phenomena are probably brought about in the following way:

The increasingly venous character of the blood augments the action of the general vaso-motor centre, and thus leads to a general constriction of the small arteries. This is the cause of the markedly increased blood-pressure; though, as we have already said, the venous blood may also act directly on the other spinal vaso-motor centres, and possibly on peripheral vaso-motor mechanisms, or on the muscular arterial coats, or may even affect the peripheral resistance by modifying the changes in the capillary regions, see p. 280.

This increased peripheral resistance, while indirectly (p. 287) helping to augment the force of the heart's beat, is a direct obstacle to the heart emptying itself of its contents. On the other hand, the increased respiratory movements favour the flow of venous blood towards the heart, which in consequence becomes more and more full. This repletion is, moreover, assisted by the marked infrequency of the beats. This in turn depends in part on the cardio-inhibitory centre in the medulla being stimulated by the venous blood; since when the vagi are divided the frequency is much less pronounced. It does not, however, disappear altogether, and we are, therefore, driven to suppose it is in part due to the venous blood acting in an inhibitory manner directly on the heart itself. The increased resistance in front, the augmented supply from behind, and the long pauses between the strokes, all concur in distending the heart more and more.

When the large veins have become full of blood the inspiratory movements can no longer have their usual effect in increasing the blood-pressure. The whole force of the chest movement, as far as the circulation is concerned, is spent in diminishing the pressure around the large arteries; and hence the sinking of the blood-pressure during each inspiratory movement.

The distension of the cardiac cavities, at first favourable to heart-beat, as it increases becomes injurious. At the same the cardiac tissues, which at first probably are stimulated, later become exhausted by the action of the venous the strokes of the heart become feebler as well as

of this increasing slowness and feebleness of the the blood-pressure, in spite of the continued arte- begins to fall, since less and less blood is pumped into the arterial system; the boldness of the pulse-curves at this stage being chiefly due to the infrequency of the strokes. As the quantity which passes from the heart into the arteries becomes less second by second, the pressure gets lower and lower, the descent being assisted by the exhaustion of the vaso-motor centre, until almost before the last beats it has sunk to zero. Thus at the close of asphyxia, while the heart and venous system are distended with blood, the arterial system is less than normally full.

The Effects of an Increased Supply of Air—Apnœa.

It is a matter of common experience that after several inspiratory efforts of greater force than ordinary, the breath can be held for a much longer time than usual. In other words, by an increased respiratory action, the blood can be brought into such a condition that the generation of the respiratory impulses in the medulla is delayed beyond the usual time; the desire to breathe can then be resisted for a longer time than usual. This state of things, which we can easily produce in ourselves, is the beginning of that peculiar condition brought about by a too vigorous respiration, or by the inhalation of oxygen, to which we have already (p. 460) referred under the name of "apnœa."[1] The essential feature of apnœa consists in the blood containing for the time being more oxygen than usual. In consequence of this a longer time is needed before the deficiency of oxygen in the blood of the capillaries of the medulla oblongata, or rather in the nerve-cells constituting the respiratory centre, reaches the limit which determines the discharge of a respiratory impulse. The molecular processes of these cells are so arranged, that whenever the oxygen which is available for their use sinks below a certain level, respiratory explosions occur whereby a fresh supply of oxygen is gained. By increasing their available oxygen, the explosive action of the cells is deferred and diminished; that is, apnœa is established. Similarly when the supply of oxygen is diminished, the explosions are hastened and increased, that is, dyspnœa is brought about. The different conditions of the respiratory centre during apnœa, normal breathing or eupnœa, and dyspnœa, are well shown by the different effects produced by stimulating the afferent fibres of the trunk of the vagus with the same stimulus during the three stages. If the current chosen be of such a strength as will gently increase the rhythm of normal breathing, it will be found to have no effect at all in apnœa, while in dyspnœa it may produce almost convulsive movements. Indeed, in well-marked apnœa even strong stimulation of the vagus may produce no effect whatever.

---

[1] It is to be regretted that this name is used by some medical authorities in a sense almost identical with asphyxia. In its physiological sense, as here used, it is the very opposite of asphyxia.

According to Ewald[1] the hæmoglobin of the blood during apnœa becomes perfectly or almost perfectly saturated with oxygen. The absolute increase does not seem great, from .1 to .9 per cent. vol. The tension at which this increment exists is, however, very great. The venous blood, if the artificial respiration, used to produce the apnœa, be carefully carried out, contains more oxygen than the normal, and appears of a bright-red color. In cases where the artificial respiration interferes with the pulmonary circulation and so reduces the rapidity of the general flow of blood, the venous blood may be even darker than usual.[2]

The Effects of Changes in the Composition of Air breathed.[3]

We have already discussed the effects of such changes as are produced by the act of respiration itself, viz., a deficiency of oxygen and an excess of carbonic acid. We have only to add, that the result of an excess of oxygen, except in the cases of extreme pressure to be mentioned immediately, is simply apnœa, and that variations in amount of nitrogen have of themselves no effect, this gas being eminently an indifferent gas as far as physiological processes are concerned.

Poisonous Gases.—Carbonic oxide produces the same effects as deficiency of oxygen, inasmuch as it preoccupies the hæmoglobin and so prevents the blood from becoming properly oxygenated, see p. 437. Sulphuretted hydrogen produces similar effects, but in a different manner; it acts as a reducing agent, see p. 435. Some gases are irrespirable, on account of their causing spasm of the glottis, and this is said to be, to a certain extent, the case with carbonic acid. [The anæsthesia produced by nitrous oxide and many other gases is probably a result of asphyxia, which is due to a deficient supply of oxygen, caused by the presence of the nitrous oxide gas in the lungs, or to an action on the hæmoglobin.]

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, vii (1873), p. 575.
[2] Finkler and Oertmann, Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 38.
[3] Paul Bert, Rech. Exp. sur la Pression Baromet., 1874.

The Effects of Changes in the Pressure of Air breathed.[1]

Gradual Diminution of Pressure.—The symptoms are those of deficiency of oxygen; the animals die of asphyxia. The blood contains less and less oxygen as the pressure is reduced, the quantity present in the arterial blood soon becoming less than that in the normal venous blood. The quantity of carbonic acid in the blood is also diminished. The increasing dyspnœa is accompanied by great general feebleness; and convulsions though frequent are not invariable. The occurrence of these seems to depend on the suddenness with which the oxygen of the blood is diminished.

Sudden Diminution.—Death in these cases ensues from the liberation of gases within the bloodvessels and the consequent mechanical interference with the circulation. The gas which is found in the bloodvessels on examination after death consists chiefly of nitrogen.

Increase of Pressure.—Up to a pressure of several atmospheres of air, merely symptoms of narcotic poisoning, altogether like those of breathing an excess of carbonic acid, are developed, and there can be little doubt that they originate from the same cause, viz., the excess of carbonic acid in the blood. At a pressure, however, of four atmospheres of oxygen, corresponding to twenty atmospheres of air, and upwards, very remarkable phenomenon presents itself. The animals die of asphyxia and convulsions, exactly in the same way as when oxygen is deficient. Corresponding with this it is found that the production of carbonic acid is diminished. That is to say, when the pressure of the oxygen is increased beyond a certain limit, the oxidations of the body are diminished, and with a still further increase of the oxygen are arrested altogether. The oxidation of phosphorus is quite analogous; at a high pressure of oxygen phosphorus will not burn. Bert has further shown that plants, bacteria, and organized ferments, are similarly killed by a too great pressure of oxygen.

---

[1] Paul Bert, Rech. Exp. sur la Pression Baromet., 1874.

SEC. 9. MODIFIED RESPIRATORY MOVEMENTS.

The respiratory mechanism with its adjuncts, in addition to its respiratory function, becomes of service, especially in the case of man, as a means of expressing emotions. The respiratory column of air, moreover, in its exit from the chest is frequently made use of in a mechanical way to expel bodies from the upper air-passages. Hence arise a number of peculiarly modified and more or less complicated respiratory movements, sighing, coughing, laughter, etc., adapted to secure special ends which are not distinctly respiratory. They are all essentially reflex in character, the stimulus determining each movement, sometimes affecting a peripheral afferent nerve as in the case of coughing, sometimes working through the higher parts of the brain as in laughter and crying, sometimes, possibly, as in yawning and sighing, acting on the respiratory centre itself. Like the simple respiratory act, they may with more or less success be carried out by a direct effort of the will.

Sighing is a deep and long-drawn inspiration, chiefly through the nose, followed by a somewhat shorter, but correspondingly large expiration.

Yawning is similarly a deep inspiration, deeper and longer continued than a sigh, drawn through the widely open mouth, and accompanied by a peculiar depression of the lower jaw and frequently by an elevation of the shoulders.

Hiccough consists in a sudden inspiratory contraction of the diaphragm, in the course of which the glottis suddenly closes, so that the further entrance of air into the chest is prevented, while the impulse of the column of air just entering, as it strikes upon the closed glottis, gives rise to a well-known accompanying sound. The afferent impulses of the reflex act are conveyed by the gastric branches of the vagus. The closure of the glottis is carried out by means of the inferior laryngeal nerve. See *Voice*.

In **sobbing** a series of similar convulsive inspirations follow ch other slowly, the glottis being closed earlier than in the se of hiccough, so that little or no air enters into the chest.

Coughing consists in the first place of a deep and long-drawn inspiration by which the lungs are well filled with air. This is followed by a complete closure of the glottis, and then comes a sudden and forcible expiration, in the midst of which the glottis suddenly opens, and thus a blast of air is driven through the upper respiratory passages. The afferent impulses of this reflex act are in most cases, as when a foreign body is lodged in the larynx or by the side of the epiglottis, conveyed by the superior laryngeal nerve; but the movement may arise from stimuli applied to other afferent branches of the vagus, such as those supplying the bronchial passages and stomach (?) and the auricular branch distributed to the *meatus externus*. Stimulation of other nerves, also, such as those of the skin by a draught of cold air, may develop a cough.

In **sneezing** the general movement is essentially the same, except that the opening from the pharynx into the mouth is closed by the contraction of the anterior pillars of the fauces and the descent of the soft palate, so that the force of the blast is driven entirely through the nose. The afferent impulses here usually come from the nasal branches of the fifth. When sneezing, however, is produced by a bright light, the optic nerve would seem to be the afferent nerve.

Laughing consists essentially in an inspiration succeeded, not by one, but by a whole series, often long continued, of short spasmodic expirations, the glottis being freely open during the whole time, and the vocal cords being thrown into characteristic vibrations.

In **crying** the respiratory movements are modified in the same way as in laughing; the rhythm and the accompanying facial expressions are, however, different, though laughing and crying frequently become indistinguishable.

Our real knowledge of the physiology of respiration dates back from 1777, when Lavoisier showed the true nature of combustion, following as close as this did upon Priestley's demonstration of the identity of respiration and combustion (1771), and discovery of oxygen (1774). Before that time the chief steps of progress were, the discovery by Van Helmont (1648) that gas sylvestre (carbonic acid gas) was unfit for respiration; the demonstration by Hook (1664) of the effects of artificial respiration; by Lower (1669) of the connection with respiration of the difference in color between venous and arterial blood; by Boyle (1670) of the necessity for respiratory purposes of the air dissolved in water; the observations and reflections of Mayow (1674) on the spiritus nitro-aereus (oxygen), in which he narrowly missed anticipating Lavoisier by a century, and the discovery by Black (1757) of carbonic acid in air. Lavoisier, however, held that the respiratory combustion took place in the bronchial tubes, a hydro-carbonous substance being secreted for that purpose from the blood; and, though Lagrange suggested that the oxygen might be absorbed into and the carbonic acid exhaled from the blood, the combustion occurring in the blood or tissues; and Spallanzani (1803) and W. F. Edwards (1823) showed that snails, frogs, and young mammals continued to produce carbonic acid in an atmosphere of hydrogen, whereby direct combustion in the lungs was rendered impossible, Lavoisier's view held its ground, owing to the difficulty of extracting gases from the blood, until in 1837 Magnus used the mercurial air-pump and proved that both venous and arterial blood contained both oxygen and carbonic acid. His researches, and those of Lothar Meyer and Fernet, which followed soon after, form the basis of our present knowledge. The labors of Ludwig and his school, of Pflüger and his pupils, and of others, have advanced this subject to its present condition. The spectroscopic discoveries of Hoppe-Seyler and Stokes have proved of great and increasing importance; and we are indebted to Rosenthal for a clear exposition of the nervous mechanism of respiration.

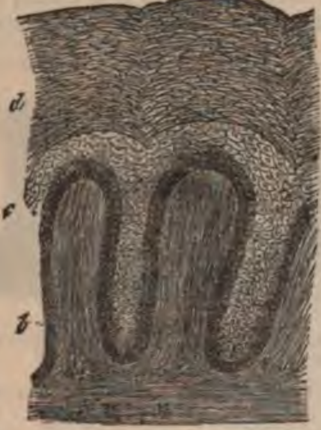
CHAPTER III.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Skin and its Appendages.*

THE skin is divided into two principal portions: the *epidermis*, cuticle or scarf-skin, and the *derma*, or true skin. These layers can readily be demonstrated by maceration.

The *epidermis*, or most superficial layer, is a cellular structure, composed entirely of superimposed stratifications of epithelium cells, which differ in character in the superficial and deep layers. The superficial layers are composed of flat, nucleated, horny epithelium cells, which are detached from the cutaneous surface in the form of scales. In the deeper layers, the cells are rounded or prismoidal in form, soft and pigmented. The pigment is most abundant in the layers of cells which immediately surround the papillary layer of the derma, and gradually becomes less abundant as the superficial layers of the epidermis are approached. The difference in

FIG. 129.



Skin of the Negro, in a Vertical Section; magnified 250 diameters. *a*, *a*, cutaneous papillæ; *b*, undermost and dark-colored layer of prismoidal epidermis cells of the mucous or Malpighian layers; *d*, horny layer.—After SHARPEY.

the color of the skin of different races is due to the pigmentary deposit in those cells. The superficial layers of the epidermis are termed the horny layers; the deeper layers are termed the *rete mucosum*, Malpighian or mucous layers. (Fig. 129.) The cells, which are being constantly desquamated from the horny layers, are replaced by cells from the deeper layers, which undergo the modifications in form from a prismoidal to a rounded and ultimately to a flattened condition as they are pushed up by the new cells, which are continually being reproduced in the *rete mucosum*. The epidermis forms a protective covering for the body, by preserving the soft and more delicate superficial structures from the effects of friction, by diminishing the evolution of heat, and by limiting the amount of watery evaporation.

The *derma* or true skin is composed of two layers, the *papillary layer* and the *corium*.

The *corium* or deep layer is dense, tough, and elastic, and composed of fasciculi of white fibrous tissue, which are interlaced in various directions, and forming spaces between their interlacements which are termed *areolæ*. Intermixed with the white fibrous tissue is a variable amount of yellow elastic fibres. In the deeper portions of the corium the fasciculi are not so closely interwoven, and they become blended with the subcutaneous tissue; the areolæ are larger and contain fat, hair-follicles, and cutaneous glands. Approaching the superficial surface the fasciculi become more closely interwoven, and in some parts so closely as to entirely obliterate the areolæ. The most superficial portion of the corium is of a

FIG. 130.

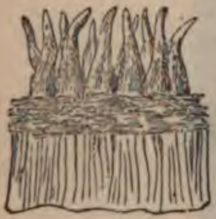


FIG. 131.

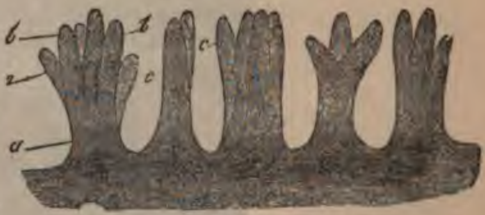
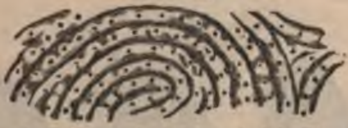


FIG. 130.—Papillæ, as seen with a Microscope, on a portion of the true Skin, from which the Cuticle has been removed.—After BRESCHET.

FIG. 131.—Compound Papillæ from the Palm of the Hand; magnified 60 diameters. *a*, bases of a papilla; *b*, *b*, divisions or branches of the same; *c*, *c*, branches belonging to papillæ, of which the bases are hidden from view.—After KÖLLIKER.

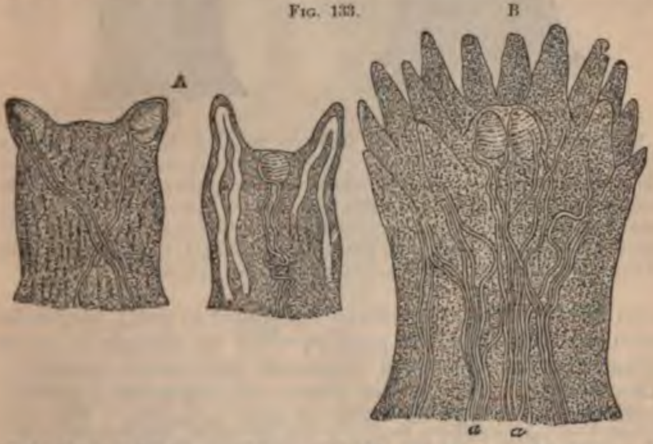
homogeneous nucleated, transparent structure. The *papillary* layer consists of numerous extremely sensitive, vascular, conical projections, which are homogeneous in structure, and appear to be but prolongations of the corium, from which it has no distinct line of separation. The papillæ are of two kinds: the *simple* and *compound*. The simple papillæ (Fig. 130) are single conical eminences, which are scattered irregularly over the general cutaneous surface. The compound papillæ (Fig. 131) are conical elevations, which have a variable number of simple papillæ projecting from their free extremities. The compound papillæ are most abundant upon the palmar surface of the hands and fingers. As seen in this situation they are arranged in the form of parallel curved ridges, each of which is formed of a double row of papillæ, which are placed

FIG. 132.



Portion of Skin from the Palmar Surface of the end of the Thumb, slightly magnified, showing the curved ridges and intermediate furrows. Upon the ridges are seen the orifices of the ducts of the sweat-glands.—After MARSHALL.

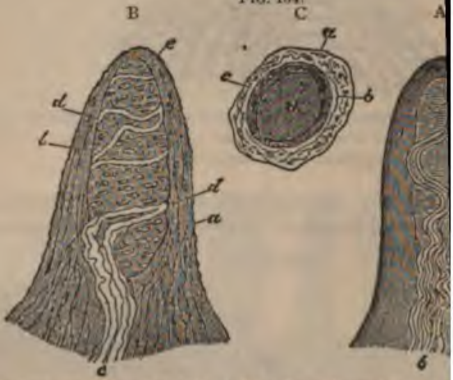
FIG. 133.



End-bulbs in Papillæ (magnified) treated with Acetic Acid. A, from the lips; the white loops in one of them are capillaries. B, from the tongue. Two end-bulbs seen in the midst of the simple papillæ; *a*, *a*, nerves.—After KÖLLIKER.

knowledge on the subject is still unsatisfactory
know that the nerves after passing through
ous cellular tissues form plexuses of minute
more superficial layers of the corium. Som

Fig. 134.



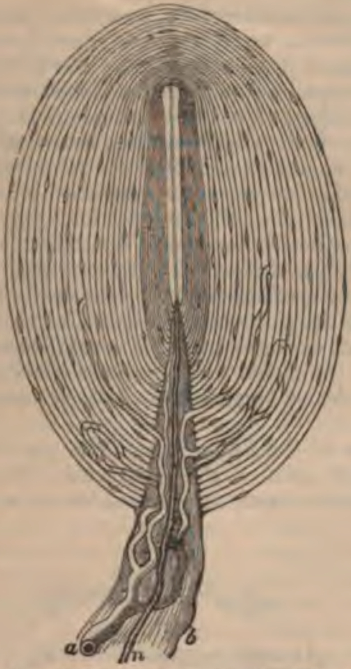
Papillæ from the Skin of the Hand, freed from the cuticle and
corpuscles; magnified 350 diameters. A, Simple papilla with four
tile corpuscle; *b*, nerves. B, Papilla treated with acetic acid; *a*,
cells and fine elastic filaments; *b*, tactile corpuscle with transvers
nerve with neurilemma; *d*, nerve-fibres winding round the corpuscl
from above so as to appear as a cross-section: *a*, cortical layer; *b*, n
of the tactile corpuscle containing nuclei; *d*, core.—After KÖLLIKE

soon lost in the tissues; others are traced to sm
elements situated in the papillæ, which are tho
essential terminal organs connected with tact
These corpuscles are of two kinds: the corpusc

convoluted, or else appears in the centre as a straight axial filament.

The *tactile* or *axile* corpuscles (Fig. 134) are found most thickly distributed where the sense of touch is most acute. They appear as oblong or oval bodies, composed of a granular connective tissue which is almost homogeneous. According to Kölliker, the corpuscles consist of a core of homogeneous or granular connective tissues, which is surrounded by an outer layer or sheath of fibro-elastic tissue, having elongated nuclei, situated transversely. Covering this is a cortex of plasmatic

FIG. 135.



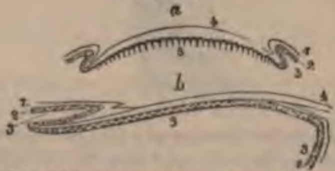
Pacinian Corpuscles from the Mesentery of a Cat; intended to show the general construction of these bodies. The stalk and body, the outer and inner system of capsules with the central cavity are seen. *a*. Arterial twig, ending in capillaries, which form loops in some of the intercapsular spaces, and one penetrates to the central capsule. *b*. The fibrous tissue of the stalk, prolonged from the neurilemma. *n*. Nerve-tube advancing to the central capsule, there losing its white substance, and stretching along the axis to the opposite end, where it is fixed by a tubercular enlargement.

cells and elastic filaments. The nerve filaments, which may be three or four in number, after reaching the base of the corpuscle, form several irregular spiral coils around it as they approach the apex, at which point they each probably terminate in a filamentous extremity.

Another variety of corpuscle has been described by Pacini. These are known as the *Pacinian corpuscles.* (Fig. 135.) They are found principally in the subcutaneous cellular tissue of the palmar surface of the hands and feet, and most numerous in the fingers and toes, and are found connected with the nerves of the joints, mesentery, and other parts. They consist of a corpuscular body, which is joined by a pedicle to the nerve with which it is connected. The body is of an oval form, and consists of superimposed concentric layers of connective tissue, which form a series of capsules around a common centre or *bulb.* Between the capsules, especially the most external, spaces exist, which are filled with a clear fluid. The bulb consists of granular nucleated matter, which surrounds the nerve-tube. The nerve loses its medullary substance and sheath as it penetrates the axis of the bulb, and is continued through the bulb to the opposite end, where the filament ends as a tubercular enlargement. The situation of these bulbs in the subcutaneous tissue, as well as in positions of the body not concerned in the tactile sense, indicates that they are not connected with special sensation, but are only one of the modes of termination of the sensory nerves.

Appendages of the Skin.—The nails are formed of modified epithelium cells of the epidermis. They are convex, flattened, smooth, horny structures, which are placed upon the dorsal surface of the last phalanges of the fingers and toes. The nails consist of a *root*, *body*, and *free edge.* (Fig. 136.) The root is thin, soft, with an irregular margin. It is

FIG. 136.



Transverse Section of the Nail, and its Matrix. *b.* Longitudinal section of the same. Both figures are diagrammatic. 1, the outer cuticular layer; 2, the *rete mucorum*; 3, the cutis; 4, the nail substance; 5, the ridges of the cutis, of which the matrix or end of the nail consists.

covered by a fold of the skin which is extended around the sides of the body. The *body* is that portion which extends from the root to the free edge. It is firmly attached by its under surface to the corium or true skin, which at this point is very vascular and marked by longitudinal rows of papillæ. The portion beneath the body of the nail is termed the *matrix* or bed. At the root of the nail is frequently seen a white semilunar spot, called the *lunula*. The whitish color is due to the lessened vascularity and fewer papillæ, as compared with the rest of the matrix. The *free* portion of the nails is that part which is detached from the matrix and projects from the cutaneous surface.

The nails consist of a superficial hard *horny* layer, and a deeper and softer *Malpighian* or *mucous* layer, which rests upon the matrix and completely fills the interpapillary spaces. The nails grow by a continual addition of new cells on their under-surface and root. The Malpighian layer remains stationary, and the horny layer alone is gradually increased in thickness by a deposition of cells underneath and on the root, and is pushed forward by the growth of the root, and worn away at its free edge by attrition, or else cut off.

The *hairs*, like the nails, are formed of modified epidermis cells. They consist of a *root* or bulb, a *shaft* or stem, and a *point*. (Figs. 137, 138.) The shaft is of a flattened cylindrical shape, and is composed of an external portion or *cortex* and an internal *fibrous* substance. The cortex is formed of a layer of fine imbricated cells, having their free extremities looking towards the *point* of a hair. The cortex incloses the *fibrous* structure which constitutes the bulk of the hair substance, and is composed of elongated longitudinal cells, which contain pigment, and occasionally air-cavities. In the axis of the fibrous portion, extending from the root to near the point of the hair, a deposition of granular matter is found, which is composed of irregularly shaped cells, pigment, and fat. This is called the *medulla* or *pith*. In the medulla air-cells and air-spaces are found. Kölliker supposes that the dark pigment-granules of the medulla are nothing more than the globules of air in the air-cells.

The *root* or bulb of the hair is inclosed in a follicle which is formed by an involution of the epidermis. In the smaller hairs the follicle merely extends into the corium; in the larger hairs it extends through into the deep layers of the subcutaneous tissue. At its deepest part it is expanded into a bulbous enlargement, which receives the expanded portion of the root, called the *knob*. The follicle is lined by a continuation of the epidermis cells, which forms the *root-sheath* of the hair. This sheath consists of two layers, the *inner* of which is closely attached to the imbricated cells of the cortex, and extends to a point below the orifice of the sebaceous ducts. (Fig. 137.) The outer layer is closely attached to the wall of

FIG. 137.

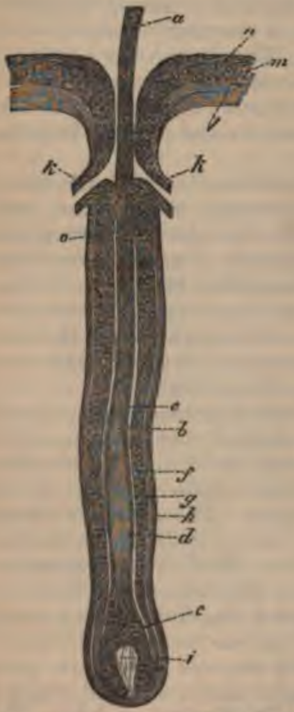


FIG. 138.

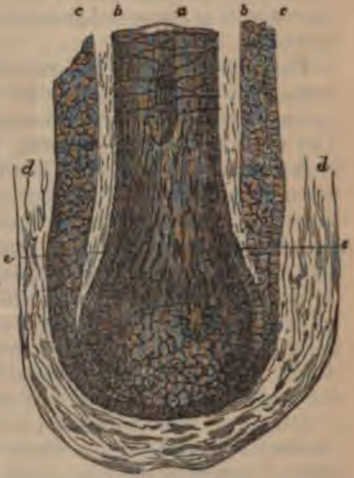
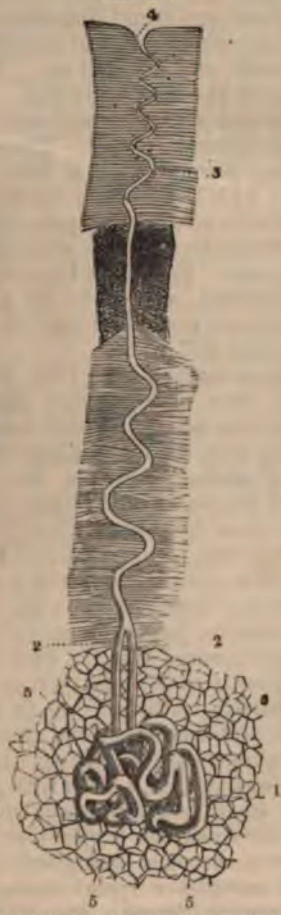


FIG. 137.—Medium-sized Hair in its Follicle; magnified 50 diameters. *a*, stem cut short; *b*, root; *c*, knob; *d*, hair-cuticle; *e*, internal, and *f*, external root-sheath; *g*, *h*, dermic coat of follicle; *i*, papilla; *k*, *k*, ducts of sebaceous glands; *l*, corium; *m*, mucous layer of epidermis; *o*, upper limit of internal root-sheath.—After KÖLLIKER.

FIG. 138.—Magnified View of the Root of a Hair. *a*, stem or shaft of hair cut across; *b*, inner, and *c*, outer layer of the epidermal lining of the hair-follicle, called also the inner and outer root-sheath; *d*, dermal or external coat of the hair-follicle, shown in part; *e*, imbricated scales about to form a cortical layer on the surface of the hair. The adjacent cuticle of the root-sheath is not represented, and the papilla is hidden in the lower part of the knob where that is represented lighter.—After KOHLRAUSCH.

the follicle. The wall of the follicle is formed by a fibro-cellular tissue, which is continuous with the corium. A highly nervous and vascular papilla projects from the corium into the bottom of the follicle. On the surface of the papilla the

FIG. 139.



Sudoriparous Gland from the Palm of the Hand; magnified 40 diameters. 1, 1, contorted tubes, composing the gland, and uniting in two excretory ducts; 2, 2, which unite into one spiral canal that perforates the epidermis at *c*, and opens its surface at 4; the gland is embedded in fat-vesicles, which are seen at 5, 5.

cells are produced which are destined to form the hair. The bulbous portion of the root or *knob* completely envelops the free portion of the papilla, and consists of nucleated cells, which are continuous with the cuticular lining of the follicle.

The *sebaceous glands* are found distributed in most portions of the skin, but most abundantly in the scalp and face, and about the nose, mouth, and external ear. They are absent in the palmar surface of the hands and feet.

They are sacculated glands, which are situated either in the corium or subcutaneous tissue. The walls of the gland consist of a fibrous tissue, which is lined with a basement membrane covered with a layer of granular nucleated epithelium cells. These cells contain an opaque, oily matter, which is formed by a metabolism of the cells and constitutes the secretion of the gland. Each gland has a single duct, which is lined with epithelium, and opens by a pivot-like orifice, either on the cutaneous surface or into the upper portion of the hair-follicle. (Fig. 137.)

The *sudoriparous* or sweat glands (Fig. 139) are found profusely distributed over nearly every portion of the skin. Their total number has been estimated to be about 2,400,000. The orifices of the ducts are irregularly dispersed over the general cutaneous surface, between the papillæ. On the palmar surface of the hand and fingers the orifices are arranged in curved lines in the middle of the double rows of papillæ forming the ridges. (Fig. 132.) These glands are of the tubular variety, and each consists of a tubule, having one extremity terminating in an orifice on the cutaneous surface, and the other extremity forming a convoluted coil, which is located in the subcutaneous tissue. That part of the tubule between the orifice and convoluted portion is called the *duct*. The convoluted portion consists of one or more tubuli, which are formed by the subdivision of the primary tubule. The tubuli end in cæcal extremities. These glands are composed of a fibro-cellular wall, which is lined with granular nucleated epithelium. The duct in its passage from the convoluted portion to the orifice assumes a spiral or undulating course through the corium, becomes straightened in the papillary layer, and again assumes a spiral course, but much more marked, in its passage through the epidermis. They are undantly supplied with bloodvessels and nerves. The dvessels form a capillary plexus around the convoluted on.]

SECRETION BY THE SKIN.

We have traced the food from the alimentary canal into the blood, and, did the state of our knowledge permit, the natural course of our study would be to trace the food from the blood into the tissues, and then to follow the products of the activity of the tissues back into the blood, and so out of the body. This, however, we cannot as yet satisfactorily do; and it will be more convenient to study first the final products of the metabolism of the body, and the manner in which they are eliminated, and afterwards to return to the discussion of the intervening steps.

Our food consists of certain food stuffs, viz., proteids, fats, and carbo-hydrates, of various salts, and of water. In their passage through the blood and tissues of the body the proteids, fats, and carbo-hydrates are converted into urea (or some closely allied body), carbonic acid, and water, the nitrogen of the urea being furnished by the proteids alone. Many of the proteids contain sulphur, and also have phosphorus attached to them in some combination or other, and some of the fats taken as food contain phosphorus; these elements ultimately suffer oxidation into phosphates and sulphates, and leave the body in that form in company with the other salts.

Broadly speaking, then, the waste products of the animal economy are urea, carbonic acid, salts, and water. Of these a large portion of the carbonic acid and a considerable quantity of water leave the body by the lungs in respiration; while all (or nearly all) the urea, the greater portion of the salts, and a large amount of water, with an insignificant quantity of carbonic acid, pass away by the kidneys. The work, therefore, of the remaining excretory tissue, the skin, is confined to the elimination of a comparatively small quantity of salts, a little carbonic acid, and a variable, but on the whole large quantity of water in the form of perspiration. The actual excretion by the bowel, that is to say, that portion of the fæces which is not simply undigested matter, we have seen to be very small.

The Nature and Amount of Perspiration.

The quantity of matter which leaves the human body by way of the skin is very considerable. Thus Sequin[1] estimated that, while 7 grains passed away through the lungs per minute, as much as 11 grains escaped through the skin. The amount varies extremely; Funke[1] calculated, from data gained by inclosing the arm in a caoutchouc bag, that the total amount of perspiration from the whole body in twenty-four hours might range from 2 to 20 kilos; but such a mode of calculation is obviously open to many sources of error.

---

[1] Ann. d. Chim., xc, pp. 52, 403.

Of the whole amount thus discharged, part passes away at once as watery vapor containing volatile matters, while part may remain for a time as a fluid on the skin; the former is frequently spoken of as *insensible*, the latter as *sensible* perspiration. The proportion of the insensible to the sensible perspiration will depend on the rapidity of the secretion in reference to the dryness, temperature, and amount of movement of the surrounding atmosphere. Thus, supposing the rate of secretion to remain constant, the dryer and hotter the air, and the more rapidly the strata of air in contact with the body are renewed, the greater is the amount of sensible perspiration which is by evaporation converted into the insensible condition; and conversely when the air is cool, moist, and stagnant, a large amount of the total perspiration may remain on the skin as sensible sweat. Since, as the name implies, we are ourselves aware of the sensible perspiration only, it may and frequently does happen that we seem to ourselves to be perspiring largely, when in reality it is not so much the total perspiration which is being increased as the relative proportion of the sensible perspiration. The rate of secretion may, however, be so much increased that no amount of dryness, or heat, or movement of the atmosphere, is sufficient to carry out the necessary evaporation, and thus the sensible perspiration may become abundant in a hot, dry air. And practically this is the usual occurrence, since certainly a high temperature conduces, as we shall point out presently, to an increase of the secretion, and it is possible that mere dryness of the air has a similar effect.

The total amount of perspiration is affected not only by the condition of the atmosphere, but also by the nature and quantity of food eaten, by the amount of fluid drunk, and by the amount of exercise taken. It is also influenced by mental conditions, by medicines and poisons, by diseases, and by the relative activity of the other excreting organs, more particularly of the kidney.

The fluid perspiration, or sweat, when collected, is found to be a clear, colorless fluid, with a strong and distinctive odor, varying according to the part of the body from which it is taken. Besides accidental epidermic scales, it contains no structural elements. The reaction of the secretion of the sweat-glands, apart from that of the sebaceous glands, appears to be alkaline. This is well seen when the sweat becomes abundant. An admixture of sebaceous secretion may, when the sweat itself is scanty, give rise to an acid reaction,[1] probably from the sebaceous fats becoming converted into fatty acids. The average amount of solids is about 1.81 per cent.,[2] of which about two-thirds consist of organic substances. The chief normal constituents are: (1.) Sodium chloride, with small quantities of other inorganic salts. (2.) Various acids of the fatty series, such as formic, acetic, butyric, with probably propionic, caproic, and caprylic. The presence of these latter is inferred from the odor; it is probable that many various volatile acids are present in small quantities. Lactic acid, which Berzelius reckoned as a normal constituent, is stated not to be present in health. (3.) Neutral fats and cholesterin; these have been detected even in places, such as the palms of the hand, where sebaceous glands are absent. (4.) Ammonia (urea), and possibly other nitrogenous bodies.

---

[1] Moleschott's Untersuch., iv, p. 36.

Funke[3] detected a very considerable amount of urea in the sweat gained by his method, so much so that he calculated the total amount given off by the skin in 24 hours at about 10 grams. Ranke,[4] on the other hand, who collected some of the sweat given off when the body was exposed in a large space to an abundant atmosphere, found no evidence whatever of urea. This striking contradiction has not yet been explained, though, as will be seen in dealing with nutrition, the satisfactory results which are gained by supposing that under normal conditions all the urea passes out by the kidneys, render it probable that Funke's result is essentially an abnormal one. In various forms of disease the sweat has been found to contain, sometimes in considerable quantities, blood (in bloody sweat), albumin, urea (particularly in cholera), uric acid, calcium, oxalate, sugar, lactic acid, indigo, bile, and other pigments. Iodine and potassium iodide, succinic, tartaric, and benzoic (partly as hippuric) acids have been found in the sweat when taken internally as medicines.

Cutaneous Respiration.

A frog, the lungs of which have been removed, will continue to live for some time; and during that period will con-

---

[1] Cf. Trümpy and Luchsinger, Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 494.

[2] Funke, op. cit.

[3] Op. cit.

[4] Tetanus, p. 247.

passing in and out of the lungs has no access
body is inclosed in a large air-tight bag fitting
the neck, or where a tube in the trachea carri
from the lungs of an animal placed in an air-tig
found that the air in the chamber loses oxygen a
bonic acid. The amount of carbonic acid which i
off by the skin of an average man in 24 hours
cording to Scharling to no more than about 10 g
ing to Aubert[1] to about 4 grams, increasing w
temperature, and being very markedly augment
exercise. Regnault and Reiset state that the a
gen consumed is about equal in volume to that of
acid given off, but Gerlach[2] makes it rather less.
therefore, that the loss which the body suffers
skin consists chiefly of water.

The thickness of the mammalian or human epider
a great obstruction to any diffusion between the blood
ous capillaries and the external air. It has been sug
carbonic acid makes its exit in the form of carbonates
sweat, and that these being decomposed by the acids
sweat, their carbonic acid is set free.

When an animal, such as a rabbit, is covered
impermeable varnish, such as gelatin, so that al
trance of gases or liquids by the skin is prev
shortly ensues. This result cannot be due,
thought, to arrest of cutaneous respiration, se
significant is the gaseous interchange by the skin
with that by the lungs. Nor are the symptom
phyxia, but rather of some kind of poisoning,
very great fall of temperature, which however d

with abatement of the symptoms, if the great loss of heat which is evidently taking place be prevented by covering the body thickly with cotton-wool, or keeping it in a warm atmosphere. The symptoms have not as yet been clearly analyzed, but they seem to be due in part to a pyrexia or fever possibly caused by the retention within or reabsorption into the blood of some of the constituents of the sweat, or by the products of some abnormal metabolism, and in part to a dilation of the cutaneous vessels, which causes an abnormally large loss of heat, even through the varnish.

According to Röhrig[1] the injection of fresh filtered human sweat into the veins of a rabbit causes pyrexia and albuminuria, and thus produces some of the effects of "varnishing."

The Secretion of Perspiration.

The skin contains, besides the ordinary sudoriparous glands, the sebaceous glands, and the special odoriferous glands of the axilla, anus, and other regions. With regard to the various volatile and odoriferous substances peculiar to sweat, and especially with regard to those peculiar to the sweat of particular regions of the skin, there can be no doubt that these are secreted by the epithelium of the appropriate glands. There can be equally no doubt that the fats which come to the surface of the skin from the sebaceous glands arise from a metabolism of the cells of those glands. And we shall probably not go far wrong in regarding the sweat as a whole as supplied by the sweat-glands alone. For though it seems evident that some amount of fluid must pass by simple transudation through the ordinary epidermis of the portions of skin intervening between the mouths of the glands, yet on the whole it is probable that the portion which so passes is a small fraction only of the total quantity secreted by the skin; and Erismann[2] finds that even the simple evaporation of water is much greater from those parts of the skin in which the glands are abundant than from those in which they are scanty.

The Nervous Mechanism of Perspiration.[3]—The secreting

---

[1] Jahrb. f. Baln., i, 1.

[2] Zeitschrift f. Biol., xi, 1.

[3] Luchsinger and Kendall, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 212. Luchsinger, ibid., xiv (1877), p. 369; xv (1877), p. 482; xvi (1878), p. 545; xviii (1878), p. 478, p. 483. Ostroumoff, Moskauer ärztlicher Anzeiger, 1876. Nawrocki, Cbt. f. med. Wiss., 1878, pp. 2, 17, 721. Adamkiewicz, Die Secretion des Schweisses, 1878. Vulpian, Compt. Rend., T. 86 (1878), pp. 1233, 1308, 1438; T. 87 (1878), pp. 311, 350, 471. Coyne, ibid., T. 86 (1878), p. 1276.

amount of perspiration is a matter of d
When the vessels of the skin are contracte
the skin is diminished; when they are di
abundant. And in this way, as we shall la
the temperature of the body is largely regu
surrounding atmosphere is warm, the cuta
dilated, the amount of sweat secreted is in
consequently augmented evaporation tends
body. On the other hand, when the atmos
cutaneous vessels are constricted, perspirati
less heat is lost to the body by evaporation.

The analogy with the other secreting orga
already studied leads us however to infer tha
nerves directly governing the activity of
glands, independent of variations in the
And not only is this view supported by n
facts, such as the profuse perspiration of th
various crises of disease, and of certain men
the cold sweats occurring in phthisis and
all of which the skin is anæmic rather than
we have direct experimental evidence of a ne
of perspiration as complete as the vaso-moto

If in the dog or cat (the latter animal
suitable for these purposes) the peripheral
vided sciatic nerve be stimulated with the
rent, a profuse sweat breaks out in the foot,
be observed in the balls of the toes. N
secretion be observed when the cutaneous v
into a state of constriction by the stimulus, h
when the aorta or crural artery is clampe
stimulation, or indeed when the leg is ampu

limb and of other parts of the body. And in ourselves a copious secretion of sweat may be induced by tetanizing through the skin the nerves of the limbs or the face.

If a cat in which the sciatic nerve has been divided on one side be exposed to a high temperature in a heated chamber, the limb, the nerve of which has been divided, remains dry, while the whole of the rest of the skin sweats freely. This result shows that the sweating which is caused by exposure of the body to high temperatures is brought about not by a local action on the sweat-glands, but by the agency of the central nervous system. A high temperature up to a certain limit increases the irritability of the epithelium of the sweat-glands as it does that of other forms of protoplasm; thus stimulation of the sciatic in the cat produces a much more abundant secretion in a limb exposed to a temperature of 35° or somewhat above, than in one which has been exposed to a distinctly lower temperature, and in a limb which has been placed in ice-cold water hardly any secretion at all can be gained; but apparently mere rise of temperature without nerve-stimulation will not give rise to a secretory activity of the glands. The sweating caused by a dyspnœic condition of blood, and such appears to be the sweat of the death agony, is similarly brought about by the agency of the central nervous system. When an animal with the sciatic nerve divided on one side is made dyspnœic, no sweat appears in the hind limb of that side, though abundance is seen in other parts of the body.

Sweating may be brought about as a reflex act. Thus when the central stump of the divided sciatic is stimulated sweating is induced in the other limbs, and the introduction of pungent substances into the mouth will frequently give rise to a copious perspiration over the side of the face. We are thus led to speak of sweat centres, analogous to the vaso-motor centres, as existing in the central nervous system; and as in the case of vaso-motor centres, a dispute has arisen as to whether there is a dominant sweat centre in the medulla oblongata or whether such centres are more generally distributed over the whole of the spinal cord.[1]

It does not at present appear certain whether the sweating caused by heat is carried out by direct action on the sweat centres, or by the higher temperature affecting the skin, and so producing its effect in a reflex manner; but in the case of dyspnœa at least we may fairly suppose that the action of the

---

[1] [Ott (Journal of Physiology, 1880, p. 45) believes that vaso-dilator sweat centres for the hind limbs are located between the tenth dorsal and first lumbar vertebra.]

The sweat-fibres for the hind foot (in the cat), acco
rocki and Luchsinger,[2] leave the spinal cord by the ro
dorsal and first two lumbar, or last two dorsal and fir
nerves, pass along the *rami communicantes* to the abd
thetic, and thus reach the sciatic nerve. Similarly the s
the fore-foot leave the spinal cord by the roots of the fou
fifth, and sixth) dorsal nerves, pass into the thoraci
thence into the ganglion stellatum, and thus join the br
the course to the foot is finally along the median and u
spectively. According to them, when the abdominal sym
the junction with the second or fourth lumbar root is di
cannot be induced by nervous agency in the hind-foot;
the thoracic sympathetic above the junction with the fou
or removal of the ganglion stellatum similarly preve
ing of the fore-foot. Vulpian,[3] on the other hand,
sweat-fibres pass in a direct course along the roots o
brachial plexus, and sees reasons to believe that th
tracts contain inhibitory fibres, since he has been able
spiration by stimulating these nerves.

Nawrocki[4] found that the reflex excitation of sweat
of the central sciatic failed when the spinal cord was
the medulla. Hence he believed that a general swe
situated in the medulla oblongata. Sweating in th
may, however, be produced after section of the cord
region either by dyspnœa or by heating, and these a
seen, through a nerve centre. Luchsinger,[5] indeed,
long as a portion of the cord in the lower dorsal and
region was left intact, sweating could thus be induce
limbs even when all the nerve-roots had been divided
spring from the intact portion of the cord; but that
tirely ceased when this portion of the cord was destr
cordingly inferred that a sweat centre for the hind lin
this part of the cord.

[Coyne found multipolar nerve-cells existing abo

Absorption by the Skin.

Although under normal circumstances the skin serves only as a channel of loss to the body, there are facts which seem to show that it may, under particular circumstances, be a means of gain. Cases are on record where bodies have been ascertained to have gained in weight by immersion in a bath, or by exposure to a moist atmosphere during a given period, in which no food or drink was taken, or to have gained more than the weight of the food or drink taken. The gain in such cases must have been due to the absorption of water. It is doubtful whether substances in aqueous solution can be absorbed by the skin when the epidermis is intact, the evidence on this point being contradictory; but absorption takes place very readily from abraded surfaces, and even solid particles rubbed into the sound skin may, especially when applied in a fatty vehicle, as *ex. gr.*, in the well-known mercury ointment, find their way into the underlying lymphatics.

In the case of the sound human skin the balance of conflicting evidence is in favor of the view that soluble non-volatile substances are not absorbed, and that volatile substances, such as iodine, which may be detected in the system after a bath containing them, are absorbed, not by the skin but by the mucous membrane of the respiratory organs, the substance making its way to the latter by volatilization from the surface of the bath.

In the case of the skin of the frog an absorption of water and of various soluble substances would certainly appear to take place.[1]

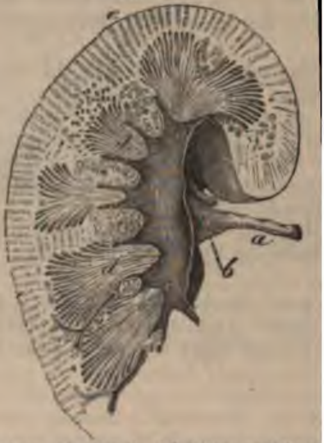
---

[1] Guttman, Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 35 (1865), p. 451; Bd. 41 (1867), p. 105. Stirling, Journ. Anat. and Phys., xi (1877), p. 529; V. Wittich, Mitth., a. d. Königsberger Physiolog. Laborat., 1878, p. 24.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Kid*

The kidneys are tubular glands. They a
fibrous capsule, which is loosely connected t
the organ by delicate processes and blood
hilum or notch, the capsule is prolonged in
the lining of the sinus, and a sheath around t
The *pelvis* of the kidney is formed by a trun

Fig. 140.



Section through the Kidney, showing the Medullary and Corti
beginning of the Ureter.—Henle.

a, ureter; *b*, pelvis of the ureter; *c*, papillæ surrounded by ca
tube; *d*, pyramidal portions; *e*, cortical portion of the kidney.

two distinct portions, which from their positions are termed the *medullary* and *cortical* portions. The medullary substance consists of a number of conical-shaped bodies, which are termed the *pyramids of Malpighi.* The bases and sides of these bodies are enveloped by the cortical substance; the apices project into the *calices* as *papillæ.* The pyramids have a striated appearance, and when more minutely examined are seen to consist of a number of diverging tubules, which are bound together by a fibrous stroma containing bloodvessels.

FIG. 141.

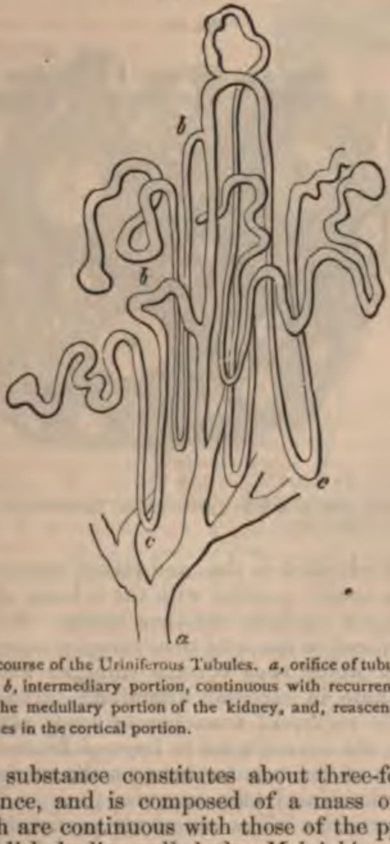
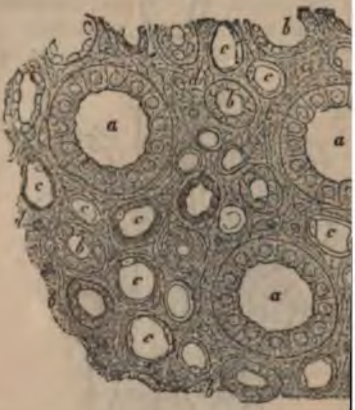


Diagram of the course of the Uriniferous Tubules. *a*, orifice of tubule at apex of Malpighian pyramid; *b*, intermediary portion, continuous with recurrent branches, which form loops, *c*, in the medullary portion of the kidney, and, reascending, terminate in Malpighian capsules in the cortical portion.

The cortical substance constitutes about three-fourths of the gland substance, and is composed of a mass of convoluted tubules which are continuous with those of the pyramids, and of small reddish bodies called the *Malpighian corpuscles* or

tubules, which constitute the pyramids c
these straight tubules (tubules of Bellini)
branches arise. (Fig. 141, *b*.) These bran
enlarged and more or less twisted and tortu

FIG. 142.



Transverse Section of a Renal Papilla (from Kolliker), $\frac{300}{1}$
lary ducts; *b*, smaller tubes of Henle; *c*, bloodvessels disting
thelium; *d*, nuclei of the stroma.

come much diminished in size, and return t
in a direction nearly parallel with the tubu
after pursuing a variable distance retrac
still more reduced in size, and then running
of the cortex where they become enlarge

with glandular epithelium; the capsular, or *smaller* portion of the *loop of Henle*, is about one-fourth the size of the convoluted portion, and is lined with small clear nucleated cells; the *larger* portion of the loop is about double the size of the capsular portion, and is lined with epithelium of a columnar variety, having somewhat of an imbricated arrangement; the *intermediate* or "intercalated" portion, which connects the loop of Henle with the tubules of Bellini, is lined with an epithelium similar to that which lines the convoluted portion near the capsule. The tubules of Bellini as well as the main tubules are lined by epithelium of a columnar variety, with broad bases.

FIG. 143.

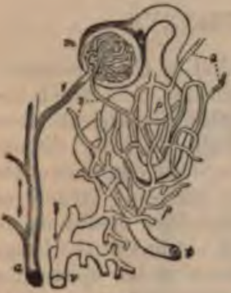


FIG. 144.

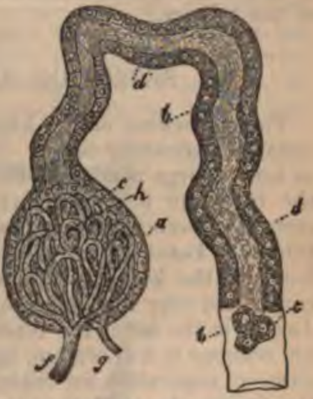


FIG. 143.—Plan of the Renal Circulation in Man and the Mammalia. *a*, terminal branch of the artery, giving the terminal twig 1, to the Malpighian tuft *m*, from which emerges the efferent or portal vessel, 2. Other efferent vessels, 2, are seen entering the plexus of capillaries, surrounding the uriniferous tube, *t*. From the plexus, the emulgent vein, *v*, springs.

FIG. 144.—Semi-diagrammatic Representation of a Malpighian Body in its relations to the Uriniferous Tube (from Kölliker)$\frac{300}{1}$. *a*, capsule of the Malpighian body; *d*, epithelium of the uriniferous tube; *e*, detached epithelium; *f*, afferent vessel; *g*, efferent vessel; *h*, convoluted vessels of the glomerulus.

Each of the *Malpighian corpuscles* is composed of a Malpighian capsule, an dan inclosed vascular tuft. (Figs. 143 and 144.) The tuft is composed of an afferent and efferent vessel and their intermediate plexus of capillaries. The afferent vessel is formed by one of the ramifications of the renal artery, which after piercing the capsule rapidly subdivides into minute capillaries forming an intricate convoluted plexus which

The interior of the capsules is lined by ovoid
ated cells. According to some observers, the t
a layer of cells similar to those lining the co
of the tubules.]

SECRETION BY THE KIDNE

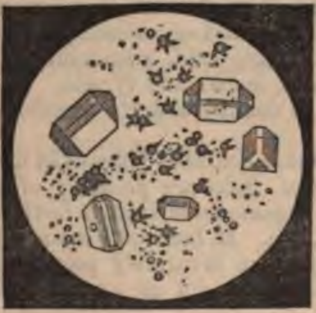
The epithelium of the kidney, like that of
canal, is a secreting tissue. The protoplasmic
at least a large portion of the *tubuli uriniferi*
the blood, in a manner which we shall pr
certain substances, and discharge them into the
tubules. Besides these distinctly active secre
however, the kidney exhibits in its Malpighia
rangement very analogous to that which obtai
Just as in the latter the functions of the alve
are reduced to a minimum, and the entrance a
gases of respiration are mainly carried on by
the former the epithelium covering the glom
but little secreting activity, and the passage of
the interior of the convoluted bloodvessels int
the tubules must be chiefly a matter of si
What substances pass in this way, and what
secreted by the direct action of the epitheliu
ing tubules, we shall shortly consider. The va
passing in either the one or the other way, in
a large amount of water, into the ducts of the g
the secretion called urine. And since none of
so thrown out are of any further use in the ec
at once carried away, urine is generally sp

suspension a little mucus. The normal constituents may be arranged in several classes.

1. **Water.**

2. **Inorganic Salts.**—These for the most part exist in urine in natural solution, the composition of the ash almost exactly corresponding with the results of the direct analysis of the fluid; in this respect urine contrasts forcibly with blood, the ash of which is largely composed of inorganic substances, which previous to the combustion existed in peculiar combination with proteid and other complex bodies. In the ash of urine there is rather more sulphur than corresponds to the sulphuric acid directly determined; this indicates the existence in urine of some sulphur-holding complex body. And there are traces of iron, pointing to some similar iron-holding substance. But otherwise, all the substances found in the ash exist as salts in the natural fluid. The most abundant and important is sodium chloride. There are found in smaller quantities, calcium chloride, potassium and sodium sulphates, sodium, calcium and magnesium phosphates, with traces of silicates. Alkaline carbonates are frequently found, and nitrates in small quantity are also said to be sometimes present.

[Fig. 145.



Urinary sediment of triple phosphates (large prismatic crystals) and urate of ammonia, from urine which had undergone alkaline fermentation.]

The phosphates are derived partly from the phosphates taken as such in food, partly from the phosphorus or phosphates peculiarly associated with the proteids, and partly from the phosphorus of certain complex fats, such as lecithin. When urine becomes alkaline, the calcic and magnesic phosphates are precipitated (Fig. 145), the sodium phosphates way come to the front.

3. **Nitrogenous Crystalline Bodies,** deriva
bolism of the proteids of the body and food.
most come urea and its immediate ally, uric
be considered in detail hereafter; they are th
of the metabolism of proteids. Existing
quantities are a number of bodies more or le
to urea, which may for the most part be rega
pletely oxidized products of metabolism. Su
xanthin, hypoxanthin, and occasionally alla
may be added hippuric acid, ammonium o
times, taurin, cystin, leucin, and tyrosin. T
have to consider in dealing with the metabol

4. **Non-nitrogenous Bodies.**—These exist in
tities, and many of them are probably of
rence. They are organic acids, such as lactic,
oxalic, phenylic, etc. It has been maintai
quantities of sugar are invariably present
urine; this, however, has not as yet been p
doubt.

5. **Pigments.**—These are at present very
derstood. Whether the natural yellow colo
to a single pigment, the *urochrome* of Thudic
than one, and what is the exact nature of
must be left undecided. As was stated ab
urine frequently contains *urobilin;* and the p
of some rheumatic urines is due to the pre
called by Prout *purpurin* and by Heller

found a body, giving proteid reactions; and an aqueous solution of the precipitate is both amylolytic and proteolytic, *i. e.*, appears to contain some of both the salivary (pancreatic) ferment and pepsin.

7. **Gases.**—Those gases which can be extracted from urine by the mercurial pump are chiefly nitrogen and carbonic acid, oxygen occurring in very small quantities or being wholly absent.

The quantities in which these multifarious constituents are present vary within very wide limits, being dependent on the nature of the food taken, and on the circumstances of the body. These points will be considered in the succeeding chapter. What may be called the average composition of human urine is shown in the following table.

Amounts of the Several Urinary Constituents passed in twenty-four hours.—(After Parkes.)

	By an average man of 66 kilos.	Per 1 kilo of body weight.
Water,	1500.000 grams,	23.0000 grams.
Total solids,	72.000	1.1000
Urea,	33.180	.5000
Uric acid,	.555	.0084
Hippuric acid,	.400	.0060
Kreatinin,	.910	.0140
Pigment, and other substances,	10.000	.1510
Sulphuric acid,	2.012	.0305
Phosphoric acid,	3.164	.0480
Chlorine,	7.000 (8.21)	.1260
Ammonia,	.770	
Potassium,	2.500	
Sodium,	11.090	
Calcium,	.260	
Magnesium,	.207	

Acidity of Urine.—The healthy urine of man is acid, the amount of acidity being about equivalent to 2 grams of oxalic acid in twenty-four hours. It is due to the presence of acid sodium phosphate, the absence of free acid being shown by the fact that sodium hyposulphite gives no precipitate. The amount of acidity varies much during the twenty-four hours, being in an inverse ratio to the amount of acid secreted by the stomach; thus it decreases after food is taken, and

being carnivorous, living entirely on their
hence their urine becomes under these circum

The natural acidity increases for some tim
has been discharged, owing to the formatio
apparently by some kind of fermentation.
acid frequently causes a precipitation of u
previous acidity has been insufficient to thr
awhile, however, the acid reaction gives wa
This is caused by a conversion of the urea
carbonate through the agency of a specific
ferment as a general rule does not make its
cept in urine exposed to the air; it is only in
ditions that the fermentation takes place with

Abnormal Constituents of Urine.—The stru
found in the urine under various circumsta
pus, and mucus corpuscles, epithelium from t
kidney, and spermatozoa. Serum-albumin, fil
as "casts"), alkali-albumin, globulin, a pecul
bumin (discovered by Bence-Jones in *mollitie*
terized by being soluble at high temperat
covered by Kühne as a product of digestion),
sugar, leucin, tyrosin, oxalic acid, bile acids, a
may be enumerated as the most important me
abnormally present in urine. Besides these
as the chief channel of elimination for vari
proper constituents of food, which may happe
taken into the system. Thus various minerals,
pigmentary and odoriferous matters may be pa
Many substances thus occasionally taken su
passing through the body; the most importa

part, the epithelium of the secreting tubules, and of what may be called a filtering part, the Malpighian bodies. Corresponding to this double structure we find that of the various urinary constituents enumerated in the preceding section, some, such as sodium chloride, are known to be present in the blood independently of any activity of the kidney; others, such as the urinary pigments, appear to be absent from the blood; while of others, such as urea, it is probable that their occurrence in the blood is in part the result of some previous renal action, or at least it is not certain that this is not the case. The first of these we may fairly suppose, as Bowman[1] long ago suggested, to be in large part at least simply filtered through the renal glomeruli; the others we may regard provisionally as the products of the activity of the renal epithelium. Since the passage of fluids and dissolved substances through membranes is in large part directly dependent on pressure, the extent and rapidity of that part of the whole process of the secretion of urine which is a mere filtration, will be directly affected by the amount of arterial pressure in the renal arteries, while the effect of variations of arterial pressure on that part of the process which is a real active secretion, will be an indirect one only. Since, then, the discharge of urine by the kidneys must be to a much greater extent than is the case with the secretion of saliva or of gastric juice a mere matter of pressure, it will be more convenient to study the relations of urinary secretion to blood-pressure before we enter upon the discussion of the active secretion itself.

The Relation of the Secretion of Urine to Arterial Pressure.

The circumstance to which we have to direct our attention is the extent of pressure present in the small vessels of the renal glomeruli. The more the pressure of the blood in these exceeds the pressure of the fluid in the channels of the uriniferous tubules, the more rapid and extensive will be the filtration from the one into the other.

This local blood-pressure in the small vessels of the glomeruli may be **increased**—

1. By an increase of the general blood-pressure, brought about (*a*) by an increased force, frequency, etc., of the heart's

---

[1] Phil. Trans., 1842.

sating dilation elsewhere.

The same local pressure may simil

1. By a constriction of the renal
creasing the pressure on the cardiac s
ishes the pressure in the capillaries a
plied by the artery. This again mus
by dilation in other vascular areas, or
by a compensating constriction.

2. By a lowering of the *general*
about (*a*) by diminished force, etc., o
by a general dilation of the small a
large, or by a dilation of vascular are
neys.

Bearing these facts in mind, it be
many of the instances in which an in
urine is produced by natural or artifi
tion of the spinal cord below the medu
nution, and, indeed, in most cases, a c
plete arrest of the secretion of urin
cutting off so many vascular areas fr
motor centre (and possibly also by giv
of shock in the spinal cord) leads to a
dilation, in consequence of which ther
the general blood-pressure. Althoug

vaso-motor nerves is augmented, and constriction of the renal arteries as well as of other arteries in the body is brought about. The increase of general blood-pressure thus produced is insufficient to compensate for the increased resistance in the renal arteries; and as a consequence the flow of blood into the glomeruli is largely reduced. Indeed, on inspection the kidneys are seen during the stimulation to become pale and bloodless.

Section of the renal nerves is followed by a most copious secretion, by what has been called hydruria or polyuria, the urine at the same time frequently becoming albuminous. The section of the nerves, by interrupting the vaso-motor tracts, leads to dilation of the renal arteries, and this to increased pressure *in the small vessels of the glomeruli.* If, after section of the renal nerves, the cord be divided below the medulla, the polyuria disappears; for the diminution of general blood-pressure thus produced more than compensates for the special dilation of the renal arteries. Conversely, if after section of the renal nerves the cord be stimulated, the flow of urine is still further increased, since the rise of general blood-pressure due to the general arterial constriction, caused by the stimulation, tends to throw still more blood into the renal arteries, on which, owing to the division of their nerves, the spinal stimulation is powerless.

Section of the splanchnic nerves, along which apparently the vaso-motor tracts from the spinal cord to the kidneys run, produces also an increased flow of urine. But the augmentation in this case is smaller and less certain than in the case of section of the renal nerves themselves, since the splanchnic nerves govern the whole splanchnic area, and hence a large portion of the increased supply of blood is diverted from the kidney to other abdominal organs. Conversely stimulation of the splanchnic nerves arrests the flow of urine by producing constriction of the renal arteries.

We shall have occasion, in the succeeding chapter, to call attention to the fact that puncture of the fourth ventricle, or mechanical irritation of the first thoracic ganglion, gives rise to the appearance of a large quantity of sugar in the urine, and at the same time causes a more copious flow of that fluid; the condition of body thus brought about is known as artificial diabetes. The increased flow of urine in this case cannot be accounted for by supposing that the increased quantity of sugar in the blood in passing out by the kidney leads in some way or other to an increased excretion of water; for the same operation, or a similar injury to certain parts of the cerebellum,[1] may give rise to an excessive secretion of urine without any sugar being present. It is probable, but not as yet clearly proved, that the increase of urine is due to dilation of the renal arteries; and this view is supported by the fact that the increase is temporarily prevented (as is also a similar diabetic increase of flow in carbonic-oxide poisoning) by stimulation of the splanchnic nerves.

Irritation of the central end of the vagus causes an increased flow of urine. This may be explained by supposing that the afferent impulses ascending the vagus inhibit the vaso-motor centre which governs the renal arteries, and so produce dilation of those arteries. Possibly at the same time, as in the case of the rabbit's ear (p. 261), some amount of general constriction is brought about.

The experimental phenomena recorded above are thus seen to receive a fairly satisfactory explanation when they are referred exclusively to variations in blood-pressure. And many of the natural variations in the flow of urine may be interpreted in this way. No fact in the animal economy is oftener or more strikingly brought home to us than the correlation of the skin and the kidneys as far as their secretions are concerned; and this seems to be maintained by means of the vaso-motor nervous mechanism. Thus, when the skin is cold, its blood-vessels are, as we know, constricted. This, by causing an increase of general blood-pressure, accompanied possibly by a dilation of the renal arteries, will augment the flow through the kidneys. Conversely the dilated condition of the arteries of a warm skin, with the consequent diminution of general blood-pressure, accompanied possibly with a corresponding constriction of the renal arteries, will give rise to a diminished renal discharge. The effects of emotions may possibly be explained in a similar way as essentially vaso-motor phenomena.

The increase of urine observable after taking fluids cannot be explained by reference to any direct increase of blood-pressure due to an augmentation of the quantity of blood; for, as we have seen (p. 281), an increase of the quantity of blood does not raise the general blood-pressure. The increased filtration may be due simply to the more diluted condition of the blood, though possibly the introduction of the fluid into the alimentary canal may cause a dilation of the splanchnic or renal areas, either directly or indirectly, in a reflex manner by the help of the vagi. This observation refers of course to inert fluids, such as water: the introduction of various substances in an ordinary meal may affect the flow of urine in other ways to be presently stated.

---

[1] Eckhard, Beiträge, v (1870), 153; vi, 1, 51, 117, 175.

Secretion of the Renal Epithelium.

While thus recognizing the importance of the relations of the flow of urine to blood-pressure, we must not be led into the error of supposing that the work of the kidney is wholly a matter of filtration. The glomerular mechanism, so specially fitted for filtration, is after all a small portion only of the whole kidney, and the epithelium over a large part of the course of the *tubuli uriniferi* bears most distinctly the characters of an active secreting epithelium. These facts would lead us *a priori* to suppose that the flow of urine is in part the result of an active secretion comparable to that of the salivary or other glands which we have already studied. And we have experimental evidences that such is the case.

For a flow of urine may be artificially excited even when the natural flow has been arrested by diminution of blood-pressure. Thus if, when the urine has ceased to flow in consequence of a section of the medulla oblongata, certain substances, such as urea, urates, etc., be injected into the blood, a copious secretion is at once set up. This secretion is unaccompanied by any rise of blood-pressure sufficient to account for the flow on any filtration hypothesis.[1] The most natural way of explaining the phenomena is to suppose that the presence of these substances in the blood excites the renal epithelium to an unwonted activity, causing them to pour into the interior of the tubules a copious secretion, just as the presence of pilocarpin in the blood will cause the salivary cells to pour forth their secretion into the lumen of their ducts. This explanation, of course, supposes that, in the ordinary state of the blood, the epithelium cells are quiescent, or at least do not secrete any appreciable quantity of fluid, otherwise the mere interference of the pressure arrangements due to the section of the medulla oblongata would not arrest the flow. And, indeed, this abnormal activity of the epithelium is in itself no sufficient proof that any large part of the normal flow of urine is due to a normal action of the epithelium. There remains, however, the fact that, in the absence of the usual blood-pressure, a considerable quantity of fluid may, under the influence of suitable stimuli, be secreted into the interior of the tubuli uriniferi, and so give rise to even a copious flow of urine. And this warns us to be cautious in accepting in all cases, even in the instances quoted previously, a vaso-motor explanation of increased or diminished activity of the kidney, simple and straightforward as that explanation may seem. It may be that in some cases what appears to be simply a vasomotor action is after all a direct action of nerves on secreting cells, accompanied by adjuvant but not indispensable vascular changes.

---

[1] Cf. Ustimowitsch, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1870, p. 199.

That it is the epithelium, and not any other portion of the renal apparatus, which gives rise to the flow of urine when urea or urates are injected into the bloodvessels of animals in which the normal secretion has been arrested by section of the medulla, appears probable from the following considerations.

Heidenhain[1] has brought forward distinct experimental evidence that, with regard to one substance at least, the renal epithelium does exercise a distinct secreting activity, independent of and distinct from the relations of blood-pressure. Into the veins of animals in which the urinary flow had been arrested by section of the spinal cord below the medulla, Heidenhain injected the sodium sulphindigotate, or so-called indigo-carmine. By killing the animals at appropriate times and examining the kidneys microscopically and otherwise, he was enabled to ascertain that the pigment so injected passed from the blood into the renal epithelium, and from thence into the channels of the tubules, where it was precipitated in a solid form. There being no stream of fluid through the tubules, owing to the arrest of urinary flow by means of the preliminary operation, the pigment travelled a very little way down the interior of the tubules, and remained very much where it was cast out by the epithelium cells. There were no traces whatever of the pigment having passed by the glomeruli; and the cells which could be seen distinctly to take up and eject it were those lining such portions of the tubules (viz., the so-called secreting tubules, intercalated tubules, and portions of the loops of Henle) as from their microscopic features have been supposed to be the actively secreting portions of the entire tubules. By varying the quantity injected, and the time which was allowed to elapse between the injection and subsequent inspection, Heidenhain was able to trace the material step by step into the cells, out of the cells into the interior of the tubules, and for some little distance along the tubules. The advantage of the absence of a large flow of urine is obvious; had this been present, the pigment would have been rapidly carried off immediately that it issued from the cells into the interior of the tubules. One observation he made of a peculiarly interesting character. After injecting a certain quantity of pigment, and allowing such a time to elapse as he knew from previous experiments would suffice for the passage of the material through the epithelium to be pretty well completed, he injected a second quantity. He found that the excretion of this second quantity was most incomplete and imperfect. It seemed as if the cells were *exhausted by their previous efforts*, just as a muscle which has been severely tetanized will not respond to a renewed stimulation.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, ix (1874), p. 1.

As far as indigo-carmine is concerned then, we are justified in speaking of an active, though not a formative secretion, an excretion rather than a secretion, by means of the renal epithelium, the cells taking up the pigment out of the blood and passing it on into the channel of the tubules.

This activity of the epithelium cells cannot be shown in the same way with natural constituents of urine, with urea or urates, for instance, as with indigo-carmine, for the very reason that these substances give rise, as we have seen, to such a copious flow of urine that the contents of the tubules are swept away, and the evidences of local activity are thus lost. But we have evidence of another kind that the urea which appears in urine, passes from the blood into the renal ducts through the epithelium of the tubuli uriniferi and not through the glomeruli; and if so it can hardly be doubted that the flow of urine which follows the injection of urea into the bloodvessels after section of the medulla, is caused by the efforts of the epithelium to carry off from the blood the excess of urea, though why the passage of urea should thus necessitate the concomitant secretion of fluid while the indigo-carmine is carried through without any such accompanying fluid is at present a matter of obscurity. The evidence that urea passes by the epithelium of the tubules and not by the glomeruli is of the following kind:

In the amphibia, the kidney has a double vascular supply; it receives arterial blood from the renal artery, but there is also poured into it venous blood from another source. The femoral vein divides at the top of the thigh into two branches, one of which runs along the front of the abdomen to meet its fellow in the middle line and form the anterior abdominal vein, while the other passes to the outer border of the kidney and branches in the substance of that organ, forming the so-called renal portal system. Now the glomeruli are supplied exclusively by the branches of the renal artery, the renal vena process of filtration, whose object is to remove as rapidly as possible a quantity of water from the body, and this part of the work of the kidney is directly dependent on blood-pressure. It is also, however, a process of active secretion by the epithelium of the tubuli, and this part of the work of the kidney is, in an indirect manner only, dependent on blood-pressure. Both processes may give rise to a discharge of water from the blood, and both may give rise to the presence of the solid constituents of urine, in solution in that water. In the first process the discharge of water is the primary object, and the solid matters which escape at the same time are of secondary importance; in the second process the excretion of the solid substance is the primary object, and the accompanying water of secondary importance, and indeed sometimes absent. The first process is governed (mainly at least) by the vaso-motor nervous system; the second process is excited, as far as we know at present, by substances in the blood acting directly as chemical stimuli to the epithelium; but future researches may disclose the existence of a secretory nervous mechanism analogous to that of other secretory glands.

Future investigations must determine what constituents of the urine besides urea, urates, etc., are thrown into the urine by the active secretory process, and what simply pass by filtration through the glomeruli. The whole subject of diuretics requires to be studied afresh by the help of Nussbaum's method.

One consideration, of quite secondary importance in the glands which have been previously studied, acquires great prominence when the kidney is being studied. In studying the pancreas and gastric glands, we concluded without much discussion that the zymogen and pepsinogen were formed in the epithelium cells; for no great manufacture of these substances is going on in other parts of the body. The kidney, however, is emphatically an excreting organ; its great function is to get rid of substances produced by the activity of other tissues; its work is not to form, but to eject. There can be no doubt, to put forward a strong instance, that with regard to urea it would be absurd to suppose that the whole series of changes from the proteid condition to the urea stage is carried on by the kidney. But there still remains the question, Are any of the stages carried on in the kidney, and if so, what? Is the secreting activity of the renal epithelium confined, as was suggested in our early remarks on secretion, p. 335, to picking out the already formed urea from the blood?

Or does the secreting cell of the tubule receive from the blood some antecedent of urea, and in the laboratory of its protoplasm convert that antecedent of urea into urea itself? and if so, what is that antecedent which comes to the kidney in the blood of the renal artery?' And so with many of the urinary constituents.

In order to complete our study of renal activity, this question ought to be considered now; but for many reasons it will be more convenient to defer the matter to the succeeding chapter, in which we deal with the metabolic events of the body in general.

SEC. 3. MICTURITION.

The urine, like the bile, is secreted continuously; the flow may rise and fall, but, in health, never absolutely ceases for any length of time. The cessation of renal activity, the so-called suppression of urine, entails speedy death. The minute streams passing continuously, now more rapidly now more slowly, along the collecting and discharging tubules, are gathered into the renal pelvis, whence the fluid is carried along the ureters by the peristaltic contractions of the muscular walls of those channels (see p. 147) into the urinary bladder. When a ureter is divided in an animal, and a canula inserted, the urine may be observed to flow from the canula drop by drop, slowly or rapidly, according to the rate of secretion. In the urinary bladder, the urine is collected, its return into the ureters being prevented by the oblique valvular nature of the orifices of those tubes, and its discharge from thence in considerable quantities is effected from time to time by a somewhat complex muscular mechanism, of the nature and working of which the following is a brief account. The involuntary muscular fibres forming the greater part of the vesical walls are arranged partly in a more or less longitudinal direction forming the so-called *detrusor urinæ*, and partly in a circular manner, the circular fibres being most developed round the neck of the bladder, and forming there the so-called *sphincter vesicæ*. After it has been emptied the bladder is contracted and thrown into folds; as the urine gradually collects, the bladder becomes more and more extended. The escape of the fluid is, however, prevented by the resistance offered by the elastic fibres of the urethra which keeps the urethral channel closed. Some maintain that a tonic contraction of the sphincter vesicæ aids in or indeed is the chief cause of this retention. When the bladder has become full, we feel the need of making water, the sensation being heightened if not caused by the trickling of a few drops of urine from the full bladder into the urethra. We are then conscious of an effort; during this effort the bladder is thrown into a long-continued contraction of an obscurely peristaltic nature, the force of which is more than sufficient to overcome the elastic resistance of the urethra, and the urine issues in a stream, the sphincter vesicæ, if it act as a sphincter, being at the same time relaxed after the fashion of the sphincter ani. In its passage along the urethra, the exit of the urine is forwarded by irregularly rhythmic contractions of the bulbo-cavernosus or ejaculator urinæ muscle, and the whole act is further assisted by pressure on the bladder exerted by means of the abdominal muscles, very much the same as in defecation.

The continuity of the sphincter vesicæ with the rest of the circular fibres of the bladder suggests that it probably is not a sphincter, but that its use lies in its contracting after the rest of the vesical fibres, and thus finishing the evacuation of the bladder. On the other hand, the fact that the neck of the bladder can withstand a pressure of twenty inches of water so long as the bladder is governed by an intact spinal cord, but a pressure of six inches only when the lumbar spinal cord is destroyed or the vesical nerves are severed, affords very strong evidence in favor of the view that the obstruction at the neck of the bladder to the exit of urine depends on some tonic muscular contraction maintained by a reflex or automatic action of the lumbar spinal cord[1].

Micturition, therefore, seems at first sight, and especially when we appeal to our own consciousness, a purely voluntary act. A voluntary effort throws the bladder into contractions, an accompanying voluntary effort throws the ejaculator and abdominal muscles also into contractions, and the resistance of the urethra being thereby overcome the exit of the urine naturally follows. If we adopt the view of a sphincter vesicæ, we have to add to the above simple statement the supposition that the will, while causing the detrusor urinæ to contract, at the same time lessens the tone of the sphincter, probably by inhibiting its centre in the lumbar cord.

There are two facts, however, which prevent the acceptance of so simple a view. In the first place, Goltz[2] has shown that quite normal micturition may take place in a dog in which the lumbar region of the spinal cord has been completely separated by section from the dorsal region. In such a case there can be no exercise of volition, and the whole process appears as a reflex action. When the bladder is full (and otherwise apparently under the circumstances the act fails), any slight stimulus, such as sponging the anus or slight pressure on the abdominal walls, causes a complete act of micturition; the bladder is entirely emptied, and the stream of urine towards the end of the act undergoes rhythmical augmentations due to contractions of the ejaculator urinæ. These facts can only be interpreted on the view that there exists in the lumbar cord (of the dog) a micturition centre capable of being thrown into action by appropriate afferent impulses, the action of the centre being such as to cause a contraction of the walls of the bladder and of the ejaculator urinæ, and possibly at the same time to suspend the tone of sphincter vesicæ. Similar instances of reflex micturition have been observed in cases of paralysis from disease or injury of the spinal cord; and involuntary micturition is common in children, as the result of irritation of the pelvis and genital organs, or of emotions. In the adult, too, emotions, or at least sensory impressions, may in a reflex manner be the cause of micturition. In such cases we may fairly suppose that the centre in the lumbar cord is affected by afferent impulses descending from the brain. And this leads us to the conception that when we make water by a conscious effort of the will, what occurs is not a direct action of the will on the muscular walls of the bladder, but that impulses started by the will descend from the brain after the fashion of afferent impulses, and thus in a reflex manner throw into action the micturition centre in the lumbar spinal cord. Nor is this view negatived by the fact that paralysis of the bladder, or rather inability to make water either voluntarily or in a reflex manner, is a common symptom of spinal disease or injury. Putting aside the cases in which the reflex act is not called forth because the appropriate stimulus has not been applied, the failure in micturition under these circumstances may be explained by supposing that the shock of the spinal injury or some extension of the disease has rendered the lumbar centre unable to act.

---

[1] Cf. Ott, Journ. Phys., ii (1879), p. 59.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), p. 474.

In the second place, in cases of urethral obstruction, where the bladder cannot be emptied when it reaches its accustomed fulness, the increasing distension sets up fruitless but powerful contractions of the vesical walls, contractions which are clearly involuntary in nature, which wane or disappear, and return again and again in a completely rhythmic manner, and which may be so strong and powerful as to cause great suffering. It seems that fibres of the bladder, like all other muscular fibres, have their contractions augmented in proportion as they are subjected to tension (see p. 116). Just as a previously quiescent ventricle of a frog's heart may be excited to a rhythmic beat by distending its cavity with blood, so the quiescent bladder is excited, by the distension of its cavity, to a peristaltic action which in normal cases is never carried beyond a first effort, since with that the bladder is emptied and the stimulus is removed, but in cases of obstruction is enabled clearly to manifest its rhythmic nature.

The so-called incontinence of urine in children is in reality an easily excited and frequently repeated reflex micturition. In cases of spinal disease another form of incontinence is common. The bladder becoming full, but, owing to a failure in the mechanism of voluntary or reflex micturition, being unable to empty itself by a complete contraction, a continual dribbling of urine takes place through the urethra, the fulness of the bladder being sufficient to overcome the elastic resistance, or the tone of the sphincter suffering from the spinal affection and becoming permanently inhibited.

The latter view seems improbable, and there is no satisfactory evidence that intrinsic contractions of the bladder do not occur in these cases.

According to Sokowin,[1] contractions of the bladder may be brought about in cats in a reflex manner by two mechanisms: by one in which the centre lies in the spinal cord at about the region of the fourth lumbar vertebra, and the sacral nerves supply both the afferent and efferent tracts, and another in which the inferior mesenteric ganglion serves as a centre, the efferent and afferent fibres passing along the branches connecting that ganglion with the hypogastric plexus. He finds, in fact, that the inferior mesenteric ganglion will act as a centre for reflex action. When the history of the submaxillary ganglion (p. 338) is borne in mind, such a conclusion will naturally be received with great caution.

---

[1] Hofmann u. Schwalbe, Jahresberichte, iv (1877), Abth., iii, p. 87.

CHAPTER V.

THE METABOLIC PHENOMENA OF THE BODY.

We have followed the food through its changes in the alimentary canal, and seen it enter into the blood, either directly or by the intermediate channel of the chyle, in the form of peptone (or otherwise modified albumin), sugar (lactic acid), and fats, accompanied by various salts. We have further seen that the waste products which leave the body are urea, carbonic acid, and salts. We have now to attempt to connect together the food and the waste products; to trace out as far as we are able the various steps by which the one is transformed into the other, and to inquire into the manner in which the energy set free in this transformation is distributed and made use of.

The master tissues of the body are the muscular and nervous tissues; all the other tissues may be regarded as the servants of these. And we may fairly presume that besides the digestive and excretory tissues which we have already studied, many parts of the body are engaged either in further elaborating the comparatively raw food which enters the blood, in order that it may be assimilated with the least possible labor by the master tissues, or in so modifying the waste products which arise from the activity of the master tissues that they may be removed from the body as speedily as possible. There can be no doubt that manifold intermediate changes of this kind do take place in the body; but our knowledge of the matter is at present very imperfect. In one or two instances only can we localize these metabolic actions and speak of distinct metabolic tissues. In the majority of cases we can only trace out or infer chemical changes without being able to say more than that they do take place somewhere; and in consequence, perhaps somewhat loosely, speak of them as taking place in the blood.

SEC. 1. METABOLIC TISSUES.

The History of Glycogen.

The best-known and most carefully studied example of metabolic activity is the formation of glycogen in the hepatic cells.

Claude Bernard,[1] in studying the history of sugar in the economy, was led to compare the relative quantities of sugar in the portal and hepatic veins, expecting to find that the sugar possibly diminished in the passage of the blood through the liver; he was astonished to discover that, on the contrary, the quantity was vastly increased. He found, and any one can make the observation, that when an animal living under ordinary conditions is killed, the hepatic blood after death contains a considerable amount of sugar (grape-sugar), even when there is little or none in the portal blood; moreover a simple aqueous infusion of the liver is rich in sugar. Not only so, but the sugar continues to be present in the liver when all blood has been washed out of the organ by a stream of water driven through the portal vein, and goes on increasing in amount for some hours after death. Only one interpretation of these facts is possible; so far from the liver destroying or converting the sugar brought to it by the portal vein, it is clearly a source of sugar; the hepatic tissue evidently contains some substance capable of giving rise to the presence of sugar. Bernard further found that when the liver was removed from the body immediately after death, and, after being divided into small pieces, was thrown into boiling water, the infusion or decoction contained very little sugar, and that the small quantity which was present did not increase even when the decoction was allowed to stand for some time. The decoction, however, was peculiarly opalescent, indeed milky in appearance; whereas the decoction of a liver which had been allowed to remain exposed to warmth for some time after death, before being boiled, and which accordingly contained a large amount of sugar, was quite clear. On adding saliva, or other amylolytic ferment, to the opalescent, sugarless, or nearly sugarless, decoction and exposing it to a gentle warmth (35°–40°), the opalescence disappeared; the fluid became clear, and was then found to contain a considerable quantity of sugar. Here again the explanation was obvious. The opalescence of the decoction of boiled liver is due to the

---

[1] Nouv. Fonct. du Foie, 1853.

some special agency. Hence the post-mo
a continually increasing quantity of sugar
the opalescent decoction with alcohol, by
tate with alcohol containing potash, wher
purities clinging to it were destroyed,
adherent fats by ether, Bernard was able t
producing or glycogenic substance in a p
amorphous powder, with a composition of
fore evidently a kind of starch. Its most
from ordinary starch were that it gave a
a blue color with iodine, and that when di
formed a milky fluid. He gave to it the n

Since Bernard's discovery glycogen has
a normal constituent, variable in quantit
both in vertebrate and invertebrate anima
ent in the hepatic cells, and not simply
hepatic blood, is shown by the fact that
liver after all blood has been washed out
has also been found in the placenta, in
puscles, testes, brain, and in other situation
embryo at an early stage, especially be
become functionally active, are particularl

Formation and Uses of Glycogen.—The
present in the liver of an animal at any
dependent on the amount and nature of t
taken.[1] When all food is withheld from
cogen in the liver diminishes, rapidly at fir
afterwards. Even after some days' starvati
is frequently still found; but, in rabbits,
whole may eventually disappear.

of carbohydrates, the liver will in a short time (one or two days) be found to contain a very large quantity of glycogen. Obviously the presence of carbohydrates in food leads to an accumulation of glycogen in the liver; and this is true both of starch and of dextrin and of the various forms of sugar, cane, grape, and milk sugar. The effect may be quite a rapid one, for glycogen has been found in the liver in considerable quantity within a few hours after the introduction of sugar into the alimentary canal of a starving animal.[1]

If an animal, similarly starved, be fed on an exclusively meat diet a certain amount of glycogen is found in the liver. This appears to be especially the case with dogs (probably with other carnivorous animals also); and in his earlier researches Bernard was led to regard the constant presence of glycogen in the livers of dogs fed on meat as an important indication of the conversion within the body of nitrogenous into non-nitrogenous material. But in the first place, the quantity of glycogen thus stored up in the liver as the result of a meat diet is much less than that which follows upon a carbohydrate diet; and in the second place, ordinary meat, especially horse-flesh on which dogs are ordinarily fed, contains in itself a certain amount either of glycogen or some form of sugar. Moreover when animals are fed not on meat, but on purified proteid, such as fibrin, casein, or albumin, the quantity of glycogen in the liver becomes still smaller, though according to most observers remaining greater than during starvation. We may infer therefore that part of the glycogen which appears in the liver after a meat diet is really due to carbohydrate materials present in the meat. Part, however, would appear to be the result of the simple proteid food; but in this respect proteid falls very far short indeed of carbohydrate materials.

With regard to fats, all observers are agreed that these lead to no accumulation of glycogen in the liver; an animal fed on an exclusively fatty diet has no more glycogen in its liver than a starving animal.

Hence of the three great classes of food-stuffs, the carbohydrates stand out prominently as the substances which taken as food lead to an accumulation of glycogen in the liver. Confining our attention for the present to this chief source of glycogen, the question naturally presents itself: What is the exact mode in which the carbohydrates of food thus give rise to an excess of glycogen in the hepatic cells? Is it that they reaching the liver as sugar in the portal blood (we may accept for the present purpose at all events the view that the carbohydrates are converted into sugar and absorbed by the portal vein) are in some direct manner reconverted into the starch-like glycogen and deposited in the hepatic cells?

---

[1] Dock, op. cit.

Or has the hepatic glycogen quite a different origin, being formed in the hepatic cells out of the breaking up of their protoplasm, and being carried thence and consumed in some way or other, as the needs of the economy for carbohydrate material demand, so that the excess which appears in the liver after an amylaceous diet is due to the fact that the carbohydrates taken as food cover the necessary expenditure, and prevent any demand being made on the hepatic store?

Before we attempt, however, to answer these questions, we must turn aside to consider another question: What becomes of the hepatic glycogen during life? Is it reconverted little by little into sugar, which, passing into the blood of the hepatic veins, is oxidized or otherwise made use of, or is it in the hepatic cells converted into some more complex substance, it may be fat or some other body?

The view that glycogen is converted into fat is based chiefly on the fact that, as we shall see later on, the carbohydrates of the food are undoubtedly, in some way or other, a source of the fat of the body, that a large quantity, frequently a very large quantity, of fat is found in the hepatic cells, and that the quantity of fat present seems to be increased by such diets as naturally increase the glycogen in the liver. But we shall have occasion to point out that the direct conversion of carbohydrates into fat is at least disputed; and no one has yet been able even to suggest the way in which glycogen could be converted into fat. In the absence of more direct and exact information, the discussion as to the fate of the hepatic glycogen has been made to turn chiefly on the question, whether there is evidence of the reconversion normally, during life, of the glycogen into sugar, whether the blood of the hepatic vein contains in life more sugar than that of the portal vein. Bernard, both in his earlier and later[1] researches, maintained that the blood of the hepatic vein under normal conditions was richer in sugar than the blood of the portal vein, or, indeed, of any other part of the vascular system; and this he regarded as an indication that the liver is always engaged in discharging a certain quantity of sugar into the hepatic veins. Bernard's views have been accepted by many observers. On the other hand, Pavy was the first to maintain that the blood in the hepatic vein, if care be taken to keep the animal in a perfectly normal condition, contains no more sugar than does the blood of the right auricle or of the portal vein, and, indeed, that the liver itself, if examined before *any* post-mortem changes have had time to develop themselves, is absolutely free from sugar; in this he has been supported by Tscherinoff and others.

---

[1] Leçons sur le Diabète, 1877.

Now the quantitative determination of sugar in blood whichever procedure be adopted is open to many sources of error.[1] And when the quantity of blood which is continually flowing through the liver is taken under consideration, it is obvious that an amount of sugar, which in the specimen of blood taken for examination fell within the limits of errors of observation might, when multiplied by the whole quantity of blood, and by the number of times the blood passed through the liver in a certain time, reach dimensions quite sufficient to account for the conversion into sugar of the whole of the glycogen present in the liver at any given time. Hence we may safely conclude that the comparative analyses of hepatic and portal blood, if they do not of themselves prove that the liver is either continually or at intervals converting some of its glycogen into sugar and discharging this sugar into the general system, are at least not sufficiently trustworthy to disprove the possibility of such a discharge of sugar being one of the normal functions of the liver.

Normal hepatic blood was obtained by Pavy, by means of an ingenious catheterization. He introduced through the jugular vein, into the superior, and so into the inferior, vena cava, a long catheter, constructed in such a manner that he could at pleasure plug up the vena cava below the embouchement of the hepatic veins, and draw blood exclusively from the latter; or *vice versa.*

In the absence of positive evidence we are thrown back upon theoretical considerations; and undoubtedly there are many *a priori* arguments which may be urged in support of the view that the glycogen is deposited in the liver simply as a store of carbohydrate material, being accumulated whenever amylaceous material is abundant in the alimentary canal, and being converted into sugar and so drawn upon by the body at large to meet the general demands for carbohydrate material during the intervals when food is not being taken. And we can accept this view without being able to say definitely what becomes of the sugar thus thrown into

---

[1] Cf. Flügge, Zt. f. Biol., xiii, p. 133.

the blood, in order that the several
upon it to the best advantage, one elemen
tion being a certain percentage of sugar. It
all, or some at least, of the tissues are co
upon the blood for sugar, and that hence
must be kept up to meet this demand; on t
excess of sugar in the blood itself would b
tissues. And, as a matter of fact, we find
sugar in blood is small but constant; it r
same when food is being taken as in the
meals. If sugar be in too large quantities,
jected into the jugular vein, a certain quant
urine, indicating an effort of the system to
cess and bring back the blood to its average
a constant percentage of sugar would obvio
for, or at least largely assisted, by the liver
ure where the sugar might at once and witho
packed away in the form of the less solubl
as during an amylaceous meal, sugar is ra
the blood, and there is a danger of the blood
with far more sugar than is needed for the
it may be incidentally noted that a larger
may be injected into the portal than into
without any reappearing in the urine, app
large portion of it in such a case is retaine
glycogen. When, on the other hand, sug
into the blood from the alimentary canal,
centage in the blood is maintained by a
sugar, and its passage into the hepatic bloo
previously stored up.

Moreover, this view, that the glycogen

A similar argument may be drawn from the relations of glycogen to muscle. So frequently is glycogen found in muscle that it may be regarded as an ordinary though not an invariable constituent of that tissue; indeed, it may almost be considered as a constituent of all contractile tissues. According to Chandelon[1] it is increased in quantity when the nerve of the muscle is divided, and the muscle thus brought into a state of quiescence, On the other hand, it diminishes or even disappears when the muscle has been tetanized or has entered into rigor mortis.[2] But muscles may be fully alive and contractile from which glycogen is wholly absent.[3] From this we may infer, not that glycogen is a necessary chemical factor of muscular metabolism, but that it can furnish materials for that metabolism, and hence is stored up in the muscle so as to be ready at hand for use. The fact observed by Weiss,[4] that in starving hens glycogen is still found in the pectoral muscles after it has disappeared from the liver, suggested that this secondary and special store in the muscle was, from its functional importance, more constant than what may be considered as the general and primary store in the liver; but Luchsinger[5] states that this is a special feature of the fowl's pectoral muscles; from other muscles glycogen may disappear long before the store in the liver has been exhausted.

But if we answer the question, What becomes of the hepatic glycogen, by accepting the view that the hepatic glycogen is simply store glycogen, waiting to be converted into sugar little by little as the needs of the economy demand, and not glycogen on its way to take part, through the agency of the hepatic protoplasm, in the formation of some more complex compound, such as fat, we have prepared the way for an answer to the question with which we started, In what is the exact origin of the hepatic glycogen? For if such be the purpose of glycogen, it is only reasonable to suppose that the glycogen which makes its appearance in the liver after an amylaceous meal arises from a direct conversion of the grape-sugar carried to the liver by the portal vein, the sugar becoming, through some action of the hepatic protoplasm, dehydrated into starch, by a process the reverse of that by which in the alimentary canal starch is hydrated into sugar through the action of the salivary and pancreatic ferments. Vegetable protoplasm can undoubtedly convert both starch into sugar and sugar into starch; and there are no *a priori* arguments or positive facts which would lead us to suppose that the activity of animal protoplasm cannot accomplish the latter as well as the former of these changes. At the same time it must be remembered that this view does not preclude the possibility of glycogen, in the absence of a supply of sugar from the portal blood, as for instance when glycogen is stored up in the liver as the result of purely proteid food, being formed in other ways.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 626.

[2] Nasse, Pflüger's Archiv, ii (1869), p. 97; xiv (1877), p. 484.

[3] Luchsinger, Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 472.

[4] Wiener Sitzungsberichte, Bd. 64 (1871).

[5] Op. cit.

It has been stated[1] that glycerin, introduced into the alimentary canal, gives rise to an increase of glycogen in the liver; and Luchsinger[2] finds that in an animal, the liver of which has been proved to be free from glycogen by the examination of an excised lobule, glycogen appears in the liver within an hour of the glycerin being given; this seems undoubtedly to show that hepatic glycogen may be formed in other ways than by the direct dehydration of sugar. It is difficult to suppose that glycerin can be directly converted into glycogen; and it has been urged that in this case the glycerin, by becoming oxidized, causes a saving in the expenditure of carbohydrate material, and thus indirectly leads to an accumulation of glycogen. But this view is opposed by the fact that lactic acid, to which we should readily turn as being eminently oxidizable, and therefore eminently calculated to save carbohydrate expenditure, does not lead to any similar storing up of glycogen. And Luchsinger[3] states that glycerin, injected in considerable quantities under the skin, and absorbed from the subcutaneous tissue, leads to no increase of glycogen; so that the glycogen which appears in the liver when glycerin is introduced into the alimentary canal would seem to come from some conversion of the glycerin either in the alimentary canal or when it reaches the hepatic cells by the portal blood, difficult as any chemical conception of that conversion may be.

The statements with regard to the glycogenic influence of gelatin are conflicting.[4] The balance of evidence is perhaps in favor of glycogen being stored up in the liver as a result of a diet of pure gelatin. This would indicate a transformation into glycogen of the non-nitrogenous moiety resulting from that splitting up of gelatin of which we shall have to speak later on.

In general, glycogen, having as far as we know in all cases the same characters, appears to be formed in varying quantity when any of the following substances are given as food: starch, dextrin, sugar (cane, grape, fruit, milk), inulin, lichenin, arbutin, glycerin, albumin, fibrin, casein, gelatin. It appears not to be formed by fat, inosit, quercite, mannite, erythrite.

The question may be asked, How is it possible for the glycogen, which at the temperature of the body is so readily converted into sugar by the action of ferments, to remain as glycogen in the presence of the ferment, which, as we know from post-mortem changes, exists in the hepatic tissue? We can only answer that the solution of this problem is of the same kind as that of the problems, why blood does not clot in the living bloodvessels, why the living muscle does not become rigid, and why the living stomach or pancreas does not digest itself. It might be added, bearing in mind the history of the fibrin ferment, that we have no proof that such an amylolytic ferment does exist in the living hepatic cells. It is possible that the ferment which can be extracted after death only makes its appearance as the result of changes which have taken place in the protoplasm of the hepatic cells.

---

[1] Weiss, Wiener Sitzungsberichte, Bd. 67 (1873). Luchsinger, Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), p. 289.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 472.

[3] Ibid., viii (1874), p. 289.

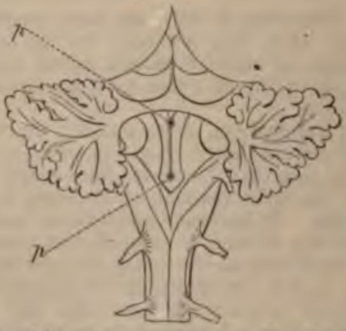
[4] Bernard, MacDonnel, Luchsinger, Mering, op. cit. Wolffberg, Zt. f. Biol., xii, p. 266.

If, as Seegen states (see p. 537), the sugar formed by the liver is true grape-sugar, while that produced by the action of ordinary amylolytic ferments is another though allied kind of sugar, the formation of sugar in the first case must be regarded as a peculiar and complex process.

It is clear that the glycogen is contained in the hepatic cells; but it is by no means certain that it exists there in what may be called a free state. The fact that under the microscope the hepatic cells give with iodine the color reaction of glycogen, is no proof of the glycogen being free. It has been described as sometimes occurring in granules; but this, if ever, is certainly not always its condition. It is worthy of notice that all the means adopted to extract glycogen from a tissue are such as would readily decompose unstable complex compounds. If we advance the view that the glycogen of the hepatic protoplasm does not exist as an independent body, simply mixed with the other protoplasmic constituents, but is loosely connected with other (possibly proteid) substances as part of a very complex compound, few facts would be found opposing, and many supporting, such a view.

Diabetes.—Natural diabetes is a disease characterized by the appearance of a large quantity of sugar in the urine. Into the pathology of the various forms of this disease it is impossible to enter here; but a temporary diabetes, the appearance for a while of a large quantity of sugar in the urine, may be artificially produced in animals in several ways. If the medulla oblongata of a well-fed rabbit be punctured (Fig. 146) in the region which we have previously described (p. 269) as that of the vaso-motor centre (the area marked out by Eckhard as the diabetic area agreeing very closely with that defined by Owsjannikow as the vaso-motor area), though the animal need not necessarily be in any other way obviously affected by the operation, its urine will be found, in an hour or two, or even less, to contain a considerable quantity of sugar, and to be increased in amount. A little later the quantity of sugar will have reached a maximum, after which it declines, and in a day or two, or even less, the urine will again be perfectly normal. The better fed the animal, or, more exactly, the richer in glycogen the liver at the time of the operation, the greater the amount of sugar. If the animal be previously starved so that the liver contains little or no glycogen, the urine will after the operation contain little or no sugar. It is clear that the urinary sugar of this form of artificial diabetes comes from the glycogen of the liver. The puncture of the medulla causes such a change in the liver that the previously stored-up glycogen disappears and the blood becomes loaded with sugar, much if not all of which passes away by the urine. In the absence of any proof to the contrary, we may assume that in this form of artificial diabetes the glycogen previously present in the liver becomes converted into sugar, just as we know that it does become so converted by post-mortem changes. The glycogenic function of the liver is therefore subject to the influence of the nervous system, and in particular to the influence of a region of the cerebro-spinal centre which we already know as the vaso-motor centre, or at least of a part of that region. The path of the influence may be traced along the cervical spinal cord (and not along the

[FIG. 146.



To show the position of the punctures required to produce glucosuria, the lobes of the cerebellum are separated; below are seen the restiform bodies, the divergence of which circumscribes the apex of the calamus scriptorius and the fourth ventricle. The puncture p' produces glycosuria, the puncture p glycosuria with polyuria, and a puncture a little higher up than p, albuminuria.]

vagi, though the roots of these nerves lie so close to the diabetic spot) as far down as (in rabbits) the level of the third or fourth dorsal vertebra,[1] or even a little lower, from the spinal cord to the first thoracic glanglion, and from thence to the liver by some channel or channels at present undetermined. We cannot at present define clearly the nature of that influence. We cannot say whether the temporary diabetes is a simple effect of dilation of the hepatic arteries which accompanies the diabetic puncture or of some direct action of the nerves on the metabolic activity of the hepatic protoplasm.

According to Eckhard[2] the phenomena are those of irritation, and not of the simple withdrawal of any accustomed nervous influence. He states that while mechanical injury of the first thoracic ganglion (see Fig. 76) will produce diabetes, no such effect is produced if the ganglion be carefully removed, or if its connections with the spinal cord or with the remainder of the thoracic chain be completely divided.

Cyon and Aladoff,[3] on the contrary, regard the whole matter as one of simple loss of vascular tone. They state that the diabetic puncture produces dilation of the small branches of the hepatic artery, from injury to the corresponding portion of the general vaso-motor centre, and accordingly find, in opposition to Eckhard, that simple division of the nervous path, removal of the first thoracic ganglion, or division of certain (variable) nerves proceeding from it, produces diabetes equally well as irritation of the ganglion. Eckhard found that simple section of the splanchnic nerves, not only did not produce diabetes but even prevented its occurrence when performed previously to the diabetic puncture. On the hypothesis that the phenomena in question are those of irritation and not of paralysis, this fact would seem to show that the splanchnics serve as the channels by which the impulses set up in the medulla, thoracic ganglion, etc., reach the liver. Cyon and Aladoff, however, regard the absence of diabetes after simple section of the splanchnics as a proof that the vaso-motor fibres concerned in the matter pass to the liver by some other channel than the splanchnics; and they explain the preventive influence of previous section of the splanchnics, by supposing that this operation, by withdrawing a large quantity of blood into the abdominal organs, prevents the effects of the dilation of the comparatively small hepatic artery from manifesting themselves. For, according to them, it is not the total quantity of blood, but the relative proportion of arterial blood reaching the liver, which determines the appearance of the sugar.

Simple section of the spinal cord (in rabbits) sometimes does and sometimes does not produce diabetes, and in all cases the effect appears rapidly and soon disappears. Complete section of the spinal

---

[1] Eckhard, Beiträge, viii (1877), p. 79.

[2] Beiträge, iv (1869), 1; vii, 1.

[3] Bull. Acad. Imp. Sci. St. Petersb., xvi (1871), p. 308.

Artificial diabetes is also a promin
poisoning. This is not due to the arti
is had recourse to in order to keep the
because, though disturbance of the re
ficient to interfere with the hepatic ci
sugar in the urine, artificial respirati
without any sugar making its appear
seen in frogs, in which respiration can
on without any pulmonary respiratory

A very similar diabetes is seen in car
and is one of the results of a sufficient
amyl nitrite.

According to Dock,[3] sugar appears in
mammals, even when they are starving and
glycogen in their livers. If this be so, ur
quite a different causation from puncture dia
found no sugar in the urine of curarized fro
had been removed, and Saikowsky[4] found
arsenic poisoning urari did not produce diab
urari poisoning the sugar does not come fro
muscles, arsenic has a like effect in prevent
glycogen in the latter as in the former.

Eckhard[5] found that morphia diabetes
diabetes, prevented by section of the splan
the spinal cord above the level of the third o
The drug appears, therefore, to act through
centre.

The subcutaneous injection of glycerin
cases, and not always effectually) the appe
the puncture[6] or after morphia poisoning.
not at present clear. The urine at the sam

The injection of

tity of a substance identical apparently with Brücke's achroodextrin.[1]

There can be no doubt that in diabetes, arising from whatever cause, the sugar appears in the urine because the blood contains more sugar than usual. The system can only dispose (either by oxidation, or as seems more probable in other ways) of a certain quantity of sugar in a certain time. Sugar injected into the jugular vein reappears in the urine, whenever the injection becomes so rapid that the percentage of sugar in the blood reaches a certain (low) limit. Sugar in the urine means an excess of sugar in the blood. How in natural diabetes that excess arises, we have at present no facts to show; but it is extremely probable that the sources of the excess may be various, and hence that several distinct varieties of diabetes may exist. In one among many points, the clinical history of diabetes throws light on the possible sources of glycogen. While in many, especially of the less severe cases of diabetes, withdrawal of all amylaceous food is followed by a disappearance of sugar from the urine, in many instances the sugar continues to be discharged even though the diet be perfectly free from carbohydrates; and in many other cases the sugar in the urine is far in excess of that taken as food. In these cases the sugar must have some non-amylaceous source; from this we infer that glycogen also may have a similar origin; and the fact that the urea is increased (and that too in some cases in ratio with the sugar[2]) in diabetes, suggests that the sugar may arise from proteids which have been split up into a nitrogenous (urea) and a non-nitrogenous moiety.

It has been shown by Wickham Legg, and confirmed by Von Wittich, that ligature of the bile-ducts causes a disappearance of glycogen from the liver, and that (four or six days) after the ligature the diabetic puncture produces no diabetes. This cannot be explained by supposing, as Von Wittich does that the glycogen formed previous to the operation is rapidly converted into sugar by a ferment developed in the stagnant bile, for no sugar appears in the urine.[3] We are rather led to infer that the formation of the glycogen is prevented by interference with the nutritive functions of the hepatic cells.

According to Seegen[4] the sugar which is formed naturally in the

---

[1] Boehm and Hoffmann, Archiv Exp. Path., vii (1877), p. 489.

[2] Ringer, Med.-Chir. Trans., xliii.

[3] Külz and E. Frerichs, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 460.

[4] Pflüger's Archiv, xix (1879), p. 106.

and further investigation is still necessa
passed as to its value.

Various suggestions have been made
cal ways in which carbohydrate material
during hepatic metabolism. It has bee
that proteid material might be split
bile acids, or that glycin might be spli
($4C_2H_5NO_2 = 2CH_4N_2O + C_6H_{12}O_6$).
present be considered as suggestions onl

The History of Fat—Ad

Of all the tissues of the body ad
fluctuating in bulk; within a very sh
amount of adipose tissue may disappe
equally short time the quantity prese
eral times multiplied. Histological
when an animal is fattening the minu
normally present in certain connect
seen to increase in number, the prot
same time. As these specks increase
which by similar coalescence form lar
toplasm first ceasing to increase an
original connective-tissue corpuscle is
cell, with a remnant only of protopla
nucleus and forming an imperfect env
contents. When, on the contrary, a
fat seems in some way to escape fro

it could not possibly be supplied with fat from without), is subject to fatty degeneration, in which the fat evidently arises, in large part at least, from the breaking up of proteid compounds.

On the other hand, we have traced the fats taken as food, and found that they pass with comparatively little change from the alimentary canal into the blood, either directly, or through the intermediate passage of the chyle. We might infer from this that an excess of fat thus entering the blood would naturally be simply stored up in the available adipose tissue, without any further change, the connective-tissue corpuscles after the fashion of an amœba eating the fat brought to them, but not digesting it, simply keeping it in store till it was wanted elsewhere.

Which of these views is the true one, or how far are both these operations carried on in the animal body? In the first place, it is evident that in an animal fattened on ordinary fattening food, only a small fraction of the fat stored up in the body can possibly come direct from the fat of the food. Long ago, in opposition to the views of Dumas and his school, who taught that all construction of organic material, that all actual manufacture of protoplasm or even of its organic constituents, was confined to vegetables and unknown in animals, Liebig showed that the butter present in the milk of a cow was much greater than could be accounted for by the scanty fat present in the grass or other fodder she consumed. He also urged, as an argument in the same direction, that the wax produced by bees is out of all proportion to the fat contained in their food, consisting as this does chiefly of sugar. And Lawes and Gilbert[1] have shown by direct analysis that for every 100 parts of fat in the food of a fattening pig, 472 parts were stored up as fat during the fattening period. It is clear that fat is formed in the body out of something which is not fat.

There are two possible sources of this manufactured fat. In treating of digestion (p. 385), we referred to the possibility of digested carbohydrates becoming converted into fats by the butyric acid fermentation. Analogous ferment actions may similarly elaborate other fats. And there can be no doubt that a carbohydrate diet is most efficacious in producing an accumulation of fat in the body. Sugar or starch, in some form or other, is always a large constituent of ordinary fattening foods.

---

[1] Phil. Trans., 1860.

Another source of fat is to be found in the proteids. We have seen that the urea of the urine practically represents the whole of the nitrogen which passes through the body. Now in any given quantity of urea the amount of carbon is far less than that found in the quantity of proteid containing the same amount of nitrogen. Thus the percentage composition of the two being respectively,

	Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen.	Nitrogen.	Sulphur.
Urea, . .	20.00	6.66	26.67	46.67	
Proteid, . .	53	7.30	23.04	15.53	1.13

100 grams of urea contain about as much nitrogen as 300 grams of proteid; but the 300 grams of proteid contain 139 grams (159–20) more carbon than do the 100 grams urea. Hence the 300 grams of proteid in passing through the body and giving rise to 100 grams of urea, would leave behind 139 grams of carbon, in some combination or other; and this surplus of carbon, if the needs of the economy did not demand that it should be immediately converted into carbonic acid and thrown off from the body, might be deposited somewhere in the form of fat. We have already seen, in treating of the action of the pancreatic juice (page 326), that there is evidence of a fatty element being thrown off from the complex proteid compound in the very process of digestion.

It is clear that a construction of fat does occur in the body somewhere. What limits can we place on the degree to which this construction is carried? In reference to this point it is worthy of notice that the composition of fat varies in different animals. The fat of a man differs from the fat of a dog, even if both feed on exactly the same food, fatty or otherwise. Were the fat which is taken as food stored up as adipose tissue directly and without change, recourse being had to other sources of food for the construction of fat only in cases where the fat in the food was deficient, we should expect to find that the constitution of the fat of the body would vary greatly with the food. So far from this being the case, Subbotin,[1] finds that the fat of the dog is, as far as composition is concerned, almost entirely independent of the food, that the normal constituents of fat make their appearance as usual, though some of them may wholly be absent in the food, and that abnormal fats presented as food are not found in the fat which is stored up in the body as a consequence of a large supply of that food.

---

[1] Zt. f. Biol., [illegible] i (1870), p. 73.

Subbotin, after starving a dog till he had reason to think all fat had disappeared from the body, fed it largely on palm-oil (containing palmitin and olein, but no stearin) and the very leanest meat. The composition of the fat which was stored up during this diet is shown in column 2, the normal constitution of the fat of a dog being shown in column 1. Another dog, after a similar removal of the natural fat by starvation, was fed on meat and a soap composed of palmitic and stearic acids. The animal in this case received no olein. Yet the composition of his fat was that given in column 3.

	1.		2.			3.	
	A.	B.	A.	B.	C.	A.	B.
Palmitin,	44.87	39.72	50.80	53.30	55.36	52.80	53.60
Stearin,	19.23	32.48	9.00	13.20	13.24	13.20	13.40
Olein,	35.90	27.80	40.20	33.50	30.80	34.00	33.00

A signifies the subcutaneous, B the mesenteric, and C the supra-renal adipose tissue.

Moreover, when a dog was fed, after a preliminary starvation period, with 1 kgm. of spermaceti, of which he was found to absorb at least 800 grams, nothing more than a trace of the spermaceti was to be found in his fat.

Of course it is quite possible that in such cases as these, though the stearin, or the olein, when absent from the food, was in some way or other constructed anew, yet at the same time those constituents which were present were simply stored up; but it is also open for us to suppose that all the fat taken as food was in some way or other disposed of, and that all the new fat which made its appearance was constructed anew. And the latter view is supported by the historical facts mentioned above (p. 538), as well as by other considerations, which we shall presently have to urge. At the present, however, we may be content with the following conclusions: 1. Fat is formed anew in the animal body. 2. The carbon elements of the newly-formed fat may be supplied either from amylaceous food, or from the carbon surplus of proteid food, or from fats taken as food which are not the natural constituents of the body-fat. 3. The fat stored up appears as fat-granules or drops deposited in the protoplasm of certain cells, and the increase of the fat in the cells is accompanied first by a growth, and subsequently by a decay of the protoplasm; but there is no complete evidence to show whether the fat-granules which appear are simply deposited by the protoplasm in a more or less mechanical manner, without their forming an integral portion of it, the chief stages of the manufacture of the fat having been gone through elsewhere, or whether they arise from a

and proteids (peptone), which are, so
way to become protoplasm ; the organism is
structive labor. And we may imagine that a
and assimilate into itself already constructe
etc., rather than have the preliminary troub
substances out of simpler compounds. But
in every being, every cell and every part of
vidual characters, stamped on it by long here
reason why every bit of protoplasm, especially in
entiated organisms, should be made anew. A
for the construction is always at hand. The f
being directly assimilated without loss of energy
compounds, sets free an energy which remain
struction. Of course in every such decomposit
there will be an irrecoverable loss in the form of
but, as we know, the whole of animal life is
to this continual loss. It is not, therefore, unr
posed to established ideas to suppose that the
as constructive as the vegetable protoplasm, t
the two being that the former, unlike the latte
it is constructive, and therefore requires to be
ready constructed material.

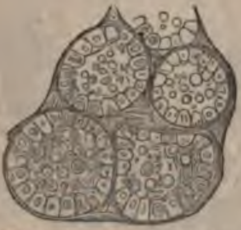
The Mammary Gland.

[**Physiological Anatomy of the Mam**
mammary gland is a compound racemos
others of its type, consists of a number of
smaller divisions or lobules ; these lobules i
up of smaller divisions or *vesicles*, which for
of the terminal ducts.

tiferous or *galactophorous* ducts. These ducts converge as they approach the nipple, at the base of which they become expanded into saccular dilatations, that act as receptacles for milk during the period of lactation. (Fig. 148.) From these receptacles the milk is conveyed to the surface of the nipple through the final ducts. Near the base of the nipple are numbers of sebaceous glands which secrete an unctuous fluid, which acts as a protection to the nipple and parts immediately surrounding during the act of sucking.

The ducts consist of a fibrous coat, which is composed of fibrous, elastic, and unstriated muscular tissue. This coat is lined with a mucous membrane, consisting of a basement membrane with pavement or spheroidal epithelium.

FIG. 147.



Termination of portion of Milk-duct in a cluster of follicles; from a mercurial injection; enlarged four times.

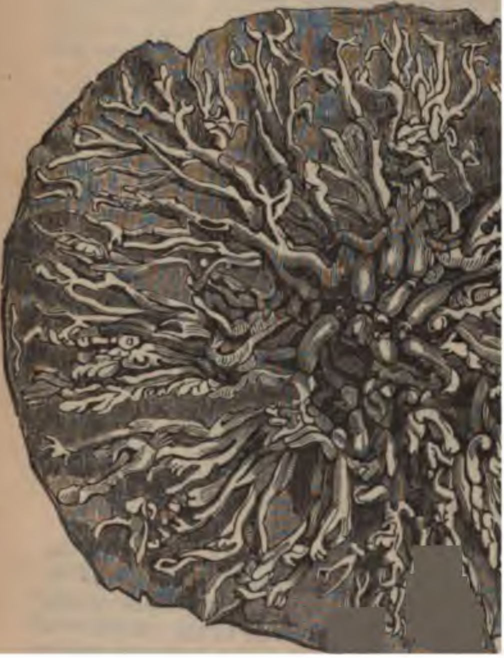
The gland is invested with a fibrous tissue which penetrates the substance of the organ between the lobules. This tissue contains the nerves and vessels, with a very large amount of fat. The capillaries form plexuses around the follicles.]

Since milk is a secretion, and, indeed, an excretion, the mammary gland ought not to be classed as a metabolic tissue, in the limited meaning we are now attaching to those words. Yet the metabolic phenomena giving rise to the secretion of milk are so marked and distinct, and have so many analogies with the purely metabolic events in adipose tissue, that it will be more convenient to consider the matter here, rather than in any other connection.

Human milk has a specific gravity of from 1.028 to 1.034, and when quite fresh possesses a slightly alkaline reaction. It speedily becomes acid, and cow's milk, even when quite fresh, is sometimes slightly acid, the change of reaction taking place during the stagnation of the milk in the mammary ducts.

carbolic acid.

[Fig. 148.



There are present also, to the extent of about 2 per cent. of the total fat, the glycerides of butyric, capronic, caprylic, and myristinic acids.

3. Milk-sugar, the conversion of which into lactic acid gives rise to many of the features of milk.

4. Extractives, including, according to some observers, urea and salts. The last consists chiefly of potassium phosphate, with calcium phosphate, potassium chloride, small quantities of magnesium phosphate, and traces of iron.

The following is the composition of 1000 parts of

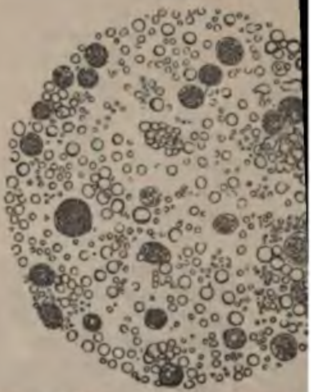
	Human milk.	Cow's milk.
Casein,	39.24	48.28
Albumin,	——	5.76
Fat,	26.66	43.05
Sugar,	43.64	40.37
Salts,	1.38	5.48
Total solids,	110.92	142.94
Water,	889.08	857.06

Milk is an emulsion, the fats existing in the form of globules of various but minute size, each protected by a thin envelope of casein or albumin. It is this condition of the fat which gives to milk its peculiar white color. (Fig. 149.) The *colostrum* or secretion of the mammary gland at the beginning of lactation, differs from milk in being very deficient in casein, and proportionately rich in albumin. It is said that the milk at the end of a long lactation again becomes poor in casein and rich in albumin. Milk on standing turns sour and curdles. This is due to the milk-sugar becoming converted by a fermentative process into lactic acid, which in turn precipitates the casein. The change may be rapidly brought about by means of a ferment contained in the gastric membrane. (See p. 314.)

Milk, like the other secretions which we have studied, is the result of the activity of certain protoplasmic secreting cells forming the epithelium of the mammary gland. As far as the fat of milk is concerned, the processes taking place in the gland are very instructive, since the fat can be *seen* to be gathered in the epithelium-cell, in the same way as in a fat-cell of the adipose tissue, and to be discharged into the channels of the gland, either by a breaking up of the cells, or by a contractile extrusion very similar to that which takes place

fatty food diminishes, the metabolism
have already discussed the manner in w

[FIG. 149.



Microscopic appearance of Human Milk, with an intermix

may give rise to fat. A bitch fed on me
gave off more fat in her milk than she
taken in her food, and that, too, while
weight, so that she could not have sup
gland with fat at the expense of fat previ
body. In the "ripening" of cheese we ha
sion of proteids into fat. We have als

splitting up of albumin by some fermentative process, but no such ferment has yet been isolated. That the milk-sugar also is formed in and by the protoplasm of the cell, is indicated by the fact that the sugar is not dependent on carbohydrate food, and is maintained in abundance in the milk of carnivora when these are fed exclusively on meat, as free as possible from any kind of sugar or glycogen. We thus have evidence in the mammary gland of the formation, by the direct metabolic activity of the secreting cell, of the representatives of the three great classes of food-stuffs, proteids, fats, and carbohydrates, out of the comprehensive substance protoplasm. And what we see taking place in the mammary cell is probably a picture of what is going on in all protoplasmic bodies. If the fat of the milk were not ejected from the mammary cell, the mammary gland would become a mass of adipose tissue, especially if, by a slight change in the metabolism, the production of fat were exalted at the expense of the production of casein or milk-sugar. If, again, by a similar slight change the milk-sugar were accumulated rather than the fat or proteid, we should have a result which, by an easy step, would bring us to glycogenic tissue. And, lastly, if the proteid accumulation were greater than the fatty or the saccharine, these being carried off in some way or other, we should have an image of the nutrition of an ordinary nitrogenous tissue.

That both the secretion and ejection of milk are under the control of the nervous system is shown by common experience, but the exact nervous mechanism has not yet been fully worked out. While erection of the nipple ceases when the spinal nerves which supply the breast are divided, the secretion continues, and is not arrested even when the sympathetic as well as the spinal nerves are cut.[1]

[The fact that many medicines are eliminated, in part, by the milk should always be borne in mind. The influence of certain cathartics and mercurials on the child, when given to the mother, is specially noticeable.]

The Spleen.

[**Physiological Anatomy of the Spleen.**—The spleen is a ductless gland. It is covered with a fibro-elastic coat or capsule, which is reflected inwards at the *hilum* as a sheath for the bloodvessels. From the whole of the inner surface of the capsule numerous prolongations called *trabeculæ* are continued into the substance of the organ, and these uniting with similar

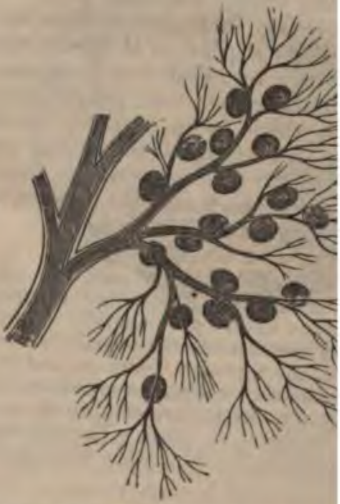
---

[1] Eckhard, Beiträge, i and viii (1877), p. 117. Röhrig, Virchow's Archiv, lxvii (1876), p. 119.

cells, pigment cells, and extractives. R
pulp is an extremely delicate fibrous netw
capillaries.

Along the ramifications of the sple

FIG. 150.

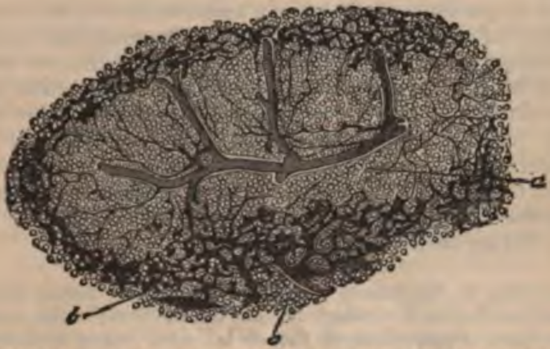


Branch of Splenic Artery, the ramifications of which are
Corpuscles.

cells and granular matter, which are supported in a stroma of fibrillar tissue and capillary loops. The veins arise within the spleen either as continuations of the arterial capillaries, as intercellular passages, or as cæcal pouches. The capacity of the veins is about twice that of the arteries. The nerves are derived from the sympathetic and right pneumogastric.]

The spleen may be wholly removed from an animal without any obvious changes in the economy taking place; the functions of the rest of the body appear to go on unimpaired. We are obliged to assume that some compensating actions take place; but what those actions are we do not know, and we are left at present by these experiments almost completely in the dark as to the functions of the spleen. The most that has been observed is a slight increase in the lymphatic glands, and in the activity of the medulla of bones.

Fig. 151.



Malpighian Corpuscle from the Spleen of the Hedgehog, with its vascular supply. *b*, splenic pulp, with the intermediary blood-passages; *c*, the rootlets of the vein.

Schiff[1] maintains that after extirpation of the spleen, pancreatic juice is no longer able to digest proteids. He believes that the spleen during its turgescence manufactures a substance which, being carried to the pancreas, gives rise by a kind of ferment action of its own to the pancreatic proteolytic ferment. In the language of Heidenhain's results, the presence of the splenic product is necessary for the conversion of the zymogen into the pancreatic proteolytic ferment. Herzen[1] further states that in the exceptional cases where the spleen does not become turgid during digestion, the pancreatic juice is inert towards proteids. The evidence in favor of this action of the spleen is, at present, not cogent, and Mosler[2] denies that extirpation of the spleen has any influence whatever over either gastric or pancreatic digestion.

---

[1] Schweiz. Zt. f. Heilk., i (1862), p. 209. See also Leçons sur la Digestion.

After a meal the spleen increases in size, reaching its maximum about five hours after the taking of food; it remains swollen for some time, and then returns to its normal bulk. In certain diseases, such as the pyrexia attendant on fevers or inflammations, and more especially in ague, a similar temporary enlargement takes place. In prolonged ague a permanent hypertrophy of the spleen, the so-called ague-cake, occurs.

The turgescence of the spleen seems to be due to a relaxation both of the small arteries and of the muscular bands of the trabeculæ; to be, in fact, a vaso-motor dilation accompanied by a local inhibition of the tonic contraction of the other plain muscular fibres entering into the structure of the organ. And the condition of the spleen, like that of other vascular areas, appears to be regulated by the central nervous system, the digestive turgescence being altogether comparable to the flushed condition of the pancreas and the gastric membrane during their phases of activity.

According to Tarchanoff[3] section of the splenic nerves causes a turgescence lasting for some time, but disappearing in the course of a few days. Stimulation of the spinal cord causes a shrinking, which, however, fails to make its appearance if the splanchnic nerves be previously divided. The shrinking or constriction may be brought about in a reflex manner by stimulation of the central stump of the sciatic nerve. The effect, however, is in the case of this nerve slight, whereas if the central stump of the vagus be stimulated, a very marked shrinking is observed. Local stimulation causes local shrinking; if the electrodes of an interrupted current be drawn across a turgid spleen, their course is marked by a white line of constriction lasting for some little time. Contraction of the spleen is also caused by quinine and strychnia.

This functional intermittent turgescence, so clearly related to the ingestion of food, may be connected with that manufacture of white corpuscles and destruction of red corpuscles of the blood of which we spoke in an early chapter (p. 56);

---

[1] Cbt. f. Med. Wiss., 1877, p. 435.
[2] Ibid., 1871, p. 290.
[3] Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), p. 97.

but when the peculiar arrangements of the bloodvessels of the spleen, with their large open venous networks, are borne in mind, it seems in the highest degree probable that metabolic events of great importance (possibly associated in some way with the metamorphosis of the blood-corpuscles) take place in the spleen, though at present we are unable to follow them. And this view is supported by the somewhat peculiar chemical characters of the spleen-pulp, which, in spite of its containing a very large number of blood-corpuscles, differs markedly in its chemical composition from either blood or serum. Thus a special proteid of the nature of alkali-albumin seems to be present, holding iron in some way peculiarly associated with it. The occurrence of this ferruginous proteid, accompanied as it is by several peculiar but at present little understood pigments, rich in carbon, bears out the histological conclusions concerning the disappearance of the red corpuscles. The inorganic salts of the spleen, or at least those of its ash, are remarkable for the large amount of both soda and phosphates, and the scantiness of the potash and chlorides, which they contain, thus differing from blood-corpuscles on the one hand and from blood-serum on the other. But perhaps the most striking feature of the spleen-pulp is its richness in the so-called extractives. Of these the most common and plentiful are succinic, formic, acetic, butyric, and lactic acids (these may arise in part from the decomposition of hæmoglobin), inosit, leucin, xanthin, hypoxanthin, and uric acid. Tyrosin apparently is not present in the perfectly fresh spleen, though leucin is; both are found when decomposition has set in. The constant presence of uric acid is remarkable, especially since it has been found even in the spleen of animals, such as the herbivora, whose urine contains none. No less suggestive is the fact that the increase of uric acid in the urine during ague, and during ordinary pyrexia, seems to run parallel to the turgescence, and therefore presumably to the activity, of the spleen. But these facts are at present suggestive only; they point to an active metabolism associated with digestion taking place in the spleen; exact information as to the nature of the metabolism is, however, wanting. The thyroid and thymus bodies, often in descriptions associated with the spleen, though different in structure, the former absolutely so, resemble the spleen somewhat, as far as their extractives are concerned. The thymus contains leucin, xanthin, and hypoxanthin, with lactic and succinic acids; uric acid seems to be absent. The extractives of the thyroid are scanty, but apparently of the same nature.

Sec. 2. The History of Urea and its All

We may now return to the questions which we answered at p. 519. Where is urea formed? Wha immediate antecedents? What are the various chemi between it and the proteid material of which it is th tory representative?

We have seen, p. 98, that the muscular tissues kreatin, together with smaller quantities of allied nit crystalline bodies, such as xanthin, hypoxanthin, etc. ; cannot go far wrong in supposing that these bodies are way or other the products of muscular metabolism. not know in what quantities they are formed ; but si are such bodies as would readily be carried away f muscle by the blood-stream, and yet are always to b in the muscle, we infer that they are continually being and as continually being converted into some other bo carried away. And we may further say, that since exists in muscle to the extent of .2 or .4 per cent., a muscle forms so large a portion of the whole body, it is possible, if not probable, that a considerable amount tin passes within twenty-four hours into the blood, or to become transformed by other tissues into urea, or i stage nearer urea than itself.

The urine contains a certain amount (.9 gram in tw hours) of kreatin, or kreatinin, into which kreatin is e verted; but neither of these can be considered as the nor in which the kreatin of the muscles passes out of the bo the urinary kreatin is exceedingly variable in quantity, during starvation, and, though not at all increased by ex largely augmented by a flesh-diet;[1] and kreatin injected blood, even in small quantities, reappears unchanged in t Without laying too much stress on the last fact, we are le clude that the kreatin or kreatinin in urine has an ori independent of that which is present in the muscles, being derived directly from the food.

With regard to the substances, such as xanthin, which a muscle in small quantities only, our information is too imp allow us to make any statement whatever about them.

While, then, we have some reason for thinking kreatin found, and presumably formed, in muscle is a less distant antecedent of urea, it must be remembe this is simply a more or less probable view, not an ascertained or clearly proven fact.

---

[1] Voit, Zt. f. Biol., iv, p. 77.

Of the metabolism of the nervous tissues we know little; but kreatin is found in the brain, in some cases in not inconsiderable quantity. Now the bodies of the nerve-cells are undoubtedly composed of protoplasm; the axis-cylinders of the nerve-fibres are also protoplasmic in nature, and it is at least possible that much of the peculiar matrix of the cerebral and cerebellar convolutions, and of the gray matter generally, is also in reality protoplasmic. Hence we may, with a certain amount of reason, suppose that the nervous, like the muscular tissues, are continually, but to a much less extent, supplying an antecedent to urea in the form of kreatin.

Lastly, the spleen contains a considerable quantity of kreatin, as well as of xanthin, etc.; and these are present also in various glandular organs.

We thus have evidence of a continual formation of kreatin, possibly in large quantities, in various parts of the body. On the other hand, urea is certainly not present in muscle (save in certain exceptional cases), and its presence in nervous tissue is extremely doubtful. It is absent from the spleen (of the occurrence of urea in the liver we shall speak presently), the thymus, and thyroid bodies, and from the lymphatic glands, though uric acid, as we have seen, appears to be a normal constituent of the spleen. It seems very tempting to jump at once from these facts to the conclusion that kreatin is the natural antecedent of urea, and that as far as nitrogenous excretion is concerned the labor of the kidney is confined to the simple transformation of kreatin into urea. We have only to suppose that the kreatin passes from these several tissues into the blood, in which it may be found, and while circulating in the blood is seized upon by the renal epithelium and converted into urea. And there are some facts which support this view. But there are others which oppose it; and while it cannot be said to be wholly disproved, it cannot at present be accepted as sufficiently satisfactory to serve as a foundation for other arguments.

In the first place, urea, in spite of its absence from the muscles and other tissues, is always present in the blood, and has also been found in the chyle, in the serous fluids, and in saliva. It might be urged, of course, that this urea is, so to speak, an overflow from the kidney, that owing to its great diffusibility it has passed back from the renal epithelium where it was manufactured into the blood-stream. When, however, we reflect how all diffusion is overborne by the natural physiological currents, as shown indeed by the absence of

Zalesky stated that when the kidneys of an ani
or the renal arteries ligatured, though uræmi
usual, there was no accumulation of urea in
and no excess of carbonic acid or ammonium car
have arisen from a rapid decomposition of ur
ever, a marked accumulation of kreatin or o
other hand, these observers found that when
tured, so that the blood was still brought unde
renal epithelium, and yet the products of the a
lium not allowed to escape, an accumulation of
acid) and not of kreatin was observed. T
putable, would indeed afford strong evidence
kreatin into urea by the agency of the renal epit
however, been much disputed. Thus, Gréh
probably a better method for the estimation o
tion of urea in complex organic fluids is subjec
errors), came to the conclusion that the urea i
tirpation of both kidneys, rose from .026 and
.276 per cent. in 24 and 27 hours respectivel
has come to a similar conclusion. The resul
these latter observers, are the same whether
pated or the ureters tied; in the latter case
tubules soon renders the epithelium cells inc
their functions, and thus an animal, in which
ligatured, is practically in the same condition
kidneys have been removed. Neither Grél
makes any statement about an increase of kre
worth while to notice that though the experim
ers prove that *all* the urea of the urine is cer
the kidney, they do not necessarily oppose the
may be so formed out of kreatin or some simi
is there anything *a priori* to contradict the
origin of urea may be double, part being for
part in another. Lastly, the fact that urea i
causes a rapid secretion of urine, may be used

There is, moreover, another possible source of urea besides the kreatin formed in muscle and elsewhere. We have seen that one result of the action of the pancreatic juice is the formation of considerable quantities of leucin and tyrosin. In dealing with the statistics of nutrition, our attention will be drawn to the fact that the introduction of proteid matter into the alimentary canal is followed by a large and rapid excretion of urea, suggesting the idea that a certain part of the total quantity of the urea normally secreted comes from a direct metabolism of the proteids of the food, without these really forming a part of the tissues of the body. We do not know to what extent normal pancreatic digestion has for its product leucin, and its companion tyrosin; but if, especially when a meal rich in proteids has been taken, a considerable quantity of leucin is formed, we can perceive an easy and direct source of urea, provided that the metabolism of the body is capable of converting leucin into urea. That the body can effect this change is shown by the fact that leucin, when introduced into the alimentary canal in even large quantities, does reappear in the urine as urea; that is, the urine contains no leucin, but its urea is proportionately increased; and the same is probably the case with tyrosin, though this is disputed. Now the leucin formed in the alimentary canal is probably carried by the portal blood straight to the liver; and the liver, unlike other glandular organs, does, even in a perfectly normal state of things, contain urea. We are thus led to the view that among the numerous metabolic events which occur in the hepatic cells, the formation of urea out of leucin or of other antecedents may be ranked as one. Probable, however, as this view may appear, it has not as yet been established as a fact.

Meissner[1] found a large quantity of urea in the liver of mammals, and of urates in the liver of birds. Cyon[2] attempted to demonstrate the formation of urea in the liver by passing a stream of fresh blood through the liver of an animal recently killed, and estimating the percentage of urea in the blood used before and after. He found it to be increased from .08 to 1.76. This, however, is not conclusive; for, as Gscheidlen has urged,[3] the increased quantity in the blood which had been circulated might have been simply urea which had been washed out from the liver, where it had previously been staying. A strong presumption in favor of urea arising through the hepatic metabolism, from leucin as an antecedent, is afforded by the

---

[1] Zt. f. rat. Med. (3), xxxi, 144.

[2] Cbt. f. Med. Wiss., 1870, p. 580.

[3] Cf. also Munk, Pflüger's Archiv, xi (1875), p. 100.

caproic acid; and, with our present chem
conceive of no other way in which leucin ca
than by the complete reduction of the form
dition (the caproic acid residue being either
oxidized into carbonic acid), and by a recons
of the ammonia so formed. We have a so
glycin. This, which is amido-acetic acid, w
alimentary canal, also reappears as urea; he
of urea out of an ammonia phase must take
other facts which point in exactly the same
vation of the normal urea of the urine from
cedent. O. Schultzen[2] finds that when an
sarcosin is given by the mouth, urea disap
being replaced by a compound of sarcosin
company with a compound of sarcosin with
interpretation of this result is that in norma
teids are ultimately broken down to carbam
which, uniting and becoming subsequently d
thus $CO_2N_2H_6$ ammonium carbamate—H_2O
the carbamic acid, having a greater affinity
monia, seizes the former in preference when
sequently gives rise to Schultzen's compound

There are, however, many objections to S
spect to both the nature and the mode of o
described by him.[3] More valid is the arg
drawn from the fact that when ammonium
dog a very large portion reappears as urea, *i.*
in the urea of the urine corresponding to a lar
gen contained in the ammonium chloride.[4]
the urea of the urine may be formed out of
mains the question, Is the urea formed by
with carbonic acid and subsequent dehydra
nitrogen of the urea coming into it

Schultzen, or, lastly, by the union of ammonia with some cyanogen body? Our information will not at present allow us to decide this point, though arguments have been adduced in favor of the latter view.[1]

To sum up our imperfect knowledge concerning the history of urea. We have evidence, not exactly complete, but fairly satisfactory, that a part at least of the urea is simply withdrawn from the blood by the renal epithelium. The activity of the protoplasm of the secreting cells must, therefore, as far as this part of the urea is concerned, be confined to absorbing the urea from the renal blood, and to passing it on into the cavities of the renal tubules. The mechanism by which this is effected we cannot at present fathom, but it seems more comparable to a selection of food than to anything else; the cells appear to treat urea much in the same way as they treat indigo-carmine (p. 516). The antecedents of the urea in the blood are, we may at present suppose, partly the kreatin formed in muscle and elsewhere, partly the leucin and other like bodies formed in the alimentary canal as well as in various tissues. The transformation of these bodies into urea may take place in the liver, and possibly in the spleen, but we have no exact proof of this, nor can we say exactly in what way the transformation is effected. There is no proof of any body existing in the blood capable of effecting this transformation; and we may probably rest assured that in this, as in other metabolic events, the activity exercised in the change comes from some tissue, and cannot be manifested by simple blood-plasma.

Lastly, it is possible that the kidney may, besides the simpler duty of withdrawing ready-formed urea from the blood, be exercised in transforming various nitrogenous crystalline bodies to serve as part of the supply of urea which passes from it.

Uric Acid.—This, like urea, is a normal constituent of urine, and, like urea, has been found in the blood, and in the liver and spleen. We have already (p. 551) referred to its relations with this latter organ. In some animals, such as birds and most reptiles, it takes the place of urea. In various diseases the quantity[2] in the urine is increased; and at times,

---

[1] Cf. Salkowski, op. cit., and see Appendix *sub voce* Urea.

[2] It need hardly be pointed out that an increase in the *quantity* of uric acid in the urine must be distinguished from an increase in the *prominence* of uric acid due to the precipitation of its alkaline salts.

go to show that the appearance of uric
metabolism slightly diverging from tl
And we have no evidence to prove that
gence lies in an insufficient supply of ox
at large; on the contrary, uric acid o
breathing birds, as well as in the more t
been urged[1] that birds, though breathin
yet consume oxygen to such an extent
income they are always in lack of it; b
proof, while the richness of their blo
points in the opposite direction. Nor ca
frog urea again replaces uric acid be ex
to that animal having so large a cutane
pulmonary, respiration. The final caus
are to be sought rather in the fact tl
adapted to a fluid, and uric acid to a mo

Hippuric Acid.—In the urine of herb
the most part absent, being replaced b
the urine of omnivorous man, both acid
gether. The history of the hippuric aci
structive; for though at first sight its p
to indicate that the metabolism of the
points fundamentally different from tha
can be little doubt that the hippuric a
the urine of herbivora comes directly fr
Hippuric acid is a compound of, or r
union or conjugation of, benzoic acid a
benzoic acid is introduced into the st
whether herbivorous or not, it reappear
as hippuric acid. It evidently meets, so

The knowledge of the fact that benzoic acid is thus converted into hippuric acid naturally suggested the idea that the food of herbivora might contain either benzoic acid or some allied body, and that the presence of hippuric acid as a normal constituent of urine might be thus accounted for. And Meissner and Shepard[1] have shown that all the hippuric acid of herbivorous urine is in reality due to the presence in ordinary fodder (hay) of a particular constituent containing a benzoic residue; when this constituent is withdrawn, the hippuric acid disappears from the urine. They regarded this substance as a particular form of cellulose; but this does not seem certain.[2]

As far as we know, glycin does not exist preformed or in a free state in any tissue of the body, but it makes its appearance during the decomposition of proteids and of gelatin, and may be formed by various reactions from those bodies; and the presence in the bile of glycocholic acid, which results from the union of conjugation of glycin and cholalic acid (see p. 321), shows that, in the liver at all events, compounds of glycin may be formed. Kühne and Hallwachs[3] observed that benzoic acid when injected into the portal vein sufficiently slowly issued by the urine as hippuric acid, but when injected into the jugular vein, especially with any rapidity, passed out in the urine as unchanged benzoic acid; they also found that benzoic acid introduced into the stomach, passed out as benzoic acid when the liver had been excised. Hence they concluded that the transformation of benzoic into hippuric acid took place in the liver, the former acid finding in that organ the glycin necessary for the transformation. Meissner and Shepard,[4] however, maintained that the transformation of benzoic into hippuric acid took place not so much in the liver as in the kidney; and Bunge and Schmiedeberg[5] have brought forward experimental evidence to the same effect.

Of the meaning of the appearance in the tissues of such bodies as xanthin, etc., and of the exact nature of the metabolism which they undergo, we know nothing. We cannot say whether they are simply the accidental by-products of nitrogenous metabolism, the result of imperfect chemical machinery; or whether they, though small in quantity, serve some special ends in the economy.

---

[1] Die Hippursäure, Hannover, 1866.

[2] Cf. Weiske, Zt. f. Biol., xii (1876), p. 241.

[3] Virchow's Archiv, xii (1857), p. 386.

[4] Op. cit.

[5] Archiv f. Exp. Pathol., xi (1876), p. 233. Cf. also Kochs, Pflüger's Archiv, xx (1879), p. 64.

is, however, open to us, the statistical m
certain the total income and the total ex
during a given period, and by comparing
to draw conclusions concerning the chan
taken place in the body while the income
into the outcome. Many researches hav
carried out by this method; but valuabl
which have been thereby gained, they m
caution, since in this method of inquiry
data may, in the process of calculation an
most wrong conclusions. The great use
to suggest ideas, but the views to which th
be verified in other ways before they can

Composition of the Animal Body.—The
quire is a knowledge of the composition
as the relative proportion of the various ti
In the human body, according to E. Bischo
are found in the following proportions by

	Adult man (aged 33).
Skeleton, ...	15.9 per cent.
Muscles, ...	41.8 "
Thoracic viscera, .	1.7 "
Abdominal viscera, .	7.2 "
Fat, ...	18.2 "
Skin, ...	6.9 "
Brain, ...	1.9 "

An analysis of a cat gave Bidder and S
ing:

Muscles and tendons, . .
Bones

One point of importance to be noticed in these analyses is that the skeletal muscles form nearly half the body; and we have already seen (p. 59) that about a quarter of the total blood in the body is contained in them. We infer from this that a large part of the metabolism of the body is carried on in the muscles. Next to the muscles we must place the liver, for though far less in bulk than them, it is subject to a very active metabolism, as shown by the fact that it alone holds about a quarter of the whole blood.

The Starving Body.—Before attempting to study the influence of food, it will be useful to ascertain what changes occur in a body when all food is withheld. Voit[1] found that a cat lost in a hunger-period of 13 days 734 grams of solid material, of which 248.8 were fat and 118.2 muscle, the remainder being derived from the other tissues. The percentage of dry solid matter lost by the more important tissues during the period was as follows:

Adipose tissue, ...	97.0
Spleen, ...	63.1
Liver, ...	56.6
Muscles, ...	30.2
Blood, ...	17.6
Brain and spinal cord, . . .	0.0

Thus the loss during starvation fell most heavily on the fat, indeed nearly the whole of this disappeared. Next to the fat, the glandular organs, the tissues which we have seen to be eminently metabolic, suffered most. Then come the muscles, that is to say, the skeletal muscles, for the loss in the heart was very trifling; obviously this organ, on account of its importance in carrying on the work of the economy, was spared as much as possible; it was in fact fed on the rest of the body. The same remark applies to the brain and spinal cord; in order that life might be prolonged as much as possible, these important organs were nourished by material drawn from less noble organs and tissues. The blood suffered proportionally to the general body-waste, becoming gradually less in bulk but retaining the same specific gravity; of the total dry proteid constituents of the body 17.3 per cent. was lost, which agrees very closely with the 17.6 per cent. lost by the blood. It is worthy of remark that the tissues in general became more watery than in health.

---

[1] Zt. f. Biol., ii (1866), 307.

material.

During this starvation-period, the urine co
form of urea (for, as we shall see, the other ni
stituents of urine may for the most part be
27.7 grams of nitrogen. Now the amount of
was lost during the period contained about 15
Thus, more than half the nitrogen of the outc
starvation-period must have come ultimately f
bolism of muscular tissue. This is an imp
which we shall be able to make use hereafter
Schmidt[1] came to the conclusion, from their ob
starving cat, that the quantity of urea excret
all but the earlier days of the inanition-perio
ratio to the body-weight. In the first two or
the period, the daily quantity of the urea was
than this. They were thus led to distinguish
urea: a quantity arising from the functional
whole body, and therefore bearing a fixed rati
weight, and continuing until near the close
quantity arising from the amount of surplus
proteid material which happened to be stored
at the commencement of the period, and whic
got rid of. The latter they regarded as no
tinctly into the composition of the tissues, but
floating capital, upon which each or any of th
draw. They spoke of its direct metabolism
sumption. Bischoff and Voit,[2] however, by mea
tended observations, concluded that though

period. This question of a luxus consumption is one to which we shall frequently have to refer.

The Normal Diet.—What is the proper diet for a given animal under given circumstances, can only be determined when the laws of nutrition are known. Meanwhile it is necessary to gain an approximate idea of what may be considered as the normal diet for a body such as that of man under ordinary circumstances. This may be settled either by taking a very large average, or by determining exactly the conditions of a particular case. In the table below is given both the average result obtained by Moleschott[1] from a large number of public diets, and the diet on which Ranke[2] found himself in good health, neither losing nor gaining weight.

	Moleschott.	Ranke (weight 74 kilos).
Proteids, ...	30	100
Fat, ...	84	100
Amyloids, ...	404	240
Salts, ...	30	25
Water, ...	2800	2600

Of these two diets, which agree in many respects, that of Ranke is probably the better one, since in public diets, from which Moleschott's table is drawn, the cheaper carbohydrates are used to the exclusion of the dearer fats.

Comparison of Income and Outcome.

Method.—We have now to inquire how the elements of such a diet are distributed in the excreta, in order that, from the manner of the distribution, we may infer the nature of the intermediate stages which take place within the body. By comparing the ingesta with the excreta, we shall learn what elements have been retained in the body, and what elements appear in the excreta which were not present in the food; from these we may infer the changes which the body has undergone through the influence of the food.

In the first place, the real income must be distinguished from the apparent one by the subtraction of the fæces. We have seen that by far the greater part of the fæces is undigested matter, *i. e.*, food which, though placed in the alimen-

---

[1] Die Nahrungsmittel, p. 216.

[2] Tetanus, p. 249; Grundzüge, p. 158.

In comparing the income and outcome o
difficulty is often found in determining wheth
the early days of the period belong to the in
are the remains of food taken before. The
frequently lightened when the diet of the expe
from the foregoing diet. Thus, in the dog,
diet may easily be distinguished from those of

The income, thus corrected, will consis
gen, carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, sulphur,
matters, and water, contained in the pr
hydrates, salts, and water of the food,
oxygen absorbed by the lungs, skin, and
The outcome may be regarded as consistin
ratory products of the lungs, skin, and
consisting chiefly of carbonic acid and
quantities of hydrogen and carburetted hy
latter coming exclusively from the alimen
perspiration, consisting chiefly of water
dubious excretion (see p. 495) of urea by
neglected, and the other organic constituen
to very little; and (3) of the urine, which
tain all the nitrogen really excreted by th
large quantity of saline matters, and of wate
accuracy is required the total nitrogen of
be determined; it is maintained, however,
serious importance arise when the urea al
by Liebig's method, is taken as the mea
quantity of nitrogen in the urine.

It has been, and, indeed, still is debated pigeon.[1] That indefatigable observer fed for a considerable time a pigeon on a known diet (peas), the nitrogen of samples of which was carefully determined, and during the whole period collected and determined the nitrogen of the fæces and urine. At the end of the period, the nitrogen of the latter was found to correspond almost exactly to the nitrogen of the food, allowance being made for a retention of a small quantity of nitrogen in the body to supply a slight gain in weight which was assumed to be "flesh." Quite recently Seegen and Nowak[2] have revived the older views of the French physiologists, since they find an actual increase of nitrogen (4 to 9 m. gram per hour per kilo of body-weight of animal) in the air of a confined chamber in which an animal has been kept for several hours, the air being continually supplied with oxygen, and the carbonic acid and other products removed. They urge against Voit's experiment that peas and other articles of food vary so much in their nitrogen that, in calculating the whole nitrogen of the ingesta during a long time from the determined nitrogen of samples, errors are introduced of such a magnitude as to render the data almost valueless.

Of these elements of the income and outcome, the nitrogen, the carbon, and the free oxygen of respiration are by far the most important. Since water is of use to the body for merely mechanical purposes, and not solely as food in the strict sense of the word, the hydrogen element becomes a dubious one; the sulphur of the proteids, and the phosphorus of the fats, are insignificant in amount; while the saline matters stand on a wholly different footing from the other parts of food, inasmuch as they are not sources of energy, and pass through the body with comparatively little change. The body-weight must, of course, be carefully ascertained at the beginning and at the end of the period, correction being made where possible for the fæces.

It will be seen that the labor of such inquiries is considerable. The urine, which must be carefully kept separate from the fæces, requires daily measurement and analysis. Any loss by the skin, either in the form of sweat, or, in the case of woolly animals, of hair, must be estimated or accounted for. The food of the period must be as far as possible uniform in character, in order that the analyses of specimens may serve faithfully for calculations involving the whole quantity of food taken; and this is especially the case when the diet is a meat one, since portions of meat differ so much from each other. But the greatest difficulty of all lies in the estimation of the carbonic acid produced and the oxygen consumed. In

---

[1] Ann. Chem. Pharm. Suppl., ii, 1863.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xix (1879), p. 34.

ured also; but this seems to be more
mination of the carbonic acid.

Pettenkofer and Voit[1] were the first to
of this means of inquiry. Their apparatu
large air-tight chamber, capable of holding
means of a steam-engine a current of pure
ometer, is drawn through the chamber.
outgoing air are from time to time withd
from the data afforded by these analyses
acid (and other gases) and water given off
chamber during a given time is determined.
so well that Pettenkofer and Voit were able
the carbonic acid produced by the burning o
chamber, the error not amounting to more
recovery of the water was less satisfactory,
very considerable.

If the total amount of carbonic acid
by the lungs and skin be known, as w
urine and fæces, then the quantity of
mined by a simple calculation. For ev
between the terminal weight plus all the
weight plus all the ingesta can be nothin
of the oxygen absorbed during the peri

Let us imagine, then, an experiment
been completely carried out, that the an
minal weights have been accurately det
tion of the food satisfactorily known t
proteid, fat, carbohydrates, salts, and wa
much nitrogen and carbon, the weight
nitrogen they contain ascertained,

material which has been laid on, or simply water which has been retained, or some of one and of the other? Let us further suppose that the nitrogen of the urine passed during the period is less, say by x grams, than the nitrogen in the food taken, of course after deduction of the nitrogen in the fæces. This means that x grams of nitrogen have been retained in the body; and we may with reason infer that they have been retained in the form of proteid material. We may even go farther and say that they are retained in the form of flesh, *i. e.*, of muscle. In this inference we are going somewhat beyond our tether, for the nitrogen might be stored up as hepatic, or splenic, or any other form of protoplasm. Indeed it might be for the while retained in the form of some nitrogenous crystalline body; but this last event is unlikely; and if we use the word "flesh" to mean protoplasm of any kind, contractile or metabolic, or of any other kind, we may, without fear of any great error, reckon the deficiency of x grams nitrogen as indicating the storing up of a grams of flesh. There still remain $w - a$ grams of increase to be accounted for. Let us suppose that the total carbon of the egesta has been found to be y grams less than that of the ingesta; in other words, that y grams of carbon have been stored up. Some carbon has been stored up in the flesh with the nitrogen just considered; this we must deduct from y, and we shall then have y' grams of carbon to account for. Now there are only two principal forms in which carbon can be stored up in the body: as glycogen or as fat. The former is even in most favorable cases inconsiderable, and we therefore cannot err greatly if we consider the retention of y' grams carbon as indicating the laying on of b grams fat. If $a + b$ are found equal to w, then the whole change in the economy is known; if $w - (a + b)$ leaves a residue c, we infer that in addition to the laying on of flesh and fat some water has been retained in the system. If $x - (a + b)$ gives a negative quantity, then water must have been given off at the same time that flesh and fat were laid on. In a similar way the nature of a loss of weight can be ascertained, whether of flesh, or fat, or of water, and to what extent of each. The careful comparison, the debtor and creditor account of income and outcome, enables us, with the cautions rendered necessary by the assumptions just now mentioned, to infer the nature and extent of the bodily changes. The results thus gained ought of course, if an account is kept of the water, to agree with the amount of oxygen consumed, and also to tally with the conclusions arrived at concerning the retention or the reverse of water.

Nitrogenous Metabolism.—When a
free as possible from fat, is given to
viously been deprived of food for some
therefore, is greatly deficient in flesh,
that the great mass of food would be a
only a small quantity be immediately wor
quantity of urea, occasioned by the in
on the economy by the very presence of
ever, is not the case; the larger portion
once, and only a comparatively small
If the diet be continued, and we are
given to be ample ones, the proportion
is given off in the form of urea goes
last a condition is established in whic
egesta exactly equals that of the ingesta.
is spoken of as nitrogenous equilibrium
with an exclusively meat diet only wh
food are given, and is not easily mainta
time. The exact quantity of meat req
genous equilibrium varies with the pre
dog; it is frequently seen when 1500 or
are given daily. Thus the most striki
nitrogenous diet is largely to increase
bolism of the body.

This result has been explained by su
meat diet the consumption of oxygen is
other words, that the oxidizing activity
augmented by a meat diet. This in tur
to the fact that proteid food largely inc

mean that a body-equilibrium is established, that a body-weight neither increases nor diminishes. On the contrary, when the meal necessary to balance the nitrogen is a large one, the body may gain in weight, and the increase is proved, both by calculation from the income and outcome, and by actual examination of the body, to be due to the laying on of fat. The amount so stored up may be far greater than can possibly be accounted for by any fat still adhering to the meat given as food. We are therefore driven to the conclusion that the proteid food is split into a urea moiety and a fatty moiety, that the urea moiety is at once discharged, and that such of the fat as is not made use of directly by the body is stored up as adipose tissue. And this disruption of the proteid food at the same time explains why the meat diet so largely and immediately increases the urea of the egesta. We have already pointed out that possibly this disruptive metabolism of proteids is largely carried on in the alimentary canal itself by the aid of the pancreatic juice; whether or to what extent other organs share in the action we do not at present know.

Voit and others with him speak in the most decided way of the proteids of the body as existing in two forms: organ or tissue proteid and circulating or blood proteid. They regard the former as entering into the formation of the tissues and undergoing functional metabolism, the latter as simply tarrying in the blood and undergoing a direct oxidative metabolism. It is of course the latter alone whish suffers the luxus consumption. To these two Voit has been led to add a third, or intermediate proteid, viz., store or surplus proteid, which is more labile than tissue proteid and yet more stable than the circulating proteid. We have again and again insisted in the course of this work that the oxidations of the body take place not in the blood but in the tissues; and are consequently prepared to reject Voit's conclusions unless evidence of a strictly *positive* character can be offered in their favor. No such evidence, however, is forthcoming;[1] the most that can be said in favor of them is that they afford an easy explanation of the phenomena of proteid metabolism; on the other hand, if we admit a large luxus consumption in the alimentary canal, the remaining phenomena can be explained without throwing on the tissues what may appear too heavy a metabolic task. And in speaking of the metabolism of any tissue it must be remembered that the metabolic changes need not necessarily involve the so-called structural elements. A fat-cell may probably accumulate in and discharge from its protoplasm a considerable quantity of fat without the morphological relations of the cell undergoing any marked change; and we can readily imagine that a tissue may suffer partial disintegration and reintegration without any proteid is rejected.

---

[1] Cf. Hoppe-Seyler, Pflüger's Archiv, vii (1873), p. 399.

The characteristic metabolic effects o
shown not only by these calculations of w
take place in the body, but also by direc
and Gilbert,[1] laboriously analyzing the b
had been fed on a known diet, and com
with that of another pig of the same litter
when the first was put on the fixed diet, fo
nitrogenous material of the food only 7.34
up as dry proteid material during the fatte
the amount of proteid food was low; in the
was only 4.14 per cent.

The Effects of Fatty and of Carbohydra
those of proteid food, the effects of fats a
cannot be studied alone. When an anima
non-nitrogenous food death soon takes place
ceases to be digested, and starvation ensue
fore, only study the dietetic effects of these
taken in connection with proteid material.

When a small quantity of fat is taken, i
fixed moderate quantity of proteid material
carbon of the food reappears in the egesta.
up; some even of the previously existing fa
be consumed. As the fat of the meal is in
soon reached at which carbon is retained i
So also with starch or sugar. When the
small, there is no retention of carbon; as s
is increased beyond a certain limit, carbon
form of fat or to a small

were stored up for every 100 parts of fat in the food, and of the total dry non-nitrogenous food 21.2 per cent. was retained in the body as fat. No clearer proof than this could be afforded that fat is formed in the body out of something which is not fat.

Pettenkofer and Voit[1] came to the conclusion that, marked as was the difference between proteid and non-nitrogenous food as regards the increase of metabolism, fat did nevertheless, to a certain extent, behave like proteids; when an excess of fat was given the consumption of carbon in the body was increased, so that only a portion (though a large portion) of the excess of fat in the food was stored up.

As one might imagine, the presence of fat or carbohydrates in the food was found to check proteid metabolism; nitrogenous equilibrium was established with a much less expenditure of proteid food. For instance, with a diet of 800 grams meat and 150 grams fat, the nitrogen in the egesta became equal to that in the ingesta in a dog, in whose case 1800 grams meat would have to be given to produce the same result in the absence of fats or carbohydrates.

On the other hand, it was found that, with a fixed quantity of fatty or carbohydrate food, an increase of the accompanying proteid led not to a storing up of the surplus carbon contained in the extra quantity of proteid, but to an increase in the consumption of carbon. Proteid food increases not only proteid, but also non-nitrogenous metabolism. This explains how an excess of proteid food may, by the increase of metabolism, actually reduce the fat of the body, as is exemplified in the dietetic system known as that of Mr. Banting.

There can be no doubt, then, that both a proteid diet and a carbohydrate diet may give rise to the formation of fat within the body. And the question which we have already (p. 541) partly discussed comes again before us, In what way is this fat so formed? Is the sugar, arising during digestion from the carbohydrate, converted by a series of fermentative changes into fat? or is the sugar directly consumed by the tissues in oxidative changes, by which means the fatty derivatives of the metabolized proteids are sheltered from oxidation and stored up as fat? What light does the statistical method throw on this vexed question? Weiske and Wildt[2] have attempted to settle it. They took two young pigs of the same litter; one they killed and analyzed as a standard of comparison; the other they fed for six months on known food (chiefly

---

[1] Zt. f. Biol., ix.

[2] Ibid., x.

In other words, more than the fat actua have come from the proteid of the food. not prove that this was its actual source hand, Lawes and Gilbert[1] found that in t fed *ad libitum* on Indian corn and barley-m much as 40 per cent. of the fat produced a body could not have come from the meta the food. In spite of the analogy of ma (see p. 547), we may conclude that some fa from carbohydrate food.

Lawes and Gilbert urge very justly that Weis experiment just quoted, did not use a sufficient in another experiment used too much nitrogen. pig were fed on a rich barley-meal diet so that in about eight or ten weeks, the amount of pro spite of the diet being richer in proteid materi would probably be insufficient to account for the question is from a dietetic point of view one of for if all stored fat does come from proteid foo food must contain a due proportion of it.

We have at present no exact informati nutritive differences between fats and carb the fact that in the final combustion of the hydrates require sufficient oxygen only to carbon, and there being already sufficient bohydrate itself to form water with the hyd require in addition oxygen to burn off so gen. Hence in herbi stances the oxygen proportion in the expired carbonic acid falls to the carnivorous standard. The carbohydrates are notably more digestible than the fats, but on the other hand the fats contain more potential energy in a given weight. As to the dietetic or rather metabolic difference between starch and sugar, we know nothing very definite. Lawes and Gilbert[1] found that cane-sugar was rather more fattening than starch.

The Effects of Gelatin Food.—It is a matter of common experience that gelatin will not supply the place of proteids as a constituent of food. Animals fed on gelatin with fat or carbohydrates die very much in the same way as when they are fed on non-nitrogenous material alone. Nevertheless the researches of Voit[2] show, as might be expected, that the presence of gelatin in food is not without effect. According to him nitrogenous equilibrium is established at a lower level of proteid food when gelatin is added. Thus the nitrogen of the ingesta and egesta became equal in a dog on a ration of 400 grams proteid and 200 grams gelatin. A dog, moreover, uses up less of the nitrogen of the body on a diet of gelatin and fat, than on a diet of fat alone; and the consumption of fat also seems to be lessened by the presence of gelatin. All these facts become intelligible if we suppose that gelatin is rapidly split up into a urea and a fat moiety, in the same way that we have seen a certain quantity of proteid material to be. It is this direct metabolism of proteid matter which gelatin can take up; it seems, however, unable to imitate the other function of proteid matter, and to take part in the formation of living protoplasm. What is the cause of this difference we cannot at present say.

The Effects of Salts as Food.—All food contains, besides the potential substances which we have just studied, certain saline matters, organic and inorganic, having in themselves little or no latent energy, but yet either absolutely necessary or highly beneficial to the body. These must have important functions in directing the metabolism of the body: the striking distribution of them in the tissues, the preponderance of sodium and chlorides in blood-serum and of potassium and phosphates in the red corpuscles, for instance, must have some meaning; but at present we are in the dark concerning it. The element phosphorus seems no less important from a biological point of view than carbon or nitrogen. It is as absolutely essential for food were withdrawn. We know that th ters are essential to health, that when the proper proportions nutrition is affected, a forms of scurvy; we are aware of the pe proteid qualities on the presence of salts; know very little.

---

[1] Brit. Assoc. Reports, 1854.

[2] Zt. f. Biol., viii, 297.

SEC. 4. THE ENERGY OF TH

Broadly speaking, the animal body is verting potential into actual energy. Th supplied by food; this the metabolism o into the actual energy of heat and mec have in the present section to study wh laws of this conversion, and of the distrib set free.

The Income of Energy

Neglecting all subsidiary and unimporta we may say that the income of animal en oxidation of food into its waste products of proteids into urea and carbonic acid, o acid and water, and of carbohydrates Taking as our guide the principle laid d that the potential energy of any body, co to any chemical change in it, is the same is the same, whether that result be gaine a series of steps—that, for instance, the en to which the one gram of proteid gives rise in the body—we easily calculate the total energy of any diet. Frankland[1] has supplied the following data, given both in gram-degree C. units of heat, and meter-kilogram units of force.

The direct oxidation of the following, dried at 100° C.	Gives rise to	
	gram-deg.	met.-kilo.
1 gram beef-fat, ...	9069	3841
1 gram butter, ...	7264	3077
1 gram arrowroot, ...	3912	1657
1 gram beef-muscle purified with ether,	5103	2161
1 gram urea, ...	2206	934

Supposing that all the nitrogen of proteid food goes out as urea, 1 gram of dry proteid, such as dried beef-muscle, would give rise to about ⅓ gram of urea ; hence

	Gram-deg.	Met.-kilo.
1 gram proteid, ...	5103	2161
less		
⅓ gram urea, ...	735	311
would give as		
Available energy of proteid, . . .	4368	1850

In a normal diet, such as Ranke's, p. 563, would be found:

	Gram-deg.	Met.-kilo.
100 grams proteid, ...	436,800	185,000
100 grams fat, ...	906,900	384,100
240 grams starch, ...	938,880	397,680
Total income, ...	2,281,580	966,780

or in round numbers, one million meter-kilograms.

The Expenditure.

There are only two ways in which energy is set free from the body,—mechanical labor and heat. The body loses energy in producing muscular work, as in locomotion, in all kinds of labor, in the movements of the air in respiration and speech, and, though to a hardly recognizable extent, in the movements of the air or contiguous bodies by the pulsations of the vascular system. The body loses energy in the form of heat by con-

---

[1] Phil. Mag., xxxii, p. 182.

ceptions mentioned above, the busiest acti
or metabolic tissues, all these end simply
expenditure of income in the form of hea

A normal daily expenditure in the way
can be easily determined by observation.
take on the form of walking, or of drivin
any kind of muscular toil, a good day's
down at about 150,000 meter-kilograms.
expenditure in the way of heat cannot b
mined. Direct calorimetric observations
this difficulty,—that the body while withi
placed in abnormal conditions, which pro
metabolism. Hence results arrived at by
little value unless they be accompanied b
the egesta and ingesta, so that the rate and
bolism going on may be known. Many at
made to calculate the amount in an indi
trustworthy as any is the plan of simply su
mal daily mechanical expenditure from the
come. Thus, 150,000 meter-kilograms subt
000 meter-kilograms gives 850,000 meter
daily expenditure in the form of heat; *i. e.*
and one-sixth of the total income is expend
labor, the remaining four-fifths or five-sixth
in the form of heat.

The Sources of Muscular Energy.—Lie
having proved that the animal body was c
as the formation of fat was concerned, held
between nitrogenous or plastic and non-nit
ratory food. But

up as fatty tissue. According to him the two classes of income corresponded exactly to the two forms of expenditure. We have already urged several objections against this view. We have seen that in the blood itself very little oxidation takes place, that it is the active tissue, and not the passive blood-plasma, which is the seat of oxidation. We have further seen that proteid food may undoubtedly be in Liebig's sense respiratory, and incidentally give rise to the storing up of fat. One division of Liebig's view is thereby overthrown. We have now to inquire whether the other division holds good, whether muscle or other protoplasm is fed exclusively on the proteid material of food, and whether muscular energy comes exclusively from the metabolism of the proteid constituents of muscle. We have already seen (p. 99) that when the muscle itself is examined, we find no proof of nitrogenous waste, but, on the other hand, clear evidence of the production of non-nitrogenous bodies, such as carbonic and lactic acid. We have now to ask the question: Does muscular exercise increase the urea given off by the body as a whole? For this, according to Liebig's theory, it certainly ought to do. Conflicting evidence has been offered on this point; but by far the strongest and clearest is that which gives a negative answer.

In addition to the careful observations of Lawes and Gilbert, Edward Smith, Ranke, Voit, and others, the long-continued and admirable inquiries of Parkes[1] are especially deserving of attention. This observer determined both the total nitrogen of the urine and of the fæces, so that no possible source of error could lie in this direction; and examined the effect of exercise, slight and severe, on both a non-nitrogenous and on a mixed nitrogenous diet. He found no marked increase in the urea, but often a diminution, during the exercise, though subsequently a slight increase took place. This after-increase possibly had nothing to do with the muscles in particular, but was the result of the exercise on the body at large.

The results of Flint,[2] gained by observations on a celebrated pedestrian, rather illustrate the effects of protracted exercise on general proteid metabolism under a rich diet than contradict the more exact inquiries of Parkes.

More than this, the experience of Fick and Wislicenus[3] lands us in an absurdity if we suppose the whole energy of from proteid metabolism during the case of the first 68.69, and of the sec kilos. That is to say, the energy set free b bolism of the muscles engaged in the wo far less than that necessary to accomplish done. Their muscular energy, therefore, m sources than proteid metabolism.

---

[1] Proc. Roy. Soc., xv (1867), p. 339; xvi, p. 44; xix, p. 349; xx, p. 402.

[2] Journ. Anat. Phys., vol. xi (1876); xii (1877). Cf. North. Journ. of Phys., i (1878), p. 171.

[3] Phil. Mag., xxxi (1866), p. 485.

The total nitrogen excreted was estimated (previous to the commencement of the labor, (I the labor, and (C) for six hours succeeding the order that there might be no possible retention the urea formed during the labor period.

The total nitrogen excreted.		Fick.
A. In 12 hours before the labor, . .	.	6.91 g
B. In 3 hours' labor, ...	.	3.31
C. In 6 hours' rest after labor, .	.	2.43
B. Corresponds in dry proteid substance consumed into urea	to	20.98
C. Corresponds in dry proteid substance consumed into urea	to	16.19
The total proteid consumed therefore during and after labor was		37.17
The oxidation of these within the body to urea, would produce in meter-kilos, . . .		66.690
Whereas the actual work done was also in meter-kilos, . .		129.096

The argument may be made still stronger by siderations. A large internal have been done by the heat given out at the same time. Heidenhain calculates that while four-fifths of the total energy of the body takes on the form of heat, the share of the energy set free in the contraction of any individual muscle which must be reckoned as heat amounts to about half. Hence the sums given above must be doubled; so that the real contrast is between 319.274 and 368.574 meter-kilos of actual energy expended on the one hand and 66.690 and 68.376 meter-kilos of energy available through proteid metabolism on the other.

That, on the contrary, the production of carbonic acid is at once and largely increased by muscular exercise is beyond all doubt. One hour's hard labor will increase fivefold the quantity of carbonic acid given off within the hour. And Pettenkofer and Voit found that a man in 24 hours consumed 954 grams oxygen and produced 1284 grams carbonic acid when doing work, as against 708 grams oxygen consumed and 911 grams carbonic acid produced when remaining at rest, the quantity of urea secreted being in the first case 37 grams, in the second 37.2 grams.

These observers found that the production of carbonic acid was very distinctly diminished, and the consumption of oxygen increased, during the night as compared with the day. Thus the 1284.2 grams of carbonic acid of the whole period of 24 hours was furnished by 884.6 grams given out between 6 A.M. and 6 P.M., and 399.6 grams between 6 P.M. and 6 A.M. Similarly, of the 954.5 grams oxygen 294.8 grams were taken in between 6 A.M. and 6 P.M., and 659.7 grams between 6 P.M. and 6 A.M. These figures very strikingly indicate the independence of muscular contraction and *immediate* oxidation. During the day when the body is at work, or at least manifesting activity in one direction or another, while the production of carbonic acid is much greater, the consumption of oxygen is much less than during the night when the body is at rest and asleep.

It is evident that the conclusions arrived at by the statistical method entirely corroborate those gained by an examination of muscle itself, viz., that during muscular contraction an explosive decomposition takes place, the non-nitrogenous products of which alone escape from the muscle and from the body, any nitrogenous products which result being retained within the muscle. We must therefore reject the second as well as the first division of Liebig's view, that the muscle is fed exclusively on proteid material, and that its energy arises from proteid metabolism.

We must, however, guard ourselves against rushing into the extreme opinion that a muscle is simply a machine for getting work out of the oxidation of non-nitrogenous food. The hypothesis advanced at p. 143 concerning the re-entrance of the nitrogenous products of metabolism into the composition of the nascent contractile substance, is undoubtedly a very rough and provisional idea. But if it means anything it means this, that the decomposition which gives rise to the carbonic and lactic acid, is a decomposition of the *whole contractile substance* and not of any non-nitrogenous portion of it, and that before a fresh decomposition can take place the whole complex explosive contractile material has to be made anew, and not simply a non-nitrogenous gap filled up. And this is probably true not of muscular tissue only, but of all forms of active protoplasm, however otherwise modified. It is, as we have seen, not in the case of muscle alone that the oxygen disappears into the molecular recesses of the tissue to reappear again in oxidized products whose oxidation does not take place at the moment of their production. We have more than once insisted that the oxidations of the body, in general at least, are oxidations by the tissues, and are oxidations in which the oxygen is first absorbed and made latent by the physiological actions of the protoplasm. In the at present unknown molecular actions by which the raw material of the protoplasm is united with the absorbed oxygen in the manufacture of the explosive material, nitrogenous compounds evidently play a peculiar part. This is clearly shown by the metabolic activity of proteid matters illustrated in the previous section. Indeed the whole secret of life may almost be said to be wrapped up in the occult properties of certain nitrogen compounds; and Pflüger[1] has drawn some very suggestive comparisons between the so-called chemical properties of the cyanogen compounds and the so-called vital properties of protoplasm. If we admit that the energy of muscular contraction (and with that the energy of all other vital manifestations) arises from an explosive decomposition of a complex substance, which we may call real protoplasm, and that this complex protoplasm is capable of reconstruction within limits which, as we urged at p. 542, may be very wide, we acquire a conception of physiological processes which, if not precise and definite, is at least simple and consistent, and moreover a first step towards a future molecular physiology.

The Sources and Distribution of Heat.—We have already seen that the conception of the non-nitrogenous portions of food being solely calorifacient or respiratory, proves to be unfounded when we attempt to trace the history of the food on its way through the body. The same view is still more strikingly shown to be inadequate when we study the manner in which the heat of the body is produced. We may indeed at once affirm that the heat of the body is generated by the oxidation, not of any particular substances, but of the tissues at large. Wherever metabolism of protoplasm is going on, heat is being set free. In growth and in repair, in the deposition of new material, in the transformation of lifeless pabulum into living tissue, in the constructive metabolism of the body, heat may be undoubtedly to a certain extent absorbed and rendered latent; the energy of the construction may be, in part at least, supplied by the heat present. But all this, and more than this, viz., the heat present in a potential form in the substances so built up into the tissue, is lost to the tissue during its destructive metabolism; so that the whole metabolism, the whole cycle of changes from the lifeless pabulum through the living tissue back to the lifeless products of vital action is eminently a source of heat.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 251.

Of all the tissues of the body the muscles not only from their bulk, forming as they do so large a portion of the whole frame, but also from the characters of their metabolism, must be regarded as the chief sources of heat. Whenever a muscle contracts, heat is given out. When a mercury thermometer is plunged into a mass of muscles, such as those of the thigh of the dog, a rise of the mercury is observed upon the muscles being thrown into a prolonged contraction. More exact results, however, are obtained by means of a thermopile, by the help of which the heat given out by a few repeated single contractions, or indeed by a single contraction, may be observed and measured. Fick[1] found that the greatest heat given out by the muscles of the thigh of a frog in a single contraction was 3.1 micro-units of heat[2] for a gram of muscle, the result being obtained by dividing by five the total amount of heat given out in five successive single contractions. We have no satisfactory quantitative determinations of the heat given out by the muscles of warm-blooded animals, but there can be no doubt that it is much greater than that given out by the muscles of the frog.

The thermopile may consist either of a single junction in the form of a needle plunged into the substance of the muscle or of several junctions either in the shape of a flat surface carefully opposed to the surface of muscle (Heidenhain[3]), the pile being balanced so as to move with the contracting muscle, and thus to keep the contact exact, or in the shape of a thin wedge (Fick[4]), the edge of which comprising the actual junctions is thrust into a mass of muscles

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xvi (1877), p. 58.

[2] The micro-unit being a milligram of water raised one degree Centigrade.

[3] Mechanische, Leistung, etc., 1864.

[4] Op. cit.

nd held in position by them. In all cases the fellow junction
unctions must be kept at a constant temperature.

The amount of heat given out by a muscle when throw
into contraction by the application of a stimulus will of cours
depend on the amount of energy set free by the decompositio
of the explosive contractile substance, part of this energ
going to produce movement, and part being transformed int
heat. We have seen, in treating of muscle itself, that th
total amount of energy set free by the action of a stimulu
will depend not only on the strength of the stimulus, but als
on a variety of circumstances, notably on the amount of r
sistance against which the muscle has to contract; mere ex
tension of the muscular fibre increases the metabolism of th
muscular substance, and leads to a freer expenditure of energy
(See p. 115.) The ratio of the expended energy going out a
heat to that producing movement appears to vary with ci
cumstances, and according to Fick[1] increases with an increas
of the resistance. Hence muscles contracting against a grea
resistance economize, so to speak, the expenditure of their sub
stance, inasmuch as more and more of the energy set free i
devoted to the specific muscular movement instead of the mor
general development of heat, which latter task might be mor
cheaply undertaken by less specialized tissues. It is imposs
ble to say at present what are the exact limits of the ratio
heat to movement. Fick calculates that in the bloodless mu
cles of the frog the amount of work may vary from one-four
to one twenty-fifth of the heat given out. If we may ventu
to argue from the muscles of a frog to those of the mamm
and to take somewhat below the mean of the above two lim
say one-tenth, then, upon the calculation that the total ex
nal work of the body is about one-fifth of the total energy
free in the body, it is clear that the heat given out by
muscles, at those times only when they are contracting,
form a very large part of the total heat given out by the
But the skeletal muscles, though frequently, are not co
ally contracting; they have periods, at times long per
rest, and during these periods of rest, metabolism, of
dued kind it is true, but still a metabolism, involving
penditure of energy, is going on. This quiescent mu
must also give rise to a certain amount of heat;
add this amount, which in the present state of our
we cannot exactly gauge, to that given out during
ments of the body, it is very clear, even in the

---

[1] Op. cit.

exact data, that the metabolism of the muscles must supply a very large proportion of the total heat of the body. They are par excellence the thermogenic tissues.

Next to the muscles in importance come the various secreting glands. In these the protoplasm, at the periods of secretion at all events, is in a state of metabolic activity, which activity, as elsewhere, must give rise to heat. In the case of the salivary gland of the dog, Ludwig and Spiess[1] found that the temperature of the saliva secreted during stimulation of the chorda might be as much as 1° or 1.5° higher than that of the blood in the carotid artery at the same time, and in all probability the investigation of other secreting glands would lead to similar results. Of all these various glands the liver deserves special attention on account of its size and large supply of blood and because it appears to be continually at work. We find, indeed, that the blood in the hepatic veins is the warmest in the body. Heidenhain[2] observed in the dog a temperature of 40.73° C. in the hepatic vein, while that of the vena cava inferior was 38.35° to 39.58°, and that of the right heart 37.7°. Bernard previously had found the blood of the hepatic vein warmer than that of either the portal vein or the aorta, showing that the increased temperature is not due simply to the liver being far removed from the surface of the body.

The brain, too, may be regarded as a source of heat, since its temperature is higher than that of the arterial blood with which it is supplied; though from the smaller quantity of blood passing through its vessels it cannot in this respect compare with either the liver or the muscles as a source of heat [illegible] the body.

[illegible] blood itself cannot be regarded as a source of any considerable amount of heat, since, as we have so frequently urged, the oxidations or other metabolic changes taking place in it [illegible] comparatively slight. The heat evolved by indifferent [illegible] such as bone, cartilage, and connective tissue, may be [illegible] as insignificant; and we cannot even regard the [illegible] tissue as a seat of the production of heat since the fat [illegible] cells is in all probability not oxidized *in situ* but [illegible] carried away from its place of storage to the tissue [illegible] in need of it, and it is in the tissue that it under[illegible] metabolism by which its latent energy is set free. [illegible] of heat is also produced by the changes which the food undergoes in the alimentary canal before it really enters the body.

---

[1] Wien. Sitzungsberichte, Bd. 25 (1857).

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, iii (1870), p. 504.

Hence taking a survey of the whole body we may conclude that since metabolism is going on to a greater or less extent everywhere, heat is everywhere being generated; but that, looked at from a quantitative point of view, the muscles and the glandular organs must be regarded as the main sources of the heat of the body, the muscles being in all probability the more important of the two.

But heat, while being thus continually produced, is as continually being lost, by the skin, the lungs, the urine, and the fæces. The blood, passing from one part of the body to the other, and carrying warmth from the tissues, where heat is being rapidly generated, to the tissues or organs where heat is being lost by radiation, conduction, or evaporation, tends to equalize the temperature of the various parts, and thus maintains a "constant bodily temperature."

When the production of heat is not great as compared with the loss there is no great accumulation of heat within the body, the temperature of which consequently is but slightly raised above that of surrounding objects. Thus the temperature of the frog, for instance, is rarely more than .04° to .05° C. above that of the atmosphere, though in the breeding season the difference may amount to 1°. Such animals, and they comprise all classes except birds and mammals, are spoken of as cold-blooded. Exceptions among them are not uncommon. Some fish, such as the tunny, are warmer than the water in which they live, and in a species of Python (*P. bivittatus*) a difference of as much as 12° C. has been observed. Hüber found that in a bee-hive the temperature rose at times as much as to 40° C. In the so-called warm-blooded animals, birds and mammals, the loss and production of heat are so balanced that the temperature of the body remains constant at, in round numbers, 35° or 40° C., whatever be the temperature of the air. The temperature of man is about 37.6° C.; in some birds it is as high as 44° C. (Hirundo), and in the wolf it is said to be as low as 35.24° C.

This temperature is with slight variations maintained throughout life. After death the generation of heat rapidly diminishes, and the body speedily becomes cold; but for some short time immediately following upon systemic death, a rise of temperature may be observed, due to the fact that, while the metabolism of the tissues is still going on, the loss of heat is somewhat checked by the cessation of the circulation. The onset of pronounced rigor mortis causes a marked accession of heat, and when occurring after certain diseases, may give rise to a very considerable elevation of temperature. This mean bodily temperature of warm-blooded animals is, during health, maintained, with slight variations, of which we shall presently speak, within a very narrow margin, a rise or indeed a fall of much more than a degree above or below the limit given above being indicative of some failure in the organism, or of some unusual influence being at work. It is evident, therefore, that the mechanisms which co-ordinate the loss with the production of heat must be exceedingly sensitive. It is obvious, moreover, that these mechanisms may act when the bodily temperature is tending to rise, by either checking the production or by augmenting the loss of heat; and when the bodily temperature is tending to fall, by either increasing the production or by diminishing the loss of heat. As the regulation of temperature by variations in the loss of heat is far better known than regulation by variations in production, it will be best to consider this first.

Regulation by Variations in Loss.—Heat is lost to the body by the warming of the fæces and of the urine, by the warming of the expired air, by the evaporation of the water of respiration, by conduction and radiation from the skin, and by the evaporation of the water of perspiration. Helmholtz has calculated that the relative amounts of the loss by these several channels are as follows: In warming the fæces and urine 2.6 per cent. In warming the expired air 5.2 per cent. In evaporating the water of respiration 14.7 per cent. In conduction and radiation and evaporation by the skin 77.5 per cent.

The two chief means of loss, then, which are at all susceptible of any great amount of variation, and which can be used to regulate the temperature of the body, are the skin and the lungs.

The more air passes in and out of the lungs in a given time the greater will be the loss in warming the expired air, and in evaporating the water of respiration. And in such animals as the dog, which do not perspire freely by the skin, respiration is a most important means of regulating the temperature.[1]

While Bernard,[2] G. Liebig,[3] Heidenhain, and older observers found the blood of the right heart warmer (from .1° to .3°) than that of the left, Colin[1] and Jacobson and Bernhardt[2] state that the left heart is warmer or at least as warm as the right. From the latter observations it might be inferred that the loss of heat by respiration is neutralized by chemical changes going on in the lungs. Heidenhain and Körner,[3] however, make the important observation that the higher temperature of the right ventricle is independent of the respiration, and they attribute the difference between the two ventricles solely to the fact that the right ventricle lies nearer to the abdominal viscera, the high temperature of which has already been mentioned. And they argue that the loss of heat from the body to the air has been already achieved before the inspired air reaches the pulmonary alveoli, the evaporation of water taking place chiefly in the nasal and bronchial passages.

---

[1] See Riegel, Pflüger's Archiv, v (1872), 651.

[2] Leç. de Phys. Exp., 1855.

[3] Ueber die Temperaturunterschiede des venosen und arteriellen Blutes. Giessen, 1853.

The great regulator, however, is undoubtedly the skin. The more blood passes through the skin the greater will be the loss of heat by conduction, radiation, and evaporation. Hence, any action of the vaso-motor mechanism which, by causing dilation of the cutaneous vascular areas, leads to a larger flow of blood through the skin, will tend to cool the body; and conversely, any vaso-motor action which, by constricting the cutaneous vascular areas, or by dilating the splanchnic vascular areas, causes a smaller flow through the skin, and a larger flow of blood through the abdominal viscera, will tend to heat the body. Besides this the special nerves of perspiration will act directly as regulators of temperature, increasing the loss of heat when they promote, and lessening the loss when they cease to promote, the secretion of the skin. The working of this heat-regulating mechanism is well seen in the case of exercise. Since every muscular contraction gives rise to heat, exercise must increase for the time being the production of heat; yet the bodily temperature rarely rises so much as a degree C., if at all. By the exercise the respiration is quickened, and the loss of heat by the lungs increased. The circulation of blood is also quickened, and the cutaneous vascular areas becoming dilated, a larger amount of blood passes through the skin. Added to this, the skin perspires freely. Thus a large amount of heat is lost to the body, sufficient to neutralize the increase caused by the muscular contraction, the increase which the more rapid flow of blood through the abdominal organs might tend to bring about being more than sufficiently counteracted by their smaller supply for the time. The sense of warmth which is felt during exercise in consequence of the flushing of the skin, is in itself a token that a regulative cooling is being carried on. In a similar way the application of external cold or heat, either partially or completely, defeats its own ends. Under the influence of external cold the cutaneous vessels are constricted, and the splanchnic vascular areas dilated, so that the blood is withdrawn from the colder and cooling regions to the hotter and heat-producing organs. This vascular change may be used to explain the fact that stripping naked in a cold atmosphere often gives rise to an actual increase in the mean temperature of the blood, as indicated by a thermometer placed in the mouth, though possibly the effect may be partly due to an actual increase of the production of heat. Under the influence of external warmth, on the other hand, the cutaneous vessels are dilated, a rapid discharge of heat takes place; and if the circumstances be such that the body can perspire freely, and the perspiration be readily evaporated, the temperature of the body may remain very near to the normal, even in an excessively hot atmosphere. Thus, more than a century ago, Drs. Fordyce and Blagden[1] were able to remain with impunity in a chamber heated even to 127° (260° Fahr.), and with ease in one so hot that it became painful for them to touch the metal buttons of their clothing. It is unnecessary to give any more examples of this regulation of temperature by variations in the loss of heat; they all readily explain themselves.

---

[1] Compt. Rend., lxii (1866), p. 680.
[2] Cbt. f. Med. Wiss., 1868, p. 643.
[3] Pflüger's Archiv, iv (1871), p. 558.

Regulation by Variations in Production.—It is not, however, solely by variations in the loss of heat that the constant temperature of the warm-blooded animal is maintained. Variations in the amount of heat actually generated in the body constitute an important factor, not only in the maintenance of the normal temperature, but also probably in the production of the abnormally high or low temperatures of various diseases. Many considerations have long led physiologists to suspect the existence of a nervous mechanism by which afferent impulses arising in the skin or elsewhere might through the central nervous system originate efferent impulses whose effect would be to increase or diminish the metabolism of the muscles or other organs, and thus to increase or diminish the amount of heat generated for the time being in the body. The existence in fact of a metabolic or thermogenic nervous mechanism, comparable in many respects to the vaso-motor mechanism, or to the various secreting nervous mechanisms, seems in itself probable. And we have now a certain amount of experimental evidence that such a mechanism does really exist. The warm-blooded animal is distinguished from the cold-blooded animal by the fact that when it is exposed to cold or heat, it does not like the latter become colder or hotter, as the case may be, but, within certain limits, maintains its normal temperature. If the temperature of the warm-blooded animal during exposure to cold is maintained by means of an increased production of heat, and not simply by a diminished loss, we ought to find evidence of an increased metabolism during that exposure. We ought to find, under these circumstances, an increased production of carbonic acid and an increased consumption of oxygen, since it is to these products, rather than to the nitrogenous factors, on the peculiarities of which, as uncertain signs of metabolism, we have already insisted, we must look for indications of the rise or fall of metabolic activity. Now Pflüger and his pupils have shown that exposure to cold does most markedly increase the production of carbonic acid and consumption of oxygen in a warm-blooded animal (rabbit, guinea-pig), whereas in a cold-blooded animal (frog) the metabolism, as measured by the amounts of the same products, is diminished by cold and increased by heat. The body of the latter behaves in this respect like a mixture of dead substances in a chemist's retort; heat promotes and cold retards chemical action in both cases. In the body of the warm-blooded animal, on the other hand, there is a mechanism by which such a reaction is brought about that chemical action is actually increased by the application *of cold*. And Pflüger has further shown that this mechanism is of a nervous nature, since warm-blooded animals, in which the action of the nervous system is suspended by urari poisoning, section of the medulla oblongata, or otherwise, behave like cold-blooded animals towards heat and cold; their metabolism is increased by the former and diminished by the latter.

---

[1] Phil. Trans., 1775, pp. 111, 484.

We may regard it, then, as established that such a thermotaxic nervous mechanism does exist, and the importance of such a mechanism in explaining not only the maintenance of the normal temperature, but the abnormal variations of temperature in disease, can hardly be exaggerated. Much, however, still requires to be learnt before we can speak with confidence as to its exact nature or expound the details of its

The view that the generation of heat in the animal body is regulated by a special mechanism, and that of a nervous nature, has long seemed probable, though much of the evidence brought forward in its favor was imperfect and indecisive. The results of injuries to and diseases of the nervous system seemed to point in this direction. Thus Brodie[1] long ago called attention to a rise of temperature after injury to the spinal cord. In a previous memoir[2] he had contended, on insufficient grounds it is true, for a direct generation of heat by means of the nervous system. Since that time many clinical cases have been observed on the one hand of a lowering, and on the other hand of a rise of temperature, as the result of injury to, or disease of, the spinal cord, or other parts of the central nervous system. A certain amount of experimental evidence is also forthcoming. Tscheschichin[3] observed in rabbits a fall of temperature after section of the spinal cord, but a marked rise of temperature after a section carried through the juncture of the medulla oblongata and pons Varolii. Naunyn and Quincke,[4] on the contrary, found that, in dogs, section of the spinal cord was followed at first by a fall, but subsequently by a rise of temperature, the latter being the more marked the higher up the division of the cord, and reaching to as much as 3° or 4°. They explained the initial fall as due to an increased escape of heat, due to the vaso-motor paralysis, which the section caused, allowing a large portion of the blood to pass through the cutaneous vessels; and they remarked that the fall was less the more rapidly after the operation the animal was surrounded by cotton-wool, or like bad conductors of heat. The subsequent rise of temperature they attributed to an actual increased production, which in time overcame the increased escape due to våso-motor paralysis. They thought that they had satisfied themselves that the rise was not due to fever occasioned by the mere wound, as Schroff[5] has since concluded. Parinaud[6] finds that in rabbits section of the spinal cord invariably produces a continued fall of temperature, especially of the deeper parts of the body, more marked in the paralyzed than in the non-paralyzed parts. Tscheschichin attributed the rise which he observed after the section of the medulla to the removal of some inhibitory action exerted by the higher parts of the brain on thermogenic centres lower down.

But in all such experiments and observations it is obvious that difficulties arise on account of the complications introduced by the mechanisms of the vaso-motor system. We have already seen, in treating of that system, how intricate is its working; and the study of an elaborate inquiry of Heidenhain,[7] in which that acute and careful observer discusses in a particular case the possibility of a direct nervous regulation of the generation of heat, and finally rejects it in favor of a simple vaso-motor explanation of the phenomena observed, will illustrate very clearly the dangers of inferring the existence of a distinct thermogenic nervous action, in the absence of a criterion more satisfactory than a mere rise or fall of temperature in this or that part. The only really satisfactory criterion short of direct calorimetric observations (which as we have seen are attended with the greatest difficulties) is the measurement of the actual metabolism going on by a quantitative determination of the carbonic acid produced and oxygen consumed.

---

[1] Med.-Chir. Trans., vol. xx (1837), p. 119.
[2] Phil. Trans., 1811, 1812.
[3] Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1866, p. 151.
[4] Ibid., 1869, pp. 174, 521.
[5] Wien. Sitzungsberichte, lxxiii (1876).
[6] Archives de Physiologie (ii), iv (1877), pp. 73, 310.
[7] Pflüger's Archiv, iii (1870), p. 504; ibid., v (1872), p. 77.

The phenomena of the rise of temperature (pyrexia) in certain diseases almost irresistibly suggest the idea of an actual increase in the production of heat. And while many incidental features, such for instance as the fact that even profuse sweating by jaborandi has comparatively little effect on the high temperature of the cold stage of ague,[1] concur in indicating that the rise of temperature cannot be due to a mere diminution of loss, and none speak distinctly in favor of such an explanation, here also as in the experiments quoted above the desideratum is a direct measurement either of the amount of heat given out, or of the actual metabolism as shown by the quantities of carbonic acid produced and oxygen consumed. Leyden and Fraenkel[2] find the excretion of carbonic acid increased in the dog during pyrexia; and in all probability future investigations will very speedily enlarge our knowledge in this direction.

That the maintenance of the temperature of the warm-blooded mammal during exposure to cold is due to an increased metabolism is shown by the experiments of Colasanti,[3] who, under Pflüger's guidance, found that in guinea-pigs cold increases, in a very remarkable and regular manner, both the production of carbonic acid and the consumption of oxygen, the ratio of the oxygen consumed to the oxygen contained in the carbonic acid expired remaining constant during the experiments. Sanders-Ezn[4] had previously found that in rabbits the production of carbonic acid was increased by sudden exposure of the bodily surface to cold, and diminished by sudden exposure to warmth, and Röhrig and Zuntz[5] had observed in rabbits an increase in both the carbonic acid produced and in the oxygen consumed to result from cold baths, and also, though to a less extent, from saline baths. A strong contrast to the behavior of the warm-blooded guinea-pig, in which a fall of 30° C. in the surrounding medium actually doubled the amount of the metabolism, is afforded by the cold-blooded frog, in which, according to Pflüger and Schulz,[6] repeating the earlier experiments of Marchand and Moleschott, cold depresses and heat exalts the metabolic activity of the tissues.

---

[1] Ringer, Lancet, October 5th, 1878.

[2] Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 76 (1879), p. 136. See also the references given there.

[3] Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 92. See also the subsequent controversy carried on in that and the following volume.

[4] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1867.

[5] Pflüger's Archiv, iv (1871), p. 57.

[6] Ibid., xiv (1877), p. 73.

The exact nature of this metabolic mechanism was indicated by the experiments of Zuntz and Röhrig,[1] who found that in urari poisoning there was a marked diminution of the bodily metabolism as shown by the quantities of oxygen consumed and carbonic acid produced; these, indeed, might fall to half the normal. At the same time the bodily temperature fell considerably; and that this fall was the effect and not the cause of the diminution of the metabolism was shown by the fact that the metabolism continued to diminish, when loss of heat from the body was prevented by wrappings of cotton-wool. While under urari, too, the metabolic activity was far less influenced by cold and other baths.

Pflüger has since, in an elaborate research,[2] shown (1) that in rabbits poisoned with urari there is a large decrease of metabolism, the carbonic acid produced diminishing 37.4 per cent., and the oxygen consumed 35.2 per cent.; the normal being of the former 570 cc., of the latter 673 cc. per kilo per hour, while the urarized animal gave 357 cc. carbonic acid and 436 cc. oxygen, all measured at 0° C. and 760 mm. mercury; (2) that in the urarized animal increased temperature produces an increase of metabolism (an increase of 44 cc. oxygen consumed per 1° C. per kilo per hour, and of 81.6 cc. carbonic acid produced per 1° C. per kilo per hour), and diminished temperature a diminution of metabolism; (3) that elimination of nervous action by section of the medulla oblongata gives rise to similar but less striking results, whereas (4) in the normal animal cold produces, as has been previously observed, a marked rise of metabolism. If in spite of the increased metabolism the external cold succeeds in reducing the temperature of the animal, then, as the temperature falls, a point is reached at which the reaction of the nervous system is powerless against the direct depressing action of the low temperature, and metabolism is diminished. Pflüger further observed that in the urarized animal, the metabolism is not directly proportional to the temperature, but increases with enormous rapidity when the temperature rises above the normal. The production of carbonic acid and consumption of oxygen apparently do not run exactly parallel; with a rise of temperature above the normal the production of carbonic acid is much more rapid than the consumption of oxygen, and conversely when the temperature sinks below the normal the production of carbonic acid diminishes more slowly than the consumption of oxygen; but on the latter point further and more extended observations are needed.

The interpretation which may naturally be put on the results of the foregoing experiments, especially of those with urarized animals, is that external cold acts as a stimulus to the skin, giving rise to afferent impulses which, reaching some central nervous mechanism, give rise to efferent impulses, and these in turn passing to the muscles, increase the metabolic activity of these organs, and thus give rise to an increased production of heat. When the muscular nerves are paralyzed by urari, the efferent impulses can no longer reach the muscles, and hence no increase of metabolism takes place in them.

---

[1] Op. cit., and Zuntz, Pflüger's Archiv, xii (1876), p. 522.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xviii (1878), p. 247.

of heat (p. 582).

Although in the above experiments the diminu
and of the production of heat was coincident w
muscular contractions, it is not absolutely necessa
the occurrence of contractions is essential to an i
duction of heat. In the cases where the met
largely increased, muscular contractions (at leas
contractions), though sometimes observed, were n
ent. And indeed there is no *a priori* reason posit
the hypothesis that the metabolism of even mus
be influenced by nervous or by other agency in
large decomposition of the muscular substance, p
heat, might take place without any contraction
caused. If we were to permit ourselves to supp
tractile material, whose metabolism when resultin
gives rise to so much heat, could undergo the sam
bolism, in so far a different fashion, that all the e
free took on the form of heat, variations in the te
body, at present difficult to understand, would bec
ligible.

Although the experiments of Pflüger have bee
towards the thermotaxic nervous mechanism by w
is made to increase metabolism, we may fairly su
plementary mechanism by which metabolism may
exists, a sort of inhibitory thermotaxic mechanism
gests that pyrexia or fever is the result of a paral
of this mechanism, the metabolism of the body r
speak, in the absence of directive and restraining n
Colasanti[2] makes the interesting observation tha
suffering from pyrexia the usual reaction towards
absent.

Bernard[3] felt justified in speaking most distin
genic" or "calorific" and of "frigorific" nerves, i
ogy with vaso-dilator and vaso-constrictor nerves.
after division of one

on the latter; and Knock[1] confirms this. Bernard[2] also observed, after division of the cervical sympathetic on one side, that a stimulation of the central end of the divided auricular nerve sufficiently intense to give rise to pain, occasioned on the one side in which the sympathetic was intact, a fall (of as much as 2° C.) of temperature in the ear, *unaccompanied by any pallor*, while on the side on which the sympathetic had been divided, a rise of temperature was at the same time observed. That is to say, the sensation of pain gave rise, by reflex action through the intact cervical sympathetic, to a refrigeration of the ear, without any vascular change in the ear and in spite of an increased temperature of other parts of the body. In the submaxillary gland he found, as Ludwig and Speiss had previously shown (see p. 583), that stimulation of the chorda tympani produces a rise of temperature, and he states that the rise manifested itself, though to a less degree than in normal circumstances, even when all the vessels were cut or when the veins were ligatured. On the other hand he obtained a fall of temperature when the sympathetic was stimulated, a fall moreover which he asserted to be still recognizable after division of the bloodvessels or ligature of the veins of the gland. If it could be shown that under stimulation of the sympathetic a fall of temperature at all corresponding to the rise obtained by Ludwig and Speiss, manifested itself, Bernard's view that the sympathetic is *par excellence* a frigorific nerve, while the cerebro-spinal nerves contain all the calorifacient fibres, would receive a striking confirmation. But these experiments of Bernard's need repetition, and Heidenhain's[3] observations, as far as they go, point to a slight rise rather than a fall of temperature as the result of sympathetic stimulation.

By regulative mechanisms of this kind the temperature of the warm-blooded animal is maintained within very narrow limits. In ordinary health the temperature of man varies between 36° and 38°, the narrower limits being 36.25° and 37.5°, when the thermometer is placed in the axilla. In the mouth the reading of the thermometer is somewhat (.25° to 1.5°) higher; in the rectum it is still higher (about .9° C.) than in the mouth. The temperature of infants and children is slightly higher and much more susceptible of variation than that of adults, and after 40 years of age the average maximum temperature (of health) is somewhat lower than before that epoch. A diurnal variation, independent of food or other circumstances, has been observed,[4] the maximum ranging from 9 A.M. to 6 P.M. and the minimum from 11 P.M. to 3 A.M. Meals cause sometimes a slight elevation, sometimes a slight depression, the direction of the influence depending on the nature of the food; alcohol seems always to produce a fall. Exercise and variations of external temperature, within ordinary limits, cause very slight change, on account of the compensating influences which have been discussed above. The rise from even active exercise does not amount to 1° C.: when labor is carried to exhaustion a depression of temperature may be observed. In travelling from very cold to very hot regions a variation of less than a degree occurs, and the temperature of tropical inhabitants is practically the same as those dwelling in arctic regions.

---

[1] Quoted by Bernard loc. cit. The observations of Goltz, see p. 250, on the foot of the dog, would seem to show that this at least does not hold good for the sciatic nerve.

[2] Op. cit., p. 295.

[3] Breslau. Studien, iv (1868).

[4] Ringer, Proc. Roy. Soc., xvii, p. 287; ibid., xxvi (1877), p. 186.

When external cold or warmth passes certain limits, or when during the application of these agents the regulative mechanisms are interfered with, the temperature of the body may be lowered or raised until death ensues. When the cold or warmth applied is not very great, as in cold and warm baths, it has been noticed that the temperature is more easily raised by warmth than depressed by cold. Death ensues from extreme cold by a depression of the activities of all the tissues, more especially of the nervous; asphyxia is produced in animals when the fall of temperature is rapid. Puppies can be recovered after the temperature in the rectum has fallen to about 4° or 5° C., and hibernating mammals may be cooled with impunity down to nearly freezing-point. Horvath[1] observed when external warmth is brought to bear on a mammal in such a way as to cause a rise of temperature in the body, death ensues when an elevation of about 6° or 7° C. above the normal is reached; and Bernard[2] places the lethal bodily temperature of a mammal at about 46°. The exact cause of the death has not been as yet sufficiently explained. It cannot be due, as Bernard suggests, to the muscles entering into rigor coloris, for the animals frequently succumb before this takes place. A high temperature makes the heart irregular, and finally stops its beat, but probably other tissues are also injuriously affected, so that death cannot be attributed to the stoppage of the heart alone.

One of the most marked phenomena of starvation is the fall of temperature, which becomes very rapid during the last days of life. Indeed the low temperature of the body is a powerful factor in bringing about death, for life may be much prolonged by wrapping a starving animal in some bad conductor so as to economize the bodily heat.[3]

---

[1] Cbt. f. Med. Wiss., 1871, p. 513.

[2] Leç. sur la Chaleur Animale, 1876.

[3] Chossat, Rech. Exp. sur l'Inanition, Paris, 1843.

SEC. 5. THE INFLUENCE OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM ON NUTRITION.

In the preceding sections we had more than once to refer to the possibility of the nervous system having the power of directly affecting the metabolic actions of the body, apart from any irritable, contractile, or secretory manifestations. Thus the phenomena of diabetes cannot, at present at all events, be satisfactorily explained as a purely vaso-motor effect, and the production of heat is, as we have seen, under the special guidance of the nervous system. In treating of the salivary glands we met with the striking fact that when all the nerves of the gland have been divided, and a "paralytic" secretion set up, the tissue of the gland may ultimately degenerate. This result differs from the wasting of a muscle which follows upon severance of its motor nerve, since this may be, partly at all events, explained by the fact that the muscle is no longer functional; and indeed, if the muscle is rendered functional, if it is directly stimulated for instance from time to time with a galvanic current, the atrophy may be postponed or even altogether prevented. But the salivary gland in the case in question is functional, it does go on secreting; nevertheless in the absence of its usual nervous guidance its nutrition becomes profoundly affected. We are not justified in saying that in this case the nutrition of the salivary cell is directly dependent on the nervous system, because all biological studies teach us that the growth, repair, and reproduction of protoplasm may go on quite independently of any nervous system, and the nutrition of the nervous system itself cannot be dependent on the action of that system on itself; but we may go so far as to infer that the nutrition of the salivary cell is in the complex animal body so arranged to meet the constantly recurring influences brought to bear on it by the nervous system, that, when those influences are permanently withdrawn, it is thrown out of equilibrium; its molecular processes, so to speak, run loose, since the bit has been removed from their mouths. And we might expect that similar instances would be met with where nutrition became abnormal after the removal of wonted nervous influences. Such instances indeed are not uncommon; the most familiar being perhaps the rapid occurrence of bedsores, in consequence of injuries to or of disease of the spinal cord or brain. And there are many pathological phenomena, inflammation itself to begin with, which seem inexplicable, except when regarded as the result

in a rabbit the trigeminus is divided in the
of sensation in those parts of the face of w
sory nerve. Very soon, within twenty-four
becomes cloudy; and this is the precursor of
which may involve the whole eye and end
ganization. At the same time the nasal cham
side are inflamed, and very frequently ulcer
pearance on the lips and gums. Seeing how
ure the eye is, and how carefully it is protec
anisms of the eyelids and tears, it seems reaso
that the inflammation in question might sim
of the irritation caused by dust and contact wi
to which the eye, no longer guided and pro
tions, these being destroyed by the section o
came subject. In the same way the ulcers
gums might be explained as injuries inflicted
those structures in their insensitive condition
found that the inflammation of the eye might
ened or altogether prevented if the organ wer
ered up and in all possible ways protected fro
influences of foreign bodies. Other observers
failed to prevent the inflammation in spite of e
negative result is in itself no strong argumen
tion cannot yet be considered as entirely clear

Sinitzen found that after removal of the superio
thetic ganglion, the inflammatory effects of sectio
nus were very much lessened. Sinitzen's expla
tissues of the face become less irritable after rem
glion, seems, however, hardly satisfactory. Acco
the inflammatory phenomena depend on a particul
nerve being divided. He states that if

If these results be corroborated, the trigeminus must be held to contain "trophic" fibres.

In a mammal division of both vagi is followed by pneumonia (inflammation of the lungs), ending in death. This has been adduced as an instance of the trophic action on the pulmonary tissues of certain fibres of the vagi; but the real explanation seems to be that, owing to a paralysis of the œsophagus and larynx caused by section of the vagi, food accumulating in the pharynx passes into the air-passages and so sets up the pneumonia.[1] In birds death follows, sometimes from pneumonia of a similar causation, but more frequently from inanition on account of the food not being able to enter the stomach. The immediate cause of death, however, is in many cases at all events a paralysis of the heart, and according to Eichhorst[2] the histological changes (acute fatty degeneration) in the cardiac muscle are of such a character as to suggest a trophic action of the vagus fibres on that tissue; he also finds similar changes in the hearts of rabbits. The matter, however, requires further elucidation.

Such instances of nerves manifesting even a doubtful trophic action are rare; yet there seems to be no reason why the fifth nerve or the vagus should be conspicuous in possessing trophic fibres. When the sciatic nerve of the frog is divided, no nutritive alterations beyond those explicable as the result of loss of function are observed; and indeed the majority of the effects on growth and nutrition resulting from the section of nerves, or from paralysis, can be referred to the absence of the usual functional activity, accompanied in some cases with an altered vascular supply. Nevertheless the numerous phenomena of disease, joined to the facts mentioned above, turn the balance of evidence in favor of the view that some more or less direct influence of the nervous system on metabolic actions, and so on nutrition, will be established by future inquiries.

The influence which light acting on the retina appears to exercise on the metabolism of the body may be quoted as an illustration of the statement just made.[3]

Among the pathological facts which may be quoted as suggestive of trophic action are the occurrence of certain eruptions, such as lichen, zona, ecthyma, etc., in various spinal or cerebral diseases, frequently accompanied, as in maladies affecting the posterior cornua, with intermittent pains; the rapid and peculiar degeneration of and loss of contractility in the skeletal muscles in certain affections of the spinal cord, the changes in the muscles being more rapid and profound than in the nerves; the so-called acute bedsores of cerebral apoplexy; some at least of the cases of vesical affections attendant on spinal or cerebral diseases or injuries; the more rapid atrophy and loss of contractility which is seen in muscles after contusions than after sections of nerves; and indeed the general phenomena, and especially the topography of the eruption of a large number of cutaneous diseases. The pathological evidence of "trophic" action, though indirect, affords, by its abundance and prominence, a striking contrast to the scanty and uncertain indications of experimental inquiry.

---

[1] Cf. Steiner, Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1878 (Phys. Abth.), p. 218, and references there given.

[2] Die trophischen Beziehungen der Nervi vagi zum Herzmuskel (Berlin, 1879). Cf. also Zander, Pflüger's Archiv, xix (1879), p. 263.

[3] Cf. Pflüger and Von Platen, Pflüger's Archiv, xi (1875), pp. 263, 272. Fubini, Moleschott's Untersuch., xi (1876), p. 488.

SEC. 6. DIETETICS.

We may sum up the main results of the previous sections somewhat in the following way: Although the body consists, like the food, of proteids, fats, and carbohydrates, yet the conversion of the one into the other is not direct. Assimilation does not proceed in such a way that the proteids of the food all become the proteids of the body, the fats of the food the fats of the body, and the starch and sugar of the food the glycogen, dextrin, and sugar of the body. We cannot even say that the non-nitrogenous food supplies alone the non-nitrogenous parts of the body, while the nitrogenous food remains as the sole source of the nitrogenous tissues. We have seen that, under all circumstances, a certain quantity of proteid food is immediately metabolised, probably while still within the alimentary canal, and that when an excess of proteid food is taken a luxus consumption leads to the accumulation of bodily fat. On the other hand, we find that a large proportion of the carbonic acid of the egesta comes from the metabolism of nitrogenous tissues, such as muscle; and we have had proof that the energy set free by muscular contraction may be far greater than could be supplied by the
eid food taken, and that therefore the non-nitrogenous
f the metabolism which set free the energy must have
me from non-nitrogenous food. We have shown
that the various food-stuffs become more or less
ed their elements more or less rearranged and
y appear as constituents of the bodily tissues.
that the oxidations of the body are, as in the
f a peculiar character, and carried on by the
s. While at present we should be hardly
that any oxidations at all take place in
ich as do occur must be slight in amount

as compared with those going on in the tissues. We might also say that one body only, viz., lactic acid, presents itself as a substance likely to be directly oxidized in the blood itself; and even with regard to this the evidence is as much against as for any such direct oxidation taking place. The great mass of the oxidation of the body is of an indirect kind, determined by the activity of the several tissues. The blood serves as an oxygen-carrier for the tissues; and it is not itself the large combustible agent it was once thought to be. The tendency of all recent inquiries is to show that the body cannot be compared, either as a whole or in its parts, to a furnace for the direct combustion of combustible food. On the contrary, we are driven nearer and nearer to the conclusion that all food which has become absorbed into the blood must become tissue before it becomes waste product, and only becomes waste product through the metabolism of the tissue. When we say "become tissue" we must leave it at present wholly undecided how far the constant metabolism which this view demands affects the so-called structural elements of the more highly organized tissues: it is quite open, however, for us to imagine that in muscle, for instance, there is a framework of more stable material, giving to the muscular fibre its histological features, and undergoing a comparatively slight and slow metabolism, while the energy given out by muscle is supplied at the expense of more fluctuating molecules, which fill up, so to speak, the interstices of the more durable framework, and metabolism of which alone is large and rapid.

The characteristic feature of proteid food is that it increases the oxidative, metabolic activity of the tissues, leading to a rapid consumption, not only of itself, but of non-nitrogenous food as well. Where, therefore, a rapid renewal of the tissues is sought for, an excess of proteid food may be desirable. But it must be borne in mind that, by the very nature of its rapid metabolism, proteid food must tend to load the body with the so-called extractives, *i. e.*, with nitrogenous crystalline bodies. How far these are of use to the body, and what part they play, is at present unknown to us. That they are of some use is suggested by the beneficial effects of the *extractum carnis*, when taken as food in conjunction with non-nitrogenous material, though it is possible that the dietetic value of this preparation may be due to the small amount of non-crystalline extractives which it contains. That when in excess these nitrogenous products may be highly injurious is indicated by the little we know of the connection between the symptoms of gout and the presence of uric acid. A large meal of proteid material must tax the system to the utmost in getting rid of or stowing away the nitrogenous crystalline bodies arising through the luxus consumption, either in the alimentary canal or in the liver.

One value of fats and carbohydrates lies in their being sources of energy, more than three-fourths of the normal income of potential energy coming from them (p. 574); and, as we have seen, they are *ultimate* sources of muscular energy as well as of heat. But their great characteristic is that they do not, like proteid food, excite the metabolic activity of the body. Hence, to a far greater extent than is the case with proteid food, they can be retained and stored up in the body with comparative ease. The digested elements of fatty or carbohydrate food, which go to form the protoplasm of adipose tissue, become part and parcel of a substance which can perform its metabolism without any explosive expenditure of energy, and which, therefore, instead of giving rise to bodies demanding immediate excretion from the system, can deposit its metabolic products as apparently little, but, as we have seen, in reality greatly changed fat. In this way the non-nitrogenous food of to-day is rendered available for future, and even far distant, wants.

In comparing fats with carbohydrates we can only point to the much greater potential energy of the former than of the latter, weight for weight (see p. 575).

A diet may be chosen either for the simple maintenance of health, or for the sake of muscular energy, or for fattening purposes. For the first purpose there is, we may suppose, a normal diet; and, in the case of man, instinct and experience have probably not erred far in choosing some such proportions as those given on p. 563. If, as we have urged, all food becomes tissue before it leaves the body as waste product, the dominant principle of all nutrition, and the ultimate tribunal of all questions of diet, must be the individual character of the tissue, the idiosyncrasy of the body. The same mysterious qualities which cause the same blood-plasma to become here a muscle and there a secreting cell, convert the same food into the body of a man or of a sheep. All the simpler and more general laws of metabolism are made subservient to more intricate and special laws of protoplasmic construction. We can only speak of a normal diet in the same way that we speak of the average intelligence of man.

In seeking to supply such a normal diet out of ordinary articles of food, we must bear in mind that the nutritive value of any substance, estimated in terms of the potential energy of the proteids, fats, or carbohydrates it contains, must, of course, be corrected by its digestibility. One gram of cheese has, as far as potential energy is concerned, an exceedingly high value; but the indigestibility of cheese brings its nutritive value to a very low level. Here, too, the factor of idiosyncrasy makes itself exceedingly felt.

In feeding for fattening purposes, the comparatively cheap carbohydrates are, of course, chiefly depended on. If the view mentioned on p. 571 be correct, that the fat really stored up all comes from proteid metabolism, an equivalent of this food-stuff must always be given. If, as seems probable, this view is a too hurried generalization, there still remains the possibility that for economical fattening, with the least waste, a certain proportion between the nitrogenous and non-nitrogenous foods must always be maintained.

From what has been previously said it is evident that proteid food is not the only food-stuff to be regarded in selecting a diet for muscular labor. We should, however, equally err in the opposite direction if we selected exclusively non-nitrogenous food on which to do work, since, as we have seen, there is no evidence that the fats or carbohydrates are the *direct*, though they may be in part the *ultimate*, source of muscular energy. Considering how complex a thing strength is, how much it depends on the vigor of parts of the body other than the muscles, a normal diet, calculated to develop equally all parts of the body, is probably the best diet for active labor. It is possible, however, that an excess of proteid food, by reason of the renewal of tissue caused by its metabolic activity, may be, in such cases, of service.

Lastly, the several saline matters, including the extractives of animal and vegetable food, are no less essential elements of a diet than proteids, fats, or carbohydrates. Of use, not for the energy they themselves possess, but by reason of their regulating the energy of the food-stuffs more strictly so called, they are necessary to life; the body in their absence fails to carry out its usual metabolism, and disease, if not death, follows.

The dietetic superiority of fresh meat and vegetables depends in part on their still retaining these various saline and extractive matters. A diet from which phosphorus (or even possibly phosphates), or chlorides, or potash, or soda salts are absent is, as soon as the store of the substance in the body is exhausted, useless for nutritive purposes. Calcium and magnesium may, to a certain extent, be replaced by bases closely allied to them; but the metabolic *rôle* of phosphorus or of sulphur cannot be taken up by an analogous body; and, as is illustrated by their distribution in the body, the physiotheir function is to direct.

The physiology of nutrition may be said to
Liebig, when he proved the formation of fat i
published his views on the nature and use o
Regnault and Reiset[1] added much to our know
of Respiration. The first elaborate inquiry
Metabolism in general was that of Bidder an
followed by the investigations of the Munich
Bischoff and Voit,[3] Voit, and Pettenkofer a
we have had occasion to combat some of the
it must be admitted that their extended and
have been the means of an immense advan
Their method has been largely adopted, with
the various agricultural stations in Germany;
the inquiries of Lawes and Gilbert[5] have giv
peculiarly valuable character, inasmuch as it is
analysis and observation, and, therefore, free
of error attaching to mere calculations. If, ho
can be pointed to as influencing our views of t
animal metabolism more than any other, it is
the formation of glycogen by the liver.

---

[1] Ann. Ch. Phys. (1849) (3), xxvi, 32. [2] O

[4] Op. cit., and many subsequent memoirs in t

[5] Op. cit.

BOOK III.

THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM AND ITS INSTRUMENTS.

CHAPTER I.

[*General Arrangement of the Nervous System.*

THE nervous system consists of two secondary divisions: the *cerebro-spinal* and the *sympathetic* or *ganglionic.*

The cerebro-spinal system embraces a central system, which includes the brain and spinal cord, and a peripheral system consisting of the cranial and spinal nerves and their ganglia. The central system is known as the cerebro-spinal axis (Fig. 152), and it comprises all the organs presiding over the functions which are characteristic of *animal* life, such as volition, special sensation, etc. The cranial and spinal nerves serve as a means of intercommunication between the central nervous system and the peripheries by conducting impulses to and from the centres.

The brain is composed of the cerebrum and cerebellum and the ganglia forming part of the former; and the medulla oblongata and pons Varolii, by which they are connected to the spinal cord. The spinal cord is that portion of the cerebro-spinal axis which is situated within the spinal canal between the foramen magnum and the second lumbar vertebra. Above, it is continuous with the medulla oblongata; below, it terminates in an extremity of gray matter, which is termed the *filum terminale.*

The cranial nerves arise from the under surface of the cerebrum and medulla oblongata and make their exit through the foramina in the base of the cranial vault. The spinal nerves arise by two roots, anterior and posterior, from the

m
b
g
ar
c
t
c'
e
l
A
B

of the Brain. *a*, *a*, cerebral hemispheres; *b*, right half of cerebellum; *m*, medulla oblongata; above this is a transverse white mass, the pons Varolii; *c*, *c′*, the spinal cord, showing its cervical and lumbar enlargements, and its pointed termination; *e*, the cauda equina, formed by the elongated roots of the lumbar and sacral nerves; 1 to 9, the several cranial nerves, arising from the base of the brain and the sides of the medulla oblongata. Below these, on each side, are the roots or origins of the spinal nerves, cervical, dorsal, lumbar, and sacral. In some of these the double root can be seen, and the swelling or ganglion on the posterior root. *a*, *x*, the axillary or brachial plexus, formed by the four lower cervical and first dorsal spinal nerves; *l*, the lumbar plexus; *s*, the sacral plexus, formed by the last lumbar nerve and first four sacral nerves; *t*, shows a piece of the sheath of the cord cut open, and with it a portion of the ligamentum denticulatum which supports the cord.

A, a transverse section through the cord, to show the form of the gray cornua or horns, in the midst of the white substance. *B*, shows the same parts, and also the membranes of the cord; and the anterior and posterior roots of a pair of spinal nerves springing from its sides.

The *ganglionic* or *sympathetic* system consists of a double chain of ganglia, which extends from the base of the brain to the pelvic cavity. Each chain is situated to the front and side of the vertebral column. The ganglia are intimately connected with the adjacent ganglia and with the cerebro-spinal axis by means of nervous cords. The nerves given off from the ganglionic system are principally distributed to the viscera of the thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic cavities, and hence are more intimately connected with the functions of organic life, such as are manifested in growth and nutrition. The ganglionic system has, therefore, been termed the system of *organic* life.

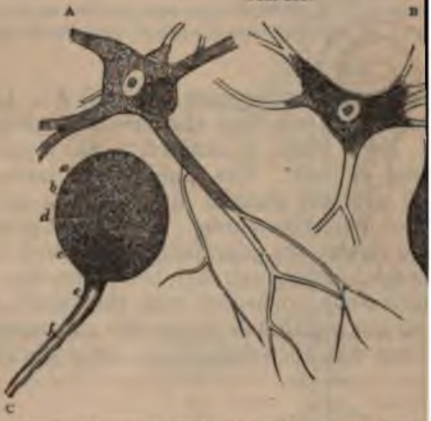
The Physiological Anatomy of the Nerve-tissues.

The nervous system is composed of two elementary nervous structures: the *vesicular* matter, and the *fibrous* matter. The *vesicular* matter is distinguished from the fibrous matter by its characteristic reddish-gray color, its vesicular structure, its softer consistency, and greater vascularity. It consists of an aggregation of vesicles which are called the ganglionic or nerve corpuscles, and is never found in the nerves. These corpuscles are each composed of a delicate wall, which incloses granular pigmented contents, with an eccentric nucleus, and a variable number of nucleoli.

The nerve-cells are found in aggregated masses, imbedded in a granular material, and having intermingled and connected with them some fibrous matter. In this condition they form the ganglia and the great centres of gray matter found in the brain and spinal cord. The vesicular matter alone is

(Fig. 159) of nerve-fibres. The apolar c
undeveloped cells. The bipolar cells are

FIG. 153.



Various forms of Ganglionic Vesicles: A, B, large stellate cells,
from the anterior horn of the gray matter of the spinal cord; C,
nected fibre, from the anastomosis of the facial and auditory
auditorious internus of the ox; *a*, cell-wall; *b*, cell-contents; *c*
e, prolongation forming the sheath of the fibre; *f*, nerve-fibre
substantia ferruginea of man; B, smaller cell from the spinal
ameters.

pathetic ganglia, and in the ganglia of the

the exterior of the cell, and may be traced to the nucleolus. The multipolar cells are found in all the ganglia, but are most numerous in the gray matter of the cerebro-spinal centres. In the anterior cornua of the spinal cord they possess sometimes as many as twelve processes. The processes of some of the cells divide and subdivide so rapidly into smaller filaments that they form a close radiating plexus in the interstitial vesicular matter adjoining the cell (Fig. 155).

FIG. 154.

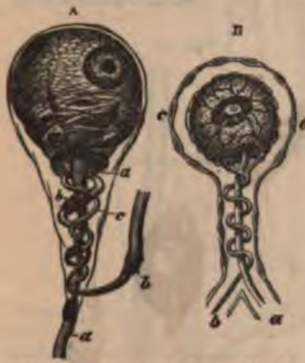


FIG. 155.

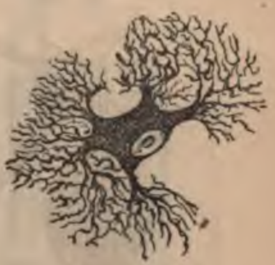


FIG. 154.—Structure of a pyriform ganglionic nerve-cell. *A*, according to Beale; *B*, according to Arnold.

FIG. 155.—Stellate Nerve-cell, from the Nucleus Cervicis Cornu (posterior vesicular column) of a Fœtus of six months × 420.—After BEALE.

The *white* or *fibrous matter* compose the nerve-fibres forming the cranial and spinal nerves and the white strands of nervous matter which are found in the cerebro-spinal axis. The nerves are composed of bundles of fibres, which are called *funiculi*, and are inclosed in a fibrous sheath, the *perineurium;* the funiculi being separated from each other by an investing fibrous membrane formed by reflections inwards of the perineurium. Each funiculus is formed of a number of bundles of *fibres* or *tubules*, which, according to Ranvier, are inclosed in a layer of flat epithelium cells (Fig. 156); this is, however, contradicted by some observers who deem the cells a lining of lymphatic spaces. If these tubules are separated and individually examined during life they will appear to consist of a simple homogenous transparent investment, which incloses a soft transparent structureless substance. Each tubule has a well-accentuated dark outline (Fig. 158, A). But after removal from the body, the lowered temperature or other influences cause the contents of the tubule to coagulate, and a double contour appears (Fig. 158, B), which indicates that the tubules are not of a simple structure, but that they are composed of several elements. These are seen to be an external or white portion and an internal or gray centre. When these changes are farther advanced, or if pressure has been made, they assume a varicose appearance (Fig. 158, C), which is caused by the breaking down of the white matter into small segments or drops, and its collection in certain spots, thereby causing the tubule to swell. Further changes are afterwards observed when the substance of the interior will be seen to be collected in distinct masses. (Fig. 158, D.) The dark outline in B, Fig. 158, indicates the tube-sheath or *neurilemma*, which incloses the *medullary substance* or *white substance of Schwann*, the inner boundary of which is indicated by the inner line. In the central portion of the medullary substance, corresponding to the axis, is a gray, flattened, threadlike filament, which is termed the *axis-cylinder*. (Fig. 159.) The fibres thus constructed are called the *medullated* nerve-fibres, in contra-

FIG. 156.

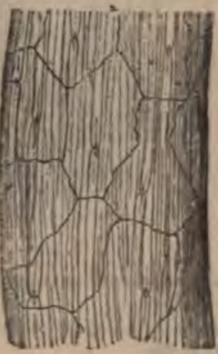


FIG. 157.

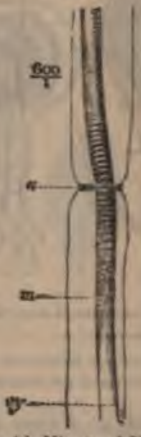
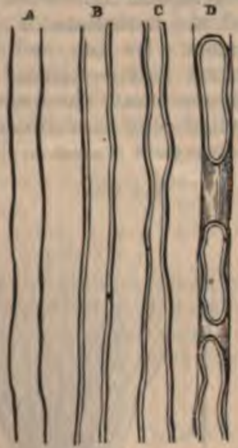


FIG. 156.—Funiculus of a Mouse after impregnation with Nitrate of Silver. Large flat epithelial cells are seen covering its surface. The explanation of the small crosses is seen by reference to the next figure.—After RANVIER.

FIG. 157.—Nerve-fibre from the Sciatic Nerve of the Rabbit after the action of Nitrate of Silver. *a*, ring formed by thickened membrane of Schwann; *m*, white substance of Schwann rendered transparent by glycerin; *Cy*, axis-cylinder, which just above and below the level of the annular constriction presents the striæ of Frommann.

distinction to other fibres which possess no medullary substance, and hence are called the *non-medullated* fibres.

FIG. 158.



Primitive Nerve-tubules. A, a perfectly fresh tubule with a single dark outline. B, a tubule or fibre with a double contour from commencing post-mortem change. C, the changes further advanced, producing a varicose or beaded appearance. D, a tubule or fibre, the central part of which, in consequence of still further changes, has accumulated in separate portions of the sheath.—(After WAGNER.)

At intervals along the course of the tubule, annular constrictions are seen (Fig. 157). These appear to be due to a thickening of the neurilemma at the constricted point. The axis-cylinder passes through these constricted portions uninterruptedly, and at this position is marked by a number of transverse lines called the striæ of Frommann. Between each of these constricted points a *nucleus* is found, which lies between the white substance of Schwann and the neurilemma. The *axis-cylinder* in the ganglion cells, and in the ultimate termination of the olfactory and optic nerves and some of the sympathetic, have been observed to be composed of a number of extremely attenuated varicose fibres, which are termed the *primitive nerve-fibrils* (Fig. 160).

FIG. 159.

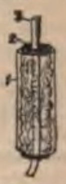


Diagram of Structure of Nerve-fibre.

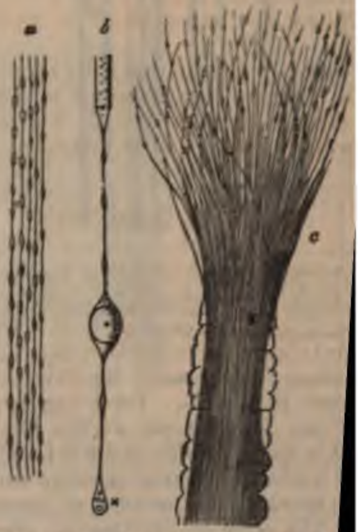
1, neurilemma; 2, white substance of Schwann; 3, axis-cylinder.

The *non-medullated* fibres (gelatinous fibres of Remak) differ from the medullated, by the absence of the annular constrictions and of the double con-

pecially at their central and
non-medullated fibres are found which are pr
more than the axis-cylinders of medullated tub

The nerve-fibres serve as a means of inter

Fig. 160.



Primitive Nerve-fibrils. *a*, from the nervous fibre-layer of
external granular layer of the retina, showing at *x* a larger vari

called *efferent* or *motor* fibres; those conveying impressions from the periphery to the centre, *afferent* or *sensory* fibres.

The nerves terminate in *special* and *general* modes. As special modes they terminate in the tactile corpuscles (Fig. 134); the Pacinian corpuscles (Fig. 135); the terminal bulbs of Krause (Fig. 133); and in other terminal organs concerned in special sensation, which will be hereafter noticed. In the voluntary muscles they terminate in the *end-plates* (Fig. 21). The mode of termination of the nerves in the involuntary muscles is as yet wrapped in obscurity; recent investigations, however, indicate that the fibres form plexuses, and finally terminate in the nuclei of the cells. In the glands, according to Pflüger, the axis-cylinder is continued into the gland-cell.

The general mode of termination is by the formation of extremely delicate plexuses, the filaments of which cannot be traced to any definite terminal point. The nerve-fibres are devoid of the white substance of Schwann at their ultimate terminations.]

SENSORY NERVES.

In studying the phenomena of motor nerves we are greatly assisted by two facts: First, that the muscular contraction by which we judge of what is going on in the muscle, is a comparatively simple thing, one contraction differing from another only by such features as amount, rapidity, and frequency of repetition, and all such differences being capable of exact measurement. Secondly, that when we apply a stimulus directly to the nerve itself, the effects differ in degree only from those which result when the nerve is set in action by natural stimuli, such as the will. When we come, on the other hand, to investigate the phenomena of afferent nerves, our labors are for the time rendered heavier, but in the end more fruitful, by the facts: First, that we can only judge of what is going on in an afferent nerve by the effects it produces in some central nervous organ, in the way of exciting or modifying reflex action, or modifying automatic action, or affecting consciousness; and we are consequently met on the very threshold of every inquiry by the difficulty of clearly distinguishing the events which belong exclusively to the afferent nerve from those which belong to the central organ. Secondly, that the effects of applying a stimulus to the peripheral end-organ of an afferent nerve are very different from those of applying the same stimulus directly to the nerve-trunk. This

An afferent impulse passing along an afferent
certain cases simply produce a change in our
unaccompanied by any visible bodily moveme
cases it may give rise to reflex movements, or m
reflex or automatic actions without causing a
consciousness; in still other cases it may brin
results at the same time. An afferent nerve th
of which gives rise to a sensation, and so leads t
tion of consciousness, may be more closely defin
sory" nerve. There is, however, no distinct pro
gard to the difficulties just mentioned, that the
which in the body are commonly used to cause o
action differ at all in kind from those whose fu
modify consciousness. On the contrary, such ev
have goes to show that an appropriate stimulus
fibre may give rise to one or other or both even
whether the one or the other, or both, events o
on the condition of the central organ, and on th
its several parts to the afferent nerve. The stim
same nerve (and there are no positive facts whic
clude us from saying "of the same fibre") may
circumstances, as for instance when the brain
moved, simply cause a reflex action, and under
stances give rise merely to a sensation. Henc
nerve is frequently spoken of as a sensory nerv
circumstances where there is no evidence of
being actually affected, because by a slight chan
stances the same stimulation of the same nerv

was first made known by Charles Bell and Magendie, their discoveries forming the foundation of modern nervous physiology, is simply as follows:

When the anterior root is divided, the muscles supplied by the nerve cease to be thrown into contractions, either by the will or by reflex action, while the structures to which the nerve is distributed retain their sensibility. During the section of the root, or when the proximal stump, that connected with the spinal cord, is stimulated, no sensory effects are produced. When the distal stump is stimulated, the muscles supplied by the nerve are thrown into contractions. When the posterior root is divided, the muscles supplied by the nerve continue to be thrown into action by an exercise of the will, or as part of a reflex action, but the structures to which the nerve is distributed lose the sensibility which they previously possessed. During the section of the root, and when the proximal stump is stimulated, sensory effects are produced. When the distal stump is stimulated, no movements are called forth. These facts demonstrate that sensory impulses pass exclusively by the posterior root from the peripheral to the central organs, and that motor impulses pass exclusively by the anterior root from the central to the peripheral organs.

An exception must be made to the above general statement, on account of the so-called recurrent sensibility which is witnessed in conscious mammals under favorable circumstances. It often happens that, when the *peripheral* stump of the divided anterior root is stimulated, signs of pain are witnessed. These are not caused by the concurrent muscular contractions or cramp which the stimulation occasions, for they remain, if the whole trunk of the nerve be divided, some little way below the union of the roots, above the origins of the muscular branches, so that no contractions take place. They disappear if the posterior root be also cut, and they are not seen if the mixed nerve-trunk be divided close to the union of the roots. The phenomena are probably due to the fact that bundles of sensory fibres of the posterior root, after running a short distance down the mixed trunk, turn back and run upwards in the anterior root, and by this recurrent course give rise to the recurrent sensibility. When the anterior root is divided some few fibres in it do not, like the rest, degenerate, and, when the posterior root is divided, a few fibres in the anterior root are seen to degenerate like those of the posterior root.

Concerning the **ganglion** on the posterior root, we may say definitely that it is neither a centre of reflex nor of automatic action. Our knowledge concerning its function is almost limited to the fact that it is in some way intimately connected with the nutrition of the nerve. When a mixed

course from the periphery to close up to the gan
the posterior root is divided between the gan
spinal cord, the portion attached to the spinal co
but that attached to the ganglion remains inta
anterior root is divided, the proximal portion
with the spinal cord remains intact, but the dis
tween the section and the junction with the oth
erates; and in the mixed nerve-trunk many deg
are seen, which, if they be carefully traced out
be motor fibres. If the posterior root be div
between the ganglion and the junction with the
the posterior root above the section remains int
mixed nerve-trunk are seen numerous degenerate
when examined, are found to have the distribut
fibres. Lastly, if the posterior ganglion be exci
posterior root degenerates, as do also the sensor
mixed nerve-trunk. Putting all these facts tog
seem that the growth of the motor and sensor
place in opposite directions, and starts from diff
or "trophic" centres. The sensory fibres grow
ganglion either towards the periphery or towa
cord. The motor fibres grow outwards from t
towards the periphery. This difference in their
tion is frequently of great help in investigatin
distribution of motor and sensory fibres. Wh
root is cut beyond the ganglion, or the ganglio
the sensory nerves degenerate, and the sensory
altered condition, can readily be placed in the

degenerate in an upward direction from the inferior cervical ganglion below to the superior cervical ganglion above, for the ganglia of the sympathetic behave in this respect like the spinal ganglia of the posterior roots. This method in diagnosis is often spoken of as the Wallerian method, after A. Waller,[1] to whom we are indebted for the discovery of most of these facts.

According to Wundt[2] afferent impulses suffer a delay in passing through the spinal ganglia, reflex acts having a markedly shorter latent period when they are initiated by a stimulus applied to the posterior root than when the stimulus is applied to the mixed nerve-trunk just below the ganglion. Exner,[3] however, finds that the negative variation travels at the same rate through a spinal ganglion as along an ordinary nerve-trunk.

In the **cranial nerves** the motor and sensory tracts are far less mixed than in the spinal nerves. The olfactory, optic, and acoustic nerves are purely sensory nerves. The fifth, glosso-pharyngeal, and vagus are mixed nerves; and Steiner[4] finds that in the dog the afferent and efferent fibres are gathered into two bundles so distinct that they may be separated by the knife, the afferent bundle lying to the outside of the efferent bundle.

The facial and hypoglossal are for the most part motor (efferent) nerves, but contain sensory (afferent) fibres. The third, fourth, sixth, and spinal accessory are exclusively motor (efferent) nerves. These statements refer to what are commonly looked upon as the trunks of the respective nerves. More exactly speaking, the sensory fibres of the facial come from the fifth, pneumogastric, and glosso-pharyngeal nerves, so that the facial proper is in reality a purely motor nerve. So likewise is the hypoglossal, its sensory fibres coming from the fifth, pneumogastric, and three upper cervical nerves. The fifth is a mixed nerve entirely on the plan of a spinal nerve, having distinct motor and sensory roots. The glosso-pharyngeal seems also to be essentially a sensory nerve, its motor filaments springing from the fifth and facial nerves. Concerning the vagus some have maintained that the pneumogastric root proper is entirely sensory (afferent), and that all the efferent functions of the vagus are dependent on the fibres of the spinal accessory which join it. To this point we shall

---

[1] Müller's Archiv, 1852, p. 392.

[2] Mechanik der Nerven (1876), 2te Abth., p. 45.

[3] Arch. f. Anat. und Phys., 1877, Phys. Abth., p. 567.

[4] Ibid., 1878, Ibid., p. 218.

characters in both kinds of nerves. The same
far as we know, of nerves within the body.

Moreover, the rate at which nervous impulses
to be about the same in motor and sensory ne
we have no evidence of any fundamental diff
respect between the two. We have seen that
a nervous impulse in the motor nerve of a fro
meters per second. The velocity of a motor im
as judged by the difference of the latent peri
traction of the thumb-muscles when stimulation
bear on the motor nerve at the wrist, or high u
is about 33 meters per second. In warm-blo
however, the rate of transmission of motor im
variable, being in particular closely dependen
ture, and probably also on other circumstances.
holtz and Baxt[1] obtained a range from as low a
the arm was cooled to as high as 89.4 m. when
heated. The velocity of a sensory impulse is
measuring the time taken between a stimulus b
to bear on some sentient surface, as the skin, an
of a signal by the individual experimented on
that he feels the stimulus. The time taken up
impulse becoming converted into a sensation a
the nervous central organs, in the mental opera
mining to make the signal, and in the beginnin
signal, corresponds in a way to the purely mus
of the latent period in the experiment for det
velocity of a motor impulse. The application o
and the making of the signal (

required for the sensory impulse to pass along a piece of sensory nerve as long as the difference of length between the above two nerves; from which the velocity can be calculated. Observations carried on in this way led to most discordant results, varying from 26 metres to 94 meters, or even more, per second. The difference here is far too great to allow any value to be attached to an average. When it is remembered how complex are all the central nervous operations in these instances, as compared with the changes going on in a muscle during the latent period of its contraction, and how these central operations might vary, according as one or other spot of skin was stimulated, quite independently of the length of nerve between the centre and the spot stimulated, these discrepancies will not be wondered at; and it may fairly be concluded that the velocity of a sensory impulse does not materially differ from that of a motor impulse.

There are, however, certain phenomena which might at first sight be interpreted as indicating that afferent and efferent nerve-fibres behave differently towards stimuli. We have already (p. 120) stated that, according to most observers, when an ordinary motor nerve, such as a nerve supplying a muscle, is heated, no indications of the generation of nervous impulses, no contractions of the muscle, for instance are observed. The heat does not act as a stimulus; it may increase the irritability of the nerve for the time being, but apparently cannot originate the explosive discharge which we call an impulse. We have also seen that during the passage of a constant current along the nerve of a muscle-nerve preparation no contractions are visible, no impulses, save in certain particular cases, are generated, so long as the current is not suddenly varied in strength. But Grützner[1] finds that when afferent nerve-fibres, such as those in the central stump of the divided sciatic, or in the central stump of the vagus, are heated to 45° or 50°, events occur, clearly proving that impulses are generated in the afferent fibres by the elevation of temperature. In the case of the sciatic the animal shows signs of pain, the blood-pressure is affected, etc.; and in the case of the vagus the heart is slowed by reflex inhibitory impulses passing down the other, intact, vagus, though heating the peripheral instead of the central stump of the divided vagus, has no effect whatever on the heart. Similarly, when the same nerves or other nerves containing afferent fibres are submitted to the action of the constant current, there are like evidences

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 215.

not so much that the afferent and efferent
selves acted upon in a different way by hea
stant current, as that the molecular disturban
both cases have different effects, according
upon a central or peripheral mechanism.
imagine that molecular disturbances which wo
to stir the sluggish muscular substance to a
thus, so to speak, be lost upon the muscle,
a very great effect on the more sensitive and
of the central nervous system. We may
therefore, conclude that there is no distinct p
lute difference between afferent and efferent
must at the same time be cautious not to cons
phenomena, presented by a muscle-nerve pr
satisfactory test of all the changes which may
nerve-fibre. The necessity of this caution wil
mediately illustrated from another point of vi

The apparent identity in function betwe
efferent fibres, taken into consideration with
mentioned concerning the regeneration of n
the inquiry whether by a change of the per
tral organs a motor nerve can be converted
nerve, or *vice versa.* Experiments made wit
taining a functional union between purely
sory nerves have, in the hands of most obser
Bidder, Schiff, etc.) failed; and though Phili
pian[1] were so far more successful, that th
apparent union between a sensory and a mot

peripheral hypoglossal. Complete union took place, and it was found that, after some weeks, the portion of nerve between the tongue and the point of union, *i. e.*, the part which had previously been the peripheral hypoglossal, was in a sound and healthy condition. Stimulation of the lingual nerve above the point of union produced contractions in the tongue of that side, whether the stimulus were electrical or mechanical; and the contractions were still visible when the lingual, in order to preclude any reflex action, was divided high up previous to stimulation. Here the sensory lingual was apparently the means of causing motor effects. It must be remembered, however, that this is not a case of the union of motor and sensory fibres. The peripheral portion of the hypoglossal in reality become wholly degenerated, and the portion of nerve which apparently was hypoglossal nerve was in truth new nerve produced by a downward growth of the lingual. If any real union took place it must have been between the lingual fibres and the end-plates of the glossal muscular fibres. The force of this experiment is moreover lessened by the fact observed by Vulpian[1] himself, that when the hypoglossal is simply removed, or a large piece of the nerve cut out, so that the peripheral portions degenerate, stimulation of the lingual nerve of the same side causes movements of the tongue, though when the hypoglossal is intact, stimulation of the lingual produces no such effect. The motor effects thus seen are due to the chorda fibres present in the lingual, and Vulpian finds that the movements obtained on stimulating the lingual nerve after the apparent union of the lingual and hypoglossal, do not occur if the chorda fibres in the lingual be brought into a state of degeneration by previous section of the chorda nerve. Schiff[2] has observed after section of the hypoglossal, spontaneous contractions of the glossal muscular fibres, contractions which are at first inhibited, but at a later period increased, by stimulation of the (chorda fibres in the) lingual, and that to such an extent as to move the tongue up and down; this curious fact helps to explain why the section of the hypoglossal seems necessary to develop the motor effects of stimulating the lingual. Vulpian and Philipeaux also made experiments on the union of the vagus and hypoglossal, but the results were even less satisfactory than those with the lingual and hypoglossal, and Vulpian himself admits that the functional union of motor and sensory fibres is as yet unproved.

We have already seen (p. 151) that a sensory nerve in its simplest form may be regarded as a strand of eminently irritable protoplasm, forming a link between a superficial cell which alone is subject to extrinsic stimuli, and a central (reflex or automatic) cell which receives stimuli, chiefly in the form of nervous impulses proceeding from the former along the connecting strand. In the earliest stages of the

---

[1] Ct. Rd., t. 76, p. 146 (1873).
[2] R. Accad. dei Lincei (3), i (1877).

ular stimuli than its fellows. Thus one c
group of cells, would become eminently s
influence of light; in them the impact ray
give rise to nervous impulses more readily
groups; another group would develop a sens
of sound, and so on. In this way the prim
bodily surface would be differentiated into
organs, disposed and arranged among ecto
purpose of the latter being simply protectiv
not demanding the existence of any direct
the central nervous system. Similar but les
differentiations would be established in the
afferent nerves connecting the central nerv
the internal surfaces and parts of the body.

Moreover it is obvious that the sensory impu
to the central nervous system by these diff
organs would be themselves largely differen
the impulses which pass along a motor nerve
to the nature of the stimulus which is appli
(whether, for instance, the stimulus be a si
shock, or several shocks repeated slowly, or
repeated rapidly, and so on, the effect on the
each case a different one), so to a much gre
impulses generated by light in a visual se
naturally differ from those generated by simp
tactile sense-organ.

And since these various sensory impulses h
to perform on arriving at the central nerv

preparing those impulses as to adapt them in the best possible way for the work which they have to do. Hence each *peripheral* sense-organ will be united by means of its nerve with a corresponding *central* sense-organ, the former being able to affect other parts of the central nervous system only through the medium of the latter. This, at least, we know to be the case as far as relates to all the central nervous operations in which consciousness is concerned; for of the total characters which belong to an affection of consciousness by means of any of the sense-organs, *i. e.*, which belong to any particular sensations, while some are gained during the rise of the sensory impulses in the peripheral sense-organ, others first appear in the central sense-organ in the course of the changes through which the impulses give rise to a sensation. Thus a stimulus of any kind applied to the optic nerve along any part of its course gives rise to a sensation of light, and precisely the same stimulus applied to the acoustic nerve along any part of its course gives rise to a sensation of sound, and so on. All the evidence we possess goes against the view that an isolated piece of optic nerve differs in function from a similarly isolated piece of acoustic nerve; such facts as are within our knowledge go to show that the disturbances generated in a piece of optic nerve by a galvanic current are the same as those generated in a piece of acoustic nerve. We are, therefore, driven to the conclusion that the difference in this case arises in the central organs.

In all these differentiated sensory mechanisms, or special senses as they are called, we have then to deal with two elements; the peripheral sense-organ, in which we have to study how the special physical agent gives rise to special sensory impulses; and the central sense-organs, in which our study is confined to the manner in which these special impulses modify the operations of the central nervous system. Inasmuch as in a normal body the peripheral organ remains in connection with the central organ, and our study of the special senses is carried on chiefly by subjective observations in which we make use of our own consciousness, it frequently becomes very difficult to distinguish in any given sensation the peripheral form of the central element. The two become more distinct the more complex the sense and the more highly organized the sense-organs. For this reason it will be most convenient to commence our study of the special senses with the sense of vision.

THE eyeball is of a spheroidal shape. I
segments of different-sized spheres. The la
situated posteriorly, and constitutes about
walls of the eyeball. From its free margin pr
segment, which is that of a smaller sphere. T
ment is composed of a whitish, opaque, firm

FIG. 161.

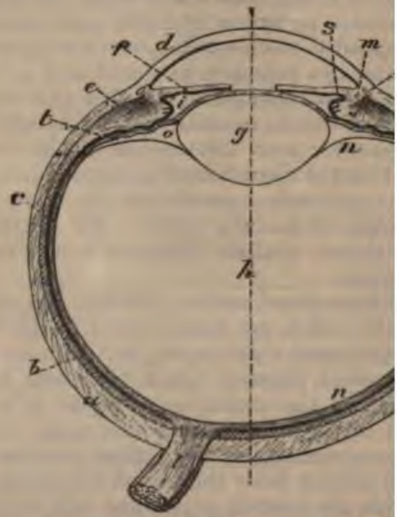
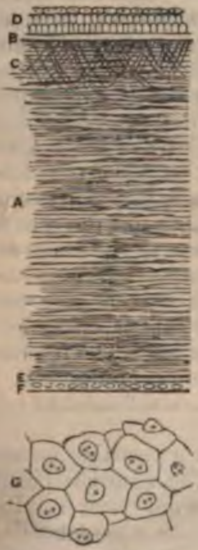


Diagram of a Horizontal Section of the Eye

a, outer or sclerotic coat, and *d*, the cornea ; *b*, middle or ch
ligament ; *i*, ciliary process ; *e*, ciliary muscle, and *f*, iris ; *c*, i

the *cornea.* The cornea consists of three layers: an anterior and posterior elastic lamina, having between them a layer which is the proper tissue of the organ. This middle layer is composed of about sixty superimposed laminæ of fusiform fibrous cells. In the interstices between the laminæ are found tubular spaces, which contain a transparent fluid. The anterior and posterior elastic laminæ are structureless and highly elastic. When separated from the proper corneal tissue they have a great tendency to curl up. This fact suggests that these two laminæ are active agents in the retention of a proper curvature of the cornea. The cornea is covered on its anterior surface by the conjunctival mucous membrane, which consists of three or four layers of pavement epithelium cells; the deeper layers of cells are oblong, and placed perpendicularly. (Fig. 162.) The conjunctiva at this point has no perceptible basement membrane. The posterior surface of the

FIG. 162.



Vertical Section of the Cornea.

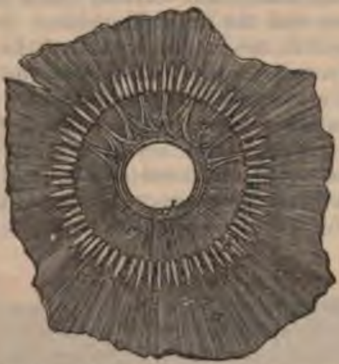
A, proper tissue of the cornea; *B*, anterior elastic lamina of cornea, with *D*, the conjunctival epithelium on it; *C*, oblique fibres from it to the layers of the cornea; *E*, posterior elastic lamina, with *F*, epithelium on it of the membrane of Demours; *G*, surface view of the epithelium of the membrane of Demours.

terior segment. It is whitish, opaque, smoo
the points of attachment of the muscles of
is composed of white fibrous tissue, arranged
bundles, which interlace each other in various
teriorly the interlacements are in a general
tion; posteriorly the direction is longitudinal.
contains yellow elastic fibres and fusiform nuc
is continuous anteriorly with the cornea, and
the perineurium of the optic nerve. At the
of the junction with the cornea is a venous s
sinus circularis iridis, or *canal of Schlemm.*
pierces it about 2.6 mm. internal to the anter
of the eyeball. At this point the coat is perfo
openings for the passage of the nerve-filaments
openings, which is relatively large, gives passa
centralis retinæ. Surrounding this point of
optic nerve are many small openings for the
ciliary nerves and vessels. The internal surfa
contains some pigment-granules. It is sepa
choroid coat by a delicate flocculent cellular t
lamina fusca.

The *choroid coat* is a vascular membrane c
pigment-granules. The external portion is co
pally of bloodvessels and nerves. Between
found numerous stellate pigment-cells, which
network. The internal surface, where it is
pigment layer of the retina, also contains pigm
teriorly it is pierced by the optic nerve; ant
tinuous with the ciliary

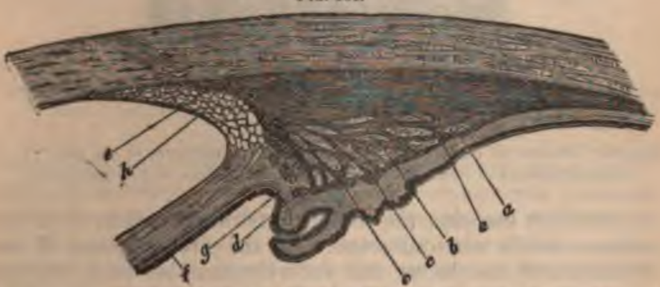
radiating or meridional, and a circular layer. The radiating fasciculi are situated externally, and have a meridional direction. (Fig. 164.) From this layer numerous fasciculi interlace between the fasciculi of the circular layer, which occupies an internal position to the radiating layer. The ciliary muscle is inserted into the external surface of the anterior portion of the choroid coat, the fibres extending somewhat

FIG. 163.



Inner View of the Front of the Choroid Coat with its Ciliary Processes, and the Back of the Iris. *a*, anterior piece of the choroid coat; *b*, ciliary processes; *c*, iris; *d*, sphincter of the pupil; *e*, bundles of fibres of the dilator of the pupil.

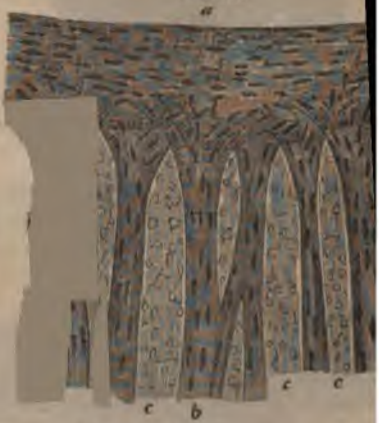
FIG. 164.



Section of the Ciliary Region of the Eye in Man. *a*, meridional muscular fasciculi of the musculus ciliaris; *b*, deeper-seated radiating fasciculi; *c*, *c*, *c*, annular plexus; *d*, annular muscle of Muller; *f*, muscular lamina on the posterior surface of the iris; *g*, muscular plexus at the ciliary border of the iris; *e*, annular tendon of the musculus ciliaris; *h*, ligamentum pectinatum.

are found pigment-cells and unstriated musc
muscular tissue element consists of *radiatin*
ciculi. (Fig. 165.) The *circular* fasciculi fo

FIG. 165.



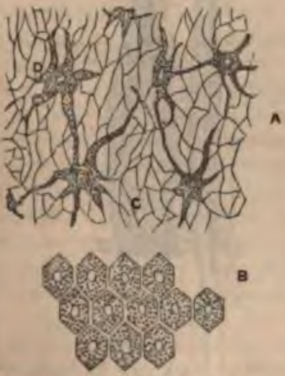
Muscular Structure of the Iris of a White Rabbit. *a*, sphinct
radiating fasciculi of dilator muscle; *c*, *c*, connecting tissue w

the pupillary margin; the radiating fasciculi
sphincter to the circumference. At the circu
iris the membrane lining the anterior chamb
processes, which are termed the *ligament*

consists of a single layer of hexagonal nucleated pigment-cells (Fig. 166) of a dark-brown color. From the internal surface of this membrane delicate fibres are continued between the cellular elements of the nervous layer. It is frequently dissected with the choroid coat, and spoken of as one of its laminæ. The color of the iris in different individuals is dependent upon the density of the fibro-connective tissue anterior to the *uvea*, and to the amount of pigment-granules in it. In persons with dark eyes the pigment in this tissue is relatively more abundant.

The *internal* or *nervous* layer of the retina is composed essentially of the terminal nerve elements of the optic nerve.

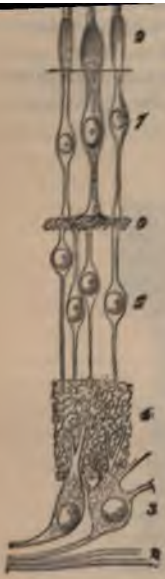
FIG. 166.

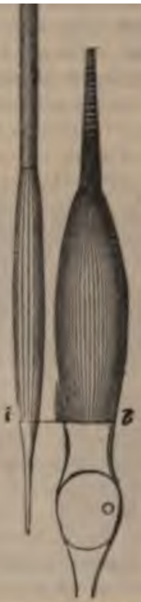


Pigment-cells of the Eyeball (KÖLLIKER). A, ramified pigment-cells of the choroid coat; B, front view of the hexagonal cells of the pigmentary membrane.

Externally, it is covered with the pigmentary layer; internally it is lined by a homogeneous transparent structure called the *hyaloid membrane*. The structure of the retina is one of great complexity. It consists of nine distinct layers, seven of which are layers of nerve elements. All of these layers are bound together and supported by a connective tissue which contains bloodvessels. This layer extends from the entrance of the optic nerve to a point where the annular fasciculi of the ciliary muscle are found; at this point the nervous elements cease to exist, and the layer has an irregular dentated margin called the *ora serrata*. Beyond this, the nervous layer is continued as a mere fibrous extenuation.

The optic nerve pierces the sclerotic and the choroid coats,





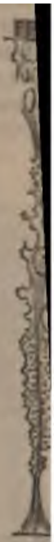


Fig. 167.—Diagrammatic Representation of the Connections of the Retina. 1, membrana limitans interna; 2, optic nerve-fibre la glion cells; 4, internal granulated or molecular layer; 5, internal ternal granulated or molecular layer; 7, external granule-layer; 8 exterior; 9, bacillary layer, or layer of rods and cones.

Fig. 168.—Rod and Cone from the Retina of Man preserved in a of Perosmic Acid, to show the fine fibres of the surface, and the di internal segment. The outer segment of the cone

ternal surface, between it and the hyaloid membrane, is a delicate structure called the *first* layer, or *membrana limitans interna*. The *third* or *ganglion layer* is composed of multipolar ganglion cells, similar to those found in the cerebral substance. In the posterior portion of the retina these ganglion cells are in several layers; at the *macula lutea* there are as many as eight, and at the anterior portion of the retina there is but a single layer. From each of these cells fibres are continued to the *fifth* or *internal granule*-layer, which consists of granular cells with nuclei. Between the third and fifth layers is a layer of vesicular matter containing nerve-fibrils of extreme minuteness. This layer is the *fourth* or internal *granulated* or *molecular layer*. The *sixth* or *external granulated* or *molecular layer* consists of parallel interlaced fibres, containing nuclei and smooth cells. The *seventh* or *external granule layer* is very similar to the *fifth*. The *eighth* layer consists of a delicate membrane of connective tissue, called the *membrana limitans externa*. The *ninth* or *bacillary layer*, or *layer of rods* and *cones*, or *Jacob's membrane*, is composed of two elements, the *rods* and *cones*. The rods are cylindrical bodies, each ending externally in a truncated, flattened extremity, and internally as an attenuated fibre, which probably communicates with the deeper layer of ganglion cells. The *cones*, as their names indicate, are conical-shaped bodies. Each consists of two portions, a conical body having projecting from its apex a rodlike segment, which appears in all respects like the rods. This segment is called the cone rod. The terminal extremity of the cone rods do not extend as far externally as the extremities of the rods. The rods and cones have been demonstrated to consist of two segments or limbs, which are composed of filaments, granular matter, and nuclei.

The optic nerve, where it pierces the coats of the eye, projects somewhat beyond the surface of the retina, as a *papilla*; here the essential nerve-elements of the retina are absent, and luminous rays are unperceived; hence it is called the *blind spot* (see p. 653). About 2.6 mm. external to the point of entrance of the optic nerve, and in the exact centre of the retinal surface corresponding to the antero-posterior axis of the eye, is the "yellow spot of Sömmerring" or *macula lutea*. (Fig. 170.) It is an elliptical-shaped spot, having its long diameter transverse. In the centre of the macula lutea is a depression called the *fovea centralis*. At this point the nervous layer of the retina is very much modified in composition of the different layers. At the macula lutea the nervous layer is much thicker than at any other part of the membrane.

layers are increased in thickness
layer of cells in the fovea consists of three
portions of the nervous layer the rods greatl
number over the cones, excepting in the ma
they are entirely absent. The retina is muc
riorly, becoming thinner as it extends forwa
layer gradually disappearing in the anterio
membrane.

FIG. 170.

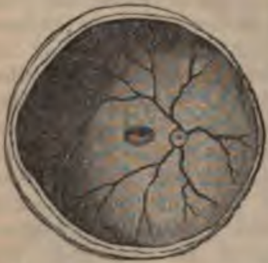


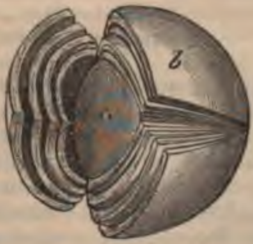
FIG. 170.—Objects on the Inner Surface of the Retina. In th
the yellow limbus luteus, here represented by shading; and in its
To the inner side is the nerve, with its accompanying artery.—Aft

FIG. 171.—Magnified Vertical Section of the Retina (altered
microscopic appearance of the outer surface of the retina over t
there are only cones; *l*, appearance of the retina near the yellov
of rods surrounding each cone; *m*, appearance of the middle
number of the rods surrounding each one. In all three figures t
sent the cones, and the smaller ones the rods seen endwise.—Afte

The interior of the eyeball is divided into
the crystalline lens and its suspensory ligament

are composed of superimposed laminæ of varying density. The most superficial are soft and gelatinous; the deeper are relatively hard, so that they form a kernel or *nucleus*. The laminæ are made up of parallel fibres, with an undulating course, the convexities and concavities of the adjoining fibres fitting accurately into each other. The lens is covered with a capsule consisting of a transparent, elastic, fragile membrane, which has a tendency to curl up, with its external surface innermost.

FIG. 172.



A Representation of the Laminæ in a Hardened Lens. *a*, the nucleus: *b*, superficial laminæ.

The *suspensory ligament* of the lens is formed by a continuation of the hyaloid membrane which lines the vitreous body. The *hyaloid membrane* is a delicate transparent structure situated between the vitreous body and membrana limitans interna of the retina. It is continued in front to the *ora serrata*, where it divides into two layers. The posterior is attached to the posterior portion of the capsule of the lens; the anterior portion gradually becomes thicker as it extends forwards behind the ciliary processes, and is attached to the anterior surface of the capsule. This thickened portion of the membrane, which is corrugated where it has attached the ciliary processes, is called the *zone of Zinn*. These two layers constitute the suspensory ligament. Between them is a triangular canal, with its base corresponding to the crystalline lens. This is called the canal of Petit.

The *vitreous body* is contained within the cavity formed by the hyaloid membrane and the posterior surface of the lens. It consists of a clear colorless albuminous fluid, having an extremely delicate interlacement of fibres extending in all directions through it. These fibres are not discernible in the adult, but can readily be seen in the fœtus.

poses. The values adopted by Listing for the "diagrammatic eye," and to him we are ind troduction of it, are as follows:

Radius of curvature of cornea, ...
" " of another surface of lens,
" " of posterior " "
Refractive index of aqueous or vitreous humo
Mean refractive index of lens, ...
Distance from anterior surface of cornea to ant rior surface of lens, ...
Thickness of lens, ...

The calculated position of the *principal post* the point at which all rays falling on the cor the optic axis are brought to a focus, is in th eye 14.6470 mm. behind the posterior surface 22.6470 mm. behind the anterior surface of the is to say, the fovea centralis must occupy t order that a distinct image of a distinct object upon it. It must be understood that these val eye when at rest, *i. e.*, when it is not undergoin accommodation.

Accommodation.

When an object, a lens, and a screen to so arranged in reference to each other th

sufficiently backward to fall on the retina; the
manently in front of the retina. In both cases
rays from the needles strike the retina in diffusi

The same phenomena may be shown with gre
what is called Scheiner's experiment.[1] If two
be pricked in a card, at a distance from each o
the diameter of the pupil, and the card be held
eye, with the holes horizontal, and a needle pla
be looked at through the holes, the following
observed. When attention is directed to the ne
image of the needle appears single. Whenev
directed to a more distant object, so long that
longer accommodated for the needle, the i
double and at the same time blurred. It also a
and blurred when the eye is accommodated
nearer than that of the needle. When only one
and the eye, therefore, is properly accommodat
tance of the needle, no effect is produced by bl
hole of the card, except that the whole field o
dimmer. When, however, the image is double,
the eye being accommodated for a distance great
the needle, blocking the left-hand hole causes a
of the right-hand or opposite image, and block
hand hole causes the left-hand image to disa
the eye is accommodated for a distance neare
the needle, blocking either hole causes the imag
side to vanish. The following diagram will exp
results are brought about.

Let *a* (Fig. 173) be a luminous point in th
a e, *a f* the extreme right-hand and left-hanc
pencil of rays proceeding from it, and passin

point, and the needle will appear as one needle. When the eye is accommodated for a distance beyond *a*, the retina may be considered to lie[1] no longer at *n n*, but nearer the lens, at *m m*, for example; the rays *a e* will cut this plane at *p*, and the rays *a f* at *q*; hence the luminous point will no longer appear single, but will be seen as two points, or rather as two systems of diffusion circles, and the single needle will appear as two blurred needles. The rays passing through the right-

FIG. 173.

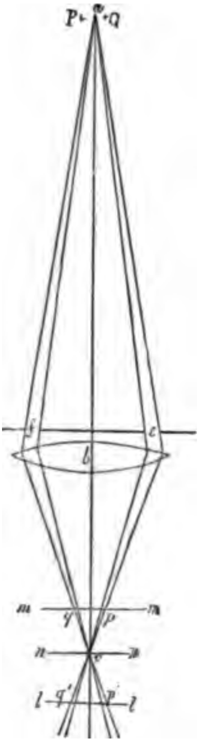


Diagram of Scheiner's Experiment.

---

[1] Of course, in the actual eye, as we shall see, accommodation is effected by a change in the lens, and not by an alteration in the position of the retina; but, for convenience' sake, we may here suppose the retina to be moved.

left-hand hole, therefore, causes a disappearanc
hand image, and *vice versa*. Similarly when
commodated for a distance nearer than the nee
may be supposed to be removed to $l\,l$, and the
and left-hand $a\,f$ rays, after uniting at e, will
and strike the retina at p' and q'. The blockin
will now cause the disappearance of the image
hand side of the retina, and this will be referre
to the right-hand side, so that Q will seem to va

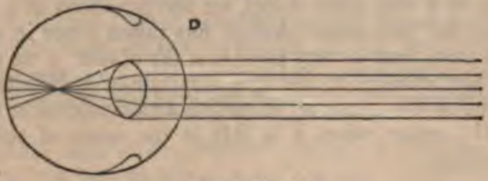
If the needle be brought gradually nearer
the eye, a point will be reached within which
always double. This point marks with consid
tude the near limit of accommodation. With
persons, if the needle be removed farther and
a point is reached beyond which the image is al
this marks the far limit of accommodation.

The experiment may also be performed with the
horizontally, in which case the holes in the card sho
The adjustment for the eye for near or far distances
by using two needles, one near and one far. In this
should be vertical and the other horizontal, and th
round so that the holes lie horizontally or verticall
whether the vertical or horizontal needle is being m
double.

In what may be regarded as the normal eye,
emmetropic eye, the near limit of accommodatio
or 12 cm., and the far limit may be put for pract
at an infinite distance. The "range of distinct
fore, for the emmetropic eye is very great. In
short-sighted eye, the near limit is

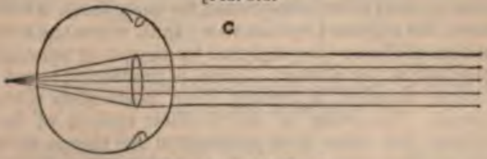
light coming from even an infinite distance are, in the passive state of the eye, brought to a focus beyond the retina (Fig. 175). The near limit of accommodation is at some distance off, and a far limit of accommodation does not exist. The *presbyopic* eye, or the long-sight of old people, resembles the hypermetropic eye in the distance of the near point of accommodation, but differs from it, inasmuch as the former is an essentially defective condition of the accommodation mechanism, whereas in the latter the power of accommodation may be good, and yet, from the internal arrangements of the eye, be unable to bring the image of a near object on to the retina. When a normal eye becomes presbyopic, the far limit may remain the same; but since the power of accommodating for near objects is weakened or lost, the change is distinctly a reduction of the range of distinct vision. In the

[FIG. 174.



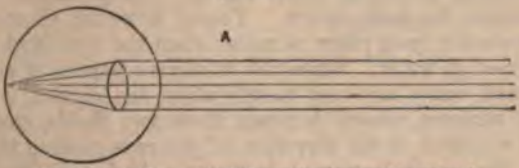
Myopic Eye.]

[FIG. 175.



Hypermetropic Eye.]

[FIG. 176.



Emmetropic Eye. Parallel rays focussed on the retina.]

effort, and feel that some change has taken p
When we turn from a very near to a far object
scious of any change in the eye, it is one of a
The former is the sense of an active accommo
objects; the latter, when it is felt, is the sense
after exertion.

Since the far limit of an emmetropic eye is at an i
no such thing as active accommodation for far dista
The only change that will take place in the eye in tu
to far objects will be a mere passive undoing of the
previously made for the near object. And that no
commodation for far distances takes place is shown by
the eye, when opened after being closed for some time,
medium state, but adjusted for distance; that, when t
tion mechanism of the eye is paralyzed by atropin or n
the accommodation for distant objects is unaffected
are conscious of no effort in turning from moderatel
distant objects. The sense of effort often spoken
persons as being felt when they attempt to see thing
the far limit of their range seems to arise from a mo
eyelids, and not from any internal change taking plac

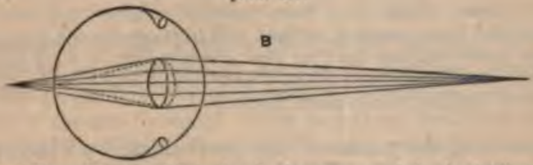
What, then, are the changes which take pla
when we accommodate for near objects? It migh
and indeed once was thought, that the curvature
was changed, becoming more convex, with a s
of curvature, for near objects. Young, however
accommodation took place as usual when the ey
is immersed in water. Since the refractive powe
humor and water are very nearly alike, the co
parallel surfaces, placed

the curvature of the cornea, and pressure on the bulb would act injuriously by rendering the retina anæmic, and so less sensitive. In fact there are only two changes of importance which can be ascertained to take place in the eye during accommodation for near objects.

One is that the pupil contracts. When we look at near objects, the pupil becomes small; when we turn to distant objects, it dilates. This, however, cannot have more than an indirect influence on the formation of the image; the chief use of the contraction of the pupil in accommodation for near objects is to cut off the more divergent circumferential rays of light.

The other and really efficient change is that the anterior surface of the lens becomes more convex. (Fig. 177.) If a light be held before the eye, three reflected images may be seen by a bystander: one a very bright one caused by the anterior surface of the cornea, a second less bright, by the anterior surface of the lens, and a third very dim, by the posterior surface of the lens. When the eye is accommodated for near objects, no change is observed in either the first or the third of these images; but the second, that from the anterior surface of the lens, is seen to become distinctly smaller, showing that the surface has become more convex. When, on the contrary, vision is directed from near to far objects, the image from the anterior surface of the lens grows larger, indicating that the convexity of the surface has diminished, while no change takes place in the curvature either of the cornea or of the posterior surface of the lens. And accurate measurements of the size of the image from the anterior surface of the lens have shown that the variations in curvature which do take place, are sufficient to account for the power of accommodation which the eye possesses.

[FIG. 177.



Emmetropic Eye. The dotted lines showing how accommodation for the diverging rays of near objects is effected.]

The observation of these reflected images is facilitated by the simple instrument introduced by Helmholtz and called a Phakoscope.

It consists of a small dark chamber, with apertures for the observed and observing eyes; a needle is fixed at a short distance in front of the former, to serve as a near object, for which accommodation has to be made; and by means of two prisms the image from each of the three surfaces of the observed eye is made double instead of single. When the anterior surface of the lens becomes more convex the two images reflected from that surface approach each other, when it becomes less convex they retire from each other. The approach and retirement are more readily appreciated than is a simple change of size.

These observations leave no doubt that the essential change by which accommodation is effected is an alteration of the convexity of the anterior surface of the lens. And that the lens is the agent of accommodation is shown by the fact that after removal of the lens, as in the operation for cataract, the power of accommodation is lost.

In the cases which have been recorded, where eyes from which the lens had been removed seemed still to possess some accommodation, we must suppose that no real accommodation took place, but that the pupil contracted when a near object was looked at, and so assisted in making vision more distinct.

Concerning the nature of the mechanism by which this increase of the convexity of the lens is effected, the view most generally adopted is as follows: In the passive condition of the eye, when it is adjusted for far objects the suspensory ligament keeps the lens tense with its anterior surface somewhat flattened. Accommodation for near objects consists essentially in a contraction of the ciliary muscle, which, by pulling forward the choroid coat and the ciliary processes, slackens the suspensory ligament, and allows the lens to bulge forward by virtue of its elasticity, and so to increase the convexity of its anterior surface.

Though all the parts surrounding the lens are highly vascular, the change in the lens cannot be considered as the result of any vasomotor action, since accommodation may be effected in a practically bloodless eye by artificial stimulation with an interrupted current, means. Again, the fact that accommodation may take which the iris is congenitally absent, disproves the change in the lens is caused either by the com-
umference of the lens, or in any other way by
iris. On the other hand, the observations of
[*] who saw the choroid drawn forward during

---

ccommod., Kiel, 1868. Abst. in Cbt. f. Med.

accommodation (brought about by stimulation of the ciliary ganglion), and satisfied themselves that the cornea served as a functional fixed attachment for the ciliary muscle, offer a strong support to the generally accepted explanation. To which it may be added that the lens is certainly elastic, and, moreover, that its natural convexity appears to be diminished by the action of the suspensory ligament, since after removal from the body its anterior surface is found to be more convex than when in the natural position in the body. Hock[1] has carefully repeated Hensen and Völckers's experiment on the dog, stimulating the radix brevis of the ganglion instead of the ganglion itself. He fully confirms their results, and especially insists that the choroid is pulled forward by the ciliary muscles (longitudinal fibres) and not by muscular fibres present in the choroid itself.

Accommodation is a voluntary act; since, however, the change in the lens is always accompanied by movements in the iris, it will be convenient to consider the latter before we discuss the nervous mechanism of the whole act.

Movements of the Pupil.—Though by making the efforts required for accommodation we can at pleasure contract or dilate the pupil, it is not in our power to bring the will to act directly on the iris by itself. This fact alone indicates that the nervous mechanism of the pupil is of a peculiar character, and such indeed we find it to be. The pupil is *contracted* (1) when the retina (or optic nerve) is stimulated, as when light falls on the retina, the brighter the light the greater being the contraction; (2) when we accommodate for near objects. The pupil is also contracted when the eyeball is turned inwards, when the aqueous humor is deficient, in the early stages of poisoning by chloroform, alcohol, etc., in nearly all stages of poisoning by morphia, physostigmin, and some other drugs, and in deep slumber. The pupil is *dilated* (1) when stimulation of the retina (or optic nerve) is arrested or diminished; hence the pupil dilates in passing into a dim light, (2) when the eye is adjusted for far objects. Dilation also occurs when there is an excess of aqueous humor, during dyspnœa, during violent muscular efforts, as the result of a strong stimulation of sensory nerves, as an effect of emotions, in the later stages of poisoning by chloroform, etc., and in all stages of poisoning by atropin and some other drugs. Contraction of the pupil is caused by contraction of the circular fibres or sphincter of the iris. Dilation is caused by contraction of the radial fibres of the iris.

---

[1] Cbt. f. Med. Wiss., 1878, p. 769.

The existence of radial fibres has been denied by many observers, but the preponderance of evidence is clearly in favor of their being really present.

Contraction of the pupil, brought about by light falling on the retina, is a reflex act, of which the optic is the afferent nerve, the third or oculo-motor the efferent nerve, and the centre some portion of the brain lying below the corpora quadrigemina in the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius. This is proved by the following facts: When the optic nerve is divided, the falling of light on the retina no longer causes a contraction of the pupil. When the third nerve is divided, stimulation of the retina or of the optic nerve no longer causes contraction; but direct stimulation of the peripheral portion of the divided third nerve causes extreme contraction of the pupil. After removal of the region of the brain spoken of above, stimulation of the retina is similarly ineffectual. But if the same region of the brain and its connections with the optic nerve and third nerve be left intact, contraction of the pupil will occur as a result of light falling on the retina, though all other nervous parts be removed.

Certain reservations must, however, be made to the above statements, since in the excised eye of the eel or frog the pupil will still contract on exposure to light though the nervous centre is absent.[1] Holmgren and Edgren[2] find that in the frog this contraction of the pupil of the excised eye on exposure to light disappears when the retina is destroyed; there seems therefore to be *within the bulb* some nervous connection between the retina and iris.

The nervous centre is not a double centre with two completely independent halves, one for each eye; there is a certain amount of functional communion between the two sides, so that when one retina is stimulated both pupils contract. It might be imagined that this cerebral centre acted as a tonic centre, whose action was simply increased not originated by the stimulation of the retina; but this is disproved by the fact that, if the optic nerve be divided, subsequent section of the third nerve produces no further dilation.

In considering the movements of the pupil, however, we have to deal not only with contraction, but with active dilation; and this renders the whole matter much more complex than might be supposed to be the case from the simple statement just made.

---

[1] Brown-Séquard, Compt. Rend., xxv (1847), pp. 482, 508; Proc. Roy. Soc., viii (1856), p. 233.

[2] Hofmann and Schwalbe's Bericht, v (1876), p. 103.

The iris is supplied, in common with the ciliary muscle and choroid, by the short ciliary nerves coming from the ophthalmic or lenticular (ciliary) ganglion, which is connected by its roots with the third nerve, the cervical sympathetic nerve, and with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve. The short ciliary nerves are, moreover, accompanied by the long ciliary nerves coming from the same nasal branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve. What are the uses of these several nerves in relation to the pupil?

If the cervical sympathetic in the neck be divided, all other portions of the nervous mechanism being intact, a contraction of the pupil (not always very well marked) takes place, and if the peripheral portion (*i. e.*, the upper portion still connected with the eye) be stimulated, a well-developed dilation is the result. The sympathetic has, it will be observed, an effect on the iris, the opposite of that which it exercises on the bloodvessels; when it is stimulated the pupils are dilated while the bloodvessels are constricted. This dilating influence of the sympathetic may, as in the case of the vaso-motor action of the same nerve, be traced back down the neck, along the rami communicantes and roots of the last cervical and first dorsal or two first dorsal spinal nerves, to a region in the lower cervical and upper dorsal cord (called by Budge[1] the *centrum cilio-spinale inferius*), and from thence up through the medulla oblongata to a centre, which, according to Hensen and Völckers,[2] lies in the floor of the front part of the aqueduct of Sylvius.

Considering how vascular the iris is, it does not seem unreasonable to interpret some of the variations in the condition of the pupil as the results of simple vascular turgescence or depletion brought about by vaso-motor action or otherwise, the small or contracted pupil corresponding to the dilated and filled, and the large or dilated pupil to the constricted and emptied condition of the bloodvessels.[3] Thus slight oscillations of the pupil may be observed synchronous with the heart-beat and others synchronous with the respiratory movements. But the variations in the pupil seem too marked to be merely the effects of vascular changes, and indeed that constriction of the pupil cannot be wholly the result of turgescence, nor dilation wholly the result of depletion of the vessels of the iris, is shown by the fact that both these events may be witnessed in a perfectly bloodless eye, and moreover when the cervical sympathetic is stimulated the dilation of the pupil begins before the contraction of the bloodvessels, and may be over before this has arrived at its maximum. Hence we are driven to conclude that the dilating sympathetic fibres do not end in bloodvessels, but are connected either directly or indirectly with the muscular fibres of the dilator.

---

[1] Ueber die Bewegung der Iris, 1855.

[2] Archiv f. Ophthalmol., xxiv (1878).

[3] Cf. Mosso, Sui movimenti idraulici dell' iride. Turin, 1875.

The pupil, then, seems to be under the dominion of two antagonistic mechanisms; one a contracting mechanism, reflex in nature, the third nerve serving as the efferent, and the optic as the afferent tract; the other a dilating mechanism, tonic in nature, of which the cervical sympathetic is the efferent channel. Hence, when the third or optic nerve is divided, not only does contraction of the pupil cease to be manifest, but active dilation occurs, on account of the tonic dilating influence of the sympathetic being left free to work. When, on the other hand, the sympathetic is divided, this tonic dilating influence falls away, and contraction results. When the optic or third nerve is stimulated, the dilating effect of the sympathetic is overcome, and contraction results; and, when the sympathetic is stimulated, the contracting influence of the third is overcome, and dilation ensues.

But there are considerations which show that the matter is still more complex than this. A small quantity of atropin introduced into the eye or into the system causes a dilation of the pupil. This might be attributed to a paralysis of the third nerve, and indeed it is found that after atropin the falling of light on the retina no longer causes contraction of the pupil. A difficulty, however, is introduced by the fact that when the third nerve is divided, and when, therefore, the contracting effects of stimulation of the retina are placed entirely on one side, and there is nothing to prevent the sympathetic producing its dilating effects to the utmost, dilation is still further increased by atropin. When physostigmin is introduced into the eye or system, contraction of the pupil is caused whether the third nerve be divided or not; and when the dose is sufficiently strong the contraction is so great that it cannot be overcome by stimulation of the sympathetic. The dilation which is caused by a sufficient dose of atropin is greater than that which can ordinarily be produced by stimulation of the sympathetic, and the contraction caused by a sufficient dose of physostigmin is greater than that which is ordinarily produced in a reflex manner by stimulation of the optic nerve, or even than that produced by direct stimulation of the third nerve. Evidently these drugs act on some local mechanism, the one in such a way as to cause dilation, the other in such a way as to cause contraction. Such a local mechanism cannot, however, lie in the ophthalmic ganglion, for both drugs produce these effects in a most marked degree after the ganglion has been excised. We must suppose, *therefore*, that the mechanism is situated in the iris itself or in the choroid, where, indeed, ganglionic nerve-cells are abundant. But if we admit the existence of such a local mechanism, it is at least probable that both the sympathetic and the third nerve act not directly on either the sphincter or dilator pupillæ, but indirectly through means of the local nervous mechanism.

The share of the fifth nerve in the work of the iris seems to be in part a sensory one; the iris is sensitive, and the sensory impulses which are generated in it pass from it along the fibres of the fifth nerve.

Though the ophthalmic ganglion does receive fibres directly from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, the dilating action of the sympathetic would seem to be carried out not by these fibres, but by fibres joining the ophthalmic branch of the fifth nerve higher up in its course, and passing to the iris apparently by the long ciliary nerves. According to Oehl,[1] when these fibres, which appear to run alongside the ophthalmic branch, rather than actually to become part of the nerve, are destroyed, stimulation of the sympathetic in the neck produces no dilation of the pupil whatever. Section of the ophthalmic branch itself causes contraction, and stimulation of the peripheral end dilation of the pupil; and the effects are still seen after the sympathetic fibres have become degenerated in consequence of the removal of the superior cervical ganglion. From these facts Oehl infers that the fifth nerve itself contains dilating fibres, and he believes that these take their origin from the Gasserian ganglion. Oehl's results, independently arrived at by Rosenthal,[2] were conducted on dogs and rabbits. Guttmann[3] came to a similar conclusion as regards frogs; he found the dilator fibres of the cervical sympathetic passed through the Gasserian ganglion, and were there reinforced by fibres taking origin in the ganglion itself. Hensen and Völckers[4] also found in the dog dilating fibres in the fifth nerve, and Vulpian[5] has observed reflex dilation of the pupil after section of both cervical and thoracic sympathetic, and removal of both the upper and lower cervical ganglia. These dilating fibres of the fifth nerve have, however, been thought by some to be vaso-motorial in nature, producing changes in the pupil in an indirect way by affecting its blood-supply.

When atropin is applied locally so as to affect the pupil of one eye only, the large amount of light entering through the dilated pupil may cause a contraction of the pupil of the other eye.

The movements of the pupil may be brought about through reflex action by sensory impulses other than those arising in the retina or optic nerve. Holmgren[6] finds that in rabbits, after section of the optic nerve, dilation of the pupil follows upon the hearing of a noise, and indeed upon any sufficiently acute sensation.

We have already stated that when we accommodate for near objects the pupil is contracted; the one movement is "associated" with the other; that is to say, the special central nervous mechanism employed in carrying out the one act is so connected by nervous ties of some kind or other with that employed in carrying out the other, that when we set the one mechanism in action we unintentionally set the other in action also. A similar associated contraction of the pupil occurs when the eye is directed inward. Conversely, the drugs which have a special action on the pupil, such as atropin and calabar bean, also affect the mechanism of accommodation. Atropin paralyzes it so that the eye remains adjusted for far objects; and physostigmin throws the eye into a condition of forced accommodation for near objects. The latter effect may be explained, on the view stated above, by supposing that the calabar bean throws the ciliary muscle into a state of tetanic contraction in the same way that it does the sphincter pupillæ.

---

[1] Henle and Meissner's Bericht, 1862, p. 506.

[2] See Guttmann, Centralblatt f. Med. Wiss., 1864, p. 598.

[3] Op. cit.

[4] Op. cit.

[5] Ct. Rd., t. 86 (1878), p. 1436.

[6] Loc. cit.

According to Hensen and Völckers[1] the nervous centre of accommodation lies in dogs in the hind part of the floor of the third ventricle, and is connected with the most anterior bundles of the roots of the third nerve. Immediately behind this accommodation centre, in the front part of the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius, comes the centre for the contraction of the pupils, and in spite of the association of the two centres in their ordinary functional activity, Hensen and Völckers find that accommodation may be brought about by carefully stimulating the accommodation centre by means of the interrupted current without any accompanying change in the iris, except a passive bulging forward caused by the increase in the curvature of the lens. The same observers state that dilation of the pupil results when the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius is stimulated, not in the median line, but more to the side; and that the muscles of the eyeball supplied by the third nerve have their nervous centres placed also in the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius, but behind that for the contraction of the pupil.

We can accommodate at will; but few persons can effect the necessary change in the eye unless they direct their attention to some near or far object, as the case may be, and thus assist their will by visual sensations. By practice, however, the aid of external objects may be dispensed with; and it is when this is achieved that the pupil may seem to be made to dilate or contract at pleasure, accommodation being effected without the eye being turned to any particular object.

---

[1] Archiv f. Ophthalmol., xxiv (1878).

Imperfections in the Dioptric Apparatus.

The emmetropic eye may be taken as the normal eye. The myopic and hypermetropic eyes may be considered as imperfect eyes, though the former possesses certain advantages over the normal eye. An eye might be myopic from too great a convexity of the cornea, or of the anterior surface of the lens, or from permanent spasm of the accommodation-mechanism, or from too great a length of the long axis of the eyeball. According to Donders the last is the usual cause. Similarly, most hypermetropic eyes possess too short a bulb. The presbyopic eye is, as we have seen, an eye normally constituted in which the power of accommodation has been lost or is failing.

According to Iwanoff[1] and v. Arlt[2] in the strongly marked myopic eye there is hypertrophy of the longitudinal (meridional) fibres of the ciliary muscle and atrophy or absence of the circular fibres; in the hypermetropic eye, on the other hand, the circular fibres are well developed, and the meridional fibres scanty.

Spherical Aberration.—In a spherical lens the rays which impinge on the circumference are brought to a focus sooner than those which pass nearer the centre, and the focus of a luminous point, ceasing to be a point, is spread over a surface. Hence, when rays are allowed to fall on the whole of the lens, the image formed on a screen placed in the focus of the more central rays is blurred by the diffusion circles caused by the circumferential rays which have been brought to a premature focus. In an ordinary optical instrument spherical aberration is obviated by a diaphragm which shuts off the more circumferential rays. In the eye the iris is an adjustable diaphragm; and when the pupil contracts in near vision the more divergent rays proceeding from a near object, which tend to fall on the circumferential parts of the lens, are cut off. As, however, the refractive power of the lens does not increase regularly and progressively from the centre to the circumference, but varies most irregularly, the purpose of the narrowing of the pupil cannot be simply to obviate spherical aberration; and, indeed, the other optical imperfections of the eye are so great that such spherical aberrations as are caused by the lens produce no obvious effect on vision.

---

[1] Archiv f. Ophthalmol., xv, p. 284.

[2] U. d. Ursachen, etc., der Kurzsichtigkeit, 1876.

Astigmatism.—We have hitherto treated the eye as if its dioptric surfaces were all parts of perfect spherical surfaces. In reality this is rarely the case, either with the lens or with the cornea. Slight deviations do not produce any marked effect, but there is one deviation which is present to a certain extent in most eyes, and is very largely developed in some, known as regular astigmatism. This exists when the dioptric surface is not spherical but more convex along one meridian than another, more convex, for instance, along the vertical than along the horizontal meridian. When this is the case the rays proceeding from a luminous point are not brought to a single focus at a point, but possess two linear foci, one nearer than the normal focus and corresponding to the more convex surface, the other farther than the normal and corresponding to the less convex surface. If the vertical meridians of the surface be more convex than the horizontal, then the nearer linear focus will be horizontal and the farther linear focus will be vertical, and *vice versa.* (This can be shown much more effectually on a model than in a diagram in which we are limited to two dimensions.) Now, in order to see a vertical line distinctly, it is much more important that the rays which diverge from the line in the series of horizontal planes should be brought to a focus properly than those which diverge in the vertical plane of the line itself; and similarly, in order to see a horizontal line distinctly it is much more important that the rays which diverge from the line in the series of vertical planes should be brought to a focus properly than those which diverge in the horizontal plane of the line itself. Hence a horizontal line held before an astigmatic dioptric surface, most convex in the vertical meridians, will give rise to the image of a horizontal line at the nearer focus, the vertical rays diverging from the line being here brought to a linear horizontal focus. Similarly, a vertical line held before the same surface will give rise to an image of a vertical line at the farther focus, the horizontal rays diverging from the vertical line being here brought to a linear vertical focus. In other words, with a dioptric surface most convex in the vertical meridians, horizontal lines are brought to a focus sooner than are vertical lines.

Most eyes are thus more or less astigmatic, and generally with a greater convexity along the vertical meridians. If a set of horizontal or vertical lines be looked at, or if the near point of accommodation be determined by Scheiner's experiment (p. 636), for the needle placed first horizontally and then vertically, the horizontal lines or needle will be distinctly visible at a shorter distance from the eye than the vertical lines or needle. Similarly, the vertical line must be farther from the eye than a horizontal one, if both are to be seen distinctly at the same time. The cause of astigmatism is, in the great majority of cases, the unequal curvature of the cornea; but sometimes the fault lies in the lens, as was the case with Young.

When the curvature of the cornea or lens differs not in two meridians only but in several, irregular astigmatism is the result. A certain amount of irregular astigmatism exists in most lenses, thus causing the image of a bright point, such as a star, to be not a circle but a radiate figure.

Chromatic Aberration.—The different rays of the spectrum are of different refrangibility, those towards the violet end of the spectrum being brought to a focus sooner than those near the red end. This in optical instruments is obviated by using compound lenses made up of various kinds of glass. In the eye we have no evidence that the lens is so constituted as to correct this fault; still the total dispersive power of the instrument is so small, that such amount of chromatic aberration as does exist attracts little notice. Nevertheless some slight aberration may be detected by careful observation. When the spectrum is observed at some distance the violet end will not be seen in focus at the same time as the red. If a luminous point be looked at through a narrow orifice covered by a piece of violet glass, which while shutting out the yellow and green allows the red and blue rays to pass through, there will be seen alternately an image having a blue centre with a red fringe, or a red centre with a blue fringe, according as the image of the point looked at is thrown on one side or other of the true focus. Thus supposing *f* (Fig. 178) to be the plane of the mean focus of *A*, the violet rays will be brought to a focus in the plane *V*, and the red rays in the plane *R*; if

FIG. 178.

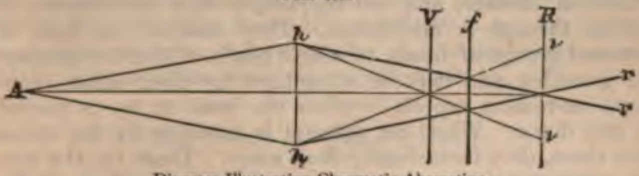


Diagram Illustrating Chromatic Aberration.

h h is the dioptric surface, *h v* represents the blue, and *h r* the red rays; *V* is the focal plane of the blue, *R* of the red rays.

the rays be supposed to fall on the retina between V and f, the diverging or blue rays will form a centre surrounded by the still converging red rays; whereas if the rays fall on the retina between f and R, the converging red rays will form a centre with the still diverging blue rays forming a fringe round them; when the object is in focus at f, the two kinds of rays will be mixed together.

Entoptic Phenomena.—The various media of the eye are not uniformly transparent; the rays of light in passing through them undergo local absorption and refraction, and thus various shadows are thrown on the retina, of which we become conscious as imperfections in the field of vision, especially when the eye is directed to a uniformly illuminated surface. These are spoken of as entopic phenomena, and are very varied, many forms having been described.

The most common are those caused by the presence of floating bodies in the vitreous humor, the so-called *muscæ volitantes*. These are readily seen when the eye is turned towards a uniform surface, and are frequently very troublesome in looking through a microscope. They assume the form of rows and groups of beads, of single beads, of streaks, patches, and granules, and may be recognized by their almost continual movement, especially when the head or eye is moved up and down. When an attempt is made to fix the vision upon them, they immediately float away. Tears on the cornea, temporary unevenness on the anterior surface of the cornea after the eyelid has been pressed on it, and imperfections in the lens or its capsule, also give rise to visual images. Not unfrequently a radiate figure corresponding to the arrangement of the fibres of the lens makes its appearance.

Imperfections in the margin of the pupil appear in the shadow of the iris which bounds the field of vision; and the movements of the iris in one eye may be rendered visible by alternately closing and opening the other; the field of the first may be observed to contract when light enters, and to expand when the light is shut off from the second. The media of the eye are fluorescent; a condition which favors the perception of the ultra-violet rays. If a white sheet or white cloud be looked at in daylight through a Nicol's prism, a somewhat bright double cone or double tuft, with the apices touching, of a faint blue color, is seen in the centre of the field of vision, crossed by a similar double cone of a somewhat yellow darker color. These are spoken of as Haidinger's brushes; they rotate as the prism is rotated, and are supposed to be due to the unequal absorption of the polarized light in the yellow spot. The prism must *be frequently* rotated, as when the prism remains at rest the phenomena fade. Lastly, according to Helmholtz, the optical arrangements have a further imperfection in that the dioptric surfaces are not truly centred on the optic axis.

SEC. 2. VISUAL SENSATIONS.

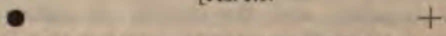
Light falling on the retina excites *sensory impulses*, and these passing up the optic nerve to certain parts of the brain, produce changes in certain cerebral structures, and thus give rise to what we call a *sensation*. In a sensation we ought to be able to distinguish between the events through which the impact of the rays of light on the retina is enabled to generate sensory impulses, and the events, or rather series of events, through which these sensory impulses (for, judging by the analogy of motor nerves, we have no reason to think that they undergo any fundamental changes in passing along the optic nerve), by the agency of the cerebral arrangements, develop into a sensation. Such an analysis, however, is at present at least, in most particulars, quite beyond our power; and we must therefore treat of the sensations as a whole, distinguishing between the peripheral and central phenomena, on the rare occasions when we are able to do so.

The Origin of Visual Impulses.

Of primary importance to the understanding of the way in which luminous undulations give rise to those nervous changes which pass along the optic nerve as visual impulses, is the fact that the rays of light produce their effect by acting not on the optic nerve itself but on its terminal organs (see pp. 619–21). They pass through the anterior layers of the retina apparently without inducing any effect; it is not till they have reached the region of the rods and cones that they set up the changes concerned in the generation of visual impulses; and the impulses here generated travel back to the layer of fibres in the anterior surface of the retina and thence pass along the optic nerve. That the optic fibres are themselves insensible to light and that visual impulses begin in the region of rods and cones is shown by the phenomena of the blind spot and of Purkinje's figures respectively.

Blind Spot.—There is one part of the retina on which rays of light falling give rise to no sensations; this is the entrance of the optic nerve, and the corresponding area in the field of vision is called the blind spot. If the visual axis of one eye, the right for instance, the other being closed, be fixed on a black spot in a white sheet of paper, and a small black object, such as the point of a quill pen dipped in ink, be moved gradually sideways over the paper away to the outside of the field of vision, at a certain distance the black point of the quill will disappear from view. On continuing the movement still farther outward the point will again come into view and continue in sight until it is lost in the periphery of the field of vision (Fig. 179). If the pen be used to make a mark on the paper at the moment when it is lost to view, and at the moment when it comes into sight again; and if similar marks be made along the other meridians as well as the horizontal, an irregular outline will be drawn circumscribing an area of the field of vision within which rays of light produce no visual sensation. This is the blind spot. The dimensions of the figure drawn vary of course with the distance of the paper from the eye. If this distance be known, the size as well as the position of the area of the retina corresponding to the blind spot may be calculated from the diagrammatic eye (p. 634). The position exactly coincides with the entrance of the optic nerve, and the dimensions (about 1.5 mm. diameter) also correspond. While drawing the outline as above directed the indications of the large branches of the retinal vessels as they diverge from the entrance of the nerve can frequently be recognized. The existence of the blind spot is also shown by the fact that an image of light, sufficiently small, thrown upon the optic nerve by means of the ophthalmoscope, gives rise to no sensations.

[Fig. 179.



Fix the visual axis of the right eye on the black spot, keeping the left eye closed. Hold the page about five inches from the eye, and both the spot and cross will be seen. If now, while the right eye is steadily fixed on the spot, the page is moved slowly outwards, the cross will disappear entirely, and again reappear if the movement is continued.]

The existence of the blind spot proves that the optic fibres themselves are insensible to light; it is only through the agency of the retinal expansion that they can be stimulated by luminous vibrations.

Purkinje's Figures.—If one enters a dark room with a candle, and while looking at a plain (not parti-colored) wall, moves the candle up and down, holding it on a level with the eyes by the side of the head, there will appear in the field of vision of the eye of the same side, projected on the wall, an image of the retinal vessels, quite similar to that seen on looking into an eye with the ophthalmoscope. The field of vision is illuminated with a glare, and on this the branched retinal vessels appear as shadows. In this mode of experimenting the light enters the eye through the cornea, and an image of the candle is formed on the nasal side of the retina; and it is the light emanating from this image which throws shadows of the retinal vessels on to the rest of the retina. A far better method is for a second person to concentrate the rays of light, with a lens of low power, on to the outside of the sclerotic just behind the cornea; the light in this case emanates from the illuminated spot on the sclerotic and passing straight through the vitreous humor throws a direct shadow of the vessels on to the retina. Thus the rays passing through the sclerotic at b, Fig. 180, in the direction b v, will throw a shadow of the vessel v on to the retina at β; this will appear as a dark line at B in the glare of the field of vision. This proves that the structures in which visual impulses originate must lie behind the retinal vessels, otherwise the shadows of these could not be perceived.

Fig. 180.

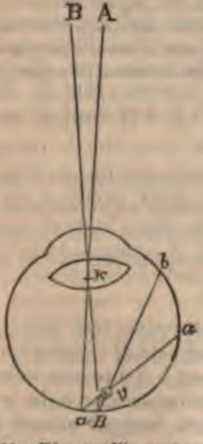


Fig. 181.

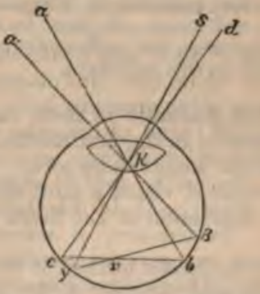


Fig. 180.—Diagram Illustrating the Formation of Purkinje's Figures, when the illumination is directed through the Sclerotic.

Fig. 181.—Diagram Illustrating the Formation of Purkinje's Figures, when the illumination is directed through the Cornea.

If the light be moved from b to a, the shadow on the retina will move from β to α, and the dark line in the field of vision will move from B to A. If the distance $B\,A$ be measured when the whole image is projected at a known distance, $k\,B$ from the eye, k being the optical centre,[1] then, knowing the distance $k\,\beta$ in the diagrammatic eye, the distance $\beta\,\alpha$ can be calculated. But if the distance $\beta\,\alpha$ be thus estimated, and the distance $b\,a$ be directly measured, the distances $\beta\nu$, $\alpha\nu$, $b\nu$, $a\nu$ can be calculated, and if the appearance in the field of vision is really caused by the shadow of ν falling on β, these distances ought to correspond to the distances of the retinal vessels ν from the sclerotic b on the one hand, and from that part of the retina β where visual impressions begin, on the other. H. Müller found that the distance $\beta\nu$ thus calculated corresponded to the distance of the retinal vessels from the layer of rods and cones. Thus Purkinje's figures prove, in the first place, that the sensory impulses which form the commencement of visual sensations originate in some part of the retina behind the retinal vessels, *i. e.*, somewhere between them and the choroid coat; and H. Müller's calculations go far to show that they originate at the most posterior or external part of the retina, viz., the layer of rods and cones. It must be admitted, however, that H. Müller's results were not sufficiently exact to allow any great stress to be placed on this argument.

It is desirable in these cases to move the light to and fro, especially in the first method, as the retina soon becomes tired, and the image fades away. Some observers can recognize in the axis of vision a faint shadow corresponding to the edge of the depression of the fovea centralis.

In the second method of experimenting, the image always moves in the same direction as the light, as it obviously must do. In the first method, where the light enters through the cornea, the image moves in the same direction as the light when the light is moved from right to left, provided the movement does not extend beyond the middle of the cornea, but in the opposite direction to the light when the latter is moved up and down. In Fig. 181, which represents a horizontal section of an eye, if a be moved to α, b will move to β, the shadow on the retina c to γ, and the image d to δ. If, on the other hand, a be supposed to move above the plane of the paper, b will move below, in consequence c will move above, and d will appear to move below, *i. e.*, d will sink as a rises.

The retinal vessels may also be rendered visible by looking through a small orifice at a bright field, such as the sky, and moving the orifice very rapidly from side to side or up and down. If the movement be from side to side, the vessels which run vertical will be seen; if up and down, the horizontal vessels. The fine capillary vessels are seen more easily in this way than by Purkinje's method. The same appearances may also be produced by looking through a microscope from which the objective has been removed, and the eyepiece only left (or in which at least there is no object distinctly in focus in the field), and moving the head rapidly from side to side or backwards and forwards. Or the microscope itself may be moved; a circular movement of the field will then bring both the vertical and horizontally directed vessels into view at the same time.

---

[1] For the properties of the optical centre, we must refer the reader to the various treatises on optics. The optical centre of a lens is the point through which all the principal rays, of the various pencils of rays falling on the lens, pass. The diagrammatic eye of Listing (p. 634) has two optical centres, but these may, without serious error, be further reduced for practical purposes to one lying in the lens near its posterior surface, at about 15 mm. distance from the retina.

The Photochemistry of the Retina.—In seeking to understand how it is that rays of light falling upon the region of the rods and cones can give rise to visual impulses in the optic nerve we naturally turn to a chemical explanation. We are familiar with the fact that rays of light are able to bring about the decomposition of very many chemical substances; and we accordingly speak of these substances as being sensitive to light. All the facts dwelt on in this book illustrate the great complexity and corresponding instability of the composition of protoplasm. And we might reasonably suppose that protoplasm itself would be sensitive to light; that is to say that rays of light falling on even undifferentiated protoplasm might set up a decomposition of that protoplasm and so inaugurate a molecular disturbance; in other words, that light might act as a direct stimulus to protoplasm. As a matter of fact, however, such evidence as we at present possess goes to show that native undifferentiated protoplasm is not sensitive to light (that is, to those particular waves which when they fall on our retina give rise in us to the sensation of light), though in at least one instance a lowly organism, whose protoplasm exhibits very little differentiation and in particular contains no pigment, does not manifest a sensitiveness to light.[1] Nor can we be surprised at this indifference to protoplasm when we reflect that what we may call pure protoplasm is remarkable for its transparency, that is to say the rays of light pass through it with the slightest possible absorption. But in order that light may produce chemical effects, it must be absorbed; it must be spent in doing the chemical work. Accordingly the first step towards the formation of an organ of vision is the differentiation of a portion of protoplasm into a pigment at once capable of

---

[1] Engelmann, Pflüger's Archiv, xix (1879), p. 1.

present. We have only to suppose that the
stances are of such a nature as to act as a
protoplasm of other parts of the organism
manifold evidence of the exquisite sensitivenes
in general to chemical stimuli), in order to
light falling on the organism might excite mov
modify movements which were being carrie
otherwise affect the organism in whole or in p

Such considerations as the foregoing may
even the complex organ of vision of the high
we suppose that the actual terminations of t
are surrounded by substances sensitive to light,
easy to imagine how light falling on these sensi
should set free chemical bodies possessed of t
acting as stimuli to the actual nerve-endings
rise to visual impulses in the optic fibres. W
imagine," but we are, at present, far from bei
definite proofs that such an explanation of the
impulses is the true one, probable and enticin
pear. One of the most striking features in t
the retina is the abundance of pigment in the
is sometimes called choroidal epithelium. I
suppose that the sole function of this pigment
superfluous rays of light, and that the rays th
put to no use but simply wasted; and Küh
shown that the pigment is sensitive to light;
in it induced by light are excessively slow, a
only possible but fairly distinct with albinos

the substance of which we are in search. But unfortunately this pigment is absent from the cones, and from the fovea centralis, which as we shall see is the region of distinct vision; it is further entirely wanting in some animals which undoubtedly see very well, and lastly animals, such as the frog, naturally possessing the pigment, continue to see very well when it has been absolutely bleached, as it may be by prolonged exposure of the eyes to strong light. We cannot therefore at present at least explain the origin of visual impulses by the help of visual purple. But at the same time it must be remembered that the discovery of its existence is a step in the desired direction; though it has failed us now, it gives promise of success in the future.

That in the retina there does exist a substance or do exist substances, presumably of the sensitive nature which we have indicated, which are used up in vision, has been urged by Exner[1] to be proved by the following experiment:

It is well known that when pressure is forcibly applied to the eyeball, the retina speedily becomes insensible to light. If a sheet of paper, one-half of which is white, and the other black, but having in its middle a white patch covered temporarily with black, be held before the eyes, and if while looking at the sheet, the eyeball be pressed till the white half is no longer visible, and then the cover of the white patch in the black half be suddenly withdrawn, the white patch is recognized for awhile though the white half is invisible; very soon, however, the white patch fades away too. Exner's argument is that the blindness due to pressure must be caused not by a mere loss of conductivity of the nervous structures, but by a consumption of visual substance which, owing to the pressure checking the nutritive supply, cannot be furnished rapidly enough. Thus in the retina corresponding to the white half of the sheet looked at this visual substance is being used up, while in that part which corresponds to the white patch, there is no consumption as long as the black cover is kept on. When the black cover is removed, the rays from the white patch accordingly find some visual substance to work upon, and hence the patch is visible until the supply of visual substance here also is in turn exhausted. Kühne,[2] however, urges that Exner's interpretation is not valid and that the phenomena may be explained on the Law of Contrast, of which we shall treat presently, manifested in a not wholly exhausted retina.

But even admitting as probable the existence of sensitive visual substances, the products of whose decomposition act as stimuli to the real endings of the retinal nervous mechanism, we cannot at present state anything definite concerning those nerve-endings or the manner of their stimulation. It may be that even the outer limbs of the rods and cones in spite of the apparent break of continuity between the outer and inner limbs, are really nervous in nature. It may be on the other hand that the outer limbs are either purely dioptric in function or are in some way associated with the sensitive visual substances, so that the nervous structures must be considered as extending at least no further than the inner limbs. We cannot as yet make any definite statement in the one direction or the other.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xvi (1878), p. 407.

[2] Untersuch. Physiol. Inst. Heidel., Bd. ii (1878), p. 46.

Visual Purple.—As long ago as 1839 Krohn called attention to the rose color of the retinas of cephalopods; but though his observations were confirmed by Max Schultze and others, and though some years afterwards H. Müller, and Leydig and Max Schultze, found a similar coloration in the retinas of frogs and other vertebrates, the matter did not attract any great interest untill Boll[1] discovered that this color was in the living animal susceptible to light, being bleached when the animal was exposed to light but returning again when the animal was kept in the dark. He found that when the eye of a frog which had been kept for some time in the dark was rapidly opened, the outer limbs of the rods of the retina presented a very beautiful purple, or (as he afterwards preferred to call it) red color, which after a few seconds changed into a yellow and finally disappeared, leaving the rods colorless. Scattered among these red or purple rods were a number of bright-green rods, the color of which also faded on exposure to light. If the frog had previously been exposed for some time to a bright light, the retina, even with the most rapid manipulation, was found to be colorless. And by examining at intervals the eyes of a series of frogs which after being kept in the dark had been exposed to light for variable periods, and conversely of frogs which, after an exposure to bright light, had been kept in the dark for variable periods, Boll was enabled to satisfy himself that in the living eye the color of the rods was destroyed by exposure to light and restored by rest in the dark. Using under similar circumstances monochromatic instead of white light, he came to the conclusion that under exposure to green light the retina became first purple, then violet, and finally colorless; under blue and violet light, it first suffered a change to violet and finally lost all color; while under red light it became a deeper red, under yellow light a brighter red, and when exposed to the ultraviolet rays underwent very little change. He found this visual purple or visual red in the outer limbs of the rods not only of the frog, but of all other vertebrates, including mammalia, whose retinas contain sufficiently conspicuous rods. He concluded that the color must be largely concerned in the act of vision.

---

[1] Berlin. Sitzungsberichte, 1876, Sitzung, Nov. 12; 1877, Sitzung, Jan. 11. Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1877, p. 4.

Kühne[1] taking up and largely extending Boll's discovery has been led to the following results:

The color of the rods is susceptible to light not only during life but also after death, the fading which occurs after the removal and opening of an eye being due not to post-mortem changes but to the action of light.

The color of the rods is due to the presence of a distinct pigment, the visual purple, which may be extracted from the substance of the rods by dissolving these in an aqueous solution of bile salts. A clear purple solution is thus obtained, which is capable of being bleached by the action of light, and in its general features and behavior is similar to the pigment as it naturally exists in the retina.

Visual purple is found exclusively in the outer limbs of the rods; it has never yet been found in the cones, and it is accordingly absent from the retinas of animals (such as those of snakes) which are composed of cones only, and from the macula lutea and fovea centralis of the retinas of man and the ape. The intensity of the coloration varies in different animals, and the retinas even of some animals possessing rods (bat, dove, hen) seem to be wholly devoid of the visual purple; it is generally well marked in retinas in which the outer limbs of the rods are well developed. Its absence or presence is not dependent on nocturnal habits, since the intense color of the retina of the owl is in strong contrast to the absence of color in the bat. It has been found in the retina of a sheep's embryo. As a general rule the amount of pigment present may be said to be in inverse ratio to the development of colored "globules" or "lenses" in the rods and cones; but it would be premature to insist on any exact relation.

The visual purple is bleached not only by white but also by monochromatic light; the change, however, in the latter is slower than in the former. Of the various prismatic rays the most active are the greenish-yellow rays, those to the blue side of these coming next, the least active being the red. Now it is precisely the greenish-yellow rays which are most readily absorbed by the color itself. A natural colored retina or a solution of visual purple gives a diffuse spectrum without any defined absorption-bands, and according to the amount of coloring material through which the light passes, absorption is seen either to be limited to the greenish-yellow part of the spectrum or to spread thence towards the blue and to a much less extent towards the red. Thus the various prismatic rays produce a photochemical effect on the visual purple in proportion as they are absorbed by it. Under the action of light the visual purple, whether in solution or in its natural condition in the rods, passes through what Kühne calls a chamois color (*i. e.*, the purplish-orange seen on the chamois) to a yellow, and finally becomes colorless; and Kühne believes that he is justified in speaking of a visual yellow and visual

---

[1] Zur Photochemie der Netzhaut. "Ueber den Sehpurpur," Verhandl. d. naturhistorischmed. Vereins in Heidelberg, Bd. i, 1877. "Sehen ohne Purpur," Untersuch. physiol. Instit. Heidelberg, Bd. i, 1877. Ewald and Kühne, "Ueber den Sehpurpur," ibid.

restored to its natural position, the purple will r
kept in the dark. The choroidal epithelium may
of as a "purpurogenous" membrane.

If an excised eye, a portion of the retina o
bleached by light, be treated with a 4 per cent.
alum before the choroidal epithelium has had tim
bleaching effects, the retina may remain permane
tion, the photochemical effect may, as the phot
fixed. In this way Kühne succeeded in obtaining
grams."

The above facts leave no room for doubt that t
in some way concerned in vision, but it is impossib
what is its exact function. Its conspicuous absen
and especially its absence from the fovea centralis
vision, indeed the best and most exact vision, ma
out it; and Kühne has satisfied himself that fr
have been wholly and thoroughly bleached by exp
see perfectly well. It is very tempting to conne
some way with color vision, but we know that our
exact in the fovea centralis, and the frogs just sp
be as susceptible to color as normal frogs.

Kühne and Ewald[1] have called attention to the r
which the cells of the retinal pigment epithelium
influence of light. When an eye has been shut
for some little time the pigment is concentrated i
cells, and the remarkable fringes of filamentous pro
with the pigment granules or crystals which the
slight distance only between the limbs of the rods
one-third down the length of the outer limbs of t
the influence of light these processes loaded wit
themselves a much longer way down towards the
membrane; in consequence a considerable quant
found massed between the outer, and even the i
rods and cones: indeed, the outer limbs of the r
same time become jammed as it were between t
ment, causing the epithelial layer to adhere very

have shown that an electrical change takes place in the retina and optic nerve whenever the former is affected by light. When the electrodes of a galvanometer are placed one on the cornea and the other on the posterior surface of the eyeball, or on the transverse section of the optic nerve, the galvanometer indicates the existence of a current corresponding to the so-called natural nerve-currents, the cornea being positive; and this current undergoes a variation when light falls upon or is withdrawn from the eye. To eliminate currents proceeding from the iris, the front half of the bulb may be cut away and the electrodes placed one on the retina and the other on the hinder surface of the eyeball or on the optic nerve or on the surface of the brain; in this case also the incidence or withdrawal of light produces variations in the "natural" currents; and Dewar and McKendrick find that these variations due to the action of light may be shown in the intact body by simply placing one electrode on the cornea and the other on some portion of the surface of the body. The variations observed are sometimes positive, sometimes negative, or, according to Dewar and McKendrick, always positive at first, becoming negative as the action of light continues (exhaustion), with a positive rebound upon the withdrawal of the light. Currents may be observed between the sclerotic and optic nerve after the removal of the retina, but these are wholly unaffected by light; and the variations just described as brought about by light appear to be in proportion to the functional activity of the retina. It would thus appear that the incidence of light on the retina produces electrical changes comparable to those resulting from the stimulation of an ordinary nerve; the fact that the changes frequently appear in the form of a "positive" instead of "negative variation" may in the present state of our knowledge of nerve-currents be fairly considered as of secondary importance.

Holmgren[1] has shown that these retinal currents are manifested with undiminished energy in eyes in which the visual purple has been completely bleached, and on the other hand that the visual purple may continue to exist and to remain purple long after the retinal currents have disappeared.

Simple Sensations.

Relations of the Sensation to the Stimulus.—If we put aside for the present all questions of color, we may see that light, viewed as a stimulus affecting the retina, varies in intensity, that is, in the energy of the luminous vibrations as manifested by their amplitude, and in duration, that is, in the length of time a succession of waves continue to fall upon the retina. The effect of the light will also depend on the extent of retinal surface exposed to the luminous vibrations at the

---

[1] Untersuch. Physiol. Inst. Heidel., Bd. ii (1878), p. 81.

flashes of light, follow each other at a suffic
val, the two sensations are fused into one
point moving rapidly round in a circle
sensation of a continuous circle of light. T
comparable to muscular tetanus. The interv
takes place, that is the interval between
which must be exceeded in order that succe
sations may be produced, varies according
the light, being shorter with the stronger l
light it is about $\frac{1}{10}$th second, with a strong l
second. This may be shown by rotating r
eye a disk arranged with alternate black an
equal width. With a faint illumination,
dicative of the successive sensations from
not being completely fused, ceases when the
so rapid that each pair of black and white
$\frac{1}{10}$th second in passing before the eye.
illumination is used the rapidity must be inc
flickering disappears. That part of the se
recognized as lasting after the cessation o
frequently spoken of as the "after-image."

Though the sensation is longer with the strong
looking at the sun lasting for some time), the
the decline begins relatively earlier, hence the
the complete fusion of successive sensations with
The interval at which fusion takes place differs w
being shortest with yellow, intermediate with re
blue.

The duration of a stimulus necessary to c
tion is exceedingly short; that is to say, the

ceasing before they can make an appreciable change in their position. When a moving body is illuminated by several rapid flashes in succession, several distinct images corresponding to the positions of the body during the several flashes are generated; the images of the body corresponding to the several flashes fall on different parts of the retina.

The intensity of the sensation varies with the luminous intensity of the object; a wax candle appears brighter than a rushlight. The ratio, however, of the sensation to the stimulus is not a simple one. If the luminosity of an object be gradually increased from a very feeble stage to a very bright one, it will be found that the corresponding sensations, though they likewise gradually increase, increase less and less slowly than the luminosity; and at last an increase of the luminosity produces no appreciable increase of sensation; a light, when it reaches a certain brightness, appears so bright that we cannot tell when it becomes any brighter. Hence it is much easier to distinguish a slight difference of brightness between two feeble lights than the same difference between two bright lights. We can easily tell the difference between a rushlight and a wax candle; but two suns, one of which differed from the other merely by just the number of luminous rays which a wax candle emits in addition to those set forth by a rushlight, would appear to us to have exactly the same brightness. In a darkened room an object placed before a candle will throw what we consider a deep shadow on a sheet of paper, or any white surface. If, however, the sunlight be allowed to fall on the paper at the same time from the opposite side, the shadow is no longer visible. The difference between the total light reflected from that part of the paper where the shadow was, and which is illuminated by the sun alone, and that reflected from the rest of the paper which is illuminated by the candle as well as by the sun, remains the same; yet we can no longer appreciate that difference.

On the other hand, if using two rushlights, we throw two shadows on a white surface, and move one rushlight away until the shadow caused by it ceases to be visible, and having noted the distance to which it had to be moved, repeat the same experiment with two wax candles, we shall find that the wax candle has to be moved just as far as the rushlight. In fact it is found, by careful observation, that within tolerably wide limits, the smallest difference of light which we can appreciate by visual sensations is a constant fraction (about $\frac{1}{100}$th) of the total luminosity employed. The same law holds good with regard to the other senses as well. The smallest difference in length we can detect between two lines, one an inch long and the other

diminished a point is reached at which no sens
lows; or, in other words, that there is a certa
stimulus which must be exceeded before any se
produced. By the introduction of this "limina
stimulus he transformed, with the help of the n
tion of integration, Weber's law, which is only a
relation of increments of stimulus and sensati
spoken of as Fechner's formula, or Fechner's la
as a *measure* of the sensation in terms of the st
eral form that "the sensation varies as the logar
lus."[1] Independent, however, of the importan
law ceases to hold good when the stimulus is e
very great, *i. e.*, fails exactly at the point at whi
use of it, there are serious objections to the va
formula.[2]

Distinction and Fusion of Sensations.—W
a large portion of the retina the total sensa
greater in *amount* than when a small por
retina is affected; a large piece of white p
greater total effect on our consciousness t
though, if the surfaces be uniformly and equ

---

[1] Weber's law may be stated mathematically as

$\triangle S$ is the smallest appreciable increment of sens
the corresponding increment of the stimulus x, a
If the increment be regarded as indefinitely sma
then be integrated, we get

$$S = K \log x + c.$$

If x be diminished, there will be a certain valu the *intensity* of the sensation is in each case the same; the small piece of paper appears as bright or as "white" as the large one. If the images of two luminous objects fall on the retina at sufficient distances apart, the consequent sensations are distinct, and the intensity of each sensation will depend solely upon the luminosity of the corresponding object. If, however, the two objects are made to approach each other, a point will be reached at which the two sensations are fused into one. When this occurs, the intensity of the total sensation produced will be greater than that of either of the sensations caused by the single objects. A number of luminous points scattered over a wide surface would appear each to have a certain brightness; each would give rise to a sensation of a certain intensity. If they were all gathered into one spot, that spot would appear far brighter than any of the previous points; the intensity of the sensation would be greater. We may, therefore, suppose the retina to be divided into areas corresponding to sensational units. If the images from two luminous objects fall on separate visual areas, if we may so call them, two distinct sensations will be produced; if, on the contrary, they both fall on the same visual area, one sensation only will be produced. Where the sensations are separate, the intensity of the one (with exceptions hereafter to be mentioned) is not affected by the presence of the other; but where they become fused the intensity of the united sensations is greater than either of, though not equal to the sum of, the single sensations. The existence of these sensational units is the basis of distinct vision. When we speak of the smallest size visible or distinguishable, we are referring to the dimensions of the retinal areas corresponding to these sensational units. The retinal area must be carefully distinguished from the sensational unit, for the sensation is, as we have seen, a process whose arena stretches from the retina to certain parts of the brain, and the circumscription of the sensational unit, though it must begin as a retinal area, must also be continued as a cerebral area in the brain, the latter corresponding to, and being as it were the projection of, the former. With most people two stars appear as a single star when the distance between them subtends an angle of less than 60 seconds, and Weber found that the best eyes failed to distinguish two parallel white streaks when the distance between the two, measured from the middle of each, subtended an angle of less than 73 seconds. Hirschmann[1] could distin-

---

[1] Quoted by Helmholtz, Phys. Optik, p. 841.

cones in the yellow spot, the average diameter of a
part being 3 μ and there being slight intervals bet
cones. Hence if we take the centre of a cone as
anatomical retinal area, these anatomical areas corr
to the physiological visual areas as determined a
say, if two points of the retinal image are less th
may both lie within the area of a single cone; ar
they are less than about 4 μ apart that they cease t
distinct sensations. It must be remembered, h
fusion or distinction of the sensations is ultimat
the brain and not by the retina. Two points of
less than 4 μ apart might lie both within the area
but the reason why, under such circumstances, th
sensation only is not because one cone-fibre only is
points of a retinal image might lie, one on the are
another on the area of an adjoining cone, and stil
apart; in such a case two cone-fibres would be st
only one sensation would be produced. So also in
peripheral parts of the retina two points of the ret
stimulate two cones a considerable distance apart,
to one sensation only.

In the case where the two points lie entirely wi
single cone, it is exceedingly probable that, eve
cones or cone-fibres in the retina are not at the
lated, impulses radiate from the cerebral ending of
into the neighboring cerebral endings of the neig
other words, the sensation-area in the brain does
spond to and is not sharply defined like the retina
ally fades away into neighboring sensation-areas.
two points of the retinal image so far apart that
margins of their respective cerebral sensation-ar
each other in the least; in such a case there can

tion could be discovered. In the last case there would be but one sensation, in the second there might still be two sensations if the marginal fall were great enough, even though the areas partially coalesced. Thus, though the mosaic of rods and cones is the basis of distinct vision, the distinction of fusion of two visual impulses is ultimately determined by the disposition and condition of the cerebral centres. Hence the possibility of increasing by exercise the faculty of distinguishing two sensations, since by use the cerebral sensation-areas become more and more differentiated. This, however, is even more strikingly shown in touch than in sight.

Color Sensations.

When we allow sunlight reflected from a cloud or sheet of paper to fall into the eye, we have a sensation which we call a sensation of white light. When we look at the same light through a prism, and allow different parts of the spectrum to fall in succession into the eye, we have sensations which we call respectively sensations of red, yellow, green, and blue light. In other words, rays of light falling on the retina give rise to different sensations, according to the wave-lengths of the rays. Though we speak of the spectrum as consisting of a few colors, red, green, etc., there are an almost infinite number of intermediate tints in the spectrum itself; and we perceive in external nature a large number of colors, such as purple, brown, gray, etc., which do not correspond to any of the color sensations gained by regarding the successive parts of the spectrum. We find, however, on examination, that many apparently distinct color sensations may be obtained by the fusion of two or more other color sensations. Thus purple, which is not present in the spectrum, may be at once produced by fusing the sensations of blue and red in proper proportions; and the various tints and shades of nature may be imitated by fusing a particular color sensation with the sensation of white, or by allowing a certain quantity of light of a particular color to fall sparsely over the area of the retina, which is at the same time protected from the access of any other light, *i. e.*, as we say, by mixing the color with black. Thus the browns of nature result from various admixtures of yellow, red, white, and black; and a small quantity of white light, scattered over a large area of the retina, *i. e.*, white largely mixed with black, forms a gray. In fact, the qualities of a color depend (1) on the nature of the prismatic color or colors falling on a given area of the retina, *i. e.*, on the wave-lengths of the constituent rays; (2) on the

as being of such a tint or hue. But w
phrases by which we distinguish the se
conditions from the third. The word "
most frequently used to express a color very
but the words "rich" or "deep" are used
ing highly saturated, sometimes as mean
large quantity of light of the particular
the eye. So also with the phrase "bright;
when a large amount of colored and whit
same time on the same retinal area, but we
it to express the mere intensity of the sens

The best method of fusing color sensations
Maxwell, of allowing two different parts of th
the same part of the retina at the same time.
prismatic colors eliminates errors which arise
colors of which are not pure, but mixed, are em
pigments are used, it is the sensations which
not the pigments themselves. Thus while the
and indigo when fused give rise to a sensation
indigo pigments when mixed appear green on
ciprocally absorbing part of each other's color;
absorb the red of the yellow, and the yellow part
of the indigo, so that only green is left for bot
pure pigments, *i. e.*, pigments corresponding as
the prismatic colors, are used, satisfactory res
either by using the reflection of the image of on
falls on the retina at the same spot as the direct
or by allowing the image of one pigment to fall
the sensation produced by the other has passed
sult is easily reached by Helmholtz's simple me
pieces of colored paper a little distance apart on
side of a glass plate inclined at an angle. By
one eye on the glass plate the reflected image

When the sensations corresponding to the several prismatic colors are fused together in various combinations, the following remarkable results are brought about:

1. When red and yellow in certain proportions are mixed together the result is a sensation of orange, quite indistinguishable from the orange of the spectrum itself. Now the latter is produced by rays of certain wave-length, whereas the rays of red and of yellow are respectively of quite a different wave-length. The *orange of the spectrum* cannot be made up by any mixture of the *red and the yellow of the spectrum* in the sense that the red and yellow rays can unite together to form rays of the same wave-length as the orange rays; the three things are absolutely different. It is simply the mixed *sensation* of the red and yellow which is so like the *sensation* of orange; the mixture is entirely and absolutely a physiological one. And since we must suppose that rays of different wave-length give rise to different sensory impulses, and that the sensory impulses generated by orange rays are different from those generated by red and by yellow rays, we are led to infer either that the sensory impulses which rays of a given wave-length originate are themselves of a mixed character, or that the mixture takes place at the time when the sensory impulses are becoming converted into sensations. The first of these views is the one generally adopted.

2. When certain colors are mixed together in pairs in certain definite proportions, the result is white. These colors are:

Red (near *a*),[1]	and Blue-green (near F),
Orange (near C),	and Blue (between F and G),
Yellow (near D),	and Indigo-blue (near G),
Green-yellow (near E),	and Violet (between G and H),

and are said to be "complementary" to each other. To these might be added the peculiar non-prismatic color purple, which with green also gives white.

3. If we select arbitrarily any three distinct colors, *i. e.*, any three parts of the spectrum sufficiently far apart, say red, green and blue, we can, by a proper adjustment of the proportions of each, produce white. Further, by a proper addition of white, these three colors can be taken in such proportions as to produce the sensations of all other colors. That

---

[1] These letters refer to Frauenhofer's lines.

our color sensations by such a diagram
182, where one primary sensation is see
greatest intensity by the rays at the red
the second by those near the middle, an

FIG. 182.

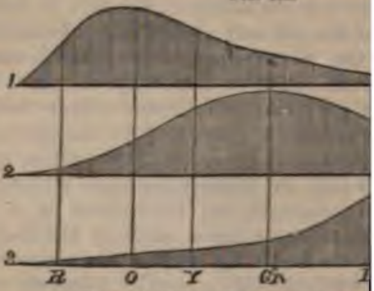


Diagram of Three Primary Color Sen

1 is the so-called "red," 2 "green," and 3 "violet" pri
Y, etc., represent the red, orange, yellow, etc., color of th
shows, by the height of the curve in each case, to what ex
sensations are respectively excited by vibrations of differe

at the violet end of the spectrum. Un
rays are those which produce much of t
of the second, and hardly any of the thi
produce much of the third, less of the se
of the first; and so on.

This theory of three primary color sensa
but since its general acceptance has been

seen (p. 653) that visual impulses are started in that part of the retina which lies beyond the retinal bloodvessels; but in the generation of those impulses we can assign no exact functions to rods or cones, to rod-fibres or cone-fibres, or to the various bodies constituting the external nuclear layer. The view that the cones rather than the rods of the retina are concerned in color vision cannot be regarded as established. The argument that cones are absent from the retinas of nocturnal animals, remains invalid until it has been proved that these animals are color-blind; and the argument that in the fovea centralis cones only exist, may be used equally well to prove that the rods are of no use at all in distinct vision. In the eyes of Birds, Reptiles, and Amphibia, colored globules are found in the cones at the junction of the inner and outer limbs. In the fowl these globules occur in three colors, ruby-red, orange-yellow, and greenish-yellow, and Kühne[1] has extracted three distinct pigments (rhodophane, xanthophane and chlorophane), which, however, are but very feebly sensitive to light. It has been suggested that these colored globules are connected with color vision, the cones with red globules, for instance, allowing red light only to pass through the inner limb and impinge on the outer limb, so that these cones would serve as organs for seeing red. But this is very doubtful.

The Young-Helmholtz theory has not been accepted by all inquirers. Its most serious opponent at the present time is Hering,[2] who, following Aubert,[3] and indeed Leonardo Da Vinci, maintains that the primary visual sensations are white, black, red, yellow, green, and blue. He considers that these several sensations arise as the results of changes in what may be called the visual substance of the visual nervous apparatus (see p. 659), those changes which give rise to black, green, and blue being essentially processes of assimilation or construction of the visual substance, while those which give rise to white, red, and yellow are processes of dissimilation or destruction of the visual substance. Black and white, green and red, blue and yellow, form accordingly antagonistic rather than complementary pairs, and the visual organ is conceived of as never existing during life in a state of complete rest. A satisfactory discussion of the relative merits of this and of the generally accepted view, would lead us beyond the proper limits of this work, but Hering uses his view with great ability to explain the obscure phenomena of "contrasts" (see p. 680) and "negative images" (p. 676).

Admitting, however, that the hypothesis of three primary color sensations explains many of the phenomena of color vision, there still remains the question, "What are the three primary color sensations?" We have spoken of any three arbitrarily selected color sensations producing by manipulation all the other color sensations; but, of what kind are the

---

[1] Journal of Physiology, i (1878), pp. 109–189.

[2] Zur Lehre vom Lichtsinne. Wien. Sitzungsberichte, lxvi (1872), lxviii, lxix, lxx.

[3] Physiologie der Netzhaut, 1865.

Color-Blindness.—All persons vary muc
discriminating and appreciating color, *i.*
and accuracy of their color sensations ; b
gard as similar, colors which to most peopl
tinct, and these persons are said to be "
most common form of color-blindness is tha
to distinguish green and red from each oth
of Dalton, they tell a red gown lying on
or a red cherry among the green leaves, by
by its color. They confound not only red,
but also rose, purple, and blue. They cann
of the spectrum, all this part appearing to t
vision is best explained by supposing that th
the primary sensation of red.

Hence they probably see in the spectrum on
and green, with various tints ; our red, orange,
appearing green, and all the rest blue, green-
a kind of gray. Since the sensation of green see
most intense in that part of the spectrum whi
though of course relatively to the other two prim
intense in the green, our yellow probably corresp
sensation of a bright deep green. All the col
fact, be produced by mixtures of yellow and blu

Cases in which the other primary sensations
be absent, *i. e.*, green-blindness and violet-blindn
rare, and have not as yet been examined with suffi

Influence of the Pigment of the Yellow Spot.—
which part of the

produced by the purplish solution. The yellow spot is consequently marked out as a rosy patch. This very soon, however, dies away.

In speaking of sensation as a function of the stimulus (p. 663), we referred to white light only; but the different colors are unequal in the relations borne by the intensity of the stimulus to the amount of sensation produced. Thus the more refrangible blue rays produce a sensation more readily than the yellow or red rays. Hence in dim lights, as those of evening and moonlight, the blues preponderate, and the reds and yellows are less obvious. So, also, when a landscape is viewed through a yellow glass, the yellow hue suggests to the mind bright sunlight and summer weather, although the actual illumination which reaches the eye is diminished by the glass. Conversely when the same landscape is viewed through a blue glass the idea of moonlight or winter is suggested.

The theory of primary color sensations may be used to explain why any colored light, if made sufficiently intense, appears white. Thus a violet light of moderate intensity appears violet because it excites the primary sensation of violet much more than those of green and red. If the stimulus be increased the maximum of violet stimulation will be reached, while the stimulation of green will continue to be increased and even that of red to a slight degree. The result will be that the light appears violet mixed with green, that is blue. If the stimulus be still further increased while the green and violet are both excited to the maximum, the red stimulation may be increased until the result is violet, green, and red in the proportions which make white light. And so with light of other colors.

After-images.—We have already seen that in vision the sensation lasts much longer than the stimulus. Under certain circumstances, such as condition of the eye, intensity of the stimulus, etc., the sensation is so prolonged, that it is spoken of as an after-image. Thus, if the eye be directed to the sun, the image of that body is present for a long while after; and if, on early waking, the eye be directed to the window for an instant and then closed, an image of the window with its bright panes and darker sashes, the various parts being of the same color as the object, will remain for an appreciable time. These images, which are simply continuations of the sensation, are spoken of as *positive after-images*. They are best seen after a momentary exposure of the eye to the stimulus.

When, however, the eye has been for some time subject to a stimulus, the sensation which follows the withdrawal of the stimulus is of a different kind; what is called a *negative after-image*, or *negative image*, is produced. If, after looking steadfastly at a white patch on a black ground, the eye be turned to a white ground, a gray patch is seen for some little time. A black patch on a white ground similarly gives rise on a gray ground to a negative image of a white patch. This may

patch ; here the retina is for a while more se
the white negative image.

When a red patch is looked at the neg
green-blue ; that is, the color of the negative
mentary to that of the object. Thus also o
blue, green a pink, yellow an indigo-blue ne
so on. This, too, can be explained as a resu
When the colored patch is looked at one of t
sensations is much exhausted, and the othe
varying proportions, according to the exact n
of the patch ; and the less exhausted sensatio
inent in the after-image. Thus the red pa
red sensation, and the negative image is m
green and blue sensations ; that is, appears to
or bluish-green, according to the tint of the
when the eye, after looking at a colored pat
colored ground, the effects may easily be ex
ence to the comparative exhaustion of the co
cited by the patch and the ground respecti
(*i. e.*, a green and red) ground be chosen a
green object, the negative image will appe
yellow, and so on.

What is not so clear is why negative images
appearance without any subsequent stimulation o
the eyes are shut, and all access of light, even t
carefully avoided, the field of vision is not absolu
still a sensation of light, the so-called "proper lig
If a white patch on a black ground be looked at

in some part of the visual apparatus, but the matter is surrounded with difficulties.[1]

SEC. 3. VISUAL PERCEPTIONS.

Hitherto we have studied sensations only, and have considered an external object, such as a tree, as simply a source of so many distinct sensations, differing from each other in intensity and kind (color). In the mind these sensations are co-ordinated into a perception. We are not only conscious of a number of sensations of bright and dim lights, of green, brown, black, etc., but these sensations are so related to each other, and by virtue of cerebral processes so fashioned into a whole that we "see a tree." We sometimes, in illustration of such an effect, speak of an image or picture in the mind corresponding to the physical image on the retina.

When we look upon the external world a variety of images are formed at the same time on the retina, and give rise to a number of contemporaneous visual sensations. The sum of these sensations constitute "the field of vision," which varies, of course, with every movement of the eye. This field of vision, being in reality an aggregate of sensations, is of course a *subjective* matter; but we are in the habit of using the same phrase to denote the sum of external objects which give rise to the aggregate of visual sensations; in common language the field of vision is "all that we can see" in any position of the eye, and we have a field of vision for each eye separately and for the two eyes combined.

Using for the present the words in their subjective sense we may remark, that we are able to assign to each constituent sensation its place among the aggregate of sensations constituting the field of vision; we can, as we say, *localize* the sensation. We can say whether it belongs to (what we regard as) the right-hand or left-hand, the upper or the lower part, of the field of vision. We are able to distinguish the relative positions of any two distinct sensations; and the relative positions, together with the relative intensities and qualities (color) of the sensations arising from any object determine our perception of the object. It need hardly be remarked that this localization is purely subjective. We simply determine the position of the *sensation* in the field of vision (which is itself a wholly subjective matter); we do not determine the position of the *object*. The connection between the position of the object in the external world and the position of the sensation in the field of vision cannot be determined by visual observation alone. All the information which can be gained by the eye is limited to the field of vision, and provided that the relative position of the sensations in the field of vision remained the same, the actual position of external objects might, as far as vision is concerned, be changed without our being aware of it.

---

[1] Cf. Hering, op. cit.

As a matter of fact the field of vision in one important particular does not correspond to the field of external objects. The image on the retina is inverted; the rays of light proceeding from an object which by touch we know to be on what we call our right hand, fall on the left-hand side of the retina. If, therefore, the field of vision corresponded to the retinal image, the object would be seen on the left hand. We, however, see it on the right hand, because we invariably associate right-hand tactile localization with left-hand visual localization; that is to say, our field of vision, when interpreted by touch, is a re-inversion of the retinal image.

The dimensions of the field of vision of a single eye are about 145° for the horizontal and 100° for the vertical meridian, the former being distinctly greater than the latter. The horizontal dimension of the field of vision for the two eyes is about 180°. By movements of the eyes, however, apart from those of the head, the extent may be increased to 260° in the horizontal and 200° in the vertical direction.

The satisfactory perception of external objects requires distinct vision; and of this, as we have already said, the formation of a distinct image on the retina is an essential condition. We can receive visual sensations of all kinds with the most imperfect dioptric apparatus, but our perception of an object is precise in proportion to the clearness of the image on the retina.

Region of Distinct Vision.—If we take two points, such as two black dots, only just so far apart that they can be seen distinctly as two when placed near the axis of vision, and then, keeping the axis fixed, move the two points out into the circumferential parts of the field of vision, it will be found that the two soon appear as one. The two sensations become fused, as they would do if brought nearer to each other in the centre of the field. The farther away from the centre of the field, the farther apart must two points be in order that they may be seen as two. In other words, vision is much more distinct in the centre of the field than towards the circumference.

Practically the region of distinct vision may be said to be limited to the macula lutea, or even to the fovea centralis; by continual movements of the eye we are constantly bringing any object which we wish to see in such a position that its image falls on this region of the retina.

The diminution of distinctness does not take place equally from the centre to the circumference along all meridians. The outline described by a line uniting the points where two spots cease to be seen as two when moved along different radii from the centre, is a very irregular figure.

The sensations of color are much more distinct in the centre of the retina than towards the circumference. If the visual axis be fixed and a piece of colored paper be moved towards the outside of the field of vision, the color undergoes changes and is eventually lost, red disappearing first, then green, and blue last. A purple color becomes blue, and a rose color a bluish-white. In fact, there seems to be a certain amount of red-blindness in the peripheral parts of all retinas.

Modified Perceptions.

Since our perception of external objects is based on the distinctness of the sensations which go to form the perception, it might be expected that when an image of an object is formed on the retina the sensory impulses would correspond to the retinal image, the sensations correspond to the sensory impulses and the perception corresponding to the sensations, and that, therefore, the mental condition resulting from our looking at any object or view would correspond exactly to the retinal image. We find, however, that this is not the case. The sensations, and probably even the simple sensory impulses produced by an image react upon each other, and these reactions modify our perceptions, independently of the physical conditions of the retinal image. There arise certain discrepancies between the retinal image and the perception, some having their source in the retina, some in the brain, and others being of such a nature that it is difficult to say where the irrelevancy is introduced.

Irradiation.—A white patch on a dark ground appears larger, and a dark patch on a white ground smaller than it really is. This is especially so when the object is somewhat out of focus, and may, in this case, be partly explained by the diffusion circles which, in each case, encroach from the white upon the dark. But over and beyond this, any sensation, coming from a given retinal area, occupies a larger

pear whiter than its median portion; and if
placed on a black background, the centre
appear sometimes so dim, compared with t
the black, as to seem shaded. This occurs
object is well in focus; the increased sensati
causes the apparent greater whiteness of th
cross is the result of the "contrast" with t
immediately close to it. Still more curious
with colored objects. If a small piece of
placed on a sheet of green paper, and both
sheet of thin tissue-paper, the gray paper
pink color, the complementary of the green
contrast is far less striking, or even wholly
small piece of paper is white instead of gra
disappears when the thin covering of tissue-p
It also vanishes if a bold broad black line
the small piece of paper, so as to isolate it f
color. If a book or pencil be placed vertica
white paper, and illuminated on one side by
the other by a candle, two shadows will b
from the sun, which will be illuminated b
light of the candle, and the other from the ca
in turn be illuminated by the white light o
former naturally appears yellow; the latter, l
not white but blue; it assumes, by contrast,
mentary to that of the candlelight which surr
candle be removed, or its light shut off by a
tint disappears, but returns when the candle

Filling up the Blind Spot.—Though, as we have seen, that part of the retina which corresponds to the entrance of the optic nerve is quite insensible to light, we are conscious of no blank field of vision. When in looking at a page of print we fix the visual axis so that some of the print must fall on the blind spot, no gap is perceived. We could not expect to see a black patch, because what we call black is the absence of the sensation of light from the structures which are sensitive to light; we must have visual organs to see black. But there are no visual organs in the blind spot, and consequently we are *in no way at all* affected by the rays of light which fall on it. There is in our subjective field of vision no gap corresponding to the gap in the retinal image. We refer the sensations coming from two points of the retina lying on opposite margins of the blind spots to two points lying close together, since we have no indication of the space which separates them. Concerning the effects which are produced when an object in the field of view passes into the region of the blind spot there has been much discussion. In ordinary vision, of course, the existence of the blind spot is of little moment since it is outside the region used for distinct vision, and besides the image of an object does not fall on blind spots of both eyes at the same time.

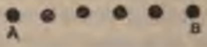
Ocular Spectra.—So far from our perceptions exactly corresponding to the arrangements of the luminous rays which fall on the retina, we may have visual sensations and perceptions in the entire absence of light. Any stimulation of the retina or of the optic nerve sufficiently intense will give rise to a visual sensation. Gradual pressure on the eyeball causes a sensation of rings of colored light, the so-called phosphenes; a sudden blow on the eye causes a sensation of flashes of light, and the seeming identity of the visual sensations so brought about with visual sensations produced by light is well illustrated by the statement once gravely made in a German court of law, by a witness who asserted that on a pitch-dark night he recognized an assailant by help of the flash of light caused by the assailant's hand coming in contact with his eye. Electrical stimulation of the eye or optic nerve will also give rise to visual sensations.

The sensations which may arise without any light falling on the retina need not necessarily be undefined; on the contrary, they may be most clearly defined. Complex and coherent visual images or perceptions may arise in the brain without any corresponding objective luminous cause. These so-called

ing, and form an important element in s
rium, such as delirium tremens.

Appreciation of Apparent Size.—By the
only estimate the *apparent* size of an object
what space it takes in the field of vision, we
the dimensions of the retinal image, and
right only to speak of the angle which th
object subtends. The *real* size of an obje
mined by other means. But our percep
apparent size of an object is so modified by c
stances that in many cases it cannot be re
parent size of the moon must be the same
yet while some persons will be found rea
moon in mid-heavens with a threepenny
liken it to a cart-wheel; that is to say, th
by the moon seems to the one to be about c
tended by a threepenny piece held at the
eye at which it is most commonly looked at
about equal to that subtended by a ca
viewed at the distance at which it is most
at. If a line, such as *A C*, Fig. 183, be
equal parts *A B*, *B C*, and *A B* be divided

FIG. 183.



really is. Hence short persons affect dresses horizontally striped in order to increase their apparent height, and very stout persons avoid longitudinal stripes. Two perfectly parallel lines or bands, each of which is crossed by slanting parallel short lines, will appear not parallel, but diverging or converging according to the direction of the cross-lines.

Again, when a short person is placed side by side with a tall person, the former appears shorter and the latter taller than each really is. The moon on the horizon appears larger than when at the zenith, partly because it can then be most easily compared with terrestrial objects, and partly perhaps because, from a conception we have of the heavens being flattened, we judge the moon to be farther off at the horizon than at the zenith; and being farther off, and yet subtending the same angle, must needs be judged larger. The absence of comparison may, however, have an opposite effect, as when a person looks larger in a fog; being seen indistinctly, he is judged to be farther off than he really is, and so appears to be proportionately larger, just as conversely distant mountains appear small, when in a clear atmosphere they are seen distinctly and so judged to be near. Indeed, our daily life is full of instances in which our direct perception is modified by circumstances. Among those circumstances previous experience is one of the most potent, and thus simple perceptions become mingled with what are in reality judgments, though frequently made unconsciously. But this intrusion of past experience into present perceptions and sensations is most obvious in binocular vision, to which we now turn.

SEC. 4. BINOCULAR VISION.

Corresponding or Identical Points.

Though we have two eyes, and must therefore receive from every object two sets of sensations, our perception of any object is under ordinary circumstances a single one; we see one object, not two. By putting either eye into an unusual position, as by squinting, we can render the perception double; we see two objects where only one exists. From which it is evident that singleness of perception depends on the image of the object falling on certain parts of each retina at the same time, these parts being so related to each other that the sensations from each are blended into one perception; and it is also evident that the movements of the eyeballs are adapted to

in Fig. 184, if Ce, Ce_1 be the two visual
centres of the foveæ centrales of the two e

Fig. 184.

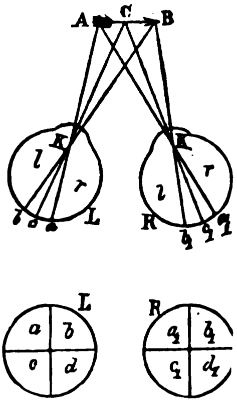


Diagram Illustrating Corresponding Points. *L*, the le
optical centre; a_1, b_1, c_1 are points in the right eye corres
in the left eye. The two figures below are projections o
retina. It will be seen that *a* on the *malar* side of *L* cc
side of *R*.

A C B being seen single, the point *a* on
"correspond" to or be "identical" with

occurs when the two images of an object fall on these corresponding points of the two retinas, it is obvious that in single vision with two eyes the ordinary movements of the eyeballs must be such as to bring the visual axes to converge at the object so that the two images may fall on corresponding points. When the visual axes do not so converge, and when therefore the images do not fall on corresponding points, the two sensations are not blended into one perception, and vision becomes double.

Movements of the Eyeballs.

The eye is virtually a ball placed in a socket, the orbit and the bulb forming a ball-and-socket joint. In its socket joint the optic ball is capable of a variety of movements, but it cannot by any voluntary effort be moved out of its socket.

It is stated that by a very forcible opening of the eyelids the eyeball may be slightly protruded; but this trifling locomotion may be neglected. By disease, however, the position of the eyeball in the socket may be materially changed.

Each eyeball is capable of rotating round an immobile centre of rotation, which has been found to be placed a little (1.77 mm.) behind the centre of the eye; but the movements of the eye round the centre are limited in a peculiar way. The shoulder-joint is a similar ball-and-socket joint; and we know that we can not only move the arm up and down round a horizontal axis passing through the centre of rotation of the head of the humerus, and from side to side round a vertical axis, but we can also rotate it round its own longitudinal axis. When, however, we come to examine closely the movements of the eyeball we find, as was shown by Donders, that though we can move it up and down round a horizontal axis, as when with fixed head we direct our vision to the heavens or to the ground, and from side to side, as when we look to left or right, and though by combining these two movements we can give the eyeball a variety of inclinations, we cannot, by a voluntary effort, rotate the eyeball round its longitudinal visual axis. The arrangement of the muscles of the eyeball would permit of such a movement, but we cannot by any direct effort of will bring it about by itself; we can only effect it indirectly when we attempt to move the eyeballs in certain special ways.

If, when vision is directed to any object, the head be moved from side to side, the eyes do not move with it; they appear to

There is one position of the eyes which
mary position. It corresponds to that which may
ing at the distant horizon with the head vertic
right; but its exact determination requires specia
visual axes are then parallel to each other and
of the head. All other positions of the eyes
positions. In a secondary position the visual lin
tion, and a plane drawn through the centre of rot
to the primary direction of the visual line acqui
it was suggested by Listing, and proved by Dond
that the change from the primary to any secondar
about by a rotation of the eye round an axis
This law of the movements of the eye is know
The chief axes in this plane are the transverse
tation round which causes the eye to move up
vertical axis, rotation round which causes the ey
to side; rotation round other axes in the plane c
ments. When, one eye being closed, we look w
primary position at a vertical colored stripe on
negative image of the stripe is produced, and
away from the stripe, the negative image remai
much the eye is moved either horizontally from
tically up and down; in these movements, which
the vertical and transverse axes respectively,
retina to the visual line are unchanged; the m
negative image lies, and which was vertical in th
remains vertical in the new positions. A horizo
similarly remains horizontal. If the eye be move
position in an oblique direction, the negative in
zontal or vertical, becomes inclined; but Helmh
oblique linear negative image also maintains its
eye is moved from the primary position, in the
of (or at right angles to the line of) the negativ

movement is a rotation round an oblique axis in the same plane, and not in any way a rotation round the visual axis itself. When the horizontal or vertical negative image in the above experiment becomes inclined in an oblique movement of the eye, its motion is similar to that of the spokes of a wheel; but this change of position of the meridians of the retina must not be confounded with the actual rotation of the eyeball on its visual axis.

All movements then starting from the primary position, whether rectangular or oblique, are executed without rotation of the eyeball; but this is not the case in moving from one secondary position to another. Moreover Listing's law holds good only so long as the visual axes remain parallel. When the visual axes are made to converge, some amount of rotation occurs, and that even when their horizontal direction, proper to them in the primary position, is maintained. The rotation is, with the exception of a particular position, still more marked when, as is usually the case during the convergence, the eyes are directed downwards.

It was once thought that the maintenance of the position of the eyeballs when the head was turned to the shoulders, while vision was directed to an object in front, was effected by means of a rotation of the eyeballs. This Donders proved to be an error, though some slight amount of rotation does take place. In various other movements of the eye, too, rotation occurs to a variable extent.

Muscles of the Eyeball.—The eyeball is moved by six muscles, the *recti inferior*, *superior*, *internus*, and *externus*, and the *obliqui inferior* and *superior*. It is found by calculation from the attachments and directions of the muscles, and confirmed by actual observation, that the six muscles may be considered as three pairs, each pair rotating the eye round a particular axis. The relative attachments and the axes of rotation are diagrammatically shown in Fig. 185. Thus the rectus superior and the rectus inferior rotate the eye round a horizontal axis, which is directed from the upper end of the nose to the temple; the obliquus superior and obliquus inferior round a horizontal axis directed from the centre of the eyeball to the occiput; and the rectus internus and rectus externus round a vertical axis (which, being at right angles to the plane of the paper, cannot be shown in the diagram), passing through the centre of rotation of the eyeball parallel to the median plane of the head when the head is vertical. Thus the latter pair acting alone would turn the eye from side to side, the other straight pair acting alone would move the eye up and round, while the oblique muscles acting alone would give the eye an oblique movement. The rectus externus acting alone would turn the eye to the malar side, the internus to the nasal side, the rectus superior upwards, the rectus inferior downwards, the oblique superior downwards and outwards, and the inferior upwards and outwards. The recti superior and inferior in moving the eye up and down also turn it somewhat inward, and at the same time give it a slight amount of rotation; but this is corrected if the oblique muscles act at the same time; and it is found that the rectus superior acting with the obliquus inferior moves the eye upwards, and the rectus inferior with the obliquus superior downwards in a vertical direction. In oblique movements, also, the obliqui are always associated with the recti. Hence the various movements of the eyeball may be arranged as follows:

FIG. 185.

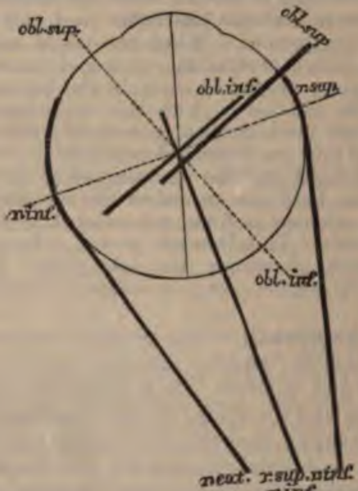


Diagram of the Attachments of the Muscles of the Eye, and of their Axes of Rotation, the latter being represented by dotted lines. The axis of rotation of the rectus externus and internus, being perpendicular to the plane of the paper, cannot be shown.—After FICK.

Straight movements.	Elevation.	Rectus superior and obliquus inferior.
	Depression.	Rectus inferior and obliquus superior.
	Adduction to nasal side.	Rectus internus.
	Adduction to malar side.	Rectus externus.

Oblique movements.	Elevation with adduction.	Rectus superior and internus with obliquus inferior.
	Depression with adduction.	Rectus inferior and internus with obliquus superior.
	Elevation with abduction.	Rectus superior and externus with obliquus inferior.
	Depression with abduction.	Rectus inferior and externus with oblquus superior.

Co-ordination of Visual Movements.—Thus even in the movements of a single eye, a considerable amount of co-ordination takes place. When the eye is moved in any other than the vertical and horizontal meridians, impulses must descend to at least three muscles, and in such relative energy to each of the three as to produce the required inclination of the visual axis. But the co-ordination observed in binocular vision is more striking still. If the movements of any person's eyes be watched it will be seen that the two eyes move alike. If the right eye moves to the right, so does also the left; and if the object looked at be a distant one, exactly to the same extent; if the right eye looks up, the left eye looks up also, and so in every other direction. Very few persons are able by a direct effort of the will to move one eye independently of the other; though some, and among them one distinguished both as a physiologist and an oculist, have acquired this power. In fact, the movements of the two eyes are so arranged that in the various movements the images of any object should fall on the corresponding points of the two retinæ, and that thus single vision should result. We cannot by any direct effort of our will place our eyes in such a position that the rays of light proceeding from any object shall fall on parts of the retina which do not correspond, and thus give rise to two distinct visual images. We can bring the visual axes of the two eyes from a condition of parallelism to one of great convergence, but we cannot, without special assistance, bring them from a condition of parallelism to one of divergence.

The stereoscope will enable us to create a divergence. If in a stereoscopic picture the distance between the pictures be increased so gradually that the impression of a single object be not lost, the visual axes may be brought to diverge. Helmholtz, while looking at a distant object with a prism before one eye, with the angle of the prism directed towards the nose and the vision of the object kept carefully single, found after turning the angle very slowly up or down, and keeping the image of the object single all the time, that on removing the prism a double image was for a moment seen, showing that the eye before which the prism was placed had moved

since we thereby abduct the right eye and
throw into action the rectus externus of th
rectus internus of the left; and similarly w
left we use the rectus externus of the left and
of the right eye. When we look at a near
fore converge the visual axes, we use the re
eyes; and when we look at a distant obj
axes from convergence towards parallelism
externi of both eyes. In the various mov
there is, therefore, so to speak, the most de
choosing of the muscular instruments. Be
it cannot be wondered at that the various
eye are dependent for their causation on
In order to move our eyes, we must either
object; when we wish to converge our axes
near object, real or imaginary, and the c
axes is usually accompanied by all the c
vision, such as increased accommodation a
the pupil. And so with other movements.

The close association of the movements of th
trated by the following case. Suppose the ey
rected for the far distance, and that it is desire
to a nearer point lying in the visual line of the
case no movement of the right eye is required;
is for the left eye to be turned to the right, that
ternus of the left eye to be thrown into actio
movements the contraction of this muscle is alw
either the rectus externus of the right eye (as
turned to the right), or the rectus internus of th
gence; the muscle is quite unaccustomed to act

Such a complex co-ordination requires for its carrying out a distinct nervous machinery; and we have reasons for thinking that such a machinery exists in certain parts of the corpora quadrigemina or in the underlying structures. (See p. 648.) In the nates, Adamuk finds a common centre for both eyes, stimulation of the right side producing movements of both eyes to the left, of the left side movements to the right; while stimulation in the middle line behind causes a downward movement of both eyes, with convergence of the axes, and in the front an upward movement with return to parallelism, both accompanied by the naturally associated movements of the pupil. Stimulation of various parts of the nates causes various movements, depending on the position of the spot stimulated. After an incision in the middle line, stimulation of the nervous centre on one side produces movements in the eye of the same side only.

The Horopter.

When we look at any object we direct to it the visual axes, so that when the object is small, the "corresponding" parts of the two retinæ, on which the two images of the object fall, lie in their respective foveæ centrales. But while we are looking at the particular object the images of other objects surrounding it fall on the retina surrounding the fovea, and thus go

FIG. 186.

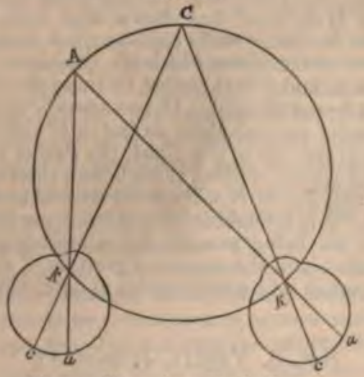


Diagram Illustrating a Simple Horopter.

When the visual axes converge at *C*, the images *a a* of any point *A* on the circle drawn through *C* and the optical centres *k k*, will fall on corresponding points.

aggregate of all those points in space whic
to corresponding points of the retina ; henc
in any particular case is simply a matter o
culation. In some instances it becomes a
figure. The case whose features are most e
circle drawn in the plane of the two visual
point of the convergence of the axes and t
the two eyes. It is obvious from geometric
Fig. 186 the images of any point in a circl
responding points of the two retinæ. When
and look at the distant horizon the horopter
for normal long-sighted persons) a plane d
feet, that is to say, is the ground on whic
advantage of this is obvious.

In determining the position of corresponding
remembered, as Helmholtz[1] has shown, that w
meridians of the two fields really correspond, it
not the *real* vertical meridians which are combi
in binocular vision, and it is therefore by these t
ing points must be determined. If two areas b
nearly but not quite vertical, those on the right s
left, and those on the left to the right, the form
the right eye will appear vertical, though their sl
to the left eye, and the latter will appear vertical
not to the right. When combined in a stereoscop
in spite of their not being parallel, will appear
cide, showing that it is the *apparent* position o
which must be taken into consideration in deter
ing points.

Sec. 5. Visual Judgments

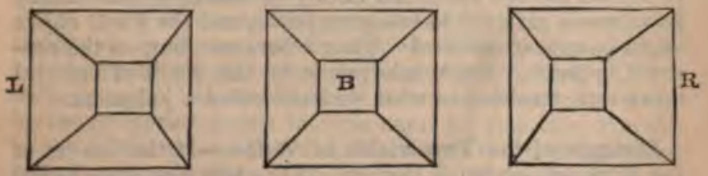
sponding" parts, the one eye supplies that part of the field of vision which is lacking in the other. And other imperfections are similarly made good. But the great use of binocular vision is to afford us means of forming visual judgments concerning the form, size, and distance of objects.

Judgment of Distance and Size.—The perceptions which we gain simply and solely by our field of vision concern two dimensions only. We can become aware of the apparent size of any part of the field corresponding to any particular object, and of its topographical relations to the rest of the field, but no more. Had we nothing more to depend on, our sight would be almost valueless as far as any exact information of the external world was concerned. By association of the visual sensations with sensations of touch, and with sensations derived from the movements of the eyeballs required to make any such part of the field as corresponds to a particular object distinct, we are led to form judgments, *i. e.*, to draw conclusions concerning the external world by means of an interpretation of our visual perceptions. Looking before us, we say we see a certain object of a certain color nearly in front of us, or much on our right hand, or much on our left; that is to say, we judge such an object to be in such a position because from the constitution of our brain, strengthened by all our experience, we associate such a part of our field of vision with such an object. The subjective visual complex sensation or perception is to us a symbol of the external object.

Even with one eye we can, to a certain extent, form a judgment, not only as to the position of the object in a plane at right angles to our visual axis, but also as to its distance from us along the visual axis. If the object is near to us we have to accommodate for near vision; if far from us, to relax our accommodation mechanism so that the eye becomes adjusted for distance. The muscular sense (see Chap. IV, sec. 4) of this effort enables us to form a judgment whether the object is far or near. Seeing the narrow range of our accommodation, and the slight muscular effort which it entails, all monocular judgments of distance must be subject to much error. Every one who has tried to thread a needle without using both eyes knows how great these errors may be. When, on the other hand, we use two eyes, we have still the variations in accommodation, and in addition have all the assistance which arises from the muscular effort of so directing the two eyes on the object that single vision shall result. When the object is near, we converge our visual axes; when distant, so with solidity, which is at bottom a matter of distance of the parts of an object, we can form a judgment with one eye alone; but our ideas become much more exact and trustworthy when two eyes are used. And we are much assisted by the effects produced by the reflection of light from the various surfaces of a solid object; so much so, that raised surfaces may be made to appear depressed, or *vice versa*, and flat surfaces either raised or depressed, by appropriate arrangements of shadings and shadow.

Binocular vision, moreover, affords us a means of judging of the solidity of objects, inasmuch as the image of any solid object which falls on to the right eye cannot be exactly like that which falls on the left, though both are combined in the single perception of the two eyes. Thus, when we look at a truncated pyramid placed in the middle line before us, the image which falls on the right eye is of the kind represented in Fig. 187, *R*, while that which falls on the left eye has the form of Fig. 187, *L;* yet the perception gained from the two images together corresponds to the form of which Fig. 187, *B*, is the projection. Whenever we thus combine in one perception two dissimilar images, one of the one, and the other of the other eye, we judge that the object giving rise to the images is solid.

FIG. 187.



This is the simple principle of the stereoscope, in which two slightly dissimilar pictures, such as would correspond to the vision of each eye separately, are, by means of reflecting mirrors, as in Wheatstone's original instrument, or by prisms, as in the form introduced by Brewster, made to cast images on corresponding parts of the two retinas so as to produce a single perception. Though each picture is a surface of two dimensions only, the resulting perception is the same as if a single object, or group of objects, of three dimensions had been looked at.

It might be supposed that the judgment of solidity which arises when two dissimilar images are thus combined in one perception, was due to the fact that all parts of the two images cannot fall on corresponding parts of the two retinas at the same time, and that therefore the combination of the two needs some movement of the eyes. Thus, if we superimpose R on L (Fig. 187), it is evident that when the bases coincide the truncated apices will not, and *vice versa;* hence, when the bases fall on corresponding parts, the apices will not be combined into one image, and *vice versa;* in order that both may be combined, there must be a slight rapid movement of the eyes from the one to the other. That, however, no such movement is necessary *for each particular case* is shown by the fact that solid objects appear as such when illuminated by an electric spark, the duration of which is too short to permit of any movements of the eyes. If the flash occurred at the moment that the eyes were binocularly adjusted for the bases of the pyramids, the two apices not falling on exactly corresponding parts would give rise to two perceptions, and the whole object ought to appear confused. That it does not, but, on the contrary, appears a single solid, must be the result of cerebral operations, resulting in what we have called a judgment.

Struggle of the Two Fields of Vision.—If the images of two surfaces, one black and the other white, are made to fall on corresponding parts of the eye, so as to be united into a single perception, the result is not always a mixture of the two impressions, that is a gray, but, in many cases, a sensation similar to that produced when a polished surface, such as plumbago, is looked at; the surface appears brilliant. The reason probably is because when we look at a polished surface the amount of reflected light which falls upon the retina is generally different in the two eyes; and hence we associate an unequal stimulation of the two retinas with the idea of a polished surface. So also when the impressions of two colors are united in binocular vision, the result is in most cases not a mixture of the two colors, as when the same two impressions are brought to bear together at the same time on a single retina, but a struggle between the two colors, now one, and now the other, becoming prominent, intermediate tints, however, being frequently passed through. This may arise from the difficulty of accommodating at the same time for the two different colors (see p. 651); if two eyes, one of which is looking at red, and the other at blue, be both accommodated for red rays, the red sensation will overpower the blue, and *vice versa.* It may be, however, that the tendency to rhythmic action, so manifest in other simpler manifestations of protoplasmic activity, makes its appearance also in the higher cerebral labors of binocular vision.

SEC. 6. THE PROTECTIVE MECHANISMS OF THE EYE.

The eyeball is protected by the eyelids, which are capable of movements called respectively opening and shutting the eye. The eye is shut by the contraction of the orbicularis muscle, carried out either as a reflex or voluntary act, by means of the facial nerve. The eye is opened chiefly by the raising of the upper eyelid, through the contraction of the levator palpebræ carried out by means of the third nerve. The upper eyelid is also raised and the lower depressed, the eye being thus opened, by means of plain muscular fibres existing in the two eyelids and governed by the cervical sympathetic. The shutting of the eye as in winking is in general effected more rapidly than the opening.

The eye is kept continually moist partly by the secretion of the glands in the conjunctiva, and of the Meibomian glands, but chiefly by the secretion of the lachrymal gland. Under ordinary circumstances the fluid thus formed is carried away by the lachrymal canals into the nasal sac and thus into the cavity of the nose. When the secretion becomes too abundant to escape in this way it overflows on to the cheeks in the form of tears.

If a quantity of tears be collected, they are found to form a clear faintly alkaline fluid, in many respects like saliva, containing about one per cent. of solids, of which a small part is proteid in nature. Among the salts present sodium chloride is conspicuous.

The nervous mechanism of the secretion of tears, in many respects, resembles that of the secretion of saliva. A flow is usually brought about either in a reflex manner by stimuli applied to the conjunctiva, the nasal mucous membrane, tongue, optic nerve, etc., or more directly by emotions. Venous congestion of the head is also said to cause a flow. The efferent nerves belong either to the cerebro-spinal system (the lachrymal and orbital branches of the fifth nerve), or arise from the cervical sympathetic, the afferent nerves varying according to the exciting cause.

Herzenstein[1] and Wolferz[2] showed that stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided lachrymal branch of the fifth nerve produced a copious flow of tears. After division of this branch stimulation of the nasal mucous membrane produced no increased flow:

---

[1] Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1867, p. 651.

[2] Dissertatio. Henle and Meissner's Bericht, 1871, p. 245.

the *fossa* of the antihelix. Projecting post
anterior portion of the concha is a papill
called the *tragus;* posterior to this, separate
the *antitragus*, which is a continuation of the
inferior portion of the pinna is a soft pe
termed the *lobule*. The meatus leads from t
middle ear, from which it is separated by the
brane. Its direction is forwards, inwards,
wards; its lower surface being longer tha
account of the obliquity of the position o
membrane. The canal consists of an ext
cartilaginous portion, which is continuous wit
an internal *osseous* portion formed by the m
the external portion of the canal are found
and sebaceous glands; in the internal porti
ceruminous glands, which secrete a peculiar
monly known as the earwax.

The *middle ear* or *tympanum* is an irregular
situated in the petrous portion of the tem
lined with a mucous membrane. It is sep
meatus by a membranous diaphragm, whic
membrane; and from the internal ear by a
ous partition, which forms a common wall fo
the Eustachian tube it communicates with t
its posterior wall are seen orifices of the ma
tympanic membrane is a semitransparent,
concave on its external, and convex on its
where it has attached the long process of th

membrane lining the tympanum; the middle layer, which is the most important, is tense, strong, and fibrous, made up of circular and radiating fibres, with a small amount of elastic tissue intermixed.

In the internal wall of the tympanum are two small openings, the *fenestra ovalis* and *fenestra rotunda*, which communicate with the labyrinth. The fenestra rotunda is closed by a membrane. Extending between the tympanic membrane and the fenestra ovalis are the *ossicles*, consisting of three small bones, which form a system of levers. These ossicles are termed, from their resemblance to particular objects, the *malleus, incus,* and *stapes.* (Fig. 190.) The malleus consists of a head, neck, long and short process, and handle. The head articulates with the roof of the tympanum, and in a depression of the incus; the handle is directed downwards, and attached by its whole length to the tympanic membrane; the long process (*processus gracilis*) is directed forwards, and has attached the insertion of the *laxator tympani muscle;* the short process, which is at the base of the long process, has attached the insertion of the *tensor tympani muscle.* The incus consists

FIG. 189.

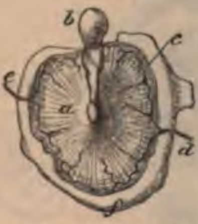


FIG. 189.—Inner View of the Membrana Tympani in the Fœtus, with the Malleus attached.

a, membrane or drum of the tympanum; *b*, malleus; *c*, band of circular fibres at the circumference; *d*, inferior, and *e*, superior tympanic artery; *f*, tympanic bone.

FIG. 190.

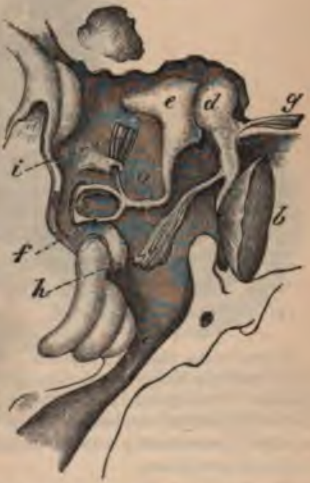
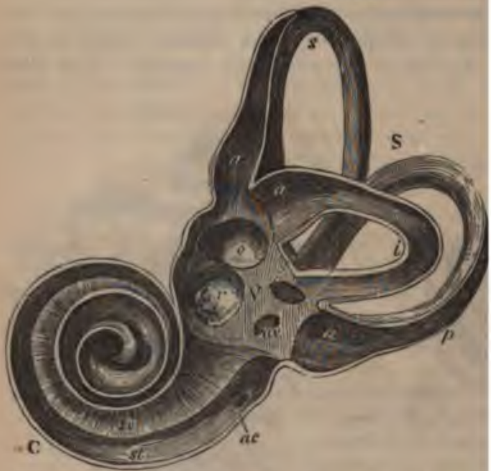


FIG. 190.—Plan of the Ossicles in Position in the Tympanum with their Muscles.

a, cavity of the tympanum; *b*, membrana tympani; *c*, Eustachian tube; *d*, malleus; *e*, incus; *f*, stapes; *g*, laxator tympani muscle; *h*, tensor tympani; *i*, stapedius.

ticulates with the long process of the incus

FIG. 191.

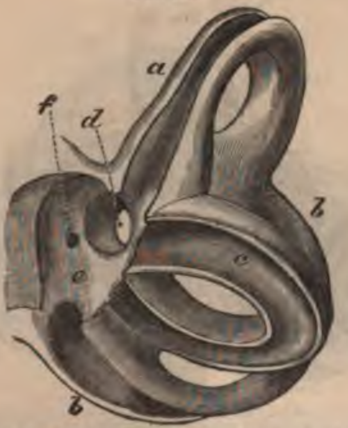


Interior of the Osseous Labyrinth. *V*, vestibule; *av*, aqued
fovea hemielliptica; *r*, fovea hemispherica; *S*, semicircular
posterior; *i*, horizontal; *a*, *a*, *a*, the ampullar extremity of each
duct of the cochlea; *sv*, osseous zone of the lamina spiralis, ab
vestibuli, communicating with the vestibule; *st*, scala tympani
—After SŒMMERRING.

as a point of insertion of the stapedius mu
diverge from the neck, and unite with the
greatest diameter. The base is fixed in the f
attachments formed by the lining membra

vestibule, semicircular canals, and *cochlea;* and is situated within the petrous portion of the temporal bone. Within the osseous labyrinth is a membranous labyrinth to which the auditory nerve is distributed. The vestibule is an irregular chamber, which serves as a common means of communication between the tympanum and the semicircular canals and cochlea. On its external wall is the fenestra ovalis, closed by the base of the stapes. On its internal wall is a depression called the *fovea hemispherica*, which is perforated by minute openings for the passage of auditory nerve-filaments. Above and posterior to this depression is another, the *fovea hemielliptica*.

FIG. 193.

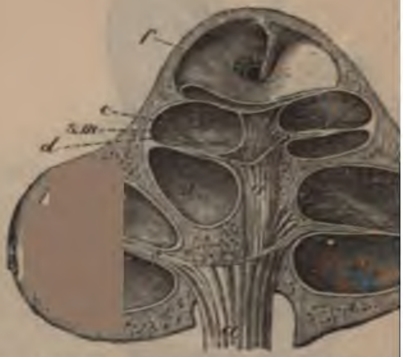


Representation of the Semicircular Canals Enlarged (from a model in University College Museum). *a*, superior vertical; *b*, posterior or inferior vertical; and *c*, horizontal canal; *d*, common opening of the two vertical canals; *e*, part of the vestibular cavity; *f*, opening of the aqueduct of the vestibule.

Posterior to the fovea hemispherica is the orifice of the aqueductus vestibuli. In the posterior wall are five openings leading to the semicircular canals. Anteriorly, it communicates with the cochlea by the *aperturæ scalæ vestibuli cochleæ*. The *semicircular canals* are three in number: the *superior, posterior* or *inferior*, and *horizontal*. They form the greater portion of a circle, and communicate with the vestibule by five openings, one of which is common to the superior and horizontal canals. The superior canal is situated vertically, and at right angles with the posterior surface of the petrous bone; the posterior canal is also vertical, and parallel with the posterior surface

spiral canal wound around it. This canal
half complete turns, and terminates in the sp
in an expansion termed the *infundibulum.*
modiolus is somewhat cone-shaped, and forms

FIG. 194.



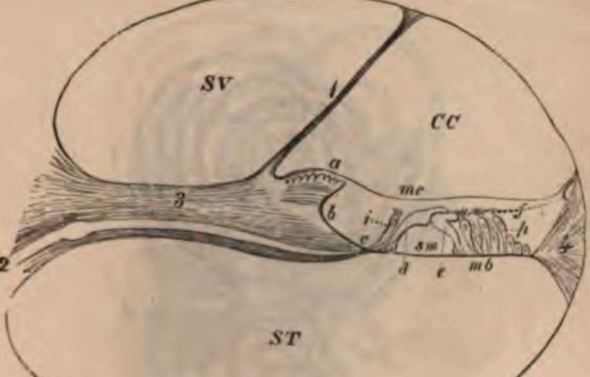
Section through the Cochlea (BRESCHET). *a*, axis with its ca
enlarged upper end of the axis; *c*, septum of the cochlea; *d*,
membrane of Reissner; *f*, Hiatus or helicotrema; *st*, scala ty
tibuli.

of the canal, being perforated in its centre a
tures for the passage of the filaments of the
The canal is divided into two passages or s

other, and contain between them the *organ of Corti*, which rests on the basilary membrane. (Fig. 195.)

The *scala vestibuli*[1] communicates below with the vestibule by the *aperturæ scalæ vestibuli cochlea;* the lower passage, or *scala tympani*, communicates with the tympanum by the fenestra rotunda. These scalæ communicate at the apex of the cochlea by an opening termed the *hiatus* or *helicotrema*, which exists in consequence of a deficiency of the last half turn of the lamina spiralis.

FIG. 195.



A Diagram of a Section of the Tube of the Cochlea Enlarged (modified from HENLE). *SV*, scala vestibuli; *ST*, scala tympani; *CC*, canal of the cochlea; 1, membrane of Reissner; 2, cochlear branch of the auditory nerve; 3, lamina spiralis ossea; 4, planum semilunare; *a*, lamina denticulata; *b*, sulcus spiralis; *c*, tympanic lip of the sulcus spiralis; *d*, inner rods of Corti; *e*, outer rods of Corti; *f*, lamina reticularis; *i*, inner hair-cells; *mb*, membrana basilaris; *mc*, membrane of Corti; *p*, outer hair-cells; *sm*, central space between the rods.

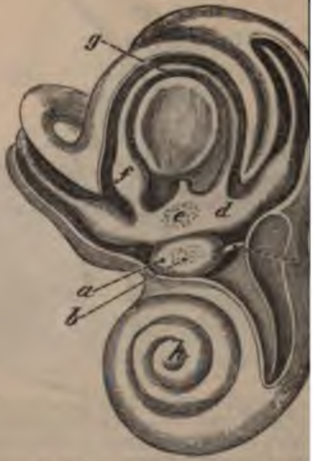
The osseous portion of the lamina spiralis has on its superior external portion a denticulated cartilaginous substance called the *lamina denticulata*. From the superior surface of the spiral lamina, and internal to the lamina denticulata, is a delicate membrane extending upwards and outwards at an angle of about 45° to the external wall of the scala. This is

---

[1] The upper scala is divided into two parts by a membranous partition, the upper of which is called the scala vestibuli; the other, ductus cochlearis. (Fig. 195.)

consists of the inner and outer hair-cells,
elongated cells, placed parallel with each
inclining position so that their free extre

Fig. 196.



Petrous Bone partly removed to show the Membranous Labyr

a, small sac; *b*, its otolith; *c*, ductus reuniens; *d*, large sac
f, ampullary enlargement on a semicircular tube; *g*, semicircu

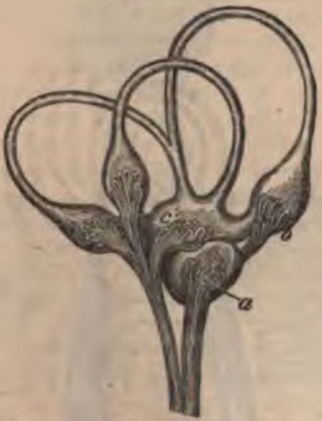
each other and thus form the *arch of Corti*
central space. (Fig. 195.) These rows ar
and *outer* rods, or pillars of Corti. From

delicate structure called the *reticular membrane.* The auditory nerve-filaments probably terminate in the ciliated cells, being intimately connected with the cilia.

The osseous labyrinth is lined by a fibro-serous membrane which secretes a watery fluid, called the *perilymph.* The perilymph fills the scalæ of the cochlea, and surrounds the *ductus cochlearis* and the membranous portions of the labyrinth, which are situated in the vestibule and semicircular canals.

The *membranous labyrinth* is a closed sac consisting of the semicircular canals, a vestibular portion, and the ductus cochlearis of the cochlea. The semicircular canals are of the same form as the osseous canals, and are contained within them. The vestibular portion consists of an expanded body, the *utricle,* and a smaller body, the *saccule.* The utricle is situated at the fovea hemielliptica; the semicircular canals open on its internal surface. The saccule lies at the fovea hemispherica; it is connected with the ductus cochlearis by the *ductus reuniens.* In the walls of the saccule and utricle are two calcareous bodies called the *otoliths.* The walls of the ampulla, according to Bowman, also contain some grains of a similar substance. The walls of the membranous labyrinth consist of a fibrous tissue, lined by pavement nucleated epithelium cells, having a structureless basement-membrane. These

Fig. 197.



Distribution of Nerves to the Membranous Labyrinth (Breschet.)

a, nerve to the saccule; *b,* nerve entering the ampullary enlargement on a semicircular tube; *c,* branch of nerve entering the large sac or utricle.

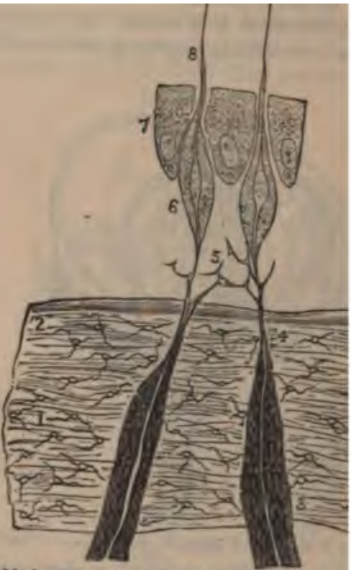


Diagram of the Mode of Termination of the Auditory Nerve
culi. 1, the wall of the ampulla; 2, structureless basement-m
toured nerve-fibres; 4, axis-cylinder traversing the basement-
union of fine nerve-fibres with interspersed nuclei; 6, fusiform
dark fibre in their interior; 7, supporting cells; 8, auditory hai

more or less colored by the deposition of yell
the ampullæ the fibres terminate in elevations
acusticæ. After the nerve-filament pierces
wall at these points

As in the eye, so in the ear, we have to deal first with a nerve of special sense, the stimulation of which gives rise to a special sensation; secondly, with terminal organs through which the physical changes proper to the special sense are enabled to act on the nerve; and, thirdly, with subsidiary apparatus, by which the usefulness of the sense is increased. The central connections of the auditory nerve are such that whenever the auditory fibres are stimulated, whether by means of the terminal organs in the usual way or by the direct application of stimuli, electrical, mechanical, etc., the result is always a sensation of sound. Just as stimulation of the optic fibres produces no other sensation than that of light, so stimulation of the auditory fibres produces no other sensation than that of sound.[1] The terminal organs of the auditory nerve are of two kinds: the complicated organ of Corti in the cochlea, and the epithelial arrangements of the maculæ cristæ acusticæ in other parts of the labyrinth. Waves of sound falling on the auditory nerve itself, produce no effect whatever; it is only when by the medium of the endolymph they are brought to bear on the delicate and peculiar epithelium cells which constitute the peripheral terminations of the nerve, that sensations of sound arise. Such delicate structures are for the sake of protection naturally withdrawn from the surface of the body where they would be subject to injury. Hence the necessity of an acoustic apparatus, forming the middle and external ear, by which the waves of sound are most advantageously conveyed to the terminal organs.

The Acoustic Apparatus.

Waves of sound can and do reach the endolymph of the labyrinth by direct conduction through the skull. Since, however, sonorous vibrations are transmitted with great difficulty from the air to solids and liquids, and most sounds come to us through the air, some special apparatus is required to transfer the aerial vibrations to the liquids of the internal ear. This apparatus is supplied by the tympanum and its appendages.

The Concha.—The use of this, as far as hearing is concerned, is to collect the waves of sound coming in various

---

[1] It will be seen later on that there are reasons for thinking that impulses passing along the auditory *nerve* may give rise to other effects than auditory sensations.

Thus every movement of the tympanic membrane is transmitted through this chain of ossicles to the membranes of the fenestra ovalis, and so to the perilymph of the labyrinth; the vibrations of the tympanic membrane are conveyed with increased intensity, though with diminished amplitude, to the latter. That the bones thus move *en masse* has been proved by recording their movements in the usual graphic method. A very light style attached to the incus or stapes is made to write on a travelling surface; when the membrana tympani is thrown into vibrations by a sound, the curves described by the style indicate that the chain of bones moves with every vibration of the tympanum. On the other hand, the comparatively loose attachments of the several bones is an obstacle to the molecular transmission of sonorous vibrations through them. Moreover sonorous vibrations can only be transmitted to or pass along such bodies as either are very long compared to the length of the sound-waves, or, as in the case of membranes and strings, have one dimension very much smaller than the others. Now the bones in question are not especially thin in any one dimension, but are in all their dimensions exceedingly small compared with the length of the vibrations of even the shrillest sounds we are capable of hearing; hence they must be useless for the molecular propagation of vibrations.

The tensor tympani muscle, even in a quiescent state, is of use in preventing the membrana tympani being pushed out far. When it contracts it renders the membrana tympani more tense, and hence has been supposed to act either as a damper lessening the amount of vibration of the membrane in the case of too powerful sounds, or as a sort of accommodation mechanism attuning the membrane to the sounds which fall upon it. Its activity in this direction is regulated by a reflex action. In some persons the muscle seems to be partly under the dominion of the will, since a peculiar crackling noise which these persons can produce at pleasure appears to be caused by a contraction of the tensor tympani.

Hensen[1] has directly observed the action of the tensor tympani in the dog and cat, and finds that while the muscle is readily thrown into contraction at the commencement of every sound or noise, it returns to rest and becomes relaxed again during the continuance of a prolonged note. He suggests that by throwing the muscle into activity the sound of a consonant may make the membrana tympani tense, and thus render it better adapted to carry on the vibrations of the vowel sound following the consonant.

---

[1] Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys., 1878 (Phys. Abth.), p. 312.

The stapedius muscle is supposed to regulate the movements of the stapes, and especially to prevent its base being driven too far into the fenestra ovalis during large or sudden movements of the membrana tympani.

A contraction of the stapedius by itself would have the effect of pulling the hinder end of the base of the stapes out of, and of pushing the front end into, the fenestra ovalis; and this might give rise to a wave in the perilymph. For speculations on this and on the reason why the stapedius is governed by the facial and the tensor tympani by the fifth nerve, see Budge.[1]

The so-called laxator tympani is considered[2] to be not a muscle at all, but a part of the ligamentous supports of the malleus.

The Eustachian Tube.—This serves to maintain an equilibrium of pressure between the external air and that within the tympanum, and to serve as an exit for the secretions of that cavity. Were the tympanum permanently closed, the vibrations of the membrana tympani would be injuriously affected by variations of pressure occurring either inside or outside.

The Eustachian tube is undoubtedly open during swallowing, but it is still disputed whether it remains permanently open, or is opened only at intervals.

Auditory Sensations.

Each vibration communicated by the stapes to the perilymph travels as a wave over the vestibule, the semicircular canals, and other parts of the labyrinth, and is there transmitted to the endolymph; it passes on from the vestibule into the scala vestibuli of the cochlea, and descending the scala tympani ends as an impulse against the membrane of the fenestra rotunda. In the maculæ and cristæ the vibrations of the endolymph are supposed to throw into corresponding vibrations the so-called auditory hairs. In the cochlea the vibrations of the perilymph are supposed to throw into vibrations the basilar membrane with the superimposed organ of Corti, consisting of the rods of Corti with the inner and outer hair-cells. The vibrations thus transmitted to these structures give rise to nervous impulses in the terminations of the auditory nerves, and these impulses reaching certain parts of the brain produce what we call auditory sensations. We are accustomed to divide our auditory sensations into those caused by noises and those caused by musical sounds. It is the characteristic of the latter that the vibrations which constitute them are periodical; they occur and recur at regular intervals. When no periodicity is present in the vibrations, when the repetition of the several vibrations is irregular, or the period so complex as not to be readily appreciated, the sensation produced is that of a noise. There is, however, no abrupt line between the two. Between a pure and a simple musical sound, produced by a series of vibrations, each of which has exactly the same wave-length, and a harsh noise in which no consecutive vibrations may be alike, there are numerous intermediate stages.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv (1874), ix, p. 460.

[2] Helmholtz, Pflüger's Archiv, i (1868), p. 1; Henle, Anatomie, ii, *p. 746.*

In both noises and musical sounds we recognize a character which we call loudness. This is determined by the amplitude of the vibrations; the greater the disturbance of the air (or other medium) the louder the sound. In a musical sound we recognize also a character which we call pitch. This is determined by the wave-length of the vibrations; the shorter the wave-length, the larger the number of consecutive vibrations which fall upon the ear in a second, the higher the pitch. We are able to speak of a whole series of tones or musical sounds of different pitch, from the lowest to the highest audible tone. And even in many noises we can, to a certain extent, recognize a pitch, indicating that among the multifarious vibrations there is a periodicity with fixed intervals.

Lastly, we distinguish musical sounds by their quality; the same note sounded on a piano and on a violin produces very different sensations, even when a series of vibrations having in each case the same period of repetition is set going. This arises from the fact that the musical sounds generated by most musical instruments are not simple but compound vibrations. When the note C in the treble for instance is struck on the piano, it is perfectly true that a series of vibrations with a period characteristic of the pure tone of the treble C are started, but it is also true that those vibrations are accompanied by other vibrations with periods characteristic of the C in the octave above, of the G above that, of the C in the next octave, and of the E above that. And it is the effect of all these vibrations together on the ear which causes the sensation which we associate with the sound of the treble C on able to analyze the wave into its constituent vibrations, each string taking up those vibrations, and those vibrations only which belong to the tone given forth by itself when struck. If we suppose that each terminal fibril of the auditory nerve is connected with an organ so far like a piano-string that it will readily vibrate in response to a series of vibrating impulses of a given period and to none other, and that we possess a number of such terminal organs sufficient for the analysis of all the sounds which we can analyze, and that each terminal organ so affected by particular vibrations gives rise to a sensory impulse, and thus to a sensation of a distinct character,—if we suppose these organs to exist, our appreciation of sounds is in a large measure explained. In the organ of Corti we find structures the arrangement of which irresistibly suggests to us that these are the organs we are seeking. We have only to suppose that of the long series of rods of Corti, varying regularly as these do from the bottom to the top of the spiral, in length and in the span of their arch, each pair will vibrate in response to a particular tone, and the whole matter seems explained. But, the more the subject is inquired into, the more complex and difficult it appears; and we are obliged to conclude that the part played by the rods of Corti is only a subordinate part of the function of the whole organ of Corti.

In the first place, it is difficult to see how the rods of Corti, even if they are thrown into vibration, can originate sensory impulses, for the fibrils of the auditory nerve terminate in the inner and outer hair-cells; and it is in these cells, and not along the course of the fibrils, as they pass under and between the rods of Corti, that the sensory impulses must begin. In the second place, the variation in length of the fibres along the series is insufficient for the work assigned to them. Moreover, they appear not to be elastic. Lastly, they are wholly absent in birds, which very clearly can appreciate musical sounds. This last fact proves indubitably that the rods in question are not absolutely essential for the recognition of tones. In the face of these difficulties it has been suggested that the basilar membrane, which is present in birds, and which, being tense radially, but loose longitudinally, *i. e.*, along the spiral of the cochlea, may, as physical investigations show, be considered as consisting of a number of parallel radial strings, each capable of independent vibrations, is the sought for organ of analysis. According to this view, a particular vibration reaching the scala tympani of the cochlea throws into sympathetic vibrations a small portion of the basilar membrane, the vibrations of which in turn so affect the structures overlying it that sensory impulses are generated. These sensory impulses reaching the brain give rise to a corresponding sensation of a particular tone. According to Hensen the radial dimensions of the basilar membrane in man diminish downwards from .495 mm.

ment of the basilar membrane is thrown int
hair-cells, reticular membrane, and rods o
together with it. But this renders the who
cult. Indeed the whole subject is in the
and the most we can say is that the organ o
to be in some way connected with the ap
that at present it is very hazardous to att
acts, or to assign particular functions to pa
tinction between the inner and outer hai
parallel to that between the rods and the c
even this analogy may be a fallacious one.

Hensen has observed that among the au
tacea, some will vibrate to particular notes
of the mammal are far too much of the sa
supposition that they can act as organs of a

If the organ of Corti is the means by wh
it is evident that by it also we must be abl
for the quality of a musical sound is depen
tensity, as well as on the nature, of the over
is at best but confused music, the cochlea m
ciating noises as well as sounds. But this wo
ever for the rest of the labyrinth to do as fa
sound is concerned. We have no reason to
which could affect the hair-cells of the macu
affect the hair-cells of the organ of Corti. T
is, however, concerned in hearing is shown by
tory organ in the ichthyopsida, unless we su
vertebrates its function has been wholly tra
That the semicircular canals have duties
shall show later on.

Concerning the function of the other part
know very little. The otoliths have been s
vibrations of the endolymph; but since ap
in a quantity of mucus it is probable that th
A similar damping action has been suggeste

of Corti, the appreciation of any sound is ultimately a mental act. The analysis of the vibrations by the fibres of Corti or the basilar membrane is simply preliminary to a synthesis of the sensory impulses so generated into a complex sensation. We do not receive a distinct series of specific auditory impulses resulting in a specific sensation for every possible variation in the wave-length of sonorous vibrations any more than we receive a distinct series of specific visual impulses for every possible wave-length of luminous vibrations. In each case we have probably a number of primary sensations, from the various mingling of which, in different proportions, our varied complex sensations arise; the difference between the eye and the ear being that whereas in the former the number of primary sensations appears to be limited to three, viz., red, green, and violet; in the latter, thanks to the organ of Corti, the number is very large; what the exact number is we cannot at present tell. Our appreciation of a sound is at bottom an appreciation of the combined effect produced by the relative intensities to which the primary auditory sensations are, with the help of the organ of Corti, excited by the sound.

Whatever be the explanation of the manner in which our distinct auditory sensations arise, the range and precision of our appreciation of musical sounds is very great. Vibrations with a recurrence below 30 a second are unable to produce a sensation of sound; if the waves are powerful enough we may feel them, but we do not hear them if the vibrations are simple, and such as would give rise to a pure tone; if the fundamental tone is accompanied by overtones we may hear these, and are thus apt to say we hear the former when in reality we only hear the latter. The note of the 16-feet organ pipe, 33 vibrations a second, gives us the sensation of a droning sound. A tone of 40 vibrations is, however, quite distinct. In the other direction it is possible to hear a note caused by 38,000 vibrations a second, though the limit for most persons is far lower, about 16,000.[1] Some persons hear grave sounds more easily than high ones, and *vice versa*. This may be so pronounced as to justify the subjects being spoken of as deaf to grave or high tones respectively.

The power of distinguishing one note from another varies, as is well known, in different individuals, according as they have or have not a "musical ear." A well-trained ear can distinguish the difference of a single or even of a half vibration a second, and that through a long range of notes, the sensation not obeying Weber's law.[1] The range of an ordinary appreciation of tones lies between 40 and 4000 vibrations a second, *i. e.*, between the lowest bass C (C_1 33 vibrations) and the highest treble C (C^5 4224 vibrations) of the piano; tones above and below these, even when audible, being distinguished from each other with great difficulty.

---

[1] Helmholtz, Tonempfindungen, p. 30. Cf. Preyer (Grenzen der Tonwahrnehmung. Physiolog. Abhandlungen, i, 1, 1876), who places the grave limit as varying from 15 to 24, and the acute limit from 16,000 to 40,000 vibrations per second.

When two consecutive sounds follow each other at a sufficiently short interval the sensations are fused into one. In this respect auditory sensations are of shorter duration than ocular sensations. When ocular sensations are repeated ten times in a second they become fused (p. 664), whereas the ticks of a pendulum beating 100 in a second are readily audible as distinct sounds. When two tuning-forks not quite in tune are struck together the interference of the vibrations gives rise to an alternating rise and fall of the sound, known as "beats." When the beats follow each other as rapidly as 132 in a second they cease to be recognized, that is to say, the sensations which they cause become fused. Just before they disappear they give a peculiar disagreeable roughness to the sound. The pleasure given by musical sounds depends largely on the absence of this incomplete fusion of sensations.

Corresponding to entoptic phenomena there are various *entotic* phenomena, sensations or modifications of sensations originating in the tympanum or in the labyrinth; moreover sensations of sound may rise in the auditory nerve or in the brain itself, without any vibration whatever falling on the labyrinth.

Auditory Judgments.

In seeking for the cause of our visual sensations we invariably refer to the external world. The sensation caused by a direct stimulation of the optic nerve or retina by a blow or a galvanic current, we identify with that caused by a flash of light. A sensation arising from any stimulation of the left side of our retina we regard as caused by some object on the right-hand side of our external visible world. In a similar way, but to a less extent, we project our auditory sensations into the world outside us, and when the auditory nerve is affected we seek the cause in vibrations starting at a greater or less distance from us. We do not think of the sound as originating in the ear itself.

---

[1] Cf. Preyer, op. cit. and Acustische Untersuch., ibid., ii, 4 (1879).

This mental projection of the sound is much more complete when the ear is stimulated by vibrations reaching it through the membrana tympani than when the vibrations are conducted by the solids of the head directly to the perilymph of the labyrinth. When the meatus externus is filled with fluid and the vibrations of the membrana tympani are in consequence interfered with, the apparent outwardness of sounds is to a very large extent lost; sounds, however caused, seem under these circumstances to arise in the ear. Hence it would seem that our judgment of the objectiveness of sounds is largely dependent on coincident sensations derived in some way or other from the tympanum.

When sounds impinge on the solids of the head, as when a watch is held between the teeth, the membrana tympani is still functional. Vibrations are conveyed from the temporal bone to it, and hence pass in the usual way, in addition to those transmitted directly from the bone to the perilymph.

Our judgment of the **distance** of sounds is very limited. A sound whose characters we know appears to us near when it is loud, and far off when it is faint. A blindfold person will be unable to distinguish between the difference of intensity produced by a tuning-fork being held before him, first with the broad edge of the fork towards him and then with the narrow edge, and the difference caused by the removal of the tuning-fork to a distance. We can on the whole better appreciate the distance of noises than of musical sounds.

Our judgment of the direction of sounds is also very limited. Our chief aid in this is the position in which we have to place the head in order that we may hear the sound to the best advantage. If a tuning-fork be held in the median vertical plane over the head, though it is easy to recognize it as being in the median plane, it becomes very difficult when the eyes are shut to say what is its position in that plane, *i. e.*, whether it is more towards the front or back of the head. In this respect, too, our appreciation is more accurate in the case of noises than of musical sounds, with the exception of those given out by the human voice, the direction of which can be judged better than even that of a noise.

originated by the contact of the odorous particles with the peculiar rod-shaped olfactory cells described by Max Schultze; but we are as much in the dark about this matter as about the development of visual sensory impulses in the rods and cones, or of auditory sensory impulses in the organ of Corti.

The subsidiary apparatus of smell is exceedingly meagre. By the forced nasal inspiration, called sniffing, we draw air so forcibly through the nostrils that currents pass up into the upper as well as the lower nasal chambers; and thus a more complete contact of the odorous particles with the olfactory membrane than that supplied by mere diffusion is provided for.

We have every reason to think that any stimulus applied to the olfactory nerve will produce the sensation of smell; but the proof of this is not so clear as in the case of the optic and auditory nerves. We are, however, subject to sensations of smell not caused by objective odors. The olfactory membrane is the only part of the body in which odors as such can give rise to any sensations; and the sensations to which they give rise are always those of smell. The mucous membrane of the nose is, however, also an instrument for the development of afferent impulses other than the specific olfactory ones. Chemical stimulation of the olfactory membrane by pungent substances, such as ammonia, gives rise to a sensation distinct from that of smell, a sensation which affords us no information concerning the chemical nature of the stimulus, and which is indistinguishable from the sensations produced by chemical stimulation of other parts of the nasal membrane as well as of other surfaces equally sensitive to chemical action. It is probable that these two kinds of sensations thus arising in the olfactory membrane are conveyed by different nerves, the former by the olfactory, the latter by the fifth nerve.

For the development of smell it appears necessary that the odorous particles should be conveyed to the nasal membrane in a gaseous medium, or at least that the surface of the membrane should not be exposed at the same time to the action of fluids. Thus when the nostril is filled with rose-water, the odor of roses is not perceived; and simply filling the nostrils with distilled water suspends for a time all smell, the sense returning gradually after the water has been removed; the water apparently acts injuriously on the delicate olfactory cells.

Each substance that we smell causes a specific sensation, and we are not only able to recognize a multitude of distinct odors, but also to distinguish individual odors in a mixed smell.

As in the previous senses, we project our sensation into the external world; the smell appears to be not in our nose, but somewhere outside us. We can judge of the position of the odor, however, even less definitely than we can of that of a sound.

The sensation takes some time to develop after the contact of the stimulus with the olfactory membrane, and may last very long. When the stimulus is repeated the sensation very soon dies out; the sensory terminal organs speedily become exhausted. Mental associations cluster more strongly round sensations of smell than round any other impressions we receive from without. And reflex effects are very frequent, many people fainting in consequence of the contact of a few odorous particles with their olfactory cells.

Apparently the larger the surface the more intense the sensation; animals with acute scent having a proportionately large area of olfactory membrane. The quantity of material required to produce an olfactory sensation may be, as in the case of musk, almost immeasurably small.

When two different odors are presented to the two nostrils, an oscillation of sensation similar to that spoken of in binocular vision (p. 696) takes place.

The assertion that the olfactory nerve is the nerve of smell has been disputed. Cases have been recorded[1] of persons who appeared to have possessed the sense of smell, and yet in whom the olfactory lobes were found after death to be absent. Magendie asserted that animals could still smell after the removal of the olfactory lobes; but the stimulus which he applied was ammonia, in no way a test of smell. Biffi, operating on blind puppies, came to the conclusion that true smell disappeared after destruction of the olfactory lobes, and Prevost[2] also found that in dogs smell disappeared after section of the olfactory nerves. On the other hand, it is stated that section or injury of the fifth nerve causes a loss of smell though the olfactory nerve remains intact; but in these cases it has not been shown that the olfactory membrane remains intact, and it is quite possible that, as in case of the eye, changes may take place in the nasal membrane as the result of the injury to the fifth nerve, sufficient to prevent its performing its usual functions.

SEC. 3. TASTE.

[*Physiological Anatomy of the Gustatory Mucous Membrane.*

The peripheral organs concerned in the sense of taste are localized in the mucous membrane covering the dorsum of the tongue, the fauces, soft palate, and uvula, and possibly a portion of the upper part of the pharynx. This membrane is analogous in structure to other membranes of its type, except on the dorsum of the tongue, where its structure is similar to that of the integument. At this position it consists of a *corium*, with a *papillary* and a superficial *epithelial layer*.

---

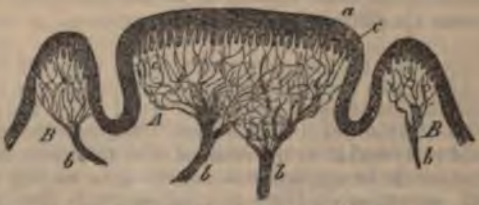
[1] Bernard Cl., Syst. Nerve., ii, p. 228.

[2] Archives de Sci. Phys. et Nat., 1871, p. 209.

The structure of the *corium* is similar to that of the skin, but is thinner and less compact. It serves as a point of insertion of the muscular fibres of the tongue.

The *papillæ* are thickly distributed over the whole dorsal surface, but more particularly marked in the anterior two-thirds. They project as minute prominences, which give the tongue a roughened, characteristic appearance. The papillæ are of two kinds, the *simple* and *compound*. The *simple* papillæ are similar to those found in the skin; they are found scattered over the whole dorsal surface, between the compound papillæ. They are most numerous in the posterior portion of the organ. The *compound* papillæ are of three varieties: the papillæ maximæ or circumvallatæ, the papillæ mediæ or fungiformes, and the papillæ minimæ or filiformes.

FIG. 201.

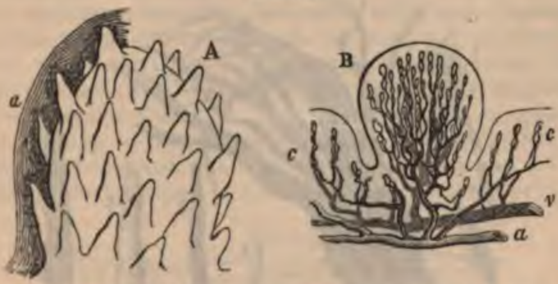


Vertical Section of the Circumvallate Papillæ (from Kölliker). $\frac{10}{1}$.—*A*, the papillæ; *B*, the surrounding wall; *a*, the epithelial covering; *b*, the nerves of the papilla and wall spreading towards the surface; *c*, the secondary papillæ.

The *papillæ circumvallatæ* (Fig. 201), which are the largest, are about eight or ten in number and form a V-shaped row at the junction of the middle and posterior two-thirds of the tongue. They consist of a central broad papilla, surrounded by an annular ring or wall of about the same elevation, and separated from the centre papilla by a circular fissure. The central papilla, as well as the surrounding wall, is covered by simple papillæ. Each of them receives one or more capillary loops and nerve-filaments.

The *papillæ fungiformes* (Fig. 202) are found principally on the tip and sides of the tongue, although scattered sparsely over the whole of the anterior two-thirds. These are so named from their fungiform shape, being expanded at their free extremity and projecting on a short thick pedicle. They are covered by simple papillæ, and contain plexuses of vessels and nerves.

FIG. 202.



Surface and Section of the Fungiform Papillæ (from Kölliker, and after Todd and Bowman). *A*, the surface of a fungiform papilla, partially denuded of its epithelium, $\frac{35}{1}$; *a*, epithelium; *B*, section of a fungiform papilla with the bloodvessels injected; *a*, artery; *v*, vein; *c*, capillary loops of simple papillæ in the neighboring structure of the tongue.

The *papillæ filiformes* (Fig. 203) are by far the most numerous, and are found thickly distributed over the entire surface of the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. They are minute, conical in shape, and generally arranged in bipenniform rows, which are more or less parallel with the two rows of papillæ circumvallatæ. Their free surface is covered with simple papillæ. The epithelium covering them is greatly modified, and appears in the form of hairlike processes. (Fig. 203.) These processes are bathed in mucus, are movable, and have a general inclination pointing backwards. The existence of these hairlike processes on the filiform papillæ suggests that this variety of papillæ is intimately connected with the tactile sensibility of the tongue, and not with gustation. In carnivora and herbivora these processes are of a horny structure, and perform an active function in the attrition and prehension of food. In man their special function appears through their intimate connection with the tactile sense, to guide the tongue in its variable and complicated movements.

The ultimate terminations of the gustatory nerves are yet enveloped in obscurity. According to Engelmann, the glossopharyngeal nerves terminate in flask-shaped organs, which are termed the *gustatory bulbs* or *taste buds*. (Fig. 204.)

The so-called gustatory buds cannot be regarded as specific organs of taste, since they occur in places (*e. g.*, epiglottis) wholly devoid of taste.

Though we can hardly be said to project our sensation of taste into the external world, we assign to it no subjective localization. When we place quinine in our mouth, the resulting sensation of taste gives us no information as to where the quinine is, though we may learn that by concomitant general sensations arising in the buccal mucous membrane.

We recognize a multitude of distinct tastes, which may be broadly classified into acid, saline, bitter, and sweet tastes. Sapid substances have the power of producing these sensations by virtue of their chemical nature. But other stimuli will also give rise to sensations of taste. When the tongue is tapped, a taste is felt; and when a constant current is passed through the mouth, an alkaline, or, according to Vintschgau,[1] a bitter metallic taste is developed when the anode, and an acid taste when the cathode is placed on the tongue. It is probable that in these cases the terminal organs are indirectly affected by the current. When hot or pungent substances are introduced into the mouth, sensations of general feeling are excited, which obscure any strictly gustatory sensations which may be present at the same time.

Though analogy would lead us to suppose that a stimulus applied to any part of the course of the real gustatory fibres of either the glosso-pharyngeal or lingual nerves, would give rise to a sensation of taste and nothing else, the proof is not forthcoming; since both these nerves are mixed nerves containing other afferent fibres as well as those of taste.

When the constant current is used as a means of exciting taste, gustatory sensations are found to be developed in the back, edges, and tip of the tongue, the soft palate, the anterior pillar of the fauces, and a small tract of the posterior part of the hard palate. They are absent from the anterior and middle dorsum, and under surface of the tongue, the front portion of the hard palate, the posterior pillars of the fauces, the gums, and the lips. Sapid substances are unsuitable as a test for this purpose, on account of their rapid diffusion. Bitter substances produce most effect when placed on the back of, and sweet substances when placed on the tip of, the tongue; but the tasting power of the tip of the tongue varies very much in different individuals, and in many seems almost entirely absent.[1] It is said that acids are best appreciated by the edge of the tongue.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xx (1879), p. 81.

It is essential for the development of taste, that the substance to be tasted should be dissolved; and the effect is increased by friction. The larger the surface the more intense the sensation. The sensation takes some time to develop, and endures for a long time, though this may be in fact due to the stimulus remaining in contact with the terminal organs. A temperature of about 40° is the one most favorable for the production of the sensation. At temperatures much above or below this, taste is much impaired. The nerves of taste are, as we have said, the glosso-pharyngeal and the lingual or gustatory. The former supplies the back of the tongue, and section of it destroys taste in that region. The latter is distributed to the front of the tongue, and section of it similarly deprives the tip of the tongue of taste. There is no reason for doubting that the gustatory fibres in the glosso-pharyngeal are proper fibres of that nerve; but it has been urged by many that the gustatory fibres of the lingual are derived from the chorda tympani, and that those fibres of the lingual which come from the fifth are employed exclusively in the sensations of touch and feeling.

The arguments in favor of this latter view are as follows: Cases have been observed in which the fifth nerve has been destroyed in the cranium, and yet taste in the front of the tongue has not been lost. Cases have been observed where the chorda tympani has been diseased, or injured in the tympanum, and where taste has been impaired. It is asserted that when the lingual is divided above the junction of the chorda, taste in front of the tongue is not lost, while it disappears after section of the united lingual and chorda. It is also stated that the glosso-pharyngeal having been divided, and taste in consequence confined to the front part of the tongue, subsequent section of the chorda within the tympanum has removed taste altogether. On the other hand, cases have been observed where the fifth was alone diseased and yet taste was lost (in front of the tongue); and it is moreover urged that while stimulation of the central end of a divided chorda gives rise to no sensation of taste, stimulation of an undivided chorda might give rise to such sensations by simply promoting a flow of saliva, and that division of the chorda might affect taste by interfering with the normal flow of saliva. And even if the chorda contain gustatory fibres these might have their ultimate origin in the fifth, coming from that nerve to the facial by the spheno-palatine ganglion and superficial petrosal nerve.

---

[1] Cf. Vintschgau, Pflüger's Archiv, xix (1879), p. 236.

CHAPTER IV.

FEELING AND TOUCH.

SEC. 1. GENERAL SENSIBILITY AND TACTILE PERCEPTIONS.

WE have taken the foregoing senses first in the order of discussion on account of their being eminently specific. The eye gives us only visual sensations, the ear only auditory sensations. The sensations are produced in each case by specific stimuli; the eye is only affected by light and the ear by sound. Moreover, the information they afford us is confined to the external world; they tell us nothing about ourselves. The various visual sensations which arise in our retina are referred by us not to the retina itself, but to some real or imaginary object in the world without (including as part of the external world such portions of our own bodies as are visible to ourselves). Such, also, with diminishing precision, is the information gained by hearing, taste, and smell.

All the other afferent nerves of the body, centripetal impulses along which are able to affect our consciousness, are the means of conveying to us information concerning ourselves. The sensations, arising in them from the action of various stimuli, are referred by us to appropriate parts of our own body. When any body comes in contact with our finger, we know that it is our finger which has been touched; from the resultant sensation we not only learn the existence of certain qualities in the object touched, but we also are led to connect the cognizance of those qualities with a particular part of our own body.

Like the more specific senses previously studied, the sensations of which we are now speaking, and which may be referred to under the name of touch, using that word for the present in a wide meaning, require for their production terminal organs (see p. 486); and the chief but not exclusive organ of touch is to be found in the epidermis of the skin and certain underlying nervous structures. For the development of specific tactile sensations these terminal organs are as essential as are the terminal organs of the eye for sight or of the ear for hearing. Contact of the skin with a hard or with a hot body gives rise to a distinct sensation, whereby we recognize that we have touched a hard or a hot body. But the application of either body or of any other stimulus to a nerve-trunk gives rise to a sensation of *general feeling* only, corresponding to the simple sensation of light which is produced by direct stimulation of the optic nerve. We have no more *tactile perception* of a body which is in contact with a nerve-trunk than we could have *visual perception* of any luminous object, the rays proceeding from which were strong enough to excite sensory impulses when directed on to the optic nerve instead of on to the retina, supposing such a thing to be possible. It is further characteristic of these ordinary nerves of general feeling, that the sensations caused by any stimulation of them beyond a certain degree develop that state of consciousness which we are in the habit of speaking of as "pain." Putting aside the general feeling which many parts of the eye possess, a very strong luminous stimulation of the retina is required to produce a sensation of pain, if indeed it can be at all brought about; whereas a very moderate stimulation of the skin, and almost every stimulation of an ordinary nerve-trunk, is said by us to be painful.

Though the skin is the chief organ of touch, the mucous membrane lining the various passages of the body also serves as an instrument for the same sense, but only for a short distance from the respective orifices. We can recognize hard or hot bodies with our lips or mouth, but a hot liquid when it has reached the œsophagus or stomach, simply gives rise to a sensation of pain. We cannot distinguish the sensation caused by it from the sensation caused by a draught of a too acid fluid.

The stimuli which, when applied to the skin, give rise to tactile perceptions are of two kinds only: (1) mechanical, that is the contact of bodies with varying degrees of pressure; and (2) thermal, *i. e.*, the raising or lowering of the temperature of the skin by the approach or contact of hot or cold bodies. We can judge of the weight and of the temperature of a body because we can, through touch, perceive how much it presses when allowed to rest on our skin or how hot it is. But we can through touch derive no other perceptions and form no other judgments. An electric shock sent through the skin will give rise to a sensation, but the sensation is an indefinite one, because the electric current acts not on the terminal organs of touch, but on the fine nerve-branches of the skin. We cannot distinguish the sensation so caused from a mechanical prick of similar intensity, we cannot perceive that the sensation is caused by an electric current. Similarly certain chemical substances, such as a strong acid, will give rise to a sensation, but we cannot perceive the acid, we can form no judgment of its nature such as we could if we tasted it; and if the acid does not permeate the skin so as to act directly and chemically on the nerve-fibres, we cannot distinguish the acid from any other liquid giving rise to the same simple contact impressions. The terminal organs of the skin are such as are only affected by pressure or by temperature. Conversely pressure or a variation in temperature brought to bear on a nerve-trunk, instead of on the terminal organs, produces no specific tactile sensations of pressure or temperature, but merely general sensations of feeling rapidly rising into pain.

SEC. 2. TACTILE SENSATIONS.

Sensations of Pressure.

As with visual, so with tactile and indeed with all other sensations, the intensity of the sensation maintains that general relation to the intensity of the stimulus which we spoke of at p. 666 as being formulated under Weber's law. We can distinguish the difference of pressure between one and two grams as readily as we can that between ten and twenty or one hundred and two hundred.

When two sensations follow each other in the same spot at a sufficiently short interval they are fused into one; thus, if the finger be brought to bear lightly on a rotating card having a series of holes in it, the holes cease to be felt as such when they follow each other at a rapidity of about 1500 in a second. The vibrations of a cord cease to be appreciable by touch when they reach the same rapidity. When sensations are generated at points of the skin too close together they become fused into one; but to this point we shall return presently.

The sensation caused by pressure is at its maximum soon after its beginning, and thenceforward diminishes. The more suddenly the pressure is increased, the greater the sensation; and if the increase be sufficiently gradual, even very great pressure may be applied without giving rise to any sensation. A sensation in any spot is increased by contrast with surrounding areas not subject to pressure. Thus if the finger be dipped into mercury the pressure will be felt most at the surface of the fluid; and if the finger be drawn up and down, the sensation caused will be that of a ring moving along the finger.

All parts of the skin are not equally sensitive to pressure; small differences of simple pressure are more readily appreciated when brought to bear on the palmar surface of the finger, or on the forehead, than on the arm or on the sole of the foot. In making these determinations all muscular movement should be avoided in order to eliminate the muscular sense, of which we shall speak presently; and the area stimulated should be as small and the surfaces in contact as uniform as possible. In a similar manner small consecutive variations of pressure, as in counting a pulse, are more readily appreciated by certain parts of the skin than by others; and the minimum of pressure which can be felt differs in different parts. In all cases variations of pressure are more easily distinguished when they are successive than when they are simultaneous.

Sensations of Temperature.

When the temperature of the skin is raised or lowered in any spot we receive sensations of heat and cold respectively, and by these sensations of the temperature of our own skin we form judgments of the temperature of bodies in contact with it. Bodies of exactly the same temperature as the region of the skin to which they are applied produce no such thermal sensations, though we can, from the very absence of sensations, form a judgment as to their temperature; and good conductors of heat appear respectively hotter and colder than bad conductors raised to the same temperature.

We may consider the skin as having at any given time and in any given spot a normal temperature at which the sensation of temperature is at zero; for under ordinary circumstances we are not directly conscious of the temperature of our skin; it is only when the normal temperature at the spot is raised or lowered that we have a sensation of heat or cold respectively. This normal temperature may be at the same time different in different parts of the body; thus at a time when neither the forehead nor the hand are giving rise to any sensation of temperature, we may, by putting the hand to the forehead, frequently feel the former hot or cold because the normal temperatures of the two parts differ. The normal temperature in any spot may also vary from time to time. Thus when the hand is placed in a warm medium for some time, the sensation of warmth ceases; a new normal temperature is established with the zero of sensation at a higher level, a depression or elevation of this new temperature giving rise, however, as before to sensations of heat and cold respectively. That it is the changed condition, and not the change itself, of which we are conscious is shown by the fact that when a portion of skin is cooled, by brief contact with a cold metal for instance, we are still conscious of the spot being cold after the cooling agent has been removed, that is at a time when the cooled spot is in reality being heated by the surrounding warmer tissues.[1]

The change in the temperature of the skin necessary to produce a sensation must have a certain rapidity; and the more gradual the change the less intense the sensation. The repeated dipping of the hand into hot water produces a greater sensation than when the hand is allowed to remain all the time in the water, though in the latter case the temperature of the skin is most affected. The same effect of contrast is seen in these sensations as in those of pressure.

We can with some accuracy distinguish variations of temperature, especially those lying near the normal temperature of the skin. These sensations, in fact, follow Weber's law, though apparently sensations of slight cold are more vivid than those of slight heat, the range of most accurate sensation seeming to lie between 27° and 33°. The regions of the skin most sensitive to variations in temperature are not identical with those most sensitive to variations in pressure. Thus the cheeks, eyelids, temples, and lips are more sensitive than the hands. The least sensitive parts are the legs, and front and back of the trunk.

The simplest view which can be taken with regard to the distinction between pressure and temperature sensations is to suppose that two distinct kinds of terminal organs exist in the skin, one of which is affected only by pressure, and the other only by variations in temperature; and that the two kinds of peripheral organs are connected with different parts of the central sensory organs by separate nerve-fibres. Certain pathological cases have been quoted[2] as showing not only that this is the case, but that the two sets of fibres pursue different courses in the spinal cord. Thus, in certain diseases or injuries to the brain or spinal cord, hyperæsthesia as regards temperature has been observed unaccompanied by an augmentation of sensitiveness to pressure; and conversely instances have been seen where the patient could tell when he was touched, but could not distinguish between hot and cold. Against this view it might be urged that these pathological cases have not received the critical examination which they demand; and that there are facts which show a close dependence between the sensations of pressure and temperature. When each stimulus is brought to bear on a very limited area, the two sensations are frequently confounded, and Weber has pointed out that cold bodies feel heavier than hot bodies of the same weight. No case has yet been recorded where a hot body, a cold body, and a body of the temperature of the skin, all felt exactly alike, when each was applied with the same pressure; and the cases where a hot sponge or spoon was felt (because it was hot), and yet the sensation was confounded with one of pressure, indicate that the same terminal organs are affected by both stimuli.

---

[1] Hering, Wien. Sitzungsberichte, lxxv (1877).

[2] Brown-Séquard, Journ. d. Phys., 1863, vol. viii; Archives de Phys., 1868, vol. i.

With regard to the nature of the terminal organs in the skin, it may be stated that the *corpuscula tactus* were regarded by their discoverers as specific organs of touch. The end-bulbs of Krause have also been regarded in the same light. But the evidence we possess concerning this matter is at present inconclusive.

SEC. 3. TACTILE PERCEPTIONS AND JUDGMENTS.

When a body presses on any spot of our skin, or when the temperature of the skin at that spot is raised, we are not only conscious of pressure or of heat, but perceive that a particular part of our body has been touched or heated. We refer the sensations to their place of origin, and we thus by touch perceive the relations to ourselves of the body which gives rise to the tactile sensations, in the same way as in our visual perception of external objects we refer to external nature the sensations originating in certain parts of the retina. When we are touched on the finger and on the back we refer the sensations to the finger and to the back respectively, and when we are touched at two places on the same finger at the same time we refer the sensations to two points of the finger. In this way we can localize our sensations, and are thus assisted in perceiving the space relations of objects with which we come in contact.

This power of localizing pressure-sensations varies in different parts of the body. The following table from Weber gives the distance at which two points of a pair of compasses must be held apart, so that when the two points are in contact with the skin the two consequent sensations can be localized with sufficient accuracy to be referred to two points of the body, and not confounded together as one:

Tip of tongue,	1.1 mm.
Palm of last phalanx of finger,	2.2 "
Palm of second " "	4.4 "
Tip of nose,	6.6 "
White part of lips,	8.8 "
Back of second phalanx of finger,	11.1 "
Skin over malar bone,	15.4 "
Back of hand,	29.8 "
Forearm,	39.6 "
Sternum,	44.0 "
Back,	66.0 "

And a very similar distribution has been observed in reference to the localization of sensations of temperature. As a general rule it may be said that the more mobile parts are those by which we can thus discriminate sensations most readily. The lighter the pressure used to give rise to the sensations, the more easily are two sensations distinguished; thus two points which, when touching lightly, appear as two, may, when firmly pressed, give rise to one sensation only. The distinction between the sensations is obscured by neighboring sensations arising at the same time. Thus two points brought to bear within a ring of heavy metal pressing on the skin are readily confused into one. And it need hardly be said that these tactile perceptions, like all other perceptions, are immensely increased by being exercised.

Our "field of touch," if we may be allowed the expression, is composed of tactile areas or units, in the same way that our field of vision is composed of visual areas or units. The tactile sensation is, like the visual sensation, a symbol to us of some external event, and we refer the sensation to its appropriate place in the field of touch. All that has been said (p. 668) concerning the subjective nature of the limits of visual areas applies equally well, *mutatis mutandis*, to tactile areas. When two points of the compasses are felt as two distinct sensations it is not necessary that two and only two nerve-fibres should be stimulated; all that is necessary is that the two cerebral sensation-areas should not be too completely fused together. The improvement by exercise of the sense of touch must be explained not by an increased development of the terminal organs, not by a growth of new nerve-fibres in the skin, but by a more exact limitation of the sensational areas in the brain, by the development of a resistance which limits the radiation taking place from the centres of the several areas.

By a multitude of simultaneous and consecutive tactile sensations thus converted into perceptions we are able to make ourselves acquainted with the form of external objects. We can tell by variations of pressure whether a surface is rough or smooth, plane or curved, what variations of surface a body presents, and how far it is heavy or light; and from the information thus gained we build up judgments as to the form and nature of objects, judgments, however, which are most intimately bound up with visual judgments, the knowledge derived by one sense correcting and completing that obtained by the other. As in other senses so in this, our sensations may mislead us and cause us to form erroneous judgments. This is well illustrated by the so-called experiment of Aristotle. It is impossible in an ordinary position of the fingers to bring the radial side of the middle finger and the ulnar side of the ring finger to bear at the same time on a small object such as a marble. Hence when with the eyes shut we cross one finger over the other, and place a marble between them so that it touches the radial side of the one and the ulnar side of the other, we recognize that the object is such as could not under ordinary conditions be touched at the same time by these two portions of our skin, and therefore judge that we are touching not one but two marbles.

Distinct tactile sensations are, as we have seen, produced only when a stimulus is applied to a terminal organ. When sensations or affections of general sensibility other than the distinct tactile sensations are developed in the termination of a nerve, we are able, though with less exactitude, to refer the sensation to a particular part of the body. Thus when we are pricked or burnt, we can feel where the prick or burn is. When a sensory nerve-trunk is stimulated, the sensation is always referred to the peripheral terminations of the nerve. A blow on the ulnar nerve at the elbow is felt as a tingling in the little and ring fingers corresponding to the distribution of the nerve. Sensations started in the stump of an amputated limb are referred to the absent member.

Stimulation of a nerve-trunk gives rise to general sensations only; no distinct tactile perceptions can thus be produced. When cold is applied to the elbow it is felt as cold in the skin of the elbow; but a cooling of the ulnar nerve at this spot simply gives rise to pain which is referred to the ulnar side of the hand and arm.

SEC. 4. THE MUSCULAR SENSE.

When we come into contact with external bodies we are conscious not only of the pressure exerted by the object on our skin, but also of the pressure which we exert on the object. If we *place the hand* and arm flat on a table, we can estimate the pressure exerted by bodies resting on the palm of the hand, and so come to a conclusion as to their weights; in this case we are conscious only of the pressure exerted by the body on our skin. If, however, we hold the body in the hand, we not only feel the pressure of the body, but we are also aware of the muscular exertion required to support and lift the body. We are conscious of a muscular sense; and we find by experience that when we trust to this muscular sense as well as to the sensation of pressure, we can form much more accurate judgments concerning the weight of bodies than when we rely on pressure alone. When we want to tell how heavy a body is, we are not in the habit of allowing it simply to press on the hand laid flat on the table; we hold it in our hand and lift it up and down. We appeal to our muscular sense to inform us of the amount of exertion necessary to move it, and by help of that, judge of its weight. And in all the movements of our body we are conscious, even to an astonishingly accurate degree, as is well seen in the discussions concerning vision, of the amount of the contraction to which we are putting our muscles. In some way or other we are made aware of what particular muscles or groups of muscles are being thrown into action, and to what extent that action is being carried. We are also conscious of the varying condition of our muscles, even when they are at rest; the tired and especially the paralyzed limb is said to "feel" heavy. In this way the state of our muscles largely determines our general feeling of health and vigor, of weariness, ill health, and feebleness.

It has been suggested that since muscle possesses little or no general sensibility, comparatively little pain being felt for instance when muscles are cut, our muscular sense is chiefly derived from the traction of the contracting muscle on its attachments; and undoubtedly in cramp, when it can be localized, the pain is chiefly felt at the joints; and, as we know, Pacinian bodies are abundant around the joints. The investigations of Sachs, however,[1] seem to show that afferent nerves, having a different disposition from the ordinary motor nerves which terminate in end-plates, are present in muscle; and analogy would lead us to suppose that these afferent fibres, though possessing a low general sensibility, might be easily excited by a muscular contraction; but further investigations are necessary before these can be accepted as the true nerves of the muscular sense.[2]

In favor of the view that the muscular sense is peripheral and not central in origin, may be urged the fact that the sense is felt when the muscles are thrown into contraction by direct galvanic stimulation instead of by the agency of the will. Many authors, even while admitting the existence of a muscular sense of peripheral origin, contend that we also possess and are very largely guided in our movements by what might be called "neural" sense of central origin. That is to say, the changes in the central nervous system involved in initiating and carrying out a movement of the body so affect our consciousness that we have a sense of the effort itself.

---

[1] Reichert and Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1874, p. 175.

[2] Cf. Tschiriew, Archives de Physiol., vi (1879), p. 89.

It has been observed that when the posterior roots are divided, movements become less orderly, as if they lacked the guidance of a muscular sense; and although the impairment of the movements may be due in part to the coincident loss of tactile sensations, it is probable that it is increased by the loss of muscular sense. There is a malady or rather a condition attending various diseased states of the central nervous system called locomotor ataxy, the characteristic feature of which is that, though there is no loss of direct power over the muscles, the various bodily movements are effected imperfectly and with difficulty, from want of proper co-ordination. In such diseases the pathological mischief is frequently found in the posterior columns of the spinal cord and the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, that is in distinctly afferent structures; and the phenomena seem in certain cases at least due to inefficient co-ordination caused by the loss of both the muscular sense and of ordinary tactile sensation. The patients walk with difficulty, because they have imperfect sensations both of the condition of their muscles and of the contact of their feet with the ground. In many of their movements they have to depend largely on visual sensations; hence when their eyes are shut, they become singularly helpless. In other cases again ataxy may be present without any impairment of touch; but a discussion of the varied phenomena of this class of maladies cannot be entered into here.

Among the names of those who have contributed largely to our knowledge of the physiology of the various senses, the following (the more purely physical inquirers being passed over) call for special mention. In vision, the labors of Young[1] on accommodation and color sensations, of Purkinje[2] on subjective phenomena, of Donders[3] and Helmholtz[4] on the various dioptric features of the eye and the movements of the eyeballs, and of Wheatstone on binocular vision, were of first importance; and to these, on the psychological side, may be added the speculations of Berkeley.[5] It need hardly be said that in his *Physiological Optics* Helmholtz has treated the whole subject in such a complete and masterly way as to make it almost entirely his own. In both sight and hearing, and indeed in the senses in general, we owe much to Johannes Müller.[6] The physiology of touch, and the relations obtaining in the senses in general between the stimulus and the sensation, was largely advanced by the labors of Weber.[7] Lastly, the researches of Helmholtz[8] on musical sounds mark an epoch in the history of the physiology of hearing.

---

[1] Phil. Trans., 1801.

[2] Beobacht. u. Versuch. zur Physiol. d. Sinne, 1825, and other papers.

[3] Numerous papers from 1846 onwards.

[4] Numerous papers and Handbuch der Physiol. Optik, 1867.

[5] Theory of Vision, 1709.

[6] Phys. d. Gesichtssinns, 1826, and Handb. der Physiol., 1835.

[7] De Aure, etc., 1820. Wagner's Handwörterbuch, Art. Tastsinn.

[8] Tonempfindungen, 1870.

CHAPTER V.

THE SPINAL CORD.

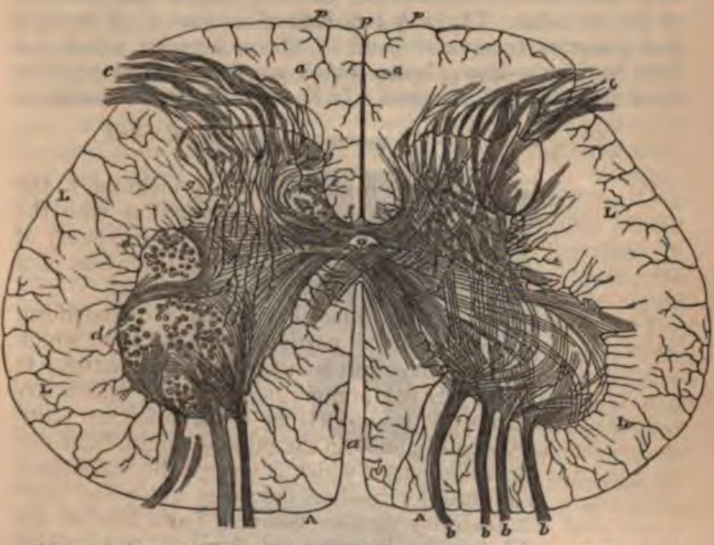
[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Spinal Cord.*

THE spinal cord extends from the foramen magnum to the second lumbar vertebra. Above, it is continuous with the medulla oblongata; below, it terminates in an extremity of gray matter, the *filum terminale*, which lies in the midst of a number of nervous cords that form the *cauda equina*.

The spinal cord is a long, somewhat flattened, cylindriform body. It consists of a central portion of gray matter, which is covered by longitudinal strands of white fibrous matter. It is a bilateral, symmetrical organ, the halves of which are separated anteriorly and posteriorly by the *anterior* and *posterior median* fissures, and joined in the middle longitudinal line by a band of nervous matter which is termed the *commissure*. (Fig. 205.) The anterior median fissure is wider and shallower than the posterior median fissure. Each half of the cord is marked by two longitudinal furrows, from which emerge the anterior and posterior roots of the spinal nerves. These furrows are termed the antero-lateral and postero-lateral grooves. They divide each half into three portions: the *anterior*, *lateral*, and *posterior* columns. The anterior column is situated between the anterior median fissure and the antero-lateral groove; the middle column, between the antero- and postero-lateral grooves; the posterior column between the postero-lateral groove and the posterior median fissure. The anterior and lateral columns are sometimes spoken of as the antero-lateral column. The fibres of the columns are continuations of the fibres of the spinal nerves, or of fibres which arise in the ganglionic cells of the cord; and have for the most part a longitudinal direction; other fibres have a transverse or oblique direction in their course to other columns or to nerve cells.

The gray substance of the cord (Fig. 205) is in the form of two crescentic portions, which are connected together by the gray commissure, and presents an appearance similar to that of the letter H. Each crescentic portion consists of two extremities, which are termed the cornua. The anterior cornu is thicker, larger, and contains a much greater proportion of nerve-cells. It consists principally of very fine nerve-fibres, and three distinct columns of larger multipolar cells. These columns are best seen in the cervical and lumbar regions, and are frequently spoken of as the motor cells; and some of them as trophic cells.

FIG. 205.

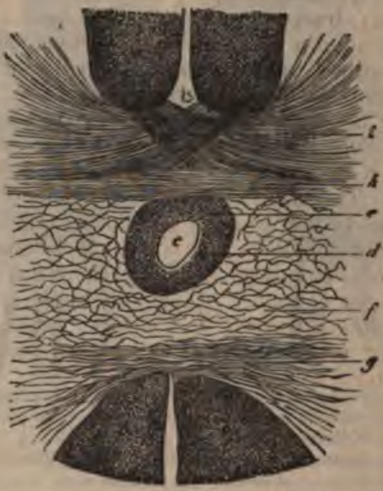


Transverse Section of Spinal Cord, through the middle of the Lumbar Enlargement, showing on the right side the course of the Nerve-roots, and on the left the position of the principal tracts of Vesicular Matter. A, A, anterior columns; P, P, posterior columns; L, L, lateral columns; *a*, anterior median fissure; *p*, posterior median fissure; *b*, *b*, *b*, *b*, anterior roots of spinal nerves; *c*, *c*, posterior roots; *d*, *d*, tracts of vesicular matter in anterior column; *e*, tracts of vesicular matter in posterior column; *f*, central canal, surrounded by the gray commissure; *g*, substantia gelatinosa of Rolando.

The posterior cornu is smaller and narrower than the anterior; the cells, also, are of much smaller size. Near the posterior extremity of the cornu is an expanded gelatinous portion, which is termed the *substantia gelatinosa* of Rolando (Fig. 205). At the anterior internal portion, near the central canal, is a column of small nerve-cells, which is called the posterior vesicular or Clarke's column. This column is most distinct in the dorsal region. The cells of the posterior cornua are sometimes spoken of as the sensory cells.

The *commissure* (Fig. 206) consists of a band of gray and white fibrous matter, which serves to connect the two sides of the cord. The anterior portion or *white commissure* is composed of a band of decussating white fibres, which for the most part extends between the anterior cornua and columns of the two sides. The *gray* commissure consists of an anterior and posterior transverse band of fibres, between which is a very fine nerve-fibre plexus, which are for the most part derived from the cell processes. In the centre of the commissure is the *central canal*. The wall of the canal is formed by a connective tissue and is lined by columnar epithelium. It extends from the fourth ventricle of the brain to the filum terminale.

FIG. 206.



Median portion of a Transverse Section of the Spinal Cord of a Child six months old, from the lower part of the Cervical Region, treated with the double Chloride of Potassium and Gold. Magnified 50 diameters. *a*, *a*, anterior columns; *b*, *b*, posterior columns; *c*, central canal; *d*, line indicating the epithelium of the central canal; *e*, connective tissue surrounding the central canal; *f*, nerve-fibre plexus around the central canal; *g*, posterior transverse fibres of the gray commissure; *h*, anterior transverse fibres of the gray commissure; *i*, decussation of fibres in the anterior white commissure.

The cord is thicker in the cervical and the lumbar and lower dorsal regions, at points corresponding to the origin of the brachial, and the lumbar and sacral plexuses. This enlargement is due, for the most part, to the increased proportion of gray matter. The quantity of white matter progressively increases from below upwards. (See pp. 757 and 758.)

The arrangement of the fibres of the spinal nerves after they have entered the substance of the cord is of great physiological interest. Upon examining sections of the cord these fibres appear to have a general horizontal, oblique, or longitudinal direction. The fibres of the *posterior* roots have at first either an oblique or horizontal direction. They then assume different courses: some of them are lost sight of in the gray matter of the posterior cornua; others pass obliquely downwards or upwards, through the posterior gray substance, and are finally traced to the anterior cornua or columns, where they assume a longitudinal direction, either running up or down; others, upon entering the posterior gray matter have a longitudinal direction, running into the segments (p. 757) above or below the point; others, seen upon transverse sections (Fig. 205) run towards the anterior cornu, or across the commissure to the lateral or posterior columns of the opposite side. The fibres of the *anterior* roots (Fig. 205) run posteriorly, nearly horizontally, until they reach the anterior cornu. Some of the fibres then appear to be continuous with the processes of the multipolar cells; others run to the lateral or to the anterior columns; others run to the posterior gray matter; and others through the anterior white commissure, and are traced to the cells of the anterior cornu, or to the anterior or lateral columns.

The nervous elements of the spinal cord are bound together by a modified connective tissue, called the *neuroglia*, which serves also as a nidus for the ramifications of the bloodvessels.]

Sec. 1. As a Centre of Reflex Action.

We have already discussed (Book 1, Chapter III) the general features of reflex action, so that we can now confine ourselves to special points of particular interest. Since the frog and the mammal differ very markedly from each other in respect of their reflex spinal phenomena, it will be convenient to consider them separately.

In the Frog.

The salient feature of the ordinary reflex actions of the frog is their purposeful character, though every variety of movement may be witnessed, from a simple spasm to a most complex muscular manœuvre. The nature of any movement called forth is determined:

1. By the nature of the afferent impulses. Simple nervous impulses generated by the direct stimulation of afferent nerve-fibres evoke as reflex movements merely irregular spasms in a few muscles; whereas the more complicated differentiated sensory impulses generated by the application of the stimulus to the skin, give rise to large and purposeful movements. It is much more easy to produce a reflex action by a slight pressure on the skin than by even strong induction-shocks applied directly to a nerve-trunk. If, in a brainless frog, the area of skin supplied by one of the dorsal cutaneous nerves be separated by section from the rest of the skin of the back, the nerve being left attached to the piece of skin and carefully protected from injury, it will be found that slight stimuli applied to the surface of the piece of skin easily evoke reflex actions, whereas the trunk of the nerve may be stimulated with even strong currents without producing anything more than irregular movements.

In ordinary mechanical and chemical stimulation of the skin it is a series of impulses and not a single impulse which passes upwards along the sensory nerve, the changes in which may be compared to the changes in a motor nerve during tetanus. In every reflex action, in fact, the central mechanism may be looked upon as being thrown into activity through a summation of the afferent impulses reaching it.[1]

When a muscle is thrown into contraction in a reflex action, the note which it gives forth does not vary with the stimulus, but is constant, being the same as that given forth by a muscle thrown into contraction by the will. From which we infer that in a reflex action the afferent impulses do not simply pass through the centre in the same way that they pass along afferent nerves, but are profoundly modified. And this explains why a reflex action takes always a considerable time, and frequently a very long time, for its development. When the toes of a brainless frog are dipped in dilute sulphuric acid, several seconds may elapse before the feet are withdrawn. Making every allowance for the time needed for the acid to develop sensory impulses in the peripheral endings of the afferent nerve, a very large fraction of the period must be taken up by the molecular actions going on in the nerve-cells. In other words, the interval between the advent at the central organ of afferent, and the exit from it of efferent impulses, is a busy time for the nerve-cells of that organ; during it many processes of which at present we know little or nothing, are being carried on.

---

[1] Cf. Stirling, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1874.

2. By the intensity of the stimulus. We have already pointed out (p. 158) that while the effects of a weak stimulus applied to an afferent nerve are limited to a few, those of a strong stimulus may spread to many efferent nerves. Granting that any particular afferent nerve is more particularly associated with certain efferent nerves than with any others, so that the reflex impulses generated by impulses entering the cord by the former, pass with the least resistance down the latter, we must evidently admit further that other efferent nerves are also, though less directly, connected with the same afferent nerve, the passage into the second efferent nerve meeting with an increased but not insuperable resistance. When a frog is poisoned with strychnia, a slight touch on any part of the skin may cause convulsions of the whole body; that is to say, the afferent impulses passing along any single afferent nerve may give rise to the discharge of efferent impulses along any or all of the efferent nerves. This proves that a physiological if not an anatomical continuity obtains between all the nerve-cells of the spinal cord which are concerned in reflex action, that the nerve-cells with their processes form a functionally continuous protoplasmic network. This network, however, is marked out into tracts presenting greater or less resistance to the progress of the impulses into which afferent impulses, coming from this or that afferent nerve, are transformed on their advent at the network; and accordingly the path of any series of impulses in the network will be determined largely by the energy of the afferent impulses. And the action of strychnia is most easily explained by supposing that it reduces and equalizes the normal resistance of this network, so that even weak impulses travel over all its tracts with great ease.

3. By the locality where the stimulus is applied. Pinching the folds of skin surrounding the anus of the frog produces different effects from those witnessed when the flank or toe is pinched; and, speaking generally, the stimulation of a particular spot calls forth particular movements. From this we may infer that the protoplasmic network spoken of above is, so to speak, mapped out into nervous mechanisms by the

establishment of lines of greater or less resistance, so that the disturbances in it generated by certain afferent impulses are directed into certain efferent channels. But the arrangement of these mechanisms is not a fixed and rigid one. We cannot predict exactly the nature of the movement which will result from the stimulation of any particular spot. Moreover, under a change of circumstances a movement quite different from the normal one may make its appearance. Thus when a drop of acid is placed on the right flank of a frog, the right foot is almost invariably used to rub off the acid; in this there appears nothing more than a mere "mechanical" reflex action. If, however, the right leg be cut off, or the right foot be otherwise hindered from rubbing off the acid, the left foot is, under the exceptional circumstances, used for the purpose. This at first sight looks like an intelligent choice. A choice it evidently is; and were there many instances of similar choice, and were there any evidence of a variable automatism, like that of a conscious volition, being manifested by the spinal cord of the frog, we should be justified in supposing that the choice was determined by an intelligence. It is, however, on the other hand, quite possible to suppose that the lines of resistance in the spinal protoplasm are so arranged as to admit of an alternative action; and seeing how few and simple are the apparent instances of choice witnessed in a brainless frog, and how absolutely devoid of spontaneity or irregular automatism is the spinal cord of the frog, this seems the more probable view.[1]

Moreover to this often quoted behavior of the frog may be opposed the behavior of the snake. This animal when decapitated executes movements the purpose of which is obviously to twine the body round any object with which it comes in contact; thus it very speedily twists itself round an arm or a stick presented to it. It will, however, with equal and fatal readiness twine itself round a red-hot bar of iron or lump of live coal.[2]

It may be remarked that two entirely different questions are started by this exhibition of choice on the part of the frog; the one is whether the spinal cord of the frog possesses intelligence, the other is whether it possesses consciousness; and care must be taken to keep the two questions apart. Intelligence in the ordinary meaning of that word undoubtedly presupposes consciousness; but we are not at liberty to say that consciousness may not exist without intelligence. It is quite possible to conceive of the simplest and most "mechanical" reflex action being accompanied by consciousness; the coexistence of the consciousness being merely an adjunct to, and in no appreciable way modifying the mechanical elaboration of, the act. On the other hand, though it is possible to conceive of such a concomitant and *apparently* useless consciousness, and though if we admit an evolution of consciousness we must suppose such forms of consciousness to exist, yet inasmuch as our reason for believing in the possession by any being of a consciousness like our own is based on the similarity of the behavior of that being with our own behavior, we are precluded from distinctly predicating consciousness except in the cases where an intelligence similar to our own is manifested. But the discussion of this subject would lead us too far away from the object of the present book.

---

[1] Pflüger, Die sensorische Function des Rückenmarks, 1853. Sanders-Ezn, Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1867. Gergens, Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 61.

[2] Osawa and Tiegel, Pflüger's Archiv, xvi (1877), p. 90.

It may be added that the movements evoked by even a segment of the cord may be purposeful in character; hence we must conclude that every segment of the protoplasmic network is mapped out into mechanisms.

4. By the condition of the cord. The action of strychnia, just alluded to, is an instance of an apparent augmentation of reflex action best explained by supposing that the resistances in the cord are lessened.[1] There are, probably, however, cases in which the explosive energy of the nerve-cells is positively increased above the normal. Conversely, by various influences of a depressing character, as by various anæsthetics, reflex action may be lessened or prevented; and this again may arise either from an increase of resistance, or from a diminished action of the nerve-cells themselves. In the mammal the condition of apnœa is antagonistic, not only to the convulsions proceeding from the convulsive centre in the medulla, but also to reflex actions arising in any part of the cord, such as those produced by strychnia.

Inhibition of Reflex Action.—When the brain of a frog is removed reflex actions are developed to a much greater degree than in the entire animal. We ourselves are conscious of being able by an effort of the will to stop reflex movements, such for instance as are induced by tickling. There must, therefore, be in the brain some mechanism or other for preventing the normal development of the spinal reflex actions. And we learn by experiment that stimulation of certain parts of the brain has a remarkable effect on reflex action. In a frog, from which the cerebral hemispheres only have been removed, the optic thalami, optic lobes, medulla oblongata, and spinal cord being left intact, a certain average time will (see p. 745) be found to elapse between the dipping of the toe into very dilute sulphuric acid, and the resulting withdrawal of the foot. If, however, the optic lobes or optic thalami be stimulated, as by putting a crystal of sodium chloride on them, it will be found, on repeating the experiment, while these structures are still under the influence of the stimulation, that the time intervening between the action of the acid on the toe and the withdrawal of the foot is very much prolonged. That is to say, the stimulation of the optic lobes has caused impulses to descend to the cord, which have there so interfered with the action of the nerve-cells engaged in reflex action as greatly to retard the generation of reflex impulses; in other words, the stimulation of the optic lobes has inhibited the reflex action of the cord.[1]

---

[1] [It seems pretty fairly determined that the convulsions of strychnia and other forms of poisoning by nervous depressants, are dependent upon a depression of this assumed resistive power of the cord, or what, in other words, may be more aptly expressed as a depression of spinal reflex-inhibitory centres.]

It is worthy of notice that the inhibitory action of the optic lobes spoken of above bears exclusively on the length of the period of incubation. We have no evidence that it diminishes the minimum intensity of stimulation required to produce a reflex action. On the other hand, the augmenting effect of strychnia may manifest itself without any change in the latent period or period of incubation, if we may use the phrase. When a frog is poisoned with small doses of strychnia the reflex movements caused by a very slight stimulus may be very great, but the period of incubation may be the same as that of a frog in a normal condition; when the dose is increased, the period instead of being diminished is increased, the increase being very considerable when minimum stimuli are employed, but much less marked with strong stimuli.[2]

If quinine[3] be injected under the skin of the back of a frog the period of incubation of reflex action will be much prolonged. If, after the retardation has become clearly developed, the brain be removed, the period of incubation rapidly returns to the normal. And if the quinine is similarly injected beneath the skin of a frog, from which the brain has previously been removed, no such retardation makes its appearance. From this we may infer that the injection of the quinine inhibits the reflex actions of the spinal cord by stimulating an inhibitory mechanism in the brain. The difference is, however, said not to be manifested when mechanical instead of chemical or thermal stimuli are used; and, indeed, the experiment is one requiring further investigation.

---

[1] Setschenow, Ueber die Hemmungsmechanismen für die Reflexthätigkeit des Rückenmarks, 1863. Setschenow and Paschutin, Neue Versuche, 1865. Herzen, Exp. sur les Centres modérateurs de l'action réflexe, 1864.

[2] Wundt, Mechanik der Nerven, ii (1876), p. 70.

[3] Chapéron, Pflüger's Archiv, ii (1869), p. 293.

[Recent experiments of Sedgwick[1] indicate that the inhibition of reflex action by quinine is due to a stimulation of the vagus nerve endings, especially the cardiac filaments.]

Langendorf[2] concludes that in frogs the inhibitory action of one side of the brain is exerted on the reflex actions of the opposite side of the body, the inhibitory impulses crossing in the medulla oblongata.

Such an inhibitory effect is, however, not confined to the optic lobes. Stimuli, if sufficiently strong, applied to any afferent nerve, will inhibit, *i. e.*, will retard, or even wholly prevent, reflex action. If the toes of one leg are dipped into dilute sulphuric acid at a time when the sciatic of the other leg is being powerfully stimulated with an interrupted current, the period of incubation will be found to be much prolonged, and in some cases the reflex withdrawal of the foot will not take place at all. And this holds good, not only in the complete absence of the optic lobes and medulla oblongata, but also when only a portion of the spinal cord, sufficient to carry out the reflex action in the usual way, is left. There can be no question here of any specific inhibitory centres, such as have been supposed to exist in the optic lobes. We have already seen that the action of such nervous centres, automatic or reflex, as the respiratory and vaso-motor centres, may be either inhibited or augmented by afferent impulses. The micturition-centre in the mammal may be easily inhibited by impulses passing downward to the lumbar cord from the brain, or upwards along the sciatic nerves. Goltz observed that in the case of the dog (see p. 521), micturition set up as a reflex act by simple pressure on the abdomen, or by sponging the anus, was at once stopped by sharply pinching the skin of the leg. And it is a matter of common experience that micturition may be suddenly checked by an emotion or other cerebral event. The erection-centre in the lumbar cord is also susceptible of being inhibited by impulses reaching it from various sources. And, though the reflex mechanism of croaking belongs to the optic lobes, and not to the spinal cord, this may be quoted in reference to the inhibition of reflex action, since the croaking which, as we shall shortly see, in a frog deprived of its cerebral hemispheres, invariably follows the stroking of the flanks in a particular way, fails to appear if a sensory

---

[[1] Journal of Physiology, 1880, p. 22.]

[2] Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1877, p. 95.

nerve, such as the sciatic, be powerfully stimulated at the same time.

These various facts clearly show that the spinal cord, and indeed the whole cerebral nervous system, may be regarded as an intricate mechanism in which the direct effects of stimulation or automatic activity are modified and governed by the checks of inhibitory influences; but we have as yet much to learn before we can speak with certainty as to the exact manner in which inhibition is brought about. Seeing that in the ordinary actions of life the spinal cord is to a large extent a mere instrument of the cerebral hemispheres, we may readily expect that regulative inhibitory impulses passing from the latter to the former would be of frequent occurrence; and the experiments quoted above show that the optic lobes when stimulated are especially prone to give rise to such inhibitory impulses; but facts do not at present justify us in speaking of the optic lobes as being the organ for the inhibition of reflex action, or in regarding their absence as the cause of the exaltation of reflex activity which is so obvious in the brainless frog.

The inhibitory action of the cerebral hemispheres is illustrated by the "croaking frog" alluded to above. An entire frog when stroked on the flanks in a particular way may or may not "croak;" a frog from which the cerebral hemispheres alone have been removed, all other parts, including the optic lobes, having been left intact, will invariably croak when stroked in the same way. But Langendorf[1] finds that the same regular response to stimulation, *i. e.*, the same absence of inhibition, is witnessed in a frog which has been merely blinded, for instance by section of both optic nerves, the cerebral hemispheres being left intact. From this it might be inferred that the inhibitory activity of the cerebral hemispheres was so to speak furnished by the sense of sight.[2] Langley,[3] on the other hand, finds that ordinary reflex action produced by the stimulation of one sciatic is diminished by section of the other sciatic, and he regards the result as indicating not that the mere section acts as a stimulus exciting an inhibitory mechanism or producing an inhibitory result, but that in a normal state of things afferent impulses passing up the sciatic nerve maintain the activity of the spinal cord, keep it, so to speak, awake, and hence, when these are interrupted by the section of the nerve, the spinal cord is more difficult to move by impulses reaching it from other nerves.

We may put the whole matter in a somewhat general way as follows: In treating of the senses, we have seen that two sensory impulses may, according to circumstances, unite in producing a sensation greater than that caused by either alone, or they may lessen each other's influence, or they may have no effect on each other at all, each sensory impulse producing its effects quite independent of the other. We have, moreover, seen that the various automatic centres, whether sporadic or belonging to the central nervous system, may in reference to any given afferent impulse be affected in the way of inhibition or of augmentation, or may not be affected at all. Indeed we may say probably of any mass of active living protoplasm, whether automatic or reflex, whether concerned in consciousness or not, that it is so related to other parts of the body that its activity may be diminished or exalted or unaffected by events occurring in those parts. Whether inhibition or exaltation or indifference is in any given case predominant will depend on circumstances and arrangements, the nature of which we at present understand in a very imperfect manner. And the difficulties are increased rather than diminished by presupposing the existence of an unlimited number of inhibitory and augmenting fibres.

---

[1] Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1877 (Phys. Abth.), p. 435.

[2] Cf. v. Boetticher, "Ueber Reflexhemmung," Preyer's Abhandl., ii. 3 (1878); and his critic, Spode, Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1879 (Phys. Abth.), p. 113.

[3] Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc., 1879.

In the Mammal.

In the frog the shock which follows upon division of the spinal cord, and which for awhile inhibits reflex activity, soon passes away; within a very short time after the medulla oblongata, for instance, has been divided, the most complicated reflex movements can be carried on by the spinal cord when the appropriate stimuli are applied. With the mammal the case is very different. For days even after division of the spinal cord the parts of the body supplied by nerves springing from the cord below the section, exhibit very feeble reactions only. In the dog, for instance, after division of the spinal cord in the lower dorsal region, the hind limbs hang flaccid and motionless, and pinching the hind foot evokes as a response either slight irregular movements or none at all. Indeed were our observations limited to this period we might infer that the reflex actions of the spinal cord in the mammal were but feeble and insignificant. If, however, the animal be kept alive for a longer period, for weeks or better still for months, though no union or regeneration of the spinal cord takes place, reflex movements of a powerful, varied, and complex character manifest themselves in the hind limbs and hinder parts of the body; a very feeble stimulus applied to the skin of these regions promptly gives rise to extensive and yet co-ordinate movements. Compared with the reflex actions of the frog, the movements carried out by the lower portion of the spinal cord of the mammal while they are more energetic may perhaps be regarded as less definite and complete and less purposeful; though even this is not admitted by Goltz[1] and his pupils, to whom we are largely indebted for information on this subject. A striking feature in the phenomena attendant on this isolation of the lumbar cord in the mammal, is the occurrence of apparently spontaneous movements in the parts which it governs. When the animal has thoroughly recovered from the operation, the hind limbs rarely remain at rest for any long period; they move restlessly in various ways; and when the animal is suspended by the upper part of the body, the pendent hind limbs are continually being drawn up and let down again with a monotonous rhythmic regularity highly but perhaps falsely suggestive of automatic rhythmic discharges from the central mechanisms of the cord. This greater proneness to activity is, however, just what might be expected, when we take into consideration the more rapid metabolic changes and the consequent greater molecular mobility of the whole nervous system of the mammal. Another fact worthy of attention is that the reflex phenomena in mammals (dogs) vary very much both in different individuals and in the same individual under different circumstances. Race, age, and previous training seem to have a marked effect in determining the extent and character of the reflex actions which the lumbar cord is capable of carrying out; and these seem also to be largely influenced by passing circumstances, such as whether food has been recently taken or not. It is evident that the reflex as well as other phenomena of the mammalian spinal cord present a large field for inquiry, being much more varied and extensive than previous experience had led us to suppose.

Vicarious reflex movements may also be witnessed in mammals, though not perhaps to such a striking extent as in frogs. In dogs, in which partial removal of the cerebral hemispheres has apparently heightened the reflex excitability of the spinal cord, the remarkable scratching movements of the hind leg which are called forth by stimulating particular spots on the side of the body, are executed by the leg of the opposite side, when the leg of the same side is, even without any great force being applied, prevented from carrying them out.[2] Here, too, the absence of a truly purposeful character of the movements is very marked, and the phenomena afford a strong support to the "mechanical" explanation of the more complicated behavior of the frog.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), p. 460; ix (1874), p. 358.
[2] Gergens, Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 340.

According to Owsjannikow,[1] if in the rabbit the spinal cord be divided at the calamus scriptorius, a moderate stimulus applied to the hind foot causes movements in one or other or both hind legs, but none in the fore legs, and a stimulation of the fore foot causes movements in the fore but not in the hind legs; whereas if a zone of nervous tissue only 6 to 5 mm. in height be left above the calamus scriptorius, stimulation of either foot may produce a movement in any part of the body. This would seem to show that the mechanisms co-ordinating the movements of the fore limbs with those of the hind limbs, which in the frog are scattered over the whole spinal cord, are in the mammal (rabbit) gathered into the medulla oblongata. The region referred to above lies, it may be remarked, near to the "convulsive centre" (see p. 473). Woroschiloff[2] has observed that in the rabbit direct stimulation with an interrupted current of the cervical cord, down as far as the origin of the sixth cervical nerve, causes co-ordinated rhythmic springing movements of the body, whereas when the same stimulus is applied to lower regions of the cord, a rigid tetanus results; this, too, indicates the existence in the cervical cord of peculiar co-ordinating mechanisms.

Muscular movements, as parts of a reflex action, may occur on stimulation of not only the ordinary spinal and cranial sensory nerves, but also of the nerves of special sense. A sound or a flash of light readily produces a start, a bright light causes many persons to sneeze, and reflex movements may even result from a taste or smell.

The Time required for Reflex Actions.

When we stimulate one of our eyelids with a sharp electrical shock, both eyelids blink. Hence, if the length of time intervening between the stimulation of the right eyelid and the movement of the left eyelid be carefully measured, this will give the time required for the development of a reflex action. Exner[3] found this to be from .0662 to .0578 sec., being less for the stronger stimulus. Deducting from these figures the time required for the passage of afferent and efferent impulses along the fifth and facial nerves to and from the medulla, and for the latent period of the muscular contraction of the orbicularis, there would remain .0555 to .0471 sec. for the time consumed in the central operations of the reflex act. The calculations, however, necessary for this reduction, it need not be said, are open to sources of error. Exner found that when he used a visual stimulus, viz., a flash of light, the time was not only exceedingly prolonged, .2168 sec., but very variable.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1874, p. 308.
[2] Ibid., p. 99.
[3] Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), p. 526.

The time required for any reflex act varies, according to Rosenthal,[1] very considerably with the strength of the stimulus employed, being less for the stronger stimuli; it is greater in transverse than in longitudinal conduction, and is much increased by exhaustion of the cord. It has been stated that the central processes of a reflex action are propagated in the frog at the rate of about 8 meters a second; but this value cannot be depended on. The time thus occupied by purely reflex actions must not be confounded with the interval required for mental operations; of the latter we shall speak presently.

SEC. 2. AS A CENTRE OR GROUP OF CENTRES OF AUTOMATIC ACTION.

Irregular automatism, *i. e.*, a spontaneity comparable to our own volition, is wholly absent from the spinal cord. A brainless frog placed in a condition of complete equilibrium in which no stimulus is brought to bear on it, remains perfectly motionless till it dies.

Of the various regular automatic centres, both the numerous ones in the medulla oblongata, such as the vaso-motor, respiratory, etc., and the more sparse ones in other regions of the cord, such as those connected with micturition (p. 521), defecation (p. 374), erection, parturition, and so on, we have treated or shall have to treat so fully in reference to their respective mechanisms, and discussed how far they are purely automatic, or in reality merely reflex in nature, that nothing more need be said here.

The connection between the spinal cord and the automatic movements of the lymph-hearts of the frog has also (p. 155) been briefly referred to. Volkmann[2] was the first to observe that the destruction of even a small portion of special regions of the spinal cord puts an end to the pulsations of these organs, the region or centre for the anterior pair of hearts being opposite the third vetebra, and that for the posterior pair being opposite the seventh, or according to Priestley[3] sixth, vertebra. Eckhard,[4] however, observed that the pulsations, though ceasing upon the destruction of the regions of the spinal cord above mentioned, after awhile returned; still the pulsations thus independent of the spinal cord differed in character from, being more partial and irregular than, those witnessed when the spinal cord was intact. Goltz[1] saw the pulsations return in about three weeks after they had been stopped by section of the tenth (coccygeal) spinal nerve, though no regeneration of the nervous tract had taken place; and he states that with care the hearts may then be wholly removed from the body without arresting their pulsations. Waldeyer,[2] though he described ganglionic cells in the neighborhood of the hearts, found the return of pulsations after division of the coccygeal nerve or destruction of the spinal cord too inconstant to prove their independence of the spinal cord, and Heidenhain[3] arrived at a similar conclusion.

---

[1] Monatsbericht, d. Berlin. Acad., 1873, p. 104. See also Sitzungsbericht d. phys. med. Ges. Erlangen, 1875, and Wundt, Mechanik der Nerven, etc., Abth., ii (1876).

[2] Müller's Archiv, 1844, p. 419.

[3] Journal of Phys., i (1878), pp. 1 and 19.

[4] Zt. f. rat. Med., viii, p. 24, and Exp. Phys. Nerv. System, 1866, p. 259.

According to some authors stimulation of the coccygeal nerves with the interrupted current brings about a tetanic systole of the posterior lymph-hearts, but stimulation with a strong constant current causes a standstill in diastole.[4] Priestley,[5] however, finds that the interrupted current applied to the spinal centre produces a slowing of the lymph-hearts passing on to complete arrest as the strength of the current is increased. If the current be made still stronger, the inhibition gives way to tetanic contraction. The effects of the constant current vary according to circumstances. Goltz[6] found that the lymph-hearts might like the blood-heart be inhibited, and brought to a diastolic standstill in a reflex manner, by striking sharply the exposed intestines, and that they might also be similarly inhibited by pinching the auricles of the blood-heart; the centre of this reflex inhibition appeared to be in the medulla and the afferent impulses to pass along the vagus. Suslowa[7] traced these afferent inhibitory impulses from the intestine through the rami communicantes. He found that after destruction of all the posterior sensory spinal roots, the lymph-hearts remained in a (diastolic) standstill, which, however, gave place to a return of pulsatile activity as soon as the rami communicantes were also divided, the experiment in his opinion indicating that the inhibitory impulses passing along the latter channel from the intestine are of a tonic character. Suslowa also found that stimulation of a transverse section of the optic thalami or optic lobes produced a diastolic standstill of the lymph-hearts, whereas stimulation of a transverse section of the spinal cord itself increased their activity; that the inhibitory centres of Setschenow in fact govern also the lymph-hearts.

It has been maintained that the spinal cord exercises over the skeletal muscles a tonic action comparable to that of the vaso-motor centres over the smooth muscles of the arteries.

---

[1] Cbl. f. Med. Wiss., 1863, p. 497. [2] Stud. Bresl. Inst., iii, p. 71.

[3] Disquisitiones de nervis organisque centralibus cordis cordiumve, etc., 1864. [4] Eckhard, loc. cit. Waldeyer, loc. cit. [5] Op. cit.

[6] Cbl. f. Med. Wiss., 1863, pp. 17 and 497; 1864, p. 690.

[7] Ibid., 1867, p. 833 Zt. f. rat. Med., 31 (1868), p. 224.

There is, however, no adequate support to this view. When a muscle is cut across in the living body, the section gapes, because all the muscles of the body are slightly stretched beyond their normal length. When one side of the face is paralyzed the mouth is drawn to the opposite side, not because the paralyzed muscles have lost their tone, but because there are on the paralyzed side no contractions to antagonize the effect of the continually repeated contractions of the sound side. And the view is distinctly disproved by the fact that, according to most observers, when in the living body the nerve going to a muscle is cut no permanent lengthening of the muscle is caused. After the sciatic plexus of one leg of a brainless frog has been cut, that leg hangs down more helplessly than the other when the animal is suspended. This might at first sight be considered as the result of loss of tone; but the same flaccidity is observed in a leg in which the posterior roots only of the sciatic plexus have been divided. The difference between the leg of the one side and that of the other in these cases is that the sound leg is rather more flexed than the other; and evidently this slight flexion, since it disappears on section of the posterior roots, is the result of a reflex and not of an automatic action.

Tschiriew[1] affirms that with a certain degree of tension, section of the nerve in the living body is followed by a lengthening of the muscle, and he contends for the existence of a muscular tone not of automatic but of reflex nature, originating in afferent impulses started in the nerves of the tendon of the muscle whenever the tendon is subjected to a certain degree of tension. He believes that the nerve-fibres, which he has traced to the tendons and aponeuroses of muscles, and which he regards as identical with the fibres described by Sachs (see p. 738), are the only afferent fibres belonging to muscle and are simple afferent nerves, not specific nerves of muscular sense. He explains[2] the so-called tendon-reflex or knee phenomena, *i. e.*, the contractions in the muscles of the thigh caused by sharply striking the patellar tendon, as reflex movements started by afferent impulses passing along the same nerves.

SEC. 3. AS A CONDUCTOR OF AFFERENT AND EFFERENT IMPULSES.

When we move our foot, or feel something touching our foot, efferent or afferent impulses must evidently pass along the whole length of the spinal cord on their way from and to the brain. We might suppose that in such cases sensory impulses are conveyed straight along a fibre from the periphery to the sensorium, and volitional impulses straight along a fibre from the "organ of the will" to the muscular fibre. Or we might suppose that the conduction is not simple, but carried out by a more or less complicated system of relays. Both anatomical and physiological considerations show that the latter view is the correct one.

---

[1] Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys., 1879 (Phys. Abth.), p. 78.
[2] Archiv f. Psych., viii (1878), Hft. 3.

The phenomena of reflex action have shown us that the cord contains a number of more or less complicated mechanisms capable of producing, as reflex results, co-ordinated movements altogether similar to those which are called forth by the will. Now it must be an economy to the body, that the will should make use of these mechanisms already present, by acting directly on their centres, rather than that it should have recourse to a special apparatus of its own of a similar kind. And from an anatomical point of view, it is clear that the white matter of the upper cervical cord does not contain a sufficient number of fibres, even of attenuated dimensions, to connect the brain, by afferent or efferent ties, with every sensory or motor nerve-ending of the trunk and limbs.

Regarded in a genetic aspect, the spinal cord is a series of cemented segments, having mutual relations one with the other, and all being governed by the dominant cerebral segments. And we might fairly expect to find that in each segment of the cord part of the structures are purely segmental, and serve as a nervous centre for the afferent and efferent nerves corresponding to a portion of the body, while part are commissural structures connecting the segment with other segments, and the remainder are structures connecting the governed segment with the governing cerebral organs. Some such arrangement as this is indicated by the directions taken by the fibres of the roots of the spinal nerve; and the view is supported by the results gained by comparing sections of the spinal cord taken at different points of its length. If a curve be constructed representing the sectional area of the nerve-roots entering the spinal cord, at their respective points, along its whole length from the first cervical to the last sacral nerve, some such form as that shown in Fig. 207 would be obtained. If instead of the sectional area of each pair of roots the continued summation of the roots were used to construct the curve, the form would be that of Fig. 208. If the variations of the sectional area of the gray matter at different points of its length were thrown into a curve, the form would be that of Fig. 209. If the variations of the sectional area of the lateral columns were taken, the curve would take the form of Fig. 210. The anterior columns similarly treated would give Fig. 211, and the posterior Fig. 212. A comparison of these several figures suggests the view that the gray matter of the cord is pre-eminently segmental, falling and rising as it does with the amount of nerve-fibre passing into each part of the cord, and that the lateral columns, increasing as they do from below upward, much more steadily than either the gray matter or the anterior and posterior columns, are the chief means by which the brain is brought into connection with the several segments of the cord, and thus with the nerves of the body at large.

FIG. 207.

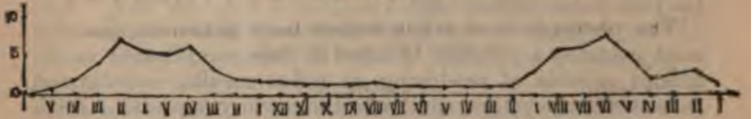


Diagram showing the relative Sectional Areas of the Spinal Nerves, as they join the Spinal Cord. (To be read from left to right.)

In this and the succeeding figures taken from Woroschiloff's paper in Ludwig's *Arbeiten*, 1874, and constructed from Stilling's data of the human spinal cord, the cervical, dorsal, lumbar, and sacral nerves are used as abscissæ; 3 mm. to the interval between each two nerve-roots. The ordinates are in millimeters, each mm. corresponding to a square unit of surface of nerve-root section, of gray substance, or of white substance.

FIG. 208.

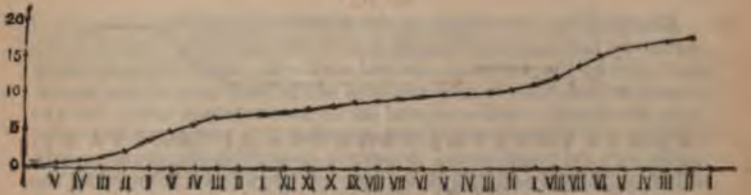


Diagram showing the United Sectional Areas of the Spinal Nerves, proceeding from below upwards. The ordinates in this figure are smaller than in the preceding.

FIG. 209.

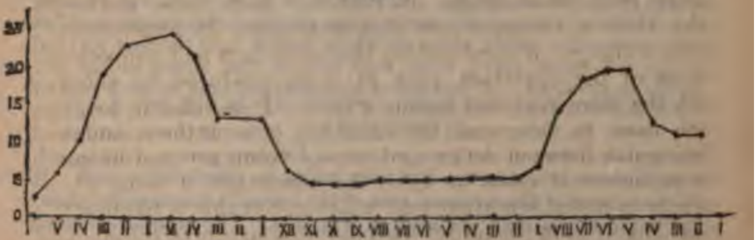


Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Gray Matter of the Spinal Cord, along its length.

FIG. 210.

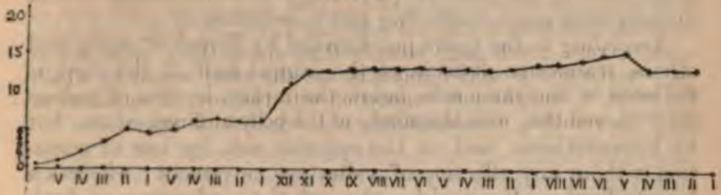


Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Lateral Columns of the Spinal Cord, along its length.

FIG. 211.

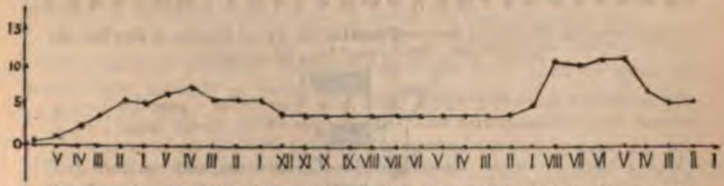


Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Anterior Columns of the Spinal Cord, along its length.

FIG. 212.

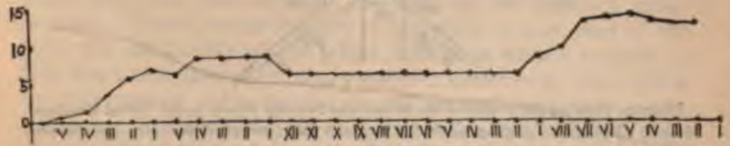


Diagram showing the Variations in the Sectional Area of the Posterior Columns of the Spinal Cord, along its length.

Our information concerning the conduction of impulses along the spinal cord is derived partly from experiment and partly from pathological observation. Both these methods have their advantages and disadvantages. In experiments there is danger of confounding the immediate and temporary effects of the operation, such as those produced by shock, with the more real and lasting effects. It is difficult, too, in such cases to determine the existence of sensations, and to distinguish between reflex and purely voluntary movements. In pathological cases we have the advantage of being able clearly to define sensation and volition, but this is frequently more than counterbalanced by the diffuse nature of the injury or disease, and the want of exact anatomical verification. When these facts are borne in mind, it will easily be understood that in no part of physiology are the statements of investigators more conflicting and unsatisfactory.

According to the views put forward by Brown-Séquard and others, transverse division of the lateral half of the cord is followed on the same side, below the injury, by loss of voluntary movement, accompanied, not by loss of sensation, but by hyperæsthesia, and on the opposite side by loss of sensation without any affection of voluntary movement; whereas a longitudinal median incision through the cord causes on both sides loss of sensation in an area corresponding to the length of the incision, without any impairment of voluntary movement. That is to say, sensory impulses entering into the cord at its posterior root immediately cross to the other side of the cord and so ascend to the brain, whereas efferent impulses of volition, though they cross in the region of the medulla oblongata or higher up (and hence in cases of paralysis from cerebral mischief, the right side loses the power of voluntary movement when the left hemisphere is affected, and *vice versa*), keep to the same side of the cord along its whole length. (Fig. 213.) The paths may be somewhat more closely defined by stating that the sensory impulses pass from the posterior roots along a certain length of the posterior columns, and then cross over to the gray matter of the opposite side, in

[Fig. 213.

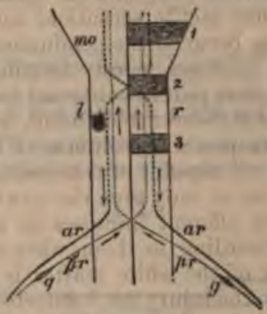


Diagram showing the course of the Motor and Sensory Fibres in the Spinal Cord and Medulla Oblongata. *g*, ganglion on the posterior root; *pr*, posterior root; *ar*, anterior root; *l*, left side; *r*, right side; *mo*. medulla oblongata; 1, 2, 3, indicate the alteration in the position of the motor conductor fibres; 1, a fibre coming from the centres above the pons Varolii; 2, point of crossing and decussating, in the pons Varolii or medulla oblongata; 3, showing fibre going down the opposite side of the cord. The sensory fibres of the posterior root (*pr*) decussate soon after entrance into the substance of the cord, and continue up to the cerebral centres on the opposite side to which they entered.]

which they ascend to the brain, while volitional impulses, having crossed in the pons Varolii and medulla oblongata before their entrance into the cord, descend in the antero-lateral columns, keeping to the same side throughout, and leave the cord by the anterior roots. According to Vulpian[1] and others, the volitional impulses are confined in the cervical region to the lateral columns, though in the dorsal and lumbar regions they travel in the anterior columns as well, and the decussation is not confined to or completed in the region of the medulla, but is continued some way down; and similarly the decussation of the sensory impulses is not sudden but gradual, so that section of a lateral half of the cord affects sensation on both sides, though most on the opposite side.

Schiff, and others with him, make a distinction between the conduction of distinct tactile sensations and that of general sensibility, as well as between the conduction of volitional impulses and that of impulses merely forming part of a reflex action. They hold that purely volitional impulses pass exclusively along the antero-lateral columns, and purely tactile sensations along the posterior columns of the same side, and that the gray matter is capable of transmitting *in all directions* such afferent impulses as only give rise to affections of general sensibility, and such efferent impulses as are parts of reflex actions. Hence, according to them, when at any part of the cord the continuity of the white matter is wholly broken, so that the parts above the injury are connected with those below by gray matter only, tactile sensations and voluntary movements are entirely absent in the parts below the injury, though violent stimulation of those parts will give rise to pain, and reflex actions in them may be induced by stimuli applied to parts above the injury. Conversely, when at any point the gray matter is destroyed but the white left intact, voluntary movements and tactile sensations remain in the parts below the injury, though even violent stimuli applied to those parts give rise to no pain, and reflex actions cannot be induced in them by stimuli applied to the parts above the seat of injury.

Schiff[2] states that when in any part of the cord the posterior columns only are left, all the rest of the white and the gray matter being removed, tactile sensations remain though no pain is felt; there is analgesia but not anæsthesia; a rabbit thus operated on is readily awakened for a moment from sleep (artificially induced by bleeding) when the hind limbs, or parts below the seat of injury, are even lightly touched, but exhibits no sign of pain when the nerves are laid bare and pinched, or when needles are driven through the skin. This experiment, however, on which Schiff rests his theory of analgesia, does not prove the existence of tactile sensations; it simply shows that a peculiar condition may be brought about in which a sensory impulse produces a maximum initial result and then ceases to have any effect. The animal moved at every fresh stimulus, whether slight or strong, whether applied to the skin or to a bare nerve, but after the first explosion the central organs concerned in the matter, whatever they were, appeared to be exhausted. The condition is certainly a remarkable one, and may bear many interpretations.

---

[1] Syst. Nerv., leç. xvii.

[2] Lehrb., p. 251.

To make these views logically complete, we must suppose that after section of a lateral half of the cord, tactile sensations and voluntary movements would be entirely lost on the same side below the seat of injury, but that pain would still be felt, and the parts would still be capable of being thrown into movements by reflex action.

Such are the two chief opinions held on this subject, and it must be confessed that neither is satisfactory. Much confusion has probably arisen from different kinds of animals being used, and different parts of the cord operated on, and from the want of a searching microscopic examination of the results of the various operations. These objections cannot be urged against the inquiries of Miescher[1] and Woroschiloff,[2] in so far as their experiments were all conducted on rabbits, and on the same dorsal part of the cord. Miescher found that the afferent impulses which, starting from the sciatic nerve and travelling up to the medullary vaso-motor centre, caused a rise in blood-pressure by acting on that centre, passed almost exclusively by the lateral columns. When one lateral column was divided, stimulation of either sciatic produced much less than the normal effect: when both columns were divided, no effect at all was produced. When only the lateral columns were left, the other parts being destroyed, the vaso-motor influences of the sciatic stimulation appeared to be quite normal. From which it would appear that afferent impulses, such as affect the vaso-motor centre, pass from one sciatic up *both* lateral columns; and Miescher came to the conclusion that they passed more on the opposite than on the same side. He also thought that impulses coming from more distant parts travelled more to the outside of the columns than those from nearer parts. It need hardly be urged that one set of experiments of this kind, the result of which can be definitely stated in millimeters of mercury, as measurements of the rise of blood-pressure, are worth a score of others, in which trust has to be placed in variable and illusory signs of sensation. On the other hand, it is obvious that the path of the afferent impulses which affect the vaso-motor centre might be quite different from that of the afferent impulses giving rise to sensations. Woroschiloff, however, has repeated Miescher's experiments, using the ordinary signs of sensation instead of blood-pressure, and has come to the conclusion that both the afferent impulses, which, starting in the hind limbs, give rise, either by developing into sensations or by originating reflex actions, to movements in the head and fore limbs, and the efferent impulses, which, starting in the brain or upper part of the spinal cord, either by volition or as the result of stimulation, produce movements in the hind limbs, pass also exclusively through the lateral columns. The course of the afferent impulses differs, however, from that of the efferent impulses, in so far that the former cross over largely from one side of the cord to the other, while the latter, though they also cross, do so to a small extent only. The results of both these inquiries then lead to the conclusion, that in the dorsal spinal cord of the rabbit the lateral columns form the chief bridge between the fore and hind part of the body for the conduction of impulses of all kinds.

---

[1] Ludwig's Arbeiten, 1870, p. 172.

[2] Ibid., 1874, p. 99.

We must, of course, be cautious in inferring that what has been found to be true of the dorsal cord is also true of other parts of the cord; still the experimental results just described, when compared with the anatomical facts mentioned at pp. 757–60, with which they wonderfully agree, enable us, perhaps, to a certain extent, to interpret the observations of others in some such way as follows: In the first place, if there be any truth in our interpretation of the phenomena of strychnia poisoning, the gray matter must be physiologically continuous, and a stimulus of *sufficient strength* may cause impulses to travel in every direction along its whole length. In the second place, this protoplasmic network is marked out by barriers of resistance into nervous mechanisms for the carrying out of co-ordinated muscular movements and for the association of afferent impulses with these movements. If we suppose, as we have already urged, that volition makes use of these already existing mechanisms instead of requiring separate co-ordinating mechanisms in many respects exactly like them, we should expect to find that a volitional impulse, tending towards any movement, in descending from the brain, passes into the gray matter of the cord, at the spot where the appropriate mechanism exists, before it emerges in the anterior root; and conversely, that an afferent impulse passes first into the mechanism with which it is naturally associated for the production of the frequently occurring reflex action, before it travels up to the brain by some tract more direct than the gray matter. And we should look also for similar arrangements connecting any group of nerves, not only with the brain, but with distant parts of the cord. In harmony with these functional requirements we should be prepared to find that the entrance of any large group of nerves into the spinal cord was associated with a large development of gray matter for the local co-ordinating mechanisms, and with a corresponding increase of certain parts of the white matter, whose function was to bring these mechanisms into connection with both the afferent and efferent nerves; on the other hand, we should expect to find that the longitudinal connecting tracts of white matter would steadily increase from below upwards, inasmuch as a larger and larger number of mechanisms had to be connected with the brain, though the increase would not be so rapid or uniform as that of the united sectional areas of the nerves, since some part of these connecting tracts would serve to connect distant parts of the spinal cord itself. In other words, we should anticipate some such an anatomical variation of the cord, as we actually do find to be the case: the gray matter varying directly in proportion to the nerves entering into it (Figs. 207, 209), and the anterior and posterior columns following the gray matter very closely (Figs. 211, 212), while the lateral columns (Fig. 210), though not exactly parallel to the united sectional areas of the nerves (Fig. 208), steadily increase from below upwards.

For the present we may be content with some such general exposition as the above, but we already possess the beginnings of a more exact analysis. The Wallerian method has been applied to the spinal cord with some striking results. Türck[1] long ago showed that in cases of disease of the brain certain definite tracts of degenerated nerves may be traced downwards along the spinal cord in the anterior and lateral columns, while in cases of localized spinal disease similar tracts appear above the seat of disease in the posterior and lateral columns. Similar results have been obtained by subsequent inquirers; and Schiefferdecker,[2] studying with care the condition of the cord consequent upon its complete division at any point (chiefly at the junction of the lumbar and dorsal regions), finds tracts of degenerated fibres which run *above* the seat of injury chiefly in the posterior, but also to a less extent in the hinder circumferential parts of the lateral columns, and *below* the seat of injury in the anterior columns, and as scattered bundles in the lateral columns. The former, having their "trophic centres" below, may be regarded as fibres carrying impulses upward, the latter as carrying impulses downwards; both are most abundant in the immediate neighborhood of the cicatrix where the cord was divided; and, though they may be traced a long way in their respective directions, diminish more or less gradually. These facts may fairly be taken as showing that a region of the spinal cord is connected by afferent fibres with regions higher up, and by efferent fibres with regions lower down, the fibres running in the tracts described above; but it would be hazardous to venture a more exact opinion as to the exact function of the respective tracts until our knowledge of similar degenerations has been greatly enlarged. Schiefferdecker is himself struck by the fact that the great mass of the lateral columns is unaffected by the section; this he explains by the hypothesis that the larger number of the fibres of these columns, being connected at both ends with homologous nerve-cells, conduct equally in both directions, and hold both their terminal cells as "trophic centres," so that when they are cut off from the one set they can still depend on the other. Flechsig[3] has obtained some noteworthy results by the embryological method. Observing that the fibres of different tracts acquire their medullary sheaths at different times, he has been enabled to differentiate the longitudinal fibres of the spinal cord into separate tracts, some of which appear to pass on into or down from the crura cerebri, some to end or begin in the medulla oblongata, and others to end and begin in the spinal cord itself. His results in many points coincide with those of Türck and Schiefferdecker, and in some respects are inconsistent with the general view given above; but further inquiries are necessary before these various anatomical data and the results of physiological experiment and observation can be united in a consistent exposition.

---

[1] Wien. Sitzungsbericht., Bd. vi (1851).

[2] Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 67 (1876), p. 542.

[3] Die Leitungsbahne im Gehirn und Rückenmark des Menschen, Leipzig, 1876.

In an ordinary state of things, with the cord quite intact, we should expect to find that both voluntary and sensory impulses spread into the gray matter as little as was consistent with their due propagation, and that they passed chiefly along their own side; but we can also readily imagine that when the ordinary tracts were interfered with, as after section of the white matter, powerful impulses (and these would naturally be sensory ones, since the generation of sensory, but not of volitional impulses, is in the hands of the experimenter, and, moreover, is of almost unlimited range) might spread in many directions over the gray matter. Such errant impulses would of necessity, when they reached the conscious centre, appear not as tactile, but simply as the diffused sensations which we call pain. Hence it would be said that the gray matter conveyed the sensory impulses, not of touch, but of pain.

Moreover, we must bear in mind that the barriers of resistance in the protoplasm of the gray matter are not wholly, even if largely, structural. We have seen that the whole cord may be inhibited in reference to reflex action. This total inhibition is probably made up of individual inhibitions; and, in studying the effects of section or injury of the spinal cord we must bear in mind that the change caused by the operation most probably affects the transmission of impulses, not only negatively by breaking down accustomed tracts, but also positively by altering the action of inhibitory impulses. We have, in all probability, an instance of this in the remarkable hyperæsthesia which is a constant effect of a lateral section of the cord. Since it appears immediately after the operation, it cannot be due to any inflammatory process. Nor can it be explained as simply the result of the increased supply of blood to the peripheral terminations of the sensory nerves, caused by the section involving vaso-motor tracts; since the simple section of a vaso-motor tract, as when the cervical sympathetic is divided, does not give rise to hyperæsthesia. Nor can we explain it as due to a one-sided hyperæmia of the spinal cord itself, for we have no evidence that such a state of things is brought about. Since it lasts for a very considerable time, it cannot be due to any passing exciting effect of the operation. In the frog, after hemisection of the cord below the brachial plexus, this hyperæsthesia is manifested by increased reflex movements occurring in the lower limbs as well as in the upper when the lower limbs are stimulated; and when the hemisection is converted into a complete section a hyperæsthesia still remains in both lower limbs, but it is then spoken of simply as increased reflex action, due to the isolation of the lower cord from an inhibitory centre placed higher up. In the rabbit, according to Woroschiloff, hyperæsthesia, after hemisection of the dorsal cord, manifests itself, not so much in increased reflex actions in the lower limbs as in increased movements of the upper part of the body when a stimulus is applied to the lower limbs. This may be interpreted as indicating that in the rabbit the hemisection removes inhibitory influences which previously were checking not so much the so to speak direct reflex conversion of afferent into efferent impulses, as the propagation of the afferent impulses to higher parts of the spinal cord, and so upwards to the brain. We have already insisted on the probable complexity of the central processes involved in a reflex action of even the simplest kind. And of the long chain of molecular events intervening in the central (reflex) mechanism between the advent of the simple afferent impulse and the issue of the simple efferent impulses, we may, without too great a presumption, suppose that those on what we may call the afferent side of the chain might be affected by extrinsic (inhibitory or other) influences more than those on the efferent side, or than those more central, and *vice versa*. Hence, adopting the view already urged, that the spinal mechanisms which serve for reflex actions are also the instruments of the higher cerebral operations, the afferent side of the mechanism being more especially connected with sensation, and the efferent with volition, we see the possibility of the removal of certain inhibitory influences manifesting itself especially as an apparent increase of sensibility. And this naturally would occur more readily in the rabbit, where the reflex actions of the cord are so largely subordinated to the operations of the brain, than in the frog, where they still retain so much of their primitive independence. When the section passes through the whole cord instead of half, the absence of inhibition can of course only be shown by increased reflex action in both cases. When these obscure inhibitory mechanisms have been more completely worked out, many of the at present discordant results of operations and injuries will probably be explained away.

Much discussion has arisen on the question whether the spinal cord itself is irritable, that is whether it can be excited by stimuli applied directly to it. Undoubtedly, the cord, as a whole, is irritable; if two electrodes be plunged into it, and a current sent through it, muscular movements, arterial constriction, and other results follow. But in such a case the current may fall into nerve-roots, which are as irritable, at least, as the nerve-trunks. But even if the nerve-roots be eliminated, the white matter at least is irritable; for Fick and Engelken[1] found that movements resulted when the anterior columns were isolated for some way down and stimulated with an electric current. With regard to the gray matter Van Deen and Schiff maintain that, though it will convey both motor and sensory impulses, it cannot originate them. They speak of it accordingly as *kinesodic* and *æsthesodic*, as simply affording paths for motor and sensory impulses. But their arguments cannot be regarded as conclusive, and Miescher[1] found that when after division of the spinal cord he removed the posterior columns for a certain distance, so as to get rid of all afferent nerve-fibres, the exposed gray matter, as tested by the effects on blood-pressure, still remained sensitive especially to mechanical stimulation.

---

[1] Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1867, p. 198. Pflüger's Archiv, ii (1869), p. 414.

---

[1] Op. cit.

CHAPTER VI.

THE BRAIN.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Brain.*

THE brain is that portion of the cerebro-spinal axis which is situated within the cranium. It consists of a number of ganglionic collections of nervous matter, which are intimately connected with each other by intercommunicating fibres and with the general system by the sensory and motor nerves. The mass of the brain substance is formed by the cerebrum, cerebellum, pons Varolii, and medulla oblongata.

The *medulla oblongata* (Figs. 214, 215, and 216) is continuous below with the spinal cord, and above with the pons Varolii. It is situated obliquely, pointing downwards and backwards, and rests upon the basilar groove of the occipital bone. It is divided antĕriorly and posteriorly into two portions by the anterior and posterior median fissures, which are continuations of the same fissures in the spinal cord. The halves are symmetrical and marked by grooves, dividing each of them into four smaller portions, which from before backwards are: the *anterior pyramids*, *lateral tracts*, *restiform bodies*, and *posterior pyramids.*

The *anterior pyramids* are continuous with the anterior columns of the cord, and are composed principally of fibres of the anterior columns, and partly of fibres of the lateral tracts and posterior columns of both sides. The fibres from the opposite side are received through four or five decussating bands which cross in the median line. (Fig. 214.) These bands are formed by fibres from the lateral tracts, of fibres from the anterior columns, and of fibres from the posterior columns. The *lateral tracts* are continuous with the lateral columns of the cord; each has resting upon it a small oval mass of nervous matter called the *olivary body.* This body consists of white matter externally and contains a gray nucleus, the *corpus dentatum.* Running from the anterior columns and curving around the lower end of the olivary body is a narrow band of fibres called the *fibræ arciformes.* The *restiform bodies* are the largest of the four portions, and are continuous with the posterior columns of the cord; they diverge as they ascend and form the inferior peduncles of the cerebellum. (Fig. 218.) The *posterior pyramids* are small narrow cords (fasciculi graciles), which are situated one on each side of the posterior median fissure, and separated from the restiform bodies by slight grooves. These bodies also diverge with the restiform bodies, and become blended with them.

Fig. 214.

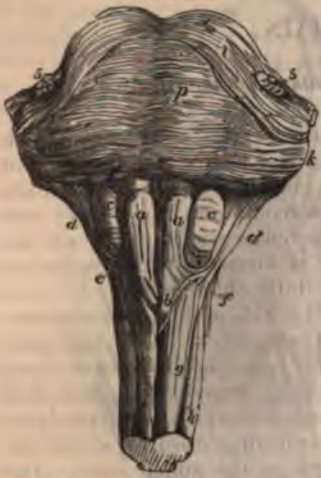


Fig. 215.

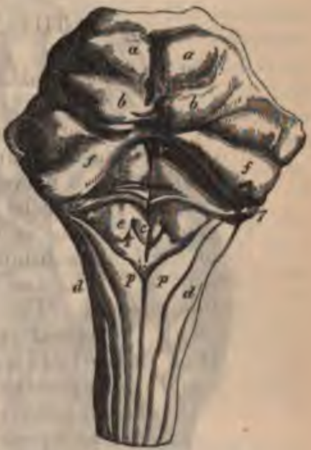
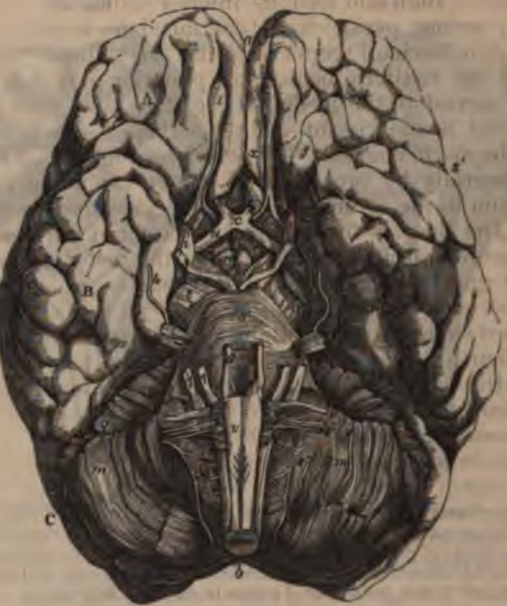


Fig. 214.—View of the Anterior Surface of the Pons Varolii and Medulla Oblongata. *a a*, anterior pyramids; *b*, their decussation; *c c*, olivary bodies; *d d*, restiform bodies; *e*, arciform fibres; *f*, fibres described by Solly as passing from the anterior column of the cord to the cerebellum; *g*, anterior column of the spinal cord; *h*, lateral column; *p*, pons Varolii; *i*, its upper fibres; 5, 5, roots of the fifth pair of nerves.

Fig. 215.—View of the Posterior Surface of the Pons Varolii, Corpora Quadrigemina, and Medulla Oblongata. The peduncles of the cerebellum are cut short at the side. *a a*, the upper pair of corpora quadrigemina; *b b*, the lower; *f f*, superior peduncles of the cerebellum; *c*, eminence connected with the nucleus of the hypoglossal nerve; *e*, that of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve; *i*, that of the vagus nerve; *d d*, restiform bodies; *p p*, posterior pyramids; *v v*, groove in the middle of the fourth ventricle, ending below in the calamus scriptorius; 7 7, roots of the auditory nerves.

The fibres of the anterior pyramids are distributed to the cerebrum and cerebellum. Of the cerebral fibres, some pass directly through the pons Varolii; others join fibres from the olivary body to form the olivary fasciculus. The cerebellar fibres pass beneath the olivary body and are distributed to the cerebellum. The fibres of the lateral tracts run in three directions. The internal form the greater portion of the decussating bands and a part of the anterior pyramids. The middle ascend in the floor of the fourth ventricle and join with fibres of the restiform bodies and posterior pyramids to form the *fasciculi teretes*, which are located one on each side of the median fissure. The external fibres join with the fibres of the

Fig. 216.



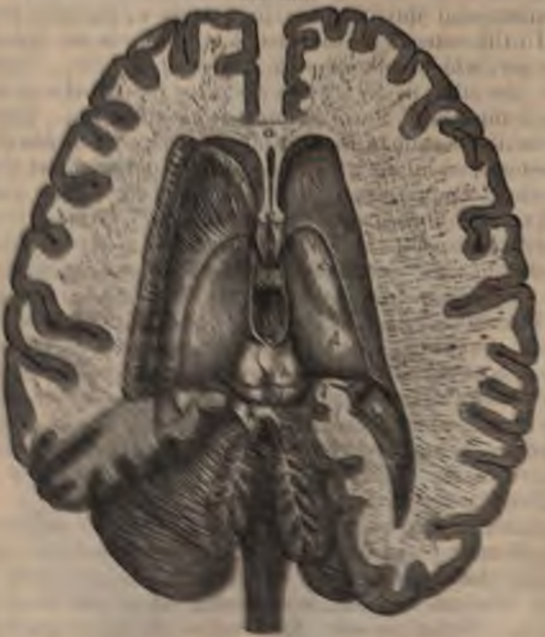
Shows the Under Surface or Base of the Encephalon freed from its Membranes. A, anterior; B, middle; and C, posterior lobe of cerebrum. *a*, the fore part of the great longitudinal fissure; *b*, notch between hemispheres of the cerebellum; *c*, optic commissure; *d*, left peduncle of cerebrum; *e*, posterior perforated space; *e* to *i*, interpeduncular space; *f f'*, convolution of Sylvian fissure; *h*, termination of gyrus uncinatus behind the Sylvian fissure; *i*, infundibulum; *l*, right middle crus or peduncle of cerebellum; *m m*, hemispheres of cerebellum; *n*, corpora albicantia; *o*, pons Varolii, continuous at each side with middle crura of cerebellum; *p*, anterior perforated space; *q*, horizontal fissure of cerebellum; *r*, tuber cinereum; *s s'*, Sylvian fissure; *t*, left peduncle or crus of cerebrum; *u u*, optic tracts; *v*, medulla oblongata; *x*, marginal convolution of the longitudinal fissure. 1 to 9 indicate the several pairs of cerebral nerves, numbered according to the usual notation, viz.: 1, olfactory nerve; 2, optic; 3, motor nerve of eye; 4, pathetic; 5, trifacial; 6, abducent nerve of eye; 7, auditory, and 7', facial; 8, glossopharyngeal; 8', vagus, and 8'', spinal accessory nerve.

restiform bodies, and pass to the cerebellum. The restiform bodies receive fibres from both the anterior and lateral columns, and after entering the pons divide into two portions: the inner joins the fibres of the posterior pyramids and are traced in the fasciculi teretes; the outer fibres are distributed to the cerebellum and form its inferior peduncle. The fibres of the posterior pyramids are continued up to the cerebrum through the fasciculi teretes or to the cerebellum. The outer fibres of the restiform bodies and posterior pyramids diverge as they ascend in the medulla (Fig. 215), and form the postero-lateral boundaries of a lozenge-shaped space, which is called the *fourth ventricle*. The ventricle (Fig. 218) is bounded antero-laterally by two bands of matter extending from the cerebellum to the cerebrum, called the *processus e cerebello ad testes*. The floor is formed by the posterior surface of the pons Varolii and medulla oblongata; the roof is formed by a band of gray matter, the *valve of Vieussens*, which stretches across between the processus e cerebello ad testes, and by the under surface of the cerebellum. In the portion of the floor of the fourth ventricle corresponding to the point of divergence of the posterior pyramids and restiform bodies is a part which, from its resemblance to the point of a pen, is called the *calamus scriptorius* (Fig. 218).

In the lower part of the medulla the gray substance is arranged as it is in the spinal cord. Approaching upwards it is increased in quantity and becomes mixed with white fibres. The gray commissure is exposed in the floor of the fourth ventricle; the posterior cornua become expanded and form the *tuberculo cinero* of Rolando, which appear at the surface of the medulla oblongata between the lateral tracts and restiform bodies. Beneath the floor of the ventricle are a number of special deposits of gray matter, with which are connected the roots of origin of all the cranial nerves, with the exception of the optic and olfactory. On each side of the median fissure is a longitudinal eminence, the *fasciculus teretes*. On the lower part of the floor are a number of transverse lines, the *lineæ transversæ;* these are fibres of the auditory nerves, which emerge from the median fissure (Fig. 218).

The *pons Varolii* or mesocephalon (Figs. 214, 216) is composed of gray and white matter, and serves as a medium of communication between the medulla oblongata and the cerebrum and cerebellum; also, connecting the two hemispheres of the cerebellum by transverse commissural bands. Its posterior surface forms the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle; the anterior surface rests upon the basilar groove of the occipital bone. Recent writers speak of the pons Varolii as being constituted only of the transverse fibres connect-

FIG. 217.



Dissection of Brain, from above, exposing the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Ventricles, with the surrounding parts.

a, a, anterior part, or genu of corpus callosum; *b*, corpus striatum; *b'*, the corpus striatum of left side, dissected so as to expose its gray substance; *c*, points by a line to the tænia semicircularis; *d*, optic thalamus; *e*, anterior pillars of fornix divided; below they are seen descending in front of the third ventricle, and between them is seen part of the anterior commissure; in front of the latter *e* is seen the slit-like fifth ventricle, between the two laminæ of the septum lucidum; *f*, soft or middle commissure; *g*, is placed in the posterior part of the third ventricle; immediately behind the latter are the posterior commissure (just visible) and the pineal gland, the two crura of which extend forwards along the inner and upper margin of the optic thalami; *h* and *i*, the corpora quadrigemina; *k*, superior crus of cerebellum; close to *k* is the valve of Vieussens, which has been divided so as to expose the fourth ventricle; *l*, hippocampus major and corpus fimbriatum, or tænia hippocampi; *m*, hippocampus minor; *n*, eminentia collateralis; *o*, fourth ventricle; *p*, posterior surface of medulla oblongata; *r*, section of cerebellum; *s*, upper part of left hemisphere of cerebellum exposed by the removal of part of the posterior cerebral lobe.—After Hirschfeld and Leveillé.

ing the hemispheres of the cerebellum, and of what is commonly known as the pons Varolii, as the tuber annulare.

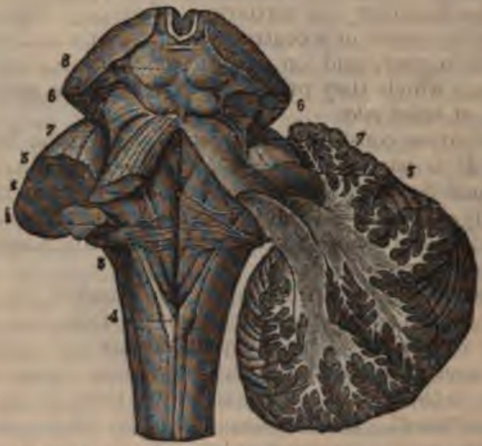
The *crura cerebri* (Fig. 216) are two bands of white fibrous matter, which extend from the pons Varolii to the under surface of each cerebral hemisphere, where they run to the corpora striata and optic thalami, or directly to the cerebral cortex. In the interior of each band is a gray body, called the *locus niger*, which separates the fibres of each crus into two layers; the superficial or anterior layer is called the *crusta*, and is composed of fibres coming from the anterior columns, and anterior portion of the lateral columns, and of fibres from the posterior columns which decussated at the anterior pyramids; the deep or posterior layer is called the *tegmentum*, and is composed of fibres from the lateral tracts, posterior columns and olivary fasciculi, and from the cerebellum. The fibres of the crura in their course to the cortex of the cerebrum run through or beside four large ganglia, the corpora striata and optic thalami (Fig. 217). These are called the "basal ganglia." They are imbedded in the cerebral substance, and are composed of both white and gray matter. The *corpora striata* lie anterior and external to the optic thalami; their external surface is gray, and they present in a transverse section a striated appearance, being composed of alternating layers of gray and white substance. Each ganglia is composed essentially of two nuclei; the largest is the *lenticular* or extraventricular nucleus; the smaller is the *caudate* or intraventricular nucleus (Fig. 220). Running upwards between the lenticular nucleus and the optic thalamus behind, and the lenticular nucleus and caudate nucleus in front, is a band of white matter which is called the *internal capsule*. External to the lenticular nucleus is a second band called the *external capsule*. The *optic thalami* are two oblong bodies situated posterior and internal to the corpora striata; each resting upon and embracing the corresponding crus cerebri. Externally they are composed of white matter, and internally of both white and gray matter.

The anterior fibres or *crusta* of the crus cerebri run to the corpus striatum of its own side; the posterior fibres or *tegmentum* run to the optic thalamus. Of these fibres some probably terminate in the ganglia, while others are continued on to different parts of the cerebral cortex, either through the basal ganglia or the capsules above referred to.

The *corpora quadrigemina* or optic lobes (Figs. 215, 217) are situated below the posterior border of the corpus callosum and above the aqueduct of Sylvius. These bodies are four in number, and are placed in pairs; the anterior pair, which is the largest, is called the *nates;* the posterior pair is called the *testes*. They both consist of gray and white matter, and are connected on each side with the optic thalami and optic tracts by bands of nervous matter called *brachia*. Those connecting the nates with the thalamus are called the anterior brachia; those connecting the testes, the posterior brachia. The corpora quadrigemina receive fibres from the cerebellum through the processus ad testes, from the olivary fasciculi and the optic tracts and third nerves.

The *corpora geniculata* are two small bodies situated on each side, external to the corpora quadrigemina, and beneath and posterior to the optic thalamus. They are called from their situations the internal and external. The internal and testes, and the external and nates, are jointly connected with the optic tracts.

FIG. 218.



View of Cerebellum in Section and of Fourth Ventricle, with the neighboring parts (from SAPPEY).

1, median groove of fourth ventricle, ending below in the *calamus scriptorius*, with the longitudinal eminences formed by the *fasciculi teretes*, one on each side; 2, the same groove, at the place where the white streaks of the auditory nerve emerge from it to cross the floor of the ventricle; 3, inferior peduncle of the cerebellum, formed by the restiform body; 4, posterior pyramid; above this is the calamus scriptorius; 5, superior peduncle of cerebellum, or processus e cerebello ad testes; 6 6, fillet to the side of the crura cerebri; 7 7, lateral grooves of the crura cerebri; 8, corpora quadrigemina.—After HIRSCHFELD and LEVEILLE.

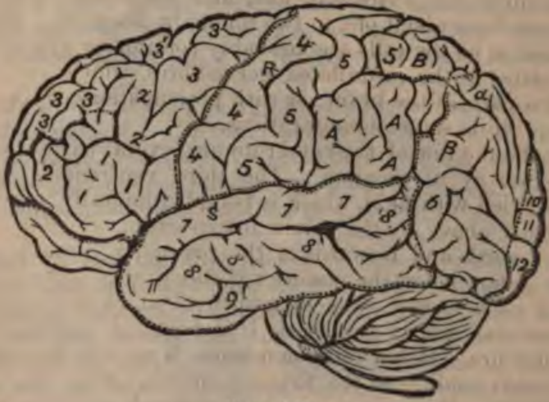
The *cerebellum* (Fig. 218) or lesser brain rests in the inferior occipital fossæ. It consists of two lateral hemispheres, which are joined together by a central lobe, the vermiform processes.

The hemispheres are also connected with each other by the transverse commissural band of the pons Varolii. This band is called the *middle peduncle.* The cerebellum is connected to the cerebrum by the *processus e cerebello ad testes,* which are called the *superior peduncles* (Fig. 218), and below with the medulla oblongata by the *inferior peduncles.* The cerebellum is composed of both white and gray matter, and if a vertical section be made through the middle of one of the hemispheres in an antero-posterior direction, the interior will be seen to consist of white matter, in which is imbedded a gray mass called the *corpus dentatum.* The surface of the white central matter is covered by a number of projecting laminæ, each of which has secondary or tertiary laminæ projecting from it. The laminæ consist of a central white matter which is covered with gray matter, and on account of the peculiar foliated appearance which they present in a transverse section have been called *arbor vitæ.*

The *cerebrum* constitutes the great mass of the brain substance. It is partially divided into two hemispheres by the longitudinal fissure, which divides it completely anteriorly and posteriorly, but only partially so in the median line, where the fissure is interrupted by a broad transverse commissural band called the *corpus callosum.*

The surface of the hemispheres is marked by rounded ridges or *convolutions,* which are separated from each other by fissures called *sulci.* The convolutions are very complicated and tortuous in their course, but they possess sufficient individuality in their arrangement to enable them to be differentiated and named. Each hemisphere is divided into five lobes: the *frontal, parietal, spheno-temporal, occipital* and *central* lobe, or island of Reil. The fissure of Sylvius in running from the under surface of the brain passes upwards and backwards and divides into two branches, the superior and longitudinal. Anterior to the fissure is situated the *frontal* lobe; the *parietal lobe* is separated from the frontal lobe by the fissure of Rolando, and from the *spheno-temporal,* which is below it, by the longitudinal branch of the fissure of Sylvius; behind both of these is the *occipital* lobe. The *central* lobe, or island of Reil, lies within the fissure of Sylvius. Each of these lobes consists of a number of recognized convolutions. The first convolution is called the superior or first frontal (Fig. 219, 3), and lies along the margin of the great longitudinal fissure; the inferior or third frontal convolution (1) is situated just above the fissure of Sylvius, and curves around the superior branch of the fissure; the middle or second frontal (2) is situated between these two, from which it is separated by the superior and inferior frontal fissures. The anterior central (4) is separated from the posterior central (5) by the fissure of Rolando; it communicates with the first and third frontal convolutions. The posterior central (5) is continuous above with the upper parietal (*B*) convolution. The supra-marginal convolution (*A*) lies below the upper parietal and back of the posterior central. It curves around the extremity of the longitudinal branch of the fissure of Sylvius, and then running downwards and forwards forms the superior or first spheno-temporal (7). This convolution then curves backwards and forms the middle or second pheno-temporal (8), then continuing upwards forms an angular curvature, and is called the angular or posterior parietal convolution (*β*, *b*). Below the middle spheno-temporal is the inferior or third spheno-temporal (9); this forms the lower border of the spheno-temporal lobe. The occipital convolutions (10, 11, 12) are not well exhibited in a lateral view. A very important convolution, the *gyrus fornicatus*, curves around the upper part of the corpus callosum. This convolution commences in front of the anterior perforated space,

FIG. 219.



Brain of Man.

1, the inferior or third frontal convolution; 2, middle or second frontal; 3, superior or first frontal; 4, anterior central; 5, posterior central; *A*, supra-marginal; *B*, *a*, superior parietal; *β*, *b*, angular convolution; 7, superior or first spheno-temporal; 8, middle or second spheno-temporal; 9, inferior or third spheno-temporal; 10, 11, 12, occipital convolutions; *R*, fissure of Rolando; *S*, fissure of Sylvius.

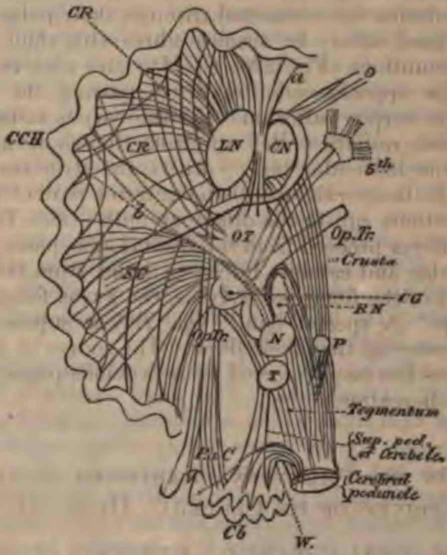
curves around over the corpus callosum, and then winding around downwards and forwards embracing the crus, passes forwards as the *gyrus uncinatus*, and at its anterior aspect becomes sharply curved to form the *subiculum cornu Ammonis.*

The cerebrum is composed of both white and gray matter. The latter is found for the most part as constituting the cortex of the organ, where it covers the convolutions and dips down in the sulci. It is about two or three mm. in thickness, and consists of a number of superposed lamina of nerve-cells and very fine nerve-fibres, which are imbedded in a matrix called the *neuroglia.* These cells are of rounded and irregular forms, and in the middle layers are of a pyramidal shape, with their bases generally looking towards the centre of the organ. The nerve-fibres are extremely fine, and according to Kölliker measure from about one to two mmm. in diameter. The prolongations of the cells are probably continuous with the axis-cylinders of the medullated nerve-fibres, which run to the central parts of the brain; or with prolongations of other cells, thus forming intercommunications.

In the interior of the cerebrum are several parts which are here worthy of mention. The third ventricle is an open space filled with fluid, which is bounded laterally by the optic thalami; above by the velum interpositum, which is a reflection inwards and forwards of the pia mater through a transverse fissure below the posterior border of the corpus callosum. The floor is formed by nervous matter which closes the interpeduncular space; posteriorly it is bounded by the posterior commissure. Below the commissure is an opening, which is the canal leading to the fourth ventricle, called the *aqueduct of Sylvius.* Extending across the ventricle are three commissures: the anterior, middle, and posterior. The anterior passes through the corpora striata to each of the hemispheres. The middle (gray commissure) and posterior extend between the optic thalami. (Fig. 217.)

The lateral ventricle is bounded above by the corpus callosum; internally by the septum lucidum, which separates it from its fellow on the opposite side; below, principally by the corpus striatum, optic thalamus, and a band of white nervous matter, the fornix, which is continuous posteriorly with the corpus callosum. Extending outwards from each lateral ventricle are horn-shaped cavities or cornua. The anterior extends outwards, curving round the corpus striatum and running into the frontal lobe. The middle extends into the spheno-temporal lobe, passing behind the optic thalamus, then curving around the crus cerebri, and running deep into the lobe. In the floor of this cornu are three parts, which are here worthy of notice: the hippocampus major, pes hippocampi, and pes accessorius. (Fig. 217.) The *hippocampus major* is an elongated rounded white eminence, which courses the floor of the ventricle, ending in an irregular enlarged extremity, the pes hippocampi. This body is continuous with the gyrus fornicatus, and is curved upon itself, so that the white matter is external. The pes accessorius or eminentia collateralis (Fig. 217) is a white eminence situated between the hippocampus major and the hippocampus minor of the posterior cornu. The posterior cornu extends downwards and backwards into

FIG. 220.



CCH, cortex of the cerebral hemispheres, the convolutions of which are seen to be connected by arcuate connecting fibres; *Cb*, cortex of cerebellum; *CR*, corona radiata, consisting of fibres extending from the cortex cerebri to *LN* and *CN*, the lenticular and caudate nuclei of the corpus striatum, and to *OT*, the optic thalamus. The posterior extremity of the optic thalamus presents two enlargements, the corpus geniculatum externum and internum, which is seen to be connected with the optic tracts. The letters *Op. Tr.* are placed on a band of fibres that are believed to run directly from the cortex cerebri to the cortex cerebelli; *SC*, stria cornea, or tænia semicircularis; *RN*, red nucleus of tegmentum; *N*, nates; *T*, testis; *P*, pineal gland; *b*, fibres passing directly into the tegmentum from the cortex cerebri; *Pa C*, the band of fibres to the right of these letters are part of the superior peduncle of the cerebellum.

the occipital lobe. On its floor is an eminence called the hippocampus minor. Many other parts of interest are referred to, and shown in the accompanying cuts.

The distribution of the fibres in the brain is one of great physiological interest. According to Meynert[1] the cells of the same convolution are connected through their polar prolongations with each other; by arcuate fibres with the cells of different convolutions (Fig. 220, *CCH*); and with the convolutions of the opposite side by fibres passing the most part through the corpus callosum. To the corpus striatum fibres of the corona radiata (*CR*) run from the whole area of the cortex to the lenticular body; others, the striæ cornea (*SC*), run from the temporal lobe to the anterior part of the corpus striatum; others run to the olfactory bulb (*O*). To the optic thalamus, fibres proceed from the frontal lobe, passing between the lenticular and caudate nuclei (*a*), and from the temporal lobes, walls of the fissure of Sylvius, the gyrus fornicatus, and optic tracts. A special band (*Op. Tr.*) is supposed to run from the cortex to the cerebellum. The course of many other special fibres has been referred to in previous pages, or will be referred to hereafter.]

SEC. 1. ON THE PHENOMENA EXHIBITED BY AN ANIMAL DEPRIVED OF ITS CEREBRAL HEMISPHERES.

A frog from which the cerebral lobes have been removed, even though all the rest of the brain has been left intact, seems to possess no volition. The apparently spontaneous movements which it executes are so few and seldom that it is much more rational to attribute those which do occur to the action of some stimulus which has escaped observation, than suppose that they are the products of a will acting only at long intervals and in a feeble manner.

By the application, however, of appropriate stimuli, such an animal can be induced to perform all the movements which an entire frog is capable of executing. It can be made to swim, to leap, and to crawl. When placed on its back, it immediately regains its natural position. When placed on a board, it does not fall from the board when the latter is tilted up so as to displace the animal's centre of gravity; it crawls up the board until it gains a new position in which its centre of gravity is restored to its proper place. Its movements are exactly those of an entire frog, except that they need an external stimulus to call them forth. They inevitably follow when the stimulus is applied; they come to an end when the stimulus ceases to act. By continually varying the inclination of a board on which it is placed, the frog may be made to continue crawling almost indefinitely; but directly the board is made to assume such a position that the body of the frog is in equilibrium, the crawling ceases; and if the position be not disturbed the animal will remain impassive and quiet for an almost indefinite time. When thrown into water, the creature begins at once to swim about in the most regular manner, and will continue to swim till it is exhausted, if there be nothing present on which it can come to rest. If a small piece of wood be placed on the water the frog will, when it comes in contact with the wood, crawl upon it, and so come to rest. Such a frog, if its flanks be gently stroked, will croak; and the croaks follow so regularly and surely upon the strokes that the animal may almost be played upon like a musical instrument. Moreover, the movements of the animal are influenced by light; if it be urged to move in any particular direction, it will avoid in its progress objects casting a strong shadow. In fact, even to a careful observer, the differences between such a frog and an entire frog which was simply very stupid or very obstinate, would appear slight and unimportant except in one point, viz., that the animal without its cerebral hemispheres was obedient to every stimulus, and that each stimulus evoked an appropriate movement, whereas with the entire animal it would be impossible to predict whether any result at all, and if so what result, would follow the application of this or that stimulus. Both are machines; but the one is a machine and nothing more, the other is a machine governed and checked by a dominant volition.

---

[1] Carpenter's Physiology, 1876 p. 896 et seq.

Now such movements as crawling, leaping, swimming, and, indeed, to a greater or less extent, all bodily movements, are carried out by means of co-ordinate nervous motor impulses, influenced, arranged, and governed by coincident sensory or afferent impulses. We have already seen that muscular movements are determined by the muscular sense; they are also directed by means of sensory impulses passing centripetally along the sensory nerves of the skin, the eye, the ear, and other organs. Independently of the afferent impulses, which acting as a stimulus *call forth* the movement, all manner of other afferent impulses are concerned in the generation and co-ordination of the resultant motor impulses. Every bodily movement such as those of which we are speaking is the work of a more or less complicated nervous mechanism, in which there are not only central and efferent, but also afferent factors. And, putting aside the question of consciousness, with which we have here no occasion to deal, it is evident that in the frog deprived of its cerebral hemispheres all these factors are present, the afferent no less than the central and the efferent. The machinery for all the necessary and usual bodily movements is present in all its completeness. The share, therefore, which the cerebral hemispheres take in executing the movements of which the entire animal is capable, is simply that of *putting this machinery into action.* The relation which the higher nervous changes concerned in volition bear to this machinery is not unlike that of a stimulus. We might almost speak of the will as an intrinsic stimulus. Its operations are limited by the machinery at its command. The cerebral hemispheres in their action can only give shape to a bodily movement by throwing into activity particular parts of the nervous machinery situated in the lower encephalic structures; and precisely the same movement may be initiated in their absence, by applying such stimuli as shall throw precisely the same parts of that machinery into the same activity.

Very marked is the contrast between a frog which, though deprived of its cerebral hemispheres, still retains the optic lobes, cerebellum and medulla oblongata, and one which possesses a spinal cord only. The latter when placed on its back makes no attempt to regain its normal position; in fact, it may be said to have completely lost its normal position, for even when placed on its feet it does not stand with its fore feet erect, as does the other animal, but lies flat on the ground. When thrown into water, instead of swimming it sinks like a lump of lead. When pinched, or otherwise stimulated, it does not crawl or leap forwards; it simply throws out its limbs in various ways. When its flanks are stroked it does not croak; and when a board on which it is placed is inclined sufficiently to displace its centre of gravity it makes no effort to regain its balance, but falls off the board like a lifeless mass. Though, as we have seen, there is in all parts of the spinal cord of the frog a large amount of co-ordinating machinery, it is evident that a great deal of the more complex machinery of this kind, especially all that which has to deal with the body as a whole, and all that which is concerned with equilibrium and is specially governed by the higher senses, is seated not in the spinal cord but in the brain and medulla oblongata. We shall presently see that in the frog a great deal of this more complex machinery is concentrated in the optic lobes. The point, however, to which we wish now to call special attention is that the nervous machinery required for the execution, as distinguished from the origination, of bodily movements even of the most complicated kind, is present after complete removal of the cerebral hemispheres, though these movements may require the co-operation of highly differentiated afferent impulses.[1]

Our knowledge of the phenomena presented by the bird or mammal from which the cerebral hemispheres have been removed is not so exact as in the case of the frog. We may, however, assert that volition is absent, though movements apparently spontaneous in character are more common with the mammal than with the frog, as might be expected, seeing that the more complicated brain of the former affords, even in the absence of the cerebral hemispheres, much more opportunity for the origination of stimuli within the nervous system itself, and for the play of stimuli however originating, than does that of the latter.

When the cerebral hemispheres are removed from a bird the animal is able to maintain a completely normal posture, and that, too, when the corpora striata and optic thalami are taken away at the same time. It will balance itself on one leg, after the fashion of a bird which has in a natural way gone to sleep. In fact, the appearance and behavior of a bird which has been deprived of its cerebral hemispheres are strikingly similar to those of a bird sleepy and stupid. Left alone in perfect quiet, it will remain impassive and motionless for a long, it may be for an almost indefinite, time. When stirred it moves, shifts its position; and then on being left alone returns to a natural, easy posture. Placed on its side or its back it will regain its feet; thrown into the air, it flies with considerable precision for some distance before it returns to rest. It frequently tucks its head under its wings, and if by judicious feeding it has been kept alive for some time after the operation, it may be seen to clean its feathers and to pick up corn or to drink water presented to its beak.[2] It may be induced to move not only by ordinary stimuli applied to the skin, but also by sudden sharp sounds, or flashes of light; and it is evident that its movements are to a certain extent guided by visual sensations, for in its flight it will, though imperfectly, avoid obstacles. Save that all signs of distinct volition are absent, that all satisfactory indications of intelligence are wanting, and that the movements are on the whole clumsy, resembling rather those of a stupid drowsy bird than those of one quite wide awake, there is very little to distinguish such a bird from one in full possession of its cerebral hemispheres.

---

[1] Cf. Goltz, Functionen d. Nervencentren des Frosches, 1869.

[2] Bischoff and Voit, Sitzungsberichte Acad. Wiss. München, 1863, pp. 469, 479; 1868, p. 105.

Even in a mammal, during the few hours which intervene between the removal of the hemispheres and death, very much the same phenomena may be observed. The rabbit, or rat, operated on can stand, run, and leap; placed on its side or back, it at once regains its feet. Left alone, it remains as motionless and impassive as a statue, save now and then when a passing impulse seems to stir it to a sudden, but brief movement. Such a rabbit will remain for minutes together utterly heedless of a carrot or cabbage leaf placed just before its nose, though if a morsel be placed in its mouth it at once begins to gnaw and eat. When stirred, it will, with perfect ease and steadiness, run or leap forward; and obstacles in its course are very frequently, with more or less success, avoided. It will often follow by movements of the head a bright light held in front of it (provided that the optic nerves and tracts have not been injured during the operation), and starts when a shrill and loud noise is made near it. When pinched it cries, often with a long and seemingly plaintive scream. Evidently its movements are guided, and may be originated, by tactile, visual and auditory *sensations*.[1] But there is no evidence that it possesses either visual or other *perceptions*, while there is almost clear proof that the sensations it experiences give rise to no ideas. Its avoidance of objects depends not so much on the form of these as on their interference with light.

---

[1] Here we come upon a difficulty which we shall meet with again in the present chapter. Are we justified in speaking of "sensation" in cases where we have reason to think that consciousness is absent; or where, as in the present instance, we have no evidence to show whether consciousness is present or not? In treating of the senses we called attention to the fact that we must suppose in the case, for instance, of vision, the visual periphery organ to be connected with a visual central organ in such a way that the sensory impulses originating in the former become modified in the latter before they affect consciousness. In the peripheral organ, and along the nerve of sense, the affection of the nervous tissue may be spoken of as a sensory impulse; but after the affection has traversed the central organ and become modified it is no longer a simple sensory impulse. We must, then, either call it a sensation, irrespective of whether any change of consciousness intervenes or not, or we must give it a new name. Not wishing to introduce a new name, we have ventured to use the word "sensation" in a sense which neither affirms nor denies the coexistence of consciousness.

the completeness of the reflex nervous ma
absence of the usual restraints, it is prolon
is able to execute all its ordinary bodily r
its performances nothing is ever seen to indi
of an educated intelligence.

These phenomena are witnessed in some
not only after the cerebral convolutions ha
but also when the corpora striata and optic
away at the same time, so that the brain is r
pora quadrigemina and cerebellum with the
pons Varolii. In removing the corpora stri
ous forced movements, of which we shall
frequently make their appearance, and inte
servation of the phenomena we have just de
stated by some observers that, even when tl
the scope of the various movements of v
remains capable is much limited.

Vulpian insists[1] that all the phenomena abov
observed in the total absence both of the corpo
thalami, at least in rodents. Many authors, l
dogs differ from rodents, inasmuch as in dogs le
striata always entail loss of co-ordination. Whe
the functions of the cerebral hemispheres in part
occasion to dwell on the danger of drawing co
phenomena exhibited by an animal immediately
tion on its central nervous system. The facts
reference to mammals refer exclusively to the
following the removal of the hemispheres; and
show that complex co-ordinate movements may
they cannot be trusted as disclosing to us the
mammal under such circumstances. We have
tails of the behavior of a mammal deprived of

longer balance itself, it lies helpless on its side, and though various movements of a complex character, including cries, may be produced by appropriate stimuli, they are much more limited than when these cerebral structures are intact.

We may, therefore, state that in the higher animals, including mammals, as in the frog, the body, after the removal of the cerebral hemispheres, is capable of executing all the ordinary movements which the animal in its natural life is wont to perform, though these movements necessitate the co-operation of various afferent impulses; and that, therefore, the nervous machinery for the execution of these movements lies in some part of the brain other than the cerebral hemispheres. We have reasons for thinking that it is situated in the structures forming the middle or hind brain.

SEC. 2. THE MECHANISMS OF CO-ORDINATED MOVEMENTS.

When in a pigeon the horizontal membranous circular canal of the internal ear is cut through, the bird is observed to be continually moving its head from side to side. If one of the vertical canals be cut through, the movements are up and down. The peculiar movements are not witnessed when the bird is perfectly quiet, but they make their appearance whenever it is disturbed, and attempts in any way to stir. When one side only of the head is operated on, the condition after awhile passes away. When the canals of both sides have been divided, it becomes much exaggerated, and remains permanently. And it is then found that these peculiar movements of the head are associated with what appears to be a complete want of co-ordination of all bodily movements. If the bird be thrown into the air, it flutters and falls down in a helpless and confused manner; it appears to have totally lost the power of orderly flight. If placed in a balanced position, it may remain for some time quiet, generally with its head in a peculiar posture; but directly it is disturbed, the movements which it attempts to execute are irregular and fall short of their purpose. It has great difficulty in picking up food and in drinking; and in general its behavior very much resembles that of a person who is exceedingly dizzy.

It can hear perfectly well, and therefore the symptoms cannot be regarded as the result of any abnormal auditory sensations, such as "a roaring" in the ears. Besides, any such stimulation of the auditory nerve as the result of the section, would speedily die away, whereas these phenomena may be permanent.

The movements are not occasioned by any partial paralysis, by any want of power in particular muscles or group of muscles. Nor, on the other hand, are they due to any uncontrollable impulse; a very gentle pressure of the hand suffices to stop the movements of the head, and the hand in doing so experiences no strain. The assistance of a very slight support enables movements otherwise impossible or most difficult, to be easily executed. Thus, though when left alone the bird has great difficulty in drinking or picking up corn, it will continue to drink or eat with ease if its beak be plunged into water or into a heap of barley; the slight support of the water or of the grain being sufficient to steady its movements. In the same way, it can, even without assistance, clean its feathers and scratch its head, its beak and foot being in these operations guided by contact with its own body.

After the operation the head of the animal frequently assumes a peculiar position, being twisted and inclined in various ways, sometimes hanging down on the breast with the neck so distorted that the right eye looks to the left side and *vice versa*, sometimes turned back over the shoulder so that one eye looks directly upwards; the exact attitude differing apparently according as this or that canal has been injured. And Goltz[1] has called attention to the fact that pigeons whose canals have been left intact but whose heads have been artificially secured in similar abnornal positions are incapable of orderly flight, and in their general behavior closely resemble animals whose canals have been destroyed.

Injury to the bony canals alone is insufficient to produce the symptoms; the membranous canals themselves must be divided or destroyed.

E. Cyon[2] thus describes the effects of dividing the several canals. When the horizontal (exterior) canal is cut, the movements of the head are from side to side round an axis passing vertically through the head. When the posterior vertical canal is cut the head is moved up and down round an axis passing from ear to ear. When the anterior (superior) vertical canal is cut the movement of the head is in a diagonal direction, a combination of an up-and-down and a side-to-side movement. When one canal on one side only is divided the effects are very transient, and they are also transient, disappearing on the second or third day, even when all three canals are divided, provided that the operation is confined to one side of the head. When the same canal, horizontal or vertical, is divided on both sides of the head, the symptoms are more lasting, but may after some days wholly or almost wholly disappear. When different canals are divided on the two sides of the head, *i. e.*, when the operation is bilateral and unsymmetrical, the effects become permanent.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, iii (1870), p. 172.

[2] Thèse pour le Doctorat en Médecine, Paris, 1878.

In mammals (rabbits) section of the canals produces a loss of co-ordination similar to that witnessed in birds; but the movements of the head are not so marked, peculiar oscillating movements of the eyeballs (nystagmus), differing in direction and character according to the canal or canals operated upon, becoming, however, very prominent. In the frog no deviations of the head are seen, but there is, as in other animals, a loss of co-ordination in the movements of the body.

Cyon has noticed that in pigeons after section of the canals on both sides of the head, the leg is frequently folded up under the body in a peculiar way, as if it were broken; but otherwise there are no signs of any paralysis.

How are we to explain these remarkable phenomena? Let us for awhile turn aside to ourselves and examine the co-ordination of the movements of our own bodies. When we appeal to our own consciousness we find that our movements are governed and guided by what we may call a sense of equilibrium, by an appreciation of the position of our body and its relations to space. When this sense of equilibrium is disturbed, we say we are dizzy, and we then stagger and reel, being no longer able to co-ordinate the movements of our bodies or to adapt them to the position of things around us. What is the origin of this sense of equilibrium? By what means are we able to appreciate the position of our body? There can be no doubt that this appreciation is in large measure the product of visual and tactile sensations; we recognize the relations of our body to the things around us in great measure by sight and touch; we also learn much by our muscular sense. But there is something besides these. Neither sight nor touch nor muscular sense would help us when, placed perfectly flat and at rest on a horizontal rotating table, with the eyes shut and not a muscle stirring, we attempted to determine whether the table and we with it were moved or not, or to ascertain how much it and we were turned to the right or to the left. Yet under such circumstances we are not only conscious of a change in our position, but according to Crum Brown[1] and others we can pass a tolerably successful judgment as to the angle through which we have been moved. What are the data on which we are able to form such a judgment? It is possible that the mere displacement of blood or of the more fluid parts of the tissues in various regions of the body, by giving rise to affections of general sensibility, may contribute to these data; but the peculiar features of the semicircular canals suggest almost irresistibly that they are special agents in this matter. The three canals are, as we know, placed in the head in planes nearly at right angles to one another. Hence the pressure of the endolymph on the walls of the canal (including the maculæ of the ampullæ) in any given position of the head, and variations of that pressure due to movements of the head, would be different in the three canals; a sonorous wave, on the other hand, would affect all the ampullæ equally. If we suppose that the pressure of the endolymph or variations in that pressure can give rise to afferent impulses which, though passing up to the brain along the auditory nerve, are not of the nature of auditory impulses, we have found the data for which we are seeking; for it is quite possible to conceive that the impulses thus generated in the ampullæ by movements of the head, should by becoming transformed into sensations enter into the judgment which we form of the movements which have given rise to them.

---

[1] Journ. Anat. Phys., 1874, p. 327; see also Mach. Lehre v. d. Bewegungs-Empfind., 1875; Breuer, Wien. Med. Jahb., 1874, p. 72; 1875, p. 87.

When a person under the circumstances mentioned above is rotated for some time, the sense of rotation ceases to be felt; but on the rotation ceasing a sense of being rotated in the opposite direction is set up; a complementary or more strictly a rebound sensation is caused. Regarding the sensation as due to the movement of the fluid in the canals, Crum Brown supposes that the effect is different according as the flow is from the ampulla into the canal, or from the canal into the ampulla, and that thus we are able to recognize the *direction* of the rotation, whether positive or negative, *ex. gr.*, to the right or to the left, and so on. Hence the existence of six ampullæ, two for each of the three axes of rotation; and Crum Brown asserts that in man and all animals which he has examined the two exterior canals of the two ears are very nearly in the same plane, and the superior canal of one ear very nearly in the same plane as the posterior canal of the other.

But if ampullar sensations, if we may so call them, thus enter into our appreciation of the position of our body and thus form, in part, the basis of our sense of equilibrium, it is obvious that when these are absent or deranged, the sense of equilibrium will be affected and the co-ordination of movements interfered with. And this seems to be the most satisfactory explanation of the phenomena attendant on injury to the semicircular canals. We are not perhaps yet in a posi-

in the whole matter in a complete manner; there may be much divergence of opinion as to the exact way in which the ampullar impulses are generated, and as to the exact manner in which injury to the canals produces its effects, whether by causing the simple absence of normal impulses or by generating abnormal influences; but it is difficult to withstand the general conclusion that the ampullæ have in some way or other to do with the sense of equilibrium and with the co-ordination of movements, and that the remarkable effects of injuring them are connected with this function.

Some authors[1] have adopted the former view, that the phenomena are due to the mere absence of the normal ampullar sensations, the usual pressure of the endolymph failing on account of the removal of that fluid. A difficulty is presented to this view by the fact that the canals are all continuous; and hence if the effects of section are simply due to loss of fluid, and consequent absence of the usual pressure and of the variations in that pressure, the section of one canal ought to produce the same effect as that of all of them; but this is not the case.

On the other hand, Cyon[2] insists very strongly that mere removal not only of the perilymph but also of the endolymph is insufficient to give rise to the symptoms. He states that he has removed the endolymph from the whole labyrinth by very careful puncture of the vestibule without producing any effects, but that section of the membranous walls of the emptied canals is immediately effective. He regards the symptoms as due to irritation caused by the section.

Tomaszewicz[3] also urges that the effects of section are the less pronounced the more carefully the operation is performed. He, indeed, refuses altogether to admit the existence of any such function as that we are discussing, and regards the permanent want of co-ordination which follows upon extensive injury to the canals as due to mischief set up as a secondary result in the cerebellum or other regions of the brain. Other observers insist most strongly that the phenomena of inco-ordination may be most fully developed without the slightest secondary mischief to the brain.

The injury which causes the loss of co-ordination need not be confined to the peripheral organs of the auditory nerve. Section of the auditory trunk produces similar effects.

According to Cyon, however, the loss of co-ordination which follows, in the rabbit, upon section of both auditory nerves disappears "almost wholly" after some time. If this is really the case, without any regeneration of the divided nerves taking place, it is clear that whatever normal ampullar impulses may be generated in the intact canals, these must play far too subordinate a part in maintaining equilibrium to permit us to regard their mere absence as the cause of such disorder; for we can hardly imagine that an animal could learn to do without such peculiar and important normal impulses, as on that view of the question these are supposed to be; and, consequently, are driven to look upon the symptoms arising from injury to the canals as due to irritation. Tomaszewicz[1] also finds that animals "in successful cases" exhibit none of the phenomena of inco-ordination after section of both auditory nerves.

---

[1] Goltz, op. cit. [2] Op. cit.

[3] Hofmann u. Schwalbe's Bericht, Literatur, 1877, p. 203.

We compared the condition of a pigeon after injury to the semicircular canals to that of a person who is dizzy, and, indeed, one great characteristic of vertigo or dizziness is an inability on the part of the subject to maintain a due equilibrium; he cannot co-ordinate his movements properly or adapt them to the circumstances around him, and in consequence staggers and reels. Vertigo may be brought about in various ways. It may be the result simply of unusual and powerful visual sensations, such as those produced by water falling rapidly from a great height, or by objects moving swiftly across the field of vision. It may arise from changes taking place in the brain itself, and is a common symptom of many maladies, and of the action of many poisons. As is well known, a most severe vertigo may be at once produced by rapidly rotating the body. All cases of vertigo, however produced, have this common subjective feature, that one or more of the sets of sensations which form the basis of our appreciation of the relation of our body to external things disagree, and are in conflict with the rest of the sensations which go to make up the same appreciation. Thus in the vertigo after rapid rotation of the body, while we seem to see the whole world whirling round us, this conclusion is contradicted by other sensations. Corresponding to this subjective feature of vertigo is the objective feature of the failure of motor co-ordination; and there can be no doubt that the two are connected together as cause and effect. The exact manner in which the vertigo is developed, *i. e.*, the sequence and relation of the various factors of it, will naturally vary according to the nature of the exciting cause, and the course of events appears to be not only different in different forms, but in many cases complex. When vertigo comes on from rapidly rotating the body with the eyes open, an element of discord is introduced by the eyeballs not keeping pace with the movements of the head but following irregularly, executing the oscillatory movements known as nystagmus, movements which continue after the body has come to rest, and then give rise to the false sensation that external objects are moving rapidly. But in vertigo of rotation there are other factors at work, for the dizziness comes on, though less readily, when the eyes are kept shut all the time. It has been suggested that false ampullar sensations arise from the rotation of the body exciting the semicircular canals. But even admitting this as a contribution to the total effect, it seems probable, as Purkinje suggested, that changes in the brain due to the displacement of the blood or even of the brain-substance itself caused by the too rapid rotation, are at work. It is difficult otherwise to explain the unconsciousness which may ensue if the rotation be rapid and long-continued; and the vertigo resulting from various poisons seems to be distinctly of central origin.

---

[1] Op. cit.

Vertigo, as in the so-called Menière's malady, is frequently associated with disease of the semicircular canals; but it must be remembered that the canals are frequently diseased without any vertigo appearing. According to Cyon[1] and Tomaszewicz[2] vertigo by rotation may be readily induced in rabbits after section of both auditory nerves, a result which indicates that the semicircular canals can have little share in this form of vertigo.

Whether we accept the view of ampullar sensations just discussed or not, and whatever be the exact share which false sensations take in the causation of vertigo, this at all events is clear, that afferent impulses of various kinds so far contribute to the building up of the co-ordinating mechanisms that changes in these impulses go far to throw the mechanisms into disorder, or at least to impair their proper working. It is not necessary that these afferent impulses should directly affect consciousness (or, to speak more correctly, should affect that complete consciousness which is associated with volition), and so develop into distinct perceptions. We have seen that a bird from which the cerebral hemispheres have been removed is perfectly able to fly; and that, therefore, the co-ordinating nervous mechanism necessary for flight is situated in the parts of the brain lying behind the cerebral hemispheres. We have also dwelt on the fact that all the chief co-ordinating mechanisms of the frog lie in the hind parts of the brain; yet in the frog, as in the bird, and we may add, as in the mammal, injury to the hinder parts of the brain produces loss of co-ordination whether the hemispheres be present or not. Now we have no satisfactory reasons for either asserting or denying that what we call consciousness, *i. e.*, a distinct consciousness similar to our own consciousness, exists in animals deprived of their cerebral hemispheres. When signs of volition are present, we may safely take these signs as indications of consciousness also; but we are not justified in saying that all consciousness is absent when satisfactory signs of volition are wanting. We cannot form any just judgment on the matter without some more trustworthy and objective tokens of consciousness than we at present possess. But what we may safely assert is, that the co-ordinating mechanism, the retention of which is so striking a feature of an animal deprived of its cerebral hemispheres, is constructed out of divers afferent impulses of various kinds arriving at the co-ordinating centre from various parts of the body, that in fact the co-ordination taking place at the centre is the adjustment of efferent to afferent impulses. Many if not all of these afferent impulses are such that in the presence of consciousness they would give rise to perceptions and ideas; but we have no reason for thinking that the complete development of the afferent impulse into a perception or an idea is always necessary to the carrying out of co-ordination. We may say that we have a sense of equilibrium by means of the semicircular canals, and when that sense is deranged we feel giddy and cannot stand. We have no reason, however, for thinking that the failure to keep upright is due to the *feeling* of giddiness, in the sense of being a direct result of the condition of the consciousness. On the contrary, since the peculiar movements characteristic of vertigo may take place in the absence of consciousness without the vertigo being actually felt, we may with security assert that the failure to stand upright and the feeling of giddiness are both concomitant effects of the same disarrangement of the co-ordinating mechanism.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Op. cit.

It cannot be too much insisted upon that for every bodily movement of any complexity afferent impulses are as essential as the executive efferent impulses. Our movements, as we have already urged, are guided not only by the muscular sense, but also by contact sensations, auditory sensations, visual sensations, and visual perceptions (for the remarks made above concerning the relations of the co-ordinating mechanism to consciousness do not exclude the possibility of consciousness affecting the mechanism; indeed, not only may perceptions enter into the causation of vertigo, but even an imaginary idea may be the sole exciting cause of this condition); and when we say "they are guided," we mean that without the sensations the movements become impossible. In studying vision we saw repeatedly that the movements of the eyes were directly dependent on vision, and every ballroom affords abundant evidence of the ties between sensations of sound and motions of the limbs. So essential, in fact, are afferent impulses to the development of complex bodily movements, that we are almost justified in considering every such movement in the light of a reflex action made up of afferent and efferent impulses and central actions, and set going by the influence of some dominant afferent impulse, or by the direct action of those nervous changes, whose psychical correlative is what we call the will, on the centre itself. All day long and every day multitudinous afferent impulses, from eye, and ear, and skin, and muscle, and other tissues and organs, are streaming into our nervous system; and did each afferent impulse issue as its correlative afferent motor impulse, our life would be a prolonged convulsion. As it is, by the checks and counter-checks of cerebral and spinal activities, all these impulses are drilled and marshalled, and kept in hand in orderly array till a movement is called for; and thus we are able to execute at will the most complex bodily manœuvres, knowing only *why*, and unconscious or but dimly conscious *how*, we carry them out.

We have ventured to use the phrase "co-ordinating centre," but it must be understood that we have no right to attach more than a general meaning to the words. We cannot, at present at least, define such a centre in the same way that we can the vaso-motor or respiratory centre. When the optic lobes as well as the cerebral hemispheres are removed from the frog, the power of balancing itself is lost; when such a frog is thrown off its balance by inclining the plane on which it is placed, it falls down. The special co-ordinating mechanism for balancing must therefore in this animal be situated in the optic lobes; but after removal of these organs the animal is still capable of a great variety of co-ordinate movements; unlike a frog retaining its spinal cord only, it can swim and leap, and when placed on its back immediately regains the normal position. The cerebellum of the frog is so small, and in removing it injury is so likely to be done to the underlying parts, that it becomes difficult to say how much of the co-ordination apparent in a frog possessing cerebellum and medulla is to be attributed to the former or to the latter; probably, however, the part played by the former is small. In the mammal, as we have stated, removal of the whole middle and hind brain does away with the most marked of these co-ordinating mechanisms. Removal of the pons Varolii alone has the same effect. Injury to, or disease of, the more superficial parts of the corpora quadrigemina, or of the cerebellum, does not appear to influence the movements of the body at large to any striking extent; but there are many pathological cases, as well as experimental observations, tending to associate the co-ordinating mechanisms of which we are speaking with the deeper parts of the cerebellum. It would be hazardous, in the present state of our knowledge, to make any definite statement concerning the share taken by these several cerebral structures in the various co-ordinations.

The results of experiments are in many ways conflicting, but still more conflicting and still less trustworthy are the results of pathological observations. In this and in so many other parts of physiology the so-called "experiments of nature," as seen at the bedside, are extremely useful in suggesting and correcting experimental inquiries, but they prove broken reeds when reliance is placed on them alone. There is hardly a thesis in cerebral physiology in respect of which a long array of "cases" may not be quoted strikingly supporting the views enunciated, and a long array as flatly contradicting them.

Forced Movements.

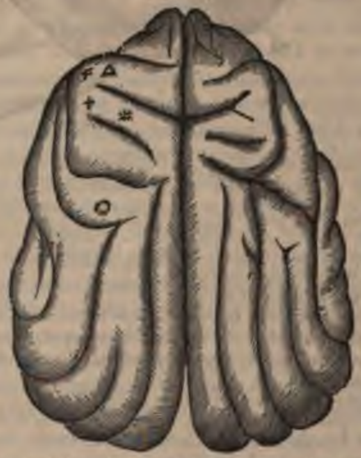
All investigators who have performed experiments on the brain, have observed as the result of injury to various parts of it remarkable compulsory movements. One of the most common forms is that in which the animal rolls incessantly round the longitudinal axis of its own body. This is especially common after section of one of the crura cerebri, more particularly of the external and superior parts, or after unilateral section of the pons Varolii, but has also been witnessed after injury to the medulla oblongata and corpora quadrigemina. Sometimes the animal rotates towards and sometimes away from the side operated on. Another form is that in which the animal executes "circus movements," *i. e.*, continually moves round and round in a circle, sometimes towards and sometimes away from the injured side. This may be seen after several of the above-mentioned operations, but is perhaps particularly common after injuries to the corpora striata and optic thalami. There is a variety of the circus movement said to occur frequently after lesions of the nates, in which the animal moves in a circle, with the longitudinal axis of its body as a radius, and the end of its tail for a centre. And this form again may easily pass into a simply rolling movement. In yet another form the animal rotates over the transverse axis of its body, tumbles head over heels in a series of [illegible] it may run incessantly in a straight [illegible] until it is stopped by some [illegible] movements are frequently seen after injury to the corpora striata; and Nothnagel speaks of a limited portion of the gray matter of the corpus striatum as the *nodus cursorius*, the injection of chromic acid into which produces in the rabbit the straightforward running. Lastly, many, if not all, of these various forced movements may result from injuries which appear to be limited to the cerebral hemispheres.

Attempts have been made to explain the rotatory movements by reference to unilateral paralysis or to spasm of various muscles of the body caused by the cerebral injury; and in the case of the "circus" movements with partial hemiplegia, which follow upon injury to the corpora striata or other parts, the explanation that the animal in progressing forward naturally bears on its paralyzed or weak side seems a valid one; but the movements may frequently be witnessed in the complete absence of either paralysis or spasm, and cannot therefore be always so explained. On the other hand, if the views urged just now concerning the nature of the co-ordinating mechanisms of the brain are true, it is evident that they afford a general explanation of the phenomena, though our present knowledge will not permit us to explain the genesis of each particular kind of movement. Such gross injuries as are involved in dividing cerebral structures or in injecting corrosive substances into the midst of cerebral organs, must of necessity, either by irritation or otherwise, seriously affect the transmission not only of afferent impulses in their cerebral course, but also of central impulses, inhibitory and the like, passing from one part of the brain to another; and must therefore seriously affect the due working of the general coordinating mechanisms. The fact that an animal can, at any moment, by an effort of its own will, rotate on its axis or run straight forwards, shows that the nervous mechanism for the execution of those movements is ready at hand in the brain, waiting only to be discharged; and it is easy to conceive how such a discharge might be affected either by the substitution of some potent intrinsic afferent impulse for the will or by some misdirection of the volitional impulses. Persons who have experienced similar forced movements as the result of disease report that they are frequently accompanied, and seem to be caused, by disturbed visual or other sensations; they say they fall forward because the ground appears to sink away beneath their feet. Without trusting too closely to the interpreta[illegible] the subjects of these disorders give of their own feel[illegible] at least conclude that the disorderly movements [illegible] disorder of the co-ordinating mechanism, which in many cases is itself the result of disordered sensory impulses, and not to any paralytic or other failing of the simple muscular instruments of the nervous system. And this view is supported by the fact that many of these forced movements are accompanied by a peculiar and wholly abnormal position of the eyes, which alone might perhaps explain many of the phenomena.

SEC. 3. THE FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBRAL CONVOLUTIONS.

All the older observers, Flourens and others, agreed that when the cerebral hemispheres were gradually removed, piece by piece or slice by slice, no obvious effects manifested themselves, either in the intelligence or volition of the animal, when the first portions only were taken away; but that, as the removal was continued, the animal became more and more dull and stupid, until at last both intelligence and volition

FIG. 221.

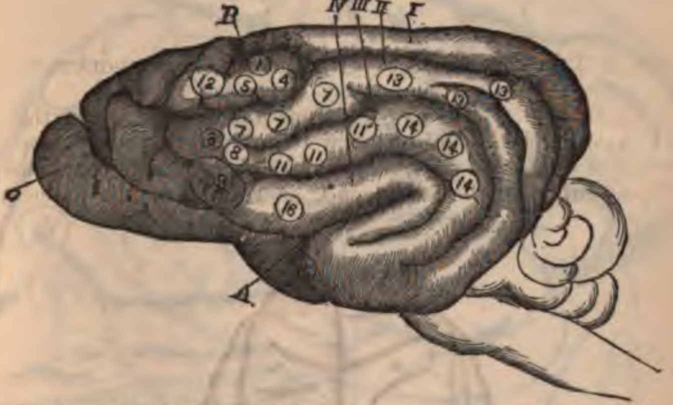


The Areas of the Cerebral Convolutions of the Dog, according to Hitzig and Fritsch.

(1) △ The area for the muscles of the neck.
(2) † " " extension and adduction of the fore limb.
(3) + " " flexion and rotation of the fore limb.
(4) ✚ " " hind limb.
Running transversely towards and separating (1) and (2) from (3) and (4) is seen the *crucial sulcus*.
(5) O The facial area.

seemed to be entirely lost. It has been frequently observed that after wounds of the skull large portions of the brains of men might be removed without any marked effect on the psychical condition of the patients. The brain when exposed was found not to be sensitive; and ordinary stimuli applied to the surface of the convolutions of animals failed in the

FIG. 222



The Areas of the Cerebral Convolutions of the Dog, according to Ferrier.—*O*, The olfactory lobe; *A*, The fissure of Sylvius; *B*, The crucial sulcus.

Faradaic stimulations of the areas indicated by the several circles produce the following results:

(1) The hind leg is advanced as in walking.
(3)[1] Lateral or wagging motion of the tail.
(4) Retraction and adduction of the opposite fore limb.
(5) Elevation of the shoulder of, and extension forwards of, the opposite fore limb.
(7) Closure of the opposite eye, caused by combined action of the orbicular and zygomatic muscles.
(8) Retraction and elevation of the opposite angle of the mouth.
(9)[2] The mouth is opened and the tongue moved; sometimes barking is produced.
(11) Retraction of the angle of the mouth.
(12) Opening of the eyes and dilation of the pupils; the eyes and then the head turning to the opposite side.
(13) The eyeballs move to the opposite side.
(14) Pricking or sudden retraction of the opposite ear.
(15) Torsion of the nostril on the same side.
(16) Elevation of the lip and dilation of the nostril (?).

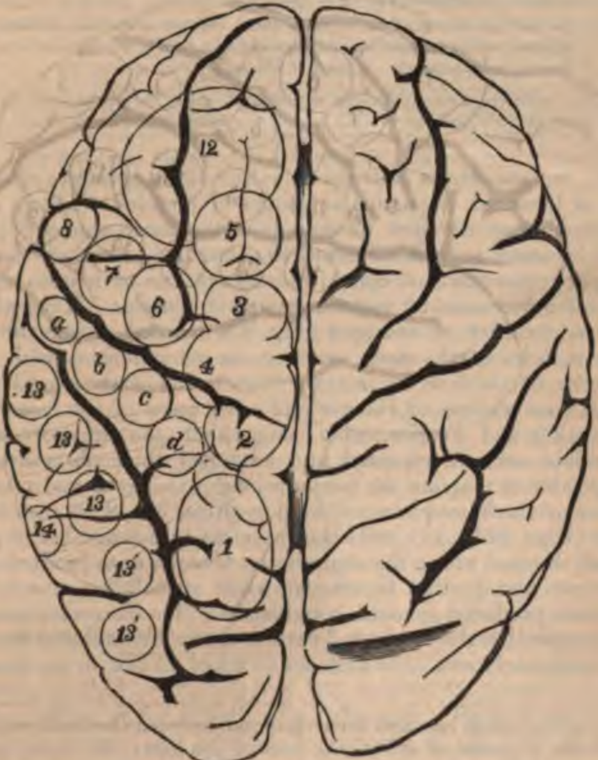
---

[1] There is in the dog no movement comparable to that resulting from stimulating (2) (Figs. 223, 224) in the monkey. (Ferrier.)

[2] Corresponding to (9) and (10) in the monkey.

whole," whatever that might mean. On the other hand, there was clear evidence that not only did disease of the superficial gray matter of the hemispheres cause delirium, as in menin-

FIG. 224.



(6) (On the upper part of the antero-parietal or ascending frontal [anterior central] convolution.) Supination and flexion of the opposite forearm.

(7) (On the median portion of the same convolution.) Retraction and elevation of the opposite angle of the mouth by means of the zygomatic muscles.

(8) (Lower down on the same convolution.) Elevation of the ala nasi and upper lip, with depression of the lower lip on the opposite side.

(9), (10) (At the inferior extremity of the same convolution, Broca's convolution.) Opening of the mouth with (9) protrusion and (10) retraction of the tongue. *Region of Aphasia. Bilateral action.*

(11) (Between (10) and the inferior extremity of the postero-parietal convolution.) Retraction of the opposite angle of the mouth, the head turned slightly to one side.

hemispheres; and all that the areas in question do is to make use in some way or other of these lower co-ordinating mechanisms. If on the other hand it is admitted that the movements which result from stimulation of an area form merely a small and insignificant part of the total effects of stimulation, the other changes brought about being profound but invisible and as yet unrecognizable, the use of the term "motor centre" is still more objectionable. That the latter view is, of the two, the more probable seems indicated by the fact that over large portions of the brain-surface electric stimulation produces no movements; these portions are wholly devoid of "motor centres." The real interest in fact in the results of electric stimulation of the brain-surface attaches not so much to the question as to which are the exact movements resulting from the stimulation of this or that area, as to the broad fact that different results follow upon stimulation of different regions, thus serving to indicate that there is after all a "localization of functions" in the brain-surface. Experiments have been made with the view of attacking the problem by another method, viz., by watching the results following upon the removal of particular parts of the brain; but the statements of observers are in this respect so opposed that a dogmatic statement is at present impossible.

In trying to appreciate the true meaning of the experiments on electric stimulation of the brain-surface, the following facts deserve attention. Not only do the phenomena continue when the animal is under opium and chloroform, provided that the anæsthesia is not too profound, and not only do they require for their development electric currents of a considerable strength, mechanical and chemical stimulation being unable to produce them, but the results of stimulation are the same, when the surface of the convolution operated on is highly congested, and even when it has become completely dried up, or after it has been washed with strong nitric acid. The results, moreover, remain unchanged when the area experimented upon is isolated from the surrounding gray matter, by plunging a cork-borer for some distance into the brain round it; and even when the brain-substance is removed to some depth down by means of the cork-borer, and the electrodes plunged into the blood which fills up the cylindrical hole thus made.[1] They remain the same when the surface stimulated is disconnected physiologically though not physically from the deeper parts, by a horizontal incision carried some little distance from the surface.[2] And though the area, stimulation of which gives rise to a definite movement, is always limited, yet it is not constant in different individuals, and frequently a large and deep sulcus may be seen running through its very midst.[1] All these facts suggest that the results are due to the escape of the current from the surface to which the electrodes are applied to deeper underlying portions of the brain, the escape taking place along definite lines determined by the electrical conductivity of the brain-substance. And Burdon Sanderson[2] states that local stimulation of the white matter immediately surrounding a corpus striatum produces localized movements quite similar to those caused by stimulation of the corresponding cerebral surface; from which it may be inferred that when the surface appears to be stimulated, it is really the corpus striatum which is affected physiologically by the stimulus. Albertoni and Michieli,[3] however, found that several weeks after the removal of an area stimulation of the scar or its immediate neighborhood no longer produces the particular movements characteristic of the area. Unless it can be shown that the injury in such cases produces marked changes in the electrical conductivity of the brain-substance, this observation may be taken as indicating that the fibres passing downwards from the area to deeper parts of the brain, have through degeneration become incapable of conveying the impulses set going by the application of the current to the brain-surface: that the connection between the area and the deeper parts is not a physical one, depending on the escape of the current, but a physiological one, dependent on the existence of fibres passing from the area to some more central mechanism and capable of producing their special effects when stimulated in any part of their course.[4]

---

[1] Hermann, Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 77. Braun, Eckhard's Beiträge, vii (1874), p. 127.

[2] Burdon Sanderson, Proc. Roy. Soc., xxii (1875), p. 368.

At all events, these various experiments show that the fact of certain movements following upon stimulation of certain areas, is in itself no satisfactory proof that those areas are to be considered as "motor centres." They are not fundamentally inconsistent with the hypothesis that such centres exist; for the fibres proceeding from the centres to the corpus striatum or to other organs, might, when artificially stimulated, produce the same effect as when they were the channels of impulses originating in the centres in a normal manner, just as cardiac inhibition may be brought about by artificial stimulation of the vagus, though in ordinary life it occurs through the activity of the medullary cardio-inhibitory centre. They are not inconsistant with the hypothesis, but they afford it very little positive support.

On the other hand, if these circumscribed areas of superficial gray matter are, as they have by some been supposed to be, motor centres in the sense of being necessary for the volitional or psychical initiation of movements corresponding to those produced by artificial stimulation, particular sets of voluntary movements ought to disappear when particular areas are removed or otherwise rendered functionally incapable.

Similarly, if the phenomena attendant on stimulation of these

---

[1] Hermann, op. cit.

[2] Op. cit.

[3] Hofmann and Schwalbe's Bericht, 1876, p. 30.

[4] For a discussion of this point, see Report by Dobbs, Journ. Anat. and Phys., Jan., 1878.

"motor" areas are to be interpreted as proving a localization of function, we ought to expect that in those regions of the cerebral surface in which stimulation produces no movements and which have accordingly been called "sensory" (a term, however, distinctly open to objection), the removal of particular areas would give rise to loss or impairment of particular cerebral functions even though no derangement of muscular activity was manifested.

In respect to the "motor" areas, not only Hitzig and Ferrier, but many subsequent inquirers, have observed that removal or destruction of an area is followed by an inability to execute the movements assigned to the area, or at least by a difficulty in carrying them out. Ferrier attributes the paralysis thus produced to an absence or impairment of volitional or psychical initiation. Hitzig,[1] on the other hand, is inclined to interpret the imperfection of the movements as due to a loss of muscular sense or "muscular consciousness;" and Nothnagel,[2] who injected minute quantities of chromic acid into limited areas of the cerebral surface, observed motorial anomalies, which he also was inclined to regard as due to a loss or impairment of the muscular sense. Nothnagel, however, made the important observation that the symptoms after awhile disappeared; and in this he has been corroborated by subsequent observers. Ferrier appears to have kept his animals alive for a few days only at the utmost, and to have ceased his observations before adequate recovery had taken place. Hermann[3] removed from dogs cerebral areas, stimulation of which gave localized movements, and found that the paralysis which immediately followed the operation, after some days wholly disappeared. Carville and Duret[4] obtained the same results, and they showed that the restitution of power could not be due to a vicarious action of the same centre of the other hemisphere, since after recovery from a left-sided paralysis due to an operation on the right hemisphere, subsequent operation on the same centre of the left hemisphere produced the usual effect on the right side, but did not cause a return of the paralysis on the left side. They could only reconcile their results with the "motor centre" theory by supposing that when a centre was destroyed, other portions of the same hemisphere took up its functions, an hypothesis which is in itself opposed to the "localization" theory. Moreover, paralysis more readily makes its appearance in operations on the areas for the fore leg and hind leg than in those on other areas; thus Albertoni and Michieli[5] removed the centre for the movements of the jaw and tongue without any paralysis in those organs. But the most serious objections to the theory of "motor" centres in any of the forms in which it has yet been brought forward, are furnished by the observations by Goltz[6] on dogs. He removed parts of the cerebral surface by washing the nervous substance away with a stream of water, a method which has the advantage of causing comparatively little bleeding, and affording considerable localization of the injury; and he found that the operation was followed at first by more or less paralysis. He failed, however, to find any exact correspondence between the areas destroyed and the groups of muscles affected, the paralysis manifesting itself most readily in the fore and hind limbs, and generally to a certain extent in both together. Moreover, and this is the important point, the paralysis in a short time wholly disappeared whatever the portions of brain removed. Both the amount of mischief done, and the speed and completeness with which recovery took place, depended not on the locality operated on, but, as older observers found, on the quantity of brain-substance removed. After recovery from one operation, a second removal of brain-substance reproduced the same phenomena as the previous one; and, though at first sight this might be taken as supporting Carville and Duret's theory of a vicarious action of other parts of the same hemisphere, the impossibility of such a view is proved by the fact that Goltz was able to remove the greater part of the gray matter of one hemisphere, and yet recovery of muscular power eventually took place. Goltz argues that all the temporary phenomena are due to the superficial lesions exercising inhibitory influences on the parts of the brain lying between the cerebral convolutions and the spinal cord. He very aptly compares the paralysis caused by operations on the surface of the cerebrum to the paralysis of the lumbar spinal centres which results from and lasts some time after division of the spinal cord in the dorsal region. In one case in which he removed the greater part of both hemispheres the dog lived for months, and showed eventually no signs whatever of any muscular weakness; all the muscles of his body were firm and well built, and the only permanent failure in the way of movement was a certain clumsiness; and this Goltz argues to be merely the result of a deficiency of tactile sensibility, which, as we shall see presently, is a striking result of large injuries to the cerebral hemispheres. Goltz's experiments are in fact alsolutely opposed to the hypothesis of "motor" areas in any part of the brain-surface.

---

[1] Op. cit. [2] Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 57 (1873), p. 184.

[3] Op. cit. [4] Archives de Physiol., ii (1875), p. 352.

[5] Op. cit. Cf. also Lussana and Lemoigne, Archives de Physiologie, iv (1877), p. 119 et seq. Luciani and Tamburini, Sui Centri Psicosensori Corticali, 1879. Dupuy, Researches into the Physiology of the Brain, New York, 1878.

[6] Pflüger's Archiv, xiii (1876), p. 1; xiv (1877), p. 412; xx (1879), p. 1.

Turning now to the second line of inquiry indicated above, viz., whether the removal of particular areas of the brain-surface, even in those regions in which stimulation evokes no visible movements, interferes with the production or development of particular sensations or otherwise modifies in particular ways the functions of the brain, we find that Ferrier and others contend for the existence of definite areas in connection with the various senses, areas which may accordingly be spoken of as "sensory." Thus Ferrier describes a "visual" centre, the destruction of which entails blindness of the opposite eye, an "auditory" centre, a "tactile" centre, centres for taste and smell, and even a centre for hunger. Further inquiries have brought to light a number of facts which deserve special attention, and which have been most fully studied in reference to vision. The older observers, Flourens and others, had remarked that injury to, or removal of portions of, the cerebral hemispheres frequently caused blindness; this, however, appeared to be of a temporary character only, the animal, at a later period, seeming upon a superficial examination to have completely regained its sight. Goltz,[1] however, has called attention to a remarkable imperfection of vision which is more or less permanent after extensive injuries to the cerebral hemispheres, but which without care might escape notice. The salient character of this imperfection is that though the animal evidently can see, and uses his sight successfully in avoiding obstacles and guiding his movements, yet what he sees does not produce its usual effect on him; he obviously fails to recognize many things, and has become indifferent to scenes which formerly affected him strongly. Thus a dog from which portions of the cerebral hemispheres have been removed, fails to recognize his food by sight; when he is threatened with the whip, he is not cowed; when the hand is held out for his paw, he makes no response; and though before the operation he became violently excited when the laboratory servant dressed in a fantastic garb was presented to him, he remains after the operation perfectly indifferent to the same image. Another striking character of this imperfection of vision is that recovery from it to a considerable extent is, under certain circumstances, possible by means of educational exercise; the dog, which at first could not recognize his food by sight, and was indifferent to the whip, learns after awhile to know the one and to respect the other. Now it is obvious that two interpretations may be given of this peculiar imperfection of vision. The usual psychical effects may fail simply because the sensory impulses are unable to give rise to sufficiently well-defined sensations or perceptions and vision consequently remains misty, as if things were seen through a gauze, and possibly, to adopt Goltz's suggestion, with all their colors washed out; under such circumstances the dog could not readily recognize meat as meat, nor appreciate the fantastic dress of the laboratory servant. The other interpretation supposes that the failure is due to the absence of intellectual factors, that the sensations may be intact, but from the break in the cerebral substance cease to give rise to ideas or to excite the memory of past experience. The beneficial effects of exercise are obviously explicable on both hypotheses. Under the first view, the dog, still possessing intellectual powers, simply learns to make use of his imperfect sensations, just as he would do if the imperfect vision had been due to simple injury or disease of his retina. Under the second view, new ideas, new experience, and a new memory are formed afresh; the dog learns once more to interpret his visual sensations in the same way that he did in his early days. The first view is the one held by Goltz, the second view is maintained by Munk,[2] who accordingly speaks of the imperfection of vision of which we are speaking as "psychical" blindness in contradistinction to a blindness in which sensory impulses passing along the optic nerve altogether fail to excite visual sensations in the brain, and which we may speak of as "absolute" blindness.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Verhandl. d. physiol. Gesell. z. Berlin, 1876-77, Nos. 16, 17, 35; 1877-78, Nos. 9, 10; 1878-79, 4, 5, [illegible] 18. Archiv f. Anat. u. Phys. (Phys. Abth.), 1878, pp. 162, 547, 59[illegible].

Similar but less striking imperfections of the other senses were observed by Goltz as attendant on removal of portions of the cerebral hemispheres; and Munk, in accordance with the view just stated, describes a psychical deafness and psychical failures of the other senses.

Bearing in mind the distinctions just raised we may return to the question of localization. Munk[1] insists on the existence of a "visual area," seated on the posterior lobes, but differing in position from and of much wider extent than that of Ferrier. He maintains not only that removal of this area causes blindness, without necessarily producing any other change in the animal, but also that parts of this area correspond to parts of the retina, extirpation of small portions of the area giving rise to blindness in particular parts of the retina, the retina being as it were projected on to the cerebral surface, so that a partial loss of the "visual area" gives rise to a functional blind spot, so to speak, in the retina. Thus in the dog the retinal area of distinct vision he regards as connected with the central parts of the visual area of the brain of the opposite side, while the external (temporal) parts of the retina are connected with the external parts of the area of the brain of *the same side*, the internal (nasal) parts with the internal (median) parts, the upper parts with the front, and the lower parts with the hind parts of the area of the opposite side. These results of circumscribed "absolute" blindness, he states, are accompanied by psychical blindness, from which the animal may recover by due practice and experience, provided that the whole visual area be not removed. The recovery from psychical blindness Munk interprets as being carried out by what may be crudely spoken of as the deposition of new visual experiences in the rest of the visual area. In analogy with this visual area he describes an auditory area differing again from that of Ferrier, and he regards the whole front part of the brain as forming a large "sensory" area, in which he distinguishes separate sensory areas (areas of tactile sense, of muscular sense, and general sensibility) for the fore limb, the hind limb, the eye, the head, the neck, etc.

Absolutely opposed to Munk's results are those of Goltz. This author, in his latest as in his earlier researches, insists most strongly that he can no more obtain distinct evidence of localization in reference to sensation than in reference to movements. When in a dog the lesions are slight the recovery from imperfections of vision, of the other senses, and of general sensibility which follow immediately on the operation may be complete. When a larger portion of brain is removed the peculiar imperfections discussed above become striking, and the so-called psychical blindness, together with the corresponding imperfections of the other senses, may become permanent. When still larger portions are removed, as in the case of the dog from which the greater part of both hemispheres was removed, vision becomes so imperfect that though the animal can see, since he avoids obstacles in his path, and his movements are obviously guided by vision, still to a superficial observer he seems completely blind; a match may be struck just before his face without his taking any notice of it, though his pupils contract, so little able are visual impulses to produce any cerebral reactions. Similar phenomena were witnessed by Goltz with regard to the other senses. In all cases the characters of the result depended on the extent of the injury, on the quantity of brain-substance removed, and not on the locality operated on; the amount of amelioration of the so-called psychical blindness possible by practice and experience being determined partly by the amount of damage done to vision itself, and partly by the degree to which the *general* intellect of the animal had been impaired by the operation. Goltz thinks that, perhaps, destruction of the parietal lobes has the greater effect on tactile, and destruction of the posterior lobes the greater effect on visual sensations, but he can find no well-marked localized areas. The dog, according to him, from which a large portion of the cerebral hemispheres has been removed, is a dog reduced to idiocy by a cutting off of the higher elaborations of all the sensory impulses which reach him, and by a curtailing of his general psychical activity; and he is brought to this condition step by step, as more and more of his cerebral substance is removed.

---

[1] Op. cit.

Besides the experimental evidence just discussed we have also pathological indications of the connection of certain movements with a particular convolution. The condition known as aphasia, using that word in its general sense, including its several varieties, as meaning the loss of articulate speech, is so often associated with disease of the posterior portion of the third frontal convolution (Figs. 223, 224) (9) (10), that it becomes impossible not to admit that there must be *some* causal connection between this part of the brain and speech. In the vast majority of cases the disease is on the left side of the brain, and occurs in company with right hemiplegia, but cases have been recorded where the right side of the brain was affected.

Seeing that articulate speech is a thing learned by use, it has been suggested that in most persons one side of the brain only has been educated for this purpose, and hence that one side only of the brain is employed; that we are, in fact, left-brained in respect to speech in the same way that we are right-handed in respect to many bodily movements; and this view is apparently supported by the fact that the left side of the brain is on the whole larger and more convoluted than the right side;[1] but the question of the dual action of the two cerebral hemispheres is too dark a subject to enter into here.

---

[1] This statement by Gratiolet has, however, been opposed by Ecker and others; but cf. Boyd (Phil. Trans., 1861, p. 261).

It is obvious that loss of speech may arise from a variety of causes. It may be due to simple paralysis of the hypoglossal, and other nerves concerned in speech. It may be occasioned by an imperfection in the co-ordinating mechanism by which the efferent impulses are marshalled just previous to their exit from the central nervous system. Or it may be caused by a break in the nervous chain connecting the idea of the word with this co-ordinate motor mechanism of expression. Lastly, the fault may lie in the generation of the idea itself. It is the two latter forms of aphasia which appear to be connected with the cerebral convolutions spoken of above. The cases are strikingly parallel to that of the dog just mentioned.

SEC. 4. THE FUNCTIONS OF OTHER PARTS OF THE BRAIN.

Although much has been written, and many experiments performed, in reference to the various parts of the brain, the views which have thereby been worked out are for the most part neither satisfactory nor consistent; indeed, the proper method to study the brain is probably to trace out a cerebral operation along its chain of events rather than to seek to attach readily definable functions to the cerebral anatomical components.

A fundamental difficulty meets us at the threshold of every inquiry into the particular function of any part of the brain. When an organ, such for instance as the corpus striatum, is removed by the knife, or placed *hors de combat*, or thrown into an abnormal condition by the injection of corrosive fluids, or by hæmorrhage, or by other pathological changes, we have no right to infer that the negative phenomena, loss of volition, of sensation, etc., which make their appearance, prove that in its normal condition the organ in question is a seat or a main tract of volition, loss of sensation, etc. This may be the explanation of the experiment or malady; but it may not. Whatever may prove in the end to be the nature of nervous inhibition, it is clear that inhibitory actions are important factors in the production of nervous phenomena. In almost every instance in which we have treated of a nervous mechanism we have had to deal with inhibition, *i. e.*, with a nervous action interfering with another nervous action. Indeed, the nervous phenomena of the heart, of the vaso-motor system, of the respiratory centre, and of the spinal cord generally become a confused medley if we refuse to admit that certain effects are due to the action of one part of a nervous mechanism inhibiting (or conversely increasing) the actions of another part. But if this be the case in such comparatively simple nervous mechanisms, we have every reason to expect that inhibitory actions play a distinguished part in the operations of the far more complex nervous machinery of the brain. This being granted, it is obvious that any interference, by experiment or disease, with the normal working of the brain, may act, as far as inhibition is concerned, in two different ways. In the first place the interference may place *hors de combat* a part of the brain which previously was exerting an inhibitory influence on another perhaps quite distant part, just as section of the vagi in the dog relieves the heart from the cardio-inhibitory influences of the medulla oblongata; and the part of the brain thus freed from its wonted restraint may fall into disorderly action. Obviously in such a case the real seat of the disorder is in this part and not in the (distant) inhibitory part directly operated on. In the second place the interference itself, the injury to the nervous elements caused by the knife, or the cautery, or by the sequent inflammatory processes, or by the irritation of disease, may act as a stimulus discharging impulses which exert an inhibitory influence on it may be distant organs. And when we consider the delicacy and activity of the elements of the central nervous system, it is not surprising that the effects of even a simple incision should be profound and should last some considerable time. Goltz has called attention, in this respect, to the effects of dividing in the dog the spinal cord in the dorsal region. Immediately after the operation reflex movement in the hand, legs, and other parts connected with the lumbar cord are entirely absent, and their absence continues for a considerable period, the dog in this respect presenting a marked contrast to the frog. In time, however, as the wound in the spinal cord heals up, reflex movements make their appearance, and as we have already seen (p. 750), are abundant and manifold. In such a case we must either suppose that in the normal dog the reflex movements of the hind limbs, etc., require for their development the presence and activity, not only of the lumbar cord but also of parts of the cerebro-spinal axis lying higher up, and that such reflex movements as do eventually appear after section of the dorsal cord are new achievements gradually forced, so to speak, on the lumbar cord in consequence of its isolated position; or we must admit that the section of the dorsal cord has produced for the time being a profound inhibitory action on the lumbar cord below. The latter view is as much in consonance with, as the former view is opposed to, all other physiological experience. But if we admit the latter view, then we may fairly ask, why should not section of, or injury to, or disease of parts of the still more highly organized brain produce similar inhibitory effects in other parts of the cerebral machinery? If, however, we admit this, it follows that great caution is necessary in explaining the results of any operation on the brain. Difficulties such as these are more likely to occur in cases of disease than even in those of operative interference; and it is this which renders caution so necessary in the physiological handling of clinical facts.[1]

We may, therefore, be permitted to summarize very briefly what is actually known.

---

rown-Séquard, Archives de Physiol., iv (1877), p. 409 et seq.

Corpora Striata and Optic Thalami.

The preceding discussions enable us to lay down two broad propositions: (1.) The functions of the cerebral convolutions are eminently psychical in nature; these parts of the brain intervene, and as far as we can judge, intervene only, in those operations of the nervous system in which an intelligent consciousness and volition play a part. (2.) The hinder parts of the brain, viz., the corpora quadrigemina, crura cerebri, pons Varolii, cerebellum, and medulla oblongata, are capable by themselves of carrying into execution complex movements, the co-ordination of which implies very considerable elaboration of afferent impulses; they can do this even in the case of such mammals as the rabbit and the rat, in the total absence of the cerebral hemispheres, corpora striata, and optic thalami. These two latter bodies, often spoken of as "the basal ganglia," are undoubtedly the great means of communication between the cerebral hemispheres on the one hand and the crura cerebri on the other. Though some fibres[1] do pass from the crura by or through the ganglia to the cerebral convolutions without being connected with the nerve-cells of those ganglia, the great mass of the peduncular fibres are probably connected with the superficial gray matter of the hemispheres in an indirect manner only, the lower or anterior fibres (*crusta*) passing first into the corpora striata, and the upper or posterior fibres (*tegmentum*) into the optic thalami. This anatomical disposition would lead us to suppose that these bodies have important functions in mediating between the psychical operations of the cerebral convolutions on the one hand and the sensori-motor machinery of the middle and hind brain on the other; and the separate courses taken by the peduncular fibres would further lead us to expect that the functions of the corpora striata differ fundamentally from those of the optic thalami.

When in the human subject a lesion occurs involving both these bodies on one side of the brain, the result is a loss of sensation in, and voluntary power over, the opposite side of the body and face, a so-called hemiplegia, which may be absolutely complete without any impairment whatever of the intellectual faculties. The will and the power to receive impressions are present in their entirety, but neither efferent nor afferent impulses can make their way to or from the peripheral organs and the cerebral convolutions. The injury to the basal ganglia blocks the way. In the great majority of cases the anæsthesia (or loss of sensation) and akinesia (or loss of movement) are absolutely confined to the opposite side of the body; and the cases in which a lesion of the basal ganglia of one side of the brain affects the same side of the body or both sides must be regarded as exceptional, and explicable as the results of the action of one side of the brain on the other side either of the brain or of some region of the cerebro-spinal axis. The results of experiments on animals agree entirely with the general experience of pathologists, that lesions of the corpora striata and optic thalami produce their effect on the opposite side of the body. Whatever be the view taken concerning the decussations of sensory and motor impulses in the spinal cord, it must be admitted that both kinds of impulses cross over completely somewhere during their transmission to and from the basal ganglia and the peripheral organs.

---

[1] Quain's Anatomy, 8th ed., ii, 555.

When, however, we have admitted that these bodies act, as it were, the part of middlemen between the cerebral convolutions and the rest of the brain, we have gone almost as far as facts will support us. We are not at present in a position to state dogmatically what is the nature of the mediation which either body respectively effects. A very tempting hypothesis is one which suggests that the corpora striata are concerned in the downward transmission and elaboration of efferent volitional impulses, and the optic thalami in a similar upward transmission and elaboration of afferent sensory impulses; and there are many facts which may be urged in favor of this view which was first developed and expounded by Carpenter and Todd. So much acceptance, indeed, has it found that many pathologists regard it as established, and speak confidently of the corpora striata as motor, and the optic thalami as sensory, ganglia. A careful review, however, of all the facts leads to the conclusion that this division of functions has not yet been clearly proved.

The pathological evidence in this case, were it sharply defined and accordant, would be of unusual value; but it is neither the one nor the other. A number of cases, indeed, may be cited to show not only that lesions of a corpus striatum may be accompanied by akinesia without anæsthesia, but that lesions of an optic thalamus may cause anæsthesia without actual akinesia; that is, without any further interference with the execution of voluntary movements than is occasioned by the loss of the co-ordinating sensations. Of these two classes of cases the latter is the more valuable, since all clinical experience shows that any lesion more readily interferes with volitional movements than with the reception of sensory impressions. Convulsions are not common when the lesions are confined to these bodies; but when witnessed they can generally be referred to the corpora striata rather than to the optic thalami; like the paralysis, the convulsions are generally limited to the opposite side of the body, though feeble movements may occasionally be seen on the same side as well. On the other hand, numerous cases have been recorded where an injury apparently confined to one corpus striatum has had as part of its results anæsthesia of the opposite side of the body; and others, where disease apparently confined to an optic thalamus, has caused loss of movement as well as of sensation.

Experiments on animals, though very valuable as regards the investigation of movements, are imperfect means of studying the phenomena of conscious sensations. We have already seen that crude unelaborated sensations may originate in an animal deprived of its cerebral hemispheres; and it becomes a matter of great difficulty to disentangle the evidences of these primitive sensations from those of the higher psychical perceptions. Moreover, we do not, at present, at all know to what an extent the larger development of the cerebral hemispheres in man has influenced the ordinary functions of the other parts of the brain. It may be that important functions which in the rabbit belong to the middle and hind brain, have, in man, almost disappeared in order to make these structures more useful servants of the cerebral hemispheres. It may be, however, that the greater activity of the convolutions has simply increased the ordinary labors of the middle and hind brain. We cannot at present say which effect has resulted; but meanwhile great caution ought to be exercised in drawing inferences from experiments on a rabbit or on a dog, as to what are the functions of the corresponding parts of the human brain.

Ferrier[1] observed that when the corpora striata were stimulated with an interrupted current, convulsive movements of the opposite side of the body took place; the animal, when the stimulus was powerful, being thrown into complete pleurosthotonus, the side of the body opposite to the side of the brain stimulated being forcibly drawn into an arch; the localized movements observed by Burdon Sanderson (p. 803). were lost in the general convulsions caused by the galvanic current affecting a large portion of the organ. When, on the other hand, the optic thalami were similarly stimulated, no such convulsions were observed. On this point Carville and Duret's[2] observations are in accordance with those of Ferrier; and the results, as far as they go, appear at first sight to be in accordance with the theory of the exclusively motor functions of the corpora striata, and the exclusively sensory functions of the optic thalami. But it would obviously be rash to draw any such conclusion directly from them, since, if the optic thalamus is concerned in the transmission and elaboration of sensory impulses, the application of the galvanic current to it ought, by discharging a number of sensory impulses, to give rise to movements of some kind or other, and not to be characterized by the absence of all effects. Moreover, any such inference is opposed by the results of Nothnagel's[1] experiments. This observer destroyed by injection of chromic acid both nuclei lenticulares (the extra-ventricular portions of the corpora striata) of the rabbit, with the result of bringing the animal almost exactly into the same condition as if both its cerebral hemispheres had been removed. When, on the other hand, by the help of a special instrument, he succeeded in destroying both optic thalami without any other injury to the brain, no obvious effects followed; there were no signs of either loss of volition or of sensation, nothing in fact could be noticed except a rather peculiar disposition of the limbs. When the nuclei lenticulares were destroyed there was no apparent loss of sensation, that is to say the animal readily moved when stimulated by pinching the skin, etc.; but it was impossible to tell whether sensory impulses reached the cerebral convolutions, since no manifestations whatever of the condition of the convolutions were possible. The animal might have felt acutely, and yet have been unable, from the loss of the appropriate motor tracts, to express itself; or it might have been as incapable of the higher psychical feeling as it was of executing spontaneous movements. The phenomena resulting from destruction of the nuclei lenticulares admit of no clear proof in either direction. The fact, however, that voluntary movements continued as usual after complete destruction of the optic thalami goes far to prove that, in the rabbit at least, these bodies are not the only means by which sensory impulses pass to the cerebral convolutions. Even admitting (and, indeed, in the case of man we know that the general anæsthesia following upon lesions of the optic thalami is not necessarily accompanied by blindness or loss of any other special sense) that visual and other specific impulses still reached the rabbit's convolutions, and that, in consequence of the co-ordinating mechanisms of the hinder brain being still intact, the co-ordination of the animal's movements might still have been carried out, yet the initiation, and hence the general character of those movements, must have been influenced by the total absence of all psychical tactile sensations. Apparently, however, this was not the case; the movements did not in any way betray the loss of any factors.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Op. cit.

Lussana and Lemoigne,[2] who regard the optic thalami as motor centres for the lateral movements of the *anterior* limbs (a lesion of one optic thalamus paralyzing the adduction of the fore limb of the corresponding and the abduction of that of the opposite side), saw no evidence of any loss of general sensibility or any signs of pain to result from injuries to these bodies, and no movements to result from stimulation of other than their deep parts. After a lesion, however, of the optic thalamus of one side they invariably found blindness in the opposite eye.

Carville and Duret[3] found that in the dog section of the internal capsule, or expansion of fibres passing between the nucleus lenticularis and optic thalamus, in the anterior part of its course where it passes between the nucleus lenticularis and the nucleus caudatus, led to hemiplegic loss of voluntary movement on the opposite side, though stimulation of the paralyzed limb still gave rise to reflex movements. When the section was carried through the posterior part of the expansion, between the nucleus lenticularis and optic thalamus, the loss of voluntary movement on the opposite side of the body was accompanied by loss of sensation, *i. e.*, when the paralyzed limbs were pinched no responsive reflex movements followed. It is hazardous, however, to draw from these experiments any positive conclusions.

---

[1] Op. cit. Ibid. Bd. 58 (1873), p. 420; Bd. 60 (1874), p. 129; Bd. 62 (1875), p. 201.

[2] Fisiologia dei centri nervosi encefalici, 1871, and Archives de Physiologie, iv (1877), p. 119 et seq.

[3] Op. cit.

Nothnagel[1] observed that in the rabbit voluntary movements still persisted after destruction of both nuclei caudati; in this respect these portions of the corpora striata presented a marked contrast to the nuclei lenticulares. Nevertheless, destruction of one nucleus caudatus frequently induced a certain amount of paralysis of the opposite side of the body, which disappeared after removal of the nucleus caudatus of the other side; and as we have already stated, destruction or injury to a particular part of the nucleus caudatus, viz., the so-called nodus cursorius, gave rise to remarkable forced movements, which made their appearance even after the previous removal of the nuclei lenticulares. The injection of chromic acid into other parts of the nucleus caudatus also frequently caused for awhile forced movements, either straight forward, or of the circus kind, which differed from those witnessed by other observers in the operations on the corpora striata after removal of the hemispheres, inasmuch as they were executed by an animal still possessing intelligence, and frequently striving to avoid obstacles.

It is impossible at present to give a satisfactory explanation of all these varied and frequently inconsistent phenomena, but it may be worth while to return again to the possibility of considering some at least of the phenomena as inhibitory effects. The fact that the paralysis, curvature of the body, and the circus movements resulting from lesion of one nucleus caudatus or nucleus lenticularis, disappear when the same body on the other side is removed, warns us against too hastily assuming that a loss or diminution of voluntary power means nothing more than a break in the transmission of volitional impulses; it may mean that, but it may mean also the development of nervous actions having inhibitory effects. In the experiment of Carville and Duret, quoted above, pinching the left hind limb after section of the right internal capsule produced no reflex action whatever. Now it is absurd to suppose that in this case the reflex centre was removed, or any part of a veritable reflex chain broken, because, as we know, pinching the hind limb will produce a reflex movement, provided only a portion of the lumbar cord be left intact and functional. There must in this case have been inhibition of the lumbar reflex centres; and if of these, why not of other centres, reflex or automatic?

---

[1] Op. cit.

Corpora Quadrigemina.

We have already seen that the centre of co-ordination for the movements of the eyeballs (p. 691) and that for the contraction of the pupil (p. 644), lie in the neighborhood of the nates or anterior tubercles of the corpora quadrigemina. These two centres are associated together in such a way that when the eyeballs are voluntarily directed inwards and downwards, as for near vision, the pupils are at the same time contracted; and when the eyeballs are directed upwards and return to parallelism, the pupils are dilated to a corresponding extent; when both eyeballs are moved together sideways the pupils remain unchanged. We have seen (p. 691) that the various movements of the eyeballs may be brought about by direct stimulation of particular parts of the nates, and are then also accompanied by the appropriate changes in the pupils. The association, therefore, of the movements of the pupil and of the ocular muscles is not simply psychical in nature, but is dependent on the close connection of their respective centres. From the fact of the movements of the eyeball and pupil being so readily and variously excited by stimulation of the nates, it has been inferred that the centres for these movements lie in those bodies;[1] it would appear, however, that what may be called the real or immediate centres of these movements lie beneath the corpora quadrigemina, in the front part of the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius, and therefore are affected in an indirect manner only when the corpora quadrigemina are stimulated.

The more exact determination by Hensen and Völckers of the topography of the centres for the movements of the eyeball and pupil (see p. 648) explains the results of Knoll, who found, in opposition to Flourens, Budge, and others, that reflex contraction of the pupils remained even after removal of the corpora quadrigemina, and helps to clear up the discrepancy between Adamuk[2] and Knoll as to dilation of pupil being produced by stimulation of the testes or of the nates. Hensen and Völckers found their experiments untrustworthy so long as they merely stimulated the corpora quadrigemina; it was not until they divided these bodies and stimulated the underlying parts that their results became uniform.

Flourens observed that unilateral extirpation of the corpora mina in mammals or of the optic lobes in birds pro- in the opposite eye; and the same result has

---

Med. Wiss., 1870, p. 65.

[2] Op. cit.

been gained by many subsequent observers.[1] We have seen, moreover, that both frogs, birds, and mammals continue to receive and within limits to react upon visual impressions after the total removal of the cerebral hemispheres. From these facts we infer that visual sensory impulses become transformed into visual sensations in the corpora quadrigemina; or, in other words, that these nervous structures are centres of sight. But they are so in a limited sense only. We have seen that destruction or injury of the cerebral hemispheres profoundly affects vision. In the absence of the cerebral convolutions, a crude vision, devoid of distinct visual perceptions, is probably all that is possible. The processes constituting distinct and perfect vision in fact begin in the retina, and are partially elaborated in the corpora quadrigemina, possibly in the optic thalami,[2] but do not become completely developed until the cerebral convolutions have been called into operation.

In those animals (*ex. gr.*, rabbits) in which unilateral destruction of the corpora quadrigemina entails blindness of the opposite eye, and yet does not affect at all the visual sensory impulses originating in the eye of the same side, it is obvious that a complete decussation of the sensory impulses must take place before the centre is reached.

The question, however, whether the decussation of fibres (and consequently of impulses) in the optic chiasma is complete or incomplete, whether the optic tract of one side is the continuation of all the fibres in the optic nerve of the opposite side or whether it is composed of representatives of the optic nerves of both sides, is one which has been much debated, both from an anatomical and a physiological standpoint. As regards mammals, the results of experiment and observation differ according to the animal employed.[3] In the rabbit the decussation appears to be complete; destruction of the corpora quadrigemina on one side causes degeneration of the opposite optic nerve, but not at all of that of the same side, and removal of one retina degeneration of the opposite optic tract, but not at all of that of the same side, while longitudinal section of the chiasma causes total blindness. In the dog, destruction of one retina gives rise to strands of degeneration in both optic tracts,[4] and Nicati[5] has in the cat succeeded in dividing the chiasma without destroying vision; from which it is inferred that in these animals the decussation is incomplete. Munk's experiments (see p. 807) are also in favor of an incomplete decussation in the dog, since destruction of the visual area on one side interferes with the sight of both eyes. In man Mandelstamm[1] has argued from the various forms of hemiopia (in which portions only of the retinæ are insensible to light) that the decussation is complete; but the concurrence of hemiopia in both eyes with hemianthesia, or hemiplegia, and other symptoms indicating disease of one side of the brain only, has generally, though not perhaps conclusively, been held to prove that in man the decussation is incomplete; and Gowers[2] quotes a case where hemiopia of both sides resulted from diseases limited to one optic tract, and brings other evidence in favor of the view that the decussation is incomplete.

---

[1] McKendrick, Trans. Roy. Soc. Ed., 1873.

[2] Lussana and Lemoigne, op. cit.

[3] Biesiadecki, Moleschott's Untersuch., viii (1862), p. 156. Mandelstamm, Cbt. Med. Wiss., 1873, p. 339; and Archiv für Ophthalmol., xix (1873), p. 39. Gudden, Archiv f. Ophthalmol., xx (1874), p. 249. Michel, ibid., xix (1873), pp. 29–375.

[4] Gudden, op. cit. [5] Archives de Physiolog., v, 1878, p. 658.

Flourens and subsequent observers noticed that injury or removal of the corpora quadrigemina on one side frequently caused forced movements, and that removal of the whole mass led to great want of co-ordination. These results are quite in harmony with the fact mentioned above (p. 793) concerning the co-ordinating functions of the optic lobes in frogs. But at present we have no exact knowledge concerning the nature of the co-ordination, and what relations are borne in this respect by the corpora quadrigemina to the cerebellum, crura cerebri, and pons Varolii.

Flourens in many cases entirely removed the corpora bigemina from birds without any inco-ordination or disturbance of movements resulting, though they were seen by McKendrick in pigeons, and by Ferrier in rabbits and monkeys. It has been urged, however, by many (Schiff) that when such phenomena do occur after removal of the corpora quadrigemina, they are the result of coincident injury to the underlying crura cerebri. Adamuk[3] observed in rabbits that galvanic stimulation of the posterior tubercles, in contrast to the anterior tubercles, produced movements of the animal, though Knoll observed no such effect. Ferrier[4] saw various movements follow upon stimulation of the surface of the corpora quadrigemina with the interrupted current. Flourens found that while mechanical stimulation of the surface of these bodies produced no effect, deep puncture caused various movements, which he attributed to stimulation of the crura cerebri beneath. This suggests that the movements caused by galvanic stimulation are due to escape of current, and we here meet with the same difficulty that was experienced in dealing with the cerebral convolutions. Ferrier states that with even a moderately strong current the movements may be so violent as to merge into a general opisthotonus. He also observed that stimulation of the posterior tubercles was followed by marked and distinct cries, affording a curious parallel to the croaking produced by reflex stimulation in frogs, the seat of which is in the optic lobes. Lussana and Lemoigne[5] also observed a cry invariably to follow upon section of the corpora quadrigemina and superior peduncles of the cerebellum (processus cerebelli ad testes), though no loss of sensibility could be detected as resulting from the operation. These observers assert that section of the superior peduncles paralyzes the muscles of the trunk of the opposite side and thus leads to the vertebral column being arched towards the same side, and to "circus" movements. According to Valentin, Budge, and others, stimulation of the corpora quadrigemina, or of the optic lobes, produces movements in the œsophagus, stomach, and other parts of the alimentary canal, and in the urinary bladder. In such cases the stimulation must have an indirect effect on the centres of the above movements, which, as we have seen, are situate in the medulla and lumbar cord respectively. Danilewsky, Jr.,[1] and Ferrier have observed changes in the blood-pressure and respiration follow upon stimulation of the corpora quadrigemina, as of other parts of the brain. Martin and Booker[2] find in the frog in the optic lobes and in the rabbit beneath the posterior corpora quadrigemina, close to the aqueduct of Sylvius, a respiration-regulating centre, stimulation of which accelerates inspiration and diminishes or inhibits expiration.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Op. cit.

[3] Cbl. f. Med. Wiss. (1878), p. 562.

[4] Op. cit.

[5] Op. cit.

Cerebellum.

We have already referred to the cerebellum as being probably concerned in the co-ordination of movements. Flourens observed that when a small portion of the cerebellum was removed from a pigeon, the animal's gait became unsteady; when larger portions were taken away its movements became much more disorderly, and when the whole of the organ was removed an almost total loss of co-ordination supervened. Other observers have obtained similar results in other animals; and it has in general been found that lateral or unsymmetrical lesions and incisions produce a greater effect than those which are median or symmetrical. Section of the middle peduncle on one side almost invariably gives rise to a forced movement, the animal rolling rapidly round its own longitudinal axis; the rotation is generally though not always towards the side operated on; and is accompanied by nystagmus, *i. e.*, by peculiar rolling movements of the eyes suggestive of vertigo; frequently one eye is moved in one direction, *ex. gr.*, inwards and downwards, and the other in a different or opposite direction, *ex. gr.*, outwards and upwards. The clinical evidence is discordant, for though unsteadiness of gait has been frequently witnessed in cases of cerebellar disease, many histories have been recorded in which extensive disease, amounting at times to almost complete destruction, of the cerebellum has existed without any obvious disturbance of the co-ordination of movements. Still the experimental evidence is so strong, that we must consider the cerebellum as an important organ of co-ordination, though we are unable at present to define its functions more exactly. It is probable, but not proved, that its functions are especially connected with the afferent impulses proceeding from the semicircular canals.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv (1875), p. 128.

[2] Journ. Physiol. i (1878), p. 370.

Observers are not agreed as to how far the loss of co-ordination which follows upon lesion or removal of part of the cerebellum is temporary or permanent. Flourens found that when the portion removed was small, the disorderly movements which at first appeared eventually vanished, but when a large portion was removed the loss of co-ordination became permanent. These results are capable of interpretation on the view that the co-ordinating mechanisms are situated in the deeper structures, and hence, while completely removed by the deeper incisions, are only temporarily paralyzed by the shock of the slighter operations. Hitzig and Ferrier find that injury to or removal of the lateral lobe produces the same forced movements as section of the middle peduncle. Flourens and others have observed that while lateral injury gave rise to lateral movements, injury to the anterior or posterior median portions caused the animal to fall forwards and backwards respectively. Nothnagel[1] has been led from his experiments on rabbits to the conclusion that the lesions which determine a loss of co-ordination are those which result in a solution of continuity in the structures uniting the two sides of the organ, the mere loss of lateral parts, even amounting to an entire half, having, according to him, no such effect. Ferrier finds that stimulation of the cerebellar surface by the interrupted current causes in monkeys, dogs, and cats movements of both eyes with associated movements of the head and limbs, and to a certain extent of the pupils. The eyes moved horizontally, or vertically, or obliquely, symmetrically or unsymmetrically, with or without rotation, according as the electrodes were applied to one or other portion of the surface. In fact the results were to a certain extent similar to those obtained by Adamuk on stimulating the corpora quadrigemina, but they cannot be wholly explained as simply due to escape of current, if, as Hitzig[2] asserts, very similar phenomena may be witnessed, not only with weaker currents, but even on mechanical stimulation.[3]

Nothnagel[4] also finds that mechanical stimulation of even the surface of the cerebellum gives rise, without signs of pain being felt, to movements chiefly of the trunk and extremities and of those muscles which are governed by the facial, hypoglossal, and fifth nerves. These movements, which are developed somewhat slowly, manifest themselves first on the side operated on, and then ceasing on that side make their appearance on the opposite side.

---

[1] Virchow's Archiv, Bd., 68 (1876), p. 33.

[2] Op. cit.

[3] Cf., however, Schwahn, Eckhard's Beiträge, viii (1878), p. 149.

[4] Op. cit.

Lastly, we may observe that Flechsig (see p. 764) on anatomical grounds connects a definite portion of the lateral columns of the spinal cord with the cerebellum.

Purkinje observed long ago that when a constant current of sufficient strength was sent through the head from ear to ear, a feeling of giddiness was experienced; external objects appearing to rotate in the direction of the current, from right to left, for instance, when the anode was placed at the right ear, while at the same time the subject himself leaned towards the anode. Hitzig[1] has more fully investigated and described the phenomena. When the current is sufficiently strong, remarkable movements of the eyes are seen to take place on the current being made. These are varied, and partake somewhat of the nature of nystagmus. They consist of a rapid snatching movement in the direction of the current, and a slower return in the contrary direction, the eyes oscillating between the two. Sometimes the two eyes move together, sometimes they are dissociated. That neither the feeling of vertigo nor the movements of the body are dependent on abnormal visual sensations caused by the ocular movements, is shown by the fact that they occur when the eyes are shut, and also in blind people; and indeed the feeling of vertigo may be induced by a current too feeble to cause any abnormal movements of the eyeballs. The application of the current when the eyes are shut gives rise to a sensation similar to that of sitting or standing in a carriage which is being turned over in the direction of the current, from right to left when the anode is placed at the right ear. When the current is broken, there is a rebound of the phenomena in an opposite direction. The person now leans towards the cathode, and external objects seem to revolve from the cathode to the anode. All these phenomena are best explained by supposing that the current interferes with the cerebral co-ordinating mechanism, from which result, as efferent effects, the compensating movements of the body and of the eyes, the change in the mechanism at the same time so affecting consciousness as to produce a feeling of vertigo. Whether they are due to an anelectrotonic and catelectrotonic condition of the ampullar fibres of the respective auditory nerves, or are caused by the action of the current on cerebellar or other structures, must be left for the present undecided.

Attempts have been made to connect the cerebellum with the sexual functions; but there is no satisfactory evidence of any such relation. As we shall see later on, the nervous centres connected with the sexual and generative organs are seated, in the case of dogs at least, and probably of all animals, in the lumbar spinal cord; and all, or nearly all, sexual phenomena may be witnessed in animals, the lumbar spinal cords of which have been isolated by section from the rest of the cerebrospinal system. Galvanic stimulation of the cerebellum produces no change in the generative organs, and when erection of the penis is caused by emotions, the tract connecting the cerebral convolutions with the erection centre in the spinal cord passes straight along the crura cerebri and medulla, for Eckhard[1] has observed that stimulation of these parts in the dog will produce erection.

---

[1] Op. cit.

Eckhard has brought forward facts to show that lesions of certain parts of the cerebellum, like those of certain parts of the medulla oblongata, cause either diabetes or simple hydruria.

According to Budge, stimulation of the cerebellum produces peristaltic movements in the œsophagus and stomach; and Schiff observed inflammation of the intestine with hæmorrhage after lesions of the peduncles of the cerebellum.

Crura Cerebri and Pons Varolii.

Though from the gray matter abundant in both these organs we may infer that they possess important functions, we hardly know more concerning them than that the former serve as the great means of communication between the spinal cord and the higher parts of the brain, and that both are intimately connected with the co-ordination of movements, since either forced or disorderly movements are the frequent results of section of either of them; and as we have seen, the possession of these parts, in the absence of the cerebral hemispheres, and even of the corpora striata and optic thalami, is sufficient to carry out the most complex bodily movements.

Since the paralysis of the face seen in cases of hemiplegia from disease of the corpus striatum is on the same side as that of the body, it follows that the impulses proceeding along the cranial nerves cross over like those of the spinal nerves. Hence when paralysis of the face occurs on the opposite side to that of the body, it may be inferred that the injury or disease has affected the cranial nerve (or nerves) in a part of its course before decussation has taken place; and pathological observations support this view, unilateral disease or injury of the pons Varolii not unfrequently involving the facial nerve of the same side in its comparatively superficial course, and so causing paralysis of the muscles of the same side of the face as the disease, and the opposite side to the paralysis of the limbs. It is probable that the decussation which we have seen to begin in the spinal cord, is gradually completed as the impulses pass through the medulla and pons Varolii.[1] Against the view of those who maintain that volitional impulses cross suddenly and completely at the decussation of the pyramids, may be urged the fact that a longitudinal section through the decussation does not entail loss of voluntary movements on both sides of the body, as it ought to do if the volitional impulses crossed completely at this spot. Moreover, according to Vulpian, the loss of voluntary movement which follows upon a unilateral section of the medulla is not confined entirely to one side of the body.

---

[1] Beiträge, vii (1873), p. 67.

Medulla Oblongata.

We have so often spoken of this link between the brain and the spinal cord, that it is hardly necessary here to do more than recall the fact, that the majority of the "centres" for various organic functions are situated in it.

These we may briefly recapitulate as follows: 1. The respiratory centre (p. 453), with its neighboring convulsive centre (p. 473). 2. The vaso-motor centre (p. 269). 3. The cardio-inhibitory centre (p. 242). 4. The diabetic centre, or centre for the production of artificial diabetes (p. 533). 5. The centre for deglutition (p. 367). 6. The centre for the movements of the œsophagus and stomach (p. 371), with its allied vomiting centre (p. 378). 7. The centre for reflex excitation of the secretion of the saliva (p. 337), with which may be associated the centre through which the vagus influences the secretion of pancreatic juice (p. 349), and possibly of the other digestive juices.

In the frog, as we have urged (p. 781), the medulla is undoubtedly largely concerned in the co-ordination of movements, and it is exceedingly probable that in the mammal also a considerable portion of work of this kind falls to its lot.

In conclusion, we may call attention to the fact, that of the whole brain certain parts respond easily, by various movements in different parts of the body, to mechanical or other stimuli applied directly to them, while others will not. The former are consequently spoken of as sensitive, and together form what has been called an excito-motor centre; they are the (deep parts of) the corpora quadrigemina, the crura cerebri, the pons Varolii, the (deep parts of) the cerebellum, and the medulla. The latter are spoken of as insensitive; they are the cerebral hemispheres together with the corpora striata and optic thalami (and the superficial portions of the cerebellum and corpora quadrigemina). In view of the results obtained by electrical stimulation of the cerebral convolutions and other parts, this distinction cannot however be regarded as important.

---

[1] Cf. Balighian, Eckhard's Beiträge, viii (1878), p. 193.

SEC. 5. ON THE RAPIDITY OF CEREBRAL OPERATIONS.

We have already seen (p. 753) that a considerable time is taken up in a purely reflex act, such as that of winking, though this is perhaps the most rapid form of reflex movement. When the movement which is executed in response to a stimulus involves mental operations a still longer time is needed; and the interval between the application of the stimulus and the commencement of the muscular contraction varies according to the nature of the mental labor involved.

The simplest case is that in which a person makes a signal immediately that he perceives a stimulus, *ex. gr.*, closes or opens a galvanic circuit the moment that he feels an induction-shock applied to the skin, or sees a flash of light, or hears a sound. By arrangements similar to those employed in measuring the velocity of nervous impulses, the moment of the application of the stimulus and the moment of the making of the signal are both recorded on the same travelling surface, and the interval between them is carefully measured. This interval, which has been called by Exner "the reaction period," consists of three portions: (1), the passage of afferent impulses from the peripheral sensory organ to the central nervous system, including the possible latent period of the generation of the impulses in the sensory organ; (2), the transformation, by the operations of the central nervous system, of the afferent into efferent impulses; and (3), the passage of the efferent impulses to the muscles, including the latent period of the muscular contractions. If the time required for the first and third of these events be deducted from the whole, the "reduced reaction period," as it may be called, gives the time taken up exclusively by the operations going on in the central nervous system.

The reaction period, both reduced and unreduced, varies according to the nature and disposition of the peripheral organs stimulated. The reaction period of vision has long been known to astronomers. It was early found that when two observers were watching the appearance of the same star, a considerable discrepancy existed between their respective reaction periods; and that the difference, forming the basis of the so-called "personal equation," varied from time to time, according to the personal conditions of the observers. Thus the difference between the celebrated astronomers Struve and Bessel varied between the years 1814 and 1834 from .04 to 1.02 sec., the reaction period of Struve being so much longer than that of Bessel. These figures, however, are not to be compared with those which will be given immediately, inasmuch as several complications were introduced by the method of observation.

Exner[1] has carefully determined the reaction period of himself and others with different stimuli, and under various circumstances. When the stimulus was an induction-shock thrown into the skin of the left hand, the signal being made with the right hand, the reaction period varied from .1337 sec. in Exner himself to .3576 or even to .9952 in an obtuse individual. When the stimulus was applied in different ways, the signal always being made with the right hand, the results in Exner's own case were as follows:

Direct electrical stimulation of the retina,	.1139
Electric shock on the left hand,	.1283
Sudden noise,	.1360
Electric shock on the forehead,	.1374
" " on the right hand,	.1390
Visual impression from an electric spark,	.1506
Electric shock on the toe of the left foot,	.1749

Hence tactile sensations, produced by the stimulus of an electric shock applied to the skin, are followed by a shorter reaction period than are auditory sensations; but the period of these is in turn shorter than that of visual sensations produced by luminous objects, though the shortest period is that of visual sensations produced by direct electrical stimulation of the retina. Hirsch had previously arrived at similar results, and Donders[2] had similarly determined the reaction period or physiological time, as he termed it, to be, roughly speaking, for feeling ⅐th, for hearing ⅙th, and for sight ⅕th of a second. With Dietl and Vintschgau[3] the reaction period for tactile sensations from the middle finger of the right hand was respectively .1371 sec. and .1532 sec. Von Wittich[4] found the reaction period to be .167 sec., when the application of a constant current to the tongue produced a gustatory sensation. Vintschgau and Hönigschmied[5] determined the reaction period of taste to be for salines .1598 sec., for sugar .1639, acids .1676, and quinine .2351. Even with the same stimulus, the reaction period will vary according to circumstances, such as the time of year, weather, etc., and according to the condition of the individual. Exner found that while strong tea had no obvious effect, two bottles of Rhine wine lengthened the period from .1904 to .2969. Dietl and Vintschgau,[6] as the result of an elaborate inquiry, came to the conclusion that while opium had a temporary lengthening effect, coffee produced a much more striking and lasting shortening of the period, while the effect of wine (champagne) varied according to the quantity drunk and the rapidity with which it was taken; a small quantity shortened, but a large quantity (a bottle drunk rapidly) lengthened the period.

The calculations involved in "reducing" the reaction period are obviously open to much error; Exner's own reduced period was .0828, that of the obtuse individual quoted above .3050 and .9426; that is to say, an intelligent person takes less than $\frac{1}{10}$th of a second to perceive and to will. If the whole reaction period of the case when the retina was directly stimulated be deducted from the period of the case when a luminous object was used to create visual impressions, the difference (.0367 sec.) would indicate the latent period of luminous stimulation of the retina; but it is doubtful whether any great dependence can be placed on such a calculation.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, vii (1873), p. 601.

[2] Reichert and Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1868, p. 657.

[3] Pflüger's Archiv, xvi (1878), p. 316.

[4] Zt. rat. Med. (3), xxx, p. 113.

[5] Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 1.

[6] Op. cit.

In all the above instances a single stimulus was used, and all that the person experimented on had to do was to perceive the stimulus, and to make an effort in accordance. If, however, the stimulus, instead of being applied to a part of the body determined by previous arrangement, as for instance to the left foot, were applied either to the left or the right foot, without the person being told which it was to be, and it was arranged that he should make a signal when the left foot, but not when the right foot was stimulated, additional mental exertions would be necessary; and Donders[1] found that in such a case the reaction period was considerably prolonged. The following table gives the difference between a simple reaction period and one in which a mental decision has to be carried out before the voluntary effort to make the signal is initiated, *i. e.*, gives the time required for the person to "make up his mind" in accordance with the nature of the sensation which he receives; this it will be seen is, roughly speaking, from $\frac{1}{5}$th to $\frac{1}{20}$th of a second.

Dilemma between two spots of the skin, right and left foot stimulated by an induction-shock, . . .	.066
Dilemma of visual sensations between two colors, suddenly presented to the view; signal to be made on seeing one, but not on seeing the other, ...	.184
Dilemma between two letters; signal to be made on seeing one only, ...	.166
Dilemma between five letters; signal to be made on seeing one only, ...	.170
Dilemma of auditory sensations; two vowels suddenly sung; signal to be made on hearing one only, . .	.056
Dilemma between five vowels; signal to be made on hearing one only, ...	.088

SEC. 6. THE CRANIAL NERVES.

Though we have incidentally dwelt on the functions of all these nerves, it may be as well to recapitulate them somewhat briefly, giving at the same time a very general outline of their physiological anatomy.

1. *Olfactory* (Nerve of Smell).—[The olfactory tracts are

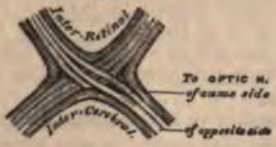
---

[1] Op. cit.

prolongations of the cerebral substance. According to the observations of Henle and Meynert each tract arises in a tubercular eminence, which is situated in the posterior inferior portion of the anterior cerebral lobe, internal to and connected with the island of Reil. These eminences are called the "optic tubercles," and are connected with each other by commissural fibres. The olfactory tracts are composed of both white and gray matter; the former occupies the inferior and lateral portions. Each tract (Fig. 199) terminates in an oblong ganglion, which is called the olfactory bulb. The bulb rests upon the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, and in this position gives off the nervous filaments, which constitute what are strictly speaking, the true olfactory nerves. The distribution of these nerves has been referred to in previous pages (pp. 721, 722).]

2. *Optic* (Nerve of Sight).—[The optic tracts arise from the corpora quadrigemina and geniculata and the optic thalami. The fibres have been traced to the crura cerebri, and the anterior portion of the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius. The optic tracts (Fig. 216) run forward beneath the cerebrum, and when they reach the olivary process of the sphenoid bone unite to form the optic commissure or chiasm. The optic nerves arise from the anterior part of the commissure, enter the orbit through the optic foramina, pierce the external coats of the eyeball, and become expanded to form the retinæ.

Fig. 225.



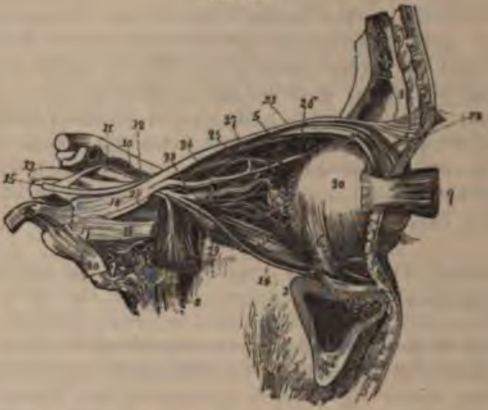
Course of Fibres in the Optic Commissure.

Within the commissure the fibres of the optic tract pursue divergent courses. Some of the fibres decussate; others continue to the retina on the same side; others cross over to the opposite side and return to the optic thalamus, and thus form (inter-cerebral) or commissural fibres between the optic thalami; other fibres (inter-retinal) probably run through one optic nerve across to the other between the retinæ.]

3. *Oculo-motor.*—[The oculo-motor nerves arise from the crura cerebri immediately anterior to the pons Varolii (Fig.

216). The fibres of each nerve have their deep origin in a gray nucleus in the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius. This nucleus is continuous with the nucleus in which the root of the fourth nerve originates, and is, therefore, often spoken of as the common nucleus of the two nerves. Each nucleus is connected with the opposite side of the brain by fibres which pass through the corpus striatum of the opposite side, and decus,

Fig. 226.



The Nerves of the Orbit seen from the Outer Side. 1, section of the frontal bone; immediately behind the numeral is the frontal sinus, and, in front, the integument; 2, the superior maxillary bone; the section in front of the numeral exhibits the maxillary sinus; 3, part of the sphenoid bone; 4, the levator palpebræ and superior rectus muscles; 5, the superior oblique muscle; 6, the inferior oblique muscle; 7, the ocular half of the external rectus muscle drawn forwards; 8, the orbital half of the external rectus muscle turned downwards. On this muscle the sixth nerve is seen dividing into branches; 9, the inferior rectus muscle; 10, the optic nerve; 11, the internal carotid artery emerging from the cavernous sinus; 12, the ophthalmic artery; 13, the third nerve; 14, the branch of the third nerve to the inferior oblique muscle. Between this and the sixth nerve (8) is seen the branch which supplies the inferior rectus; its branch to the ophthalmic ganglion is seen proceeding from the upper side of the trunk of the nerve, at the bottom of the orbit; 15, the fourth nerve; 16, the trunk of the fifth nerve; 17, the Gasserian ganglion; 18, the ophthalmic nerve; 19, the superior maxillary nerve; 20, the inferior maxillary nerve; 21, the frontal nerve; 22, its division into branches to supply the integument of the forehead; 23, the lachrymal nerve; 24, the nasal nerve; the small nerve seen in the bifurcation of the nasal and frontal nerve is one of the branches of the upper division of the third nerve; 25, the nasal nerve passing over the internal rectus muscles to the anterior ethmoidal foramen; 26, the infra-trochlear nerve; 27, a long ciliary branch of the nasal; another long ciliary branch is seen proceeding from the lower aspect of the nerve; 28, the long root of the ophthalmic ganglion, proceeding from the nasal nerve, and receiving the sympathetic root, which joins it an acute angle; 29, the ophthalmic ganglion, giving off from its forepart the short ciliary nerves; 30, the globe of the eye.

sate beneath the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius. Some of the fibres from the corpora striatum probably remain on the same side without decussating.

From its superficial point of origin this nerve passes along the cavernous sinus, receiving some sensory filaments from the fifth. It enters the orbit through the sphenoidal fissure (Fig. 226).] It is the motor nerve to the levator palpebræ superioris and all the muscles of the eye, except the obliquus superior and the rectus externus. Efferent nerve for the contraction of the pupil and for the muscles of accommodation. Hence, when the nerve is divided, or otherwise paralyzed, the upper eyelid falls (ptosis); the eye, which is turned outwards, is capable of partial movements only, viz., such as can be produced by the rectus externus and obliquus superior; when the head is moved the eye moves with it, the inferior oblique not being able to execute the usual compensating movements of the eyeball; the pupil is dilated, and the eye cannot accommodate for near distances.

The root of the nerve shows recurrent sensibility, due to fibres from the fifth, but it is otherwise a purely motor nerve.[1]

4. *Trochlear* or *Pathetic.*—[The trochlearis or patheticus nerve is the smallest of all the cranial nerves. This nerve arises from the upper surface of the valve of Vieussens, behind the corpora quadrigemina (Fig. 216). The larger proportion of fibres run transversely across the valve of Vieussens and decussate with those of the nerve of the opposite side; other fibres remain on the same side as the nerve. These fibres have their origin in a gray nucleus situated in the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius, immediately behind, and adjoining the nucleus of the oculo-motor nerve; and also in a nucleus which is located near the nucleus of the fifth nerve in the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle. It passes along the cavernous sinus, and enters the orbit through the sphenoidal fissure (Fig. 226).] It is the motor nerve to the obliquus superior. When the nerve is paralyzed, no marked difference is observed in the position of the eye, but the patient sees double when he attempts to look straight forward or towards the paralyzed side; the images, however, coalesce when he turns his head to the sound side. When the head is moved from side to side the eye moves with it, the usual compensating movement of the eye which accompanies the movements of the head failing in consequence of the superior oblique not acting.

---

[1] Schiff, Lehrb., p. 376.

It is a purely motor nerve, but receives recurrent fibres from the fifth.

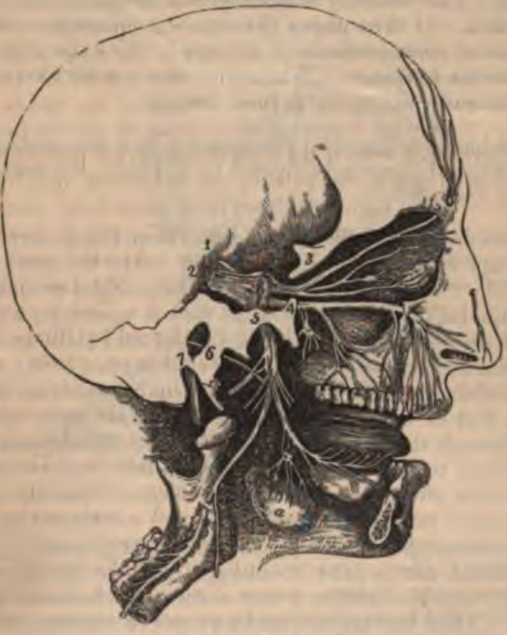
5. *Trigeminus.*—[The fifth or trigeminus is the largest of the cranial nerves. It arises from the side of the pons Varolii (Fig. 216) by two roots, which are separated by a narrow band of fibres. The anterior or smaller root is motor; the posterior root is sensory. The fibres have their deep origin principally in a gray nucleus in the extreme side of the floor of the fourth ventricle, and immediately behind the nuclei of the oculomotorius and patheticus nerves. Some of the fibres terminate in the nuclei or decussate with those of the opposite side; others have been traced through the superior peduncles of the cerebellum of the same side to the tubercula quadrigemina. These nerves run forwards from their superficial point of origin to the Gasserian ganglion (Fig. 227), which rests on the petrous portion of the temporal bone. At this point the sensory root spreads out in the ganglion; but the motor root passes by, forming no connection with it. The sensory fibres pass through the ganglion, being reinforced by fibres from the ganglionic cells, and form three branches or trunks: the ophthalmic, superior maxillary, and inferior maxillary. The two former are sensory; the latter is joined by the motor root, and is, therefore, both sensory and motor. The ophthalmic branch enters the orbit through the sphenoidal fissure. The superior maxillary passes through the foramen rotundum into the spheno-maxillary fossa, where it sends off a tract to the spheno-palatine ganglion, then passes through a groove in the floor of the orbit and emerges at the infra-orbital foramen. The inferior maxillary division passes through the foramen ovale, then gives off several branches to the otic ganglion, and passes on to its points of distribution.]

It is a mixed efferent and afferent nerve, with distinct motor and sensory roots, the latter bearing the ganglion of Gasser.

Efferent Fibres: Motor fibres to the muscles of mastication, temporal, masseter, two pterygoids (mylo-hyoid, anterior belly of digastric), to the tensor palati, and tensor tympani; vaso-motor fibres to various parts of the head and face; secretory fibres to the lachrymal gland, and according to some authors to the parotid and sub-maxillary glands by fibres joining the facial. Trophic (?) fibres to eye, nose, and other parts of face, see p. 596. Efferent fibres for the dilation of the pupil, see p. 647.

Afferent Fibres: General nerve of sensation of the skin of head and face, and of the mucous membrane of the mouth, except the back part of the tongue, the posterior pillars of the fauces, and a large part of the pharynx, these parts being supplied by the glosso-pharyngeal and vagus; the back of the head is chiefly supplied by branches from the cranial nerves, and the external meatus and concha are supplied chiefly by the auricular branch of the vagus. Nerve of special sense of taste for the front part of the tongue, see p. 729.

[FIG. 227.



General Plan of the Branches of the Fifth Pair (after a sketch by Charles Bell). ⅓. 1, lesser root of the fifth pair; 2, greater root passing forwards into the Gasserian ganglion; 3, placed on the bone above the ophthalmic nerve, which is seen dividing into the supra-orbital, lachrymal, and nasal branches, the latter connected with the ophthalmic ganglion; 4, placed on the bone close to the foramen rotundum, marks the superior maxillary division, which is connected below with the spheno-palatine ganglion, and passes forwards to the infra-orbital foramen; 5, placed on the bone over the foramen ovale, marks the submaxillary nerve, giving off the anterior auricular and muscular branches, and continued by the inferior dental to the lower jaw, and by the gustatory to the tongue: *a*, the submaxillary gland, the submaxillary ganglion placed above it in connection with the gustatory nerve; 6, the chorda tympani; 7, the facial nerve issuing from the stylo-mastoid foramen.]

6. *Abducens.*—[The abducens nerve emerges from the brain at the posterior border of the pons Varolii (Fig. 216). The fibres have their principal source of origin in a gray nucleus in the widest part of the floor of the fourth ventricle near the median line. The nerve, after emerging from the brain, passes along the cavernous sinus, where it receives filaments from the sympathetic and sensory filaments from the ophthalmic branch of the fifth. It then passes through the sphenoidal fissure to the external rectus muscle of the eye.] It is the motor nerve to the rectus externus. When the nerve is divided or otherwise paralyzed, the eye is turned inwards.

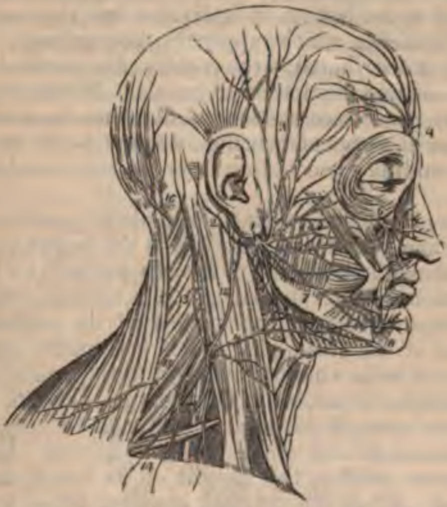
The abducens is joined by fibres coming from the cervical sympathetic; when this nerve is divided in the neck, the action of the muscle is weakened.

7. *Facial.*—[The facial nerve arises from the groove between the olivary and restiform bodies, just below the pons Varolii (Fig. 216). The fibres have their deep origin principally in a gray nucleus in the floor of the fourth ventricle, which is a common seat of origin for both the facial and abducens nerves. The facial fibres arise from the external portion of the nucleus, and the abducens arises from the internal portion, so that they form a sort of loop, being apparently continuous with each other through the nucleus. Some of the fibres extend from the nucleus to the brain on the same side; others decussate freely in the median line with fibres coming from the opposite nucleus, and run to the nucleus or are continued up to the brain on the opposite side to which they originated.

The facial nerve, after it emerges from the brain, passes in company with the auditory nerve into the internal auditory meatus. Then leaving the auditory nerve it enters the aqueductus Fallopii and makes its exit through the stylo-mastoid foramen. It then spreads out between the lobules of the parotid gland, its branches diverging like a fan, and is distributed principally to the muscles of the face (Fig. 228).] It is the motor nerve to the muscles of the face; hence nerve of expression. Supplies also stylo-hyoid, posterior belly of the digastric, buccinator, stapedius, muscles of the external ear, platysma, some muscles of the palate, viz., the levator palati, and probably others. Secretory nerve of submaxillary and parotid gland. Receives afferent, possibly efferent fibres from trigeminus, and also from vagus. According to Vulpian, contains vaso-motor fibres for the tongue and side of the face. The effects of paralysis of the facial, from the inability of the orbicularis to close the eye, the drawing of the face to the sound side, and the smoothness of the paralyzed side, are very striking.

8. *Auditory Nerve.*—[The auditory nerve arises by two roots from the posterior median fissure of the medulla oblongata, below the lower border of the pons Varolii. (Fig. 216.) In the floor of the fourth ventricle, below its widest part, are a number of transverse white striæ. (Fig. 218.) These are the fibres of the posterior root, which arise from a gray nucleus beneath them, which is connected with the white substance

FIG. 228.



The Distribution of the Facial Nerve, and the Branches of the Cervical Plexus. 1, the facial nerve, escaping from the stylo-mastoid foramen, and crossing the ramus of the lower jaw; the parotid gland has been removed in order to show the nerve more distinctly; 2, the posterior auricular branch; the digastric and stylo-mastoid filaments are seen near the origin of this branch; 3, temporal branches, communicating with (4) the branches of the frontal nerve; 5, facial branches, communicating with (6) the infra-orbital nerve; 7, facial branches, communicating with (8) the mental nerve; 9, cervico-facial branches, communicating with (10) the superficialis colli nerve, and forming a plexus (11) over the submaxillary gland. The distribution of the branches of the facial in a radiated direction over the side of the face, constitutes the pes anserinus; 12, the auricularis magnus nerve, one of the ascending branches of the cervical plexus; 13, the occipitalis minor, ascending along the posterior border of the sterno-mastoid muscle; 14, the superficial and deep descending branches of the cervical plexus; 15, the spinal accessory nerve, giving off a branch to the external surface of the trapezius muscle; 16, the occipitalis major nerve, the posterior branch of the second cervical nerve.

of the cerebellum. These fibres pass outwards, winding around the restiform body. The deep or anterior root is traced to the borders of the calamus scriptorius, and into the cerebellum especially. This root passes inwards around the restiform body to meet the other root, and thus embraces this part of the medulla. Some of the fibres decussate in the floor of the fourth ventricle.

This nerve accompanies the facial into the internal auditory meatus, and at the bottom of it divides into the cochlear and vestibular branches, which supply the internal ear. The cochlear branch is distributed to the cochlea; the vestibular branch to the sacculi and semicircular canals. Within the meatus the auditory nerve receives several filaments from the facial.] It is the special nerve of hearing; afferent nerve for impulses other than auditory proceeding from the semicircular canals.

9. *Glosso-pharyngeal.*—[The glosso-pharyngeal nerve arises by four or five bundles of fibres from the upper part of the medulla oblongata, posterior to the olivary body. (Fig. 216.) These fibres have their deep origin in a nucleus, which is situated below and beneath the nucleus of the auditory nerve. The nucleus of the glosso-pharyngeal is a continuation of the same series of cells which give origin to the spinal accessory and pneumogastric nerves. The nerve makes its exit from the cranium through the jugular foramen in company with the pneumogastric and spinal accessory nerves. In its passage the nerve presents two ganglia on its trunk, the *jugular* and *petrosal.* From the petrosal ganglion fibres arise which connect the nerve with the pneumogastric, facial, and sympathetic nerves. It sends a special branch to the ear, called the tympanic branch. It divides into two principal branches, one of which is distributed to the pharynx and parts immediately surrounding; the other going to the tongue (Fig. 229).] Motor nerve for levator palati, azygos uvulæ, stylo-pharyngeus, constrictor faucium medius; the motor functions of this nerve have been disputed. Special nerve of taste for the back of the tongue. General nerve of sensation for the root of the tongue, the soft palate, the pharynx (being here associated with the vagus), the Eustachian tube, and the tympanum.

10. *Pneumogastric.* — *Vagus.* — [The pneumogastric nerve arises by ten or twelve bundles of fibres behind the olivary body and below the point of origin of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve. (Fig. 216.) These fibres have their deep origin in a gray nucleus, which is situated below the nucleus of the glosso-

pharyngeal, with its upper portion projecting somewhat above it. The nucleus is exposed in the floor of the ventricle. The fibres proceed from the nucleus downwards and outwards through the medulla oblongata, and emerge at the point above stated. It makes its exit from the cranium through the jugular foramen. Before its exit the trunk presents a gangliform enlargement (ganglion jugulare), through which it receives fibres from the spinal accessory (accessory portion), facial, glosso-pharyngeal, and sympathetic. After its exit it presents a second enlargement (ganglion inferius), through which it is connected with the spinal accessory (accessory portion), hypoglossal, loop of the first and second cervical, and sympathetic nerves.

[The nerve passes down the neck in the sheath of the great bloodvessels, and is distributed to the different parts below mentioned.]

Efferent Fibres: Motor nerve for the muscles of the pharynx, for the movements of the œsophagus (see p. 371), of the stomach (see p. 372), of the intestines (see p. 369), for the muscles of the larynx, possibly for the plain muscular fibres of the trachea and bronchial divisions. Vaso-motor fibres for lungs.[1] Inhibitory nerve of the heart. Trophic fibres for lungs and heart (see p. 597).

Afferent Fibres: Sensory nerve of the respiratory passages, and of the pharynx, œsophagus, and stomach. Afferent nerve, augmenting and inhibiting, of the respiratory centre (see p. 455), afferent inhibitory nerve (depressor branch) of the medullary vaso-motor centre (see p. 258), afferent nerve producing salivary secretion (see p. 340), inhibiting pancreatic secretion (see p. 349).

According to Steiner,[2] the vagus in the rabbit may be easily dissected into two strands, an outer one containing the afferent, and an inner one containing the efferent fibres.

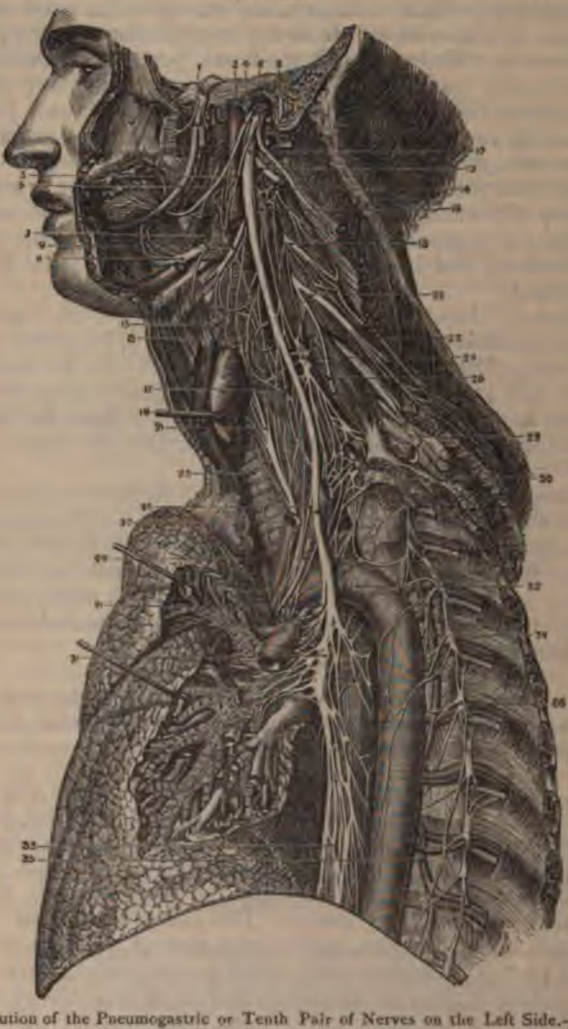
11. *Spinal Accessory.*—[The spinal accessory nerve arises by eight or ten filaments from the lateral tract of the cord, below the point of origin of the pneumogastric. The spinal accessory nerve consists of two portions, the *accessory* and *spinal.* (Fig. 216.) The accessory portion joins the pneumogastric nerve, as has been previously stated. The fibres have their deep origin in a gray nucleus, in the lower part of the medulla and upper part of the spinal cord, which is continuous above with the nucleus of the pneumogastric, and below with the remains

---

[1] Michaelson, Mitth. a. d. Königsberger physiol. Lab. (1878), p. 85.
[2] Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys. (Phys. Abth.), 1878, p. 216.

of the anterior cornu. The nerve makes its exit from the cranium through the jugular foramen.]

[FIG. 229.



Distribution of the Pneumogastric or Tenth Pair of Nerves on the Left Side.—After HIRSCHFELD and LEVEILLE.

1, Gasserian ganglion of fifth nerve; 2, internal carotid artery; 3, pharyngeal branch of pneumogastric; 4, glosso-pharyngeal nerve; 5, lingual nerve (fifth); 6, spinal-accessory nerve; 7, middle constrictor of pharynx; 8, internal jugular vein (cut); 9, superior laryngeal nerve; 10, ganglion of trunk of pneumogastric nerve; 11, hypoglossal nerve (cut), on hyoglossus; 12, ditto (cut), communicating with eighth and first cervical nerve; 13, external laryngeal nerve; 14, second cervical nerve looping with first; 15, pharyngeal plexus on inferior constrictor; 16, superior cervical ganglion of sympathetic; 17, superior cardiac nerve of pneumogastric; 18, third cervical nerve; 19, thyroid body; 20, fourth cervical nerve; 21, left recurrent laryngeal nerve; 22, spinal accessory, communicating with cervical nerves; 23, trachea; 24, middle cervical ganglion of sympathetic; 25, middle cardiac nerve of pneumogastric; 26, phrenic nerve (cut); 27, left carotid artery (cut); 28, tracheal plexus; 29, phrenic nerve (cut); 30, inferior cervical ganglion of sympathetic; 31, pulmonary plexus of pneumogastric; 32, arch of thoracic aorta; 33, œsophageal plexus; 34, vena azygos superior; 35, vena azygos minor; 36, gangliated cord of sympathetic.]

Motor nerve to the sterno-mastoid and trapezius muscles. It receives recurrent sensory fibres from the cervical nerves. Part of the spinal accessory blends with the pneumogastric, and the efferent effects (such as the movements of the larynx, pharynx, etc., and cardiac inhibition) of the united trunk seem to be largely due to the spinal accessory fibres contained in them. It is stated, however, that division of the spinal accessory, before it joins the pneumogastric, does not entirely do away with either swallowing or the movements of the larynx. In the movements of the œsophagus and stomach, brought about by the vagus acting as an efferent nerve, the accessory fibres seem to have no share. The cardiac inhibitory fibres seem to be distinctly of accessory origin.

12. *Hypoglossal.*—[The hypoglossal nerve arises by twelve or fifteen bundles from the groove between the anterior pyramid and the olivary body, in a line corresponding to the antero-lateral groove in the cord. The fibres have their deep origin in an elongated gray nucleus situated in the floor of the fourth ventricle at its inferior part, near the median line and internal to the nucleus of the spinal accessory, pneumogastric, and glosso-pharyngeal nerves. The nerve makes its exit from the cranium through the anterior condyloid foramen.] Motor nerve for the muscles of the tongue, and for all the muscles connected with the hyoid bone, except the digastric, stylo-hyoid, mylo-hyoid, and middle constrictor of the pharynx; it also supplies the sterno-thyroid. It receives sensory fibres from the fifth and vagus, and is also connected with the three upper cervical nerves as well as with the sympathetic.

There is probably some intimate connection existing between the hypoglossal nerve roots and the gray matter of the olivary bodies.

To Charles Bell is due the merit of having made the fundamental discovery of the distinction between motor and sensory fibres. Led to this view by reflecting on the distribution of the nerves, he experimentally verified his conclusions by observing that while mechanical irritation of a posterior root gave rise to no movements in the muscles to which the nerve was distributed, these were very evident when the anterior root was pricked or pinched. He printed his views for private circulation in 1811 under the title of *Idea of a New Anatomy of the Brain*, and communicated them to the Royal Society in July, 1821, in a paper *On the Arrangement of the Nerves*. In 1822 Magendie[1] showed that section of the posterior root caused loss of sensation and section of the anterior root loss of motion: an observation no less epoch-making than that of Bell. Magendie was, however, led by the phenomena, which we can now explain as due to recurrent sensibility or reflex action, to believe that the distinction between the two roots was partial only; and it was not till Johannes Müller[2] some years afterwards conducted experiments on frogs and made use of galvanic stimulation, that the doctrine of motor and sensory nerves became thoroughly established. The next great step was the establishment of the theory of Reflex Action. Although this important function of nervous centres was recognized dimly by older observers, such as Whytt,[3] more closely defined by Prochaska,[4] and clearly grasped by Johannes Müller in 1833,[5] it was independently discovered in 1832 by Marshall Hall;[6] and it was owing to the enthusiastic labors of the latter observer that the new doctrine was rapidly accepted and developed. Among the more important labors since that time may be mentioned the remarkable book of Flourens,[7] the work of Longet,[8] and the researches of Schiff,[9] Brown-Séquard,[10] and others. The work of Goltz[11] on the frog, though small, contains many valuable facts and suggestions; and an admirable summary of the whole physiology of the nervous system is given by Vulpian,[12] to whom also we are indebted for many valuable observations. The chief of the more recent inquiries have been mentioned in the text.

---

[1] Journal de Physiol., ii, p. 276. [2] Physiology, Engl. ed., i, 691.

[3] On the Vital and other Involuntary Movements of Animals, 1751.

[4] Lehrsätze aus der Physiol., 1797.

[5] In the first edition of his Physiology.

[6] More fully in Phil. Trans., 1833.

[7] Rech. Exp. sur les Propriétés et les Fonctions du Système Nerveux, 1st ed., in 1824; 2d, much enlarged and containing many new facts, in 1842.

[8] Anat. et Phys. du Système Nerveux, 1841.

[9] Lehrb. d. Physiol., 1858.

[10] Rech. et Exp. sur la Phys. de la moelle épin., 1846, and numerous subsequent papers.

[11] Beiträge z. Lehre v. d. Functionen der Nervencentren des Frosches, 1869.

[12] Leçons sur la Phys. générale et comparée du Système Nerveux, 1866.

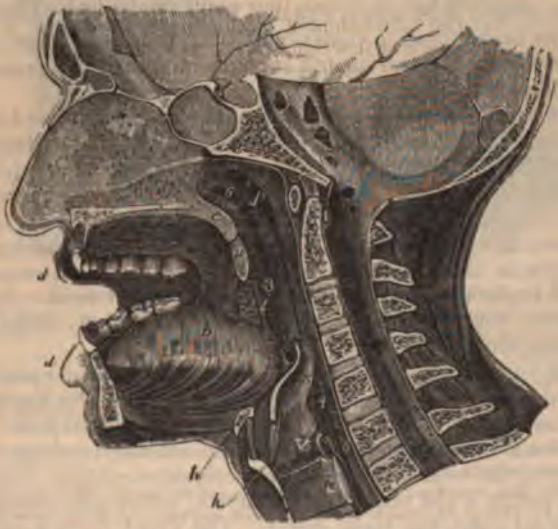
CHAPTER VII.

SPECIAL MUSCULAR MECHANISMS.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Larynx.*

THE larynx is a membrano-cartilaginous chamber, broader above than below, and situated in the anterior median portion of the neck. It consists of a number of cartilages, which are articulated with each other, connected by ligaments, moved by a number of muscles, and lined by a mucous membrane.

FIG. 230.



Median Section of Mouth, Nose, Pharynx, and Larynx. *a*, septum ot nose, below it, section of hard palate; *b*, tongue; *c*, section of velum pendulum palati; *d*, *d*, lips; *u*, uvula; *r*, anterior arch or pillar of fauces; *i*, posterior arch; *t*, tonsil; *p*, pharynx; *h*, hyoid bone; *k*, thyroid cartilage; *n*, cricoid cartilage; *s*, epiglottis; *v*, glottis; 1, posterior opening of the nares; 3, isthmus faucium; 4, superior opening of larynx; 5, passage into œsophagus; 6, mouth of right Eustachian tube.

The principal cartilages are the thyroid, cricoid, the two arytenoid, and the epiglottis.

The thyroid cartilage is the largest, and consists of two quadrilateral plates of alæ, which are continuous with each other in front, where they form the prominence called the pomum Adami. The posterior borders of the thyroid cartilage serve as a point of attachment of the stylo-pharyngeus and palato-pharyngeus muscles. The upper part of each of these borders terminates in a superior cornu, which articulates with the hyoid bone; the lower portion terminates in the inferior cornu, which articulates with the cricoid cartilage. The upper border between the cornua is connected with the hyoid bone by the thyro-hyoid membrane. The lower border is connected with the cricoid cartilage by the thyro-cricoid membrane at the median line, and at the sides by the crico-thyroid muscles.

The cricoid cartilage is situated below the thyroid cartilage with its broad portion posteriorly. At the upper part of its broad portion are two smooth surfaces on which the arytenoid cartilages articulate.

The arytenoid cartilages are pyramidal in form, and articulate on the upper surface of the cricoid. Each cartilage has an external, posterior and internal (median) surface, an apex and a base. The apex is pointed backwards and inwards, and is surmounted by a small cartilaginous tubercle, called the cartilage of Santorini (Fig. 233). The base, which articulates with the cricoid cartilage, presents at its external internal angle a projection called the *processus vocalis.* At the posterior internal angle is a second projection, called the *processus muscularis.*

The superior opening of the larynx is formed anteriorly by the epiglottis, posteriorly by the apices of the arytenoid cartilages, and laterally by the aryteno-epiglottidean folds stretching between these points. The inferior opening corresponds to the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. Between these points is the *cavity* of the larynx, which has stretching across its sides the vocal cords. The vocal cords consist of two pairs: the superior or false vocal cords are membrano-ligamentous bands which extend from the receding angle of the thyroid to the external surfaces of the arytenoid cartilages; the inferior or true vocal cords (*chorda vocales*) are membrano-ligamentous bands which stretch across the cavity of the larynx from the receding angle of the thyroid to the processus vocales of the arytenoid cartilages. Between the borders of the true and false vocal cords is an elliptical opening, the *ventricle*, which leads to a space running upwards and behind the false vocal cords, called the *sacculus laryngis*. The mucous membrane lining this sac contains a great number of follicular glands, which discharge a mucous secretion for the purpose of lubricating the true vocal cords.

FIG. 231.

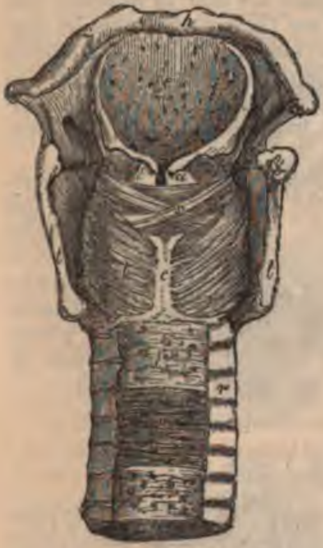


FIG. 232.

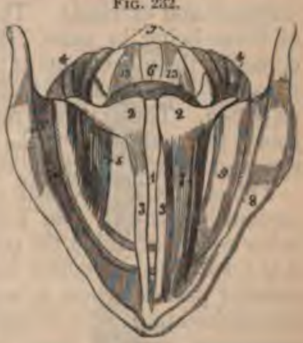


FIG. 233.

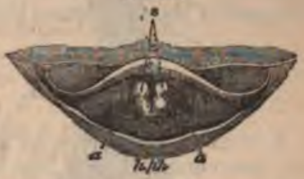


FIG. 231.—View of the Larynx and part of the Trachea from behind, with the muscles dissected. *h*, the body of the hyoid bone; *e*, epiglottis; *t*, the posterior borders of the thyroid cartilage; *c*, the median ridge of the cricoid; *a*, upper part of the arytenoid; *s*, placed on one of the oblique fasciculi of the arytenoid muscle; *b*, left posterior crico-arytenoid muscle; ends of the incomplete cartilaginous rings of the trachea; *l*, fibrous membrane crossing the back of the trachea; *n*, muscular fibres exposed in a part (from Quain's *Anatomy*).

FIG. 232.—View of the Larynx from above. 1, aperture of glottis; 2, arytenoid cartilages; 3, vocal cords; 4, posterior crico-arytenoid muscles; 5, lateral crico-arytenoid muscle of right side, that of left side removed; 6, arytenoid muscle; 7, thyro-arytenoid muscle of left side, that of right side removed; 8, thyroid cartilage; 9, cricoid cartilage; 13, posterior crico-arytenoid ligament. With the exception of the arytenoid muscle, this diagram is a copy from Mr. Willis's figure.

FIG. 233.—View of the upper part of the Larynx as seen by means of the Laryngoscope during the Utterance of a Grave Note. *e*, epiglottis; *s*, the cartilages of Santorini; *a*, arytenoid cartilages; *z*, base of the tongue; *ph*, the posterior wall of the pharynx.

Between the true vocal cords is an opening which is called the *rima glottidis*. The form of the glottis varies very much both in the inspiratory and expiratory acts, and in the act of phonation.

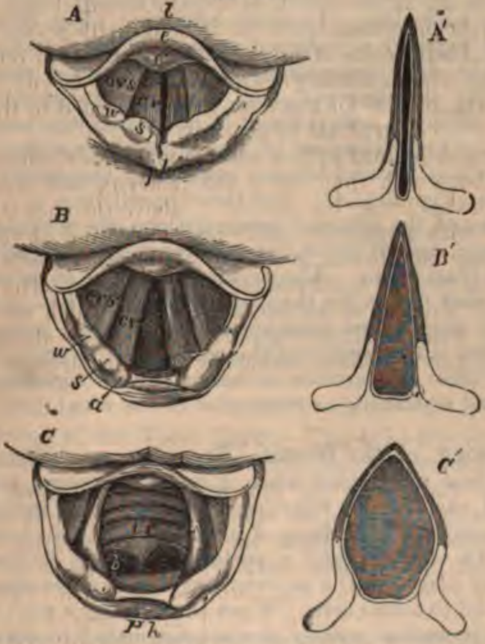
The muscles of the larynx are divided anatomically into the intrinsic and extrinsic. The former are nine in number, four of them being in pairs. They are the essential muscles concerned in the movements of the arytenoid cartilages and chorda vocales. Their points of origin and insertion are referred to on p. 844. The extrinsic muscles connect the larynx with adjacent parts, and are for the most part concerned in the elevation and depression of the organ.

The larynx is lined with a mucous membrane, which is continuous above with that lining the pharynx and mouth, and below with that lining the trachea. Above the chorda vocales it is lined with pavement epithelium, excepting at the lower anterior portion, where it is ciliated; below the chorda vocales the epithelium is of a ciliated columnar variety. The mucous membrane contains many mucous glands, which are pretty uniformly distributed; they are, however, very abundant in the part of the membrane lining the sacculus laryngis.]

SEC. 1. THE VOICE.

A blast of air, driven by a more or less prolonged expiratory movement, throws into vibrations two elastic membranes —the *chordæ vocales*. These impart their vibrations to the column of air above them, and so give rise to the sound which we call the voice. Since the sound is generated in the vocal cords, we may speak of them and of those parts of the larynx which decidedly affect their condition as constituting the essential vocal apparatus; while the chamber above the vocal cords, comprising the ventricles of the larynx, with the false vocal cords, the pharynx and the cavity of the mouth, the latter varying much in form, constitute a subsidiary apparatus of the nature of a resonance-tube, modifying the sound originating in the vocal cords. In the voice, as in other sounds, we distinguish: (1) Loudness. This depends on the strength of the expiratory blast. (2) Pitch. This depends on the length and tension of the vocal cords. Their *length* may be regarded as constant, or varying only with age. It consequently determines the range only of the voice, and not the particular note given out at any one time. The shrill voice of the child is determined by the shortness of the cords in infancy, and the voices of a soprano, tenor, and barytone are all dependent on the respective lengths of their vocal cords. Their *tension* is on the contrary variable; and the chief problems connected with the voice refer to variations in the tension of the vocal cords. (3) Quality. This depends on the number and character of the overtones accompanying any fundamental note sounded, and is determined by a variety of circumstances, chief among which is the physical quality of the cords.

Fig. 234.



The Larynx as seen by means of the Laryngoscope in different conditions of the Glottis (from Quain's *Anatomy*).—After Czermak.

A, while singing a high note; *B*, in quiet breathing; *C*, during a deep inspiration. The corresponding diagrammatic figures *A'*, *B'*, *C'*, illustrate the changes in position of the arytenoid cartilages, and the form of the rima vocalis and rima respiratoria in the above three conditions.

l, the base of the tongue; *e*, the upper free part of the epiglottis; *e'*, the tubercle or cushion of the epiglottis; *ph*, part of the anterior wall of the pharynx behind the larynx; *w*, swelling in the aryteno-epiglottidean fold caused by the cartilage of Wrisberg; *s*, swelling caused by the cartilage of Santorini; *a*, the summit of the arytenoid cartilage; *cv*, the true vocal cords; *cvs*, the false vocal cords; *tr*, the trachea with its rings; *b*, the two bronchi at their commencement.

The vocal cords, attached in front to the thyroid cartilage, end behind in the processus vocales of the arytenoid cartilages. Hence, a distinction has been drawn between the rima vocalis, *i. e.*, the opening bounded laterally by the vocal cords, and the rima respiratoria, or space between the arytenoid cartilages behind the processus vocales; these names, however, are not free from objections. In quiet breathing (Fig. 234, *B*) the two form together a V-shaped space, which, as we have seen (p. 418), in deep inspiration is widened into a rhomboidal opening by the divergence of the processus vocales (Fig. 234, *C*). When a note is about to be uttered, the vocal cords are by the approximation of the processus vocales brought into a position parallel to each other, and the whole rima is narrowed (Fig. 234, *A*). By their parallelism and by the narrowness of the interval between them the cords are rendered more susceptible of being thrown into vibration by a moderate blast of air. The problems we have to consider are, first, by what means are the cords brought near to each other or drawn asunder as occasion demands; and, secondly, by what means is the tension of the cords made to vary. We may speak of these two actions as narrowing or widening of the glottis, and tightening or relaxation of the vocal cords.

Narrowing of the Glottis.—The change of form of the glottis is best understood when it is borne in mind that each arytenoid cartilage is, when seen in horizontal section (Fig. 234), somewhat of the form of a triangle, with an internal or median, an external, and a posterior side, the processus vocalis being placed in the anterior angle at the junction of the median and external sides. When the cartilages are so placed that the processus vocales are approximated to each other, and the internal surfaces of the cartilages nearly parallel, the glottis is narrowed. When on the contrary the cartilages are wheeled round on the pivots of their articulations, so that the processus vocales diverge, and the internal surfaces of the cartilages form an angle with each other, the glottis is widened.

There are several muscles forming together a group, which has been called by Henle the sphincter of the larynx. These are (1) the *thyro-ary epiglotticus*, proceeding from the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage, and from the arytenoid epiglottidean ligament, and sweeping round the outer ridge of the arytenoid cartilage of its own side to be inserted into the processus muscularis of the arytenoid cartilage of the other side; (2) the *thyro-arytenoides externus*, passing from the re-entrant angle of the thyroid cartilage to be inserted into the outer edge of the arytenoid cartilage of the same side; (3) the *thyro-arytenoides internus*, passing from the angle of the thyroid cartilage to the processus vocalis and outer side of the arytenoid cartilage; (4) the *arytenoideus* (*posticus*), passing transversely from one arytenoid cartilage to another. All these muscles, when they act together, grasp round the glottis and tend to close it up; and each of them, acting alone, has, with the exception of the last-named (arytenoideus), the same effect. In addition to these, the *crico-arytenoideus lateralis*, which passes from the lateral border of the cricoid cartilage upwards and backwards to the outer angle of the arytenoid, by pulling this outer angle forwards throws the processus vocalis inwards, and so also narrows the glottis.

Widening of the Glottis.—The *crico-arytenoideus posticus*, passing from the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage to the outer angle of the arytenoid cartilage behind the attachment of the lateral crico-arytenoideus, pulls back this outer angle, and so causing the processus vocalis to move outwards, widens the glottis. The *arytenoideus posticus*, acting alone, has a similar effect.

Tightening of the Vocal Cords.—The *crico-thyroideus* pulls the thyroid downwards and forwards, and so increases the distance between that cartilage and the arytenoids when the latter are fixed. Supposing then the arytenoideus and crico-arytenoideus posticus to fix the arytenoids, the effect of the contraction of the crico-thyroideus would be to tighten the vocal cords.

Slackening of the Vocal Cords.—This is effected by the whole of the sphincter group just mentioned, but more especially by the *thyro-arytenoidei externus* and *internus*; these acting alone, supposing the arytenoid cartilages to be fixed, would pull the thyroid cartilage upwards and backwards, and so shorten the distance between the processus vocales and that body.

Thus almost every movement of the larynx is effected not by one muscle only, but by several, or at least by more than one, acting in concert. The movements which give rise to the voice are pre-eminently combined and co-ordinate movements. When we remember how a very slight variation of the tension of the vocal cords must give rise to a marked difference in the pitch of the note uttered, and yet what a multitude of fine differences of pitch are at the command of a singer of even

range of pitch
with the possible variations of tension of w
in their natural length are capable, it has
some of the fibres of the thyro-arytenoid
passing either from the thyroid or from th
to end in the vocal cords themselves, ma
lar points of the cords, so to speak, "stop"
artificially shortening the length actually
tion, produce higher notes than the cor
length are capable of producing. It has
that the processus vocales may overlap eac
shorten the length of cord available for vi

These various muscles are supplied by
rather by spinal accessory fibres running
The superior laryngeal is the afferent n
mucous membrane, but it also contains th
tributed to the crico-thyroid muscle; henc
divided on one side the corresponding v
and high notes become impossible. It
that this, the chief tensor, and therefore
muscle of the larynx, has a separate a
supply.

According to some authors, the arytenoideu
its nervous supply from this nerve; but this

The inferior laryngeal or recurrent br
other muscles. When this nerve is divi
since the approximation and parallelis
can no longer be affected. When in a
recurrent nerves are divided, the glottis

the change is one of constriction. When the peripheral portion of one recurrent nerve is stimulated, the vocal cord of the same side is approximated to the middle line; when both nerves are stimulated, the vocal cords are brought together and the glottis is narrowed. Though the nerve is distributed to both dilating and constricting muscles, the latter overcome the former when the nerve is artificially stimulated. In the complete closure of the glottis, which is so important a part of the act of coughing (p. 481), the group of muscles which we have spoken of as constituting a sphincter is thrown into forcible contractions by the recurrent laryngeal nerve.

Though fundamentally a voluntary act, the utterance of a given note is not effected by the direct passage of simple volitional impulses down to the laryngeal muscles. So complex and co-ordinate a movement as that of sounding even a simple and natural note, requires a co-ordinating nervous mechanism in which, as in other complex muscular actions, afferent impulses play an important part. Auditory sensations, if not as important for an accurate management of the voice as are visual sensations for the movements of the eye, are yet of prime importance. This is recognized when we say that such and such a one whose power over his laryngeal muscles is imperfect, "has no ear."

The "falsetto" voice is one not at present clearly understood. According to some authors the vocal cords are seen to be wide apart when falsetto notes are uttered, and not close and parallel as in the ordinary voice. Hence for the development of these notes a stronger blast of air and a greater effort are required. When, as in ordinary full voice, the glottis is very narrow, the trachea and bronchi serve the purpose of a resonance chamber; hence such a voice is spoken of as a "chest" voice. In the falsetto voice, where the vocal cords are wide apart, this function of the air-tubes is in abeyance. This view is combated by Vacher,[1] who, from observations on himself, has come to the conclusion that the glottis is narrowed in both kinds of notes, the cords vibrating along their whole length in the chest notes, and along their anterior portions only in the high falsetto notes. According to him, therefore, the high notes are the result of a "stopping" of the vocal cords, but whether this is effected by the action of the thyro-arytenoideus internus, spoken of above, must be left at present uncertain. Johannes Müller was of opinion that in the falsetto notes the edges only of the vocal cord vibrate, while in the chest notes the whole width of each cord is involved. It is exceedingly probable that the falsetto notes are produced by some muscular manœuvre, since they may by exercise be uttered with comparative ease. The change from the chest to the falsetto range is an abrupt one, and the combined range may be very extensive, as in the case of persons who can carry on a duet, singing alternately, for instance, in a tenor (chest) and a soprano (falsetto) voice. According to Vacher the rima respiratoria is always completely closed during singing, whether chest or falsetto notes, and not as Mandl thought in the latter only.

---

[1] De la Voix, Paris, 1877.

The ventricles of Morgagni are apparently of use in giving the vocal cords sufficient room for their vibrations. The purpose of the false vocal cords is not exactly known. Some authors think that in the falsetto voice they are brought down into contact with, and thus serve to stop, the true vocal cords.

At the age of puberty a rapid development of the larynx takes place, leading to a change in the range of the voice. The peculiar harshness of the voice when it is thus "breaking" seems to be due to a temporary, congested, and swollen condition of the mucous membrane of the vocal cords accompanying the active growth of the whole larynx. The change in the mucous membrane may come on quite suddenly, the voice "breaking," for instance, in the course of a night.

SEC. 2. SPEECH.

Vowels.

Every sound, or every note (for all vocal sounds when considered by themselves are musical sounds), caused by the vibrations of the vocal cords, besides its loudness due to the force of the expiratory blasts and its pitch due to the tension of the cords, has a quality of its own, due to the number and relative prominence of the overtones which accompany the fundamental tone. Some of these features which make up the quality are imposed on the note by the nature of the vocal cords, but still more arise from various modifications which the relative intensities of the overtones undergo through the resonance of the cavity of the mouth and throat. Whenever we hear a note sounded by the larynx we are able to recognize in it features which enable us to state that one or other of the "vowels" is being uttered. Vowel sounds are in fact only extreme cases of quality, extreme prominence of certain overtones brought about by the shape assumed by the buccal and pharyngeal passages and orifices, as the vibrations pass through them. Each vowel has its appropriate and causative disposition of these parts. When *i* (ee in feet) is sounded, the sounding-tube of the upper air-passages is made as short as possible, the larynx is raised and the lips are retracted, the whole cavity of the mouth taking on the form of a broad flask with a narrow neck. During the giving out of *e* (a in fat) the shape of the mouth is similar, but somewhat longer. For the production of *a* (as in father) the mouth is widely open, so that the buccal cavity is of the shape of a funnel with the apex at the pharynx. With *o*, the buccal cavity is again flask-shaped, with the mouth more closed than in *a*, but the lips, instead of being retracted as in *i* and *e*, are somewhat protruded, so that the sounding-tube is prolonged. The greatest length of the tube is reached in *u* (oo), in which the larynx is depressed and the lips protruded as much as possible. While the two latter vowels are being uttered, the general form of the buccal cavity is that of a flask with a short neck and a small opening, the orifice being smaller for *u* than for *o*.

Each of these various "vowel" forms of the mouth possesses a note of its own, one towards which it acts as a resonance chamber. Thus, if several tuning-forks of various pitch be held while sounding before a mouth which has assumed the particular form necessary for sounding U, it will be found that the resonance will be particularly great with the fork having the pitch of the bass *b*-flat. Similarly the pitch of the treble *b* will be more intensified by the mouth moulded to sound O, the octave *b*, above the treble, will correspond to A, another octave higher to E, and still an octave higher to I. And it is the experience of singers that each vowel is sung with peculiar ease on a note having a prominent overtone corresponding to the tone proper to the mouth when moulded to utter the vowel. The precise nature of the vowel sounds, however, requires further investigation.[1]

As the vibrations are travelling through the pharyngeal and buccal cavities, the posterior nares are closed by the soft palate; and it may be shown, by holding a flame before the nostril, that no current of air issues from the nose when a vowel is properly said or sung. When the posterior nares are not effectually closed the sound acquires a nasal character. The same happens when the anterior nares are closed, as when the nose is held between the fingers, the nasal chamber then forming a cavity of resonance.

Consonants.

Vowels are, as their name implies, the only real vocal sounds; it is only on a vowel that a note can be said or sung. Our speech, however, is made up not only of vowels, but also of consonants, *i. e.*, of sounds which are produced not by the vibrations of the vocal cords, but by the expiratory blast being in various ways interrupted, or otherwise modified in its course through the throat and mouth.

---

[1] Cf. Jenkin and Ewing, Nature, 1878, p. 167 et sec.

The distinction between the two is, however, not an absolute one, since, as we have seen, the characters of the several vowels depend on the form of the mouth, and in the production of some consonants (B, D, M, N, etc.) vibrations of the vocal cords form a necessary, though adjuvant, factor.

Consonants have been classified according to the place at which the characteristic interruption or modification takes place. Thus it may occur:

1. At the lips, by the movement or position of the lips in reference to each other or to the teeth, giving rise to *labial* consonants.

2. At the teeth, by the movement or position of the front part of the tongue in reference to the teeth or the hard palate, giving rise to *dental* consonants.

3. In the throat, by the movement or position of the root of the tongue in reference to the soft palate or pharynx, giving rise to *guttural* consonants.

Among the dentals again may be distinguished the dentals commonly so called, such as T, the sibilants such as S, and the lingual L, all differing in the relative position of the tongue, teeth, and palate.

Consonants may also be classified according to the character of the movements which give rise to them. Thus they may be either *explosive* or *continuous*.

1. *Explosives.*—In these the characters are given to the sound by the sudden establishment or removal of the appropriate interruption. Thus, in uttering the labial P, the lips are first closed, then an expiratory current of air is driven against them, and, upon their being suddenly opened, the sound is generated. Similarly, the dental T is generated by the sudden removal of the interruption caused by the approximation of the tip of the tongue to the front of the hard palate, and the guttural K by the sudden removal of the interruption caused by the approximation of the root of the tongue to the soft palate.

The labial B differs from P, inasmuch as it is accompanied by vibrations of the vocal cords (that is, a vowel sound is uttered at the same time), and these vibrations continue after the removal of the interruption. Hence B is often spoken of as being uttered with voice and P without voice; and D and G (hard) with voice bear the same relation to T and K without voice.

The *continuous* consonants may further be divided into:

2. *Aspirates.*—In these the sound is generated by a rush of air through a constriction formed by the partial closure of the lips, or by the raising of the tongue against the hard or soft palate, etc. Thus F is sounded when the lips are brought into partial, and not as in P and B into complete, approximation, and a current of air is driven through the narrowing opening. F is uttered without any accompanying vibration of the vocal cords, *i. e.*, without voice. With voice it becomes V.

The sibilant S is formed by a rush of air past an obstruction caused by the partial closure of the teeth, the front of the tongue being depressed at the same time; and S accompanied with vibrations of the vocal cords becomes Z.

In Sh the dorsal surface of the tongue is raised so as to narrow the passage between that organ and the palate for a considerable portion of its length.

Th is formed by placing the tongue between the two partially open rows of teeth; and the hard and soft Th bear to each other the same relation as do P and B.

L is produced when the passage is closed in the middle by pressing the tip of the tongue against the hard palate, and the air is allowed to escape at the sides of the tongue.

When the constriction in an aspirate is formed by the approximation of the root of the tongue to the soft palate, we have the guttural CH (as in loch) without voice, and GH (as in lough) with voice.

3. *Resonants.*—In these, all of which must have vibrations of the vocal cords as a basis, the usual passage through the mouth is closed either in a labial, dental, or guttural fashion, and the peculiar character is given to the sound by the nasal chambers acting as a resonance cavity. Thus in M the passage is closed by the approximation of the lips, in N by the approximation of the tongue to the hard palate, and in NG by the approximation of the root of the tongue to the soft palate.

4. The various forms of R are often spoken of as *vibratory*, the characteristic sounds being caused by the vibration of

some or other of the parts forming a constriction in the vocal passage. Thus the ordinary R is produced by vibrations of the point of the tongue elevated against the hard palate, the guttural R by the vibrations of the uvula or other parts of the walls of the pharynx; and in some languages there seems to be an R produced by the vibrations of the lips.

H is caused by the rush of air through the widely open glottis. When, in sounding a vowel, the sound coincides with a sudden change in the position of the vocal cords from one of divergence to one of approximation, the vowel is pronounced with the *spiritus asper*. When the vocal cords are brought together before the blast of air begins, the vowel is pronounced with the *spiritus lenis*. The Arabic H is produced by closing the rima vocalis, the epiglottis and false vocal cords being depressed, and sending a blast of air through the rima respiratoria.

On many of the above points, however, there are great differences of opinion, the discussion of which as well as of other more rare consonantal sounds would lead us too far away from the purpose of this book. The following tabular statement must therefore be regarded as introduced for convenience only.

Explosives.	*Labials,*	without voice,	P.
	“	with voice,	B.
	Dentals,	without voice,	T.
	“	with voice,	D.
	Gutturals,	without voice,	K.
	“	with voice,	G (hard).
Aspirates.	*Labials,*	without voice,	F.
	“	with voice,	V.
	Dentals.	without voice,	S, L, Sh, Th (hard).
	“	with voice,	Z, Zh (in *azure*, the French j), Th (soft).
	Gutturals,	without voice,	CH (as in *loch*).
	“	with voice,	GH (as in *lough*).
Resonants.	*Labial,*		M.
	Dental,		N.
	Guttural,		NG.
Vibratory.	*Labial,*	not known in European speech.	
	Dental,	R (common).	
	Guttural,	R (guttural).	

Whispering is speech without any employment of the vocal cords, and is effected chiefly by the lips and tongue. Hence in whispering the distinction between consonants needing and those not needing voice, such as B and P, becomes for the most part lost.

SEC. 3. LOCOMOTOR MECHANISMS.

The skeletal muscles are for the most part arranged to act on the bones and cartilages as on levers, examples of the first kind of lever being rare, and those of the third kind, where the power is applied nearer to the fulcrum than is the weight, being more common than the second. (Fig. 235.) This arises from the fact that the movements of the body are chiefly directed to moving comparatively light weights through a great distance, or through a certain distance with great precision, rather than to moving heavy weights through a short distance. The fulcrum is generally supplied by a (perfect or imperfect) joint, and one end of the acting muscle is made fast by being attached either to a fixed point, or to some point rendered fixed for the time being by the contraction of other muscles. There are few movements of the body in which one muscle only is concerned; in the majority of cases several muscles act together in concert; nearly all our movements are co-ordinate movements. Where gravity or the elastic reaction of the parts acted on does not afford a sufficient antagonism to the contraction of a muscle or group of muscles, the return to the condition of equilibrium is provided for by the action either elastic or contractile of a set of antagonistic muscles; this is seen in the case of the face.

[FIG. 235.

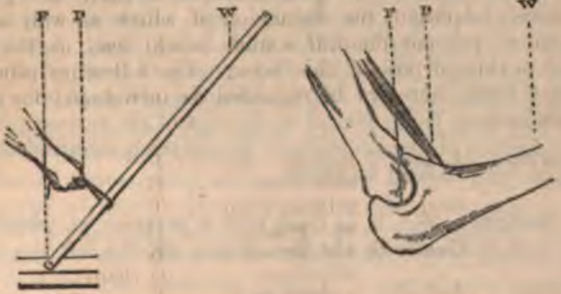
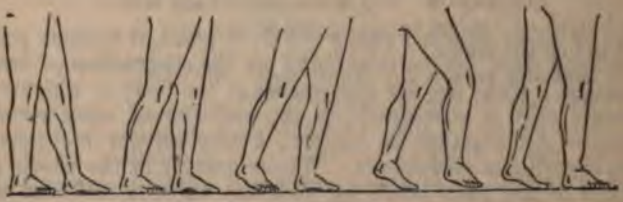


Illustration of the Third Kind of Lever. *F*, fulcrum; *P*, power; *W*, weight.]

The **erect posture,** in which the weight of the body is borne by the plantar arches, is the result of a series of contractions of the muscles of the trunk and legs, having for their object the keeping the body in such a position that the line of gravity falls within the area of the feet. That this does require muscular exertion is shown by the facts that a person when standing perfectly at rest in a completely balanced position falls when he becomes unconscious, and that a dead body cannot be set on its feet. The line of gravity of the head falls in front of the occipital articulation, as is shown by the nodding of the head in sleep. The centre of gravity of the combined head and trunk lies at about the level of the ensiform cartilage, in front of the tenth dorsal vertebra, and the line of gravity drawn from it passes behind a line joining the centres of the two hip-joints, so that the erect body would fall backward were it not for the action of the muscles passing from the thighs to the pelvis assisted by the anterior ligaments of the hip-joints. The line of gravity of the combined head, trunk, and thighs falls moreover a little behind the knee-joints, so that some, though little, muscular exertion is required to prevent the knees from being bent. Lastly, the line of gravity of the whole body passes in front of the line drawn between the two ankle-joints, the centre of gravity of the whole body being placed at the end of the sacrum; hence some exertion of the muscles of the calves is required to prevent the body falling forwards.

In **walking**, there is in each step a moment at which the body rests vertically on the foot of one, say the left leg, while the other, the right leg, is inclined obliquely behind with the heel raised and the toe resting on the ground. (Fig. 236, 2.) The right leg, slightly flexed to avoid contact with the ground, is then swung forward like a pendulum (4), the length of the swing or step being determined by the length of the leg; and

[FIG. 236.



the right toe[1] is brought to the ground. On this right toe as a fulcrum, the body is moved forward, the centre of gravity of the body describing a curve the convexity of which is upward, and the right leg necessarily becoming straight and rigid. As the body moves forward, a point will be reached similar to that with which we supposed the step to be started, the body resting vertically on the left foot, and the right leg being directed behind in an oblique position. The movement on the right foot, however, carries the body beyond this point, and in doing so swings the left leg forward until it is the length of a step in advance of its previous position, and its toe in turn forms a fulcrum on which the body, and with it the right leg, is again swung forward. Hence in successive steps the centre of gravity, and with it the top of the head, describes a series of consecutive curves, with their convexities upwards, very similar to the line of flight of many birds.

Since in standing on both feet the line of gravity falls between the two feet, a lateral displacement of the centre of gravity is necessary in order to balance the body on one foot. Hence in walking, the centre of gravity describes not only a series of vertical, but also a series of horizontal curves, inasmuch as at each step the line of gravity is made to fall alternately on each standing foot. While the left leg is swinging, the line of gravity falls within the area of the right foot, and the centre of gravity is on the right side of the pelvis. As the left foot becomes the standing foot, the centre of gravity is shifted to the left side of the pelvis. The actual curve described by the centre of gravity is therefore a somewhat complicated one, being composed of vertical and horizontal factors. The natural step is the one which is determined by the length of the swinging leg, since this acts as a pendulum; and hence the step of a long-legged person is naturally longer than that of a person with short legs. The length of the step, however, may be diminished or increased by a direct muscular effort, as when a line of soldiers keep step in spite of their having legs of different lengths. Such a mode of marching must obviously be fatiguing, inasmuch as it involves an unnecessary expenditure of energy.

In slow walking there is an appreciable time during which, while one foot is already in position to serve as a fulcrum, the other, swinging, foot has not yet left the ground. In fast walking this period is so much reduced, that one foot leaves the ground the moment the other touches it; hence there is practically no period during which both feet are on the ground together.

---

[1] This indicates perhaps what should be done rather than the actual practice; most people put the heel to the ground first, the contact with the toe coming later.

When the body is swung forward on the one foot acting as a fulcrum, with such energy that this foot leaves the ground before the other, swinging, foot has reached the ground, there being an interval during which neither foot is on the ground, the person is said to be **running**, not walking.

In jumping, this propulsion of the body takes place on both feet at the same time; in hopping, it is effected on one foot only.

The locomotion of four-footed animals is necessarily more complicated than that of man. The simple walk, such as that of the horse, is executed in four times, with a diagonal succession; thus, right fore leg, left hind leg, left fore leg, right hind leg. In the amble, such as that of the camel, the two feet of the same side are put down at one and the same time, this movement being followed by a similar movement of the other two legs; it corresponds therefore very closely to human walking. In the trot, which corresponds to human running, the two diagonally opposite feet are brought to the ground at the same time, and the body is propelled forwards on them. Of the gallop and canter there are many varieties, and the movements become very complicated.[1]

The other problems connected with the action of the various skeletal muscles of the body are too special to be considered here.

---

[1] See Marey, La Machine Animale (1876).

BOOK IV.

THE TISSUES AND MECHANISMS OF REPRODUCTION.

MANY of the individual constituent parts of the body are capable of reproduction, *i. e.*, they can give rise to parts like themselves; or they are capable of regeneration, *i. e.*, their places can be taken by new parts more or less closely resembling themselves. The elementary tissues undergo during life a very large amount of regeneration. Thus the old epithelium scales which fall away from the surface of the body are succeeded by new scales from the underlying layers of the epidermis; old blood-corpuscles give place to new ones; worn-out muscles, or those which have failed from disease, are renewed by the accession of fresh fibres; divided nerves grow again; broken bones are united; connective tissue seems to disappear and appear almost without limit; new secreting cells take the place of the old ones which are cast off; in fact, with the exception of some cases, such as cartilage, and these doubtful exceptions, all those fundamental tissues of the body which do not form part of highly differentiated organs are, within limits fixed more by bulk than by anything else, capable of regeneration. That regeneration by substitution of molecules, which is the basis of all life, is accompanied by a regeneration by substitution of mass.

In the higher animals regeneration of whole organs and members, even of those whose continued functional activity is not essential to the well-being of the body, is never witnessed, though it may be seen in the lower animals; the digits of a newt may be restored by growth, but not those of a man. And the repair which follows even partial destruction of highly differentiated organs, such as the retina, is in the higher animals very imperfect.

In the higher animals the reproduction of the whole individual can be effected in no other way than by the process of sexual generation, through which the female representative element or ovum is, under the influence of the male representative or spermatozoon, developed into an adult individual.

We do not purpose to enter here into any of the morphological problems connected with the series of changes through which the ovum becomes the adult being; or into the obscure biological inquiry as to how the simple, all but structureless, ovum contains within itself, in potentiality, all its future developments, and as to what is the essential nature of the male action. These problems and questions are fully discussed elsewhere; they do not properly enter into a work on physiology, except under the view that all biological problems are, when pushed far enough, physiological problems. We shall limit ourselves to a brief survey of the more important physiological phenomena attendant on the impregnation of the ovum, and on the nutrition and birth of the embryo.

[*The Physiological Anatomy of the Organs of Generation.*

The female organs of generation are anatomically divided into the internal and external organs. The latter comprise the labia majora and minora, the clitoris, the hymen, the meatus urinarius, the vulvo-vaginal glands, and the mucous and sebaceous glands which are distributed in the mucous membrane covering the parts. The external organs play a very subsidiary part in the function of reproduction, and they will be passed by with this brief notice.

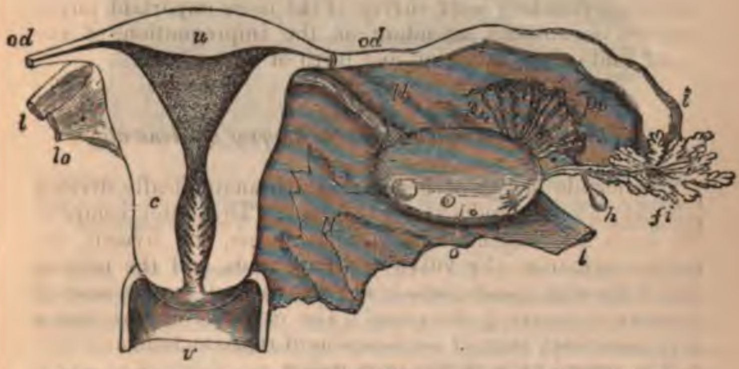
The internal organs comprise the vagina, uterus, Fallopian tubes, and ovaries.

The vagina is a musculo-membranous canal, about four to six inches long, directed obliquely upwards and backwards, and extending from the hymen to the cervix uteri, where it is attached at a point a short distance above the os uteri. Its walls consist of an external coat of longitudinal muscular fibres, a middle erectile coat, and an internal mucous coat. The mucous membrane is continuous below with that covering the external genitals, and above with the mucous membrane lining the uterus. The anterior and posterior surfaces are marked by longitudinal folds or raphe, from which a number of transverse folds are given off. This membrane is provided with mucous glands, and is thickly covered with sensitive papillæ.

The uterus is a flattened, pyriform, muscular organ (Fig. 237). Anatomically it is divided into the fundus, neck, and cervix. The neck indicates the point of division between the lower constricted portion, which is the cervix, and the upper expanded portion, the fundus. The cervix, which extends from the neck to the end of the organ, projects into the vagina, at which point it is marked by a transverse fissure, called the *os uteri*.

The cavity of the uterus is somewhat triangular in shape, and very much flattened antero-posteriorly. The inferior angle of the cavity is continuous with the canal running through the cervix to the vagina. The superior angles are called the cornua; at the bottom of each is an orifice of a Fallopian tube.

FIG. 237.

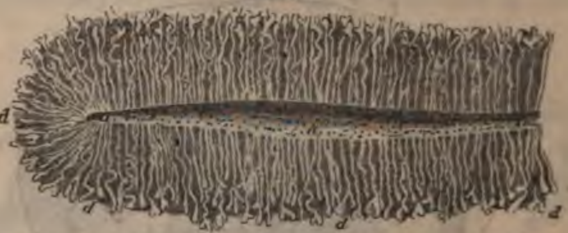


Diagrammatic View of the Uterus and its Appendages, as seen from behind (from QUAIN). ½.—The uterus and upper part of the vagina have been laid open by removing the posterior wall; the Fallopian tube, round ligament, and ovarian ligament have been cut short, and the broad ligament removed on the left side; *u*, the upper part of the uterus; *c*, the cervix opposite the os internum; the triangular shape of the uterine cavity is shown, and the dilation of the cervical cavity with the rugæ, termed arbor vitæ; *v*, upper part of the vagina; *od*, Fallopian tube or oviduct; the narrow communication of its cavity with that of the cornu of the uterus on each side is seen; *l*, round ligament; *lo*, ligament of the ovary; *o*, ovary; *i*, wide outer part of the right Fallopian tube; *fi*, its fimbriated extremity: *po*, parovarium; *h*, one of the hydatids frequently found connected with the broad ligament.

The uterus is composed of three coats: a serous (formed by the peritoneum), a muscular, and a mucous coat. The mucous coat is continuous with that lining the Fallopian tubes and vagina. It is covered with columnar ciliated epithelium, and, if examined with a lens, the openings of the mucous follicles will be seen to be very profusely distributed over the surface. If a vertical section be made as in Fig. 238, the tubules will be seen to be arranged perpendicularly to the surface, having a wavy course. In the impregnated uterus they become much swollen and enlarged. The mucous membrane lining the cervix, on account of its peculiar appearance, is called the *arbor vitæ uterinus.*

The Fallopian tubes (Fig. 237) are about four inches in length, and extend from the cornua of the uterus to the ovaries, where they end in enlarged expanded extremities, the margins of which are covered by long slender processes, one of them being connected to the ovary. This portion of the tube is called the fimbriated extremity. The tubes are composed of a serous, muscular, and mucous layer. The mucous membrane is covered with ciliated columnar epithelium.

FIG. 238.



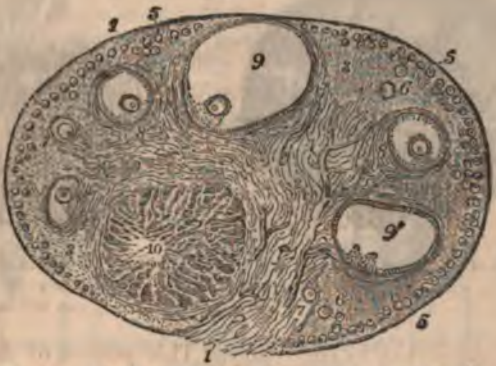
Section of the Lining Membrane of a Human Uterus at the Period of Commencing Pregnancy, showing the arrangement and other peculiarities of the glands, *d, d, d,* with their orifices, *a, a, a,* on the internal surface of the organ. Twice the natural size.

The ovaries (Fig. 237) are flattened ovoidal bodies, which are situated one on each side of the uterus, and inclosed in the folds of the broad ligaments. They are connected with the uterus by a ligament, and with the Fallopian tube by one of its fimbriæ. They consist of a fibrous coat (*tunica albuginea*) which incloses the stroma of the organ. (Fig. 239.) This is composed of a soft vascular fibrous tissue, having imbedded in it a number of small bodies, called Graafian vesicles, which are in divers stages of development. These vesicles commence their development in the deeper portions of the ovary, and as they approach maturity gradually make their way to the surface, where they project as prominences, and their capsule finally rupturing discharge their contents into the Fallopian tube. Each vesicle consists of an external coat formed by the ovary, an internal coat or capsule, and within this a layer of cells, which constitutes the *membrana granulosa.* The interior of the vesicle consists of an albuminous fluid, in which is suspended the ovule.

The Male Generative Organs.—The same physiological interest is not centred in the male organs of generation, as in those of the female, the principal interest being concentrated upon the organs which secrete the male fluid by which the ovule is impregnated. Our remarks will, therefore, be almost entirely confined to the organs concerned in the secretion of this fluid.

The male organs comprise the penis or organ of copulation, the prostate and Cowper's glands, the testicles, and vasa deferentia and vesiculæ seminales.

FIG. 239.



View of a Section of the Prepared Ovary of the Cat.—After SCHRÖN. 6-1.

1, outer covering and free border of the ovary; 1′, attached border; 2, the ovarian stroma, presenting a fibrous and vascular structure; 3, granular substance lying external to the fibrous stroma; 4, bloodvessels; 5, ovigerms in their earliest stages occupying a part of the granular layer near the surface; 6, ovigerms which have begun to enlarge and to pass more deeply into the ovary; 7, ovigerms round which the Graafian follicle and tunica granulosa are now formed, and which have passed somewhat deeper into the ovary and are surrounded by the fibrous stroma; 8, more advanced Graafian follicle with the ovum imbedded in the layer of cells constituting the proligerous disk; 9, the most advanced follicle containing the ovum, etc.; 9′, a follicle from which the ovum has accidentally escaped; 10, corpus luteum.

The prostate gland surrounds the neck of the bladder and commencement of the urethra (Fig. 240). It secretes a milky fluid, which is conveyed by the prostatic ducts to the floor of the urethra. Cowper's glands are two small glands which are situated between the layers of the deep perineal fascia at the anterior part of the membranous urethra. They secrete a viscid fluid, which is conveyed by ducts to the floor of the urethra.

The testes or testicles are two small flattened ovoidal glands, which are situated in a musculo-membranous pouch, called the scrotum, and suspended by the spermatic cords. Each testicle consists of two parts: the gland proper and the epididymis. The gland (Fig. 241) is composed of an outer fibrous coat, the *tunica albuginea*, this being covered by a serous membrane, the *tunica vaginalis*. The substance of the gland consists of a number of pyramidal lobular divisions, which are situated with their bases towards the surface. Each lobule is composed of several convoluted *tubuli seminiferi*, and are separated from adjoining lobules by prolongation of fibrous tissue from the tunica albuginea. The tubules are composed of a homogeneous basement membrane, which is lined by granular nucleated epithelium. In the apices of the lobules they have a straight course and form the *vasa recta*. They then enter the fibrous tissue of the mediastinum (Fig. 241), and form a plexus of tubes called the *rete testis*, which end in the upper part of the mediastinum as the *vasa efferentia*, and these becoming very much convoluted form the *globus major* or head of the epididymis. The tubules of the globus major unite to

FIG. 240.

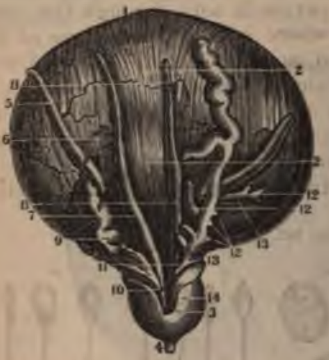


FIG. 241.

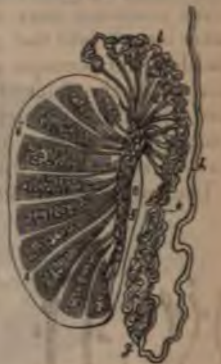


FIG. 240.—The Base of the Male Bladder, with the Vesiculæ Seminales and Prostate Gland.—After HALLER.

1, the urinary bladder; 2, the longitudinal layer of muscular fibres; 3, the prostate gland; 4, membranous portion of the urethra; 5, the ureters; 6, bloodvessels; 7, *left*; 8, right vas deferens; 9, left seminal vesicle in its natural position; 10, ductus ejaculatorius of the left side traversing the prostate gland; 11, right seminal vesicle injected and unravelled; 12, 13, blind pouches of vesiculæ; 14, right ductus ejaculatorius traversing the prostate.

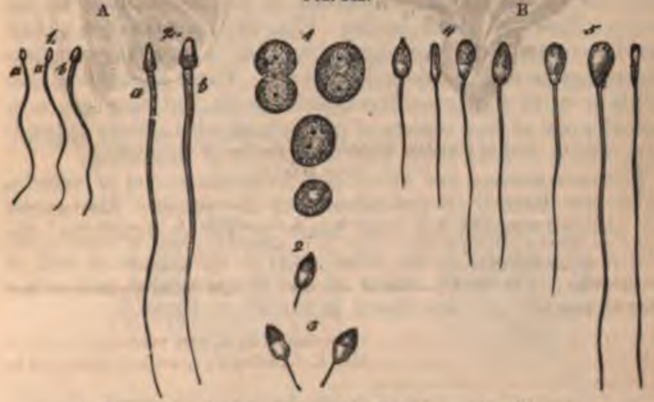
FIG. 241.—*a*, lobules; *b*, vasa recta; *c*, mediastinum; *d*, vasa efferentia; *e*, body of epididymis; *f*, rete testes; *g*, globus minor; *h*, vas deferens; *i*, tunica albuginea and its interlobular reflections; *l*, globus major.

form a single tube, which is very much convoluted, and constitutes the body and *globus minor* of the epididymis, and is then continued from the globus minor to the base of the bladder as the excretory duct or *vas deferens*.

The *vas deferens* commencing at the globus minor ascends in the posterior part of the spermatic cord through the spermatic canal into the pelvis, where it runs to the base of the bladder and becomes enlarged, sacculated, and narrowed, and joins with the duct of the vesicula seminalis to form a common ejaculatory duct. The walls of the vas deferens are composed of fibrous and muscular tissue, which is lined by a mucous membrane with columnar epithelium.

The *vesiculæ seminales* are two elongated sacculated bodies, placed external to the vasa deferentia. The structure of the seminal vesicles is similar to that of the vasa deferentia, consisting of a fibro-muscular wall lined with a mucous membrane, which is covered by granular, nucleated, polygonal epithelium cells. These organs serve as receptacles for the seminal fluid secreted by the testes, and at the same time

Fig. 242.



A, Spermatozoa from the Human Vas Deferens.—After Kölliker.

1, magnified 350 diameters; 2, magnified 800 diameters; *a*, from the side; *b*, from above.

B, Spermatic Cells and Spermatozoa of the Bull undergoing development.—After Kölliker. 450-1.

1, spermatic cells, with one or two nuclei, one of them clear; 2, 3, free nuclei, with spermatic filaments forming; 4, the filaments elongated and the body widened; 5, filaments nearly fully developed.

produce a secretion of their own which is added to it. The ejaculatory ducts, which are formed by the union of the ducts of the vasa deferentia and vesiculæ seminales, open into the prostatic portion of the urethra. Their coats are thinner, but have essentially the same structure as the vasa deferentia, with which they are continuous.

The *seminal fluid* is a complex secretion, being composed of the anatomical elements or *spermatozoa*, which are formed in the testes, and of the secretions of the vasa deferentia, vesiculæ seminales, the prostate and Cowper's glands, and the mucous glands of the urethra. The seminal fluid is of a thick, whitish, striated appearance, and if examined microscopically is seen to contain innumerable bodies which are in active motion. These are the spermatozoids, and are the essential male elements concerned in the fecundation of the ovule. Each of these bodies (Fig. 242) consists of a flattened, ovoidal head, having at its base a tapering caudate appendage in active vibratile motion. These anatomical elements were at first considered animalcula, but they are now looked upon as free masses of protoplasm with ciliary appendages, which endows them with the power of migration.

The spermatozoa are developed from the nuclei of vesicles which are formed in the tubules of the testes. The nuclei are metamorphosed into the heads of the spermatozoa, the ciliary appendages being afterwards developed as a sort of outgrowth. Different stages of the development and other interesting features are shown in the above figure.]

CHAPTER I.

MENSTRUATION.

From puberty, which occurs at from 13 to 17 years of age, to the climacteric, which arrives at from 45 to 50 years of age, the human female is subject to a monthly discharge of ova from the ovaries, accompanied by special changes, not only in those organs, but also in the Fallopian tubes and uterus, as well as by general changes in the body at large, the whole constituting "menstruation." The essential event in menstruation is the escape of an ovule from its Graafian follicle (Fig. 243). The whole ovary at this time becomes congested, and the ripe follicle bulging from the surface of the ovary is grasped by the trumpet-shaped fringed opening of the Fallopian tube, itself turgid and congested; by what mechanism this is effected is not exactly known. The most projecting portion of the wall of the follicle, which has previously become excessively thin, is now ruptured, and the ovule, which, having left its earlier position, is lying close under the projecting surface of the follicle, escapes, together with the cells of the *discus proligerus* (Fig. 244), into the Fallopian tube. Thence it travels downwards, very slowly, by the action probably of the cilia lining the tube, though possibly its progress

[Fig. 243.

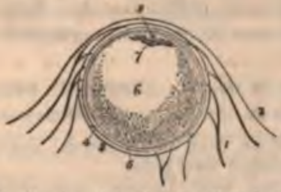


Fig. 244.

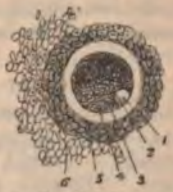


Fig. 243.—Section of the Graafian Follicle of a Mammal (after Von Baer). 1, stroma of the ovary with bloodvessels; 2, peritoneum; 3 and 4, layers of the external coat of the Graafian follicle; 5, membrana granulosa; 6, fluid of the Graafian follicle; 7, granular zone, or discus proligerus, containing the ovule (8).

Fig. 244.—Ovule of the Sow (after Barry). 1, germinal spot; 2, germinal vesicle; 3, yolk; 4, zona pellucida; 5, discus proligerus; 6, adherent granules or cells.]

may occasionally be assisted by the peristaltic contractions of the muscular walls. The stay of the ovule in the Fallopian tube may extend to several days. There is an effusion of blood into the ruptured follicle, which is subsequently followed by histological changes in the coats of the follicle resulting in a *corpus luteum*[1] (Fig. 245). The discharge of the ovule is accompanied not only by a congestion or erection of the ovary and Fallopian tube, but also by marked changes in the uterus, especially in the uterine mucous membrane. While the whole organ becomes congested and enlarged, the mucous membrane, and especially the uterine glands, are distinctly hypertrophied. The swollen internal surface is thrown into folds which almost obliterate the cavity; and a hæmorrhagic discharge, often considerable in extent, constituting the menstrual or catamenial flow, takes place from the greater part of its surface. The blood as it passes through the vagina becomes somewhat altered by the acid secretions of that passage, and when scanty coagulates but slightly; when the flow, however, is considerable, distinct clots may make their appearance. It is not certain that menstruation, in the human subject at all events, is always accompanied by a discharge of an ovule; indeed cases have

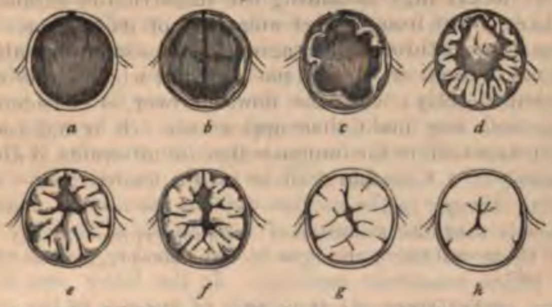
---

[[1] The following tabular statement by Dalton expresses the principal differences between the corpus luteum of the non-pregnant and pregnant female :

	CORPUS LUTEUM OF MENSTRUATION.	CORPUS LUTEUM OF PREGNANCY.
At the end of three weeks,	Three-quarters of an inch in diameter; central clot reddish; convoluted wall pale.	
One month,	Smaller, convoluted wall bright yellow; clot still reddish.	Larger; convoluted with bright yellow; clot still reddish.
Two months,	Reduced to the condition of an insignificant cicatrix.	Seven-eighths of an inch in diameter; convoluted wall bright yellow; clot perfectly decolorized.
Six months,	Absent.	Still as large as at end of second month; clot fibrinous; convoluted wall paler.
Nine Months,	Absent.	One-half an inch in diameter; central clot converted into a radiating cicatrix; the external wall tolerably thick and convoluted, but without any bright-yellow color.]

been recorded in which menstruation continued after what appeared to be complete removal of both ovaries. And it seems probable, also, that under certain circumstances, *ex. gr.*, coitus, a discharge of an ovule may take place at other times than at the menstrual period. Since, however, the time during which both the ovule and the spermatozoon may remain in the female passages alive and functionally capable is considerable, probably extending to some days, coitus effected either some time after or some time before the menstrual escape of an ovule might lead to impregnation and subsequent development of an embryo; hence the fact that impregnation may follow upon coitus at some time after or before menstruation, is no very cogent argument in favor of the view that such a coitus has caused an independent escape of an ovule. The escape of the ovule is said to precede, rather than coincide with or follow, the catamenial flow.[1] If no spermatozoa come in contact with the ovule it dies, the uterine membrane returns to its normal condition, and no trace of the discharge of an ovule is left, except the corpus luteum in the ovary.

[Fig. 245.



Successive stages of the formation of the Corpus Luteum in the Graafian Follicle of the Sow, as seen in vertical section; at *a* is shown the state of the follicle immediately after the expulsion of the ovule, its cavity being filled with blood, and no ostensible increase of its epithelial lining having yet taken place; at *b*, a thickening of this lining has become apparent; at *c* it begins to present folds, which are deepened at *d*, and the clot of blood is absorbed *pari passu*, and at the same time decolorized; a continuance of the same process, as shown at *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, forms the corpus luteum, with its delicate cicatrix.]

According to many authors the uterine mucous membrane is actually shed during menstruation, and subsequently entirely regenerated. According to their view the hæmorrhagic discharge is due to a positive "solution of continuity." In animals no discharge of blood, or a very scanty one, takes place at "heat" or "rut;" hence this point cannot be settled by comparative studies; and in the human subject the interval which must necessarily elapse between death and examination, is sufficiently long to render investigation very difficult. Williams[1] has brought forward strong evidence in favor of an actual loss of substance taking place. According to him, menstruation is accompanied by a rapid growth and subsequent rapid degeneration of the mucous membrane, for a depth reaching down to that layer of muscular fibres which passes among the deeper parts of the uterine glands. The growth and degeneration begin at an abrupt line near the cervix, and spread towards the fundus. The decay lays bare small bloodvessels, from which the hæmorrhage takes place.

---

[1] Williams, Proc. Roy. Soc., xxiii, 439.

It is obvious that in these phenomena of menstruation we have to deal with complicated reflex actions affecting not only the vascular supply but, apparently in a direct manner, the nutritive changes of the organs concerned. Our studies on the nervous action of secretion render it easy for us to conceive in a general way how the several events are brought about. It is no more difficult to suppose that the stimulus of the enlargement of a Graafian follicle causes nutritive as well as vascular changes in the uterine mucous membrane, than it is to suppose that the stimulus of food in the alimentary canal causes those nutritive changes in the salivary glands or pancreas which constitute secretion. In the latter case we can to some extent trace out the chain of events; in the former case we hardly know more than that the maintenance of the lumbar cord is sufficient, as far as the central nervous system is concerned, for the carrying on of the work. In the case of a dog observed by Goltz,[2] "heat" or menstruation took place as usual, though the spinal cord had been completely divided in the dorsal region while the animal was as yet a mere puppy.

The operation was performed in December, 1873. In the following May the animal was in excellent health, and there was not the slightest indication that any functional connection between the dorsal and lumbar portions of the spinal cord had been re-established. At the end of that month "heat" came on, attended by all the ordinary phenomena psychical as well as physical. Impregnation was effected and the animal became gravid. The pregnancy, like the heat, was marked by all the usual signs; the mammary glands enlarged, and the usual mental accompaniments of the condition were present. Finally, one living and two dead puppies were born, the first without and the latter two with assistance; the mother, however, sank soon afterwards from puerperal peritonitis. The post-mortem examination showed that there had been no regeneration of the divided spinal cord; the two portions were separated by more than a centimeter.

---

[1] Proc. Roy. Soc., xxii, 297. See also his Struc. Muc. Memb. of Uterus, 1875.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, ix (1874), p. 552.

In this case the connection between the ovary on the one hand and the mammary gland, brain, etc., on the other, must, if a nervous one, have been furnished by the abdominal sympathetic. We may, however, suppose that the nexus was a chemical one; that the condition of the ovary and uterus effected a change in the blood, which in turn excited the mammary gland to increased action and produced special changes in the brain.

CHAPTER II.

IMPREGNATION.

In coitus the discharge of the semen containing the spermatozoa is most probably effected by means of the peristaltic contractions of the vesiculæ seminales and vasa deferentia, assisted by rhythmical contractions of the bulbo-cavernosus muscle, the whole being a reflex act, the centre of which appears to be in the lumbar spinal cord. Goltz[1] has shown that in the dog, emission of semen can be brought about by stimulation of the glans penis after complete division of the spinal cord in the dorsal region. The emission of semen is preceded by an erection of the penis. This we have already seen, p. 266, is in part at least due to an increased vascular supply brought about by means of the nervi erigentes. It is probable, however, that the condition is further secured by a compression of the efferent veins of the corpora cavernosa by means of smooth muscular fibres present in those bodies. The semen being received into the female organs, which are at the time in a state of turgescence resembling the erection of the penis, but less marked, the spermatozoa find their way into the Fallopian tubes, and here (probably in its upper part) come in contact with the ovule.[2] In the case of some animals impregnation may take place at the ovary itself. The passage of the spermatozoa is most probably effected mainly by their own vibratile activity; but in some animals a retrograde peristaltic movement travelling from the uterus along the Fallopian tubes has been observed. This might assist in bringing the semen to the ovule, but inasmuch as these movements are probably parts of the act of coitus and impregnation may be deferred till some time after that event, no great stress can be laid upon them.

The ascent of the spermatozoa is certainly puzzling if the cilia of the Fallopian tubes, which act from above downwards, continue their activity after the escape of the ovule. The spermatozoa directly they come in contact with the ovule become motionless: this suggests the final cause of their activity is to enable them to reach the ovule.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, viii (1874), p. 460.

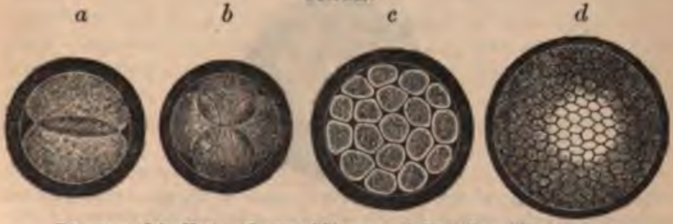
[[2] The unimpregnated egg is called the *ovule* in contradistinction to the *ovum* or impregnated egg.]

As the result of the action of the spermatozoa on the ovule, the latter instead of dying as when impregnation fails, awakes to great nutritive activity accompanied by remarkable morphological changes; it enlarges and develops into an embryo.

[Preceding the time of the occurrence of the entrance of the spermatozoon into the egg, certain anatomical changes have been observed to occur, and in order to thoroughly understand these, as well as the changes which follow in the ovum, it will first be necessary to review the anatomy of the egg.

The ovule is a minute cell, the wall being formed by a structureless, transparent membrane, called the *zona pellucida*, or vitelline membrane. Within this is the yolk, or vitellus, which consists of a granular semi-fluid mass, having suspended in it a *nucleus* or *germinal vesicle*, containing a *nucleolus* or *germinal spot*. The germinal vesicle consists of a very delicate transparent homogeneous membrane, which incloses a fluid with granules, and suspended in it, an eccentric nucleolus of a granular and fibrillated structure.

FIG. 246.



Diagrams of the Various Stages of Cleavage of the Yolk.—After DALTON.

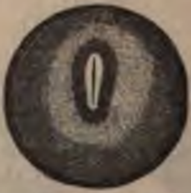
Previous to the occurrence of the impregnation of the ovule a very interesting series of changes have been observed to take place. According to Balfour,[1] the first interesting point to be noticed is the migration of the germinal vesicle towards the cell wall. The vesicular wall then becomes wavy and gradually disappears, while at the same time the nucleolus or germinal spot has undergone metamorphosis, so that what remains of these structures is a spindle-shaped mass. One extremity of this mass gradually projects through the cell wall and is thrown off as a *polar vesicle*. From the other remaining portion a second polar vesicle is formed, the part of the mass then remaining in the ovule being permanent, and is called the *female pronucleus.* The next change observed is the appearance of a zone, of radial striæ around the pronucleus and its migration to the centre of the egg. The spermatozoon then penetrates the wall of the ovule, probably at the point of the formation of the polar vesicles. The tail of the spermatozoon becomes absorbed, and the head is metamorphosed into the *male pronucleus.* From the male pronucleus a number of radiating striæ are given off in all directions, and it then migrates towards the female pronucleus, and afterwards fuses with it, forming a single or *cleavage nucleus.*

---

[1] See Quarterly Journal of Microscopy, October, 1878.

Cleavage or segmentation of the vitellus then begins (Fig. 246), by which process the nucleus thus formed divides into two parts, each taking with it half of the vitelline mass. These two divide into four, and these four into eight, and so on indefinitely until an agglomerate mass of nucleated cells results, each of which contains a part of the cleavage nucleus. This mass of cells is called the mulberry mass, and the cells constituting it arrange themselves about the interior of the *zona pellucida* and form the *blastodermic vesicle* or *membrane.* This membrane then splits up into two layers, the external and internal; a third or middle layer being afterwards formed between them.

FIG. 247.



Impregnated Egg, with Commencement of Formation of Embryo; showing the area germinativa or embryonic spot, the area pellucida, and the primitive groove or trace.—After DALTON.

Immediately after the formation of the two layers of blastoderm, an opaque rounded collection of small cells occurs, called the *area germinativa* or embryonic spot. (Fig. 247.) This spot then becomes elongated, and in its longitudinal axis the first trace of the embryo appears as a faint line, termed the *primitive trace*, this being in the midst of a clear elongated mass of cells, the *area pellucida*, which is itself surrounded by a more opaque zone.

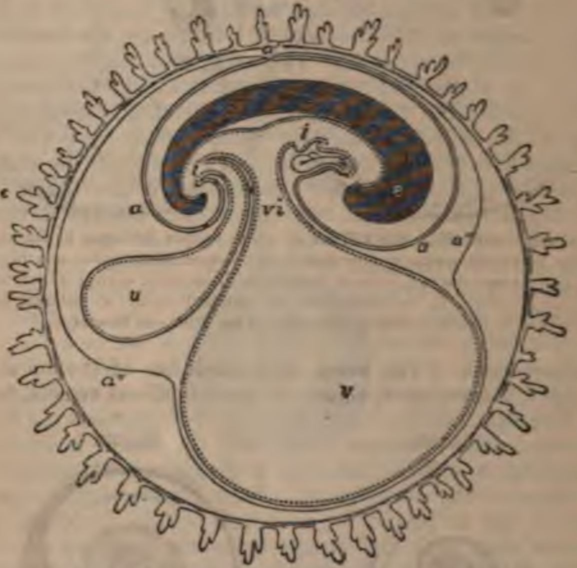
In front of the primitive trace two folds are formed from which a groove is prolonged backwards in a line with the primitive trace. These folds gradually extend along the entire length of the groove, and form the *laminæ dorsales,* which by growing, project more and more above the groove, and gradually approaching each other, coalesce and inclose the neural canal, which will afterwards contain the cerebro-spinal axis. At about the same period corresponding to the development of the dorsal laminæ similar laminæ are given off from the under surface of the blastoderm. These are the *laminæ ventrales,* which, by gradually enlarging and finally coalescing, inclose the abdominal cavity. Beneath the floor of the groove above described a delicate whitish collection of cells appears. This is the *chorda dorsalis* or notochord, around which are afterwards developed the bodies and processes of the vertebra.

During this period other changes have also taken place. The cephalic and caudal extremities have become flexed and form the cephalic and caudal *flexures;* and the embryo also being curved upon itself laterally, the vitelline mass appears separated from it by a constriction. This constriction gradually increasing, finally separates the vitelline mass as a vesicular body, it being connected with the body of the embryo by the vitelline duct. (Fig. 248.) The vesicular body thus formed is called the *umbilical vesicle.* This at first communicates with the intestinal cavity, but as development proceeds the duct of communication becomes closed and the vesicle is merely attached by a pedicle, and finally disappears altogether. At the time of the development of the bloodvessels, vessels appear on the surface of the umbilical vesicle, constituting the *vascular area,* the chief vessels being the omphalo-mesenteric arteries and veins. The vessels of the vascular area absorb the nutritive material contained within the vesicle and convey it to the embryo for its sustenance.

Shortly after the occurrence of the commencement of the formation of the umbilical vesicle, double folds, formed of the external layer of the blastoderm, are given off from the cephalic and caudal extremities and laterally, which curve around over the dorsal surface of the embryo, where they meet and coalesce, and their point of junction becoming absorbed, form the amniotic cavity. (Figs. 248, 249, 250, and 252.) The outer layer of the fold, or false amnion, gradually expands and covers the whole of the internal surface of the vitelline membrane, which it ultimately replaces; the inner layer, or true amnion, is continuous with the skin of the embryo at the umbilicus, and closely envelops it. The amniotic cavity or sac thus formed becomes filled with the liquor amnii, which gradually increases in quantity as pregnancy advances, up to about the fifth or sixth month, when the quantity gradually decreases up to the time of labor.

At about the time of the commencement of the development of the amnion a new organ, the *allantois*, appears as a pyriform mass of cells at a point immediately posterior to the vitelline duct and projecting through the same opening. (Fig. 251.) This mass of cells undergoes rapid growth, spreading itself between the true and false amniotic folds, finally completely inclosing the embryo and amnion (Fig. 252), becoming at the same time adjoined to the false amnion, when it is developed

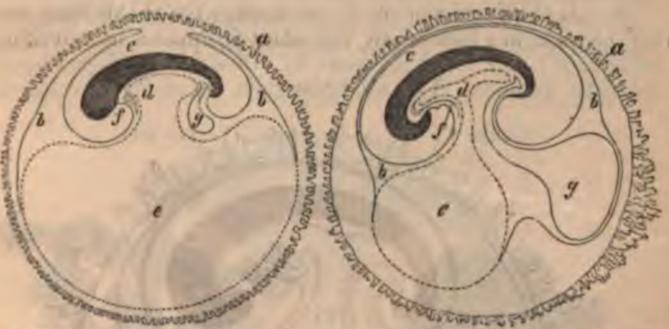
FIG. 248.



Diagrammatic Section showing the Relation in a Mammal and in Man between the Primitive Alimentary Canal and the Membranes of the Ovum. The stage represented in this diagram corresponds to that of the fifteenth or seventeenth day in the human embryo, previous to the expansion of the allantoïs: *c*, the villous chorion; *a*, the amnion; *a′*, the place of convergence of the amnion and reflection of the false amnion, *a″ a″*, or outer or corneus layer; *e*, the head and trunk of the embryo, comprising the primitive vertebræ and cerebro-spinal axis; *i*, *i*, the simple alimentary canal in its upper and lower portions; *v*, the yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle; *vi*, the vitelline duct; *u*, the allantoïs connected by a pedicle with the anal portion of the alimentary canal.

into the *true chorion*. During the process of the development of the allantois, it has become very vascular; at first there are two arteries and two veins, afterwards one of the veins disappears. These vessels constitute the umbilical vessels, forming part of the umbilical cord, which connects the allantois with the embryo. During the development of the allantois it pre-

FIG. 249. FIG. 250.



a, Chorion with villi. The villi are shown to be best developed in the part of the chorion to which the allantois is extending; this portion ultimately becomes the placenta; *b*, space between the two layers of the amnion; *c*, amniotic cavity; *d*, situation of the intestine, showing its connection with the umbilical vesicle; *e*, umbilical vesicle; *f*, situation of heart and vessels; *g*, allantois.—After TODD and BOWMAN.

FIG. 251.

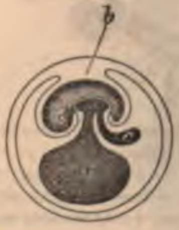


FIG. 252.

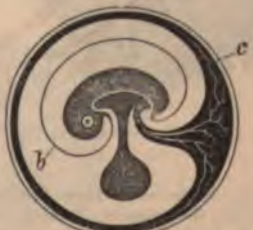


FIG. 251.—Diagram of Fecundated Egg. *a*, umbilical vesicle; *b*, amniotic cavity; *c*, allantois.—After DALTON.

FIG. 252.—Fecundated Egg with Allantois nearly complete. *a*, inner layer of amniotic fold; *b*, outer layer of ditto; *c*, point where the amniotic folds come in contact. The allantois is seen penetrating between the outer and inner layers of the amniotic folds. This figure, which represents only the amniotic folds and the parts within them, should be compared with Figs. 249 and 250, in which will be found the structures external to these folds.

sents three distinct anatomical portions: a portion which becomes constricted off, as it were, from the rest and forms the urinary bladder; the outer portion forms the chorion, the intermediate portion forming the umbilical cord.

During the development of the embryo up to this time, the first chorion was formed by villosities formed on the vitelline membrane; and following that by villosities developed upon the false amnion. The allantois then becoming developed, completely covers the internal surface of the false amnion, which then gradually disappears as a distinct structure. The *true chorion* is then formed by the allantois, which becomes covered by a growth of a multitude of vascular shaggy tufts or *villi* (Fig. 253). These villi at first are distributed over the entire surface of the organ, but they soon commence dis-

FIG. 253.

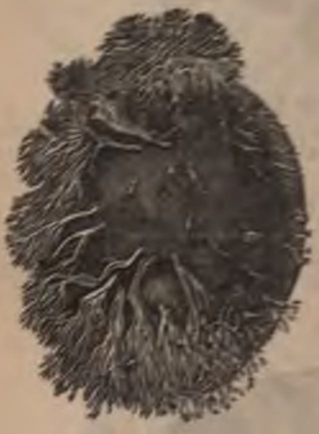


FIG. 254.

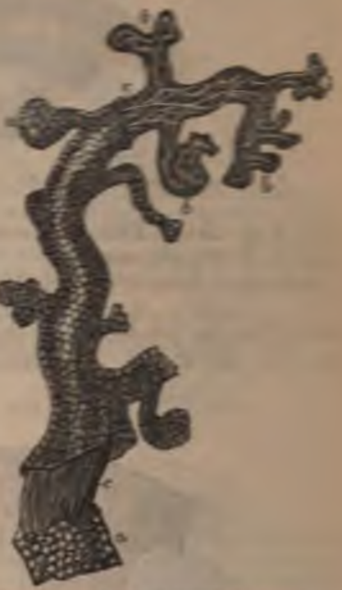
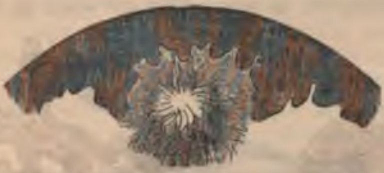


FIG. 253.—Entire Human Ovum of eighth week, sixteen lines in length (not reckoning the tufts); the surface of the chorion partly smooth and partly rendered shaggy by the growth of tufts.

FIG. 254.—Portion of one of the Fœtal Villi, about to form part of the Placenta, highly magnified; *a*, *a*, its cellular covering; *b*, *b*, *b*, its looped vessels; *c*, *c*, its basis of connective tissue.

appearing, except at a small area corresponding to the attachment of the pedicle which connects the allantois with the embryo. At this point they become greatly increased in number and also in size and vascularity. These villi are composed of a fibro-granular matrix, in which are numerous capillary loops, and are covered with a layer of epithelial cells (Fig. 254). This portion of the chorion forms the fœtal portion of the placenta.]

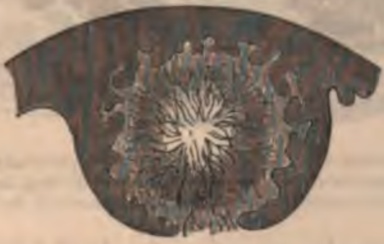
FIG. 255.



First stage of the formation of the Decidua Reflexa around the Ovum.

No sooner, however, have these changes begun in the ovum than correlative changes, brought about probably by reflex action, but at present most obscure in their causation, take place in the uterus. The mucous membrane of this organ, whether the coitus resulting in impregnation be coincident with a menstrual period or not, becomes congested, and a rapid growth takes place, characterized by a rapid proliferation of the epithelial and subepithelial tissues. Unlike the case of menstruation, however, this new growth does not give way to immediate decay and hæmorrhage, but remains, and

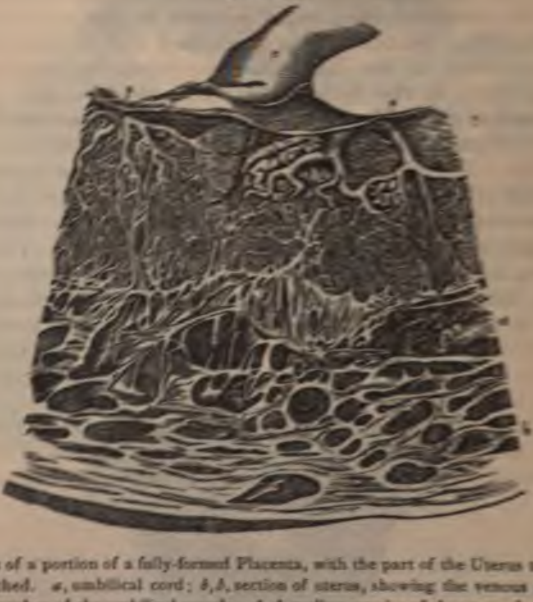
[FIG. 256.



More advanced stage of Decidua Reflexa.]

may be distinguished as a new temporary lining to the uterus, the so-called decidua. Into this decidua the ovum, on its descent from the Fallopian tube, in which it has undergone developmental changes, extending most probably as far at least as the formation of the blastoderm, if not farther, is received; and in this it becomes imbedded, the new growth closing in over it. (Figs. 255, 256.) Meanwhile the rest of the uterine structures, especially the muscular tissue, become also much enlarged; as pregnancy advances a large number

[Fig. 257.



Section of a portion of a fully-formed Placenta, with the part of the Uterus to which it is attached. *a*, umbilical cord; *b*, *b*, section of uterus, showing the venous sinuses; *c*, *c*, *c*, branches of the umbilical vessels; *d*, *d*, curling arteries of the uterus.]

of new muscular fibres are formed. As the ovum continues to increase in size, it bulges into the cavity of the uterus, carrying with it the portion of the decidua which has closed over it. Henceforward, accordingly, a distinction is made in the now well-developed decidua between the *decidua reflexa*, or that part of the membrane which covers the projecting ovum, and the *decidua vera*, or the rest of the membrane lining the cavity of the uterus, the two being continuous round the base of the projecting ovum. That part of the decidua which intervenes between the ovum and the nearest uterine wall is frequently spoken of as the *decidua serotina*. As the ovum develops into the fœtus with its membranes, the decidua reflexa becomes pushed against the decidua vera; about the end of the third month, in the human subject, the two come into complete contact all over, and ultimately the distinction between them is lost. In the region of the decidua serotina the allantoic vessels of the fœtus develop a placenta.

[In the earliest stages of the development of the placenta, the delicate villous processes of the chorion insinuate themselves into the hypertrophied follicles of the decidua serotina. The villi then undergo a rapid increase in size and vascularity, becoming branched into secondary and tertiary ramifications; while at the same time corresponding changes are taking place in the follicles, by which they become greatly increased in size and vascularity, and at the same time forming diverticula in which are imbedded the ramifications of the villi. The villi and follicles thus grow simultaneously, and finally become blended with each other and are no longer separate structures. The follicular bloodvessels first form capillary plexuses; these vessels, however, become enlarged, forming frequent anastomoses, and finally coalescing to form *venous sinuses* (Fig. 257), in which are bathed the fœtal villi. There is no continuity established between the maternal and fœtal blood; the interchange of nutritive material necessary for the growth and development of the fœtus takes place through the delicate walls of the villi.]

For further account of the various changes by which these events are brought about, as well as of the history of the embryo itself, we must refer the reader to anatomical treatises.

CHAPTER III.

THE NUTRITION OF THE EMBRYO.

DURING the development of the chick within the hen's egg the nutritive material needed for the growth first of the blastoderm, and subsequently of the embryo, is supplied by the yolk, while the oxygen of the air passing freely through the porous shell, gains access to all the tissues both of the embryo and yolk, either directly or by the intervention of the allantoic vessels. The mammalian embryo, during the period which precedes the extension of the allantoic vessels into the cavities of the uterine walls to form the placenta, must be nourished by direct diffusion, first from the contents of the Fallopian tube, and subsequently from the decidua; and its supply of oxygen must come from the same sources. All analogy would lead us to suppose that, from the very first, oxidation is going on in the blastodermic and embryonic structures; but the amount of oxygen actually drawn from without is probably exceedingly small in the early stages, seeing that nearly the whole energy of the metabolism going on is directed to the building up of structures, the expenditure of energy in the form of either heat or external work being extremely small. The marked increase of bulk which takes place during the conversion of the mulberry mass into the blastodermic vesicle, shows that at this epoch a relatively speaking large quantity of water at least, and probably of nutritive matter, must pass from without into the ovum; and subsequently though the blastoderm and embryo may for some time draw the material for their continued construction at first hand from the yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle, both this and they continue probably until the allantois is formed to receive fresh material from the mother by direct diffusion.

As the thin-walled allantoic vessels come into closer and fuller connection with the maternal uterine sinuses, until at last in the fully formed placenta the former are freely bathed in the blood streaming through the latter, the nutrition of the embryo becomes more and more confined to this special channel. The blood of the fœtus flowing along the umbilical arteries effects exchanges with the venous blood of the mother, and leaves the placenta by the umbilical vein richer in oxygen and nutritive material and poorer in carbonic acid and excretory products than when it issued from the fœtus.

As far as the gain of oxygen and the loss of carbonic acid are concerned these are the results of simple diffusion. Venous blood, as we have already seen, always contains a quantity of oxyhæmoglobin, and the quantity of this substance present in the blood of the uterine veins is sufficient to supply all the oxygen that the embryo needs; the blood of the fœtus, containing less oxygen than even the venous blood of the mother, will take up a certain though small quantity. The fœtal blood travelling in the umbilical artery must, in proportion to the extent of the nutritive changes going on in the embryo, possess a higher carbonic tension than that in the umbilical vein or uterine sinus; and by diffusion gets rid of this surplus during its stay in the placenta. The blood in the umbilical arteries and veins is, therefore, relatively speaking, venous and arterial respectively, though the small excess of oxyhæmoglobin in the blood of the umbilical vein[1] is insufficient to give it a distinctly arterial color, or to distinguish it as sharply from the more venous blood of the umbilical artery, as is ordinary arterial from ordinary venous blood. Thus the fœtus breathes by means of the maternal blood, in the same way that a fish breathes by means of the water in which it dwells.

The blood of the fœtus, according to Zuntz,[2] is very poor in hæmoglobin corresponding to its low oxygen consumption. When the mother is asphyxiated, the fœtus is asphyxiated too, the oxygen of the latter passing back again in the blood of the former; and the asphyxia thus produced in the fœtus is much more rapid than that which results when the oxygen is used up by the tissues of the fœtus alone, as when the umbilicus is ligatured and the fœtus not allowed to breathe.

If oxygen and carbonic acid thus pass by diffusion to and from the mother and the fœtus, one might fairly expect that diffusible salts, proteids, and carbohydrates would be conveyed to the latter, and diffusible excretions carried away to the former, in the same way; and if fats can pass directly into the portal blood during ordinary digestion, there can be no reason for doubting that this class of food-stuffs also would find its way to the fœtus through the placental structures. We do know from experiment that diffusible substances will pass both from the mother to the fœtus, and from the fœtus to the mother; but we have no definite knowledge as to the exact form and manner in which, during normal intra-uterine life, nutritive materials are conveyed to or excretions conveyed from the growing young. The placenta is remarkable for the great development of cellular structures, apparently of an epithelial nature, on the borderland between the maternal and fœtal elements; and it has been suggested that these form a temporary digestive and secretory (excretory) organ. But we have no exact knowledge of what actually does take place in these structures. From the cotyledons of ruminants may be obtained a white creamy-looking fluid, which from many features of its chemical composition might be almost spoken of as a "uterine milk."

---

[1] Zweifel, Arch. für Gynäkologie, ix, Hft. 2.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 605.

Speaking broadly, the fœtus lives on the blood of its mother, very much in the same way as all the tissues of any animal live on the blood of the body of which they are the parts.

For a long time all the embryonic tissues are "protoplasmic" in character; that is, the gradually differentiating elements of the several tissues remain still imbedded, so to speak, in undifferentiated protoplasm; and during this period there must be a general similarity in the metabolism going on in various parts of the body. As differentiation becomes more and more marked, it obviously would be an economical advantage for partially elaborated material to be stored up in various fœtal tissues, so as to be ready for immediate use when a demand arose for it, rather than for a special call to be made at each occasion upon the mother for comparatively raw material needing subsequent preparatory changes. Accordingly, we find the tissues of the fœtus at a very early period loaded with glycogen. The muscles are especially rich in this substance, but it occurs in other tissues as well. The abundance of it in the former may be explained partly by the fact that they form a very large proportion of the total mass of the fœtal body, and partly by the fact that, while during the presence of the glycogen they contain much undifferentiated protoplasm, they are exactly the organs which will ultimately undergo a large amount of differentiation, and therefore need a large amount of material for the metabolism which the differentiation entails. It is not until the later stages of intra-uterine life, at about the fifth month, when it is largely disappearing from the muscles, that the glycogen begins to be deposited in the liver. By this time histological differentiation has advanced largely, and the use of the glycogen to the economy has become that to which it is put in the ordinary life of the animal; hence we find it deposited in the usual place. Besides being present in the fœtal, glycogen is found also in the placental structures; but here probably it is of use, not for the fœtus, but for the nutrition and growth of the placental structures themselves. We do not know how much carbohydrate material finds its way into the umbilical vein; and we cannot therefore state what is the source of the fœtal glycogen; but it is at least possible, not to say probable, that it arises, as we have reason (p. 537) to think it may, from a splitting up of proteid material.

Concerning the rise and development of the functional activities of the embryo, our knowledge is almost a blank. We know scarcely anything about the various steps by which the primary fundamental qualities of the protoplasm of the ovum are differentiated into the complex phenomena which we have attempted in this book to expound. We can hardly state more than that while muscular contractility becomes early developed, and the heart probably, as in the chick, beats even before the blood-corpuscles are formed, movements of the fœtus do not, in the human subject, become pronounced until after the fifth month; from that time forward they increase and subsequently become very marked. They are often spoken of as reflex in character; but only a preconceived bias would prevent them from being regarded as largely automatic. The digestive functions are naturally, in the absence of all food from the alimentary canal, in abeyance. Though pepsin may be found in the gastric membrane at about the fourth month, it is doubtful whether a truly peptic gastric juice is secreted during intra-uterine life; trypsin appears in the pancreas somewhat later, but an amylolytic ferment cannot be obtained from that organ till after birth.[1] The excretory functions of the liver are developed early, and about the third month bile-pigment and bile-salts find their way into the intestine. The quantity of bile secreted during intra-uterine life accumulates in the intestine and especially in the rectum, forming, together with the smaller secretion of the rest of the canal, and some desquamated epithelium, the so-called meconium. Bile-salts, both unaltered and variously changed, the usual bile-pigment, and cholesterin, are all present in the meconium. The distinct formation of bile is an indication that the products of fœtal metabolism are no longer wholly carried off by the maternal circulation; and to the excretory functions of the liver are now added those of the skin and kidney. The substances escaping by these organs find their way into the allantois or niotic fluids have been found to contain urea.

---

[1] Langendorff, Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys. (Phys. Abth.), 1879, p. 90. Cf. Moriggia, Moleschott's Untersuch., xi (1875), p. 455.

Zuntz,[1] however, argues that since sodium sul
jected into the veins of the mother (rabbits) is rea
fluid of the amnion, but not in any part of the b
(save a small quantity in the stomach probably der
otic fluid which had been swallowed), the fluid mu
from the maternal structures, and cannot, at all ev
as wholly a secretion from the fœtus. The sul
made its way into the amnion when the fœtus had
killed. The urea of the amniotic fluid may accor
least, have escaped by diffusion from the blood of
The date at which pepsin and other ferments ma
ance in the embryo appears to differ in different an

About the middle of intra-uterine life, whe
culation (Fig. 258) is in full development, th
along the umbilical vein is carried chiefly
venosus into the inferior vena cava and so
auricle. Thence it is directed by the valv
through the foramen ovale into the left auric
which into the left ventricle it is driven into t
of the umbilical blood, however, instead of pa
the inferior cava, enters by the portal vein i
circulation, from which it returns to the infe
hepatic veins. The inferior cava also contai
from the lower limbs and lower trunk. H
which passing from the right auricle into
through the foramen ovale is distributed by t
through the aortic arch, though chiefly bloo
from the placenta, is also blood which on i
placenta has passed through the liver an

teriosus (Botalli) into the aorta, below the arch, whence it flows partly to the lower trunk and limbs, but chiefly by the umbilical arteries to the placenta. A small quantity only of the contents of the right ventricle finds its way into the

[Fig. 258.

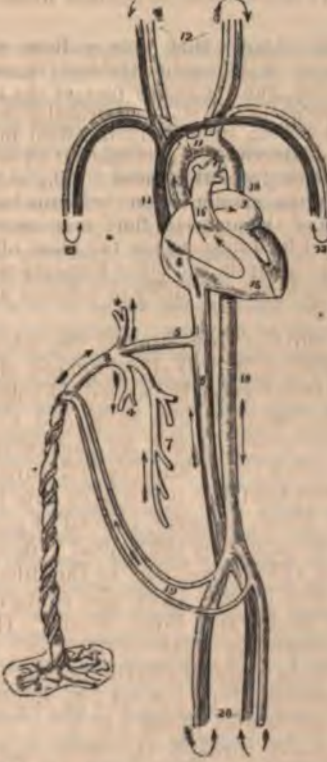


Diagram of the Fœtal Circulation. 1, the umbilical cord, consisting of the umbilical vein and two umbilical arteries, proceeding from the placenta (2); 3, the umbilical vein dividing into three branches, two (4, 4) to be distributed to the liver, and one (5), the ductus venosus, which enters the inferior vena cava (6); 7, the portal vein, returning the blood from the intestines, and uniting with the right hepatic branch; 8, the right auricle; the course of the blood is denoted by the arrow proceeding from 8 to 9, the left auricle; 10, the left ventricle; the blood following the arrow to the arch of the aorta (11), to be distributed through the branches given off by the arch to the head and upper extremities; the arrows 12 and 13 represent the return of the blood from the head and upper extremities through the jugular and subclavian veins to the superior vena cava (14), to

at the termination of these vessels mark the
the inferior cava.]

lungs. Now the blood which comes from t
the umbilical vein direct into the right auri
the fœtus is concerned, arterial blood; and
umbilical blood which traverses the liver pr
this epoch very little oxygen during its transi
gland, the liver being at this period a simple e
than an actively metabolic organ. Hence th
inferior vena cava, though mixed, is on the
blood; and it is this blood which is sent by t
through the arch of the aorta into the carotid
arteries. Thus the head of the fœtus is provi
comparatively rich in oxygen. The blood d
the head and upper limbs by the superior v
tinctly venous; and this passing from the rig
the ductus arteriosus is driven along the de
and together with some of the blood passin
ventricle round the aortic arch falls into the u
and so reaches the placenta. The fœtal circu
arranged, that while the most distinctly v
driven by the right ventricle back to the pla
genated, the most distinctly arterial (but still
driven by the left ventricle to the cerebral s
have more need of oxygen than the other
later stages of pregnancy the mixture of the
blood in the right auricle increases preparato
taking place at birth. But during the who
uterine life the amount of oxygen in the blo
the aortic arch to the medulla oblongata is

by ligature of the umbilical cord, or when in any other way blood of sufficiently arterial quality ceases to find its way by the left ventricle to the medulla oblongata, the supply of oxygen in the respiratory centre sinks, and when the fall has reached a certain point an impulse of inspiration is generated and the fœtus for the first time breathes. Through this first inspiratory movement the thorax, by an upward movement of the ribs, is permanently enlarged, and the lungs assume that condition of partial distension which we studied (p. 406) in treating of respiration.[1] When the first breath is taken, as under normal circumstances it is, with free access to the atmosphere, the lungs become filled with air, and the scanty supply of blood which at the moment was passing from the right ventricle along the pulmonary artery returns to the left auricle brighter and richer in oxygen than ever was the fœtal blood before. With the diminution of resistance in the pulmonary circulation caused by the expansion of the thorax, a larger supply of blood passes into the pulmonary artery instead of into the ductus arteriosus, and this derivation of the contents of the right ventricle increasing with the continued respiratory movements, the current through the latter canal at least ceases altogether, and its channel shortly after birth becomes obliterated. Corresponding to the greater flow into the pulmonary artery, a larger and larger quantity of blood returns from the pulmonary veins into the left auricle. At the same time the current through the ductus venosus from the umbilical vein having ceased, the flow from the inferior cava has diminished; and the blood of the right auricle finding little resistance in the direction of the ventricle, which now readily discharges its contents into the pulmonary artery (where as we have seen (p. 205) the mean pressure and the peripheral resistance are very low), but finding in the left auricle, which is continually being filled from the lungs, an obstacle to its passage through the foramen ovale, ceases to take that course, and the foramen speedily becomes closed. Thus the fœtal circulation, in consequence of the respiratory movements to which its interruption gives rise, changes its course into that characteristic of the adult.

---

[1] Bernstein, Pflüger's Archiv, xvii (1878), p. 617.

PARTURITION.

In spite of the increasing distension of its c
remains quiescent, as far as any marked musc
are concerned, until a certain time has bee
human subject the period of gestation general
to 280 days, *i. e.*, about 40 weeks, the general
expect parturition at about 280 days from th
tion. Seeing that, in many cases, it is uncer
ovum which develops into the embryo left
menstruation preceding or succeeding coitus,
urged, independent of menstruation, by reas
itself, an exact determination of the duration
impossible.

In the cow the period of gestation is about 280
about 350, sheep about 150 days, dog about 60
30 days.

The extrusion of the fœtus is brought
rhythmical contractions of the uterus itself,
pressure exerted by the contraction of the ab
similar to that described in defecation. Th
the uterus are the first to appear, and thei
bring about a dilation of the os uteri; it is
stages of labor, while the fœtus is passing int
the abdominal muscles are brought into play

The whole process of parturition may be b
as a reflex act, the nervous centre being pla

contraction of the uterus, which is so necessary for the prevention of the hæmorrhage after delivery, may frequently be brought about by pressure on the abdomen, by the introduction of foreign bodies into the vagina, and especially by the application of the child to the nipple. But we are not thereby justified in considering the rhythmical contractions of the uterus during parturition as simple reflex acts excited by the presence of the fœtus. We are utterly in the dark as to why the uterus, after remaining apparently perfectly quiescent (or with contractions so slight as to be with difficulty appreciated) for months, is suddenly thrown into action, and within it may be a few hours gets rid of the burden it has borne with such tolerance for so long a time; none of the various hypotheses which have been put forward can be considered as satisfactory. And until we know what starts the active phase, we shall remain in ignorance of the exact manner in which the activity is brought about. The peculiar rhythmic character of the contractions, each "pain" beginning feebly, rising to a maximum, then declining, and finally dying away altogether, to be succeeded after a pause by a similar pain just like itself, pain following pain, like the tardy long-drawn beats of a slowly beating heart, suggests that the cause of the rhythmic contraction is seated, like that of the rhythmic beat of the heart, in the organ itself. And this view is supported by the fact that contractions of the uterus, similar to those of parturition, have been observed in animals even after complete destruction of the spinal cord. Nevertheless general evidence supports the conclusion that, in a normal state of things, at all events, the contractions of the uterus, like those of the lymph-hearts, are largely dependent on the spinal cord.

The action of the abdominal muscles, on the other hand, is obviously a reflex act carried out by means of the spinal cord, the necessary stimulus being supplied by the pressure of the fœtus in the vagina, or by the contractions of the uterus. Hence the whole act of parturition may with reason be considered as a reflex one.

Whether it be wholly a reflex or partly an automatic one, the act can readily be inhibited by the action of the central nervous system. Thus emotions are a very frequent cause of the progress of parturition being suddenly stopped; as is well known, the entrance into the bedroom of a stranger often causes for a time the sudden and absolute cessation of "labor" pains, which previously may have been even violent. Judging from the analogy of micturition, between which and parturition there are many points of resemblance, we may suppose that

rhythmical contractions may occur
direct stimulation after the connections of the ut
eral nervous system have been entirely severed.
the interrupted current produces a local contrac
companied or followed by a general movement of
This general movement may fail to make its app
in an unimpregnated uterus (and, indeed, the res
the uterus, whether directly or indirectly, are f
other remarkably inconstant); where it does occu
an artificially produced heart-beat (p. 233), cha
those of a reflex act.

Rhythmical contractions of the uterus may be i
stimulating the spinal cord along any part of its
medulla oblongata to the lumbar region, as well a
ner by stimulation of the central ends of vario
Stimulation of the cerebellum, crura cerebri, and
brain as high up as the corpora striata and optic
give rise to uterine contractions.[2]

The movements brought about by direct electric
central nervous system are more energetic when
applied low down, near the lumbar region of th
they are applied high up, and such contractions
direct stimulation of various parts of the brain
feeble. When the cord is divided at the level
vertebra, stimulation of the cord above the sect
movement.[3] These facts support the conclusio
centre is placed in the lumbar spinal cord, and t
witnessed when parts higher up are stimulated
bar centre being thus indirectly stimulated. Röh
movements are more easily induced by central
sciatic or crural than of the brachial or other ne
part of the body; and especially energetic move
when the central ends of the ovarian nerves ar
same observer states that the contractions of t
urarized unimpregnated rabbits) are brought a

gives rise to energetic movements even after complete destruction of the central nervous system. Other observers have seen contractions result from asphyxia after removal of the spinal centre.

Basch and Hofmann[1] distinguish, in the dog, two paths along which efferent impulses may pass from the central nervous system to the uterus; one, a sympathetic tract, consisting of nerves passing from the inferior mesenteric ganglion (lying in the dog at the extreme end of the aorta) to the hypogastric plexus, and the other, a spinal tract, consisting of branches passing from the sacral nerves across the pelvis to the same plexus, and being the representatives in the female of Eckhard's nervi erigentes in the male (see p. 266). Stimulation of the former produces contractions of the uterus, chiefly circular in nature, with descent of the cervix, and dilation of the os; when the latter are stimulated, the uterus is shortened, as if by longitudinal contractions, the cervix ascends, and the os is closed. Both nerves apparently may take part in a contraction brought about in a reflex manner. When one tract is divided, the results of reflex stimulation resemble those of direct stimulation of the other tract. When both tracts are divided, stimulation of the central end of a spinal nerve, such as the sciatic, is without effect. The sacral nerves sharing in this spinal tract are branches from the first, second, and occasionally the third. Röhrig[2] also finds (in the rabbit) two efferent paths from the spinal cord to the uterus, vix., the uterine (sympathetic) and the sacral (spinal) nerves; but he makes no marked distinction of character between them; he regards both sets of nerves as containing also afferent fibres. Basch and Hofmann further assert that the sympathetic tract contains vaso-constrictor and the spinal tract vaso-dilator nerves, both of which may be thrown into action in a reflex manner, the former, however, more readily than the latter. The occurrence of contractions in consequence of an asphyxiated condition of the blood, explains why when pregnant animals are asphyxiated, an extrusion of the fœtus frequently takes place. There is no evidence, however, that the onset of labor is caused by a gradual diminution of oxygen in the blood, reaching at last to a climax. Nor are there sufficient facts to connect parturition with any condition of the ovary resembling that of menstruation.

After the expulsion of the fœtus, the fœtal placenta separates from the uterine walls, and is, together with the remnants of the membranes, expelled after it. The uterus then falls into a firm tonic contraction, similar to that of the emptied bladder, by which means hæmorrhage from the vessels torn by the separation of the placenta is avoided. The lining membrane of the uterus is gradually restored, the muscular elements are reduced by a rapid fatty degeneration, and in a short time the whole organ has returned to its normal condition.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Op. cit.

THE child has at birth, on an avera one-third the maximum length, and abo maximum weight, to which in future yea

The composition of the body of the ne pared with that of the adult, will be see table,[1] in which the details are more full p. 560:

	Weight of organ in pe age of body-weig
	Newborn babe.
Eye, ...	.28
Brain, ...	14.34
Kidneys, ...	.88
Skin, ...	11.3
Liver, ...	4.39
Heart, ...	.89
Stomach and Intestine, .	2.53
Lungs, ...	2.16
Skeleton, ...	16.7
Muscles, etc., . . .	23.4
Testicle, ...	.037

It will be observed that the brain and to the whole body-weight, very much lar in the adult, as is also, though to a le This disproportion is a very marked em as far as the brain and eye are conce morphological or phylogenic, as well a teleological significance. Inasmuch as t

The increase in stature is very rapid in early infancy, proceeding, however, by decreasing increments. According to Quetelet,[1] there is a gain in height of about 20 centimeters during the first year, the 50 cm. babe enlarging to the 70 cm. infant of one year old, of about 9 during the second, of about 7 during the third, of about 6½ for the fourth, and so on, decreasing to rather below 6 for the succeeding ten or twelve years. During or shortly before puberty, there is again a somewhat sudden rise, with a subsequent more steady, but diminished increase up to about the twenty-fifth year. From thence to about fifty years of age the height remains stationary, after which there may be a decrease, especially in extreme old age.

The increase of weight is also very rapid at first, and proceeding, like the height, with diminishing increments, may continue till about the fortieth year. After the sixtieth year a decline of variable extent is generally witnessed. It is a remarkable fact, however, that in the first few days of life, so far from there being an increase, there is an actual decrease of weight, so that, according to Quetelet, even on the seventh day, the weight still continues to be less than at birth.

The saliva of the babe is active on starch, and its gastric juice has good peptic powers, from which we may infer that its digestive processes in general are identical with that of the adult; but the fæces of the infant contain, besides a considerable quantity of undigested food (fat, casein, etc), unaltered bile-pigment, and undecomposed bile-salts.

According to Hammarsten[2] the gastric juice of newborn puppies, though sufficiently acid to curdle milk, does not contain pepsin. or the lactic acid ferment; it is not till the third week that peptic digestion is set up, the casein previously taken being digested by the pancreatic juice; in young rabbits it appears a week earlier. Like Zweifel,[3] Hammarsten, however, found pepsin in the stomach of the newborn babe. Zweifel states that the pancreatic juice in children, while active on fat and proteids from the first, is inert toward starch for the first two months; and that the amylolytic ferment is for the same period absent from the submaxillary, though present in the parotid saliva.

The heart of the babe (see table, p. 892) is, relatively to its body-weight, larger than the adult, and the frequency of the heart-beat much greater, viz., about 130 or 140 per minute, falling to about 110 in the second year, and about 90 in the

---

[1] Physique Sociale (1869), ii, p. 13.
[2] Ludwig's Festgabe (1874), p. 116.
[3] Untersuch. u. d. Verdauungsapparat d. Neugeborenen, 1874.

the second year, to 26 in the fifth year, and
respiratory work, while it absolutely incr
grows, is, relatively to the body-weight, gre
years. It is worthy of notice, that the abs
is said to be relatively more active than
carbonic acid; that is to say, there is a co
tion of capital in the form of a store of c
plosive compounds (see p. 450). This, ind
feature of infant metabolism. It is a m
largely to constructive ends. The food tak
doubtedly, so much potential energy; but
can assume a vital mode, the food must
tissue; and, in such a conversion, morphol
ular, a large amount of energy must b
metabolic activities of the infant are more
those of the adult, for the sake, not so much
are spent on the world without, as of ener
awhile buried in the rapidly increasing ma
the infant requires over and above the wan
only an income of energy corresponding to
flesh actually laid on, but also an income co
energy used up in making that living scul
the dead amorphous proteids, fats, carboh
which serve as food. Over and above this,
more rapid metabolism to keep up the norm
ture. This, which is no less, indeed slightly
that of the adult, requires a greater expe
as the infant with its relatively far larger s
tremely vascular skin, loses heat to a pro
greater degree than does the grown-up ma
of common experience that children are mo

bear with impunity a deprivation of oxygen, which would be fatal to them later on in life.

The quantity of urine passed, though scanty in the first two days, rises rapidly at the end of the first week, and in youth the quantity of urine passed is, relatively to the body-weight, larger than in adult life. This may be, at least in quite early life, partly due to the more liquid nature of the food, but is also in part the result of the more active metabolism. For not only is the quantity of urine passed, but also the amount of urea and some other urinary constituents excreted, relatively to the body-weight, greater in the child than in the adult. The presence of uric, of oxalic, and according to some, of hippuric acids in unusual quantities is a frequent characteristic of the urine of children. It is stated that calcic phosphates, and indeed the phosphates generally, are deficient, being retained in the body for the building up of the osseous skeleton.

Associated probably with these constructive labors of the growing frame is the prominence of the lymphatic system. Not only are the lymphatic glands largely developed and more active (as is probably shown by their tendency to disease in youth), but the quantity of lymph circulation is greater than in later years. Characteristic of youth is the size of the thymus body, which increases up to the second year, and may then remain for awhile stationary; but generally before puberty, has suffered a retrogressive metamorphosis, and frequently hardly a vestige of it remains behind. The thyroid body is also relatively greater in the babe than in the adult; the spleen, on the other hand, which grows rapidly in early infancy, is not only absolutely, but also relatively, greater in the adult. It need hardly be said that the recuperative power of infancy and early youth is very marked.

It would be beyond the scope of this work to enter into the psychical condition of the babe or the child, and our knowledge of the details of the working of the nervous system in infancy is too meagre to permit of any profitable discussion. It is hardly of use to say that in the young the whole nervous system is more irritable or more excitable than in later years; by which we probably to a great extent mean that it is less rigid, less marked out into what, in preceding portions of this work, we have spoken of as nervous mechanisms. It may be mentioned that, according to Soltmann,[1] stimulation of Hit-

---

[1] Centrblt. Med. Wiss., 1875, p. 209. Jahrb. f. Kinderheilkunde, ix (1875), 106.

binocular movements of the eyes in an
hour old. The eye is (in man) from the o
to light, though of course visual percept
As regards hearing, on the other hand,
follows upon sounds, *i. e.*, auditory sensati
during the first few days of life; this ma
due to absence of air from the tympanum
tion of the tympanic mucous membrane.
up his senses rapidly culminate, and in his
sesses a general acuteness of sight, hearin
frequently becomes blunted as his psychica
Children, however, are said to be less a
colors than in sighting objects; but it does
this arises from a want of perceptive dis
their being actually less sensitive to var
characteristic of the nervous system in c
probably of the more active metabolism
necessity for long or frequent and deep slu

Dentition marks the first epoch of the
seven months the two central incisors of
their way through the gum, followed imm
responding teeth in the upper jaw. The
of the lower and then of the upper jaw,
ninth month, the first molars at about the
canines at about a year and a half, and th
tion is completed by the appearance of
usually before the end of the second year.

About the sixth year the permanent d
by the appearance of the first permanent
second temporary molar; in the seventh y
manent incisors replace their temporary

There is then a long pause, the third or wisdom tooth not making its appearance till the seventeenth or even twenty-fifth year, or in some cases not appearing at all.

Shortly after the conclusion of the permanent dentition (the wisdom teeth excepted), the occurrence of puberty marks the beginning of a new phase of life; and the difference between the sexes, hitherto merely potential, now becomes functional. In both sexes the maturation of the generative organs is accompanied by the well-known changes in the body at large; but the events are much more characteristic in the typical female than in the aberrant male. Though in the boy, the breaking of the voice and the rapid growth of the beard which accompany the appearance of active spermatozoa, are striking features, yet they are after all superficial. The curves of his increasing weight and height, and of the other events of his economy, pursue for a while longer an unchanged course; the boy does not become a man till some years after puberty; and the decline of his functional manhood is so gradual that frequently it ceases only when disease puts an end to a ripe old age. With the occurrence of menstruation, on the other hand, at from thirteen to seventeen years of age, the girl almost at once becomes a woman, and her functional womanhood ceases suddenly at the climacteric in the fifth decennium. During the whole of the child-bearing period her organism is in a comparatively stationary condition. While before the age of puberty up to about the eleventh or twelfth year, the girl is lighter and shorter than the boy of the same age, in the next few years her rate of growth exceeds his;[1] but she has then nearly reached her maximum, while he continues to grow. Her curve of weight from the nineteenth year onward to the climacteric remains stationary, being followed subsequently by a late increase, so that while the man reaches his maximum weight at about forty, the woman is at her greatest weight about fifty.[2]

Of the statical differences of sex, some, such as the formation of the pelvis, and the costal mechanism of respiration, are directly connected with the act of child-bearing, while others have only an indirect relation to that duty; and indications at least of nearly all the characteristic differences are seen at birth. The baby boy is heavier and taller than the baby girl, and the maiden of five breathes with her ribs in the same way

---

[1] Bowditch, The Growth of Children, Annual Report of the State Board of Health of Massachusetts, 1877. Cf. also Pagliani, Moleschott's Untersuch., xii (1878), p. 89.

[2] Quetelet, op. cit.

brain is lighter and smaller than that of
1272 grams to 1424. Her metabolism, as
respiratory and urinary excreta, is also no
but relatively to the body-weight, less, and
only less in quantity but also of lighter spe
contains a smaller proportion of red corpuscl
is to that of man as about 5 to 9, and the r
her step as 1000 to 1157.

From birth onward (and indeed from e
life) the increment of growth progressively
last a point is reached at which the curve
line, and the increment becames a decrement
mination of manhood at forty and of woma
macteric, the prime of life declines into old a
activity of the body, which at first was suffic
cover the daily waste, but to add new ma
able only to meet the daily wants, and at las
even to sustain in its entirety the existing fr
regards vigor and functional capacity, nor a
and bulk, do the turning-points of the se
organs coincide either with each other or
body at large. We have already seen that
organ as the thymus is far shorter than tha
The eye is in its dioptric prime in childhood
are clearest and its muscular mechanisms
then it for the most part serves as a toy; in
it could be of the greatest service to a still a
already fallen into a clouded and rigid old a
reaches its limit very nearly at the same t
frame reaches its maximum of height, the

may increase somewhat up to twenty, thirty, or even later years, its progress is much more slow after than before seven. The vascular and digestive organs as a whole may continue to increase even to a very late period. From these facts it is obvious that though the phenomena of old age are, at bottom, the result of the individual decline of the several tissues, they owe many of their features to the disarrangement of the whole organism, produced by the premature decay or disappearance of one or other of the constituent bodily factors. Thus, for instance, it is clear that were there no natural intrinsic limit to the life of the muscular and nervous systems they would nevertheless come to an end in consequence of the nutritive disturbances caused by the loss of the teeth. And what is true of the teeth is probably true of many other organs, with the addition that these cannot, like the teeth, be replaced by mechanical contrivances. Thus the term of life which is allotted to a muscle by virtue of its molecular constitution, and which it could not exceed were it always placed under the most favorable nutritive conditions is, in the organism, determined by the similar life-terms of other tissues; the future decline of the brain is probably involved in the early decay of the thymus.

Two changes characteristic of old age are the so-called calcareous and fatty degenerations. These are seen in a completely typical form in cartilages, as, for instance, in the ribs; here the protoplasm of the cartilage-corpuscle becomes hardly more than an envelope of fat-globules, and the supple matrix is rendered rigid with amorphous deposits of calcic phosphates and carbonates, which are at the same time the signs of past and the cause of future nutritive decline. And what is obvious in the case of cartilage is more or less evident in other tissues. Everywhere we see a disposition on the part of protoplasm to fall back upon the easier task of forming fat rather than to carry on the more arduous duty of manufacturing new material like itself; everywhere almost we see a tendency to the replacement of a structured matrix by a deposit of amorphous material. In no part of the system is this more evident than in the arteries; one common feature of old age is the conversion by such a change of the supple elastic tubes into rigid channels, whereby the supply to the various tissues of nutritive material is rendered increasingly more difficult, and their intrinsic decay proportionately hurried.

Of the various tissues of the body the muscular and nervous are, however, those in which functional decline, if not structural decay, becomes soonest apparent. The dynamic coefficient of the skeletal muscles diminishes rapidly after thirty or forty

nervous impulses in any direction,
molecular energy of the impulses them
The eye becomes feeble not only from clo
and presbyopic muscular inability, but
bluntness of the retina; the sensory and
with increasing slowness to and from the
tem, and the brain becomes a more and
protoplasm, the molecular lines of whic
history of past actions than serve as in
potency. The epithelial glandular eleme
whose powers are the longest preserved;
who in the prime of his manhood was a "
by reason of the sensitiveness of his gas
reflex inhibitory and other results of th
later years, when his nerves are blunted,
his peptic cells are able to pursue their c
turbed by extrinsic nervous worries, eats
courage and success of a boy.

Within the range of a lifetime are com
of a more or less frequent recurrence.
of a complex civilization, all tending to
of his life more and more equable, ma
economy the effects of the seasons. So
direct results of varying temperature,
such as the gain of weight in winter and
are habits acquired by descent. Within
mately monthly period is manifested in th
tion, though there is no exact evidence of
cycle in the male. The phenomena o

night after night, or day after day, or at least time after time, lay them down to sleep. The salient feature of sleep is the cessation of the automatic activity of the brain; it is the diastole of the cerebral beat. But the condition is not confined to the cerebral hemispheres; all parts of the body either directly or indirectly take share in it. The phenomena of sleep are perhaps seen in their simplest form in the winter-sleep or hibernation, to which especially cold-blooded animals, but also to some extent warm-blooded animals, are subject. In these cases the cold of winter slackens the vibrations and lessens the explosions of the protoplasm, not only of nervous but also of muscular and glandular structures; indeed the activity of the whole body is lowered, in some respects almost to actual arrest. At the same time that the labor of the cerebral molecules becomes insufficient to develop consciousness, the respiratory centre is either wholly quiescent or discharges feeble impulses at rare intervals, and the heart beats with a slow infrequent stroke, not by reason of any inhibitory restraint, but because its very substance in its slow molecular travail can gather head for explosions only after long pauses of rest. And such few and distant beats as do occur are amply sufficient to meet the needs of the feeble metabolism of the several tissues. The sleep of every day differs from the sleep of winter-cold chiefly because the slackening of molecular activities is due in the former not to extrinsic but to intrinsic causes, not to changes in the medium, but to exhaustion of the subject, and because the phenomena are largely confined to the cerebral hemispheres. It is true that the whole body shares in the condition; the pulse and breathing are slower, the intestine and other internal muscular mechanisms are more or less at rest, the secreting organs are less active, and the whole metabolism and the dependent temperature of the body are lowered; but we cannot say at present how far these are the indirect results of the condition of the nervous system, or how far they indicate a partial slumbering of the several tissues.

According to Mosso[1] thoracic respiration becomes more prominent than diaphragmatic respiration during sleep, and the Cheyne-Stokes rhythm of respiration (see p. 461) is frequently observed. During sleep the pupil is contracted, during deep sleep exceedingly so; and dilation, often unaccompanied by any visible movements of the limbs or body, takes place when any sensitive surface is stimulated;[2] on metrical and unaccompanied by changes in the pu

---

[1] Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys. (Phys. Abth.), 1878, p. 441.

[2] Rählmann and Witkowski, Arch. f. Anat. u. Phys. (Phys. Abth.), 1878, p. 109. Sander, Arch. f. Psych., ix (1879), p. 129. Siemens, ibid, p. 72.

We are not at present in a position to trac
which culminate in this inactivity of the cere
It has been urged[3] that during sleep the brain
even if this anæmia is a constant accompanin
must, like the vascular condition of a glan
active organ, be regarded as an effect, or at l
iary event, rather than as a primary cause.
of the condition is rather to be sought in p
changes; and the analogy between the systole
the heart, and the waking and sleeping of th
profitably pushed to a very considerable extent
brain in many respects closely resembles a qu
living ventricle. Both are, as far as outward
are concerned, at rest, but both may be awak
by an adequately powerful stimulus. Both, th
are irritable; in both the quiescence will ultim
to activity, and in both an appropriate stimulu
right time will determine the change from rest
as a single prick will under certain circums
ventricle, which for some seconds has been n
rhythmic activity of many beats, so a loud no
man from sleep into a long day's wakefulness.
the heart the cardiac irritability is lowest at
the diastole and increases onwards till a beat
sleep deepest at its commencement after the da
onward slighter and slighter stimuli are ne
sleeper.

We cannot at present make any definite statements concerning the nature of the molecular changes which determine this rhythmic rise and fall of cerebral irritability. Preyer,[1] leaning towards the view that the accumulation of the products of protoplasmic activity may become in the end an obstruction to that activity, has been led to think that the presence of lactic acid, one of the products certainly of muscular and probably of nervous metabolism, tends to produce sleep; but this is doubtful. The suggestion of Pflüger,[2] that the diminution of irritability, and consequent suspension of automatism, is dependent on the exhaustion of the store of intra-molecular oxygen (p. 447), is more worthy of attention.

As was previously stated (p. 579), there is at present at least no satisfactory evidence that the assumption of oxygen is directly dependent on the time of day, the striking result obtained by Pettenkofer and Voit there quoted not being corroborated by subsequent trials.[3] The hypothesis of Pflüger, therefore, unless subsequent researches reinstate Pettenkofer and Voit's first view, needs an addition to explain how it is that the store of intra-molecular oxygen becomes exhausted in the nervous system. Henke[4] had previously put forward a not wholly unlike hypothesis, as had also Sommer.[5]

The phenomena of sleep shows very clearly to how large an extent an apparent automatism is the ultimate outcome of the effects of antecedent stimulation.[6] When we wish to go to sleep we withdraw our automatic brain as much as possible from the influence of all extrinsic stimuli; and an interesting case is recorded[7] of a lad whose connection with the external world was, from a complicated anæsthesia, limited to that afforded by a single eye and a single ear, and who could be sent to sleep at will, by closing the eye and stopping the ear.

The cycle of the day is, however, manifested in many other ways than by the alternation of sleeping and waking, with all the indirect effects of these two conditions. There is a diurnal curve of temperature (see p. 593), apparently independent of all immediate circumstances, the hereditary impress of a long and ancient sequence of days and nights. Even the pulse, so

---

[1] Centralblatt f. Med. Wiss., 1875, p. 577. Ueber die Ursache des Schlafes, 1877.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, x (1875), p. 468.

[3] Sitzungsbericht. Acad. Wiss. München, 1866–67.

[4] Zeitschr. f. rat. Med., xiv (1861), p. 363.

[5] Ibid., xxxiii (1868).

[6] Cf. Heubel, Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), p. 158.

[7] Pflüger's Archiv, xv (1877), p. 573.

product of the day's events. Within th
narrower rhythm of the respiratory centr
panying rise and fall of activity in the v
And lastly, as the fundamental fact of all,
is that alternation of the heart's systole a
ceases only at death. Though, as we have
tent flow in the arteries is toned down in th
apparently continuous flow, still the constan
of the cardiac shuttle must leave its mar
whole web of the body's life. Our means o
however, still too gross to permit us to trac
Still less are we at present in a position
fundamental rhythm of the heart itself, tha
influenced, but not created, by the chang
which it is the centre, is the result of cos
reflection as it were in little of the cycles
how far it is the outcome of the inherent
molecules which make up its substance.

CHAPTER VI.

DEATH.

When the animal kingdom is surveyed from a broad standpoint, it becomes obvious that the ovule, or its correlative the spermatozoön, is the goal of an individual existence: that life is a cycle beginning in an ovule and coming round to an ovule again. The greater part of the actions which, looking from a near point of view at the higher animals alone, we are apt to consider as eminently the purposes for which animals come into existence, when viewed from the distant outlook whence the whole living world is surveyed, fade away into the likeness of the mere byplay of ovule-bearing organisms. The animal body is in reality a vehicle for ova; and after the life of the parent has become potentially renewed in the offspring, the body remains as a cast-off envelope, whose future is but to die.

Were the animal frame not the complicated machine we have seen it to be, death might come as a simple and gradual dissolution, the "sans everything" being the last stage of the successive loss of fundamental powers. As it is, however, death is always more or less violent; the machine comes to an end by reason of the disorder caused by the breaking down of one of its parts. Life ceases not because the molecular powers of the whole body slacken and are lost, but because a weakness in one or other part of the machinery throws its whole working out of gear.

We have seen that the central factor of life is the circulation of the blood, but we have also seen that blood is not only useless, but injurious, unless it be duly oxygenated; and we have further seen that in the higher animals the oxygenation of the blood can only be duly effected by means of the respiratory muscular mechanism, presided over by the medulla oblongata. Thus the life of a complex animal is, when reduced to a simple form, composed of three factors: the maintenance of the circulation, the access of air to the hæmoglobin of the blood, and the functional activity of the respiratory centre; and death may come from the arrest of either of these. As Bichat put it, death takes place by the heart or by the lungs or by the brain. In reality, however, when we push the analysis further, the central fact of death is the stoppage of the heart, and the consequent arrest of the circulation; the tissues then all die, because they lose their internal medium. The

of respiration, or by a cessati
tory centre. The failure of this centre, an
the heart itself, may be caused by nervous i
ing from the brain, or brought into operatio
central nervous system; it may, on the othe
an imperfect state of blood, and this in tur
the imperfect or perverse action of various
tissues. The modes of death are in realit
are the possible modifications of the vario
but they all end in a stoppage of the circulat
drawal from the tissues of their internal me
come to consider the death of the body as m
sation of the heart's beat, a cessation from
is possible; and by this we are enabled to
at which we say the body is dead. We ca
such exact time to the death of the individ
are not mechanisms, and their death is a gra
In the case of the contractile tissues, we h
rigor mortis a fixed term, by which we ca
time of their death. If we admit that after
mortis recovery of irritability is impossible, t
is one permanently dead. In the case of th
have no such objective sign, since the rigo
protoplasm manifests itself chiefly by obsc
And in all cases it is obvious that the possi
depending as it does on the skill and kn
perimenter, is a wholly artificial sign of d
draw no other sharp line between the see
when life has flickered down into a smould

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

ON THE CHEMICAL BASIS OF THE ANIMAL BODY.

NATIVE protoplasm, whenever it can be obtained in sufficient quantity for chemical analysis, is found to contain representatives of three large classes of chemical substances, viz., proteids, carbohydrates, and fats, in association with smaller quantities of various saline and other crystalline bodies. By proteids are meant bodies containing carbon, oxygen, hydrogen, and nitrogen in a certain proportion, varying within narrow limits, and having certain general features; they are frequently spoken of as albuminoids. By carbohydrates are meant starches and sugars and their allies. Of these three classes of bodies, the proteids form the chief mass of ordinary protoplasm, but fats and carbohydrates are never wholly absent. To obtain evidence of the presence of any one of them in living protoplasm we are obliged to submit the protoplasm to destructive analysis. We do not at present know anything definite about the molecular composition of active living protoplasm; but it is more than probable that its molecule is a large complex one in which a proteid substance is peculiarly associated with a complex fat and with some representative of the carbohydrate group, *i. e.*, that each molecule of protoplasm contains residues of each of these three great classes.

The whole animal body is modified protoplasm. Consequently when we examine the various tissues and fluids from a chemical point of view, we find present in different places, or at different times, several varieties and derivatives of the three chief classes; we find many forms of proteids and derivatives of proteids in the forms of gelatin, chondrin, etc.; many varieties of fats; and several kinds of carbohydrates.

We find, moreover, many other bodies which we may regard as stages in the constructive or destructive metabolism of both native and differentiated protoplasm, and which are important not so much from the quantity in which they occur in the animal body at any one time as from their throwing light on the nature of animal metabolism; these are such bodies as urea, lactic acid, and the extractives in general.

In the following pages the chemical features of the more important of these various substances which are known to occur in the animal body will be briefly considered, such characters only being described as possess or promise to possess physiological interest. The physiological function of any substance must depend ultimately on its molecular (including its chemical) nature; and though at present our chemical knowledge of the constituents of an animal body gives us but little insight into their physiological properties, it cannot be doubted that such chemical information as is attainable is a necessary preliminary to all physiological study.

PROTEIDS.

These form the principal solids of the muscular, nervous, and glandular tissues, of the serum of blood, of serous fluids, and of lymph. In a healthy condition, sweat, tears, bile, and urine contain mere traces, if any, of proteids. Their general percentage composition may be taken as

	O.	H.	N.	C.	S.
From	20.9	6.9	15.2	51.5	0.3
to	23.5	to 7.3	to 17.0	to 54.5	to 2.0

(Hoppe-Seyler.[1])

These figures are obtained from a consideration of numerous analyses, slight differences in the various results being immaterial, where the purity of the substance operated upon cannot be definitely determined.

In addition to the above constituents, proteids leave on ignition a variable quantity of ash. In the case of egg-albumin the principal constituents of the ash are chlorides of sodium and potassium, the latter greatly exceeding the former in amount. The remainder consists of sodium and potassium, in combination with phosphoric, sulphuric, and carbonic acids, and very small quantities of calcium, magnesium, and iron, in union with the same acids. There is also a trace of silica.[2] The ash of serum-albumin contains an excess of sodium chloride, but the ash of the proteids of muscle contains an excess of potash salts and phosphates. The nature of the connection of the ash with the proteid is still a matter of obscurity. Globin from hæmoglobin is free from ash.

Proteids are all amorphous; some are soluble, some insoluble in water, and all are for the most part insoluble in alcohol and ether; they are all soluble in strong acids and alkalies, but in becoming dissolved mostly undergo decomposition. Their solutions possess a left-handed rotatory action on the plane of polarization, the amount depending on various circumstances, and being, with one exception, viz., peptones, changed by heating.

Crystals into whose composition certain proteid (globulin) elements enter were long since observed in the seeds of many plants; as yet they have not been obtained sufficiently isolated or in quantities large enough to permit of any accurate analysis to be made. Quite recently, however,[3] a method of isolating in quantity and recrystallizing these substances has been indicated, and it seems probable that an analysis of these may lead to interesting information on the subject of the constitution and combinations of proteids.

---

[1] Hdb. Phys. Path. Chem. Anal., Ed. iv (1875), S. 223.

[2] See Gmelin, Hdb. Org. Chem., Bd. viii, S. 285.

[3] Drechsel, Journ. f. prakt. Chem., N. F. Bd. xix (1879), S. 331.

Their presence may be detected by the following tests:

1. Heated with strong nitric acid, they or their solutions turn yellow, and this color is, on the addition of ammonia, changed to a deep-orange hue. (Xanthoproteic reaction.)

2. With Millon's reagent they give, when present in sufficient quantity, a precipitate, which, with the supernatant fluid, turns red on heating. If they are only present in traces no precipitate is obtained, but merely the red coloration.

3. With caustic soda solution, and one or two drops of a solution of cupric sulphate, a violet color is obtained, which deepens on boiling.

The above serve to detect the smallest traces of all proteids. The following two tests may be used when there is more than a trace present, but do not hold for every kind of proteid.

4. Render the fluid strongly acid with acetic acid, and add a few drops of a solution of ferrocyanide of potassium; a precipitate shows the presence of proteids.

5. Render the fluid, as before, strongly acid with acetic acid, add an equal volume of a concentrated solution of sodium sulphate, and boil. A precipitate is formed if proteids are present.

This last reaction is useful, not only on account of its exactness, but also because the reagents used produce no decomposition of other bodies which may be present; and hence, after filtration, the same fluid may be further analyzed for other substances. Additional methods of freeing a solution from proteids are: Acidulating with acetic acid and boiling, avoiding any excess of the acid; precipitation by excess of alcohol; in the latter case the solution must be neutral or faintly acid. Hoppe-Seyler[1] recommends the employment of a saturated solution of freshly precipitated ferric oxide in acetic acid. Brücke's method of removing the last traces of proteids from glycogen solutions is also of use (see p. 938). Precipitation of the last traces of proteids by means of hydrated oxide of lead at a boiling temperature[2] may be also employed.

Proteids may be very conveniently divided into classes.

CLASS I.—*Native Albumins.*

Members of this class, as their name implies, occur in a natural condition in animal tissues and fluids. They are soluble in water, are not precipitated by very dilute acids, by carbonates of the alkalies, or by sodium chloride. They are coagulated by heating to a temperature of about 70°. If dried at 40°, the resulting mass is of a pale-yellow color, easily friable, tasteless, and inodorous.

---

[1] Op. cit., S. 227.

[2] Hofmeister, Zeitsch. f. Physiol. Chem., Bd. ii (1878), S. 288.

1. *Egg-albumin.*

Forms in aqueous solution a neutral, transparent, yellowish fluid. From this it is precipitated by excess of strong alcohol. If the alcohol be rapidly removed the precipitate may be readily redissolved in water; if subjected to lengthier action a coagulation occurs, and the albumen is then no longer thus soluble. Strong acids, especially nitric acid, cause a coagulation similar to that produced by heat or by the prolonged action of alcohol; the albumin becomes profoundly changed by the action of the acid and does not dissolve upon removal of the acid. Mercuric chloride, silver nitrate, and lead acetate precipitate the albumin without coagulation; on removal of the precipitant the precipitate may be redissolved.

Strong acetic acid in excess gives no precipitate, but when the solution is concentrated the albumin is transformed into a transparent jelly. A similar jelly is produced when strong caustic potash is added to a concentrated solution of egg-albumin. In both these cases the substance is profoundly altered.

The specific rotatory power of egg-albumin in aqueous solution is, for yellow light, —35.5°. Hydrochloric acid, added until the reaction is strongly acid, increases this rotation to —37.7°. The formation of the gelatinous compound with caustic potash is at first accompanied with an increase, but this is followed by a decrease of rotation.

Preparation.—White of hen's egg is broken up with scissors into small pieces, diluted with an equal bulk of water, and the mixture shaken strongly in a flask till quite frothy; on standing, the foam rises to the top, and carries all the fibres in whose meshwork the albumin was contained. The fluid, from which the foam has been removed, is strained, and treated carefully with dilute acetic acid as long as any precipitate is formed; the precipitate is then filtered off, and the filtrate after neutralization concentrated at 40° to its original bulk.

2. *Serum-albumin.*

This form of albumin resembles, to a great extent, the one previously described. The following may suffice as distinguishing features:

1. The specific rotation of serum-albumin is —56°; that of egg-albumin is —35.5°, both measured for yellow light.

2. Serum-albumin is not coagulated by ether, egg-albumin is.

3. Serum-albumin is not very readily precipitated by strong hydrochloric acid, and such precipitate as does occur is readily redis-

solved on further addition of the acid; the exact reverse of these two features holds good for egg-albumin.

4. Precipitated or coagulated serum-albumin is readily soluble, egg-albumin is with difficulty soluble, in strong nitric acid.

Serum-albumin is found not only in blood-serum, but also in lymph, both that contained in the proper lymphatic channels and that diffused in the tissues; in chyle, milk, transudations, and many pathological fluids.

It is this form in which albumin generally appears in the urine.

In addition to the above, Scherer[1] has described two closely related bodies, to which he gives the names Paralbumin and Metalbumin. The first he obtained from ovarian cysts; its alkaline solutions are remarkable for being very ropy. It seems doubtful whether this body is a proteid; it differs sensibly in composition from these. Haerlin[2] gives as its composition, O, 26.8; H, 6.9; N. 12.8; C, 51.8; S, 1.7 per cent. It seems to be associated with some body like glycogen, capable of being converted into a substance giving the reactions of dextrose. Metalbumin, found in a dropsical fluid resembles the preceding, but is not precipitated by hydrochloric acid, or by acetic acid and ferrocyanide of potassium; it is precipitated, but not coagulated, by alcohol; its solution is scarcely coagulated on boiling.

Albumins are generally found associated with small but definite amounts of saline matter. A. Schmidt[3] says that they may be freed from these by dialysis, and that they are then not coagulated on boiling. From this it might be inferred that the albumin and the saline matters were peculiarly related, and that the latter played some special part during the coagulation of the former by heat. Schmidt's observations, however, have not been conclusively corroborated by subsequent observers.

Class II.—*Derived Albumins* (*Albuminates*).

1. *Acid-albumin.*

When a native albumin in solution, such as serum-albumin, is treated for some little time with a dilute acid, such as hydrochloric, its properties become entirely changed. The most marked changes are (1) that the solution is no longer coagulated by heat; (2) that when the solution is carefully neutralized the whole of the proteid is thrown down as a precipitate; in other words, the serum-albumin which was soluble in water, or at least in a neutral fluid containing only a small quantity of neutral salts, has become converted into a substance insoluble in water or in similar neutral fluids. The body into which serum-albumin thus becomes converted by the action of an acid is spoken of as *acid-albumin.* Its characteristic features are that it is insoluble in distilled water, and in neutral saline solutions, such as those of sodium chloride, that it is readily soluble in dilute acids or dilute alkalies, and that its solutions in acids or alkalies are not coagulated by boiling. When suspended, in the undissolved state, in water, and heated to 70°, it becomes coagulated, and is then undistinguishable from coagulated serum-albumin, or, indeed, from any other form of coagulated proteid. It is evident that the substance when in solution in a dilute acid is in a different condition from that in which it is when precipitated by neutralization. If a quantity of serum- or egg-albumin be treated with dilute hydrochloric acid, it will be found that the conversion of the native albumin into acid-albumin is gradual; a specimen heated to 70° immediately after the addition of the dilute acid, will coagulate almost as usual; and another specimen taken at the same time will give hardly any precipitate on neutralization. Some time later, the interval depending on the proportion of the acid to the albumin, on temperature, and on other circumstances, the coagulation will be less, and the neutralization precipitate will be considerable. Still later the coagulation will be absent, and the whole of the proteid will be thrown down on neutralization.

---

[1] Ann. der Chem. und Pharm., Bd. 82, S. 135.

[2] Chem. Centralblatt, 1862. No. 56.

[3] Pflüger's Archiv, xi (1875), S. 1.

If finely-chopped muscle, from which the soluble albumins have been removed by repeated washing, be treated for some time with dilute (.2 per cent.) hydrochloric acid, the greater part of the muscle is dissolved. The transparent acid filtrate contains a large quantity of proteid material in a form which, in its general characters at least, agrees with acid-albumin. The acid solution of the proteid is not coagulated by boiling, but the whole of the proteid is precipitated on neutralization; and the precipitate, insoluble in neutral sodic chloride solutions, is readily dissolved by even dilute acids or alkalies. The proteid thus obtained from muscle has been called *syntonin*, but we have at present no satisfactory test to distinguish the acid-albumin (or syntonin) prepared from muscle from that prepared from egg- or serum-albumin. When coagulated albumin or other coagulated proteid or fibrin is dissolved in strong acids, acid-albumin is formed; and when fibrin or any other proteid is acted upon by gastric juice, acid-albumin is one of the first products; and these acid-albumins cannot be distinguished from acid-albumins prepared from muscle or native albumin. Though hydrochloric acid is perhaps the most convenient acid for forming acid-albumin, other acids may also be used for the purpose of preparing it. Acid-albumin is soluble not only in dilute alkalies, but also in dilute solutions of alkaline carbonates; its solutions in these are not coagulated by boiling.

If sodic chloride in excess is added to an acid solution of acid-albumin, the acid-albumin is precipitated; this also occurs on adding sodium acetate or phosphate.

As special tests of acid-albumin may be given: 1. Partial coagulation of its solution in lime-water on boiling. 2. Further precipitation of the same solution after boiling, on the addition of calcic chloride, magnesic sulphate, or sodic chloride.

Dissolved in very dilute hydrochloric acid, acid-albumin (syntonin) prepared from muscle possesses a specific lævo-rotatory power of —72° for light yellow, this being independent of the concentration.[1] On heating the solution in a closed vessel in a water-bath, the rotatory power rises to —84.80.

2. *Alkali-albumin.*

If serum- or egg-albumin or washed muscle be treated with dilute alkali instead of with dilute acid, the proteid undergoes a change quite similar to that which was brought about by the acid. The alkaline solution, when the change has become complete, is no longer coagulated by heat, the proteid is wholly precipitated on neutralization, and the precipitate, insoluble in water and in neutral sodic chloride solutions, is readily soluble in dilute acids or alkalies. Indeed, in a general way, it may be said that acid-albumin and alkali-albumin are nothing more than solutions of the same substance in dilute acids and alkalies respectively. When the precipitate obtained by the neutralization of a solution of acid-albumin in dilute acid is dissolved in a dilute alkali, it may be considered to become alkali-albumin; and conversely when the precipitate obtained from an alkali-albumin solution is dissolved in dilute acid, it may be regarded as acid-albumin.

It is stated as a characteristic reaction of this modified or derived albumin that it is not precipitated when its alkaline solutions are neutralized in the presence of alkaline phosphates; solutions of acid-albumin, on the contrary, are said to be precipitated on neutralization in the presence of alkaline phosphates, and this difference is considered to be a distinguishing feature of the two proteids.

Alkali-albumin may be prepared by the action not only of dilute alkalies, but also of strong caustic alkalies on native albumins as well as on coagulated albumin and other proteids. The jelly produced by the action of caustic potash on white of egg, spoken of in Class I, 1, is alkali-albumin; the similar jelly produced by strong acetic acid is acid-albumin. One of the most productive methods of obtaining alkali-albumin is that introduced by Lieberkühn,[2] and consists in adding strong solution of caustic potash to white of egg until the above-mentioned jelly is obtained. This is then cut into small pieces and dialyzed until quite white. The lumps are then dissolved in the water-bath, and the alkali-albumin precipitated by the careful addition of acetic acid.

Both alkali- and acid-albumin are with difficulty precipitated by alcohol from their alkaline or acid solutions. The neutralization precipitate, however, becomes coagulated under the prolonged action of alcohol.

The body "protein," for whose existence Mulder has so much contended appears, if it exists at all, to be closely connected with this body. All subsequent observers have, however, failed to confirm his views.

The rotatory power of alkali-albumin varies according to its source;

---

[1] Hoppe-Seyler, Hdb. Phys. Path. Chem. Anal., Ed. iv (1875), S. 246.

[2] Poggendorff's Annalen, Bd. lxxxvi, S. 118.

In addition to the methods given above, all
also readily obtained by shaking milk with stro
tion and ether, removing the ethereal solution,
maining fluid with acetic acid, and washing the pr
cold alcohol, and ether.

The most satisfactory method of regarding a
min is to consider them as respectively acid an
of the neutralization precipitate. We have r
when the precipitate is dissolved in either an aci
enter into combination with them. The neutral
in itself neither acid- nor alkali-albumin, but
upon solution in the respective reagent.

It is probable that several derived albumins ex
ing to the proteid from which they are formed c
to the mode of their preparation, and that each c
its correlative forms of acid- and alkali-albumin
ject requires further investigation.

Acid-albumin, prepared by the direct actio
native albumins or on muscle-substance, contain
by the brown coloration which appears whe
heated with caustic potash in the presence of
Alkali-albumin, at all events as prepared by t
caustic potash or soda, does not contain any sul
albumin, prepared by the solution in an acid o
precipitate from such an alkali-albumin soluti
from sulphur.

3. *Casein.*

This is the well-known proteid existing in
from fat, and in the moist condition, it is a wh
body. In most of its reactions it corresponds
albumin; thus it is readily soluble in dilute aci
is reprecipitated on neutralization; if howev

that milk contains, in addition to casein, other substances, such as potassium phosphate, and a number of bodies which yield acids by fermentation. The presence of potassium phosphate has an especial influence on the reaction of casein. In the entire absence of this salt, acetic acid in the smallest quantities, as also carbonic acid, gives a precipitate; but if this salt is present, carbonic acid gives no precipitate, and acetic acid one only when the solution is acid from the presence of free acid, and not from that of acid potassium phosphate.[1]

When prepared from milk by magnesium sulphate (see below) freed by ether from fats, and dissolved in water, casein possesses a specific rotatory power of —80° for yellow light; in dilute alkaline solutions of —76°; in strong alkaline solutions of —91°; in dilute hydrochloric acid of —87°.

Casein has been asserted to occur in muscle, in serous fluids, and in blood-serum (serum-casein). In many cases it has probably been confounded with globulin (see Class III); but blood-serum and muscle-plasma undoubtedly contain an alkali-albumin in addition to whatever globulin may be present, but the usual doubt exists as to the identity of this with true casein. Its presence may be shown by adding dilute acetic acid to blood-serum which has been freed from globulin by a current of carbonic acid gas; a distinct precipitate is thrown down. A substance similar to casein has also been described as existing in unstriated muscle and in the protoplasm of nerve-cells.

Preparation.—Dilute milk with several times its bulk of water, add dilute acetic acid till a precipitate begins to appear, then pass a current of carbonic acid gas, filter, and wash the precipitate with water, alcohol, and ether; the complete removal of the fat carried down with the casein presents some difficulties. Magnesium sulphate added to saturation also precipitates casein from milk; the precipitate thus formed is readily soluble on the addition of water.

CLASS III.—*Globulins.*

Besides the native albumins there are a number of native proteids which differ from the albumins in not being soluble in distilled water; they need for their solution the presence of an appreciable, though it may be a small quantity of a neutral saline body such as sodium chloride. Thus they resemble the albuminates in not being soluble in distilled water, but differ from them in being soluble in dilute sodium chloride or other neutral saline solutions. Their general characters may be stated as follows:

They are insoluble in water, soluble in dilute (one per cent.) solutions of sodium chloride; they are also soluble in dilute acids and alkalies, being changed on solution into acid- and alkali-albumin respectively. The saturation with solid sodium chloride of their solutions in dilute sodium chloride precipitates most members of this class.

---

[1] See Kühne, Lehrb. d. Physiol. Chem., 1868, S. 565.

gives a precipitate of alkali-albumin; and tl
heated gives a further precipitate, due to serun

In its general reactions globulin correspon
the next members of this class (paraglobuli
has no power to form or promote the forma
containing the above-mentioned bodies, and
special features: 1. According to Lehmann,
solutions become cloudy on heating to 73°, and
2. It is readily precipitated on the addition
to Hoppe-Seyler, it is not precipitated on s
chloride, resembling vitellin in this respect.

According to Kühne[1] and Eichwald[2] a gl
identical with those just given may be precipit
by the cautious addition of acetic acid. This b
to be the same as paraglobulin (fibrinoplasti
from it only by a small admixture of fibrin-fe

2. *Paraglobulin* (*Fibrinoplastin*).

Preparation.—Blood-serum is diluted ten
brisk current of carbonic acid gas is passed t
formed cloudiness soon becomes a flocculent
finally quite granular, and may easily be sep
and filtration; it should be washed on the filt
ing carbonic acid.

It has usually been stated that paraglobu
from serum by saturation with sodic chloride.
marsten,[4] however, this is only in part true,
of the globulin remaining unprecipitated.
however, be completely effected by saturatio
phate. When determined by this method the
ulin in serum is very considerable, amountin
marsten, to as much as 4.565 per cent. (reckone
The quantity seems to vary in different anim

mediately changed into acid-albumin (Class II). In pure water, free from oxygen, paraglobulin is insoluble, but on shaking with air or passing a current of oxygen, solution readily takes place; from this it may be reprecipitated by a current of carbonic acid gas. *Very dilute* alkalies dissolve this body without change; if, however, the strength of the alkali be raised even to 1 per cent. the paraglobulin is changed into alkali-albumin (Class II).

According to Kühne and A. Schmidt, the solution of this body in water containing oxygen, or in very dilute alkalies, are not coagulated on heating. The sodic chloride solutions do, however, coagulate when heated to 68°–70° C.,[1] and if the substance itself be suspended in water and heated to 70° it is coagulated. Although insoluble in alcohol, its solutions are with difficulty precipitated by this reagent.

A characteristic test for this body is that it gives rise to fibrin when added to many transudations, *e. g.*, hydrocele, pericardial, peritoneal, and pleural fluids.

Paraglobulin occurs not only (and chiefly) in blood-serum, but it is also found in white corpuscles, in the stroma of red corpuscles (to some extent at least), in connective tissue, cornea, aqueous humor, lymph, chyle, and serous fluids.

For the occurrence of globulin in urine, see Edlefsen[2] and Senator.[3]

3. *Fibrinogen.*

The general reactions of this body are identical with those of paraglobulin. The most marked difference between the two is the point at which coagulation of their solutions takes place. Hammarsten[4] has shown that fibrinogen in a 1–5 per cent. solution of sodic chloride coagulates at from 52°–55° C., whereas, as stated above, paraglobulin (fibrinoplastin) coagulates first at from 68°–70° C. The characteristic test for its presence is the formation of fibrin when its solution is added to a solution known to contain paraglobulin and fibrin-ferment. Minor differences between the two may be thus enumerated: In the preparation of fibrinogen the containing fluid must be much more strongly diluted, and the current of carbonic acid gas must pass for a much longer time. The precipitate thus obtained differs from that of paraglobulin in that it forms a viscous deposit, adhering more closely to the sides and bottom of the containing vessel; there is also no flocculent stage previous to the viscous precipitate. The two also exhibit slight microscopical differences. Alcohol and ether both precipitate this body from its solution, but a mixture of the two (3 parts alcohol, 1 part ether) is most effectual.

Fibrinogen occurs in blood, chyle, serous fluids, and in various transudations.

---

[1] Hammarsten, op. cit.

[2] Centralblatt f. d. Med. Wiss., 1870, S. 367. Also Arch. f. Klin. Med., Bd. 7, S. 69.

[3] Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 60, S. 476.

[4] Upsala Läkareförenings Förhandlingar, Bd. xi, 1876.

Preparation.—This is the same as for paraglobulin, regard being had to the peculiarities mentioned above.[1]

There is no proof that the *whole* of the substance thrown down by carbonic acid from diluted blood-serum is fibrinoplastic, indeed we know that a true globulin devoid of fibrinoplastic properties may be prepared from serum.[2] Weyl[3] considers that there is only one globulin in serum, which he characterizes by the name of "serum-globulin," and regards fibrinoplastin as a mixture of this body with a portion of fibrin-ferment. We know for certain (see p. 33) that the whole of the fibrinoplastic precipitate, used to cause the coagulation of a fibrinogenous fluid, does not enter into the composition of the fibrin produced; we also know that such a precipitate may lose its fibrinoplastic powers without any marked change in its general reactions. It would seem advisable, therefore, to speak of the deposit produced by carbonic acid in dilute serum, or by saturation with sodium chloride in undiluted serum, as globulin, and to distinguish it as fibrinoplastic globulin when it is able to give rise to fibrin. Fibrinogen similarly might be spoken of as fibrinogenous globulin. The name crystallin, rather than globulin, might then be given to the substance obtained from the crystalline lens.

4. *Myosin.*

This is the substance which forms the chief proteid constituent of dead, rigid muscle; its general properties and mode of preparation have been already described at p. 93. In the moist condition it forms a gelatinous, elastic, clotted mass; dried, it is very brittle, slightly transparent, and elastic. From its solution in a sodium chloride solution it is precipitated, either by extreme dilution or by saturation with the solid salt. When precipitated by dilution and submitted to the prolonged action of water myosin loses its property of being soluble in solutions of sodic chloride.[4] The sodic chloride solution, if exposed to a rising temperature, becomes milky at 55°, and gives a flocculent precipitate at 60°. This precipitate is, however, no longer myosin, for it is insoluble in a 10 per cent. sodium chloride solution, and does not, until after many days' digestion, yield syntonin on treatment with hydrochloric acid (.1 per cent.). It is, in fact, coagulated proteid [see Class V].

Myosin is excessively soluble in dilute acids and alkalies, but undergoes, in the act of solution, a radical change, becoming in the one case acid-albumin or syntonin, in the other alkali-albumin [Class II].

Like fibrin, it can in some cases decompose hydrogen dioxide, and oxidize guaiacum with formation of a blue color.

5. *Vitellin.*

As obtained from yolk of egg, of which it is the chief proteid constituent, vitellin is a white granular body, insoluble in water, but very soluble in dilute sodium chloride solutions; it surpasses myosin in this respect, for the solution may be easily filtered. Its coagulation-point is higher than that of myosin, lying, according to Weyl,[1] between 70° C. and 80° C. Saturation with solid sodium chloride gives no precipitate; in this respect it differs from most other members of this class. In yolk of egg vitellin is always associated with, and probably exists in combination with, the peculiar complex body, lecithin. [See p. 949.]

---

[1] See Hammarsten, Pflüger's Archiv, Bd. xix, S. 563.

[2] Kühne and Eichwald, loc. cit.

[3] Loc. cit.

[4] Weyl, Zeitschr. f. Physiol. Chem., Bd. i (1878), S. 77.

Denis, and after him Hoppe-Seyler, have shown that vitellin before the treatment requisite to free it from lecithin, possesses properties quite different from other proteids.

A theory has been advanced that vitellin is really a complex body like hæmoglobin, and on treatment with alcohol splits up into coagulated proteid and lecithin. When well purified it contains .75 per cent. sulphur, but no phosphorus. Dilute acids or alkalies readily convert it in its uncoagulated form into a member of Class II.

Fremy and Valenciennes[2] have described a series of proteids, viz., ichthin, ichthidin, etc., derived from fish and amphibia. They appear to be either identical with, or closely related to, vitellin.

Preparation.—Yolk of egg is treated with successive quantities of ether, as long as this extracts any yellow coloring matter; the residue is dissolved in moderately strong [10 per cent.] sodium chloride solution, and filtered. The filtrate on falling into a large excess of water is precipitated. In this state it is mixed with lecithin and nuclein, and in order to free it from these it was usually treated with alcohol. This, as above stated, entirely changes the vitellin into a coagulated form. It seems probable that the separation of vitellin from the other bodies with which it is mixed in the yolk of egg may be effected by precipitating the sodic chloride solution by the addition of excess of water; the precipitate is then redissolved in 10 per cent. solution of sodic chloride, and the process repeated as rapidly as possible.[3]

6. *Globin.*

Globin, stated by Preyer[4] to be the proteid residue of the complex body hæmoglobin (see p. 439), ought probably to be considered as an outlying member of this class. It is, however, not readily soluble either in dilute acids or sodium chloride solutions. It is remarkable for being absolutely free from ash.

Class IV. *Fibrin.*

Insoluble in water and dilute sodium chloride solutions; soluble with difficulty in dilute acids and alkalies, and more concentrated neutral saline solutions.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] Compt. Rend., T. 38, pp. 469 and 525.

[3] Weyl, op. cit., S. 74.

[4] Die Blutkrystalle (1871), S. 166.

direction, and no definite arrangement of par
can be made out.

At ordinary temperatures fibrin is insoluble
solved only at very high temperatures, and the
plete change in its characters. In hydrochl
1–5 per cent. fibrin swells up and becomes tra
dissolved.[1] In this condition the mere remov
excess of water, neutralization, or the addition
a return to the original state. If, however, th
act for many days at ordinary temperatures o
40°–60°, solution takes place, and the resulting
In dilute alkalies and ammonia, fibrin is much
though in this case also the solution is greatl
the resulting fluid contains no longer fibrin,
This property is not distinctly characteristic o
dissolves, perhaps, more readily in both dilut
than do coagulated proteids. None of these so
lated on heating, which is intelligible when it
they no longer contain fibrin, but either acid- o
addition to the above fibrin is soluble, thoug
only after a considerable time, in 10 per cent.
chloride, potassium nitrate, or sodium sulpha
may be coagulated by a temperature of 60°;
of the neutral saline solutions the fibrin has b
a body exceedingly like myosin or globulin.

On ignition of fibrin a residue of inorganic
tained; it is, however, considered that sulph
these elements which enters essentially into
other respects fibrin corresponds entirely in
with other proteids.

Suspended in water and heated to 70°, it lo
becomes opaque; it is then indistinguishable
proteids.

with a bundle of twigs and then washing. If required quite colorless it should be prepared from plasma free from corpuscles. If the blood, before whipping, be diluted with an equal bulk of water, the subsequent washing of the fibrin is much facilitated, and it may readily be obtained quite white.

When globulin, myosin, and fibrin are compared with each other, it will be seen that they form a series in which myosin is intermediate between globulin and fibrin. Globulin is excessively soluble in even the most dilute acids and alkalies; fibrin is almost insoluble in these; while myosin, though more soluble than fibrin, is less soluble than globulin. Globulin again dissolves with the greatest ease in a very dilute solution of sodium chloride. Myosin, on the other hand, dissolves with difficulty; it is much more soluble in a 10 per cent. than in a 1 per cent. solution of sodium chloride; and even in a 10 per cent. solution the myosin can hardly be said to be dissolved, so viscid is the resulting fluid and with such difficulty does it filter. Fibrin again dissolves with great difficulty and very slowly in even a 10 per cent. solution of sodium chloride, and in a 1 per cent. solution it is practically insoluble. When it is remembered that fibrin and myosin are, both of them, the results of coagulation, their similarity is intelligible. Myosin is in fact a somewhat more soluble form of fibrin deposited, not in threads or filaments, but in clumps and masses.

CLASS V.—*Coagulated Proteids.*

These are insoluble in water, dilute acids and alkalies, and neutral saline solutions of all strengths. In fact they are really soluble only in strong acids and strong alkalies, though prolonged action of even dilute acids and alkalies will effect some solution, especially at high temperatures. During solution in strong acids and alkalies a destructive decomposition takes place, but some amount of acid or alkali-albumin is always produced.

Very little is known of the chemical characteristics of this class. They are produced by heating to 70°, solutions of egg- or serum-albumin, globulins suspended in water or dissolved in saline solutions, fibrin suspended in water or dissolved in saline solutions, or precipitated acid- and alkali-albumin suspended in water. They are readily converted at the temperature of the body into peptones, by the action of gastric juice in an acid, or of pancreatic juice in an alkaline medium.

CLASS VI.—*Peptones.*

Very soluble in water, and not precipitated from their aqueous solutions by the addition of acids or alkalies, or by boiling. Insoluble in alcohol, they are precipitated with difficulty by this reagent, and are unchanged in the process; they differ from all other proteids in not being coagulated by exposure to alcohol. They are not precipitated by cupric sulphate, ferric chloride, or, except in the instances to be mentioned presently, by potassium ferrocyanide and acetic acid. In these points they differ from most other proteids.

A solution of peptones, mixed with a stro
potash gives, on the addition of a *mere trace*
red color. An excess of the cupric salt give
deepens in tint on boiling, in fact the ordi
Other proteids simply give the violet color.
teristic feature of peptones is their extreme di
which they alone, of all the proteids, may be
all other forms of proteids pass through membr
difficulty, if at all.

Notwithstanding their probable formation
the stomach and intestines, to judge from t
digestion, a very small quantity only can be f
of these organs, or in the chyle. They are
soon as formed. Another point of interest is t
other forms of proteids, since this must occu
the body. We are, however, as yet ignora
which this reverse change is effected.

Production.—All proteids, with the excepti
peptones (and other products) on treatment
alkaline pancreatic juice, most readily at th
human body. Peptones are likewise produc
pepsin and trypsin, by the action of dilute a
acids at medium temperature; also by the act
at very high temperatures and great pressure
ods of preparing peptones, see Adamkiewicz[1]

No exact difference in percentage compositi
and the proteids from which they are formed
established.

We have used the phrase "peptones" in th
cause we have reason to think that more than
exists. Meissner[3] described three peptones,
tively A- B- and C-peptone. He distinguish
A-peptone is precipitated from its aqueous solu
nitric acid, and also by potassium ferrocyanid

tones, it is better to consider C-peptone as the only real peptone, and the A- and B-peptones as not peptones at all. Nevertheless, we have reason, from the researches of Kühne, to speak of more than one peptone, viz., of a hemipeptone which is capable under the action of trypsin of being converted into leucin and tyrosin, and of an antipeptone which resists such a decomposition. The name antipeptone is given to the latter on account of this resistance which it offers towards trypsin; the name hemipeptone, given to the former, signifies that this peptone is the twin or correlative half of antipeptone.

We have seen (p. 307) that when any proteid is digested with pepsin, what we may preliminarily call a by-product makes its appearance. This by-product, which has many resemblances to acid-albumin or syntonin, appearing as a neutralization precipitate soluble in dilute acids and alkali, but insoluble in distilled water, is generally spoken of as parapeptone. According to Finkler[1] this neutralization precipitate is especially abundant if the pepsin be previously modified by exposure to a temperature of 40° to 60° C. The pepsin thus modified is spoken of by Finkler as "isopepsin." Many authors regard parapeptone, syntonin, and acid-albumin as being the same thing. Meissner, however, gave the name parapeptone to a body, which need not and probably does not make its appearance during normal natural digestion, or during artificial digestion with a thoroughly active pepsin, but which is formed when proteids are subjected to the action of weak hydrochloric acid, either alone or in company with an imperfectly-acting pepsin, and which in certain characters is quite distinct from ordinary syntonin or acid-albumin. Its distinguishing feature is that it cannot be changed into peptone by the action of even the most energetic pepsin, though it is readily so converted under the influence of trypsin; otherwise it very closely resembles syntonin. We have here an indication that the simple characters by which we have described acid-albumin may be borne by bodies having marked differences from each other. The researches of Kühne, to which we have briefly referred in the text (p. 328), have thrown an important light on these differences. The fundamental notion of Kühne's view is that an ordinary native albumin or fibrin contains within itself two residues, which he calls respectively an anti-residue and a hemi-residue. The result of either peptic or tryptic digestion is to split up the albumin or fibrin, and to produce on the part of the anti-residue antipeptone, and on the part of the hemi-residue hemipeptone, the latter being distinguished from the former by its being susceptible of further change by tryptic digestion into leucin, tyrosin, etc. Antipeptone remains as antipeptone, even when placed under the action of the most powerful trypsin, provided putrefactive changes do not intervene.

Before the stage of peptone (whether anti- or hemi-) is reached, there is an intermediary stage corresponding to the formation of syntonin. In both normal peptic and tryptic digestion antipeptone

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, xiv (1877), S. 128.

proteid body observed by Bence-Jones in the
It approaches myosin in being readily soluble
tion of sodium chloride.

If, however, albumin be digested with insu
fectly acting pepsin, or simply with dilute hy
antialbumose is not formed, but in its place
pearance which Kühne calls antialbumate.[1]
erty is that it cannot be converted by peptic
though it can be so changed by tryptic digest
parapeptone of Meissner.

It may, perhaps, be advisable, now that M
is cleared up, to reserve the name parapepto
ucts of both peptic and tryptic digestion, to
and hemialbumose as being both parapepto
parapeptones will be an intermediate and not
digestion.

Meissner also described a particularly insol
peptone as dyspeptone, and another intermed
peptone; but further investigation of both t
of his B-peptone, is necessary. Under the inf
chloric acid, antialbumate becomes change
Kühne calls antialbumin, and which seems
insoluble proteid described by Schützenberg
and probably with Meissner's dyspeptone.
duced at once in company with products belon
by the action of 3 to 5 per cent. sulphuric aci
fibrin. The following table shows the relati
bodies we have just described. The several
etc.) are given in duplicate, on the hypothes
proved is probable) that the changes of di
hydrolytic changes, accompanied by a dedupli
molecule of starch splits up into at least two
or as a molecule of cane-sugar splits up into
and a molecule of levulose, so a molecule of
stance splits up into two molecules of antipe

DECOMPOSITION OF PROTEIDS BY DIGESTION.

- Albumin.
  - Antialbumose.
    - Antipeptone.
    - Antipeptone.
  - Hemialbumose.
    - Hemipeptone.
      - Leucin.
      - Tyrosin.
      - etc.
    - Hemipeptone.
      - Leucin.
      - Tyrosin.
      - etc.

Special action of Trypsin.

DECOMPOSITION BY ACIDS.

1.

By .25 p. c. HCl at 40° C.

- Albumin.
  - Antialbumate.
    - Antialbumid.
  - Hemialbumose.
    - Hemipeptone.
    - Hemipeptone.

2.

By 3–5 p. c. H_2SO_4 at 100° C.

- Albumin.
  - Antialbumid.
  - Hemialbumose.
    - Hemipeptone.
      - Leucin. Tyrosin, etc.
    - Hemipeptone.
      - Leucin. Tyrosin, etc.

CLASS VII.—*Lardacein, or the so-called amyloid substance.*

The substance to which the above name is applied, is found as a deposit in the spleen and liver, also in numerous other organs, such as the bloodvessels, kidneys, lungs, etc.

It is insoluble in water, dilute acids and alkalies, and neutral saline solutions.

In centesimal composition it is almost identical with other proteids,[1] viz.:

O. and S.	H.	N.	C.
24.4	7.0	15.0	53.6

The sulphur in this body exists in the oxidized state, for boiling with caustic potash gives no sulphide of the alkali. The above results of analysis would lead at once to the ranking of lardacein as a proteid, and this is borne out by other facts. Strong hydrochloric acid converts it into acid-albumin, and caustic alkalies into alkali-albumin. On the other hand, it exhibits the following marked differences from other proteids: It wholly resists the action of ordinary digestive fluids; it is colored red, not yellow, by iodine, and violet or pure blue by the joint action of iodine and sulphuric acid. From these last reactions it has derived one of its names, "amyloid," though this is evidently badly chosen. Not only does it differ from the starch group in composition, but by no means can it be converted into sugar; this latter is one of the crucial tests for a true member of the amyloid group. According to Heschl[2] and Cornil[3] anilin-violet (methyl-anilin) colors lardaceous tissue rosy red, but sound tissue blue.

The colors mentioned above, as being produced by iodine and sulphuric acid, are much clearer and brighter when the reagents are applied to the purified lardacein. When the reagents are applied to the crude substance in its normal position in the tissues, the colors obtained are always dark and dirty-looking.

Purified lardacein is readily soluble in moderately dilute ammonia, and can by evaporation be obtained from this solution in the form of tough, gelatinous flakes and lumps; in this form it gives feeble reactions only with iodine. If the excess of ammonia is expelled, the solution becomes neutral, and is precipitated by dilute acids.

Preparation.—The gland or other tissue containing this body, is cut up into small pieces, and as much as possible of the surrounding tissue removed. The pieces are then extracted several times with water and dilute alcohol, and if not thus rendered colorless are repeatedly boiled with alcohol containing hydrochloric acid. The residue, after this operation, is digested at 40°, with good artificial gastric juice in excess. Everything except lardacein, and small quantities of mucin, nuclein, keratin, together with some portion of the elastic tissue, will thus be dissolved and removed.[4] From the latter impurities it may be separated by decantation of the finely-powdered substance.

---

[1] C. Schmidt, Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 110, S. 250, and Friedreich and Kekulé, Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 16, S. 50.

[2] Wien. med. Wochenschr., No. 32, S. 714.

[3] Compt. Rend., May 24, 1875.

[4] Kühne, Virchow's Arch., Bd. 33.

The chief products of the decomposition of proteids are ammonia, carbonic acid, leucin, and tyrosin. Several other bodies, for the most part, like leucin, amidated acids, such as aspartic acid, glutamic acid, etc., have also been obtained. But urea has never yet been derived by direct decomposition from proteid material, the statements to this effect having been based on errors. In spite of numerous researches we cannot at present state definitely what is the real constitution of a proteid, or in what manner these several residues are contained in the undecomposed substance. It is unnecessary to give here any of the formulæ—nearly all empirical—which have been made to represent these bodies; they all give with equal exactitude the percentage composition, but beyond this they are untrustworthy. Of the various attempts which have been made to assign to proteids some definite molecular structure, none appear at the present stage of information sufficiently reliable for general acceptance.

Among the most elaborate labors in this direction may be mentioned those of Hlasiwetz and Haberman. In their first publication,[1] starting from the general similarity of the products of decomposition of the proteids and carbohydrates, they tried to establish a definite relation between the two classes of bodies. In this they were not successful, and from their second research[2] they came to the conclusion that the carbohydrates take no part in the formation of the proteids.

Other experiments in the same direction are due to Schützenberger.[3] He shows that albumin can be decomposed into carbonic anhydride and ammonia, and that the ratio of these two is the same as though urea had been the body on which he operated. From this he concludes that "the molecule of albumin contains the grouping of urea and represents a complex ureide." In his second publication[4] he confirms his previous results, stating that the ammonia, carbonic, anhydride, and oxalic acid, produced by the decomposition of proteids, are so connected quantitatively as to be capable of derivation from varying proportions of urea and oxamide. He also obtained from the decomposition of proteids a nitrogenous residue which could be formulated as giving rise to all the amidated acids and other bodies spoken of above. Thus, according to him, albumin, built up as a complex ureide, decomposes into ammonia, carbonic, oxalic, and acetic acids, and this nitrogenous body: this last, then, gives rise to the other products of decomposition.[5]

It will be noticed that in the general description of the various proteids distinctive reactions for each could not be given, but that varying solubilities were the chief means at our disposal for distinguishing them. They may be arranged according to their solubilities in the following tabular form.

---

[1] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm. Bd. 159, S. 304.

[2] Ibid., Bd. 169, S. 150.

[3] Comptes Rendus, T. 80, p. 232.

[4] Ibid., 81, p. 1108.

[5] See also Schützenberger, Ann. de Chem. et de Phys., T. xvi (1879), p. 280.

Soluble in HCl .1 per cent. in the co
Insoluble in HCl .1 per cent. in
cold, but soluble at 60°,. . .
Insoluble in HCl .1 per cent. at 60°
Soluble in gastric juice, ...
Insoluble, ...

Such a classification is, however, obvious
useful for temporary purposes, but in no w
relations of the several members. Nor is
and "derived" proteids much more satisfa
may thus put together serum- and egg-albun
and fibrin on the one hand; and peptones,
acid- with alkali-albumin, on the other. I
to consider casein, seeing that though a n
many resemblances to alkali-albumin? M
classification must be useless which would p
lin and fibrinogen in the same class as fibri
speak of either of the two former bodies as d
view be true that when fibrin is converted
molecule of the former is split up, with a
two smaller molecules of the latter, one belo
the other to the "hemi" group, we might
classification of all proteids into hemi-prot
holo-proteids. Thus serum- and egg-albun
would be undoubtedly holo-proteids, pepton
proteids, and we should have to distinguish
geneous groups of derived albumins both an
teid members. It is possible, moreover,
fibrinogenous globulin and casein may be na
teids, and not holo-proteids. But we have
knowledge on these points.

Mucin.—(O, 35.75. H, 6.81. N, 8.50. C, 48.94.)[1]

The characteristic component of mucus. Its exact composition is not yet known, the figures given above being merely an approximation.

As occurring in the normal condition it gives to the fluids which contain it the well-known ropy consistency, and can be precipitated from these by acetic acid, alcohol, alum, and mineral acids; the latter, if in excess, redissolve the precipitate, but this is not the case with acetic acid. In its precipitated form it is insoluble in water, but swells up strongly in it, and this effect is increased by the presence of many alkali salts. Alkalies and alkaline earths dissolve it readily. Its solutions do not dialyse; they give the proteid reactions with Millon's reagent and nitric acid, but not that with sulphate of copper, and are precipitated by basic lead acetate only when neutral or faintly alkaline. According to Eichwald,[2] when heated with dilute mineral acids, mucin yields acid-albumin, and another body which in many of its properties closely resembles a sugar; it reduces solutions of cupric sulphate. Prolonged boiling with sulphuric acid gives leucin and about 7 per cent. of tyrosin.

Preparation.—From ox-gall, by precipitation with alcohol, redissolving in water and precipitating with acetic acid. It may also be advantageously obtained from snails[3] or the submaxillary gland of the ox.[4]

Chondrin.—(O, 31.04. H, 6.76. N, 13.87. C, 47.74. S, .60 per cent.)[5]

This is usually regarded as forming the essential part of the matrix of hyaline cartilage, and is contained in the interstices of the fibres in elastic cartilage. A similar substance can be prepared from the cornea. Boiled with water, it dissolves slowly, forming an opalescent solution, which is precipitated by acetic acid, lead acetate, dilute mineral acids, alum, and salts of silver and copper; an excess of the last four reagents redissolves the precipitate. Solutions of this body gelatinize on standing, even if very dilute; the solid mass is insoluble in cold water, readily soluble in hot water, alkalies, and ammonia.

The aqueous and alkaline solutions of chondrin possess a left-handed rotatory power on polarized light of —213.5°; in presence of excess of alkali this becomes —552.0°, both measured for yellow light.

It seems, according to the observations of many, that chondrin can, by heating with hydrochloric acid, be converted into a body whose reactions resemble those of syntonin, and another substance, which like the similar product from mucin, so far resembles grape-sugar that it reduces cupric salts in alkaline solution;[1] it appears, however, to contain nitrogen. A recent observer[2] has denied the existence of chondrin as a distinct substance and regards it as in all cases a mere mixture of other bodies. He states that a substance having all the reactions of the so-called chondrin, may at any time be produced by a mixture of mucin, glutin, and inorganic salts. The extreme similarity in the reactions of chondrin and mucin point to a close relationship between the two. The whole subject, however, requires more complete investigation. With alkalies or dilute sulphuric acid chondrin gives leucin, but no tyrosin or glycocoll. Whether chondrin exists as such in cartilage is uncertain; it seems probable that it does not, since its extraction from cartilage requires an amount of boiling with water much greater than that requisite to dissolve dried chondrin.

---

[1] Eichwald, Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 134, S. 193.

[2] Op. cit.

[3] Eichwald, op. cit. and Chem. Centralb., 1866, No. 14.

[4] Staedeler, Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 111, S. 14.

[5] L. v. Mering, Beitrag zur Chemie des Knorpels, 1873.

Preparation,—From cartilage by extracting with water, and precipitating with acetic acid.

Glutin or Gelatin.—(O, 23.21. H, 7.15. N, 18.32. C, 50.76 S, .56 per cent.)

This is the substance which is yielded when connective tissue fibres are heated for several days with very dilute acetic acid, at a temperature of about 15° C., or when they are treated with water in a digester. The elastic elements of connective tissue are unaffected by the above treatment.

As obtained in this way glutin is when heated a thin fluid, solidifying on cooling to the well-known gelatinous form. When dried it is a colorless, transparent, brittle body, swelling up, but remaining undissolved in cold water; heating, or the addition of traces of acids or alkalies, readily affects its solutions. When dissolved in water it possesses a lævo-rotatory power of —130°, at 30° C.; the addition of strong alkali or acetic acid reduces this to —112° or —114°, both measured for yellow light.[3] Its solutions will not dialyse.

Mercuric chloride and tannic acid are the only two reagents which yield insoluble precipitates with this body. Its presence prevents the action of Trommer's sugar test, since it readily dissolves up the precipitated cuprous oxide. The proteid reactions of glutin are so feeble that they are probably due merely to impurities. Heated with sulphuric acid it yields ammonia, leucin and glycin, but no tyrosin.

It appears improbable that glutin exists ready formed in connective tissue fibres, since these do not swell up in water, and only yield glutin after prolonged treatment with boiling water; to which it may be added that while glutin is acted upon by trypsin, the connective tissue fibres in their natural condition resist its action (see p. 329).

---

[1] De Bary, Hoppe-Seyler's Untersuch., Hft. i, S. 71.

[2] Morochowetz, Verhand. naturhist. med. Ver. Heidelberg., Bd. i (1876), Hft. 5.

[3] Hoppe-Seyler, Hbdk., S. 222.

Elastin.—(O, 20.5. H, 7.4. N, 16.7. C, 55.5 p.c.)

This characteristic component of elastic fibres is left on the removal of all the glutin, mucin, etc., from such tissues as "ligamentum nuchæ," advantage being taken of its not being altered when it is heated with water, even under pressure, with strong acetic acid, or with dilute alkalies. When moist it is yellow and elastic, but on drying becomes brittle. It is soluble in strong alkalies at boiling temperatures, and concentrated sulphuric and nitric acids dissolve it even in the cold. It is precipitated from solutions by tannic acid, but not by the addition of ordinary acids. Notwithstanding that it closely approaches the proteids in its percentage composition, and gives distinct although feeble proteid reactions, very close relationship between the two appears improbable, since elastin when treated with sulphuric acid, yields leucin (30–40 p.c.) only, and no tyrosin.

Hilger[1] has obtained a similar body from the shell membrane of snakes' eggs.

Keratin.—(O, 20.7—25.0. H, 6.4—7.0. N, 16.2—17.7. C, 50.3—52.5. S, .7—5.0 p.c.)

This body, though somewhat resembling the proteids in general composition, differs from them and also from the preceding bodies so widely in other properties, that its description is placed here for convenience rather than anything else. Hair, nails, feathers, horn, and epidermic scales consist for the most part of keratin. Heated with water in a digester at 150° keratin is partially dissolved with evolution of sulphuretted hydrogen; the solution then gives with acetic acid and ferrocyanide of potassium a precipitate soluble in excess of the acid. Prolonged boiling with alkalies and acids, even acetic, dissolves keratin; the alkaline solutions evolve sulphuretted hydrogen on treatment with acids. The sulphur in keratin is evidently very loosely united to the substance, and in all its reactions there appears to be a want of similarity between keratin and either proteids, mucin or gelatin. The most common of its products of decomposition are leucin (10 per cent.), and tyrosin (3.6 per cent.), and some aspartic acid; no glycin is formed. What is generally known as keratin is probably a compound body, which has not yet been resolved into its components.

Ewald and Kühne[2] have described a new body to which, since it occurs as a constituent of nervous tissue (both of nerves and of the central nervous system), and is yet closely identical with ordinary horny tissue, they give the name of neuro-keratin. It is prepared in quantity from the brain by extracting this tissue with alcohol and ether, and subjecting the residue to the action of pepsin and trypsin. The final residuum is neuro-keratin, and amounts to 15–20 per cent. of the original tissue.

---

[1] Ber. d. deutsch. chem. Gesellsch., 1873, S. 166.

[2] Verhand. Naturhist. med. Ver. Heidelberg., Bd. i (1876), Heft. 5.

Nuclein.—$C_{29}H_{49}N_9P_3O_{22}$.

Discovered by Miescher[1] in the nuclei of pus-corpuscles and in the yellow corpuscles of yolk of egg. Other observers have subsequently obtained it from yeast, from semen, from the nuclei of the red blood-corpuscles of birds and amphibia, from hepatic cells, and it is probably present in all nuclei.

When newly prepared it is a colorless amorphous body, soluble to a slight extent in water, readily soluble in many alkaline solutions; but its solubilities alter on keeping. If added gradually in sufficient quantity to a solution of caustic alkali it first neutralizes the solution and then renders it acid. It seems to possess an indistinct xanthoproteic reaction, but gives no reaction with Millon's fluid. It yields precipitates with several salts, *e. g.*, zinc chloride, silver nitrate, and cupric sulphate.

Preparation.—This is difficult, since nuclein is easily decomposed.[2] The most remarkable feature of this body is its large percentage of phosphorus, 9.59 per cent. This phosphorus is readily separated by boiling with strong hydrochloric acid or caustic alkalies; the same occurs when solutions of nuclein are acidulated and allowed to stand.

CARBOHYDRATES.

Certain members only of this class occur in the human body; of these the most important and widespread is that known as grape-sugar or dextrose (glucose), with which diabetic sugar seems to be identical.[3] Next to this comes milk-sugar. Inosit is another body of this class, although it differs in many important points from the preceding two. Glycogen belongs properly to the sub-class of carbohydrates known as starches.

These bodies are often considered to be polyatomic alcohols. Several of them stand in peculiar relation to mannit, and may be converted into that substance by the action of sodium amalgam.[4]

1. *Dextrose* (Grape-sugar). $C_6H_{12}O_6 + H_2O$.

Occurs in the contents of the alimentary canal to a variable extent, dependent on the nature of the food taken. It is also a normal constituent of blood, chyle, and lymph. Concerning its presence in the liver, see p. 528. The amniotic fluid also contains this body. Bile in the *normal* condition is free from sugar, so also is urine, though this point has given rise to great dispute.[5] The disease diabetes is characterized by an excess of dextrose in the fluids and tissues of the body (see p. 533).

---

[1] Med. Chem. Untersuch., Hoppe-Seyler, Heft. 4, 1872, S. 441 und 502.

[2] Miescher, op. cit.

[3] The question, however, whether several varieties of sugar occurring in the animal body have not been confounded together under the common name of dextrose or glucose, may be considered at present an open one.

[4] Linnemann, Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 123, S. 136.

[5] See Seegen, Der Diabetes Mellitus, 2d ed., S. 196.

When pure, dextrose is colorless and crystallizes in four-sided prisms, often agglomerated into warty lumps. The crystals will dissolve in their own weight of cold water, requiring, however, some time for the process; they are very readily soluble in hot water. Dextrose is soluble in alcohol, but insoluble in ether.

The freshly prepared cold aqueous solution of the crystals possesses a dextro-rotatory power of + 104° for yellow light. This, quickly on heating, more slowly on standing, falls to + 56°; at which point it remains constant.

Dextrose readily forms compounds with acids and bases; the latter are very unstable, decomposition rapidly ensuing on heating them. When its metallic compounds are decomposed the decomposition is in many cases accompanied by the precipitation of the metals, *e. g.*, silver, gold, mercury, bismuth. Caustic alkalies readily decompose it, as also does ammonia.

Dextrose is readily and completely precipitated by lead acetate and ammonia.

An important property of this body is its power of undergoing fermentations. Of these the two principal are: (1.) *Alcoholic.* This is produced in aqueous solutions of dextrose, under the influence of yeast. The decomposition is the following: $C_6H_{12}O_6 = 2C_2H_6O + 2CO_2$, yielding (ethyl) alcohol and carbonic anhydride. Other alcohols of the acetic series are found in traces, as also are glycerin, succinic acid, and probably many other bodies. The fermentation is most active at about 25° C. Below 5° or above 45° it almost entirely ceases. If the saccharine solution contains more than 15 per cent. of sugar it will not all be decomposed, as excess of alcohol stops the reaction. (2.) *Lactic.* This occurs in the presence of decomposing nitrogenous matter, especially of casein, and is probably the result of the action of a specific ferment.[1] The first stage is the production of lactic acid, $C_6H_{12}O_6 = 2C_3H_6O_3$. In the second butyric acid is formed with evolution of hydrogen and carbonic anhydride: $2C_3H_6O_3 = C_4H_8O_2 + 2CO_2 + 2H_2$. The above changes, the first of which is probably undergone by sugar to a considerable extent in the intestine, are most active at 35°; the presence of alkaline carbonates is also favorable. It is, moreover, essential that the lactic acid should be neutralized as fast as it is formed, otherwise the presence of the free acid stops the process.

The detection and estimation of dextrose are so fully given in various books that they need not be detailed here.

2. *Maltose.* $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O$.

This form of sugar was first described by Dubrunfaut as a product of the action of malt on starch. Its existence was for a long time doubted until Sullivan repeated and confirmed the previous experiments. According to him it crystallizes in fine acicular crystals, possesses a specific rotatory power of + 150° and a reducing power which is only one-third as great as that of dextrose. Musculus and Gruber[1] have recently shown that it may also be formed by the action of sulphuric acid on starch, and that it is capable of undergoing alcoholic fermentation.

---

[1] Lister, Path. Soc. Trans., vol. for 1878, p. 425; also Quart. Jour. of Micros. Science, vol. xviii (1878), p. 177.

3. *Milk-sugar.* $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O$.

Also known as *lactose.* It is found in milk, and is the only sugar which enters into the composition of this secretion.

It yields, when pure, hard colorless crystals, belonging to the rhombic system (four or eight-sided prisms). It is less soluble in water than dextrose, requiring for solution six times its weight of cold, but only two parts of boiling, water; it is entirely insoluble in alcohol and ether. It is fully precipitated from its solutions by the addition of lead acetate and ammonia.

When freshly dissolved its aqueous solution possesses a specific dextro-rotatory power of + 93.1° for yellow light; this diminishes, slowly on standing, rapidly on boiling, until it finally remains constant at + 59.3°. The amount of rotation is independent of the concentration of the solution.

Lactose unites readily with bases, forming unstable compounds; from its metallic compounds the metal is precipitated in the reduced state on boiling; it reduces copper salts as readily as dextrose.

Lactose is generally stated to admit of no direct alcoholic fermentation; this may, however, sometimes be induced by a lengthy action of yeast. By boiling with dilute mineral acids lactose is converted into galactose, which readily undergoes alcoholic fermentation.

Galactose is very readily soluble in water, though insoluble in alcohol. It possesses a higher rotatory power than lactose, viz., + 83.2°; in a freshly prepared solution the rotation is + 139.6°. It may be remarked here that though *isolated* lactose is incapable of direct alcoholic fermentation, milk itself may be fermented; Berthelot was unable in this direct alcoholic fermentation to detect any intermediate change of the lactose into another fermentable sugar.

Lactose is, however, *directly* capable of undergoing the lactic fermentation; the circumstances and products are the same as in the case of dextrose (see above). The action is generally productive of a collateral small quantity of alcohol.

The tests for the presence of this body are the same as for dextrose, with the exception of the alcoholic fermentation.

Preparation.—After the removal of the casein and other proteids of the milk, the mother liquor is evaporated to the crystallizing point; the crystals are purified by repeated crystallization from warm water.

---

[1] Zeitschr. f. Physiol. Chem., Bd. ii (1878), S. 177.

4. *Inosit.* $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 2H_2O$.

This substance occurs but sparingly in the human body; it was found originally by Scherer[1] in the muscles of the heart. Cloetta showed its presence in the lungs, kidneys, spleen, and liver,[2] and Müller in the brain.[3] It occurs also in diabetic urine, and in that of "Bright's disease," and is found in abundance in the vegetable kingdom.

Pure inosit forms large efflorescent crystals (rhombic tables); in microscopic preparations it is usually obtained in tufted lumps of fine crystals. Easily soluble in water, it is insoluble in alcohol and ether. It possesses no action on polarized light, and does not reduce solutions of metallic salts.

It admits of no direct alcoholic, but is capable of undergoing the lactic fermentation; according to Hilger[4] the acid formed is sarcolactic. It is unaltered by heating with dilute mineral acids.

Preparation.—It may be precipitated from its solutions by the action of *basic* lead acetate and ammonia.

As a special test may be mentioned the production of a bright violet color by careful evaporation to dryness on plantinum foil, with a little ammonia and calcium chloride.

5. *Dextrin.* $C_6H_{10}O_5$.

By boiling starch-paste with dilute acids, or by the action of ferments, the starch is converted into an isomeric body, to which, from its action on polarized light, the name dextrin has been given. It is soluble in water, but is precipitated by alcohol. It does not undergo alcoholic fermentation until after it has been changed into dextrose, nor can it reduce metallic salts. It yields a reddish portwine color with iodine, which disappears on warming and does not return on cooling. Further action of acids or of ferments converts dextrin into dextrose. Dextrin is present in the contents of the alimentary canal after a meal containing starch, and has also been found in the blood. Concerning achroodextrin and other varieties of dextrin see pp. 297, 298.

6. *Glycogen.* $C_6H_{10}O_5$.

Belongs to the starch division of carbohydrates. Discovered by Bernard in the liver and other organs (see p. 525).

Glycogen is, when pure, an amorphous powder, colorless and tasteless, readily soluble in water, insoluble in alcohol and ether. Its aqueous solution is generally though not always strongly opales-

---

[1] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 73, S. 322.

[2] Ibid., Bd. 99, S. 289.

[3] Ibid., Bd. 103, S. 140.

[4] Ibid., Bd. 160, S. 333.

converted into a form of sugar very close
probably differing somewhat from, true dextr
version is also readily effected by the action c
The sugar into which the glycogen of the li
death (see p. 528), appears to be true dextros
diabetes. Musculus and v. Mering,[1] howeve
of the action of diastase, or salivary or par
glycogen is a mixture of achroodextrin and
of dextrose making its appearance at the
small.

Opalescent solutions of glycogen usually be
tion of caustic alkali; Vintschgau and Dietl
is accompanied by a change which converts
gen into a substance to which they give the
dextrin. (Kühne[3] had previously describe
gave the name glycogen-dextrin. That de
and Dietl differs slightly from Kühne's b
According to these authors one-fifth of the
time changed into some other, at present un
Normal lead acetate gives a cloudiness, the
in its solutions.

As tests for this body may be used the f
color with iodine; this disappears on warm
differing from dextrin, returns on cooling.
duced by dextrin, but this does not reapp
disappearance on warming.)

Preparation of Glycogen.—The following
The filtered or simply strained decoction o
other glycogenic tissue is, when cold, treate
hydrochloric acid, and a solution of the dou
and mercury,[5] as long as any precipitate occ
free hydrochloric acid, the double iodide pre
so completely as to render their separation
proteids being thus got rid of, the glycogen

cent. Too much alcohol is to be avoided, since other substances as well are thereby precipitated. The glycogen is now washed with alcohol, first of 60 and then of 95 per cent., afterwards with ether, and finally with absolute alcohol. It is then dried over sulphuric acid.

FATS, THEIR DERIVATIVES AND ALLIES.

The Acetic Acid Series.

General formula $C_nH_{2n}O_2$ (monobasic).

This, which is one of the most complete homologous series of organic chemistry, runs parallel to the series of monatomic alcohols. Thus formic acid corresponds to methyl alcohol, acetic acid to ethyl (ordinary) alcohol, and so on. The several acids may be regarded as being derived from their respective alcohols by simple oxidation: thus ethyl alcohol yields by oxidation acetic acid: $C_2H_6O + O_2 = C_2H_4O_2 + H_2O$. The various members differ in composition by CH_2, and the boiling-points rise successively by about 19° C. Similar relations hold good with regard to their melting-points and specific gravities. The acid properties are strongest in those where n has the least value. The lowest members of the series are volatile liquids, acting as powerful acids; these successively become less and less fluid, and the highest members are colorless solids, closely resembling the neutral fats in outward appearance. Consecutive acids of the series present but very small differences of chemical and physical properties, hence the difficulty of separating them; this is further increased in the animal body by the fact that exactly those acids which present the greatest similarities usually occur together.

The free acids are found only in small and very variable quantities in various parts of the body; their derivatives, on the other hand, form most important constituents of the human frame, and will be considered further on.

Formic acid. $CHO . OH$.

When pure is a strongly corrosive, fuming fluid, with powerful irritating odor, solidifying at 0° C., boiling at 100° C., and capable of being mixed in all proportions with water and alcohol. It has been found in various parts of the body, such as the spleen, thymus, pancreas, muscles, brain, and blood; from the latter it may be obtained by the action of acids on the hæmoglobin. According to some authors[1] it occurs also in urine.

Heated with sulphuric acid it yields carbonic oxide and water; with caustic potash it gives hydrogen and oxalic acid.

---

[1] Buliginsky, Hoppe-Seyler's Med. chem. Mittheilung., Heft 2, S. 240. Thudichum, Journ. of the Chem. Soc., vol. viii, p. 400.

Acetic acid. $C_2H_3O \cdot OH$.

Is distinguished by its characteristic odor; its boiling-point is 117° C.; it solidifies at 5°, and is fluid at all temperatures above 15° C. It is soluble in all proportions in alcohol and water.

It occurs in the stomach as the result of fermentative changes in the food, and is frequently present in diabetic urine. In other organs and fluids it exists only in minute traces.

With ferric chloride it yields a blood-red solution, decolorized by hydrochloric acid. (It differs in this last reaction from sulphocyanide of iron.) Heated with alcohol and sulphuric acid, the characteristic odor of acetic ether is obtained. It does not reduce silver nitrate.

Propionic acid. $C_3H_5O \cdot OH$.

This acid closely resembles the preceding one. It possesses a very sour taste and pungent odor; is soluble in water, boils at 141° C., and may be separated from its aqueous solution by excess of calcium chloride.

It occurs in small quantities in sweat, in the contents of the stomach, and in diabetic urine when undergoing fermentation. It is similarly produced, mixed, however, with other products, during alcoholic fermentation, or by the decomposition of glycerin. It partially reduces silver nitrate solution on boiling.

Butyric acid. $C_4H_7O \cdot OH$.

An oily, colorless liquid, with an odor of rancid butter, soluble in water, alcohol, and ether, boiling at 162° C. Calcium chloride separates it from its aqueous solution.

Found in sweat, the contents of the large intestine, fæces, and in urine. It occurs in traces in many other fluids, and is plentifully obtained when diabetic urine is mixed with powdered chalk and kept at a temperature of 35° C. It exists, as a neutral fat, in small quantities in milk.

This is the principal product of the second stage of lactic fermentation. (See Dextrose.)

Valerianic acid. $C_5H_9O \cdot OH$.

An oily liquid, of penetrating odor and burning taste; soluble in 30 parts of water at 12° C., readily soluble in alcohol and ether. Boils at 175° C. Possesses, in free and combined form, a feeble right-handed rotation of the plane of polarization.

It is found in the solid excrements, and is formed readily by the decomposition, through putrefaction, of impure leucin, ammonia being at the same time evolved; hence its occurrence in urine when that fluid contains leucin, as in cases of acute atrophy of the liver.

Caproic acid. $C_6H_{11}O \cdot OH$.
Caprylic " $C_8H_{15}O \cdot OH$.
Capric " $C_{10}H_{19}O \cdot OH$.

These three occur together (as fats) in butter, and are contained in varying proportions in the fæces from a meat diet. The first is an oily fluid, slightly soluble in water; the others are solids and scarcely soluble in water; they are soluble in all proportions in alcohol and ether. They may be prepared from butter, and separated by the varying solubilities of their barium salts.

Laurostearic acid. $C_{12}H_{23}O . OH$.
Myristic " $C_{14}H_{27}O . OH$.

These occur as neutral fats, in spermaceti, in butter, and other fats. They present no points of interest.

Palmitic acid. $C_{16}H_{31}O . OH$.
Stearic " $C_{18}H_{35}O . OH$.

These are solid, colorless when pure, tasteless, odorless, crystalline bodies, the former melting at 62° C., the latter at 69.2° C. In water they are quite insoluble; palmitic acid is more readily soluble in cold alcohol than stearic. Both are readily dissolved by hot alcohol, ether, or chloroform. Glacial acetic acid dissolves them in large quantity, the solution being assisted by warming. They readily form soaps with the alkalies, also with many other metals. The varying solubilities of their barium salts afford the means of separating them when mixed.[1] This may also be applied to many others of the higher members of this series.

These acids in combination with glycerin (see below), together with the analogous compound of oleic acid, form the principal constituents of human fat. As salts of calcium they occur in the fæces and in "adipocere," and probably in chyle, blood, and serous fluids, as salts of sodium. They are found in the *free* state in decomposing pus, and in the caseous deposits of tuberculosis.

The existence of margaric acid, intermediate to the above two, is not now admitted, since Heintz[2] has shown that it is really a mixture of palmitic and stearic acid. Margaric acid possesses the anomalous melting-point of 59.9° C. A mixture of 60 parts stearic and 40 of palmitic acids, melts at 60.3°.

ACIDS OF THE OLEIC (ACRYLIC) SERIES. $H(C_nH_{2n-3})O_2$.
(Monobasic.)

Many acids of this series occur as glycerin compounds in various fixed fats. They are very unstable, and readily absorb oxygen when exposed to the air. The higher members are decomposed on attempting to distil them. Their most peculiar property is that of being converted by traces of NO_2 into solid, stable metameric acids, capable of being distilled. They bear an interesting relation to the acids of the acetic series, breaking up when heated with caustic potash into acetic acid and some other member of the same series. Thus,

$$\underset{\text{Oleic acid.}}{HC_{18}H_{33}O_2} + 2KHO = \underset{\text{Potassium acetate.}}{KC_2H_3O_2} + \underset{\text{Potassium palmitate.}}{KC_{16}H_{31}O_2} + H_2.$$

---

[1] Heintz. Annal. d. Phys. u. Chem., Bd. 92, S. 588. [2] Op. cit.

Oleic acid. $C_{18}H_{33}O \,.\, OH$.

This is the only acid of the series which is physiologically important. It is found united with glycerin in all the fats of the human body. In the small intestine and chyle it exists also either as a salt of potassium, or sodium, or, it may be, in the free state.

When pure it is, at ordinary temperatures, a colorless, odorless, tasteless, oily liquid, solidifying at 4° C. to a crystalline mass. Insoluble in water, it is soluble in alcohol and ether. It cannot be distilled without decomposition. It readily forms with potassium and sodium soaps, which are soluble in water. Its compounds with most other bases are insoluble. It may be distinguished from the acids of the acetic series by its reaction with NO_2 and by the changes it undergoes when exposed to the air.

THE NEUTRAL FATS.

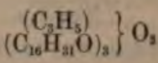
These may be considered as ethers formed by replacing the exchangeable atoms of hydrogen in the triatomic alcohol glycerin (see below), by the acid radicals of the acetic and oleic series. Since there are three such exchangeable atoms of hydrogen in glycerin, it is possible to form three classes of these ethers; only those, however, which belong to the third class occur as natural constituents of the human body; those of the first and second are only of theoretical importance.

They possess certain general characteristics. Insoluble in water and cold alcohol, they are readily soluble in hot alcohol, ether, chloroform, etc.; they also dissolve one another. They are neutral bodies, colorless and tasteless when pure; are not capable of being distilled without undergoing decomposition, and, as a result of this decomposition, yield solid and liquid hydrocarbons, water, fatty acids, and a peculiar body, acrolein. (Glycerin contains the elements of one molecule of acrolein and two molecules of water.)

They possess no action on polarized light.

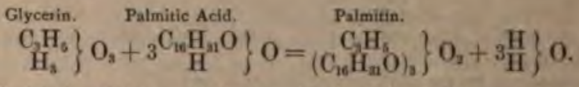
They may readily be decomposed into glycerin and their respective fatty acids by the action of caustic alkalies or of superheated steam.

Palmitin (Tri-palmitin).



$$\left.\begin{matrix}(C_3H_5)\\(C_{16}H_{31}O)_3\end{matrix}\right\}O_3$$

The following reaction for the formation of this fat is typical for all the others:

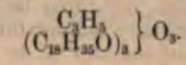


$$\left.\begin{matrix}C_3H_5\\H_3\end{matrix}\right\}O_3 + 3\left.\begin{matrix}C_{16}H_{31}O\\H\end{matrix}\right\}O = \left.\begin{matrix}C_3H_5\\(C_{16}H_{31}O)_3\end{matrix}\right\}O_3 + 3\left.\begin{matrix}H\\H\end{matrix}\right\}O.$$

Palmitin is slightly soluble in cold alcohol, readily so in hot alcohol or in ether; when pure it crystallizes in fine needles: if mixed with stearin it generally forms shapeless lumps, although the mixture may at times assume a crystalline form, and was then regarded as a distinct body, namely, margarin. It possesses three different melting-points, according to the previous temperatures to which it has been subjected. It solidifies in all cases at 45° C.

Preparation.—From palm oil, by removing the free palmitic acid with alcohol, and crystallizing repeatedly from ether.

Stearin (Tri-stearin).

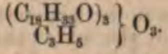


$\left.\begin{matrix}C_3H_5\\(C_{18}H_{35}O)_3\end{matrix}\right\}O_3.$

This is the hardest and least fusible of the ordinary fats of the body; it is also the least soluble, and hence is the first to crystallize ut from solutions of the mixed fats. It crystallizes usually in uare tables. It presents peculiarities in its fusing-points similar those of palmitin.

Preparation.—From mutton suet, its separation from palmitin d olein being effected by repeated crystallization from ether, arin being the least soluble.

Olein (Tri-olein).

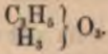


$\left.\begin{matrix}(C_{18}H_{33}O)_3\\C_3H_5\end{matrix}\right\}O_3.$

Is obtained with difficulty in the pure state, and is then fluid at rdinary temperatures. It is more soluble than the two preceding nes. It readily undergoes oxidation when exposed to the air, and s converted by mere traces of NO_2 into a solid isomeric fat. Olein ields, on dry distillation, a characteristic acid, the sebacic, and is saponified with much greater difficulty than are palmitin and stearin.

Preparation.—From olive oil, either by cooling to 0° and pressing out the olein that remains fluid, or by dissolving in alcohol and cooling, when the olein remains in solution while the other fats crystallize out.

Glycerin.



$\left.\begin{matrix}C_3H_5\\H_3\end{matrix}\right\}O_3.$

This principal constituent of the neutral fats may, as above stated, be looked upon as a triatomic alcohol.

When pure, glycerin is a viscid, colorless liquid, of a well-known sweet taste. It is soluble in water and alcohol in all proportions, insoluble in ether. Exposed to very low temperatures it becomes almost solid; it may be distilled in close vessels without decomposition between 275°–280° C.

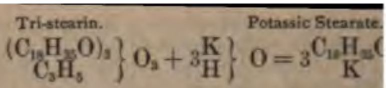
It dissolves the alkalies and alkaline earths, also many oxides, such as those of lead and copper; many of the fatty acids are also soluble in glycerin.

It possesses no rotatory power on polarized light.

It is easily recognized by its ready solubility in water and alcohol, its insolubility in ether, its sweet taste, and its reaction with bases. The production of acrolein is also characteristic of glycerin.

$$C_3H_8O_3 + 2H_2O = C_3H_4O \text{ (Acrolein).}$$

Tri-stearin. Potassic Stearate.



$$\left.\begin{matrix}(C_{18}H_{35}O)_3\\C_3H_5\end{matrix}\right\}O_3+3\left.\begin{matrix}K\\H\end{matrix}\right\}O=3\begin{matrix}C_{18}H_{35}(\\K\end{matrix}$$

Pancreatic juice can split up fats into gl
acids (see p. 329), and the bile is known to
these fatty acids. The amount of soaps f
canal is, however, small and unimportant.

ACIDS OF THE GLYCOLIC

Running parallel to the monatomic alco
series of diatomic alcohols or glycols (C
sponding to ethyl alcohol is the diatomic a
from the monatomic alcohols, so from the
rived by oxidation; from the latter (glycol
acids can be obtained, known respectively a
series. The first stage of oxidation of the
the glycolic series; thus,

Ethyl-glycol. Glycolic acid.

$$C_2H_6O_2+O_2=C_2H_4O_3+H_2O, \text{ or}$$
$$C_nH_{2n+2}O_2+O_2=C_nH_{2n}O_3$$

By further oxidation a member of the
verted into a member of the oxalic series;

Glycolic acid. Oxalic acid.

$$C_2H_4O_3+O_2=C_2H_2O_4+H_2O, \text{ or}$$
$$C_nH_{2n}O_3+O=C_nH_{2n-2}O_4$$

The acids of the glycolic series are diato
of the oxalic series are diatomic and diaba
The following table may be given to show
of alcohols and acid:

Radical.	Alcohol.	Acid.	Glycols

GLYCOLIC ACID SERIES.

Lactic acid. $C_3H_6O_3$.

Next to carbonic acid, the most important member of this series, as far as physiology is concerned, is lactic acid.

Lactic acid exists in four isomeric modifications, but of these only three have been found in the human body. These three all form syrupy, colorless fluids, soluble in all proportions in water, alcohol, and ether. They possess an intensely sour taste, and a strong acid reaction. When heated in solution they are partially distilled over in the escaping vapor. They form salts with metals, of which those with the alkalies are very soluble, and crystallize with difficulty. The calcium and zinc salts are of the greatest importance, as will be seen later on.

1. *Ethylidene-lactic acid.* This is the ordinary form of the acid, obtained as the characteristic product of the well-known "lactic fermentation." It occurs in the contents of the stomach and intestines. According to Heintz[1] it is found also in muscles, and according to Gscheidlen[2] in the ganglionic cells of the gray substance of the brain. In many diseases it is found in urine, and exists to a large amount in this excretion after poisoning by phosphorus.[3]

It may be prepared by the general methods of slowly oxidizing the corresponding glycol or by acting on the monochlorinated propionic acid and with moist silver oxide. In obtaining it from the products of lactic fermentation, the crusts of zinc lactate are purified by several crystallizations, and the acids liberated from the compound by the action of sulphuretted hydrogen.

2. *Ethylene-lactic acid.* This acid is found accompanying the one next to be described, in the watery extract of muscles. From this it is separated by taking advantage of the different solubilities of the zinc salts of the two acids in alcohol. It seems probable, however, that it has not yet been prepared in the pure state by this method.

Wislicenus first obtained this acid by heating hydroxycyanide of ethylene with aqueous solutions of the alkalies.[4]

The same observer found it also in many pathological fluids.

3. *Sarcolactic acid.* This acid has not yet been procured synthetically. As its name implies, it is that form of the acid which occurs in muscles, and hence exists in large quantities in Liebig's "extract of meat." It is often found also in pathological fluids. This is the only acid of this series which possesses any power of rotating the plane of polarized light. It is otherwise indistinguish-

---

[1] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 157, S. 320.

[2] Pflüger's Archiv, Bd. viii (1873–74), S. 171.

[3] Schultzen and Riess, Ueber acute Phosphorvergiftung.

[4] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 128, S. 6.

able from the preceding ethylidene-lactic acid, and is generally represented by the same formula. The free acid has dextro- and anhydride lævo-rotatory power. The specific rotation for zinc salt in solution is —7.65° for yellow light.

The zinc and calcium salts of sarcolactic acid are more soluble both in water and alcohol than those of ethylene-lactic acid, but less so than those of ethylene-lactic acid; and the same salts of ethylene-lactic acid contain more water of crystallization than those of the other two.

Heintz[1] has compared the above acids to the modifications capable of existing in tartaric acid.[2]

Hydracrylic acid, the fourth in this series of lactic acids, is distinguished by the nature of its decomposition on heating. It is never found as a constituent of animal bodies.

Oxalic Acid Series.

Oxalic acid. $H_2C_2O_4$.

In the free state this acid does not occur in the human body. Calcium oxalate, however, is a not unfrequent constituent of urine, and enters into the composition of many urinary calculi, the so-called mulberry calculus consisting almost entirely of it. It may also occur in fæces, and in the gall-bladder, though this is rarely observed.

As ordinarily precipitated from solutions of calcium salts by ammonium oxalate, calcium oxalate is quite amorphous, but in urinary deposits it assumes a strongly characteristic crystalline form, viz., that of rectangular octohedra. In some cases it presents the anomalous forms of rounded lumps, dumb-bells, or square columns with pyramidal ends. It is insoluble in water, alcohol, and ether, also in ammonia and acetic acid. Mineral acids dissolve this salt readily, as also to a smaller extent do solutions of sodium phosphate or urate. All the above characteristics serve to detect this salt; its microscopical appearance, however, is generally of most use for this purpose.

The pure acid is prepared either by oxidizing sugar with nitric acid, or decomposing ligneous tissue with caustic alkalies.

Succinic acid. $H_2C_4H_4O_4$.

This is the third acid of the oxalic series, being separated from oxalic acid by the intermediate malonic acid, $H_2C_3H_2O_4$. It occurs in the spleen, the thymus, and thyroid bodies, hydrocephalic and hydrocele fluids.

According to Meissner and Shepard,[3] it is found as a normal constituent of urine. This is contested by Salkowski,[1] and also by von Speyer. It seems probable, however, that since wines and fermented liquors contain succinic acid, and this latter passes unchanged into the urine, that it may thus be occasionally present in this excretion.

---

[1] Op. cit.

[2] See further, Wislicenus, op. cit. Also Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 166, S. 3, Bd. 167, S. 302, and Zeitschr. f. Chem., Bd. xiii, S. 159.

[3] Untersuch. über d. Entsteh. d. Hippursäure. Hannover, 1866.

Succinic acid crystallizes in large rhombic tables, also at times in the form of large prisms; they are soluble in 5 parts of cold water, and 2.2 of boiling, slightly soluble in alcohol, and almost insoluble in ether. The crystals melt at 180° C., and boil at 235° C., being at the same time decomposed into the anhydride and water. The alkali salts of this acid are soluble in water, insoluble in alcohol and ether.

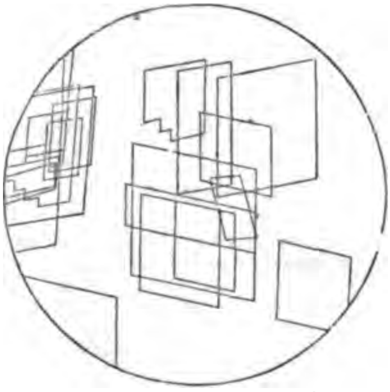
Preparation.—Apart from the synthetic methods, it may readily be obtained by the fermentation of calcic malate, acetic acid being produced simultaneously.

Its presence is recognized by the microscopic examination of its crystals, and its characteristic reaction with normal lead acetate. With this it gives a precipitate, easily soluble in excess of the precipitant, but coming down again on warming and shaking.[2]

CHOLESTERIN. ($C_{26}H_{44}O$.)

This is the only alcohol which occurs in the human body in the free state. (The triatomic alcohol glycerin is almost always found combined as in the fats; and cetyl-alcohol, or ethal, is obtained only from spermaceti.) It is a white crystalline body crystallizing in fine

[FIG. 259.



Rhombic Tables of Cholesterin.]

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, Bd. ii (1869), S. 367, and Bd. iv (1871), S. 95.

[2] For further particulars see Meissner, op. cit., and Meissner and Solly, Zeitschr. f. rat. Med. (3), Bd. xxiv, S. 97.

needles from its solution in ether, chloroform, or benzol; from its hot alcoholic solutions it is deposited on cooling in rhombic tables. (Fig. 259.) When dried it melts at 145°, and distils in closed vessels at 360°. It is quite insoluble in water and cold alcohol; soluble in solutions of bile salts.

Solutions of cholesterin possess a left-handed rotatory action on polarized light, of —32° for yellow light, this being independent of concentration and of the nature of the solvent.

Heated with strong sulphuric acid it yields a hydrocarbon; with concentrated nitric it gives cholesteric acid and other products. It is capable of uniting with acids and forming compound ethers.

Cholesterin occurs in small quantities in the blood and many tissues, and is present in abundance in the white matter of the cerebro-spinal axis and in nerves. It is a constant constituent of bile, forming frequently nearly the whole mass of gallstones. It is found in many pathological fluids, hydrocele, the fluid of ovarial cysts, etc.

Preparation.—From gallstones by simple extraction with boiling alcohol, and treatment with alcoholic potash to free from extraneous matter.

As tests for this substance may be given: With concentrated sulphuric acid and a little iodine a violet color is obtained, changing through green to red. This is applicable to the microscopic crystals. After dissolving in sulphuric acid a blood-red solution is formed on the addition of chloroform, changing to purple, and finally becoming colorless; the sulphuric acid under the chloroform has a green fluorescence. After evaporation to dryness with nitric acid, the residue turns red on treating with ammonia.

This body is described here rather for the sake of convenience than from its possessing any close relationship to the substances immediately preceding.

COMPLEX NITROGENOUS FATS.

Lecithin. $C_{44}H_{90}NPO_9$.

Occurs widely spread throughout the body. Blood, bile, and serous fluids contain it in small quantities, while it is a conspicuous component of the brain, nerves, yolk of egg, semen, pus, white blood-corpuscles, and the electrical organs of the ray.

When pure, it is a colorless, slightly crystalline substance, which can be kneaded, but often crumbles during the process. It is readily soluble in cold, exceedingly so in hot alcohol; ether dissolves it freely though in less quantities, so also do chloroform, fats, benzol, carbon disulphide, etc. It is often obtained from its alcoholic solution, by evaporation, in the form of oily drops. It swells up in water, and in this state yields a flocculent precipitate with sodium chloride.

Lecithin is easily decomposed; not only does this decomposition set in at 70° C., but the solutions, if merely allowed to stand at the ordinary temperature, acquire an acid reaction, and the substance is decomposed. Acids and alkalies, of course, effect this much more rapidly. If heated with baryta-water it is completely decomposed, the products being neurin, glycerinphosphoric acid, and barium stearate. This may be thus represented:

$$\overset{\text{Lecithin.}}{C_{44}H_{90}NPO_9} + 3H_2O = \overset{\text{Stearic Acid.}}{2C_{18}H_{36}O_2} + \overset{\substack{\text{Glycerinphosphoric} \\ \text{Acid.}}}{C_3H_9PO_6} + \overset{\text{Neurin.}}{C_5H_{15}NO_2}.$$

When treated in an ethereal solution with dilute sulphuric acid, it is merely split up into neurin and distearyl-glycerinphosphoric acid. Hence Diakonow[1] regards lecithin as the distearyl-glycerinphosphate of neurin, two atoms of hydrogen in the glycerinphosphoric acid being replaced by the radical of stearic acid. It appears also that there probably exist other analogous compounds in which the radicals of oleic and palmitic acids take part.

Preparation.—Usually from the yolk of egg, where it occurs in union with vitellin. Its isolation is complicated, and the reader is referred to Hoppe-Seyler.[2]

Glycerinphosphoric acid. $C_3H_9PO_6$.

Occurs as a product of the decomposition of lecithin, and hence is found in those tissues and fluids in which this latter is present; in leuchæmia the urine is said to contain this substance. It has not been obtained in the solid form. It has been produced synthetically by heating glycerin and glacial phosphoric acid; it may be regarded as formed by the union of one molecule of glycerin with one of phosphoric acid, with elimination of one molecule of water. It is a dibasic acid; its salts with baryta and calcium are insoluble in alcohol, soluble in cold water. Solutions of its salts are precipitated by lead acetate.

Protagon. ($C_{160}H_{308}N_5PO_{35}$?)

A crystalline body, containing nitrogen and phosphorus, obtained by Liebreich[3] from the brain-substance, and regarded by him as its principal constituent. The researches of Hoppe-Seyler and Diakonow tended to show that protagon was merely a mixture of lecithin and cerebrin. A repetition of Liebreich's experiments has led Gamgee and Blankenhorn[4] to confirm the truth of his results. Protagon appears to separate out in the form of very small needles, often arranged in groups, from warm alcohol by gradual cooling; it is slightly soluble in cold, more soluble in hot alcohol and ether. It is insoluble in water, but swells up and forms a gelatinous mass. It melts at 200° C. and forms a brown syrupy fluid.

---

[1] Hoppe-Seyler's Med. chem. Untersuch., Heft ii (1867), S. 221, Heft iii (1868), S. 405. Centralb. f. d. med. Wiss. (1868), Nr. 1, 7, u. 28.

[2] Med. chem. Untersuch., Heft ii (1867), S. 215.

[3] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 134, S. 29.

[4] Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chem., Bd. iii (1879), S. 260, and Jl. of Physiol., vol. ii (1874), p. 113.

Preparation.—Finely divided brain-substance, freed from blood and connective tissue, is digested at 45° C. with alcohol (85 per cent.) as long as the alcohol extracts anything from it. The protagon, which separates out from the filtrate, is well washed with ether to get rid of all cholesterin and other bodies soluble in ether, and finally purified by repeated crystallization from warm alcohol.

Neurin. (Cholin.) $C_5H_{15}NO_2$.

Discovered by Strecker[1] in pig's-gall, then in ox-gall. It does not occur either in the free state or apart from lecithin. It is a colorless fluid, of oily consistence, possesses a strong alkaline reaction, and forms with acids very deliquescent salts. The salts with hydrochloric acid and the chlorides of platinum and gold are the most important.

Neurin is a most unstable body, mere heating of its aqueous solution sufficing to split it up into glycol, trimethylamin and ethylene oxide.

Preparation.—From yolk of egg. For this see Diakonow.[2]

Wurtz[3] has obtained it synthetically, first by the action of glycol hydrochloride on trimethylamin, and then by that of ethylene oxide and water on the same substance. The above, together with the mode of its decomposition, point to the idea that neurin may be regarded as trimethyl-oxyethyl-ammonium hydrate, $N(CH_3)_3(C_2H_5O)OH$.

Cerebrin. ($C_{17}H_{33}NO_3$?)

Is found in the axis cylinder of nerves, in pus-corpuscles, and largely in the brain. In former times many names were given to the substance when in an impure state, *ex. gr.*, cerebric acid, cerebrote, etc. W. Müller[4] first prepared it in the pure form, and constructed the above formula from his analyses; the mean of these is O, 15.85; H, 11.2; N, 4.5; C, 68.45. Great doubts are, however, thrown upon its purity by the researches of later observers. According to Liebreich[5] and Diakonow,[6] it is a glucoside.

Cerebrin is a light, colorless, exceedingly hygroscopic powder, which swells up strongly in water, slowly in the cold, rapidly on heating. When heated to 80° it turns brown, and at a somewhat higher temperature melts, bubbles up, and finally burns away. It is insoluble in cold alcohol or ether; warm alcohol dissolves it easily. Heated with dilute mineral acids, cerebrin yields a sugar-like body, possessing left-handed rotation, but incapable of fermentation.

Preparation.—For this see W. Müller.[7]

---

[1] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 123, S. 353; Bd. 148, S. 76.

[2] Op. cit. (sub. Lecithin).

[3] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Sup. Bd. 6, S. 116, u. 197.

[4] Ibid., Bd. 105, S. 361.

[5] Arch. f. pathol. Anat., Bd. 39 (1867).

[6] Centralb. f. d. med. Wiss., 1868, No. 7.

[7] Op. cit.

NITROGENOUS METABOLITES.

THE UREA GROUP, AMIDES, AND SIMILAR BODIES.

Urea. $(NH_2)_2CO$.

The chief constituent of normal urine in mammalia, and some other animals; the urine of birds also contains a small amount. Normal blood, serous fluids, lymph, and the liver, all contain the same body in traces. It is not found in the muscles as a normal constituent, but may make its appearance there under certain pathological conditions.

When pure it crystallizes from a concentrated solution in the form of long, thin, glittering needles. If deposited slowly from dilute solutions, the form is that of four-sided prisms with pyramidal ends; these are always anhydrous. It possesses a somewhat bitter cooling taste, like saltpetre. It is readily soluble in water and alcohol, the solutions being neutral. In anhydrous ether it is insoluble. The crystals may be heated to 120° C. without being decomposed; at a higher temperature they are first liquefied and then burn, leaving no residue. Heated with strong acids or alkalies, decomposition ensues, the final products being carbonic anhydride and ammonia. The same decomposition may also occur as the result of the action of a specific ferment on urea in an aqueous solution.[1] Nitrous acid at once decomposes it into carbonic anhydride and free nitrogen. It readily forms compounds with acids and bases; of these the following are of importance:

Nitrate of urea. $(NH_2)_2CO \,.\, HNO_3$.

Crystallizes in six-sided or rhombic tables. Insoluble in ether and nitric acid, soluble in water, slightly soluble in alcohol.

Oxalate of urea. $(H(NN_2)_2CO)_2 \,.\, H_2C_2O_4 + H_2O$.

Often crystallizes in long thin prisms, but under the microscope is obtained in a form closely resembling the nitrate; it is slightly soluble in water, less so in alcohol.

With mercuric nitrate urea yields three salts, containing respectively, 4, 3, and 2 equivalents of mercury to one of urea. The first is the precipitate formed in Liebig's quantitative determination of urea. The exact constitution of these salts has not yet been determined.

Preparation.—Ammonic sulphate and potassic cyanate are mixed together in aqueous solution, and the mixture is evaporated to dryness. The residue when extracted with absolute alcohol yields urea. From urine, either by evaporating to dryness, and then extracting with alcohol, or concentrating only to a syrup, and then forming the

---

[1] Musculus, Pflüger's Archiv, Bd. xii (1876), S. 214.

is treated with nitric acid containing nitrous f
nitrogen and carbonic anhydride will be obta
nitric acid in excess and a little mercury are
is warmed. In presence of urea a *colorle*
and CO_2) is given off. A fifth portion is ke
dissolved in water, and cupric sulphate and
a red or violet color, due to biuret, is develo

Urea is generally considered as being an
The amide of an acid is formed when wate
ammonium salt of the acid; if the acid be
cules of water be removed, the result is
diamide. Thus if from ammonic carbonate
cules of water, $2H_2O$, be removed, carbon
acid, the result is urea; thus:

$$(NH_4)_2CO_3 + 2H_2O = (N$$

which may be written either according to t

$$\left.\begin{matrix}CO\\ H_2\\ H_2\end{matrix}\right\} N_2 \qquad \text{or as} \qquad C$$

atoms of amidogen (NH_2) being substit
hydroxyl (HO).

The connection between carbonic acid a
fact that not only may urea be formed out o
by dehydration, but also ammonium carbo
of urea by hydration, as when urea is subj
ment mentioned above. Regarded then a
acid, urea may be spoken of as carbamid
inclined to regard it, not as the diamide of
amide of carbamic acid. Ammonium car
H_2O, gives urea, CO, N_2, H_4—which, if ca
CO, OH, NH_2, may be written as CO,
amidogen being substituted for *one* atom o

It is important to remember that urea is also isomeric with ammonium cyanate, $C\left\{\begin{matrix}N\\ONH_4\end{matrix}\right.$, and, indeed, was first formed artificially by Wöhler from this body. We thus have three isomeric compounds, ammonium cyanate, urea, and carbamide, related to each other in such a way that urea may be obtained readily either from ammonium cyanate or from ammonium carbonate, and may with the greatest ease be converted into ammonium carbonate. Now urea is a much more stable body than ammonium cyanate, and in the transformation of the latter into the former energy is set free; and it is worthy of notice that though the presence of sulphocyanides in the saliva probably indicates the existence of cyanic residues in the body, the nitrogenous products of the decomposition of proteids belong chiefly to the class of amides, cyanogen compounds being rare among them. Pflüger[1] has called attention to the great molecular energy of the cyanogen compounds, and has suggested that the functional metabolism of protoplasm by which energy is set free, may be compared to the conversion of the energetic unstable cyanogen compounds into the less energetic and more stable amides. In other words, ammonium cyanate is a type of living, and urea of dead nitrogen, and the conversion of the former into the latter is an image of the essential change which takes place when a living proteid dies.

Compound Ureas.—The hydrogen atoms of urea can be replaced by alcohol and acid radicals. The results are compound ureas. Many of them are called acids, since the hydrogen from the amide group, if not all replaced as above, can be replaced by a metal. Thus the substitution of oxalyl (oxalic acid) gives parabanic acid,

$$N_2\left\{\begin{matrix}CO\\H_2\\C_2O_2\end{matrix}\right. \text{or } CO, NH_2, N\,.\,C_2O_2;$$

of tartronyl (tartronic acid), dialuric acid, $CO, NH_2, N\,.\,C_3H_2O_3$; of mesoxalyl (mesoxalic acid), alloxan, $CO, NH_2, N\,.\,C_3O_3$. These bodies are interesting as being also obtained by the artificial oxidation of uric acid.

Uric acid. $C_5H_4N_4O_3$.

The chief constituent of the urine in birds and reptiles; it occurs only sparingly in this excretion in man and most mammalia. It is normally present in the spleen, and traces of it have been found in the lungs, muscles of the heart, pancreas, brain, and liver. Urinary and renal calculi often consist largely of this body, or its salts. In gout, accumulations of uric acid salts may occur in various parts of the body, forming the so-called gouty concretions.

It is when pure a colorless, crystalline powder, tasteless, and without odor. The crystalline form is very variable, but usually tends towards that of rhombic tables.[2] When impure it crystallizes readily, but then possesses a yellowish or brownish color. In water it is very insoluble (1 in 14,000 or 15,000 of cold water); ether and alcohol do not dissolve it appreciably. On the other hand, sulphuric acid takes it up without decomposition, and it is also readily soluble in many salts of the alkalies, as in the alkalies themselves. Ammonia, however, scarcely dissolves it.

---

[1] Pflüger's Archiv, Bd. x (1875), S. 337.

[2] See Ultzmann and K. B. Hoffman, Atlas der Harnsedimente, Wien, 1872.

Salts of Uric Acid.—Of these the most important are the acid urates of sodium, potassium, and ammonium. The sodium salt crystallizes in many different forms, these not being characteristic, since they are almost the same for the corresponding compounds of the other two bases. It is very insoluble in cold water (1 in 1100 or 1200), more soluble in hot (1 in 125). It is the principal constituent of several forms of urinary sediment, and composes a large part of many calculi; the excrement of snakes contains it largely. The potassium resembles the sodium salt very closely, as also does the compound with ammonium; the latter occurs generally in the sediment from alkaline urine.

Preparation.—Usually from guano or snake's excrement. From guano by boiling with caustic potash (1 part alkali to 20 of water) as long as ammonia is evolved. In the filtrate a precipitate of acid urate of potassium is formed by passing a current of carbonic anhydride, and this salt is then decomposed by excess of hydrochloric acid.

The presence of uric acid is recognized by the following tests. The substance having been examined microscopically, a portion is evaporated *carefully* to dryness with one or two drops of nitric acid. The residue will, if uric acid is present, be of a red color, which on the addition of ammonia turns to purple. This is the murexide test, and depends on the presence of alloxan and alloxantin in the residue. Schiff[1] has given a delicate reaction for uric acid. The substance is dissolved in sodic carbonate, and dropped on paper moistened with a silver salt. If uric acid be present a brown stain is formed, due to the reduction of the silver carbonate. An alkaline solution of uric acid can, like dextrose, reduce cupric sulphate, with precipitation of the cuprous oxide.

Unlike urea, uric acid cannot be formed artificially; and unlike urea and the urea compounds, it resists very largely the action of even strong acids and alkalies. This last fact would seem to indicate that urea residues do not pre-exist in uric acid; nevertheless by oxidation uric acid does give rise, not only to ordinary urea, but also, and at the same time, to the compound ureas spoken of above. Thus by oxidation with acids,

$$\overset{\text{Uric acid.}}{C_5H_4N_4O_3} + H_2O + O = \overset{\text{Alloxan.}}{C_4N_2H_2O_4} + \overset{\text{Urea.}}{CN_2H_4O}.$$

Now alloxan, as was stated above, is a compound urea, viz., mesoxalyl-urea, and by hydration can be converted into mesoxalic acid and urea, thus:

---

[1] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 109, S. 65.

$$\underset{\text{Alloxan.}}{C_4N_2H_2O_4} + 2H_2O = \underset{\text{Mesoxalic acid.}}{C_3H_2O_5} + \underset{\text{Urea.}}{CN_2H_4O};$$

and by the action of chlorine uric acid can be split up directly into a molecule of mesoxalic acid and two molecules of urea:

$$\underset{\text{Uric acid.}}{C_5H_4N_4O_3} + Cl_2 + 4H_2O = \underset{\text{Mesoxalic acid.}}{C_3H_2O_5} + \underset{\text{Urea.}}{2CN_2H_4O} + 2HCl.$$

By oxidation with alkalies, uric acid is converted into allantoin and carbonic acid:

$$\underset{\text{Uric acid.}}{C_5H_4N_4O_3} + H_2O + O = \underset{\text{Allantoin.}}{C_4H_6N_4O_3} + CO_2;$$

and allantoin, by hydration, becomes allanturic or lantanuric acid and urea:

$$\underset{\text{Allantoin.}}{C_4H_6N_4O_3} + H_2O = \underset{\text{Urea.}}{CH_4N_2O} + \underset{\text{Allanturic acid.}}{C_3H_4N_2O}.$$

Now allanturic acid is a compound urea, with a residue of glyoxylic acid. By other oxidations of uric acid, parabanic acid (oxalyl-urea), oxaluric acid (which is hydrated parabanic acid), and dialuric acid (tartronyl-urea) are obtained. In fact all these decompositions of a molecule of uric acid lead to two molecules of urea and a carbon acid of some kind or other.

There are, however, reasons for thinking that before the urea can be obtained from the uric acid a molecular change takes place; that part of the nitrogen of uric acid exists as a cyanogen residue, which on the splitting up of the uric acid is converted into the same condition as the rest of the nitrogen, viz., into the amide condition. It has been supposed, indeed, that uric acid is tartronyl-cyanamide, in which two molecules of amidogen have been replaced by the radical of tartronic acid, and two others by two atoms of cyanogen, thus:

$$(NH)_2(CN)_2C_3H_2O_3 \text{ or } N_2\left\{\begin{array}{l} C_3H_2O_3 \\ (CN)_2 \\ H_2 \end{array}\right.$$

If this be so, since the metabolism of the animals in which uric acid replaces urea cannot be supposed to be fundamentally different from that of the urea-producing animals, we may infer that the antecedent of both uric acid and urea in the regressive metabolism of proteids is, as we suggested above, a body containing some at least of its nitrogen in the form of cyanogen.

Kreatin. $C_4H_9N_3O_2$.

Occurs as a constant constituent of the juices of muscles, though possibly it may be formed during the process of extraction by the hydration of kreatinin. Kreatin is not a normal constituent of urine, but it is said to occur in traces in several fluids of the body. When found in urine its presence is probably due to the conversion of kreatinin, a constant constituent of urine, into kreatin during its extraction, since Dessaignes[1] has shown that the more rapidly the separation is effected, the less is the quantity of kreatin obtained, and the greater the amount of kreatinin.

In the anhydrous form it is white and opaque, but crystallizes with one molecule of water in colorless transparent rhombic prisms. It possesses a somewhat bitter taste, is soluble in cold, extremely soluble in hot water, is less soluble in absolute than in dilute alcohol, and is insoluble in ether.

It is a very weak base, scarcely neutralizing the weakest acids. It forms crystalline compounds with sulphuric, hydrochloric, and nitric acids.

Preparation.—From extract of muscle by precipitating completely with basic lead acetate, and crystallizing out the kreatin, mixed with kreatinin. From this latter it is separated by the formation of the zinc-salt of kreatinin, kreatin not readily yielding a similar compound.

Kreatin may be converted into kreatinin under the influence of acids, the transformation being one of simple dehydration.

Kreatin may be decomposed into sarcosin (methyl-glycin) and urea:

$$C_4H_9N_3O_2 + H_2O = C_3H_7NO_2 + CH_4N_2O;$$

it may be formed synthetically[2] by the action of sarcosin and cyanamide:

$$C_3H_7NO_2 + CH_2N_2 = C_4H_9N_3O.$$

Sarcosin is glycin in which one atom of hydrogen has been replaced by the alcohol radical methyl, thus:

$$\text{Glycin}\ \left.\begin{array}{c}C_2H_3O\\ NH_2\end{array}\right\}O\ \text{becomes}\ \left.\begin{array}{c}C_2H_2(CH_3)O\\ NH_2\end{array}\right\}O;$$

like glycin, sarcosin has not been found in a free state in the body.

Kreatinin. $C_4H_7N_3O$.

This, which is simply a dehydrated form of kreatin, occurs normally as a constant constituent of urine and of muscle extract. It crystallizes in colorless shining prisms, possessing a strong alkaline taste and reaction. It is readily soluble in cold water (1 in 11.5), also in alcohol, but is scarcely soluble in ether. It acts as a powerful alkali, forming with acids and salts compounds which crystallize well. Of these the most important is the salt with zinc chloride $(C_4H_7N_3O)\ Zn_2Cl_2$. It is formed when a concentrated solution of the chloride is added to a not too dilute solution of kreatinin. Since the compound is very little soluble in alcohol, it is better to use alcoholic rather than aqueous solutions. It crystallizes in warty lumps composed of aggregated masses of prisms or fine needles.

---

[1] J. Pharm. (3), Bd. xxxii, S. 41.

[2] Sitzungsber. d. bayersch. Akad., 1868, Hft. 3, S. 472.

Preparation.—Either by the action of acids on kreatin, or from human urine by concentrating and precipitating with lead acetate; in the filtrate from this a second precipitate is caused by the addition of mercuric chloride, and consists of a compound of this salt with kreatinin. The mercury is removed by sulphuretted hydrogen, and the kreatinin purified by the formation of the zinc salt and washing with alcohol.

Kreatinin-zinc chloride may be converted into kreatin by the action of hydrated oxide of lead on its boiling aqueous solution.

Allantoin. $C_4H_6N_4O_3$.

The characteristic constituent of the allantoic fluid of the fœtus; it occurs also in the urine of animals for a short period after their birth. Traces of it are sometimes detected in this excretion at a later date.

It crystallizes in small, shining, colorless prisms, which are tasteless and odorless. They are soluble in 160 parts of cold, more soluble in hot water, insoluble in cold alcohol and ether, soluble in hot alcohol. Carbonates of the alkalies dissolve them, and compounds may be formed of allantoin with metals, but not with acids.

Allantoin, as already stated, p. 955, is one of the products of the oxidation of uric acid, and by further oxidation gives rise to urea.

Preparation.—This is best done by the careful oxidation of uric acid either by means of potassium permanganate or ferrocyanide, or by plumbic oxide.

Hypoxanthin or Sarkin. $C_5H_4N_4O$.

Is a normal constituent of muscles, occurring also in the spleen, liver, and medulla of bones. In leucæmia it appears in the blood and urine. It crystallizes in fine needles, which are soluble in 300 parts of cold, more soluble in hot water, insoluble in alcohol, soluble in acids and alkalies. It forms crystalline compounds with acids and bases. It is precipitated by basic acetate of lead, the precipitate being soluble in a solution of the normal acetate. Its preparation from muscle-extract depends on its precipitation first by basic acetate of lead, and then by an ammoniacal solution of silver nitrate after the removal of kreatin.

Both hypoxanthin and the next body, xanthin, can also be obtained from proteids by the action of putrefactive changes, of water at boiling temperature, of dilute hydrochloric acid (.2 per cent.) at 40° C., and by the action of gastric and pancreatic ferments.[1] Chittenden has noticed a peculiar difference between fibrin- and egg-albumin when submitted to the above processes; he find that the latter does not yield hypoxanthin when treated with boiling water, with dilute hydrochloric acid, or gastric ferment, while the former does. Egg-albumin, on the other hand, yields hypoxanthin by the action of pancreatic ferment in alkaline solution, but not so readily as fibrin does.

---

[1] Salomon, Zeitschr. f. Physiol. Chem., Bd. ii (1878–79), S. 90. Kranze, Inaug. Diss., Berlin, 1878. Chittenden, Journ. of Physiol., vol. ii (1879), p. 28.

Xanthin. $C_5H_4N_4O_2$.

First discovered in a urinary calculus, and called xanthic oxide. More recently it has been found as a normal, though scanty, constituent of urine, muscles, and several organs, such as the liver, spleen, thymus, etc.

When precipitated by cooling from its hot, saturated, aqueous solution, it falls in white flocks, but if the solution be allowed to evaporate slowly it is obtained in small scales. When pure it is a colorless powder, very insoluble in water, requiring 1500 times its bulk for solution at 100° C. Insoluble in alcohol and ether, it readily dissolves in dilute acids and alkalies, forming crystallizable compounds.

Hypoxanthin by oxidation becomes xanthin. Both these bodies, as well as the following, guanin and carnin, are evidently closely allied to uric acid; indeed, uric acid by the action of sodium-amalgam may be converted into a mixture of xanthin and hypoxanthin.

Preparation.—It is obtained from urine and the aqueous extract of muscle by a process similar to that for hypoxanthin, and is then separated from the latter by the action of dilute hydrochloric acid; this separation depends on the different solubilities of the hydrochlorates of the two bodies. For further information see Neubauer.[1]

Carnin. $C_7H_8N_4O_3$.

Discovered by Weidel[2] in extract of meat, of which it constitutes about one per cent.

It crystallizes in white masses composed of very small irregular crystals; it is soluble with difficulty in cold, more easily soluble in hot water, insoluble in alcohol and ether. Its aqueous solution is not precipitated by normal lead acetate, but is by the basic acetate of this metal. It unites with acids and salts, forming crystalline compounds.

Preparation.—It is found in the precipitate caused in extract of meat by basic acetate of lead.[3]

This body possesses an interesting relation to hypoxanthin, into which it may be converted by the action of either nitric acid, or, still better, of bromine.

---

[1] Harn-Analyze, ed. vii (1876), S. 24.

[2] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 158, S. 365.

[3] See Weidel, op. cit.

Guanin. $C_5H_5N_5O$.

First obtained from guano, but recently observed as occurring in small quantities in the pancreas, liver, and muscle extract.

It is a white amorphous powder, insoluble in water, alcohol, ether, and ammonia. It unites with acids, alkalies, and salts to form crystallizable compounds.

Preparation.—From guano by boiling successively with milk of lime and caustic soda, precipitating with acetic acid, and purifying by solution in hydrochloric acid and precipitation by ammonia.

Guanin may, by the action of nitrous acid, be converted into xanthin. By oxidation it can be made to yield principally guanidine and parabanic acid, accompanied, however, by small quantities of urea, xanthin, and oxalic acid.

Its separation from hypoxanthin and xanthin depends on its insolubility in water and behavior with hydrochloric acid.

Kynurenic acid. $C_{20}H_{14}N_2O_6 + 2H_2O$.

Found in the urine of dogs, and first described by Liebig.[1] When pure it crystallizes in brilliant white needles, insoluble in cold, soluble in hot alcohol. The only salt of this body which crystallizes well is that formed with barium. For preparation and other particulars see Liebig[2] and Schultzen and Schmiedeberg.[3]

Glycin. $C_2H_2(NH_2)O(OH)$. Also called Glycocoll and Glycocine.

Does not occur in a free state in the human body, but enters into the composition of many important substances, *ex. gr.*, hippuric and bile acids. It crystallizes in large, colorless, hard rhombohedra, which are easily soluble in water, insoluble in cold, slightly soluble in hot alcohol, insoluble in ether. It possesses an acid reaction, but a sweet taste. It has also the property of uniting with both acids and bases, to form crystallizable compounds. In this it exhibits its amide nature, and that it is an amide is rendered evident from the methods of its synthetic preparation; thus mono-chlor-acetic acid and ammonia give glycin and ammonium chloride: $C_2H_3ClO_2 + 2NH_3 = C_2H_2(NH_2)O(OH) + NH_4Cl$. It is amido-acetic acid. Heated with caustic baryta it yields ammonia and methylamine.

Preparation.—From glutin by the action of acids or alkalies; from hippuric acid by decomposing this with hydrochloric acid at a boiling temperature and removing by precipitation the simultaneously formed benzoic acid.

Taurin. $C_2H_7NO_3S$.

In addition to entering into the composition of taurocholic acid (see p. 965), taurin is found in traces in the juices of muscle and of the lungs.

---

[1] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 86, S. 125, and Bd. 108, S. 354.

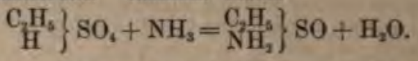
[2] Op. cit.

[3] Ann. d. Chem. u. Pharm., Bd. 164, S. 155.

It crystallizes in colorless, regular, six-sided prisms; these are readily soluble in water, less so in alcohol. The solutions are neutral. It is a very stable compound, resisting temperatures of less than 240° C.; it is not acted on by dilute alkalies and acids, even when boiled with them. It is not precipitated by metallic salts.

Taurin is amido-isethionic acid; and may be synthetically prepared from isethionic (ethyl-sulphuric) acid by the action of ammonia; thus:

Isethionic acid. Ammonia. Taurin.



$$\left.\begin{matrix}C_2H_5\\H\end{matrix}\right\}SO_4 + NH_3 = \left.\begin{matrix}C_2H_5\\NH_2\end{matrix}\right\}SO + H_2O.$$

Preparation.—As a product of the decomposition of bile, and is purified by removing any traces of bile acids by means of lead acetate, and then successfully crystallizing from water.

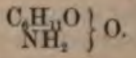
Leucin. $C_6H_{13}NO_2$.

Is one of the principal products of the decomposition of nitrogenous matter, either under the influence of putrefaction or of strong acids and alkalies. It occurs, however, normally in the pancreas, spleen, thymus, thyroid, salivary glands, liver, etc., and is one of the products of the tryptic (pancreatic) digestion of proteids; in acute atrophy of the liver it is present in the urine in large quantity, in company with tyrosin.

As usually obtained in an impure form it crystallizes in rounded lumps which are often collected together, and sometimes exhibit radiating striation. When pure, it forms very thin, white, glittering flat crystals. These are easily soluble in hot water, less so in cold water and alcohol, insoluble in ether. They feel oily to the touch, and are without smell and taste. Acids and alkalies dissolve them readily, and crystallizable compounds are formed.

Carefully heated to 170° it sublimes, but at a higher temperature is decomposed, yielding amylamin, carbonic anhydride, and ammonia. In the presence of putrefying animal matter it splits up into valeric acid and ammonia; in this it exhibits its amide nature.

Leucin is amido-caproic acid, and may be written thus:



$$\left.\begin{matrix}C_6H_{10}O\\NH_2\end{matrix}\right\}O.$$

Preparation.—From horn shavings by boiling with sulphuric acids, neutralizing with baryta and separating from tyrosin by successive crystallization. See also Kühne,[1] who prepares it by the action of pancreatic ferments on proteids.

Scherer has given the following test for leucin. The suspected substance is evaporated carefully to dryness with nitric acid; the residue, if it is leucin, will be almost transparent and turn yellow or brown on the addition of caustic soda. If heated again with the alkali an oily drop is obtained, which is quite characteristic of this substance. Leucin, if not too impure, may be easily recognized by its subliming on being heated; a characteristic odor of amylamin is at the same time evolved.

---

[1] Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 39, S. 130.

Cystin. $C_3H_7NSO_2$.

Is the chief constituent of a rarely occurring urinary calculus in men and dogs. It may also occur in renal concretions, and in gravel.

From calculi it is obtained by extraction with ammonia, as colorless six-sided tables or rhombohedra, which are neutral and tasteless. It is insoluble in water, alcohol, and ether; soluble in ammonia and the other alkalies, and also in mineral acids. The fact that this body is one of the few crystalline substances, occurring physiologically, which contain sulphur, renders its detection very easy. Apart from its insolubility in water, etc., it yields with caustic potash and salts of either silver or lead a brown coloration, due to the presence of the sulphides of these metals.

According to Dewar and Gamgee[1] cystin is amido-sulpho-pyruvic acid, and its formula is $C_3H_5NSO_2$—pyruvic being lactic acid minus two atoms of hydrogen.

THE AROMATIC SERIES.

Benzoic acid. $HC_7H_5O_2$.

This is not found as a normal constituent of the body, but owes its presence in urine to the decomposition of hippuric acid, whereby glycin and benzoic acid are formed:

$$\underset{\text{Hippuric acid.}}{C_2H_4(C_7H_5O)NO_2} + H_2O = \underset{\text{Glycin.}}{C_2H_5NO_2} + \underset{\text{Benzoic acid.}}{C_7H_6O_2}.$$

The sublimed acid is generally crystallized in fine needles, which are light and glistening; any odor they possess is not due to the acid, but to an essential oil with which they are mixed. When precipitated from solution the crystalline form is always indistinct. This acid is soluble in 200 parts cold or 25 parts of boiling water, but is easily soluble in alcohol or ether. It sublimes readily at 145° C. It also passes off in the vapors arising from its heated solutions.

Preparation.—Either as above from hippuric acid by fermentation, or the action of hydrochloric acid, or by sublimation from gum-benzoin.

Tyrosin. $C_9H_{11}NO_3$.

Generally accompanies leucin, and is, perhaps, found normally in small quantities in the pancreas and spleen. It is also usually obtained in large quantities by the decomposition of proteid matter either by putrefaction or the action of acids.

---

[1] Journ. of Anat. and Physiol., Nov. 1870, p. 143.

The researches of Radziejewsky[1] render it probable that tyrosin does not occur normally in any part of the human organism, except as a product of pancreatic digestion.

It crystallizes in exceedingly fine needles, which are usually collected into feathery masses. The crystals are snow-white, tasteless, and odorless, almost insoluble in cold water; readily soluble in hot water, acids, and alkalies; insoluble in alcohol and ether. If crystallized from an alkaline solution tyrosin often assumes the form of rosettes composed of fine needles arranged radiately.

Tyrosin does not sublime by heating, but is decomposed with an odor of phenol and nitrobenzol. On boiling with Millon's reagent it gives a reaction almost identical with that for proteids (Hoffmann's test). Treated with strong sulphuric acid and gently warmed, it yields, on the addition of chloride of iron, a velvet color (Piria's test).

Tyrosin is an ammonia compound, belonging to the aromatic (benzoic) series.

Preparation.—By means similar to those employed for leucin, the separation of the two depending on their solubilities. According to Kühne's method[2] large quantities are easily obtained as the result of pancreatic digestion. It has not yet been formed synthetically.

Hippuric acid. $C_9H_9NO_3$. Or Benzoyl-glycin. $C_2H_4(C_7H_5O)NO_2$.

Is found in considerable quantities in the urine of herbivora, and also, though to a smaller amount, in the urine of man. It is formed in the body by the union with dehydration of glycin and benzoic acid. (See p. 558.)

Crystallized from a saturated aqueous solution, it assumes the form of fine needles; if from a more dilute solution, white, semi-transparent four-sided prisms are obtained. These, when pure, are odorless, with a somewhat bitter taste. They are soluble in 600 parts of cold water; readily soluble in alcohol; less so in ether. All the solutions redden litmus.

Hippuric acid is monobasic, and forms salts which are readily soluble in water (except the iron salts); from these, if in sufficiently concentrated solutions, excess of hydrochloric acid precipitates the acid in fine needles. When heated with concentrated mineral acids it is resolved into benzoic acid and glycin. The same decomposition occurs in presence of putrefying bodies. Strong nitric acid produces an odor of nitrobenzol.

Preparation.—*Fresh* urine of horses or cows is boiled with milk of lime, filtered, and the filtrate evaporated to a small bulk; the hippuric acid is then precipitated by adding an excess of hydrochloric acid.

When heated in a small tube, hippuric acid gives a sublimate of benzoic acid and ammonium benzoate, accompanied by an odor like that of new hay, while oily, red drops are observed in the tube. This is very characteristic, and distinguishes it from benzoic acid.

---

[1] Archiv f. path. Anat., Bd. 36, S. 1. Zeitsch. f. anal. Chem., Bd. 5, S. 466.

[2] Op. cit. (sub Leucin).

Phenylic (*Carbolic*) *acid.* C_6H_6O.

This acid occurs only as a urinary constituent. According to the older view it was a normal constituent of this excretion; it seems, however, more probable that it is due to some decomposition occurring in the urine, by the processes requisite for its isolation.

Buliginsky[1] says the urine of many animals, of cows and horses always, contains a substance insoluble in alcohol and not precipitated by lead acetate and ammonia, which by the action of dilute mineral acids gives carbolic acid. The same acid applied to the body externally or internally also passes into the urine.[2] Similarly benzol (C_6H_6) when taken into the stomach appears as carbolic acid in the urine.[3]

The pure acid crystallizes in long, colorless, prismatic needles; they melt at 35° C., and boil at 180° C. It is readily soluble in alcohol and ether, slightly soluble in water (1 part in 20). In most cases it acts as a weak acid, forming crystalline salts with the alkalies. With nitric acid it yields picric acid. Its solutions reduce silver and mercury salts.

Preparation.—By the dry distillation of salicylic acid, also from the acid products of the distillation of coal.

THE BILE SERIES.

Cholic (*or Cholalic*) *acid.* $H.C_{24}H_{39}O_5 + H_2O$.

Occurs in traces in the small intestine, in larger quantities in the contents of the large intestine, and the excrements of men, cows, and dogs. In icterus, the urine often contains traces of this acid. But its principal interest lies in its being the starting-point for the various bile acids (see below). The pure acid may be amorphous, or crystalline, in the latter case crystallizing from hot alcoholic solutions in tetrahedra. These crystals are insoluble in water and ether. In the amorphous form, it is somewhat soluble in water and ether. Heated to 200° C., it is converted into water and dyslysin ($C_{24}H_{36}O_3$).

This acid possesses, in the anhydrous condition, a specific rotatory power of + 50° for yellow light; when it crystallizes with H_2O, the rotation is + 35°. The rotatory power of the alkali salts are always less than the above, and when in solution in alcohol the rotation is independent of the concentration. For the alcoholic solution of the sodium salt the rotation is + 31.4°.

Preparation.—By the decompositions of bile-acids by means of acids, alkalies, or fermentative changes.

---

[1] Hoppe-Seyler, Med. chem. Untersuch., Heft 2 (1867), S. 234.

[2] Almén, Neues Jahrb. d. Pharm., Bd. 34, S. 111. Salkowski, Pflüger's Archiv, Bd. v (1871–72), S. 335.

[3] Schultzen and Naunyn, Reichert u. Du Bois-Reymond's Archiv, 1867, Heft 3, S. 349.

in presence of sugar and
tion of the acid a little sugar be add
keeping the temperature below but not
tiful reddish-purple is obtained. This
trum with two absorption bands, one b
E, the other close to F on the red side

Proteids, and other bodies easily dec
such as amyl-alcohol, gives a similar col
much impeded by the presence of color

Glycocholic acid. $C_{26}H_{43}NO_6$.

This is the principal bile-acid of ox-g
bile of man, but has so far not been ob
In icterus the urine may contain traces

It crystallizes in fine, glistening needl
ble in cold water; readily so in hot wate
ether. They possess a bitter and yet sw
reaction.

The salts of this acid are readily sol
well. The salts, as well as the free acid,
tion amounting to + 29.0° for the acid,
salt, both measured for yellow light.

Glycocholic acid is a compound of glyc

Cholalic acid. Glycin.

$$C_{24}H_{40}O_5 + C_2NH_5O_2 - H_2O$$

Prolonged boiling with dilute mineral
composes this body into glycin and cholic
centrated sulphuric acid and then warme
removed, and cholonic acid obtained, $C_{26}H$
this last acid is insoluble in water, which
cholonic acid possesses nearly the same
glycocholic.

Taurocholic acid. $C_{26}H_{45}NSO_7$.

Occurs also in ox-gall, but is found especially plentiful in human bile and that of carnivora.

It has not yet been obtained in the crystalline form,[1] although its salts crystallize readily. When dried it is an amorphous powder, with pure bitter taste, easily soluble in water and alcohol, insoluble in ether. All its salts are soluble in water, and are precipitated by basic lead acetate only in the presence of free ammonia. The sodium salt dissolved in alcohol has a specific rotatory power of $+24.5°$; if dissolved in water this rotation is less, and in this respect it resembles glycocholic acid.

This acid is far more unstable than the preceding one, being decomposed if boiled with water. The products of decomposition are taurin and cholalic acid.

Taurocholic acid is a compound of taurin and cholalic acid; thus:

$$\underset{\text{Cholalic acid.}}{C_{24}H_{40}O_5} + \underset{\text{Taurin.}}{C_2H_7NO_3S} - H_2O = \underset{\text{Taurocholic acid.}}{C_{26}H_{45}NO_7S}.$$

Preparation.—From the gall of dogs by a process similar to that for glycocholic acid. It is separated from traces of this latter and from cholic acid by preparation with basic lead acetate and ammonia.

THE INDIGO SERIES.

Indican.

There often occurs[2] in the urine and sweat of men and animals a certain substance which has not yet been satisfactorily isolated, but which yields by the action of acids the blue coloring matter indigo as one product of the decomposition. A similar substance is found in several plants (Indigofera, Isatis), and the two were considered by Schunck to be identical. Hoppe-Seyler,[3] on the other hand, having regard to the greater ease with which the indican from plants undergoes decomposition, regards them as most probably different substances. Baumann showed[4] that the two were really different, and has confirmed his previous results in a recent publication.[5] According to him, the indican obtained from urine is not a glucoside (so also Hoppe-Seyler), and yields sulphuric acid by the action of hydrochloric acid. He assigns to it the formula $KC_8H_6NSO_4$.

Indican appears in urine, according to Jaffé and other observers, as the result of the presence of indol in the alimentary canal.

It is always estimated by conversion into indigo.

---

[1] Neubauer u. Vogel, Harn-Analyse, Ed. vii (1876), S. 97.

[2] Schunck, Phil. Mag., vol. x, p. 73; xiv, p. 228; xv, pp. 29, 117, 183. Chem. Centralb., 1856, S. 50; 1857, S. 957; 1858, S. 225. Hoppe-Seyler, Arch. f. path. Anat., Bd. xxvii, S. 388. Jaffé, Pflüger's Arch., Bd. iii (1870), S. 448.

[3] Handb. d. path. chem. Anal., Ed. iv (1875), S. 191.

[4] Pflüger's Arch., Bd. xiii (1876), S. 301. Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chem., Bd. i (1877–78), S. 60.

[5] Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chem., Bd. iii (1879), S. 254.

body a reddish copper-colored mark is left,
the same color if seen in reflected light.

The soluble compounds with sulphuric
band in the spectrum which lies close to th
side of it. This may be used to detect indi

Treated with reducing agents, indigo is d
to indigo-white. The latter contains two at
indigo.

Indol. C_8H_7N.

To this body the specific odor of the fa
obtained as the final product of the reducti
the distillation of proteid matter with caus

It often occurs among the products of
ferment on proteids; its presence in such ca
be due, not to the action of the trypsin
putrefaction under the influence of bacteria
digestion be carried on in the presence of sa
make its appearance; see p. 327. Indol
color with nitrous acid.

Skatol.—Noticed by Brieger[3] as one of t
of putrefactive changes in the small intes
viously described a similar substance as ris
of albumin.

Skatol is crystalline and contains nitrog
water than indol, and does not give rise t
nitrous acid. No formula has as yet been

Skatol readily passes into the urine whe
tary canal, and then gives a violet-red re
chloric acid.

v. Nencki[4] prepares this substance by th
of finely divided pancreas and muscle-subs

INDEX.

Aberration, spherical, of the eye, 649
Absorption by the skin, 501
Absorption of fat, proteids, and products of digestion, 388, 401
Absorption of food by diffusion, 399, 400
Accelerating fibres, vaso-motor, 162
Accelerator nerves, 244, 251, 285
Accommodation, power of, in the eye, 634; mechanism of, 640
Acetic acid, 940; action on red blood-corpuscles, 48
Achroodextrin, 298, 537
Acid-albumin, 308, 913, 930
Acidity of urine, 509
Acids, decomposition of proteids by, 926
Acids in perspiration, 495
Aconite, action on heart, 235; on the respiratory centres, 461
Acoustic apparatus of the ear, 709
Adamuk on the brain, 816, 820
Adipose tissue. (*See* Fat.)
Afferent impulses, 157, 158, 243, 756; of vaso-motor action, 260, 261, 262, 263; of deglutition, 367; in respiration, 454; in micturition, 522; nerves conveying, 612
After-images of vision, 675
Air-cells, 404; tidal, stationary, and residual, in respiration, 406, 407; its changes in respiration, 420, 472; chambers or passages, 720
Aladoff on diabetes, 535
Albertoni, on the brain, 804
Albumin, action of gastric juice on, 309
Albumins, 911, 927, 929
Albuminates, 913
Alcohol, action on vaso-motor centres, 276; on the heart, 235; on accelerator nerves, 246
Alimentary canal, 293; changes of food in the, 379
Alimentary mechanism, 21
Alkali-albumin, 915, 930
Alkaline urine of herbivora, 510
Allantoic vessels, 875, 880
Allantoin, 957
Allantois, 874
Alveolar passages, 403
Alveoli, pulmonary, 404
Amido-caproic acid, 327
Ammonia in expired air, 423; action on accelerator nerves, 246; on respiratory centres, 461
Amniotic cavity, 874
Amnion, 874.
Amœbæ, properties of, 13, 60, 364, 391
Amœboid movements, 14, 50, 61
Amyl nitrite, action on vagi nerves, 241; on vaso-motor centres, 276; on the arterioles, 276; action on muscles, 148
Amylolytic action of pancreatic juice, 324, 325; of saliva, 298, 300, 356
Amylolytic ferment, 300, 301
Analyses, of perspiration, 495; of the composition of the animal body, 560, 561, 892
Anelectrotonus, 106
Aneurism, 38
Animal body, chemical basis of the, 909
Anode, 104
Antiarin, action on spinal vaso-motor centres, 275
Antipeptone, 328, 927
Antiperistaltic action, 370
Anus, 374
Aorta, pressure in, 206
Aortic valves, 195, 210, 213
Aperturæ scalæ vestibuli cochleæ, 703, 705
Apnœa, 460, 477; action of on intestinal peristalsis, 369
Apomorphia, action on accelerator fibres of vagi nerves, 246; on respiratory nerves and centres, 461; action on muscles, 148

Arteria centralis retina, 624
Arterial blood, 424, 435, 440, 443, 448, 458, 465
Arterial pulse. (*See* Pulse.)
Arteries, 165, 173, 177, 183, 187, 190, 198; contractility and dilation of, 251, 252, 338, 346; renal, 512; walls of, 165
Artificial diabetes, 533
Arytenoid cartilages, 840
Ascending aorta, pulse-wave in, 227
Asphyxia, 369, 412, 454, 459, 472, 479
Aspirates (voice), 846
Astigmatism, 650
Atropin, its effects, 240, 344
Aubert on cutaneous respiration, 496
Auditory sensations, 712
Auerbach, nervous plexus in the intestines, 156; peristaltic movements in digestion, 368
Augmenting fibres, 162
Auricles, 192; blood-pressure in, 204, 205
Auriculo-ventricular valves, 192, 193, 207
Automatic action, 14, 152, 155, 157, 243; of the heart, 156; of peristaltic movements, 368; of the respiratory centre, 454; the spinal cord as a centre of this action, 754
Automatic tissues, 19
Axillary artery of the tortoise, its contractility, 253
Axis cylinders of nerves, 669

Bacillary layer of retina, 629
Bacteria, 385, 388
Balogh, cerebral convolutions, 801
Banting's dietetic system, 598

Bellado
nerve
vagi
centr
arteri
centr
Benzoic
Bernar
medi
vical
creat
saliv
secre
tion,
cutan
525;
nerve
Bernou
ment
Bernste
wave
82; l
gram
Bernste
323,
Berzeli
Bichat
Bidder
384,
tion,
Bidder
gang
Bile,
cons
bile-
322;
effec
Biliary
Bilirub
Biliver

Blagden, Dr., effects of heat, 587
Blastoderm, 872, 880
Blind spot, 629, 653
Blood, 19, 23–59; its chemical composition, 42; coagulation, 24; corpuscles, 45, 49; action of different substances on, 48; fibrin, 25; fibrino-plastin and fibrinogen, 30; fibrin-ferment, 33; gases of, 424; influence of the living bloodvessels, 34; sources of the fibrin-factors, 33; history of the corpuscles, 52; quantity and distribution of blood in animals and man, 58; velocity of flow, 177; Volkmann's hæmadromometer, 178; Ludwig's stromuhr (diagram), 180; Vierordt's hæmatachometer, 181; sugar in, 398
Blood, changes in quantity and quality, 281–287; effect of its condition on peristaltic movements, 369; respiratory changes in it, 422; relations of oxygen in the blood, 426; color of arterial and venous, 435; effect of respiration, 458–461; relations of carbonic acid and nitrogen in blood, 441, 442
Blood, circulation of the, 164, 287
Blood, in menstruation, 866
Blood of the fœtus, 880
Blood-plasma, 94, 95
Blood-pressure, 164–287; apparatus for investigating (diagram), 172; endocardiac pressure; Fick's manometer, 176; curves of pressure in cavities of heart, left ventricle, and aorta (diagrams), 200, 207; its relation to heart-beat, 248, 249; effect of bleeding and injection of blood, 282; in asphyxia, 475; in secretion of urine, 511
Blood-supply, its influence on muscular contraction, 121
Blushing, 258
Bochefontaine, cerebral convolutions, 801
Boll, visual purple of the retina, 660
Bone, 19, 21
Bowman, on renal secretion, 511
Boyle, on respiration, 481
Brachia, 774
Brachial plexus, section of, 254
Brain, the, and automatic reflex action in, 161–163; pulsation of the, 462; its functions, 779, 824; cerebral convolutions in the dog and man (diagrams), 796, 797, 798; effects of stimulation of 800; growth of the, 898
Brainless animals, behavior of, 779, 785
Bread. (*See* Dietetics, Nutrition.)
Breathing. (*See* Respiration.)
Breuer, respiratory action of vagus, 455
"Bright," colors, 670
Brodie, bodily heat, nutrition, 589
Bronchi, 403
Brown-Sequard, vascular mechanism, 287; on the spinal cord, 760; cerebral convolutions, 801
Brucke, on blood-clotting, 36; semilunar valves of the heart, 207–210; digestion of starch, 297; peptone and pepsin, 312, 327, 328, 355, 356; absorption of proteids, 396
"Buffy coat" in blood, 26
Bulbs of Krause, 486
Bunge, hippuric acid, 559
Busch, movements of the stomach, 374, 380; digestion, 381
Butyric acid, 940

Cæcum, 386, 387
Caffein, action on respiration centres, 462
Calabar bean, action on vagi centres and nerves, 241
Calcareous degeneration, 899
Calamus scriptorius, 771
Calices of kidney, 502
Canal of Schlemm, 624
Capillary circulation, 168, 184–187, 189, 190, 286; changes in peripheral resistance, 278–281; blood-pressure in renal secretion, 511; plexuses, 167; structure of, 166
Caproic acid, 940
Capsule of Glisson, 315; Malpighian, 505; of cerebrum, internal, external, 773
Carbohydrate food, effects of, 570
Carbohydrates in the human body, 601
Carbolic acid, 963
Carbonic acid, in expired air, 407, 421, 422, 423; in the blood, 424; exit from blood, 443; in the tissues, 446; effects of excess of, 460, 461, 478
Cardiac impulse, 199, 215
Cardiac inhibition, 238
Cardiac muscles, 149
Cardiac sound for measuring blood-pressure (diagram), 202
Cardiograph, 201
Cardio-inhibitory centre, 242, 248, 283
Carnin, 958
Carnivorous animals, nutrition of, 572

[illegible]
Cathode, 104
Cauda equina, 740
Caudate nucleus, 773
Cells, migrating, 150; ectodermic and endodermic, 151; epithelium of alimentary canal, 293; epithelium, 289; demilune; 295; nerve, 605
Cellulose, 298
Central nervous mechanism, 21, 154
Central space, 706, canal, 742; lobe of brain, 775
Centres of organic functions in medulla oblongata, 823
Ceradina on valves of the heart, 211
Cerebellum, 774, 819
Cerebral actions, rapidity of, 824
Cerebral convolutions of the dog and man (diagrams), 796, 798
Cerebrin, 950
Cerebral lobes, 775
Cerebro-spinal axis, 603
Cerebrum, 775, 777
Cervical sympathetic, section of, 264
Chaperon, spinal cord, 748
Chauveau, instrument for measuring blood-pressure, 172, 178; movements of the œsophagus, 371.
Chemical action, tissue of, 289, 481; digestion, 289, 400; respiration, 402, 482
Chemical aspects of respiration, 446, 451
Chemical basis of the animal body, 909
Chemical changes in muscular contraction, 92, 99
Chemical changes in tissues, 18
Chemical composition of blood, 42

Choroid co
Chromatic
Chyle, 389
Chyme, 38
Ciliary ga
Ciliary mo
Ciliary m
Ciliated ce
Circulatio
effects c
asphyxi
Cleavage
Cleavage
Coagulatic
Coagulate
Cochlea, 7
Colasanti,
pigs, 59
Cold, effec
body,
guinea-
Colon, 37
Color-blin
Color sens
Color, "
" bright
Color of t
Color of
435, 44
Color visi
Columnæ
Columns
Commissu
Compensa
turbanc
Compositi
Cones of

Contractile tissues, illustrated by the pendulum myograph, 70; the magnetic interruptor, 77, 78
Contractility of the amœba, 14
Contraction, law of muscular, 60; contractility of bloodvessels, 251, 287
Contraction of the walls of the stomach, 372
Contraction. (*See* Muscular Contraction.)
Contrast, visual sensations of, 680
Convulsions in asphyxia, 472–474
Convulsive centre, 473, 823
Co-ordination of visual movements, 689
Corium, 484, 724
Cornea, 623
Coronary arteries, 195, 210, 248, 284
Corpora Arantii, 195, 210
Corpora quadrigemina, 773, 816
Corpora striata, 773, 811–815; quadrigemina, 773; geniculata, 774
Corpuscles of the blood, 23, 24, 170, 171, 428, 436, 441, 447, 449, 451; their history, 52
Corpuscles, in inflammation, 279, 280
Corpuscles, inorganic salts in, 49
Corpuscles, salivary, 296, 301, 343; of Krause, 486; tactile, 487; axile, 487; Pacinian, 488; Malpighian (renal) 505; (splenic), 548
Corpuscles, starch, 298
Corpus luteum, 866; dentatum, 768, 775; callosum, 777
Corti, rods of, 706, 712
Cortical substance of kidney, 503
Corvisart, researches on digestion, 401
Coughing, 481
Cowper's glands, 861
Cranial nerves, 615, 826
Crassamentum, or blood-clot, 25
Cricoid cartilages, 840
Cristæ acousticæ, 708
Crura cerebri, 773, 822; section of, 890
Crusta, 773
Crying, 481
Crystalline lens, 630
Currents. (*See* Electric Currents, Nerve Currents.)
Curves, pulse (with tracings), 219, 231
Curves, respiratory (with tracings), 409
Cutaneous respiration, 495
Cyon, diabetes, 535; urea in the liver, 555
Czermak, effects of chorda stimulation, 359
Danilewsky, on pancreatic juice, 330
Deahna, on urari stimulation, 260; blood-pressure, 285
Death, 905; death agony, perspiration in, 498
Decidua, 878
Decomposition of proteids, 927–930
Deen, Van, on the spinal cord, 767
"Deep" colors, 670
Defecation, 374
Deglutition, 364
Demtschenko, secretion of tears, 698
Denis, on coagulation of the blood, 29
Dentition, 896
Depressor nerve, 259
Derived proteids, 930
Derma, 484
Detrusor urinæ, 520
Dextrin, 297, 298, 937
Dextrose, 298, 934
Diabetes, 533
Diabetic centre, 533, 823
Diagrams: apparatus for experiments with muscle and nerve, 67, 69; pendulum myograph, 70; muscle-curves, 69, 75, 76, 77; nervous impulses, 73; the magnetic interruptor, 77; muscular fibre undergoing contraction, 82; non-polarizable electrodes, 85; muscle-nerve preparations, 105, 107; illustrating electrotonus, 106; simplest forms of a nervous system, 151; Du Bois-Reymond's electro-motive molecules, 126; in their bipolar condition, 127; the fall-rheotome, 129; Bernstein's differential rheotome, 131, 133; electrotonic currents, 138; kymograph, 178; Ludwig's stromuhr, for measuring velocity of flow of blood, 180; Marey's tambour, with cardiac sound, 202; blood-pressure, 172, 174; Fick's spring manometer, 176; curves of pressure in cavities of heart, 200; curves of pressure in aorta and heart, 207; sounds of the heart, 214; pulse-curves, 222, 227, 228; cardiac inhibition, 239, 249, 250; cervical and thoracic ganglia of rabbit, 244; of dog, 245; submaxillary gland of dog, 337; secretion of pancreatic juice, 349; pancreas of the rabbit, 352; sections of mucous glands, 357; of a serous gland, 358; of the parotid of the rabbit, 358; respiratory movements, 409; apparatus for taking tracings of movements of air in respiration, 410; Ludwig's mercurial gas-pump,

Dietetics, 598
Diet of an animal, normal, 563
Digestion, tissues and mechanisms of, 21, 293, 400; saliva, 296; gastric juice, 305; bile, 318; pancreatic juice, 323; succus entericus, 334; secretion of digestive juices, 335, 364; mucous and serous glands, 356; muscular mechanism, 364–379; changes of food in the alimentary canal, 379; absorption of products, 388; decomposition of proteids, 927
Digestive secretion, mechanism of, 335
Digitalis, action on vagi nerves and centres, 241; on intracardiac inhibition ganglia, 241; on vaso-motor centres, 276
Dilation of bloodvessels, 252, 283, 341, 347
Dioptric mechanisms of sight, 632
Distribution of blood in the body, 59
Divers, respiration of, 474
Dock, on glycogen, 527; on sugar in urine, 536
Dog, quantity and distribution of blood in the, 59; arterial pressure, 177, 251, 466; velocity of the circulation, 189; section of vagi, 251; cervical and thoracic ganglia of (diagram), 245; saliva, 301; bile, 318; pancreatic juice, 323; submaxillary gland (diagram), 337; blood-crystals, 429, 443; perspiration, 497; cerebral convolutions (diagrams), 796, 797
Dogiel, on blood circulation, 183;

Ear, the, 6
Ebstein, on
Eckhard, a
glion, 3
345; di
diabetes,
cerebral
bellum,
Ectodermi
Ectosarc,
Endosarc,
Edgren,
644
Edwards,
422, 450,
Eel, caudal
traction
Efferent
saliva,
flex acti
Egg-album
Eichhorst,
597
Elastin, 9
Electric c
cle, 86,
129, 1
rheotom
Electrode
ing ner
Electroto
Electroton
Emetics,
Emmingh

Engelmann on muscle-currents, 89; automatic action of ureter, 156; ciliary movement in the frog, 150; peristaltic movements, 370.
Entoptic phenomena of sight, 652
Epidermis, 483
Epiglottis, 840
Epithelium cells, 289, 335, 351, 391, 392, 515
Erect posture, 853
Ergot, action on muscles, 148; on vagi nerves, 241; on vaso-motor centres, 276
Erismann, on cutaneous secretion, 497
Eructation, 382
Erythrogranulose, 298
Estor, seat of oxidation in respiration, 446
Ether, action on respiratory centres, 462; action on blood-corpuscles, 48
Eustachian tube, 700, 712
Excretion of urine, 506; of milk, 543; of nitrogen in muscular exercise, 577, 578. (*See* Defecation, Micturition.)
Excretory tissues, 17, 19
Exhaustion, muscular, 117
Exner, on visual sensations, 659; reflex actions, 753; on the rapidity of mental operations, 824
Expiration, 407, 411; movements in, 419, 465, 472
Explosives (voice), 850
Eye, the (*see* Sight), physiological anatomy of, 622
Eyeballs, movements of the, 685, 790, 816

Facial respiration, 420
Fasciculi teretes, 770, 771
Fæces, 376, 387
Fainting, 243
Fallopian tubes, 860, 865, 870
Fall-rheotome (diagram), 129
Falsetto voice, 847
Fat, history of, 538, 600
Fat of milk, 545
Fats, their derivatives and allies, 939
Fats in serum, 44; action of bile on, 322; of pancreatic juice, 329; digestion of, 380, 383, 384, 399
Fatty degeneration, 899
Fatty food, effects of, 570, 572, 600
Fauces, 365, 366, 377
Fechner's formula of visual sensations, 666
Feeling and touch, 730
Fehling's test for sugar, 297
Female pronucleus, 872
Fenestrated membrane, 165
Fenestra ovalis, 701; rotunda, 701
Ferment, amylolytic, 300
Ferments, organized and unorganized, 300; saliva, 300, gastric juice, 311; of pancreatic juice, 325, 353; in the small intestine, 385
Fernet, on respiration, 482
Ferrier, on the brain, 800, 804, 807, 813, 818; cerebral convolutions of the dog and man (diagrams), 796–798
Fibræ arciformes, 768
Fibres, muscle, 62, 145; nerve, 607; medullated nerve, 608; non-medullated, 609; efferent and afferent, 611; terminations of nerve, 611
Fibrillæ, muscular, 62; nerve, 609
Fibrin, 25–35, 143, 308, 310, 920, 930
Fibrin-ferment, 33
Fibrinogen, 31, 919
Fibrinoplastin, 30, 31, 918
Fick, on blood-circulation, 205, 207; spring manometer (diagram), 176; nutrition, animal heat, 581; urea and muscular exercise, 578; muscles of the eyeballs (diagram), 688; spinal cord, 766
Filum terminale, 603, 740
Flatulency, 382
Fleischl, nervous irritability, 115
Flexures, cephalic, caudal, 873
Flourens, on the respiratory centre, 453; on the brain, 818
Fœtus. (*See* Embryo.)
Food, action of bile and pancreatic juice on, 322
Food, fattening diet, 570; potential energy of food, 381
Food, glycogen produced by, 526–534
Food, its effects on the stomach, 372; absorption by diffusion, 399; effects of carbohydrate, 570
Foods, changes in the alimentary canal, 379
Food, tissues and mechanisms of digestion, 293–401; changes of food in the alimentary canal, 379; absorption of products of digestion, 388
Force of heart-beat, 219
Fordyce, Dr., effect of heat, 587
Formic acid, 939
Fourth ventricle, 771
Fovea centralis, 629; hemispherica, 703; hemielliptica, 703
Fossæ, nasal, 720

157; heart, 89, 160, 204, 235, 238, 242; contractility of arteries, 251; bloodvessels, 279; capillary circulation, 286; cutaneous respiration, 495; contraction of the pupil, 644; visual purple in, 660; spinal cord, 742, 767; lymph heart, 754, 755

Frog, brainless, its behavior, 159, 744, 748, 781

Frontal lobes of cerebrum, 775

Functional activity, its influence on muscular irritability, 124

Funiculi of nerves, 607

Funke, on succus entericus, 334; sugar in blood and urine, 399; respiration, 412; quantity of perspiration, 494

Galabin, Dr., diagrams of pulse-curves, 227, 228

Gall-bladder, 318

Ganglia, 156, 160, 161, 236, 237, 368, 613; cervical and thoracic of rabbit and dog (diagrams), 244, 245

Ganglion layer of retina, 629

Garrod, on pulse-waves, 224; heart-beat, 284; quantity and flow of blood, 284

Gases, in eructation, 382; in the large intestine, 386; in the blood, 423

Gases in urine, 509

Gases, poisonous, respiration of, 478

Gas-pump, mercurial, Ludwig's (diagram), 425

Gaskell, W. H., contraction and dil-

Globi
Globu
Globu
Glome
Glotti
842,
gran
Glutin
Glycer
Glycer
Glycoc
Glycin
Glycog
Gmelin
test
Goltz,
207;
move
373;
ment
521;
heart
tions,
impre
Goose, b
Graafia
Granula
Granulo
Grehant
Gray m
757
Growth,
Grützner
efferen
Gscheidl
554, 5

Hæmatachometer, for measuring blood-pressure, 181
Hæmatin, 438, 439
Hæmatoblast, 55
Hæmatoidin, 57
Hæmoglobin, 49, 57, 428, 440
Hæmorrhage, effects of, on vascular mechanism, 282
Haerlin, on paralbumin, 913
Hair-cells, 706
Hairs, 489
Hales, Dr. Stephen, circulation of blood, 173, 287
Halford, sounds of the heart, 215
Haller, on muscular contraction, 65; on physiology of muscle and nerve, 145; respiratory movements, 416
Hallsten, contractile tissues, 115
Hamberger's model of respiratory movements, 416
Hammarsten, coagulation of blood, 34; gastric juice in new-born animals, 893, 894
Hayem, red blood-corpuscles, 55
Hearing, 709
Heart, the, 191, 219; phenomena of the normal beat, 197; curves of pressure in cavities of heart, 199–201; mechanism of the valves, 207–212; sounds of the heart, 213–216; its failure before death, 905
Heart-beat, 156; normal, 164, 173, 186, 224, 231; variations in, 218, 247, 475, 511
Heart-murmurs, 214
Heart of the babe, 893
Heart of the frog, 160
Heat, loss of energy from, 575
Heat, sources and distribution of, 580
Heat, varying production of, 586
Hedgehog, blood-crystals of the, 428
Heidenhain, on pancreatic digestion, 325; mechanism of digestive secretion, 338, 344, 346, 356; mucous and serous glands, 358, 361, 381; researches on digestion, 401; on renal secretion, 516; on nutrition, 570, 589; bodily heat, 582, 583, 586, 589; lymph-hearts, 755
Helicotrema, 705
Hellebore, action on heart, 235
Heller, movements of chyle, 393
Helmholtz, on muscular contraction, 99; velocity of nervous impulses, 143; loss of energy from heat, 585; dioptric mechanisms, 653; color sensations, 669; the horopter, 691; musical sounds, 717
Helmont, Van, on carbonic acid gas, 481
Hemipeptone, 328
Hensen, on auditory hairs, 716
Hensen and Völckers, sight, movements of the pupil, 648
Hepatic artery, 317; and the secretion of bile, 362; hepatic cells, 17, 315, 362, 525, 533; duct, 315, 317, 318; lobules, 315; vein, 317
Herbivorous animals, nutrition of, 572
Hering, respiratory action of vagus, 455; nervous mechanism of respiration, 457; color sensations, 669; sensations of temperature, 733–736
Hermann on muscular contraction, 82; rigor mortis, and electrical theory of muscle, 98, 134, 141, 144; respiration of muscle, 144
Herzen, inhibition of reflex action, 748
Herzenstein, secretion of tears, 697
Hiatus, 705
Hiccough, 480
Hippocampus major, 778
Hippuric acid, 558
Hirschmann on visual sensations, 668
Hitzig, on the cerebral convolutions of the dog (diagram), 796, 797, 800, 804; cerebellum, 819; vertigo, 821
Hlasiwitz, on proteids, 929
Holmgren, movements of the pupil, 644, 647; electric currents of the optic nerve, 663
Hook, on artificial respiration, 481
Hoppe-Seyler, on the composition of blood, 42, 49, 51; on bile, 321; hæmoglobin, 440; respiration, 482; nutrition, 569; analysis of proteids, 910
Horopter, the, 691
Horse, blood-circulation in the, 36, 39, 40, 173, 182, 189, 200; saliva, 301, 380; blood-crystals, 429; locomotion, 856
Horvath, death from extreme heat, 594
Houckgeest, Van Braam, peristaltic action, 369
Huffner on influence of bacteria in digestion, 327
Hutchinson, vital capacity of the lungs, 408
Huxley, blood-corpuscles, 55
Hyaloid membrane, 627, 631
Hydra, 153
Hydraulic principles of blood-circulation, 184
Hydrobilirubin, 58

Hypoxanthin, 508, 551, 957

Ileo-cæcal valve, 370, 374, 387
Impregnation, 870
Impulses, nervous, 152, 153; efferent and afferent, 157; afferent, 612; conduction of by the spinal cord, 757; nervous, in respiration, 469; sensory and motor, 163
Income and outcome of diet, 381
Income of energy, 381
Incontinence of urine, 523
Incus, 701
Indican in urine, 508, 965
Indigo, 966
Indigo-carmine, excretion of, 516
Indol, 327
Induction-machine, 67; induction-shock, effects of, 67, 100, 106–108, 238
Inert layer in capillary circulation, 171
Infants, temperature of, 593
Inflammation, its effects, 278
Infundibulum, pulmonary, 404; of cochlea, 704
Infusoria, ciliary movement in, 149
Inhibition, 161; of heart-beat, 238, 242; of peristaltic action, 369; of saliva, 494; of reflex action, 747; parturition, 889
Inogen, 143
Inosit, 937
Insensible perspiration, 494
Inspiration, mechanics of, 406, 407,

Jacobsc
Jaffé, u
of bi
Jaundic
Jervis,
vaso-
Jones,
Judell,
49
Judgme
718;
Juices,
Jumpin

Kemme
546
Kendal,
Kendall
Keratin,
Kidneys
Kidneys
552
Klein, o
cles, 5
Knock,
Knoll, o
816, 81
Kohlschi
Kölliker,
enteric
Korner,
Kreatin,
Kronecke
113, 1
muscle

Labia majora, minora, 858
Labor, loss of energy by, 575, 576
Labor-pains, 889
Labored respiration, 407, 412, 418, 419
Labyrinth, osseous, 702; membranous, 707
Lachrymal glands, 697
Lacteals, 388, 391
Lactic acid, 945; in muscle, 98
Lactose, 936
Lagrange, on respiration, 482
Lamina fusca, 624; spiralis, 704; denticulata, 705; dorsales, 873
Landois, on blood circulation, 204; cerebral convolutions, 800
Langendorf, nervous mechanism in respiration, 458; inhibition of reflex action, 749
Langley, salivary secretion, 344
Lardacein, 927
Laryngeal nerve, superior, in respiration, 455; in voice, 846; inferior, in respiration, 457
Laryngeal respiration, 420
Laryngoscope, 843
Larynx, 839, 843; diagrams of the, 841, 843
Lateral tracts, 768
Latschenberger, on urari stimulation, 261; blood-pressure, 285; respiration, 471
Laughing, 481
Laurostearic acid, 941
Lavoisier, on respiration, 481
Lawes and Gilbert, on the formation of fat, 572
Layer of rods and cones, 629
Lea and Kühne, secretion in the pancreas, 351
Lecithin, 49, 948
Legg, Wickham, on diabetes, 537
Lens crystalline, 630
Lenticular nucleus, 814
Leucin, 326–328, 385, 557, 960
Leuwenhoek, capillary circulation, 286
Levatores costarum, 417
Liebermann, pigments of bile, 319
Liebig, on formation of fat, 576; nutrition, 564, 576, 577, 602
Life, the phases of, 892
Ligaments, hepatic, 315
Ligamentum iridis pectinatum, 626
Lingual nerve, 254, 336
Lister, J., coagulation of the blood, 37, 39
Listing, movements of the eyeballs, 686
Liver, 314; secretion of bile, 347; a source of sugar, 525; a source of heat, 580
Lobes of cerebrum, 775
Lobule, pulmonary, 404
Locomotor ataxy, 739
Locomotor mechanisms, 853
Loculi of spleen, 548
Locus niger, 773
Loops of Henle, 505, 516
Lortet, instrument for measuring blood-pressure, 182
Loven, constriction and dilation of arteries, 261, 266
Lower, on respiration, 481
Luchsinger, vaso-motor action, 271, 272; cutaneous secretion, 500; perspiration in the cat, 500
Ludwig, on blood-circulation, 179; his stromuhr, 180; sounds of the heart, 214; vascular mechanism, 287; peristaltic action, 369; mercurial gas-pump (diagram), 425; respiration, 482; renal secretion, 515; temperature of submaxillary gland, 343
Lumbar cord, 752, 888
Lungs, the, 402; circulation through, 405; mechanics of pulmonary respiration, 406; elastic force of, 407, 463; respiratory changes in, 442; loss of heat from, 585
Lunulæ of heart-valves, 210
Lutein, 58
Lymph, lymph-vessels, lymphatic glands, 56, 389–391
Lymph-hearts of the frog, 155, 754
Lymphatic system in infancy and youth, 895

Maculæ acousticæ, 708
Macula lutea, 629
Magendie, on vomiting, 377; sensory nerves, 613; olfactory nerve, 721
Magnetic interruptor (diagram), 77
Magnus, on respiration, 482
Male pronucleus, 872
Malleus, 701
Malpighi, capillary circulation, 286
Malpighian bodies of the kidney, 505, 507, 511; capsules, glomeruli, 506; layer of skin, 484
Maltose, 298
Mammary gland, 542
Manometer applied to blood-circulation, 174, 249–251; to heart-beat, 205, 207, 249–251. (*See* Diagrams.)
Marching, 855

Mayow, on changes of air in respiration, 471; on oxygen, 481
Maxwell, on color sensations, 670
Meat. (*See* Dietetics, Nutrition.)
Meatus auditorius externus, 699
Meatus urinarius, 858
Mechanical tissues, 19
Mechanism of digestive secretion, 335
Mechanisms of respiration, 405–482
Mechanisms of reproduction, 857
Meconium, 883
Medulla oblongata, 768, 823; cardio-inhibitory centre, 242; respiratory centre, 454; vaso-motor centre, 269; centre for secretion of saliva, 337; for deglutition, 367; for movements of œsophagus and stomach, 367; for vomiting, 378; convulsive centre, 473; as a centre of co-ordination in the frog, 781, 782; in the mammal, 823
Medullary substance of kidney, 503; medullary substance of Schwann, 608
Medullated nerve-fibres, 608
Meibomian glands, 697
Meissner, plexus of the intestines, 156; peptic digestion, 328; peristaltic action in digestion, 368; urea and urates in the liver, 555; hippuric acid, 558; peptones, 923
Membrana limitans interna, 629; externa, 629; tectoria, 704; basilaris, 704; granulosa, 860
Membrane of Demours, 624; of Reisner, 706
Membranous labyrinth, 707
Menstruation, 865
Mental emotions producing perspiration, 498

Migrating c
Milk, 544–5
on, 313
Milk-sugar,
Modiolus, 7
Molecular l
Moleschott,
Monkey, ce
Morphia di
Mosso, ch
280; mo
371; sle
Motor fibre
Motor nerv
Mouth, its
Mucin, 931
Muciparou
Mucous gl
Mucous m
of intest
Müller, J.
tion, 445
Müller, W
Müller, W.
tion, 422
Müller, J.,
Munk, on
Muscarin,
241
Muscle an
Muscle a
nomena
chemica
Muscle-ne
chine, 1
Muscle-cu
Muscle-cu
76, 77
Muscle-pl
Muscles, (

Muscles of micturition, 520–523
Muscles of respiration, 413–421, 452
Muscles of the eyeball, 687
Muscles of the fœtus, 882
Muscles of the larynx, 845
Muscular contraction, shown by the pendulum myograph, 69, 75, 76, 77; changes in a muscle during contraction, 80; change of form, 80; electrical changes, 85; physical changes, 80; chemical changes, 92; law of contraction, 108; circumstances affecting its amount and character, 111
Muscular energy, sources of, 142, 600
Muscular fibre-cells, 60, 62, 145
Muscular fibres in arteries, 165, 166, 251
Muscular mechanisms, 21
Muscular mechanisms of digestion, 364–379; of respiration, 402–482; mastication, 364; deglutition, 365; peristaltic action, 148, 367; movements of the œsophagus, 371; of the stomach, 372; of the large intestine, 374; vomiting, 376
Muscular mechanisms, special, 839
Muscular irritability, 63, 65, 107–109
Muscular sense, 737
Muscular sound, 79, 148
Muscular tissues, 19
Muscularis mucosæ, 302
Musculi papillares, 195
Musculus, action of saliva on starch, 298; maltose, 935
Musical sounds, nature of, 713
Myograph, pendulum (diagram), 68, 70
Myosin in muscular tissues, 94, 99, 920
Myristic acid, 941

Nails, 489
Narcotics, action on muscles, 148
Nares, 720, 721
Narrow tubes of Henle, 505
Nasal fossæ, 720
Nates, 773
Native albumins, 911
Nausea, 376
Nawrocki, cutaneous secretion, 500
Negative variation, in nerve-currents, 89–91; of muscle-currents, 89
Nerve and muscle, phenomena of, 63
Nerve-cells, 605; nerve-fibres, 607
Nerve-currents, natural, 85; illustrated by non-polarizable electrodes (diagram), 85; negative variation, 89
Nerve-roots, 154
Nerves, irritability of, 117; accelerator, 244, 285; experiments with pendulum myograph, 68; irritability of, 117, 118; cardiac, of the dog, 245; thermogenic, 592; frigorific, 592
Nerves, chemical changes in, 143
Nerves, cranial, 603, 615, 827
Nerves, energy of, 142
Nerves, their effect on constriction and dilation of arteries, 253
Nerves employed in defecation, 375
Nerves in connection with striated muscles, 63
Nerves, their influence on the secretion and ejection of milk, 547
Nerves of mastication and deglutition, 364, 365, 367
Nerves of sight, 627, 657, 827
Nerves of touch, 732, 733, 739
Nerves, renal, 513
Nerves, sensory, 611
Nerves, spinal, 603, 612
Nerves, splenic, 550
Nerves, vaso-motor, 253
Nervi erigentes, 266
Nervi mesenterici, 242
Nervous action in the œsophagus, 371, 372
Nervous action in vomiting, 378
Nervous influences on peristaltic action, 368, 369
Nervous impulses curves illustrating their velocity, 73; changes in the nerve during their passage, 73, 75, 76, 111, 126
Nervous irritability, 107, 108
Nervous mechanism for secreting digestive juices, 335, 345, 348
Nervous mechanism of the gastric movements, 373
Nervous mechanism of perspiration, 497
Nervous mechanism of respiration, 452, 453
Nervous system, 20, 21, 22; general arrangement of, 603; elementary structure of, 605; cerebro-spinal, 603; ganglionic or sympathetic, 605; simplest forms of (diagram), 151; its influence on heart-beat, minute arteries, and capillaries, 232; its influence on nutrition, 595; in infancy and youth, 895–897
Nervous tissues, properties of, 17, 151–163; metabolism of, 576, 584
Nervous tissues, general properties of, 153

Nitrogen, quantity in arterial and venous blood, 426
Nitrogen, its relations in the blood, 442
Nitrogenous crystalline bodies in urine, 508
Nitrogenous food, 598
Nitrogenous metabolism, 568
Nitrogenous metabolites, 951
Nitrous oxide gas, action in producing anæsthesia, 478
Nœud, vital, 453
Non-nitrogenous metabolism, 598
Non-polarizable electrodes (diagram), 85
Normal blood-plasma, 31
Normal diet, 563, 598
Nostrils, their action in respiration, 420
Nothnagel, on the brain, 801, 814, 815, 820
Nuclein, 934
Nucleus, lenticular, caudate, 773
Nussbaum, renal secretion, 518, 519
Nutrition, 524; production of glycogen, 526; of the embryo, 880

Occipital lobe, 775
Ocular spectra, 681
Odor of the breath, 423
Oehl, movements of the pupil, 647
Œsophagus, movements of, 371, 377
Old age, 898–900
Oleic acid, 942
Olein, 943
Olfactory organs, 721; cells, 721

on reflex
Ox, saliva
blood-cry
Oxalic acid,
Oxidation,
Oxygen in
407, 421–
tion in a
424, 426,
into the
450; th
phyxia,
Oxygen, ac
Oxygen te
Oxyhæmog

Palate in d
“Pale” co
Palmitic a
Palmitin,
Pancreatic
Pancreatic
382, 383
Papillæ, s
724; ci
725; fu
Papillary l
724
Paraglobu
Paralytic
Parapepto
384
Parenchy
Parietal l
Parinaud,
Parkes o

Pendulum myograph (diagram), 70; diagrams obtained by it, 69, 73, 75
Penicillium, 574
Penis, 861; mechanism of erection, 267, 870
Peptic digestion, 307, 314, 380
Peptic glands, 302; cells, 303
Pepsin, the ferment of gastric juice, 311, 322, 328, 346
Peptone, 309
Peptones, 309, 322, 328, 923, 930
Peptones in gastric juice, 307
Perceptions, tactile, 735–738; visual, 692–697
Periodicity in the phenomena of the body, 658
Perilymph, 707
Perimysium, 61
Perineurium, 607
Peripheral resistance in blood-circulation, 188, 232, 279, 280, 285
Peristaltic contractions, 156; in defecation, 374–376; in digestion, 367, 368; in the œsophagus, 371; in the stomach, 372
Perspiration, nature and amount of, 493–497; secretion of, 497; nervous mechanism of, 497; average loss by, 493–496
Pettenkofer, on changes of air in respiration, 422; on nutrition, 566, 567, 570, 602; sleep, 903
Pettenkofer's test, 322
Peyer's patches, 331
Pflüger, blood, 31, 33; nervous irritability during electrotonus, 107, 112, 144; endings of nerves in salivary glands, 295, 342; inhibition of peristaltic action, 369; pump for extracting gas from blood, 425–427; hæmoglobin, 438; seat of oxidation in respiration, 446; respiratory changes in tissues, 448, 450, 451, 482; spinal cord, 743; sleep, 903
Pharynx in deglutition, 365; vomiting, 376–379
Phases of life, 892
Philipeaux, on union of sensory and motor nerves, 618
Phosphorus as an element of food, 601
Photochemistry of the retina, 657
Phrenic nerve, its effect on respiration, 452
Phthisis, cold sweats in, 498
Physostigmin, its effects on the pupil, 646
Pig, saliva of the, 301; bile, 320; blood-crystals, 429
Pigments in bile, 319; in urine, 508, 511, 516, 517
Pinna, 699
Pituitary mucous membrane, 720
Placenta, 881, 887
Planer on gases of intestine, 385
Planum semilunare, 704
Plasma of the blood, 31, 39, 40, 42, 94, 95
Plasmine, 29, 31, 33
Plateau, on after-images, 676
Plethysmograph, for measuring changes in the circulation, 280
Plösz, absorption of proteids in digestion, 398
Pneumogastric nerve, its influence in respiration, 454–459
Pneumographs, Marey's and Fick's, 410, 411
Poiseuille, application of the mercury manometer to blood-circulation, 178
Poison, effect of urari, 64; carbonic oxide, 478
Polyuria, or excessive renal secretion, 513, 514; point of puncture of the medulla to produce, 533
Polar vesicle, 871
Pons Varolii, 772, 822, 823
Portal canal, 316; circulation, 394; (renal) circulation, 505
Potassium nitrite, action on heart, 235
Potassium bromide, action on heart, 235
Potential energy of food, 381
Pre-existence theory of muscle and nerve, 126
Predicrotic pulse-wave, 226, 227, 229
Pregnancy, 888
Pressure, blood, 174–287, 462–472. (*See* Blood-pressure.)
Pressure of air in respiration, 479
Pressure, sensations of, 735
Preyer, on blood-corpuscles, 58; on hæmoglobin and hæmatin, 439, 440; sleep, 903
Priestley, on respiration, combustion, and oxygen, 481
Primitive trace, 872
Processus gracilis, 701; e cerebello ad testes, 771; vocales, 840; muscularis, 840
Pronucleus, 872
Proprionic acid, 940
Prostate gland, 861
Protagon, 949
Protective mechanisms of the, 697
Proteid food, metabolic effects of, 568, 571

Protoplasm of embryonic tissues, 882
Prout, on digestion, 401
Ptyalin of saliva, 300, 310
Puberty, 865, 897
Pulmonary respiration, mechanics of, 406; valves, 195
Pulsation of the brain, 462
Pulse, the, 177, 219–232; sphygmograph tracings of pulse-waves, 222, 227, 228; predicrotic and dicrotic waves, 227, 228
Pulsus venosus, 463
Pump action of the heart, 196, 221–225
Pupil of the eye, its movements, 643–649, 827.
Purgative action of salts, 399, 400
Purkinje's figures, 654, 656; on the effects of galvanic currents on the brain, 821
Purple, visual, 660
Purpurin in urine, 508
Pylorus, 370, 372, 377, 380, 381, 385
Pyramids of Ferrein, 504; renal, 503; anterior, 768; posterior, 769
Pyrexia, 590
Pyrosis, 377
Python, temperature of, 584

Quetelet, phases of life, 893
Quinine, action of, on reflex action, 748; action on heart, 235; action on white corpuscles, 51

Rabbit, quantity and distribution of blood in the, 59; arterial pressure,

Red corpusc
composition
Reflex action
Reflex actio
centre of,
Reflex action
Reflex actio
Reflex centr
Reflex inhib
Reflex mict
Regeneratio
Regio olfact
Regnault
respiratio
Reich, secre
Renal, secre
tem, 506
Rennet, 31
Reproducti
Reproducti
of, 19, 85
Resonants
Respiration
Respiration
402–482;
respirati
ing trac
(diagra
in, 420
in the
446; ne
fects on
of chan
modifie
480
Respiratic
Respirati

Rete, mucosum, 484; testes, 862
Reticular, membrane, 707
Retina, 626
Retching, 376
Rheometer of Ludwig, for measuring blood-pressure, 179, 180
"Rheoscopic Frog," 90–92
Rheotomes, Fall-rheotome, 129; Bernstein's differential rheotome, 130, 131
Rhythm of heart-beat, 219; of respiration, 409, 422, 452, 455, 458, 470; in asphyxia, 472, 473
Ribs, movement in respiration, 413–420
"Rich" colors, 670
Rigor mortis, 79, 92, 122, 144, 475, 906
Rima glottidis, 842
Ringer, daily variation in the temperature of the body, 593
Ritter's tetanus, 109
Ritter-Valli, law of irritability of nerves, 118
Rods and cones of retina, 629
Rods of Corti, 706
Röhrig, on perspiration, 497; effect of cold on rabbits, 590; urari poisoning, 591
Romanes, on contractile tissues, 110
Rosenthal, respiratory function of vagus, and theory of nervous mechanism of respiration, 458; on reflex actions, 754
Ruge, gases in the large intestine, 386
Running, 856
Rutherford, vaso-motor nerves of stomach, 347

Saccule, 707
Sacculus laryngis, 841, 842
Salicylic acid, action on respiratory centres, 461
Schneiderian membrane, 744
Scrotum, 861
St. Pierre and Estor, seat of oxidation in respiration, 446
Saliva, 296–302; its action on starch, 297; quantity of, 336; action of, 336, 379; in vomiting, 376; relation to taste, 729; temperature of, 342
Saliva of infants, 893
Salivary corpuscles, 296, 301, 343
Salts, as food, 573
Salts, in bile, 320; in blood, 49; in urine, 507; absorption into blood and urine, 400
Samuel, effect of cold on rabbits, 592
Sanderson, Burdon, dicrotic pulse-wave, 230; recording stethometer, 409; cerebral convolutions, 803
Saphena artery of the rabbit, its contractility, 253
Sarcolactic acid, 945
Sarcolemma, 63
Sarcous elements, 62
Sarkin, 957
Scalæ, vestibuli, 705; tympani, 705
Scaleni muscles, 416
Sclerotic coat of eye, 624
Schäfer, red corpuscles, 54
Scharling, on cutaneous respiration, 496
Schech, on the larynx, 846
Scheiner's experiment on sight, 636
Schememetjewski, changes in the tissues in respiration, 449
Scherer, paralbumin and metalbumin, 913
Schiff, mechanism of digestive secretion, 339; on secretion of bile, 363; movements of the œsophagus, 371; vomiting, 377; spinal cord, 761, 762
Schmidt, A., fibrinoplastin and fibrinogen, 30–35; red corpuscles, 54; relations of neutral salines and of gastric juice, 311; albumins, 913
Schmidt and Bidder, absorption of fat in digestion, 384; researches on digestion, 401
Schmidt and Mulheim, on absorption, 398
Schmidt, C., composition of blood, 49; on lardacein, 927
Schmiedeberg, cardiac accelerator nerves, 246; hippuric acid, 559
Schultze, Max, the visual purple, 660; olfactory cells, 722
Schultzen, on urea, 556
Schutzenberger, on proteids, 929
Schwann, researches on digestion, 401
Sciatic nerve, vaso-motor action of, 254, 260
Secretion by the skin, 493–500
Secretion by the kidneys, 506–520
Secretion by the renal epithelium, 515
Secretion of milk, 545
Secretions, digestive. (*See* Saliva, Bile, Pancreatic Juice.)
Secreting tissues, 17, 19
Segmentation of the yolk, 872
Semen, 870
Semicircular canals, 703
Semilunar valves of the heart, 192, 195, 209–213

Serum-albumin, 912
Setschenow, inhibition of reflex action, 748
Sexual generation, 857
Sharpey, sounds of the heart, 214
Sheep's blood, 35, 183, 429; saliva, 301
Shepard, hippuric acid, 559
Sighing, 480
Sight, 632
Sight, protective mechanisms of the eye, 697
Singing, 846–848
Sinitzen, on trophic nerves, 596
Sinus, venosus, 235, 879; of Valsalva, 195; circularis iridis, 624
Size, appreciation of, 693
Size of the body; phases of life, 892
Skatol, 966
Skeletal muscles, 61, 63, 755, 853
Skeleton, growth of the, 898
Skin, 18; anatomy of, 483; absorption by the, 501; secretion by the, 493–500
Skin, loss of heat from the, 584
Skin, terminal organs of the, 486, 732
Sleep, 901
Smell, 720
Sneezing, 481
Soaps, 944
Sobbing, 480
Solidity, judgment of, 694
Soltmann, cerebral areas in the newly born, 895
Sound, the voice, 842

612
Spirom
Splanch
254:
347;
ments
tion,
Spleen,
Sporadi
Sprenge
from
Stanniu
241
Stapes,
Starch,
382;
306; a
324; a
Starvati
Statistics
Stearic a
Stearin,
Stereosco
Stimulati
duced
Stimulati
on vas
Stimulati
339–34
Stimuli, c
pendin
Stimuli i
891
Stimulus,
traction

Stroganow, oxygen in the lungs in respiration, 443
Stromuhr, or rheometer for measuring blood-pressure, 179
Strychnia, action of, 275, 276, 745, 747
Subbotin, fat of man and the dog, 540; the secretion of milk, 545
Sublingual saliva, 301
Submaxillary gland, secretion of saliva, 336–346, 356–358; of dog (diagram), 337; of dog, 356
Submaxillary saliva, 301
Subiculum cornu Ammonis, 777
Substantia gelatinosa, 741
Succinic acid, 946
Succus entericus, 334, 349
Sugar, conversion of starch into, by the saliva, 297–302; action of gastric juice on, 306; digestion of, 379; in small intestine, 382
Sugar in urine, 533; in the hepatic blood, 525–528; in the blood and urine, 399, 449, 528, 529
Sugar, milk-sugar, 545, 546
Sugar as food, 545, 546
Sulci, 775
Suppression of urine, 520
Suslowa, lymph-hearts of the frog, 755
Suspensory ligament, 624, 631
Swallowing, 371, 382
Sweat. (*See* Perspiration.)
Sympathetic action, vaso-motor, 262
Syntonin, 328
Systole of heart, duration of, 204

Tactile judgments, 735
Tactile perceptions, 735–737
Tactile sensations, 732, 761, 805
Tambour, Marey's, for measuring blood-pressure (diagram), 200, 202, 410
Tannic acid, action on blood-corpuscles, 48
Tarchanoff, on the spleen, 550
Tartar emetic, effects of, 379; action on heart, 235
Taste, 723, 727; buds, 725
Taurin, 959
Taurocholic acid, 965
Tears, 697
Teeth, action in mastication, 364
Tegmentum, 773
Temperature, its influence on muscular irritability, 120; on ciliary action, 149; on the saliva, 299; on the gastric juice, 311
Temperature of man and other animals, 584, 593, 594
Temperature, its effects on animals, 586, 587, 593
Temperature, sensations of, 733
Temperature. (*See* Cold, Heat.)
Tension of the gases of blood and pulmonary air, 442–446, 450–452
Terminal organs of the skin, 486, 735
Testes, 773
Testicles, 861
Tests for proteids, 911
Tetanic contractions, 74
Tetanus, 74–79, 97, 112, 124; sound in, 215
Tetanus, Ritter's, 109
Thermogenic nerves, 590
Thiry, on succus entericus, 349
Thoracic duct, 389
Thoracic respiratory movements, 413; effect of on circulation, 462
Thudichum, on pigments in urine, 508
Thymus, 551, 895
Thyroid cartilage, 840
Tiedmann, researches on digestion, 401
Time required for reflex actions, 753
Tissues, fundamental, 18
Tissues, contractile, 60–150
Tissues, embryonic, 882
Tissues, metabolic, 525
Tissues, nervous, properties of, 151–163
Tissues of chemical action and their mechanisms, 289–401; digestion, 293–401; respiration, 402–482
Tissues of reproduction, 857
Tissues, respiratory, changes in the, 446
Tissues, the death of, 906
"Tone" of arteries, 255
Tongue, 723; its action in mastication and deglutition, 364, 367
Torricellian vacuum for extracting gas from blood, 425
Touch, 732
Trabeculæ of spleen, 547
Trachea, 402
Tracings of respiratory movements, 409; blood-pressure curves and intrathoracic pressure, 466. (*See* Diagrams.)
Traube's curves of blood-pressure in respiration, 469, 470, 475
Tricuspid valves of the heart, 193, 208, 212, 213
Trophic nerves, 596, 598
Trypsin, 324, 328, 330
Tscheschichin, bodily heat, 589
Tuberculo cinereo, 771

Undulations of blood-pressure in respiration, 462–472
Unstriated muscular tissue, 145
Uræmic poisoning, 554
Urari poison, its effects on contractile tissues, 64, 110; its effect on heart-beat, 240, 241; its effect on cerebral functions, 260; on chorda tympani, 344; on vomiting, 377; on respiration, 466; in producing diabetes, 536
Urea, 508, 555, 556; presence in perspiration, 495; effect on secretion of urine, 518; secretion of, 517; and its allies, the history of, 552–559; relation to muscular exercise, 577, 578
Ureter, peristaltic contraction of the, 156, 161; in micturition, 520
Urethra, 521, 861
Uric acid, 508; source of, 558; in the spleen, 551
Urine, composition of, 506–510; secretion of, 510; act of micturition, 520; kreatin in, 552–554; hippuric acid, 558, 559
Urine of infancy, 895
Urine, sugar in, 399, 533, 536, 554
Uriniferous tubules, 502–506, 511, 515
Urobilin in urine, 58, 508
Urochrome, 508
Uroerythrin in urine, 508
"Uterine milk," 882
Uterus, 858; in menstruation, 866, 867; in parturition, 888–891
Utricle, 797

beat, 2
minute
251; co
change
278; in
Vaso-con
nerves,
Vaso-mot
Vaso-mot
ing acti
Vaso-mot
afferent
respirat
renal se
Vaso-mot
277
Vaso-mot
Veins, 169
moveme
169; int
316; sub
Velocity o
188; of
sensory
Venous bl
458
Venous pu
Ventricle
Veratria,
nerves,
276; on
Veratroidi
Vesiculæ
Vertigo, 7
Vierordt,
puscles,

Vital phenomena of the circulation, 232
Vitellin, 920
Vitreous body, 631
Vitelline duct, 873
Vocal cords, 840–842, 844–848
Voice, the, 842–848
Voit, changes of air in respiration, 422; effects of starvation, 561; nutrition, 563, 565, 566, 567, 569, 570, 577, 579; sleep, 903
Volkmann, researches on blood-circulation, 178, 182, 287; lymph-hearts, 754
Vomiting, 376
Vowel sounds, 848
Vulpian, vaso-motor action, 275; on union of motor and sensory nerves, 618, 619; on conduction of impulses in the spinal cord, 761

Waldeyer, lymph-hearts, 755
Walking, 854
Waller, A., vascular mechanism, 287
Wasmann, researches on digestion, 401
Weber, pulse-waves, 224; muscular contraction, 144; on visual sensations, 667; on tactile perceptions, 735, 739
Weight of the body: phases of life, 892
Weiske and Wildt, on nutrition, 571
Wharton's duct, 341
Whispering, 852
White corpuscles, 32, 40, 50, 51, 55, 56, 60
White substance of Schwann, 608
Williams, on menstruation, 868
Winogradoff, diabetes, 536
Winking, 697
Wislicenus, on urea and muscular exercise, 577–579
Wittich, diabetes and digestion, 401, 537
Wolferz, secretion of tears, 697
Wolffberg, researches on respiration, 444
Woroschiloff on reflex actions, 753, 762
Wundt, spinal ganglia, 615

Xanthin, 98, 508, 552, 553, 958

Yawning, 480
Yellow spot, 629, 668, 674
Young-Helmholtz, theory of color sensations, 673

Zalesky, on renal secretion, 554
Zawilski, digestion of fats, 396
Zona pellucida, 872
Zone of Zinn, 631
Zuntz, alkalescence of shed blood, 42; effect of cold on rabbits, 590; urari poisoning, 591
Zymogen, 353